YEAR 10

ESSENTIAL MATHEMATICS

FOR THE AUSTRALIAN CURRICULUM

SECOND EDITION

GOLD

DAVID GREENWOOD | JENNY GOODMAN
JENNIFER VAUGHAN | SARA WOOLLEY
STUART PALMER

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2

© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Cambridge University Press

CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS

477 Williamstown Road, Port Melbourne, VIC 3207, Australia

Cambridge University Press is part of the University of Cambridge.

It furthers the University's mission by disseminating knowledge in the pursuit of education, learning and research at the highest international levels of excellence.

www.cambridge.edu.au
Information on this title: www.cambridge.org/9781316630952

© David Greenwood, Sara Woolley, Jenny Goodman and Jennifer Vaughan 2016

This publication is in copyright. Subject to statutory exception and to the provisions of relevant collective licensing agreements, no reproduction of any part may take place without the written permission of Cambridge University Press.

First published 2012
Reprinted 2013, 2014 (twice), 2015 (twice), 2016
Second edition 2016

Cover designed by Sardine Design
Typeset by Diacritech
Printed in China by C & C Offset Printing Co. Ltd.

A Cataloguing-in-Publication entry is available from the catalogue of the National Library of Australia at www.nla.gov.au

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 Paperback

Additional resources for this publication at www.cambridge.edu.au/GO

Reproduction and Communication for educational purposes
The Australian *Copyright Act 1968* (the Act) allows a maximum of one chapter or 10% of the pages of this publication, whichever is the greater, to be reproduced and/or communicated by any educational institution for its educational purposes provided that the educational institution (or the body that administers it) has given a remuneration notice to Copyright Agency Limited (CAL) under the Act.

For details of the CAL licence for educational institutions contact:

Copyright Agency Limited
Level 15, 233 Castlereagh Street
Sydney NSW 2000
Telephone: (02) 9394 7600
Facsimile: (02) 9394 7601
Email: info@copyright.com.au

Reproduction and Communication for other purposes
Except as permitted under the Act (for example a fair dealing for the purposes of study, research, criticism or review) no part of this publication may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system, communicated or transmitted in any form or by any means without prior written permission. All inquiries should be made to the publisher at the address above.

Cambridge University Press has no responsibility for the persistence or accuracy of URLs for external or third-party Internet websites referred to in this publication, and does not guarantee that any content on such websites is, or will remain, accurate or appropriate. Information regarding prices, travel timetables and other factual information given in this work is correct at the time of first printing but Cambridge University Press does not guarantee the accuracy of such information thereafter.

Contents

			Strand and content description
	About the authors	viii	
	Acknowledgements	ix	
	Introduction and how to use this book	x	
1	**Measurement**	2	**Measurement and Geometry**
	Pre-test	4	Using units of measurement
1A	Conversion of units CONSOLIDATING	5	
1B	Perimeter CONSOLIDATING	10	
1C	Circumference CONSOLIDATING	15	
1D	Area	19	
1E	Area of circles and sectors	25	
1F	Surface area of prisms	30	
	Progress quiz	35	
1G	Surface area of a cylinder ★	37	
1H	Volume of solids	41	
1I	Accuracy of measuring instruments ★	46	
	Maths@Work: Bricklayer	50	
	Puzzles and games	53	
	Review: Chapter summary	54	
	Multiple-choice questions	55	
	Short-answer questions	56	
	Extended-response question	57	
2	**Consumer arithmetic**	58	**Number and Algebra**
	Pre-test	60	Money and financial mathematics
2A	Review of percentages CONSOLIDATING	61	
2B	Applications of percentages	66	
2C	Income	71	
2D	Income taxation ★	76	
2E	Budgeting	82	
2F	Simple interest	88	
	Progress quiz	92	
2G	Compound interest	94	
2H	Investments and loans ★	99	

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2I	Comparing interest using technology ★	106	
	Maths@Work: Finance manager	110	
	Puzzles and games	113	
	Review: Chapter summary	114	
	Multiple-choice questions	115	
	Short-answer questions	116	
	Extended-response questions	117	
3	**Algebra and indices**	118	**Number and Algebra**
	Pre-test	120	Patterns and algebra
3A	Algebraic expressions CONSOLIDATING	121	
3B	Simplifying algebraic expressions	127	
3C	Expanding algebraic expressions	132	
3D	Factorising algebraic expressions	136	
3E	Multiplying and dividing algebraic fractions ★	140	
3F	Adding and subtracting algebraic fractions ★	145	
	Progress quiz	149	
3G	Index notation and index laws 1 and 2	150	
3H	Index laws 3–5 and the zero power	157	
3I	Scientific notation	162	
3J	Exponential growth and decay ★	166	
	Maths@Work: Electrical trades	172	
	Puzzles and games	175	
	Review: Chapter summary	176	
	Multiple-choice questions	177	
	Short-answer questions	178	
	Extended-response questions	179	
4	**Probability**	180	**Statistics and Probability**
	Pre-test	182	Chance
4A	Review of probability CONSOLIDATING	183	
4B	Venn diagrams	189	
4C	Two-way tables	195	
4D	Conditional probability ★	199	
4E	Using tables for two-step experiments	203	
	Progress quiz	209	
4F	Using tree diagrams	210	
4G	Independent events ★	218	
	Maths@Work: Business analyst	222	
	Puzzles and games	224	
	Review: Chapter summary	225	
	Multiple-choice questions	226	
	Short-answer questions	227	
	Extended-response questions	229	

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

5	**Statistics**	230	**Statistics and Probability**
	Pre-test	232	Data representation and interpretation
5A	Collecting data	233	
5B	Frequency tables, column graphs and histograms CONSOLIDATING	238	
5C	Dot plots and stem-and-leaf plots CONSOLIDATING	247	
5D	Range and measures of centre	254	
5E	Quartiles and outliers	260	
5F	Box plots	266	
	Progress quiz	272	
5G	Time-series data	273	
5H	Bivariate data and scatter plots	278	
5I	Line of best fit by eye ★	283	
	Maths@Work: Project manager on a building site	288	
	Puzzles and games	291	
	Review: Chapter summary	292	
	Multiple-choice questions	293	
	Short-answer questions	294	
	Extended-response questions	296	
	Semester review 1	297	
6	**Straight-line graphs**	306	**Number and Algebra**
	Pre-test	308	Linear and non-linear relationships
6A	Interpretation of straight-line graphs CONSOLIDATING	310	
6B	Distance–time graphs	317	
6C	Plotting straight lines CONSOLIDATING	323	
6D	Midpoint and length of a line segment	331	
6E	Exploring gradient	339	
6F	Rates from graphs	347	
	Progress quiz	353	
6G	$y = mx + c$ and special lines	355	
6H	Parallel and perpendicular lines	362	
6I	Sketching with x- and y-intercepts	369	
6J	Linear modelling ★	375	
6K	Direct and inverse proportion ★	383	
	Maths@Work: Accountant or small business owner	394	
	Puzzles and games	396	
	Review: Chapter summary	397	
	Multiple-choice questions	398	
	Short-answer questions	399	
	Extended-response questions	403	

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

7	**Geometry**	404	**Measurement and Geometry**
	Pre-test	406	Geometric reasoning
7A	Parallel lines CONSOLIDATING	408	
7B	Triangles CONSOLIDATING	413	
7C	Quadrilaterals	419	
7D	Polygons ★	424	
7E	Congruent triangles	429	
	Progress quiz	436	
7F	Similar triangles	437	
7G	Applying similar triangles	444	
7H	Applications of similarity in measurement ★	449	
	Maths@Work: Pool builder	456	
	Puzzles and games	458	
	Review: Chapter summary	459	
	Multiple-choice questions	460	
	Short-answer questions	461	
	Extended-response questions	465	
8	**Equations**	466	**Number and Algebra**
	Pre-test	468	Linear and non-linear relationships
8A	Solving linear equations CONSOLIDATING	469	
8B	Solving more difficult linear equations ★	477	
8C	Using formulas	484	
8D	Linear inequalities	488	
8E	Solving simultaneous equations graphically	494	
	Progress quiz	500	
8F	Solving simultaneous equations using substitution ★	501	
8G	Solving simultaneous equations using elimination ★	507	
	Maths@Work: Nurse	514	
	Puzzles and games	517	
	Review: Chapter summary	519	
	Multiple-choice questions	520	
	Short-answer questions	521	
	Extended-response questions	523	
9	**Pythagoras' theorem and trigonometry**	524	**Measurement and Geometry**
	Pre-test	526	Pythagoras and trigonometry
9A	Reviewing Pythagoras' theorem CONSOLIDATING	527	
9B	Finding the length of a shorter side	533	
9C	Applications of Pythagoras' theorem ★	538	
9D	Trigonometric ratios CONSOLIDATING	545	
9E	Finding side lengths	551	

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9F	Solving for the denominator ★	556
	Progress quiz	561
9G	Finding angles	563
9H	Angles of elevation and depression	568
9I	Direction and bearings ★	577
	Maths@Work: Surveyor	584
	Puzzles and games	587
	Review: Chapter summary	588
	Multiple-choice questions	589
	Short-answer questions	590
	Extended-response questions	593
10	**Quadratics and non-linear graphs**	**594**
	Pre-test	596
10A	Expanding binomial products ★	597
10B	Factorising a difference of perfect squares ★	602
10C	Factorising trinomials of the form $x^2 + bx + c$ ★	606
10D	Solving equations of the form $ax^2 = c$ ★	610
10E	Solving $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ using the null factor law ★	616
10F	Applications of quadratics ★	621
	Progress quiz	625
10G	Exploring parabolas ★	626
10H	Graphs of circles and exponentials ★	635
	Maths@Work: Driving instructor	642
	Puzzles and games	644
	Review: Chapter summary	645
	Multiple-choice questions	646
	Short-answer questions	647
	Extended-response questions	649
	Semester review 2	**650**
★	**Appendix: Algorithmic thinking**	**664**
	Activity 1: Solving equations numerically	666
	Activity 2: Measurement formulas and maximising areas	670
	Activity 3: Walk the Plank	674
	Glossary	*677*
	Answers	*681*

Number and Algebra

Patterns and algebra

Linear and non-linear relationships

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

About the Authors

David Greenwood is the Head of Mathematics at Trinity Grammar School in Melbourne and has 22 years' experience teaching mathematics from Years 7 to 12. He has run numerous workshops within Australia and overseas regarding the implementation of the Australian Curriculum and the use of technology for the teaching of mathematics. He has written more than 30 mathematics titles and has a particular interest in the sequencing of curriculum content and working with the Australian Curriculum proficiency strands.

Sara Woolley was born and educated in Tasmania. She completed an Honours degree in Mathematics at the University of Tasmania before completing her education training at the University of Melbourne. She has taught mathematics in Victoria from Years 7 to 12 since 2006, has written more than 10 mathematics titles and specialises in lesson design and differentiation.

Jenny Goodman has worked for 20 years in comprehensive State and selective high schools in NSW and has a keen interest in teaching students of differing ability levels. She was awarded the Jones medal for education at Sydney University and the Bourke prize for Mathematics. She has written for Cambridge NSW and was involved in the *Spectrum* and *Spectrum Gold* series.

Jennifer Vaughan has taught secondary mathematics for more than 30 years in NSW, WA, QLD and New Zealand, and has tutored and lectured in mathematics at Queensland University of Technology. She is passionate about providing students of all ability levels with opportunities to understand and to have success in using mathematics. She has taught special needs students and has had extensive experience in developing resources that make mathematical concepts more accessible, hence facilitating student confidence, achievement and an enjoyment of maths.

Stuart Palmer has been a head of department in two schools and is now an educational consultant who conducts professional development workshops for teachers all over New South Wales and beyond. He is a Project Officer with the Mathematical Association of New South Wales, and also works with pre-service teachers at The University of Sydney and The University of Western Sydney.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Acknowledgements

The author and publisher wish to thank the following sources for permission to reproduce material:

Cover: Used under licence 2016 from Shutterstock.com / leungchopan.

Images: ©Dreamstime.com | Maksim Tomoe, **p.266**; Used under licence 2016 from Shutterstock.com / Neale Cousland, **pp.2–3**, **170**, **180–181**, **257**, **523** / Lev Kropotov, **pp.5**, **175** / PsyComa, **p.10** / Greg and Jan Ritchie, **p.15** / wavebreakmedia, **pp.19**, **93**, **183**, **194(t)**, **208(b)**, **254** / Mr. Interior, **p.23** / kezza, **p.25** / Michal Durinik, **p.29(t)** / Evgeniya Uvarova, **p.29(b)** / photopixel, **p.30** / Diana Baliuk, **p.32** / Savvapanf Photo, **p.34** / Halfpoint, **p.36** / zmkstudio, **p.37** / SvedOliver, **p.39** / Tatjana Kruusma, **p.40** / Christian Mueller, **p.41** / meunierd, **p.45** / Sergio Stakhnyk, **p.46** / Deamles for Sale, **p.50(t)** / Yorkman, **p.50(b)** / Shcherbakov Ilya, **p.51(t)** / Scott David Patterson, **p.51(b)** / Jiggo_thekop, **p.52** / Leonid Eremeychuk, **p.57** / Maxx-Studio, **pp.58–59** / EM Karuna, **p.61** / rayjunk, **p.64** / Arthimedes, **p.65** / 10incheslab, **p.66** / Dariia Belkina, **p.69(t)** / PHOTOCREO Michal Bednarek, **p.69(b)** / Mat Hayward, **p.71** / Spotmatik Ltd, **p.73** / ra2studio, **p.75** / Zerbor, **p.76(t)** / docent, **p.76(b)** / docstockmedia, **p.80** / Rudmer Zwerver, **p.82** / Shi Yali, **pp.83**, **179(b)** / mimagephotography, **pp.84**, **255** / SpeedKingz, **p.85** / stockyimages, **p.86** / rvlsoft, **p.87(t)** / Christopher Meder, **p.87(c)** / Dmitry Morgan, **p.87(b)** / mama_mia, **p.88** / Anteromite, **p.92(t)** / Dmitry Kalinovsky, **pp.92(b)**, **299**, **374**, **545** / Mopic, **pp.94**, **97** / Africa Studio, **pp.95**, **620** / Who is Danny, **p.98** / Rido, **p.99** / Hamik, **p.106(t)** / YURALAITS ALBERT, **p.108** / love work 51, **p.109** / Stasique, **pp.110**, **466–467** / Rawpixel.com, **pp.111**, **294**, **669** / Marco Saracco, **p.112** / John-james Gerber, **p.115** / Mikhail Starodubov, **p.116** / Alexander Chaikin, **p.117** / Volodymyr Krasyuk, **pp.118–119** / Adriano Castelli, **p.121** / Maks Narodenko, **p.125(t)** / Bernhard Richter, **p.125(b)** / Marina Sun, **pp.127**, **156(b)** / Jamie Hooper, **p.131** / karen roach, **p.136** / Olha Tolsta, **p.139** / Georgejmclittle, **p.150** / Denis Vrublevski, **p.156(t)** / sdecoret, **p.162** / Aleksandr Petrunovskyi, **p.166** / Parmna, **p.167** / Efired, **p.171** / Phovoir, **pp.172**, **516** / Vadim Ratnikov, **p.173** / Lurin, **p.174** / Andrea Izzotti, **p.179(t)** / DenisNata, **p.185** / Serlena Bessonova, **p.187** / gmlykin, **p.188(b)** / Mitch Gunn, **p.189** / iQoncept, **p.190** / ponsulak, **p.193** / Franck Boston, **p.194(b)** / Berni, **p.197** / Daxiao Productions, **p.199** / Netfalls – Remy Musser, **p.202** / pick, **p.203** / Sorin Popa, **p.206** / Chanclos, **p.207** / Bertl123, **p.208(t)** / Prapann, **p.210** / djgis, **p.211** / AlenKadr, **p.217(t)** / Stieber, **p.217(b)** / photomak, **p.220** / Adam Gregor, **p.221** / arka38, **p.222** / Pradit.Ph, **p.226** / Bildagentur Zoonar GmbH, **pp.227**, **575** / audioscience, **p.228** / Jacob Lund, **p.229** / Robyn Mackenzie, **pp.230–231** / bibiphoto, **p.232** / Philip Steury Photography, **p.233** / Monkey Business Images, **pp.236**, **245**, **288(b)**, **291(t)**, **477**, **514** / Chay Talanon, **p.237(t)** / calvin au, **237(b)** / vinnstock, **p.238** / Kosarev Alexander, **p.240** / simez78, **p.242** / TK Kurikawa, **p.244** / Lucian Milasan, **p.246** / Nature Art, **p.247** / Pressmaster, **p.249** / StockPhotosLV, **p.252** / Etakundoy, **p.253** / Jaco van Rensburg, **p.259** / EPSTOCK, **p.260** / Jacqui Martin, **p.264(t)** / Barry Barnes, **p.264(b)** / Lilyana Vynogradova, **p.265(t)**, **573** / Valentyna hukhlyebova, **pp.265(b)**, **544** / Tatiana Bralnina, **p.270(t)** / Shebeko, **p.270(b)** / B Calkins, **p.271** / Lissoff Works, **p.273** / GooDween123, **p.276** / XiXinXing, **p.278** / Fulltimegipsy, **p.282** / Iakov Filimonov, **p.288(t)** / goodluz, **p.290** / BestPhotoStudio, **p.291(b)** / Erik Zandboer, **p.296(t)** / Sunflowerey, **p.296(b)** / Daniilantiq, **p.301** / Wildnerdpix, **p.302** / Jacek Chabraszewski, **p.303** / Ratikova, **p.304** / Gyuszko-Photo, **p.305** / David Shih, **pp.306–307** / Albrus, **p.310(t)** / EvrenKalinbacak, **p.310(b)** / DeepGreen, **p.312** / Eric Isselee, **p.314** / cleanfotos, **p.316(t)** / iurii, **pp.316(b)**, **351** / Mykola Mazuryk, **p.317** / k2606d, **p.319** / Symonenko Viktoriia, **p.320** / rdonar, **p.322(t)** / drpnncpptak, **p.322(b)** / Digital Storm, **p.323** / Radu Bercan, **p.325** / Valentyn Volkov, **p.329** / g-stockstudio, **p.330(t)** / Corepics VOF, **p.330(b)** / TFoxFoto, **p.331** / riggsby, **p.337(t)** / Alison Hancock, **p.337(b)** / Daniel Barquero, **p.338** / Alexander Piragis, **p.339(t)** / USAart studio, **p.339(b)** / Ian Scott, **p.346(t)** / Nomad_Soul, **pp.346(b)**, **499(l)** / Mandy Godbehear, **p.347** / VectorLifestylepic, **p.349** / Anatoly Tiplyashin, **p.352** / Ivan Smuk, **p.353** / sportpoint, **p.354** / urbanbuzz, **p.355** / Humannet, **p.357** / Dabarti CGI, **p.359** / Amacistock, **p.368** / Rob Wilson, **p.369** / runzelkorn, **p.375** / graph, **p.378** / Mr Twister, **p.381** / Kathie Nichols, **p.382(t)** / Paolo Bona, **p.382(b)** / YanLev, **p.383** / Zadorozhnyi Viktor, **p.385** / joel masson, **p.391** / Krasnaok, **p.393** / Layland Masuda, **p.394** / Christian Jung, **p.396** / Teneresa, **p.402** / FotografFF, **p.403** / Szilard Szasz Toth, **pp.404–405** / Kenneth Keifer, **p.408** / redstone, **p.409** / andrey_l, **p.412** / PlusONE, **p.413** / Payless Images, **p.417** / Sanchai Khudpin, **p.418** / Ilya Akinshin, **p.419** / Liu Anlin, **p.423** / juan carlos tinjaca, **p.427** / Lissandra Melo, **p.428** / Curioso, **p.429** / Elena Elisseeva, **p.435** / Eugene Sergeev, **p.438** / mary416, **p.440** / Susan Leggett, **p.443** / alexilena, **p.444** / Mark Carthy, **p.447** / DrimaFilm, **p.448** / Pete Spiro, **p.449** / belkos, **p.454** / Lefteris Papaulakis, **p.455(t)** / SurangaSL, **p.455(b)** / Toa55, **p.456(t)** / Jane Rix, **p.457(t)** / mandritoiu, **p.458** / diak, **p.462** / miker, **p.464** / Hetman Bohdan, **p.465** / Ahmad Faizal Yahya, **p.469** / bikeriderlondon, **p.476(t)** / All About Space, **p.476(b)** / Patrick Poendl, **p.483** / stetsko, **p.484** / ChameleonsEye, **pp.487**, **593(t)** / Syda Productions, **p.488** / jultud, **p.492** / logoboom, **p.494** / 1011, **p.497** / CandyBox Images, **pp.498**, **584** / Elena Yakusheva, **p.499(r)** / Champiofoto, **p.501** / hxdylm **p.503** / David Crockett, **p.506** / robert cicchetti, **p.507** / Aleksandar Mijatovic, **p.513** / CruZeWizard, **p.518** / Daniel Prudek, **pp.524–525** / posztos, **p.527** / yuttana jeenamool, **p.532**, **548** / Brian Kinney, **p.533** / Kues, **p.536(t)** / Kichigin, **p.536(b)** / joyfull, **p.537** / d13, **p.538** / koya979, **p.539** / Dragon Images, **p.542** / EmiliaUngur, **p.543** / arturasker, **p.551** / Kzenon, **p.556** / Olga_Anourina, **p.562** / Captain Yeo, **p.563** / Cloud Mine Amsterdam, **p.568** / Gaspar Janos, **p.569** / Dan Breckwoldt, **p.570** / Lano Lan, **p.571** / mbolina, **p.576** / NRC190, **p.577** / Sergei Drozd, **p.579** / Solis Images, **p.580** / Duncan Andison, **p.581** / Neophuket, **p.582** / l i g h t p o e t, **p.586** / panumas nikhomkhai, **p.591** / Milkovasa, **p.592(t)** / Maridav, **p.592(b)** / Melissa Madia, **p.593(b)** / Fredy Theurig, **pp.594–595** / TheFinalMiracle, **p.597** / Martin Lehmann, **p.604** / Phichai, **p.605** / Chrislofotos, **p.609** / Jag_cz, **p.610(t)** / Vitalii Nesterchuk, **p.610(b)** / Paul St. Clair, **p.614** / Tawin Mukdharakosa, **p.615** / Vladitto, **p.616** / MeSamong, **p.619** / Sergey Bogdanov, **p.621** / Sara Winter, **p.622** / Steve Heap, **p.623** / digidreamgrafix, **p.624** / Family Business, **p.626** / caminoel, **p.635** / michaeljung, **p.642** / Ingaga, **p.644** / saiko3p, **p.649** / JuliusKielatitis, **p.650** / Ru Bai Le, **p.654** / wang song, **pp.664–665** / Lucy Clark, **p.674.**

Every effort has been made to trace and acknowledge copyright. The publisher apologises for any accidental infringement and welcomes information that would redress this situation.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Introduction

This second edition of *Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum* sees the Gold series revised, updated, redeveloped and seamlessly blended with HOTmaths to create a comprehensive learning package that is specially designed for students who require additional support in mathematics.

An Interactive Textbook (complimentary) for the student and Online Teaching Suite (available separately) for the teacher are new for the second edition. The print textbooks have been carefully revised and updated. New topics have been added to reflect changes to the Australian Curriculum and incorporate selected parts of new state syllabuses, particularly the Victorian Curriculum and the New South Wales Syllabus.

The following four themes have guided the second edition:

Differentiation in the classroom

- All non-core sections are labelled as 'Consolidating' (indicating a revision section) or with a gold star (indicating a topic that could be considered challenging) to help teachers decide on the most suitable way of approaching the course for their class or for individual students.
- Building and Progressing working programs are suggested for all exercises (see 'Guide to the working programs' on the following page for information).
- Two auto-marked quizzes for each section in the Interactive Textbook are aligned with the Building and Progressing learning pathways.
- Two chapter tests per chapter in the Online Teaching Suite have also been aligned to the Building and Progressing learning pathways.
- The Test Generator inside the Online Teaching Suite provides a high level of flexibility for the teacher to create tests from questions containing four difficulty levels.

Mathematical literacy

- In conjunction with margin definitions in the print book, 'enhanced' pop-up definitions in the Interactive Textbook feature visual and audio aids to help students learn definitions in a multi-dimensional way.
- In the Interactive Textbook, simple drag-and-drop and fill-the-gap activities in each chapter allow students to get comfortable using mathematical language and to consolidate definitions.
- In the Online Teaching Suite, maths literacy worksheets featuring a wide range of activities can be downloaded to be used as classwork or homework.

Practical application of mathematics

- A new feature in each chapter called 'Maths@Work' for Years 9 and 10, and 'Life Maths' for Years 7 and 8, provides case studies to show how the maths learnt in the chapter is relevant to the workplace and to everyday life.

Using technology

- 'Maths@Work' and 'Life Maths' activities feature a section dedicated to giving students practise at using technology such as spreadsheets and calculators in ways they will encounter in the workforce and in everyday life.
- Throughout the textbook, questions best suited to be completed on a calculator are indicated with a calculator icon.
- In the Interactive Textbook, a fully-functional scientific calculator pops up when students click or tap on the calculator icon.
- CAS calculator activities in the Year 10 Interactive Textbook provide calculator practise for students going to study maths in Year 11.

While not part of the ACARA curriculum, Algorithmics is an exciting, powerful way of applying technology to mathematics (and vice versa) and one that is relevant and accessible to students of all ages and ability levels. We have therefore included a new appendix chapter on Algorithmics in each book that takes an introductory, activity-based approach to the subject.

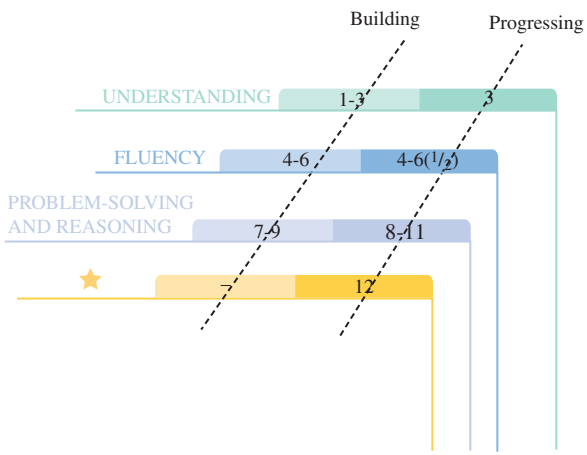
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Guide to the working programs

New to the second edition, the working programs that were previously only available to teachers in separate supporting documents have been updated, refined and subtly embedded in the exercises. The suggested working programs provide two pathways through the book to allow differentiation for Building and Progressing students.

As with the first edition, each exercise is structured in subsections that match the Australian Curriculum proficiency strands (with Problem-solving and Reasoning combined into one section to reduce exercise length), as well as 'Gold Star' (★). The questions* suggested for each pathway are listed in two columns at the top of each subsection.

- The left column (lightest shade) shows the questions in the Building working program.
- The right column (darkest shade) shows the questions in the Progressing working program.



Gradients within exercises and proficiency strands

The working programs make use of two gradients that have been carefully integrated into the exercises. A gradient runs through the overall structure of each exercise – where there's an increasing level of sophistication required as a student progresses through the proficiency strands and then to the 'Gold star' question(s) – but also within each proficiency strand; the first few questions in Fluency are easier than the last few, for example, and the first few Problem-solving and Reasoning questions are easier than the last few.

The right mix of questions

Questions in the working programs have been selected to give the most appropriate mix of *types* of questions for each learning pathway. Students going through the Building pathway are given extra practise at Understanding and basic Fluency and only the easiest Problem-solving and Reasoning questions. The Progressing pathway, while not meant to be challenging, spends a little less time on basic Understanding questions and a little more on Fluency, Problem-solving and Reasoning. The Progressing pathway also includes the 'Gold star' question(s).

Choosing a pathway

There are a variety of ways of determining the appropriate pathway for students through the course. Schools and individual teachers should follow the method that works best for them.

If required, the chapter pre-tests can be used as a diagnostic tool. The following are recommended guidelines:

- A student who gets 40% or lower should heavily revise core concepts before doing the Building questions, and may require further assistance.
- A student who gets between 40% and 75% should do the Building questions.
- A student who gets 75% and higher should do the Progressing questions.

For schools that have classes grouped according to ability, teachers may wish to set either the Building or Progressing pathways as the default pathway for an entire class and then make individual alternations depending on student need. For schools that have mixed-ability classes, teachers may wish to set a number of pathways within the one class, depending on previous performance and other factors.

* The nomenclature used to list questions is as follows:

- 3, 4: complete all parts of questions 3 and 4
- 1-4: complete all parts of questions 1, 2, 3 and 4
- 10(½): complete half of the parts from question 10 (a, c, e, ... or b, d, f, ...)
- 2-4(½): complete half of the parts of questions 2, 3 and 4
- 4(½), 5: complete half of the parts of question 4 and all parts of question 5
- — : complete none of the questions in this section.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

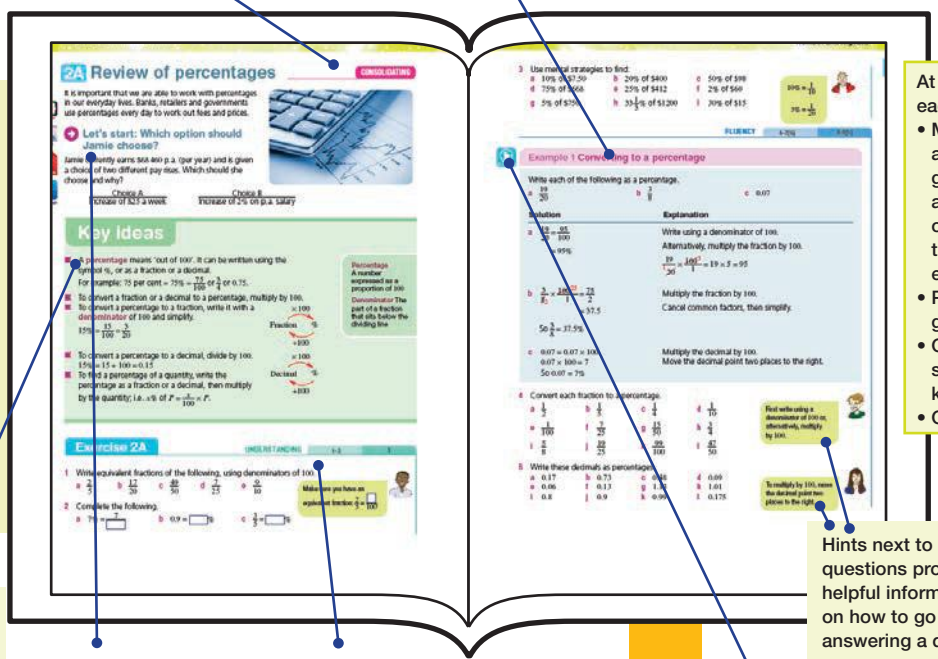
An overview of the *Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum* complete learning suite

For more detail, see the guide in the online Interactive Textbook

Non-core topics in each chapter are labelled as 'Consolidating' or 'Gold Star' to assist with course planning.

Worked examples with Solution and Explanation columns are placed inside the exercises next to the most relevant questions.

PRINT TEXTBOOK



At the end of each chapter:
- Maths@Work and Life Maths give practical applications of maths on-the-job and in everyday life.
- Puzzles and games
- Chapter summary of key knowledge
- Chapter review

Key Ideas summarises the knowledge and skills required for the lesson

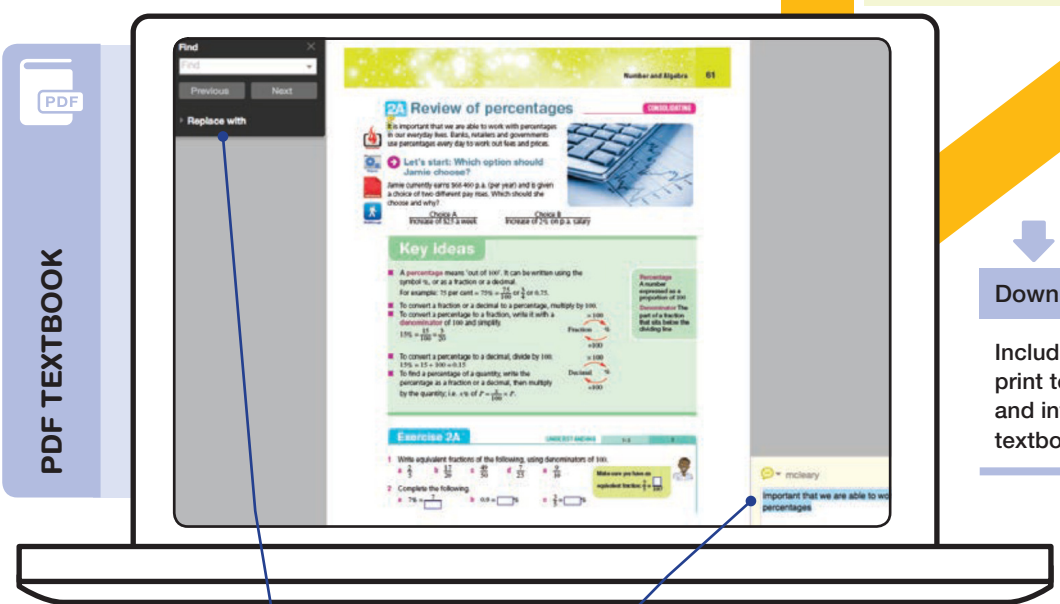
Let's start activities provide an engaging way to start the lesson.

Building and Progressing working programs in every exercise provide two learning pathways depending on student need.

Hints next to exercise questions provide helpful information on how to go about answering a question.

All worked examples in the print book feature a video demonstration in the Interactive Textbook

PDF TEXTBOOK



Downloadable

Included with print textbook and interactive textbook

Search functions

Note-taking

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Easy navigation within sections without scrolling

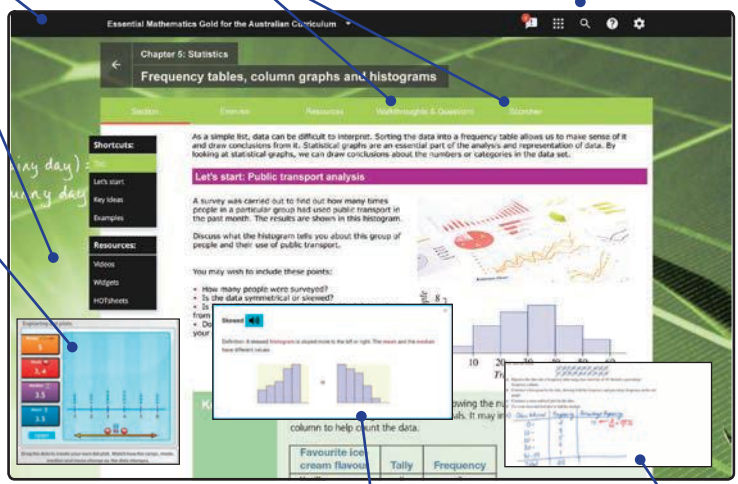
Walkthroughs, Scorcher and levelled question sets in every section

Interactive navigation and searching

Plus:
- Interactive literacy activities
- Pop-up scientific calculator
- Access to *HOTmaths* games library
- View tasks and tests sent by teacher

Access to interactive resources at any time without leaving the page

Hundreds of interactive widgets



INTERACTIVE TEXTBOOK POWERED BY *HOTmaths*

Enhanced pop-up definitions with visual and audio aids to assist with maths literacy

Video demonstration for every worked example

Student reporting

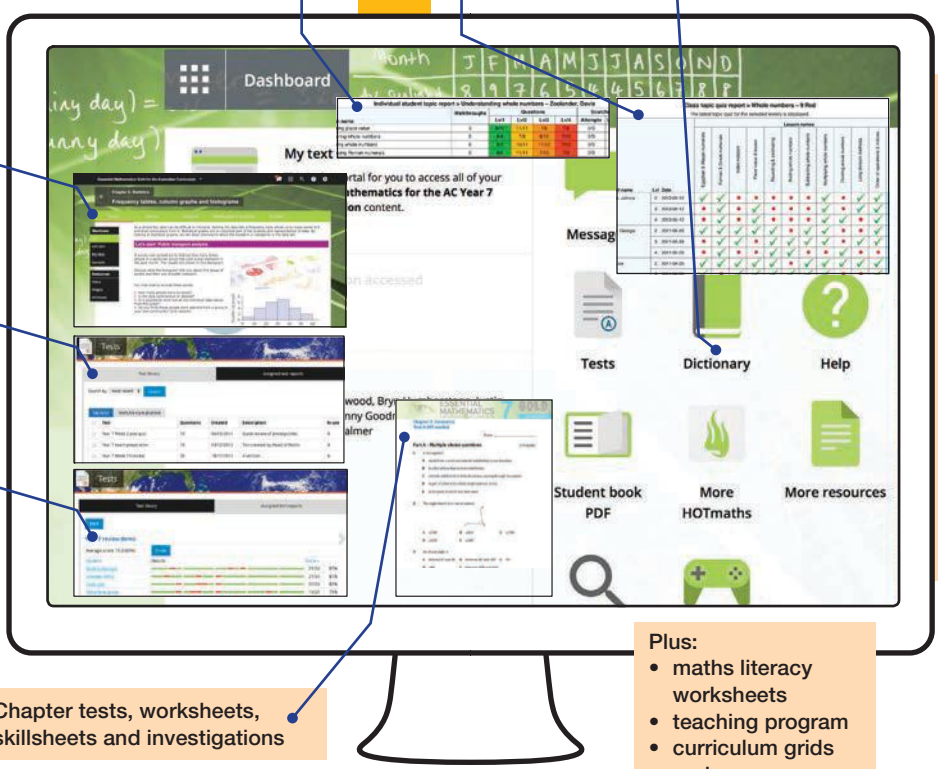
Class reporting

Access to all *HOTmaths* Australian Curriculum courses

Teacher's copy of interactive textbook

Test generator and ready-made tests

Student results



ONLINE TEACHING SUITE POWERED BY *HOTmaths*

Chapter tests, worksheets, skillsheets and investigations

Plus:
- maths literacy worksheets
- teaching program
- curriculum grids and more

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 1

Measurement

What you will learn

1A Conversion of units (Consolidating)
1B Perimeter (Consolidating)
1C Circumference (Consolidating)
1D Area
1E Area of circles and sectors
1F Surface area of prisms
1G Surface area of a cylinder ★
1H Volume of solids
1I Accuracy of measuring instruments ★

Australian curriculum

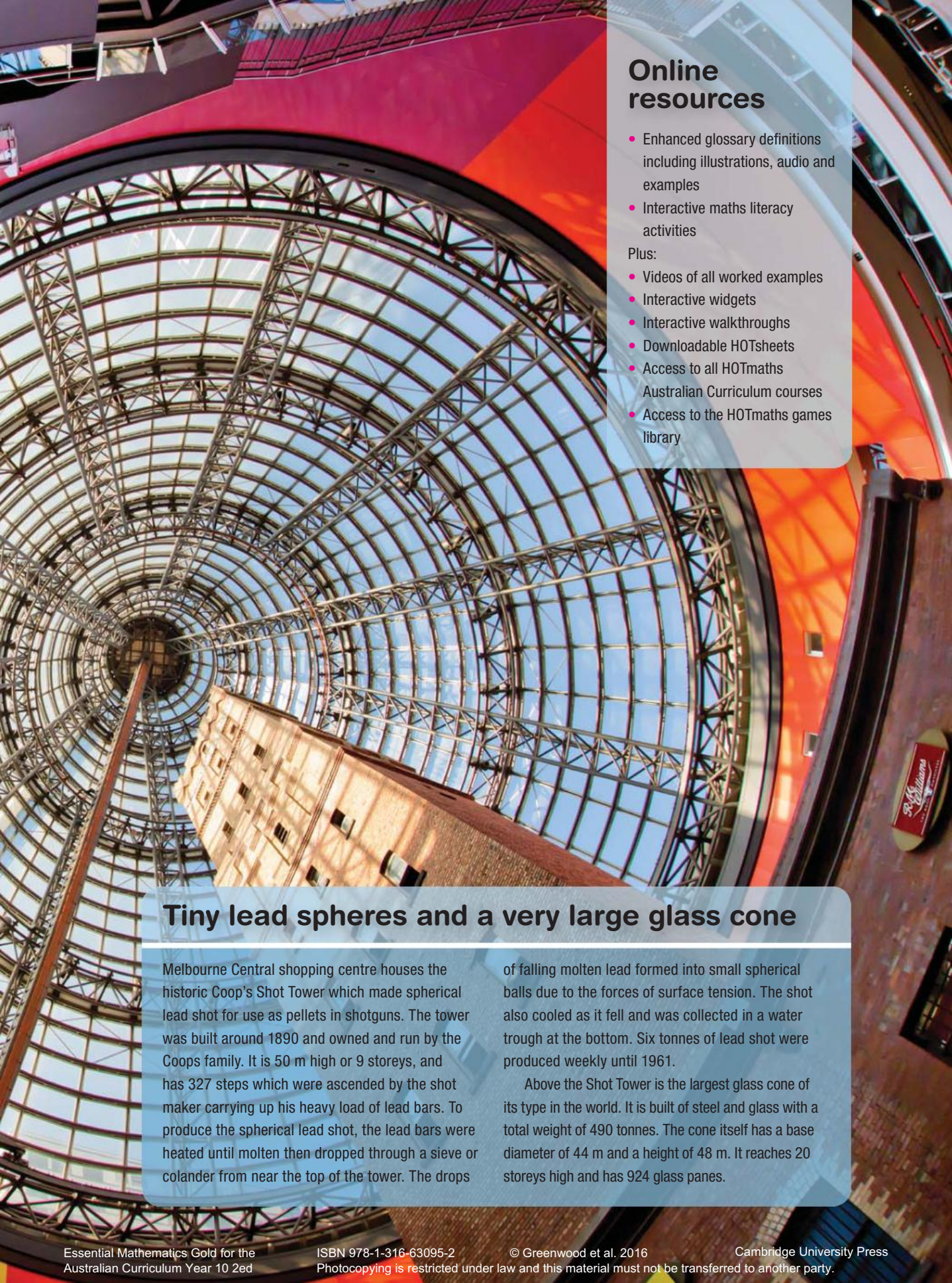
MEASUREMENT

Substitute values into formulas to determine an unknown **(ACMNA234)**

Solve problems involving surface area and **volume** for a range of prisms, cylinders and composite solids **(ACMMG242)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press



Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

Tiny lead spheres and a very large glass cone

Melbourne Central shopping centre houses the historic Coop's Shot Tower which made spherical lead shot for use as pellets in shotguns. The tower was built around 1890 and owned and run by the Coops family. It is 50 m high or 9 storeys, and has 327 steps which were ascended by the shot maker carrying up his heavy load of lead bars. To produce the spherical lead shot, the lead bars were heated until molten then dropped through a sieve or colander from near the top of the tower. The drops of falling molten lead formed into small spherical balls due to the forces of surface tension. The shot also cooled as it fell and was collected in a water trough at the bottom. Six tonnes of lead shot were produced weekly until 1961.

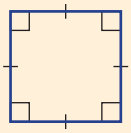
Above the Shot Tower is the largest glass cone of its type in the world. It is built of steel and glass with a total weight of 490 tonnes. The cone itself has a base diameter of 44 m and a height of 48 m. It reaches 20 storeys high and has 924 glass panes.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

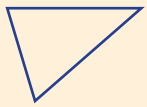
Pre-test

1 Name these shapes. Choose from the words *trapezium*, *triangle*, *circle*, *rectangle*, *square*, *semicircle*, *parallelogram* and *rhombus*.

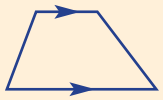
a

b 

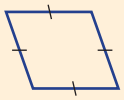
c

d 

e

f 

g

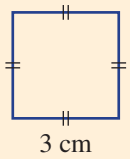
h 

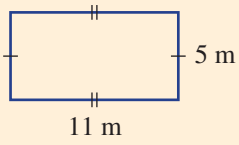
2 Write the missing number.

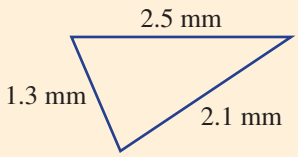
a 1 km = ☐ m **b** 1 m = ☐ cm **c** 1 cm = ☐ mm

d 1 L = ☐ mL **e** 0.5 km = ☐ m **f** 2.5 cm = ☐ mm

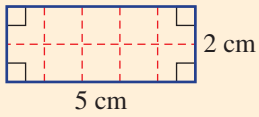
3 Find the perimeter of these shapes.

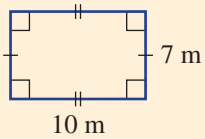
a 

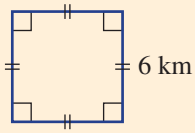
b 

c 

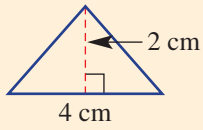
4 Find the area of these shapes.

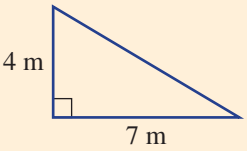
a 

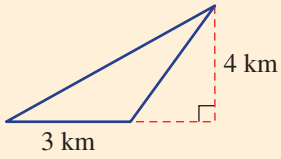
b 

c 

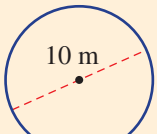
5 Find the area of these triangles using $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$.

a 

b 

c 

6 Use $C = \pi d$ and $A = \pi r^2$ to find the circumference and area of this circle. Round your answer to two decimal places.



$d = 10, r = 5$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1A Conversion of units

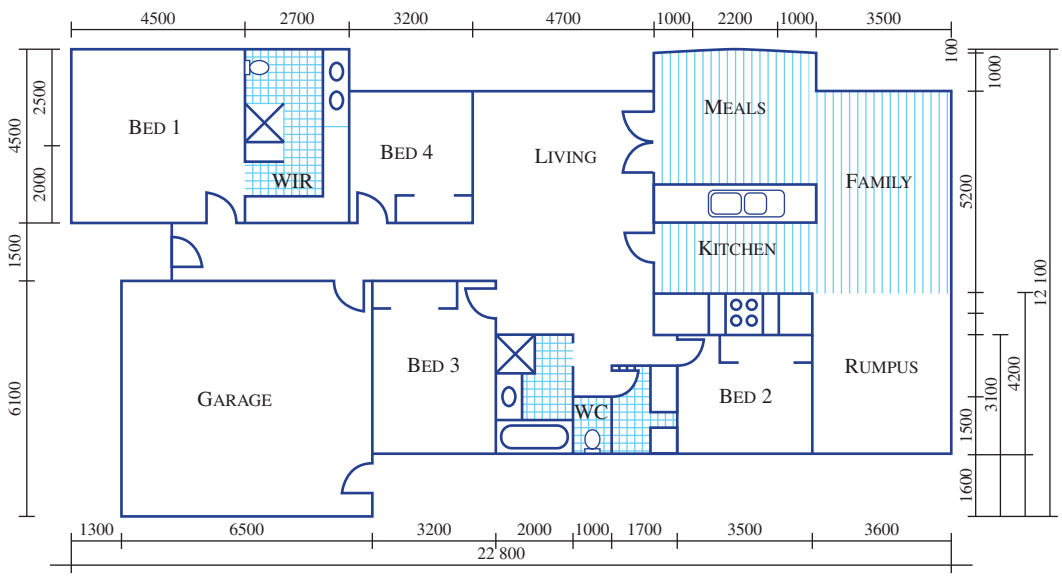
CONSOLIDATING

To work with length, area or volume measurements, it is important to be able to convert between different units. Timber, for example, is widely used in buildings for frames, roof trusses and windows, to name a few. It is important to order the correct amount of timber so that the cost of the house is minimised. Although plans give measurements in mm and cm, timber is ordered in metres (often referred to as lineal metres), so we have to convert all our measurements to metres.

Building a house also involves many area and volume calculations and unit conversions.

Let's start: House plans

All homes start from a plan, which is usually designed by an architect and shows most of the basic features and measurements that are needed to build the house. Measurements are given in millimetres.

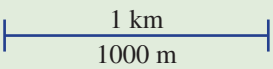


- How many bedrooms are there?
- What are the dimensions of the master bedroom (i.e. BED 1)?
- What are the dimensions of the master bedroom, in metres?
- Will the rumpus room fit a pool table that measures 2.5 m × 1.2 m, and still have room to play?
- How many cars do you think will fit in the garage?
- What do you think is going to cover the floor of the kitchen, meals and family rooms?

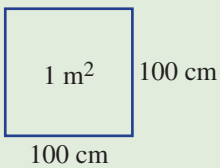
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

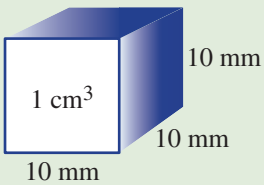
- To convert units, draw an appropriate diagram and use it to find the conversion factor.
  For example:



$1\text{ km} = 1000\text{ m}$



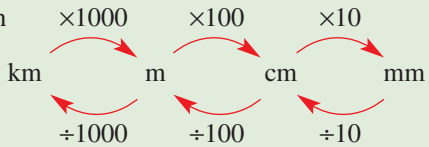
$1\text{ m}^2 = 100 \times 100$
$= 10\,000\text{ cm}^2$



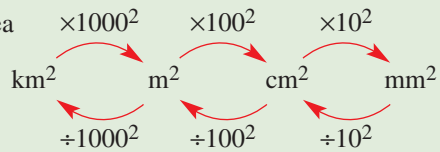
$1\text{ cm}^3 = 10 \times 10 \times 10$
$= 1000\text{ mm}^3$

- Conversions:

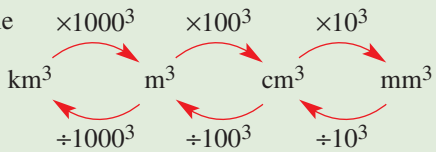
Length



Area



Volume



- To multiply by 10, 100, 1000 etc. move the decimal point one place to the right for each zero;
  e.g. $3.425 \times 100 = 342.5$

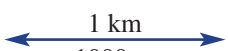
- To divide by 10, 100, 1000 etc. move the decimal point one place to the left for each zero;
  e.g. $4.10 \div 1000 = 0.0041$

- $10^2 = 10 \times 10 = 100$
  $100^2 = 100 \times 100 = 10\,000$
  $1000^2 = 1000 \times 1000 = 1\,000\,000$
  $10^3 = 10 \times 10 \times 10 = 1000$
  $100^3 = 100 \times 100 \times 100 = 1\,000\,000$
  $1000^3 = 1000 \times 1000 \times 1000$
  $= 1\,000\,000\,000$

Exercise 1A

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Write the missing numbers in these sentences involving length.



a There are ☐ m in 1 km.
b There are ☐ mm in 1 cm.
c There are ☐ cm in 1 m.

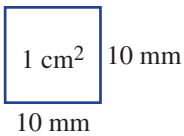
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 Write the missing numbers in these sentences involving area units.

a There are ☐ mm^2 in 1 cm^2.

b There are ☐ cm^2 in 1 m^2.

c There are ☐ m^2 in 1 km^2.

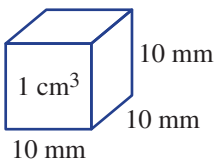


3 Write the missing numbers in these sentences involving volume units.

a There are ☐ mm^3 in 1 cm^3.

b There are ☐ m^3 in 1 km^3.

c There are ☐ cm^3 in 1 m^3.



FLUENCY 4–6 4–6(½)

Example 1 Converting length measurements

Convert these length measurements to the units shown in the brackets.

a 8.2 km (m) **b** 45 mm (cm)

Solution	Explanation
a 8.2 km = 8.2 × 1000 = 8200 m	1 km = 1000 m Multiply when converting to a smaller unit.
b 45 mm = 45 ÷ 10 = 4.5 cm	1 cm = 10 mm Divide when converting to a larger unit.

4 Convert the following measurements of length to the units given in the brackets.

a 4.32 cm (mm) **b** 327 m (km) **c** 834 cm (m)

d 0.096 m (mm) **e** 297.5 m (km) **f** 0.0127 m (cm)

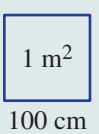
When converting to a smaller unit, multiply. Otherwise, divide.

Example 2 Converting area measurements

Convert these area measurements to the units shown in the brackets.

a 930 cm^2 (m^2) **b** 0.4 cm^2 (mm^2)

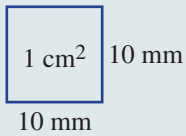
Solution	Explanation
a 930 cm^2 = 930 ÷ 10 000 = 0.093 m^2	1 m^2 = 100 × 100 = 10 000 cm^2



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1A

b $0.4\,\text{cm}^2 = 0.4 \times 100$
$= 40\,\text{mm}^2$



$1\,\text{cm}^2 = 10 \times 10$
$= 100\,\text{mm}^2$

5 Convert the following area measurements to the units given in the brackets.

a $3000\,\text{cm}^2$ (mm^2)
b $0.5\,\text{m}^2$ (cm^2)
c $5\,\text{km}^2$ (m^2)
d $2\,980\,000\,\text{mm}^2$ (cm^2)
e $537\,\text{cm}^2$ (mm^2)
f $0.023\,\text{m}^2$ (cm^2)

$1\,\text{cm}^2 = 100\,\text{mm}^2$
$1\,\text{m}^2 = 10\,000\,\text{cm}^2$
$1\,\text{km}^2 = 1\,000\,000\,\text{m}^2$

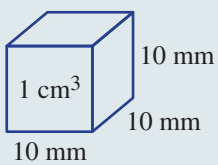
Example 3 Converting volume measurements

Convert these volume measurements to the units shown in the brackets.

a $3.72\,\text{cm}^3$ (mm^3)
b $4300\,\text{cm}^3$ (m^3)

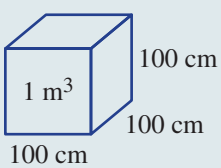
Solution **Explanation**

a $3.72\,\text{cm}^3 = 3.72 \times 1000$
$= 3720\,\text{mm}^3$



$1\,\text{cm}^3 = 10 \times 10 \times 10$
$= 1000\,\text{mm}^3$

b $4300\,\text{cm}^3 = 4300 \div 1\,000\,000$
$= 0.0043\,\text{m}^3$



$1\,\text{m}^3 = 100 \times 100 \times 100$
$= 1\,000\,000\,\text{cm}^3$

6 Convert these volume measurements to the units given in the brackets.

a $2\,\text{cm}^3$ (mm^3)
b $0.2\,\text{m}^3$ (cm^3)
c $5700\,\text{mm}^3$ (cm^3)
d $0.015\,\text{km}^3$ (m^3)
e $28\,300\,000\,\text{m}^3$ (km^3)
f $762\,000\,\text{cm}^3$ (m^3)

$1\,\text{cm}^3 = 1000\,\text{mm}^3$
$1\,\text{m}^3 = 1\,000\,000\,\text{cm}^3$
$1\,\text{km}^3 = 1\,000\,000\,000\,\text{m}^3$

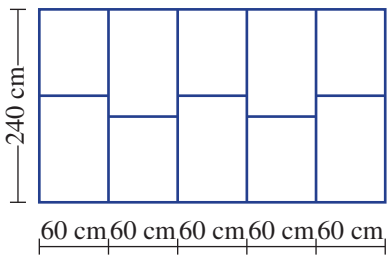
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7–9 8–11

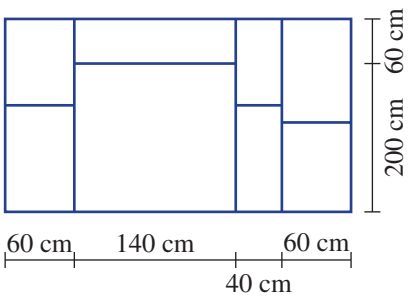
7 An athlete has completed a 5.5 km run. How many metres did the athlete run?

8 Determine the metres of timber needed to construct the following frames.

a



b



9 Find the total sum of the measurements given, expressing your answer in the units given in the brackets.

Convert to the units in brackets. Add up to find the sum.

a 10 cm, 18 mm (mm)
b 1.2 m, 19 cm, 83 mm (cm)
c 453 km, 258 m (km)
d 400 mm^2, 11.5 cm^2 (cm^2)
e 0.3 m^2, 251 cm^2 (cm^2)
f 0.00003 km^2, 9 m^2, 37 000 000 cm^2 (m^2)
g 482 000 mm^3, 2.5 cm^3 (mm^3)
h 0.00051 km^3, 27 300 m^3 (m^3)

10 A snail is moving at a rate of 43 mm every minute. How many centimetres will the snail move in 5 minutes?

11 Why do you think that builders measure many of their lengths using only millimetres, even their long lengths?

Special units

— 12

12 Many units of measurement apart from those relating to mm, cm, m and km are used in our society. Some of these are described here.

Length	Inches	1 inch ≈ 2.54 cm = 25.4 mm
	Feet	1 foot = 12 inches ≈ 30.48 cm
	Miles	1 mile ≈ 1.609 km = 1609 m
Area	Squares	1 square = 100 square feet
	Hectares (ha)	1 hectare = 10 000 m^2
Volume	Millilitres (mL)	1 millilitre = 1 cm^3
	Litres (L)	1 litre = 1000 cm^3

Convert these special measurements to the units given in the brackets. Use the conversion information given above to help.

a 5.5 miles (km)
b 54 inches (feet)
c 10.5 inches (cm)
d 2000 m (miles)
e 5.7 ha (m^2)
f 247 cm^3 (L)
g 8.2 L (mL)
h 5.5 m^3 (mL)
i 10 squares (sq. feet)
j 2 m^3 (L)
k 1 km^2 (ha)
l 152 000 mL (m^3)

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1B Perimeter

CONSOLIDATING

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

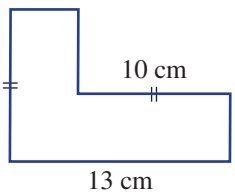
Walkthrough

Perimeter is a measure of length around the outside of a shape. We calculate perimeter when ordering ceiling cornices for a room or materials for fencing a paddock or when designing a television shape.

Let's start: L-shaped perimeters

The L-shaped figure below includes only right (90°) angles. Only two measurements are given.

- Can you figure out any other side lengths?
- Is it possible to find its perimeter? Why?

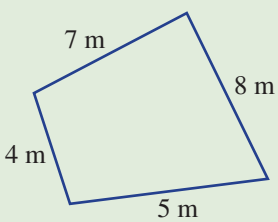


Key ideas

■ **Perimeter** is the distance around the outside of a two-dimensional shape.

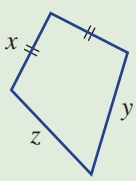
Perimeter The total distance (length) around the outside of a figure

- To find the perimeter we add all the lengths of the sides in the same units.



$P = 4 + 5 + 7 + 8 = 24\text{ m}$

- When two sides of a shape are the same length they are labelled with the same markings.



$P = 2x + y + z$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

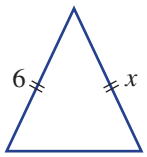
Exercise 1B

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 2

1 Write the missing word: The distance around the outside of a shape is called the _____.

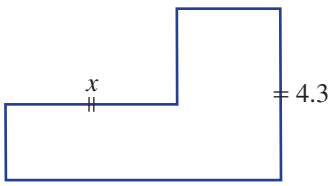
2 Write down the value of x for these shapes.

a



b

c

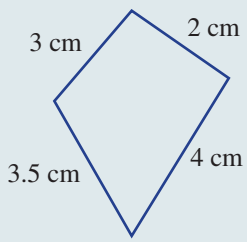


FLUENCY 3, 4 3–4(½)

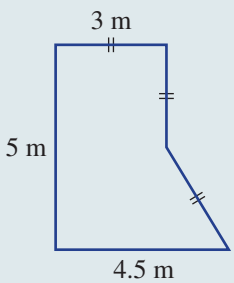
Example 4 Finding perimeters of basic shapes

Find the perimeter of these shapes.

a



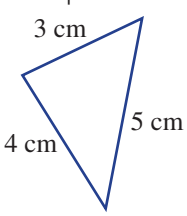
b



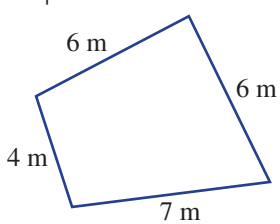
Solution	Explanation
a Perimeter $= 3 + 2 + 4 + 3.5$ $= 12.5$ cm	Add all the lengths of the sides together.
b Perimeter $= 5 + 4.5 + 3 \times 3$ $= 18.5$ m	Three lengths have the same markings and therefore are the same length.

3 Find the perimeter of these shapes.

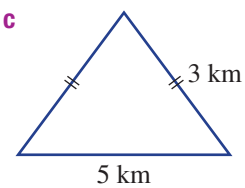
a



b



c

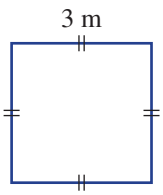


Sides with the same markings are the same length.

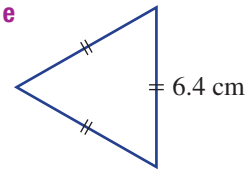
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1B

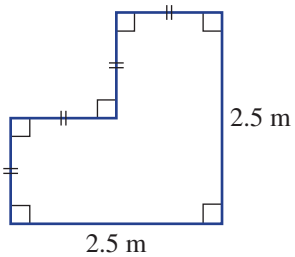
d



e

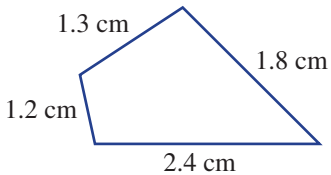


f

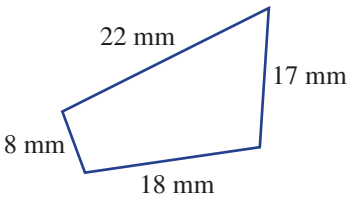


4 Find the perimeter of these shapes.

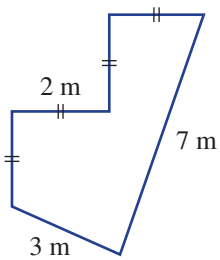
a



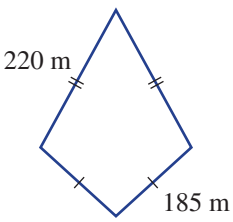
b



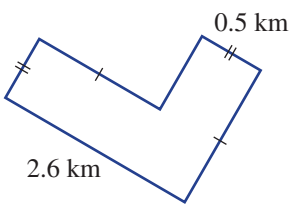
c



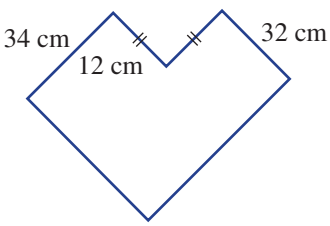
d



e



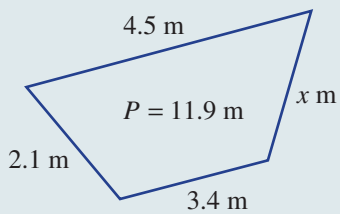
f



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 5–7 6–10

Example 5 Finding a missing side length

Find the value of x for this shape with the given perimeter.

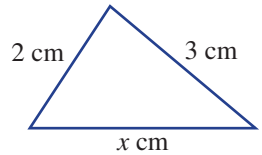


Solution	Explanation
$4.5 + 2.1 + 3.4 + x = 11.9$	All the sides add to 11.9 in length.
$10 + x = 11.9$	Simplify.
$x = 1.9$	Subtract 10 from both sides to find the value of x.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

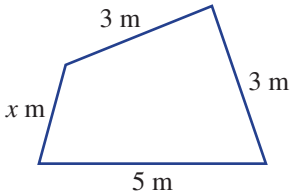
5 Find the value of x for these shapes with the given perimeters.

a



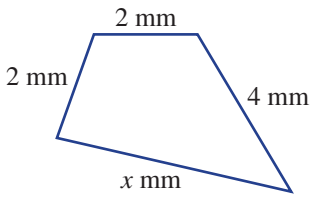
Perimeter = 9 cm

b



Perimeter = 13 m

c

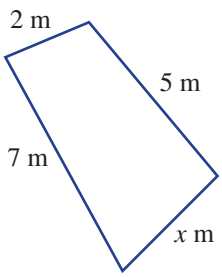


Perimeter = 14 mm

Add up all the sides and then determine the value of x to suit the given perimeters.

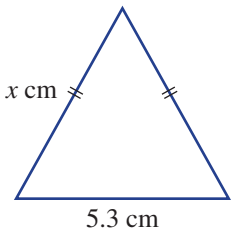
6 Find the value of x for these shapes with the given perimeters.

a



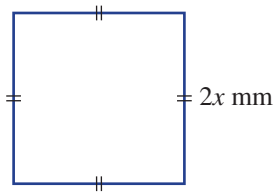
Perimeter = 17 m

b



Perimeter = 22.9 cm

c



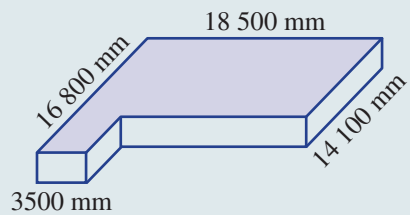
Perimeter = 0.8 mm

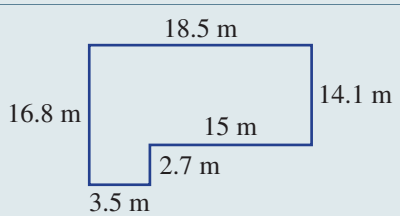
Example 6 Working with concrete slabs

For the concrete slab shown:

a Draw a new diagram, showing all the measurements in metres.

b Determine the lineal metres of timber needed to surround it.



Solution	Explanation
a 	Convert your measurements and place them all on the diagram. 1 m = 100 × 10 = 1000 mm Add or subtract to find the missing measurements.
b Perimeter = 18.5 + 16.8 + 3.5 + 2.7 + 15 + 14.1 = 70.6 m	Add all the measurements.
The lineal metres of timber needed is 70.6 m.	Write your answer in words.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

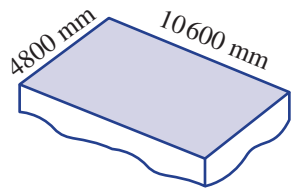
1B

7 For the concrete slabs shown:

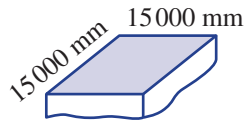
i Draw a new diagram with the measurements in metres.

ii Determine the lineal metres of timber needed to surround it.

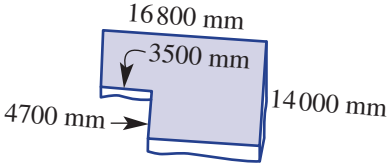
a



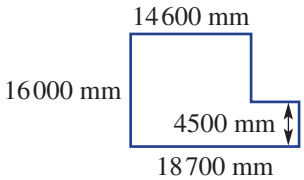
b



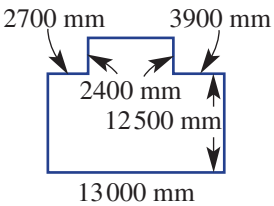
c



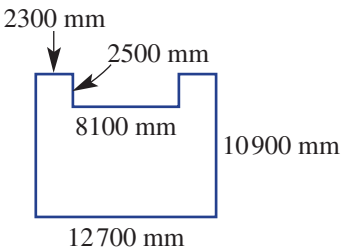
d



e

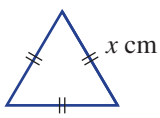


f



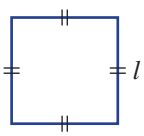
8 A rectangular paddock has perimeter 100 m. Find the width of the paddock if its length is 30 m.

9 The equilateral triangle shown has perimeter 45 cm. Find its side length.

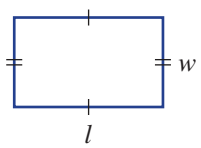


10 Write formulas for the perimeter of these shapes, using the pronumerals given.

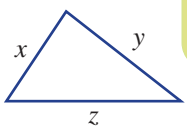
a



b

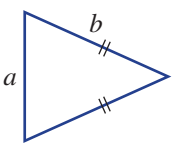


c

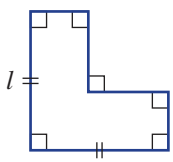


A formula for perimeter could be $P = l + 2w$ or $P = a + b + c$.

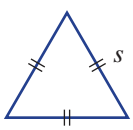
d



e



f



How many different tables?

—

11, 12

11 A large dining table is advertised with a perimeter of 12 m. The length and width are a whole number of metres (e.g. 1 m, 2 m, ...). How many different-sized tables are possible?

12 How many rectangles (using whole number lengths) have perimeters between 16 m and 20 m, inclusive?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1C Circumference

CONSOLIDATING

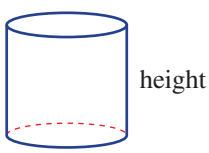
To find the distance around the outside of a circle – the circumference – we use the special number called pi (π). Pi provides a direct link between the diameter of a circle and the circumference of that circle.

The wheel is one of the most useful components in many forms of machinery and its shape, of course, is a circle. One revolution of a vehicle's wheel moves the vehicle a distance equal to the wheel's circumference.

Let's start: When circumference = height

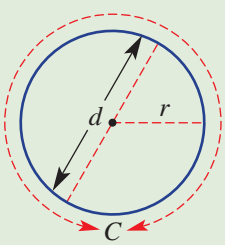
Here is an example of a cylinder.

- Try drawing your own cylinder so that its height is equal to the circumference of the circular top.
- How would you check that you have drawn a cylinder with the correct dimensions? Discuss.



Key ideas

- The **radius (r)** is the distance from the centre of a circle to a point on the circle.
- The **diameter (d)** is the distance across a circle through its centre.
  - Radius $= \frac{1}{2}$ diameter or diameter $= 2 \times$ radius
- **Circumference (C)** is the distance around a circle.
  - $C = 2\pi \times$ radius
    $= 2\pi r$
    or $C = \pi \times$ diameter
    $= \pi d$
  - π is a special number and can be found on your calculator. It can be approximated by $\pi \approx 3.142$.



Radius The distance from the centre of a circle to its outside edge

Diameter A line passing through the centre of a circle with its end points on the circumference

Circumference The distance around the outside of a circle; the curved boundary

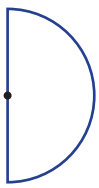
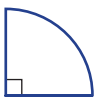
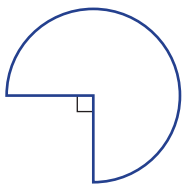
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1C

Exercise 1C

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Write the formula for the circumference of a circle using:
a d for diameter **b** r for radius

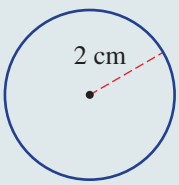
2 What fraction of a circle is shown here?
a

b

c


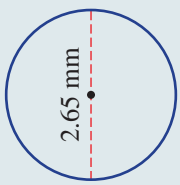
3 **a** What is the diameter of a circle when its radius is 4.3 m?
b What is the radius of a circle when its diameter is 3.6 cm?

FLUENCY 4, 5 | 4–5(½)

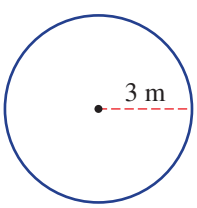
Example 7 Finding the circumference of a circle

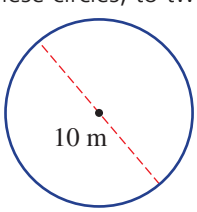
For the circumference of these circles to two decimal places.

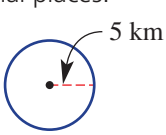
a


b


Solution	Explanation
a $C = 2\pi r$	Write the formula involving the radius, r.
$= 2\pi(2)$	Substitute $r = 2$.
$= 12.57$ cm (to 2 d.p.)	Round your answer to two decimal places.
b $C = \pi d$	Write the formula involving diameter.
$= \pi(2.65)$	Substitute $d = 2.65$.
$= 8.33$ mm (to 2 d.p.)	Round your answer to two decimal places.

4 Find the circumference of these circles, to two decimal places.
a


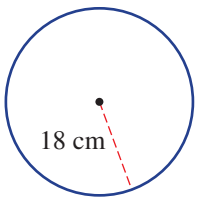
b


c


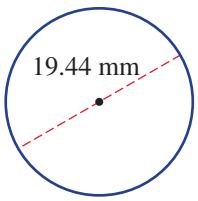
Use $C = 2\pi r$ or $C = \pi d$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

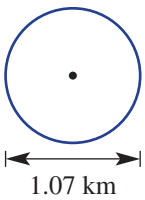
d



e

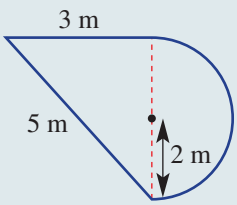


f



Example 8 Finding perimeters of composite shapes

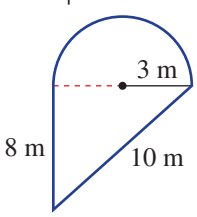
Find the perimeter of this composite shape, to two decimal places.



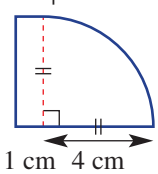
Solution	Explanation
$P = 3 + 5 + \frac{1}{2} \times 2\pi(2)$	Add all the sides, including half a circle.
$= 8 + 2\pi$	Simplify.
$= 14.28$ m (to 2 d.p.)	Round your answer as instructed.

5 Find the perimeter of these composite shapes, to two decimal places.

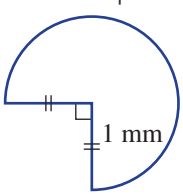
a



b

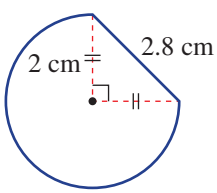


c

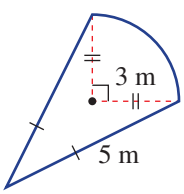


Don't forget to add the straight sides to the fraction $\left(\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{2} \text{ or } \frac{3}{4}\right)$ of the circumference.

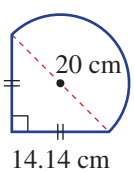
d



e



f



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6–8 7–10

6 David wishes to build a circular fish pond. The diameter of the pond is to be 3 m.

a How many lineal metres of bricks are needed to surround it? Round your answer to two decimal places.

b What is the cost if the bricks are $45 per metre? (Use your answer from part **a**.)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1C

7 The wheels of a bike have a diameter of 1 m.

a How many metres will the bike travel (to two decimal places) after:

i one full turn of the wheels?

ii 15 full turns of the wheels?

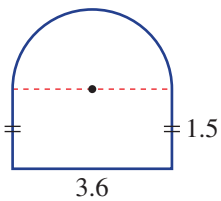
b How many kilometres will the bike travel after 1000 full turns of the wheels? (Give your answer correct to two decimal places.)

For one revolution, use $C = \pi d$.

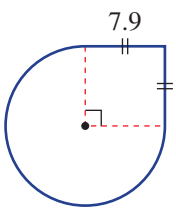
8 What is the minimum number of times a wheel of diameter 1 m needs to spin to cover a distance of 1 km? You will need to find the circumference of the wheel first. Give your answer as a whole number.

9 Find the perimeter of these composite shapes, to two decimal places.

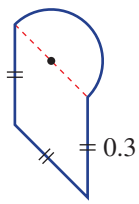
a



b

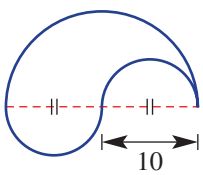


c

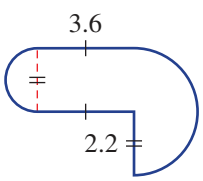


Make sure you know the radius or diameter of the circle you are dealing with.

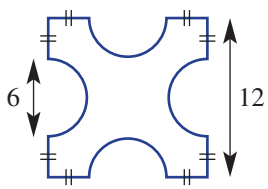
d



e



f



10 **a** Rearrange the formula for the circumference of a circle, $C = 2\pi r$, to write r in terms of C.

b Find, to two decimal places, the radius of a circle with the given circumference.

i 35 cm

ii 1.85 m

iii 0.27 km

To make r the subject divide both sides by 2π.

Target practice

— 11

11 A target is made up of three rings, as shown.

a Find the radius of the smallest ring.

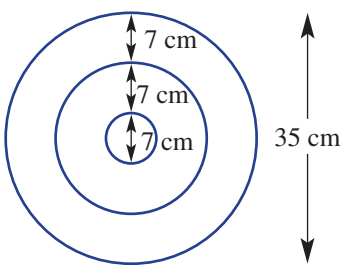
b Find, to two decimal places, the circumference of:

i the smallest ring

ii the middle ring

iii the outside ring

c If the circumference of a different ring is 80 cm, what would be its radius, to two decimal places?

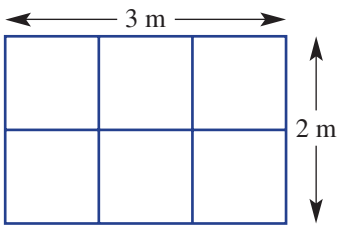


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1D Area

In this simple diagram, a rectangle, with side lengths 2 m and 3 m, has an area of 6 square metres or 6 m^2. This is calculated by counting the number of squares (each measuring a square metre) that make up the rectangle.

We use formulas to help us quickly count the number of square units contained within a shape. For this rectangle, for example, the formula $A = lw$ simply tells us to multiply the length by the width to find the area.

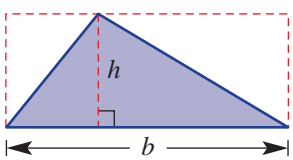


Area = 6 m^2

Let's start: How does $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$ work for a triangle?

Look at this triangle, including its rectangular red dashed lines.

- How does the shape of the triangle relate to the shape of the outside rectangle?
- How can you use the formula for a rectangle to help find the area of the triangle (or parts of the triangle)?
- Why is the rule for the area of a triangle given by $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$?

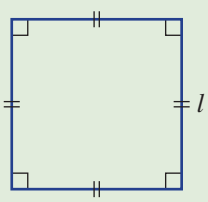


Key ideas

Area The number of square units needed to cover the space inside the boundaries of a 2D shape

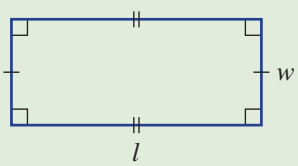
- The **area** of a two-dimensional shape is the number of square units contained within its boundaries.
- Some of the common area formulas are as follows.

Square



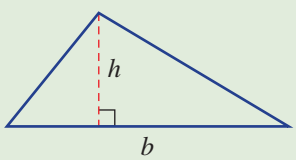
Area = l^2

Rectangle



Area = lw

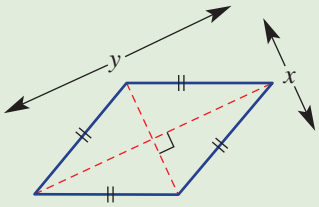
Triangle



Area = $\frac{1}{2}bh$

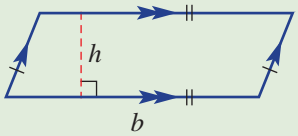
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Rhombus



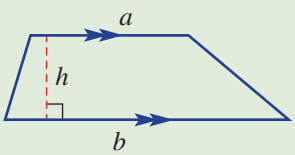
Area $= \frac{1}{2}xy$

Parallelogram



Area $= bh$

Trapezium



Area $= \frac{1}{2}(a+b)h$

- The 'height' in a triangle, parallelogram or trapezium should be perpendicular (at 90°) to the base.

Exercise 1D

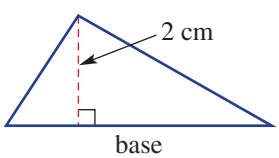
UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 2

1 Match each shape (**a**–**f**) with its area formula (**A**–**F**).

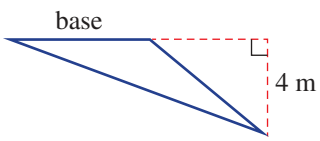
a	square	**A**	$A = \frac{1}{2}bh$
b	rectangle	**B**	$A = lw$
c	rhombus	**C**	$A = bh$
d	parallelogram	**D**	$A = \frac{1}{2}(a+b)h$
e	trapezium	**E**	$A = l^2$
f	triangle	**F**	$A = \frac{1}{2}xy$

2 These shapes show the base and a height length. Write down the given height of each shape.

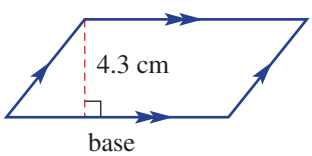
a



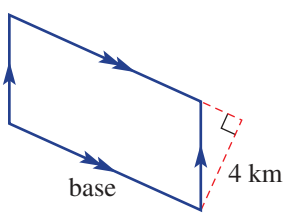
b



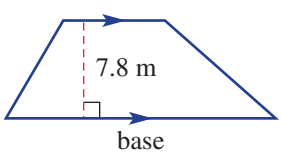
c



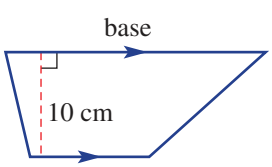
d



e



f



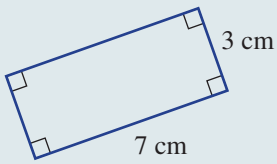
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 3, 4 3–4(½)

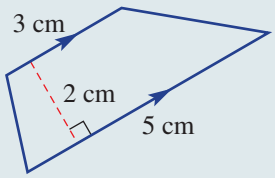
Example 9 Using area formulas

Find the area of these basic shapes.

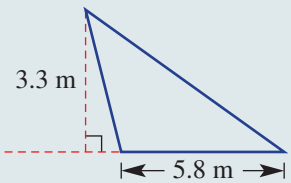
a



b



c

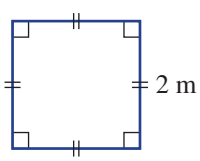


Solution	Explanation
a Area $= lw$	Write the formula for the area of a rectangle.
$= 7 \times 3$	Substitute the lengths $l = 7$ and $w = 3$.
$= 21\ \text{cm}^2$	Simplify and include the units.
b Area $= \frac{1}{2}(a+b)h$	Write the formula for the area of a trapezium.
$= \frac{1}{2}(3+5) \times 2$	Substitute the lengths $a = 3$, $b = 5$ and $h = 2$.
$= 8\ \text{cm}^2$	Simplify and include the units.
c Area $= \frac{1}{2}bh$	Write the formula for the area of a triangle.
$= \frac{1}{2} \times 5.8 \times 3.3$	Substitute the lengths $b = 5.8$ and $h = 3.3$.
$= 9.57\ \text{m}^2$	Simplify and include the units.

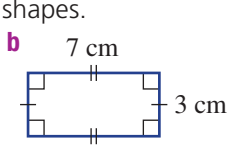
First, choose the correct formula and substitute for each pronumeral (letter).

3 Find the area of these basic shapes.

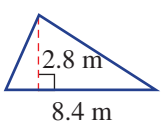
a



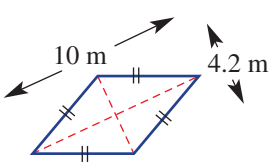
b



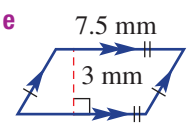
c



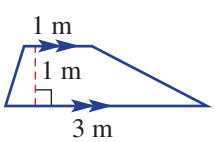
d



e



f

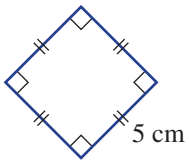


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

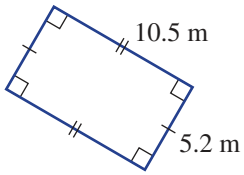
1D

4 Find the area of these basic shapes.

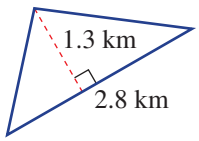
a



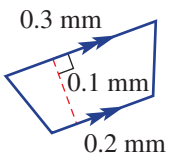
b



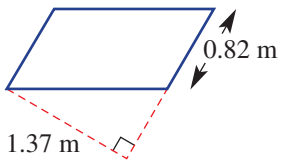
c



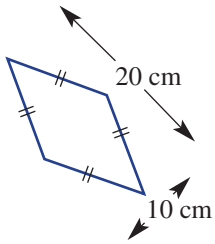
d



e



f



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 5–8 7–11

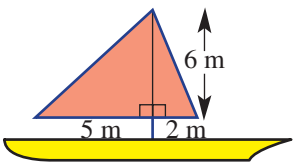
5 A rectangular table top is 1.2 m long and 80 cm wide. Find the area of the table top using:

a square metres (m^2)

b square centimetres (cm^2)

First convert to the units that you want to work with.

6 Two triangular sails have side lengths as shown. Find the total area of the two sails.

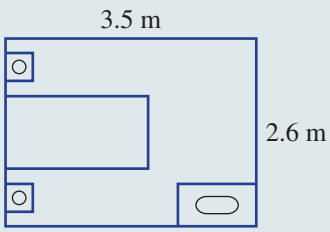


Example 10 Finding areas of floors

Christine decides to use carpet to cover the floor of her rectangular bedroom, shown at right. Determine:

a the area of floor to be covered

b the total cost if the carpet costs $32 a square metre



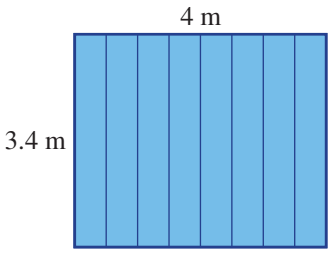
Solution	Explanation
a Area of floor $= l \times w$ $= 3.5 \times 2.6$ $= 9.1\ m^2$	The room is a rectangle, so use $A = l \times w$ to calculate the total floor space.
b Cost of carpet $= 9.1 \times 32$ $= \$291.20$	Every square metre of carpet costs $32.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7 Jack's shed is to have a flat roof, which he decides to cover with metal sheets.

a Determine the total area of the roof.

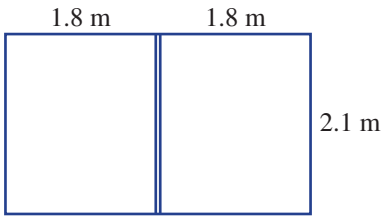
b If the metal roofing costs \$11 a square metre, how much will it cost in total?



8 A sliding door has two glass panels. Each of these is 2.1 m high and 1.8 m wide.

a How many square metres of glass are needed?

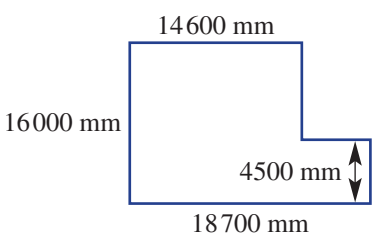
b What is the total cost of the glass if the price is \$65 per square metre?



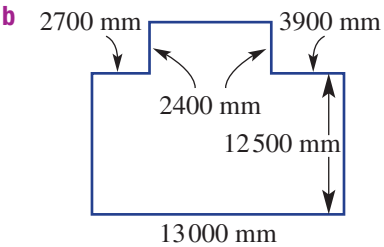
9 A rectangular window has a whole number measurement for its length and width and its area is 24 m^2. Write down the possible lengths and widths for the window.

10 Determine the area of the houses shown, in square metres (correct to two decimal places).

a



b



Note that there are 1000 mm in 1 m.

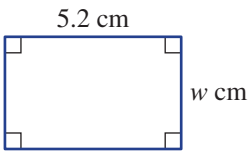
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1D

11 Find the value of the pronumeral in these shapes, rounding your answer to two decimal places each time.

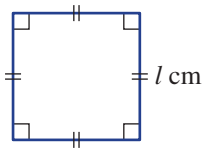
First, write the appropriate formula and substitute for the area and length pronumerals. Then solve for the unknown.

a



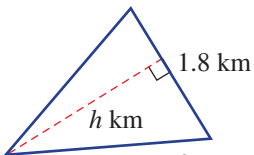
Area = 15 cm^2

b



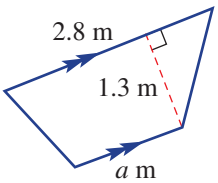
Area = 206 m^2

c



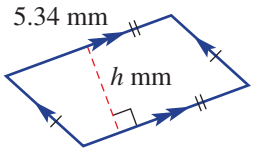
Area = 1.3 km^2

d



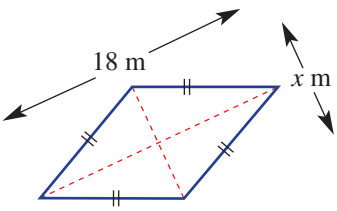
Area = 2.5 m^2

e



Area = 10 mm^2

f



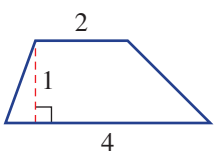
Area = 80 m^2

Four ways to find the area of a trapezium

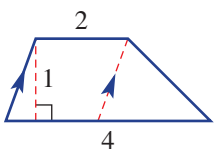
— 12

12 Find the area of this trapezium using each of the suggested methods.

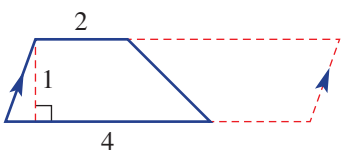
a formula $A = \frac{1}{2}(a+b)h$



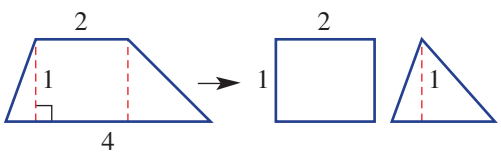
b parallelogram and triangle



c half-parallelogram



d rectangle + triangle



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1E Area of circles and sectors

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

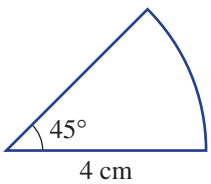
Like its circumference, a circle's area is linked to the special number pi (π). The area is the product of pi and the square of the radius, so $A = \pi r^2$.

Knowing the formula for the area of a circle helps us build circular garden beds, plan water sprinkler systems and estimate the damage caused by an oil slick from a ship in calm seas.

Let's start: What fraction is that?

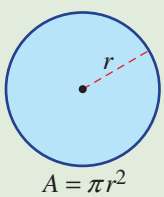
When finding areas of sectors, we first need to decide what fraction of a circle we are dealing with. This sector, for example, has a radius of 4 cm and a 45° angle.

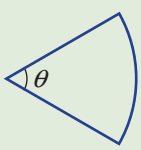
- What fraction of a full circle is shown in this sector?
- How can you use this fraction to help find the area of this sector?
- How would you set out your working to find its area?



Key ideas

- The formula for finding the area (A) of a circle of radius r is given by the equation: $A = \pi r^2$.
- When the diameter (d) of the circle is given, determine the radius before calculating the area of the circle: $r = d \div 2$.
- The angle of a sector of a circle determines the fraction of the circle. A full circle is 360°:
  - This sector is $\frac{\theta}{360}$ of a circle.

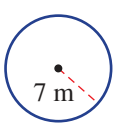




Exercise 1E

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Which is the correct working step for the area of this circle?

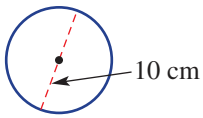


A $A = \pi(7)$ **B** $A = 2\pi(7)$ **C** $A = \pi(14)^2$
D $A = (\pi 7)^2$ **E** $A = \pi(7)^2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

1E

2 Which is the correct working step for the area of this circle?



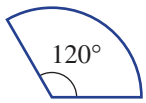
A $A = \pi(10)^2$ **B** $A = (\pi 10)^2$
C $A = \pi(5)^2$ **D** $A = 2\pi(5)$
E $A = 5\pi$

3 What fraction of a circle is shown by these sectors? Simplify your fraction.

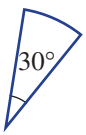
a

b

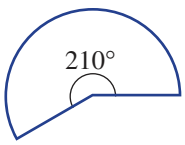
c



d



e



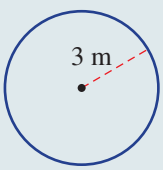
f

FLUENCY 4, 5 4–5(½)

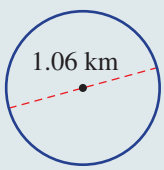
Example 11 Finding areas of circles

Find the area of these circles, correct to two decimal places.

a



b

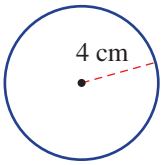


Solution	Explanation
a $A = \pi r^2$	Write the formula.
$= \pi(3)^2$	Substitute $r = 3$.
$= \pi \times 9$	Evaluate $3^2 = 9$ and then multiply by π.
$= 28.27\ \text{m}^2$ (to 2 d.p.)	
b Radius $r = 1.06 \div 2 = 0.53\ \text{km}$	Find the radius, given the diameter of 1.06.
$A = \pi r^2$	Write the formula.
$= \pi(0.53)^2$	Substitute $r = 0.53$.
$= 0.88\ \text{km}^2$ (to 2 d.p.)	Write your answer to two decimal places with units.

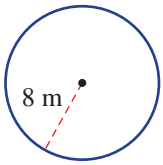
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 Find the area of these circles, correct to two decimal places.

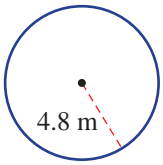
a



b

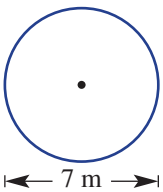


c

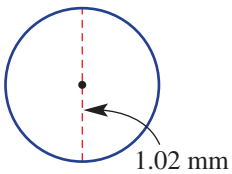


Remember: $r = d \div 2$

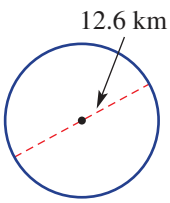
d



e

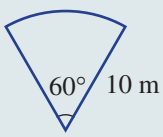


f



Example 12 Finding areas of sectors

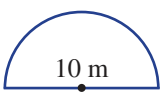
Find the area of this sector, correct to two decimal places.



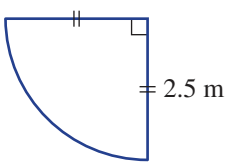
Solution	Explanation
Fraction of circle $= \frac{60}{360} = \frac{1}{6}$	The sector uses 60° out of the 360° in a whole circle.
Area $= \frac{1}{6} \times \pi r^2$	Write the formula, including the fraction.
$= \frac{1}{6} \times \pi (10)^2$	Substitute $r = 10$.
$= 52.36\ \text{m}^2$ (to 2 d.p.)	Write your answer to two decimal places.

5 Find the area of these sectors, correct to two decimal places.

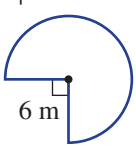
a



b

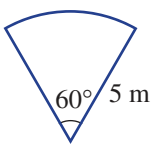


c

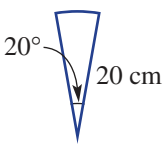


First determine the fraction of a full circle that you are dealing with.

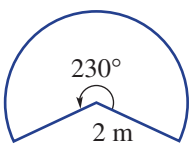
d



e



f



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

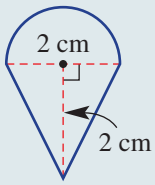
1E

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6–8 7–9

6 A pizza with diameter 40 cm is divided into eight equal parts. Find the area of each portion, correct to one decimal place.

Example 13 Finding areas of composite shapes

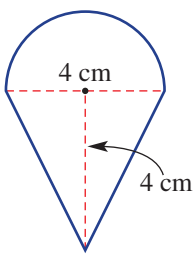
Find the area of this composite shape, correct to two decimal places.



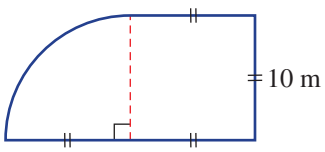
Solution	Explanation
$A = \frac{1}{2}\pi r^2 + \frac{1}{2}bh$	The shape is made up of a semicircle and a triangle. Write the formulas for both shapes.
$= \frac{1}{2}\pi(1)^2 + \frac{1}{2}(2)(2)$	Substitute $r = 1$, $b = 2$ and $h = 2$.
$= 1.5707... + 2$	
$= 3.57\text{ cm}^2$ (to 2 d.p.)	Write your answer to two decimal places with units.

7 Find the area of these composite shapes, correct to two decimal places.

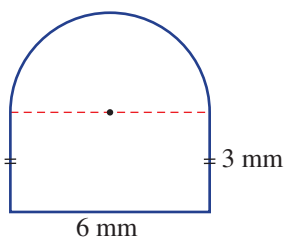
a



b



c



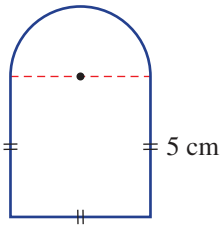
Find the area of each shape that makes up the larger shape, then add them. For example, triangle + semicircle.

8 The lawn area in a backyard is made up of a semicircular region with diameter 6.5 m and a right-angled triangular region of length 8.2 m, as shown. Find the total area of lawn in the backyard, correct to two decimal places.

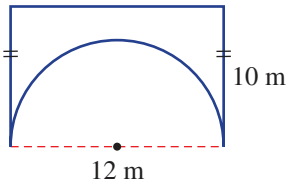
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9 Find the area of these composite shapes, correct to one decimal place.

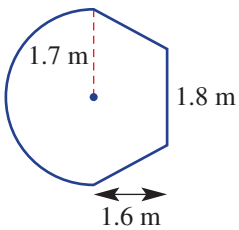
a



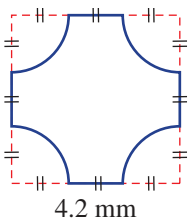
b



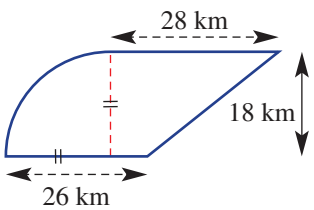
c



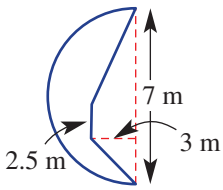
d



e



f

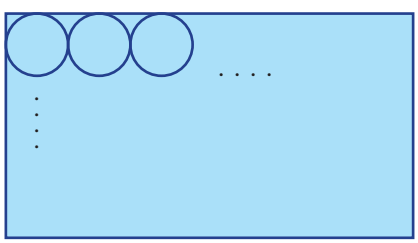


Use addition or subtraction, depending on the shape given.

Circular pastries

— 10

10 A rectangular piece of pastry is used to create small circular pastry discs for the base of Christmas tarts. The rectangular piece of pastry is 30 cm long and 24 cm wide, and each circular piece has a diameter of 6 cm.



a How many circular pieces of pastry can be removed from the rectangle?

b Find the total area removed from the original rectangle, correct to two decimal places.

c Find the total area of pastry remaining, correct to two decimal places.

d If the remaining pastry was collected and re-rolled to the same thickness, how many circular pieces could be cut? (Assume that the pastry can be re-rolled and cut many times.)

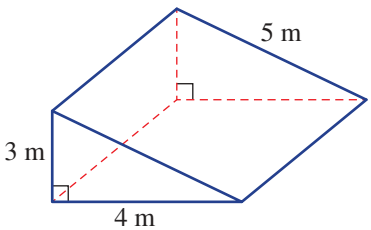
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1F Surface area of prisms

The total surface area of a three-dimensional object can be found by finding the sum of the areas of each of the shapes that make up the surface of the object.

Let's start: Which net?

The solid below is a triangular prism with a right-angled triangle as its cross-section.



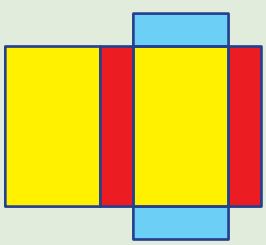
- How many different types of shapes make up its outside surface?
- What is a possible net for the solid? Is there more than one?
- How would you find the total surface area?

Key ideas

- To calculate the **total surface area (TSA)** of a solid:
  - Draw a net (i.e. a two-dimensional drawing that includes all the surfaces).
  - Determine the area of each shape inside the net.
  - Add the areas of each shape together.

Total surface area (TSA) The total number of square units needed to cover the outside of a solid

Shape **Net**



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

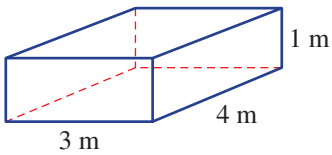
Exercise 1F

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

1 For a rectangular prism, answer the following.

a How many faces does the prism have?

b How many *different* rectangles form the surface of the prism?



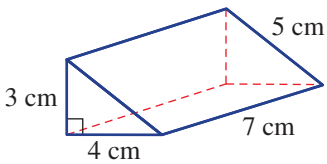
2 For this triangular prism, answer the following.

a What is the area of the largest surface rectangle?

b What is the area of the smallest surface rectangle?

c What is the combined area of the two triangles?

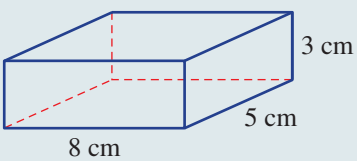
d What is the total surface area?



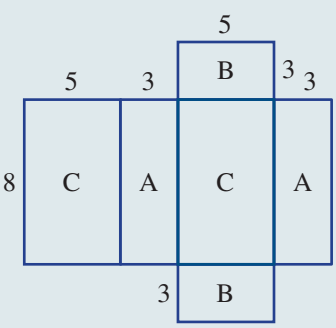
FLUENCY 3, 4 | 3–5

Example 14 Finding the TSA of a rectangular prism

Find the total surface area (TSA) of this rectangular prism by first drawing its net.



Solution



$\text{TSA} = 2 \times \text{area of A} + 2 \times \text{area of B} + 2 \times \text{area of C}$

$= 2 \times (8 \times 3) + 2 \times (5 \times 3) + 2 \times (8 \times 5)$

$= 158\ \text{cm}^2$

Explanation

Draw the net of the solid, labelling the lengths and shapes of equal areas.

Describe each area.

Substitute the correct lengths.

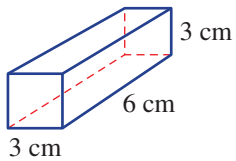
Simplify and include units.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

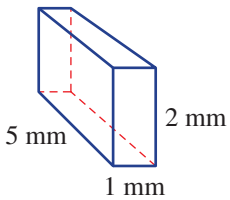
1F

3 Find the total surface area (TSA) of these rectangular prisms by first drawing their nets.

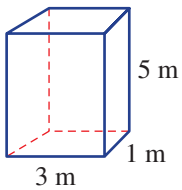
a



b

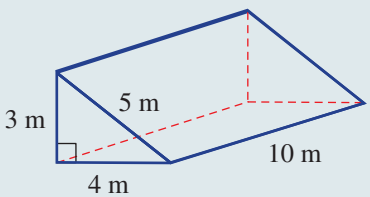


c

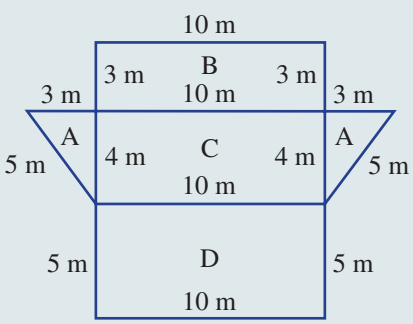


Example 15 Finding the TSA of a triangular prism

Find the surface area of the triangular prism shown.



Solution



Total surface area

$= 2 \times$ area A + area B + area C + area D

$= 2 \times \left(\frac{1}{2} \times 3 \times 4\right) + (3 \times 10) + (4 \times 10)$

$+ (5 \times 10)$

$= 12 + 30 + 40 + 50$

$= 132\,\text{m}^2$

Explanation

Draw a net of the object with all the measurements and label the sections to be calculated.

There are two triangles with the same area and three different rectangles.

Substitute the correct lengths.

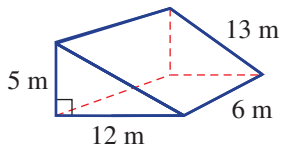
Calculate the area of each shape.

Add the areas together.

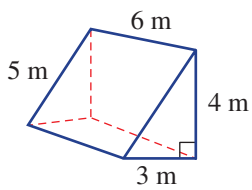
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 Find the total surface area of the following prisms.

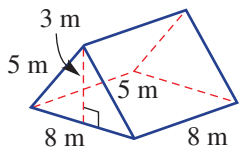
a



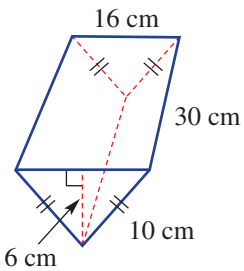
b



c



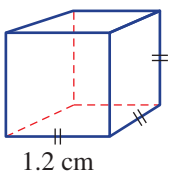
d



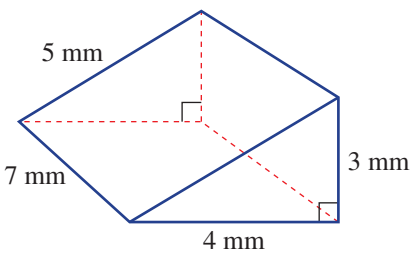
There are three rectangles and two identical triangles.

5 Find the TSA of these objects by first drawing a net.

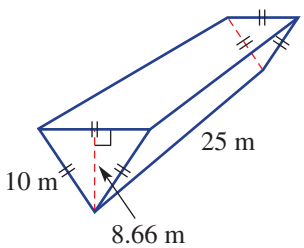
a



b



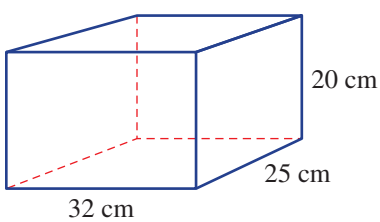
c



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6–8 8–11

6 A cube with side lengths of 8 cm is to be painted all over with bright red paint. What is the total surface area that is to be painted?

7 What is the minimum amount of paper required to wrap a box with dimensions 25 cm wide, 32 cm long and 20 cm high?



8 An open-topped box is to be covered inside and out with a special material. If the box is 40 cm long, 20 cm wide and 8 cm high, find the minimum amount of material required to cover the box.

Count both inside and out but do not include the top.

9 David wants to paint his bedroom. The ceiling and walls are to be the same colour. If the room measures 3.3 m × 4 m and the ceiling is 2.6 m high, find the amount of paint needed:

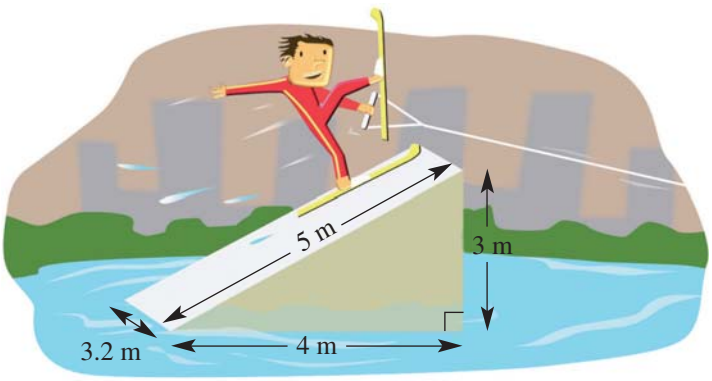
a if each litre covers 10 square metres

b if each litre covers 5 square metres

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1F

10 A ski ramp in the shape of a triangular prism needs to be painted before the Moomba Classic waterskiing competition in Melbourne is held. The base and sides of the ramp require a fully waterproof paint, which covers 2.5 square metres per litre. The top needs special smooth paint, which covers only 0.7 square metres per litre.

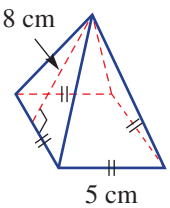


a Determine the amount of each type of paint required. Round your answers to two decimal places where necessary.

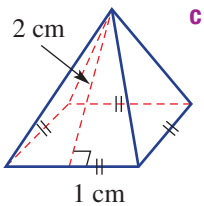
b If the waterproof paint is $7 per litre and the special smooth paint is $20 per litre, calculate the total cost of painting the ramp, to the nearest cent. (Use the exact answers from part **a** to help.)

11 Find the total surface area (TSA) of these right square-based pyramids.

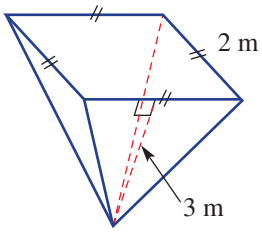
a



b



c

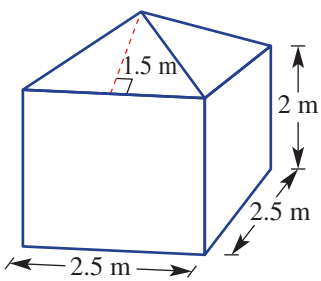


There is one square and four identical triangles.

Will I have enough paint?

— 12

12 I have 6 litres of paint and on the tin it says that the coverage is 5.5 m^2 per litre. I wish to paint the four outside walls of a shed and the roof, which has four identical triangular sections.
Will I have enough paint to complete the job?



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

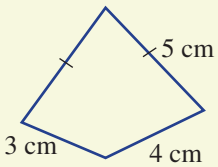
Progress quiz

1A **1** Convert the given measurements to the units shown in brackets.

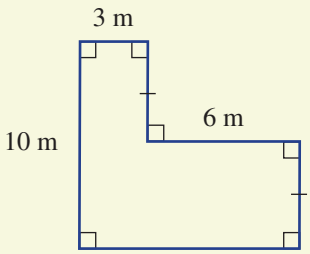
a 9 km (m) **b** 4.5 m^2 (cm^2) **c** 145 cm^3 (mm^3)

1B **2** Find the perimeter of these shapes.

a



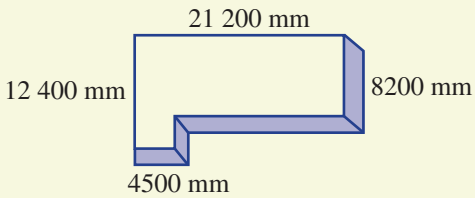
b



1B **3** For the concrete slab shown:

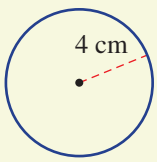
a Draw a new diagram, showing all the measurements in metres.

b Determine the lineal metres of timber needed to surround it.

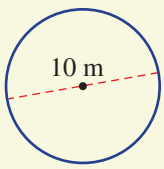


1C/E **4** Find the circumference (C) and area (A) of these circles, correct to two decimal places.

a

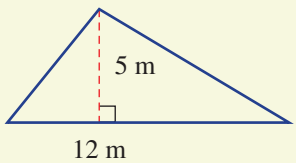


b

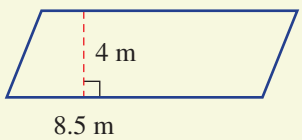


1D/E **5** Find the area of these shapes. Round your answer to one decimal place in part **d**.

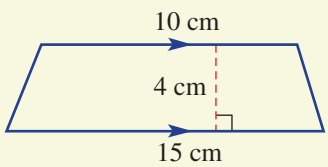
a



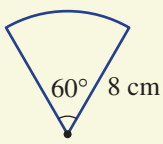
b



c



d



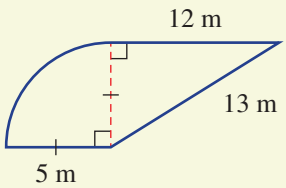
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

1D

6 A rectangular kitchen floor is to be replaced with wooden floorboards. If the floorboard costs $46 per square metre, determine the cost to cover the kitchen floor if its dimensions are 4.4 m by 3 m.

1C/E

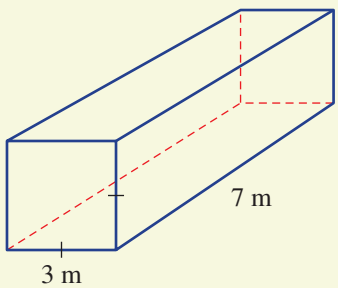
7 Find the area (A) and perimeter (P) of the composite shape shown. Round each answer to one decimal place.



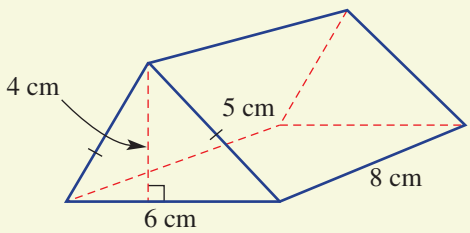
1F

8 Find the TSA of the following prisms. (Drawing a net may help you.)

a



b



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

1G Surface area of a cylinder

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

Like a prism, a cylinder has a uniform cross-section with identical circles as its two ends. The curved surface of a cylinder can be rolled out to form a rectangle that has a length equal to the circumference of the circle.

A can is a good example of a cylinder. We need to know the area of the ends and the curved surface area in order to cut sections from a sheet of aluminium to manufacture the can.

Let's start: Why $2\pi rh$?

We can see from the net of a cylinder (see the diagram below in Key ideas) that the total area of the two circular ends is $2 \times \pi r^2$ or $2\pi r^2$. For the curved part, though, consider the following.

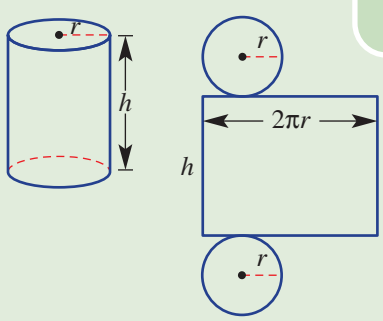
- Why can it be drawn as a rectangle? Can you explain this using a piece of paper?
- Why are the dimensions of this rectangle h and $2\pi r$?
- Where does the formula TSA = $2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$ come from?

Key ideas

■ A **cylinder** is a solid with a circular cross-section.

- The net contains two equal circles and a rectangle. The rectangle has one side length equal to the circumference of the circle.
- TSA = 2 circles + 1 rectangle
  $= 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$
- Another way of writing $2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$ is $2\pi r(r + h)$.

Diagram **Net**



Cylinder A solid with two parallel, congruent circular faces connected by a curved surface

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1G

Exercise 1G

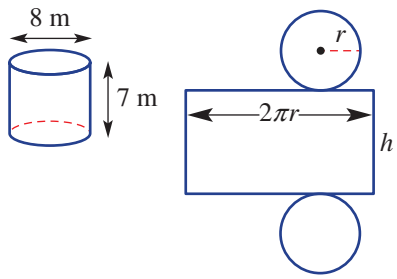
UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 2

1 Write the missing word/expression.

a The shape of the cross-section of a cylinder is a _____.

b The TSA of a cylinder is TSA = $2\pi r^2 +$ _____.

2 A cylinder and its net are shown here.



a What is the value of:

i r? **ii** h?

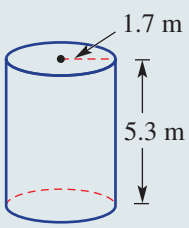
b Find the value of $2\pi r$, correct to two decimal places.

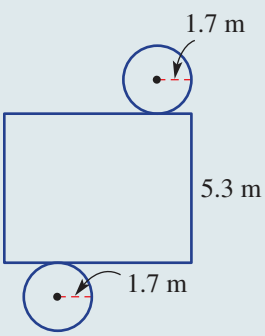
c Use TSA = $2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$ to find the total surface area, correct to two decimal places.

FLUENCY 3, 4 3–5

Example 16 Finding the surface area of a cylinder

By first drawing a net, find the total surface area of this cylinder, correct to two decimal places.

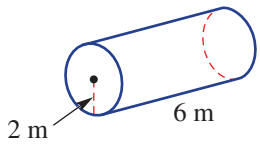


Solution	Explanation
	Draw the net and label the appropriate lengths.
TSA = 2 circles + 1 rectangle	Write what you need to calculate.
$= 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$	Write the formula.
$= 2\pi(1.7)^2 + 2\pi(1.7)(5.3)$	Substitute the correct values: $r = 1.7$ and $h = 5.3$.
$= 74.77\ \text{m}^2$ (to 2 d.p.)	Round your answer to two decimal places.

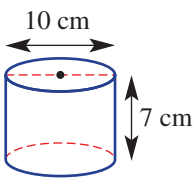
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 By first drawing a net, find the total surface area of these cylinders, to two decimal places.

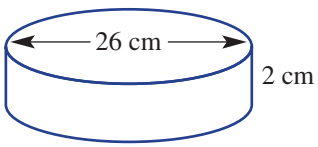
a



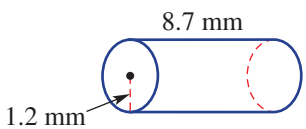
b



c



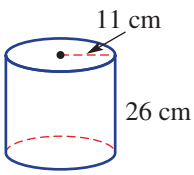
d



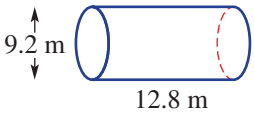
Remember that radius = diameter ÷ 2.

4 Use the formula TSA = $2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$ to find the total surface area of these cylinders, to one decimal place.

a

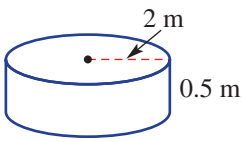


b

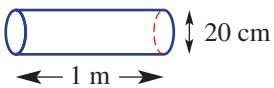


5 Find the area of only the curved surface of these cylinders, to one decimal place.

a



b



Find only the rectangular part of the net, so use $A = 2\pi rh$. Be careful with the units in part **b**!

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6, 7 6–9

6 Find the outside surface area of a pipe of radius 85 cm and length 4.5 m, to one decimal place. Give your answer in m^2.

7 The base and sides of a circular cake tin are to be lined on the inside with baking paper. The tin has a base diameter of 20 cm and is 5 cm high. What is the minimum amount of baking paper required, to one decimal place?

8 The inside and outside of an open-topped cylindrical concrete tank is to be coated with a special waterproofing paint. The tank has diameter 4 m and height 2 m. Find the total area to be coated with the paint. Round your answer to one decimal place.

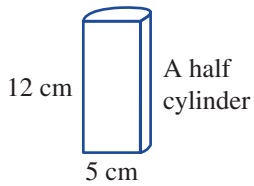
Include the base but not the top.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

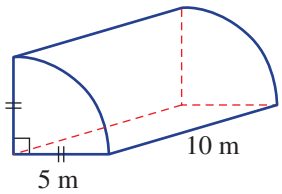
1G

9 Find the TSA of these cylindrical portions, to one decimal place.

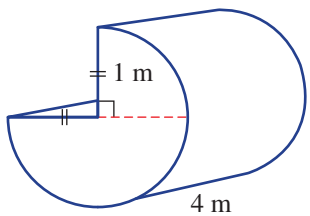
a



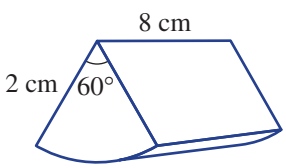
b



c



d



Carefully consider the fraction of a circle made up by the ends, and the fraction of a full cylinder made up by the curved part.

The steamroller — 10

10 A steamroller has a large, heavy cylindrical barrel that is 4 m wide and has a diameter of 2 m.

- **a** Find the area of the curved surface of the barrel, to two decimal places.
- **b** After 10 complete turns of the barrel, how much ground would be covered, to two decimal places?
- **c** Find the circumference of one end of the barrel, to two decimal places.
- **d** How many times would the barrel turn after 1 km of distance, to two decimal places?
- **e** What area of ground would be covered if the steamroller travels 1 km?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1H Volume of solids

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

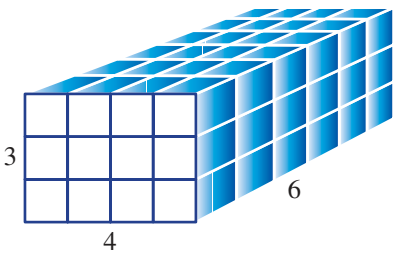
The volume of a solid is the amount of space it occupies within its outside surface. It is measured in cubic units.

For solids with a uniform cross-section, the area of the cross-section multiplied by the perpendicular height gives the volume. Consider the rectangular prism below.

Number of cubic units (base) = $4 \times 6 = 24$

Area (base) = $4 \times 6 = 24$ units^2

Volume = area (base) $\times$ 3 = $24 \times 3 = 72$ units^3

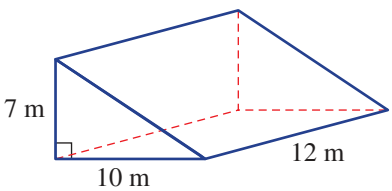


Knowing how to calculate volume is important in the shipping industry.

Let's start: Volume of a triangular prism

This prism has a triangular cross-section.

- What is the area of the cross-section?
- What is the 'height' of the prism?
- How can $V = A \times h$ be applied to this prism, where A is the area of the cross-section?

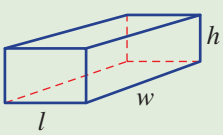


Key ideas

- The **volume** of a solid with a uniform cross-section is given by $V = A \times h$, where:
  - A is the area of the cross-section.
  - h is the perpendicular (at 90°) height.

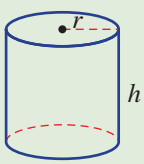
Volume
The amount of three-dimensional space within an object

Rectangular prism



$V = lwh$

Cylinder



$V = \pi r^2 h$

- Units for capacity include:
  - 1 L = 1000 mL
  - 1 cm^3 = 1 mL

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 1H

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Match the solid (**a**–**c**) with the volume formula (**A**–**C**).

a cylinder

b rectangular prism

c triangular prism

A $V = lwh$

B $V = \frac{1}{2}bh \times \text{length}$

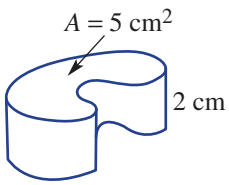
C $V = \pi r^2 h$

2 Write the missing number.

a There are _____ mL in 1 L.

b There are _____ cm^3 in 1 L.

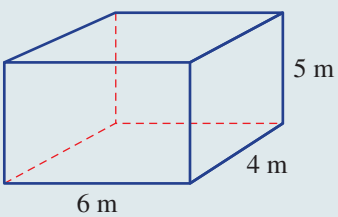
3 The area of the cross-section of this solid is given. Find the solid's volume, using $V = A \times h$.



FLUENCY 4–6 | 4–7

Example 17 Finding the volume of a rectangular prism

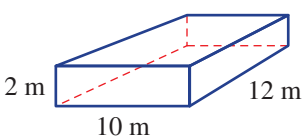
Find the volume of this rectangular prism.



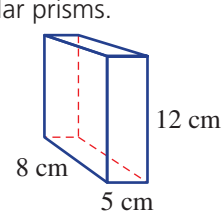
Solution	Explanation
$V = A \times h$	Write the general formula.
$= 6 \times 4 \times 5$	$A = 6 \times 4$ and $h = 5$.
$= 120\ m^3$	Simplify and include units.

4 Find the volume of these rectangular prisms.

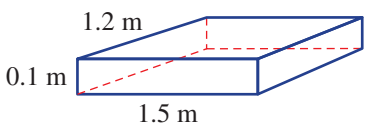
a

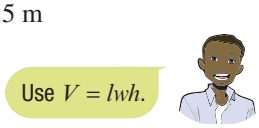


b



c

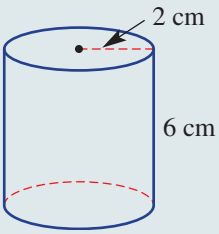




Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 18 Finding the volume of a cylinder

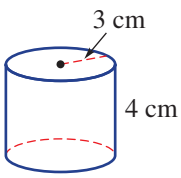
Find the volume of this cylinder, correct to two decimal places.



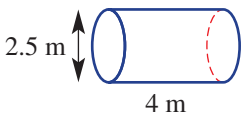
Solution	Explanation
$V = A \times h$	Write the general formula.
$= \pi r^2 \times h$	The cross-section is a circle.
$= \pi(2)^2 \times 6$	Substitute $r = 2$ and $h = 4$.
$= 75.40\,\text{cm}^3$ (to 2 d.p.)	Simplify and write your answer as required, with units.

5 Find the volume of these cylinders, correct to two decimal places.

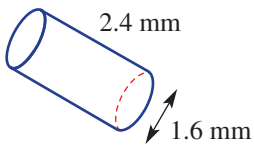
a



b



c

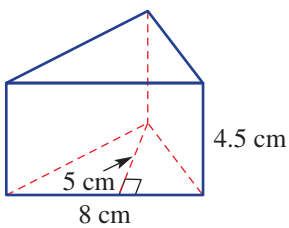


For a cylinder:
$V = \pi r^2 \times h$

6 A triangle with base 8 cm and height 5 cm forms the base of a prism, as shown. If the prism stands 4.5 cm high, find:

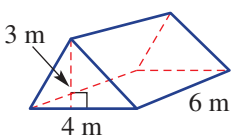
a the area of the triangular base

b the volume of the prism

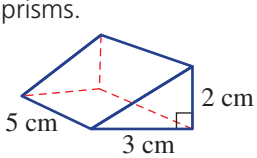


7 Find the volume of these triangular prisms.

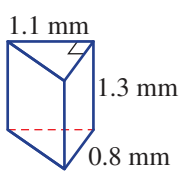
a



b



c



Use $V = A \times h$, where A is the area of a triangle.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

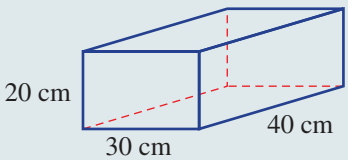
1H

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–10 9–12

8 A cylindrical drum stands on one end with a diameter of 25 cm and water is filled to a height of 12 cm. Find the volume of water in the drum, in cm^3, correct to two decimal places.

Example 19 Working with capacity

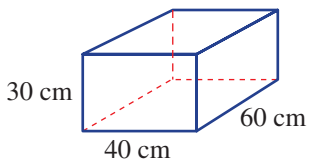
Find the number of litres of water that this container can hold.



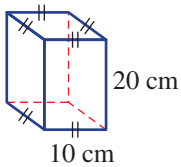
Solution	Explanation
$V = 30 \times 40 \times 20$	First work out the volume in cm^3.
$= 24\,000\ cm^3$	Then divide by 1000 to convert to litres, since $1\ cm^3 = 1$ mL
$= 24$ L	and there are 1000 mL in 1 litre.

9 Find the number of litres of water that these containers can hold.

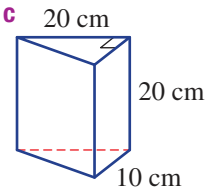
a



b



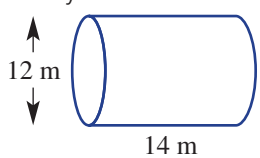
c



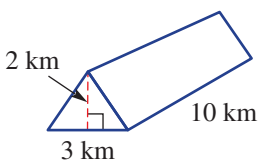
Use 1L = 1000 cm^3.

10 Find the volume of these solids, rounding your answers to two decimal places where necessary.

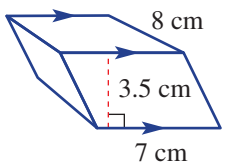
a



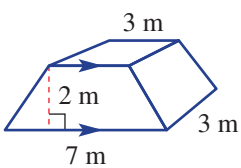
b



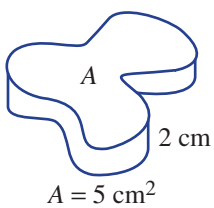
c



d

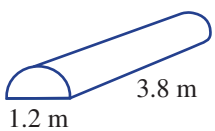


e



$A = 5\ cm^2$

f



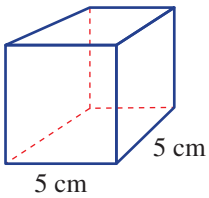
Find the area of the cross-section first.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

11 $100\,\text{cm}^3$ of water is to be poured into this container.

a Find the area of the base of the container.

b Find the depth of water in the container.



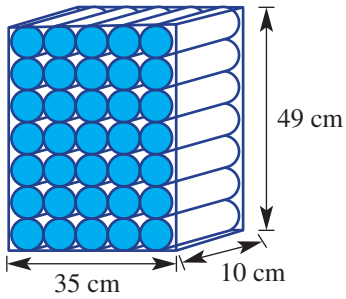
12 In a scientific experiment, solid cylinders of ice are removed from a solid block carved out of a glacier. The ice cylinders have diameter 7 cm and length 10 cm. The dimensions of the solid block are shown in the diagram.

a Find the volume of ice in the original ice block.

b Find the volume of ice in one ice cylinder, to two decimal places.

c Find the number of ice cylinders that can be removed from the ice block, using the configuration shown.

d Find the volume of ice remaining after the ice cylinders are removed from the block, to two decimal places.



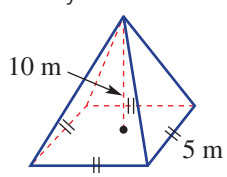
Volume of pyramids and cones

13

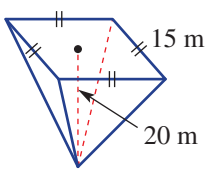
13 The volume of a pyramid or cone is exactly one-third the volume of the prism with the same base area and height; i.e. $V = \frac{1}{3} \times A \times h$.

Find the volume of these pyramids and cones. Round your answer to one decimal place where necessary.

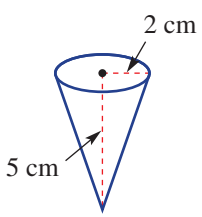
a



b



c



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1I Accuracy of measuring instruments

Humans and machines measure many different things, such as the time taken to swim a race, a length of timber needed for a building and the volume of cement needed to lay a concrete path around a swimming pool. The degree or level of accuracy required usually depends on what is being measured and what the information is being used for.

All measurements are approximate. Errors can come from the equipment being used or the person using the measuring device.

Accuracy is the measure of how true to the 'real' the measure is, whereas **precision** is the ability to obtain the same result over and over again.

Let's start: Rounding a decimal

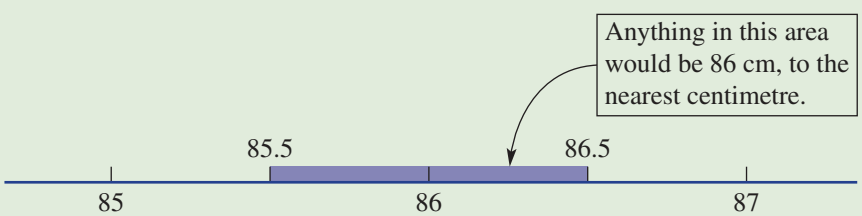
1 A piece of timber is measured to be 86 cm, correct to the nearest centimetre. What is the smallest decimal that it could be rounded from and what is the largest decimal that, when rounded to the nearest whole, is recorded as 86 cm?

2 If a measurement is recorded as 6.0 cm, correct to the nearest millimetre, then:
- **a** What units were used when measuring?
- **b** What is the smallest decimal that could be rounded to this value?
- **c** What is the largest decimal that would have resulted in 6.0 cm?

3 Consider a square with sides given as 7.8941 km each.
- **a** What is the perimeter of the square if the side length is:
  - **i** left unchanged with four decimal places?
  - **ii** rounded to one decimal place?
  - **iii** truncated (i.e. chopped off) at one decimal place?
- **b** What is the difference between the perimeters if the decimal is rounded to two decimal places or truncated at two decimal places or written with two significant figures?

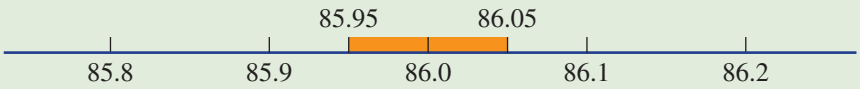
Key ideas

- The limits of accuracy tell you what the upper and lower boundaries are for the true measurement.
  - Usually, it is $\pm 0.5 \times$ the smallest unit of measurement.
  - Note that values are stated to 1 decimal place beyond that of the given measurement. For example, when measuring to the nearest centimetre, 86 cm has limits from 85.5 cm up to 86.5 cm.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

■ When measuring to the nearest millimetre, the limits of accuracy for 86.0 cm are 85.95 cm to 86.05 cm



Exercise 1I

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Write down a decimal that, when rounded from two decimal places, gives 3.4.

2 Write down a measurement of 3467 mm, correct to the nearest:
a centimetre **b** metre

3 What is the smallest decimal that, when rounded to one decimal place, could result in an answer of 6.7?

FLUENCY 4, 5 | 4, 5

Example 20 Stating the smallest unit of measurement

For each of the following, write down the smallest unit of measurement.
a 89.8 cm **b** 56.85 m

Solution	Explanation
a 0.1 cm or 1 mm	The measurement is given to one decimal place. That means the smallest unit of measurement is tenths.
b 0.01 m or 1 cm	This measurement is given to two decimal places. Therefore, the smallest unit of measurement is hundredths or 0.01.

4 For each of the following, state the smallest unit of measurement
a 45 cm **b** 6.8 mm **c** 12 m
d 15.6 kg **e** 56.8 g **f** 10 m
g 673 h **h** 9.84 m **i** 12.34 km

Example 21 Finding limits of accuracy

Give the limits of accuracy for these measurements.
a 72 cm **b** 86.6 mm

Solution	Explanation
a $72 \pm 0.5 \times 1$ cm $= 72 - 0.5$ cm to $72 + 0.5$ cm $= 71.5$ cm to 72.5 cm	Smallest unit of measurement is one whole cm. Error $= 0.5 \times 1$ cm This error is subtracted and added to the given measurement to find the limits of accuracy.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

11

b $86.6 \pm 0.5 \times 0.1$ mm
$= 86.6 \pm 0.05$ mm
$= 86.6 - 0.05$ mm to $86.6 + 0.05$ mm
$= 86.55$ mm to 86.65 mm

Smallest unit of measurement is 0.1 mm.
Error $= 0.5 \times 0.1$ mm
This error is subtracted and added to the given measurement to find the limits of accuracy.

5 Give the limits of accuracy for each of these measurements.

a 5 m	**b** 8 cm	**c** 78 mm
d 5 ns	**e** 2 km	**f** 34.2 cm
g 3.9 kg	**h** 19.4 kg	**i** 457.9 t
j 18.65 m	**k** 7.88 km	**l** 5.05 s

Give measurement $\pm 0.5 \times$ smallest unit of measurement.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING

6–8 | 6, 8–11

6 Write the following as a measurement, given that the lower and upper limits of the measurements are as follows.
a 29.5 m to 30.5 m
b 144.5 g to 145.5 g
c 4.55 km to 4.65 km

7 Martha writes down the length of her fabric as 150 cm. As Martha does not give her level of accuracy, give the limits of accuracy of her fabric if it was measured correct to the nearest:
a centimetre
b 10 centimetres
c millimetre

8 A length of copper pipe is given as 25 cm, correct to the nearest centimetre.
a What are the limits of accuracy for this measurement?
b If 10 pieces of pipe, each with a given length of 25 cm, are joined:
i What is the minimum length that it could be?
ii What is the maximum length that it could be?

Use upper and lower limits of accuracy for max and min lengths.

9 The sides of a square are recorded as 9.2 cm, correct to two significant figures.
a What is the minimum length that each side of this square could be?
b What is the maximum length that each side of this square could be?
c Find the upper and lower boundaries for this square's perimeter.

10 Johan measures the mass of an object to be 6 kg. Amy says the same object is 5.8 kg and Thomas gives his answer as 5.85 kg.
a Explain how all three people could have different answers for the same measurement.
b Write down the level of accuracy being used by each person.
c Are all their answers correct? Discuss.

11 Write down a sentence explaining the need to accurately measure items in our everyday lives and the accuracy that is needed for each of your examples. Give three examples of items that need to be measured correct to the nearest:
a kilometre **b** millimetre **c** millilitre **d** litre

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Practical measurement

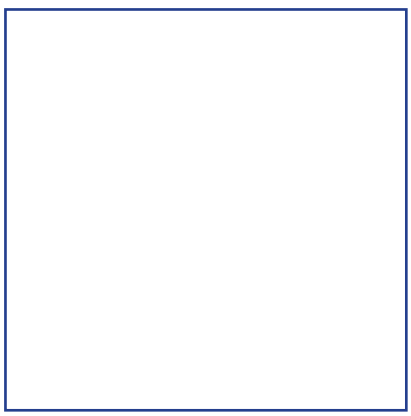
— 12

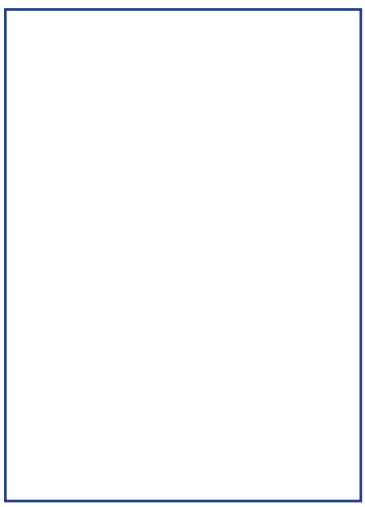
12 **a** Measure each of the shapes below, correct to the nearest:
i cm **ii** mm

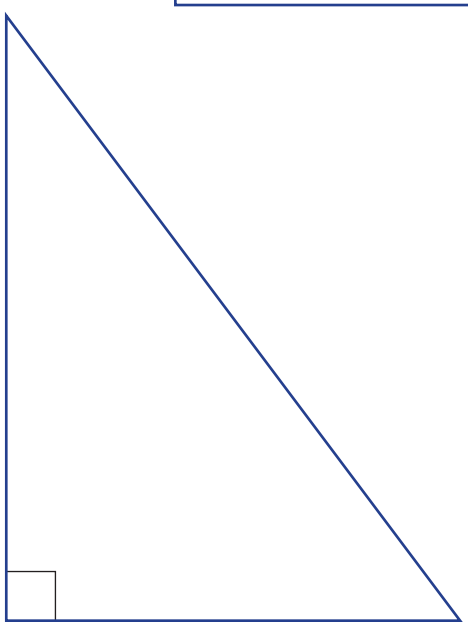
b Use your measurements to find the perimeter and area of each shape.

c After collating your classmates' measurements, find the average perimeter for each shape.

d By how much did the lowest and highest perimeters vary? How can this difference be explained?







Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Maths@Work: Bricklayer

A bricklayer has a physically challenging job that requires stamina and strength and also good communication skills, as they often work as part of a team.

Bricklayers must have a solid understanding of how the construction process works and the ability to read plans and blueprints.

Mathematical skills are essential in this trade. Bricklayers must understand ratios for mixing mortar and cement. Good measurement skills are also important, as bricklayers must be able to work out the number of bricks required for a job, convert between different units and take accurate measurements at the work site, using the most appropriate tool. An understanding of geometry and trigonometry is also required.

Complete these questions that a bricklayer may face in their day-to-day job.

1 A standard house brick has dimensions $l \times w \times h = 230$ mm $\times$ 76 mm $\times$ 110 mm and the standard thickness of mortar when laying bricks is 10 mm. The bricks are laid so that $l \times h$ is the outer face.

- **a** What is the length and height of each brick in centimetres and metres?
- **b** Determine the area in cm^2 and m^2 of the outer face of one brick.
- **c** Determine the volume in cubic centimetres of each brick.
- **d** Calculate the length, in metres (to two decimal places), when laying the following number of bricks in a line with mortar between each join.
  - **i** 10 bricks
  - **ii** 100 bricks
- **e** Calculate the height, in millimetres, of a wall of 25 rows of standard house bricks. Remember to consider the thickness of the mortar.
- **f** Estimate how many standard house bricks are needed to build a wall 4 m by 1.5 m, by dividing the area of the wall by the area of a brick's face.

$A = l \times w$
$V = l \times w \times h$

For 10 bricks, there would be 9 mortar joins.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

2 Ready-mix mortar comes in 20 kg bags that cost $7.95 per bag. One bag of mortar is used to lay 20 standard house bricks.
Using standard house bricks (see dimension details in Question **1**), a brick wall is to be built that has a finished length of 8630 mm, a height of 2750 mm and is one brick deep.

a Calculate the exact number of standard house bricks needed to build this wall. Remember to consider the thickness of the mortar.

b How many Ready-mix mortar bags must be purchased for this wall?

c If each house brick costs 60 cents, find the total cost, to the nearest dollar, of the materials needed for this wall.

3 A type of large brick is chosen for an outside retaining wall. These bricks are sold only in whole packs and each pack covers 12.5 square metres when laid. How many whole packs of these bricks must be bought to build a wall with dimensions:

a 6 m by 1.5 m?

b 9 m by 2 m?

4 Fastwall house bricks are larger and lighter than standard bricks and can be used for single-storey constructions. They are sold in pallets of 1000 for $1258.21, including delivery and GST. Each Fastwall brick has dimensions $l \times w \times h = 305$ mm $\times$ 90 mm $\times$ 162 mm and the standard thickness of mortar is 10 mm.

a If a pallet has 125 bricks per layer, how many layers does each pallet have?

b If the wooden base of the pallet has a height of 30 cm, what is the total height of the pallet, in cm, when loaded with bricks?

c Find the exact number of bricks needed to build a wall that is 20.15 m long and 6.87 m high. Remember to consider the thickness of the mortar.

d Determine the cost of the bricks, to the nearest dollar, required to be bought for building the wall in part **c**.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Using technology

For E5 the formula would be
$= G5 \times A1 + (G5 - 1) \times 10$
For G6 the formula would be
$= (E6 + 10)/(230 + 10)$

5 Copy the following table into a spreadsheet. Then enter formulas into the shaded cells and, hence, determine the missing values.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I
1	**Brick Wall Calculations**								
2	Note: All dimensions are in mm								
3	Single brick dimensions			Mortar	Brick wall dimensions		Number of bricks used		
4	Length	Width	Height	Width	Length	Height	Per layer (row)	Number of layers	Total
5	230	76	110	10			24	18	
6	230	76	110	10	21350	6230			

6 Copy the following table into your spreadsheet underneath the table from Question **5**. Enter the formulas into the shaded cells and, hence, determine the missing values. Assume there are 1000 bricks per pallet and that one bag of mortar is used per 20 bricks laid.

Copy the total number of bricks used from the first table.

Cost calculations									
Bricks	Cost of pallets				Cost of mortar				
Number of bricks used	Decimal number of pallets	number of whole pallets	cost per pallet (including GST)	total cost of pallets	Decimal number of mortar bags	number of whole bags	cost per bag (including GST)	total cost of mortar	Total cost of mortar and pallets
			$1,358.24				$7.95		
			$1,541.56				$8.45		

In cell B13 enter = ROUNDUP (B12, 0), which will round the number from cell B12 up to the nearest whole number; e.g. 1.3 will be rounded up to 2.

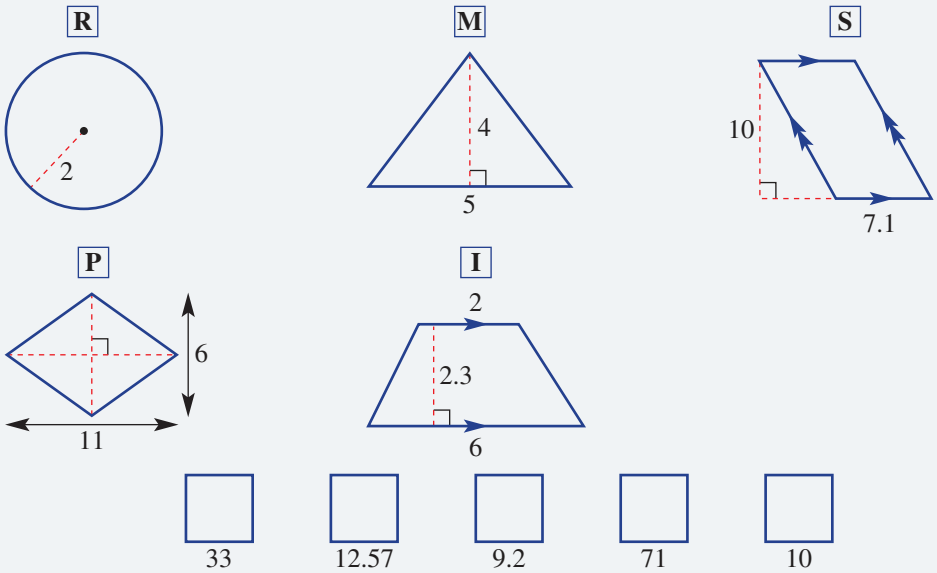
7 Use your spreadsheet tables to find the total cost of materials for the following brick walls made from Fastwall bricks. (See Question **4** for Fastwall brick dimensions.) The spreadsheet formulas will not need to be changed.

a A wall of 44 bricks per layer (row) and 30 layers (rows) if pallets cost $1258.36, including GST, and mortar is $7.55 per bag.

b A wall 20.15 m long by 7.73 m high if pallets cost $1364.32, including GST, and mortar is $9.25 per bag.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

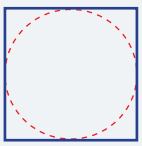
1 'I am the same shape all the way through. What am I?' Find the area of each shape. Match the letters to the answers below to solve the riddle.



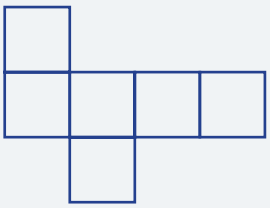
33 12.57 9.2 71 10

2 1 L of water is poured into a container in the shape of a rectangular prism. The dimensions of the prism are 8 cm by 12 cm by 11 cm. Will the water overflow?

3 A circular piece of pastry is removed from a square sheet with side length 30 cm. What percentage of pastry remains?

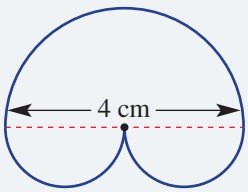


4 How many different nets are there for a cube? Do not count reflections or rotations of the same net. Here is one example:



5 Give the radius of a circle whose value for the circumference is equal to the value for the area.

6 Find the area of this special shape.



7 A cube's surface area is 54 cm^2. What is its volume?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter summary

Measurement

Conversion of units

km $\xrightarrow{\times 1000}$ m $\xrightarrow{\times 100}$ cm $\xrightarrow{\times 10}$ mm

km $\xleftarrow{\div 1000}$ m $\xleftarrow{\div 100}$ cm $\xleftarrow{\div 10}$ mm

$km^2 \xrightarrow{\times 1000^2} m^2 \xrightarrow{\times 100^2} cm^2 \xrightarrow{\times 10^2} mm^2$

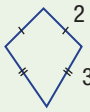
$km^2 \xleftarrow{\div 1000^2} m^2 \xleftarrow{\div 100^2} cm^2 \xleftarrow{\div 10^2} mm^2$

$km^3 \xrightarrow{\times 1000^3} m^3 \xrightarrow{\times 100^3} cm^3 \xrightarrow{\times 10^3} mm^3$

$km^3 \xleftarrow{\div 1000^3} m^3 \xleftarrow{\div 100^3} cm^3 \xleftarrow{\div 10^3} mm^3$

Perimeter

The distance around the outside of a shape.

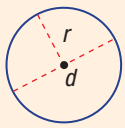


$P = 2 \times 2 + 2 \times 3$
$= 10$ cm

Circumference

The distance around the outside of a circle.

$C = 2\pi r$ or $C = \pi d$



Area of basic shapes

Square: $A = l^2$

Rectangle: $A = lw$

Triangle: $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$

Rhombus: $A = \frac{1}{2}xy$

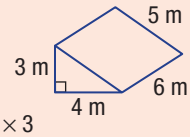
Parallelogram: $A = bh$

Trapezium: $A = \frac{1}{2}(a + b)h$

Total surface area

Draw a net and sum the surface areas.

Triangular prism

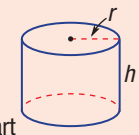


$TSA = 2 \times \frac{1}{2} \times 4 \times 3$
$+ 6 \times 4 + 6 \times 3 + 6 \times 5$
$= 84$ m^2

Cylinder ★

$TSA = 2\pi r^2 + 2\pi rh$

2 ends curved part



Area of a circle

$A = \pi r^2$
$= \pi \times 3^2$
$= 28.27$ m^2 (to 2 d.p.)

Volume

Rectangular prism $V = lwh$

Cylinder $V = \pi r^2 h$

Capacity: 1 L = 1000 mL

1 cm^3 = 1 mL

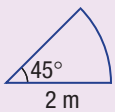
Accuracy ★

Accuracy depends on any error associated with the measuring instruments and how they are used.

Limits of accuracy are usually $\pm 0.5 \times$ the smallest unit.

Area of sectors

$A = \frac{45}{360} \times \pi r^2$
$= \frac{1}{8} \times \pi \times 2^2$
$= 1.57$ m^2 (to 2 d.p.)



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter review

Multiple-choice questions

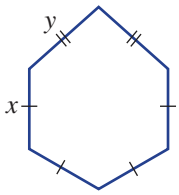
1A **1** The number of centimetres in a kilometre is:

A 10 **B** 100 **C** 1000 **D** 10 000 **E** 100 000

1B **2** The perimeter of a square with side lengths 2 cm is:

A 4 cm **B** 8 cm **C** 4 cm^2 **D** 8 cm^2 **E** 16 cm

1B **3** The perimeter of the shape shown is given by the formula:



A $x - y$ **B** $2x + y$ **C** $4x + 2y$
D $x - 2y$ **E** $4x + y$

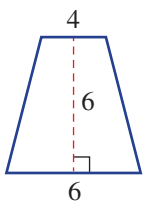
1C **4** A correct expression for determining the circumference of a circle with diameter 6 cm is:

A $\pi \times 6$ **B** $\pi \times 3$ **C** $2 \times \pi \times 6$ **D** 2×6 **E** $\pi \times 6^2$

1D **5** The area of a rectangle with side lengths 3 cm and 4 cm is:

A 12 cm^2 **B** 12 cm **C** 7 cm^2 **D** 14 cm **E** 14 cm^2

1D **6** The correct expression for calculating the area of this trapezium is:

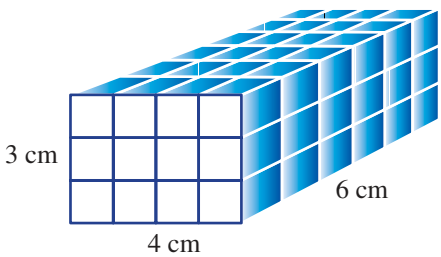


A $(6 - 4) \times 6$ **B** $\frac{1}{2}(6 + 4) \times 6$ **C** $\frac{1}{2} \times 6 \times 4$ **D** $6 \times 6 - 4$
E $6 \times 6 + 6 \times 4$

1E **7** A sector's centre angle measures 90°. This is equivalent to:

A $\frac{1}{5}$ of a circle **B** $\frac{1}{2}$ of a circle **C** $\frac{3}{4}$ of a circle **D** $\frac{2}{3}$ of a circle **E** $\frac{1}{4}$ of a circle

1H **8** The volume of the shape shown is:

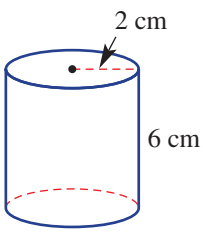


A 13 cm^3 **B** 27 cm^3
C 72 cm^2 **D** 72 cm^3
E 27 cm^2

1H **9** The volume of a cube of side length 3 cm is:

A 9 cm^3 **B** 27 cm^3 **C** 54 cm^2 **D** 54 cm^3 **E** 27 cm^2

1G **10** The curved surface area for this cylinder is closest to:



A 87.96 cm^2 **B** 12.57 cm^2
C 75.40 cm^2 **D** 75.39 cm^2
E 113.10 cm^2

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter review

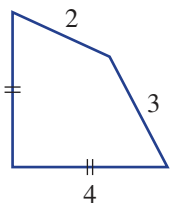
Short-answer questions

1A **1** Convert these measurements to the units shown in the brackets.

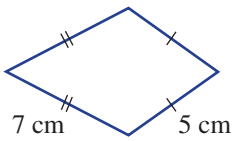
a 5.3 km (m) **b** 27 000 cm^2 (m^2) **c** 0.04 cm^3 (mm^3)

1B **2** Find the perimeter of these shapes.

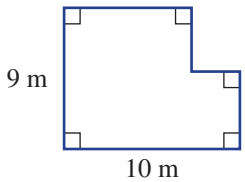
a



b

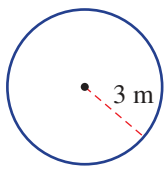


c



1C/E **3** For the circle shown, find, to two decimal places:

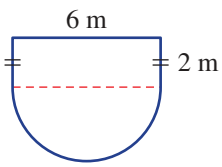
a the circumference **b** the area



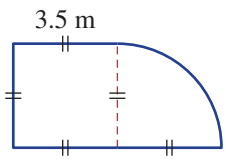
1E **4** For these composite shapes, find, to two decimal places:

i the perimeter **ii** the area

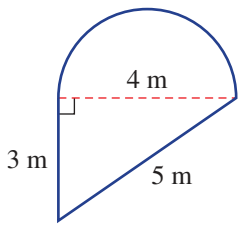
a



b

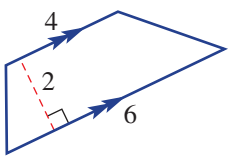


c

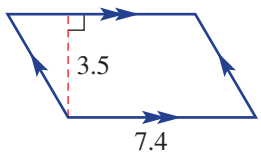


1D **5** Find the area of these shapes.

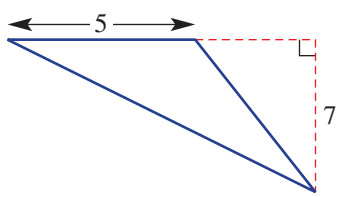
a



b

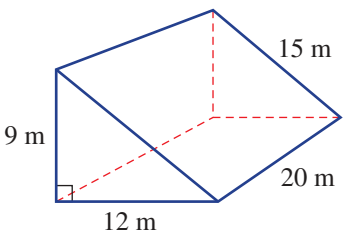


c

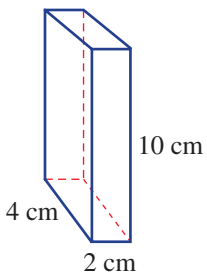


1F **6** Find the total surface area (TSA) of these prisms.

a



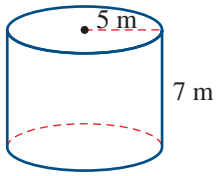
b



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1G

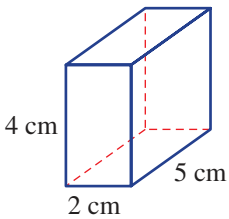
7 Determine the total surface area of this cylinder, to two decimal places.



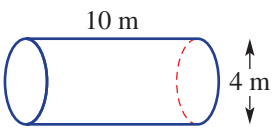
1H

8 Find the volume of these solids, to two decimal places where necessary.

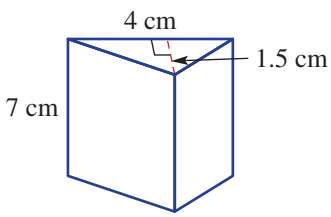
a



b



c



1I

9 Give the limits of accuracy for these measurements.

a 6 cm **b** 4.2 kg **c** 16.21 m

Extended-response question

1 A cylindrical tank has diameter 8 m and height 2 m.

a Find the surface area of the curved part of the tank, to two decimal places.

b Find the TSA, including the top and the base, to two decimal places.

c Find the total volume of the tank, to two decimal places.

d Find the total volume of the tank in litres, to two decimal places. Note: There are 1000 litres in $1\,m^3$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 2

Consumer arithmetic

What you will learn

2A Review of percentages (Consolidating)
2B Applications of percentages
2C Income
2D Income taxation ★
2E Budgeting
2F Simple interest
2G Compound interest
2H Investments and loans ★
2I Comparing interest using technology ★

Australian curriculum

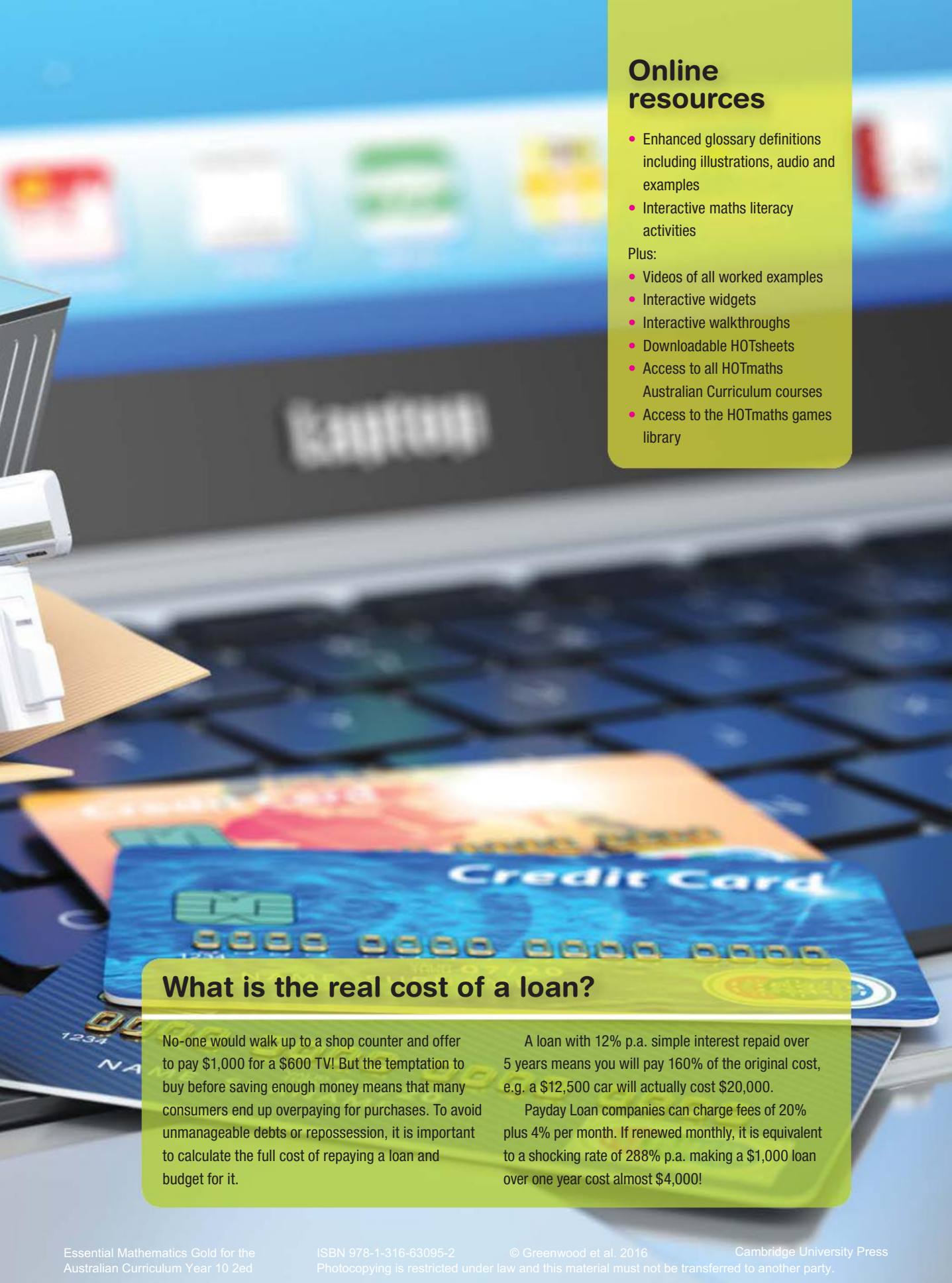
CONSUMER ARITHMETIC

Connect the **compound interest** formula to repeated applications of **simple interest** using appropriate digital technologies **(ACMNA229)**

Substitute values into formulas to determine an unknown **(ACMNA234)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.



Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

What is the real cost of a loan?

No-one would walk up to a shop counter and offer to pay $1,000 for a $600 TV! But the temptation to buy before saving enough money means that many consumers end up overpaying for purchases. To avoid unmanageable debts or repossession, it is important to calculate the full cost of repaying a loan and budget for it.

A loan with 12% p.a. simple interest repaid over 5 years means you will pay 160% of the original cost, e.g. a $12,500 car will actually cost $20,000.

Payday Loan companies can charge fees of 20% plus 4% per month. If renewed monthly, it is equivalent to a shocking rate of 288% p.a. making a $1,000 loan over one year cost almost $4,000!

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Pre-test

1 Find the following totals.

a $\$15.92 + \$27.50 + \$56.20$ **b** $\$134 + \$457 + \$1021$

c $\$457 \times 6$ **d** $\$56.34 \times 1\frac{1}{2}$

e $\$87\,560 \div 52$ (to the nearest cent)

2 Express the following fractions with denominators of 100.

a $\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{3}{4}$ **c** $\frac{1}{5}$ **d** $\frac{17}{25}$ **e** $\frac{9}{20}$

3 Write each of the following fractions as decimals.

a $\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{1}{4}$ **c** $\frac{1}{5}$ **d** $\frac{20}{50}$ **e** $\frac{1}{3}$

4 Round the following decimals to two decimal places.

a 16.7893 **b** 7.347 **c** 45.3444 **d** 6.8389 **e** 102.8999

5 Give the values of the pronumerals in the following table.

Gross income ($)	Deductions ($)	Net income ($)
4976	456.72	a
72 156	21 646.80	b
92 411	c	62 839
156 794	d	101 916
e	18 472.10	79 431.36

Net Income = gross income − deductions

6 Calculate the following annual incomes for each of these people.

a Tom: $1256 per week **b** Sally: $15 600 per month

c Anthony: $1911 per fortnight

d Crystal: $17.90 per hour, for 40 hours per week, for 50 weeks per year

7 Without a calculator, find:

a 10% of $400 **b** 5% of $5000 **c** 2% of $100

d 25% of $844 **e** 20% of $12.80 **f** 75% of $1000

8 Find the simple interest on the following amounts.

a $400 at 5% p.a. for 1 year

b $5000 at 6% p.a. for 1 year

c $800 at 4% p.a. for 2 years

Simple Interest $= \frac{Prt}{100}$

9 Complete the following table, giving the values of the pronumerals.

Cost price	Deduction	Sale price
$34	$16	a
$460	$137	b
$500	c	$236
d	$45	$67
e	$12.65	$45.27

10 The following amounts include the 10% GST. By dividing each one by 1.1, find the original costs before the GST was added to each.

a $55 **b** $61.60 **c** $605

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2A Review of percentages

CONSOLIDATING

It is important that we are able to work with percentages in our everyday lives. Banks, retailers and governments use percentages every day to work out fees and prices.

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

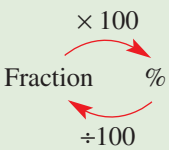
Let's start: Which option should Jamie choose?

Jamie currently earns $68 460 p.a. (per year) and is given a choice of two different pay rises. Which should she choose and why?

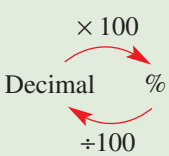
Choice A	Choice B
Increase of $25 a week	Increase of 2% on p.a. salary

Key ideas

- A **percentage** means 'out of 100'. It can be written using the symbol %, or as a fraction or a decimal.
  For example: 75 per cent = $75\% = \frac{75}{100}$ or $\frac{3}{4}$ or 0.75.
- To convert a fraction or a decimal to a percentage, multiply by 100.
- To convert a percentage to a fraction, write it with a **denominator** of 100 and simplify.
  $15\% = \frac{15}{100} = \frac{3}{20}$



- To convert a percentage to a decimal, divide by 100.
  $15\% = 15 \div 100 = 0.15$
- To find a percentage of a quantity, write the percentage as a fraction or a decimal, then multiply by the quantity; i.e. $x\%$ of $P = \frac{x}{100} \times P$.



Percentage A number expressed as a proportion of 100

Denominator The part of a fraction that sits below the dividing line

Exercise 2A

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Write equivalent fractions of the following, using denominators of 100.

a $\frac{2}{5}$ **b** $\frac{17}{20}$ **c** $\frac{49}{50}$ **d** $\frac{7}{25}$ **e** $\frac{9}{10}$

Make sure you have an equivalent fraction: $\frac{2}{5} = \frac{\square}{100}$.

2 Complete the following.

a $7\% = \frac{7}{\square}$ **b** $0.9 = \square\%$ **c** $\frac{3}{5} = \square\%$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

2A

3 Use mental strategies to find:

a 10% of $7.50 **b** 20% of $400 **c** 50% of $98
d 75% of $668 **e** 25% of $412 **f** 2% of $60
g 5% of $750 **h** $33\frac{1}{3}$% of $1200 **i** 30% of $15

$10\% = \frac{1}{10}$

$5\% = \frac{1}{20}$

FLUENCY 4–7(½) 4–8(½)

Example 1 Converting to a percentage

Write each of the following as a percentage.

a $\frac{19}{20}$ **b** $\frac{3}{8}$ **c** 0.07

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{19}{20} = \frac{95}{100}$ $= 95\%$	Write using a denominator of 100. Alternatively, multiply the fraction by 100. $\frac{19}{\cancel{20}_1} \times \frac{\cancel{100}^{5}}{1} = 19 \times 5 = 95$
b $\frac{\cancel{3}}{\cancel{8}_2} \times \frac{\cancel{100}^{25}}{1} = \frac{75}{2}$ $= 37.5$ So $\frac{3}{8} = 37.5\%$	Multiply the fraction by 100. Cancel common factors, then simplify.
c $0.07 \times 100 = 7$ So $0.07 = 7\%$	Multiply the decimal by 100. Move the decimal point two places to the right.

4 Convert each fraction to a percentage.

a $\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{1}{5}$ **c** $\frac{1}{4}$ **d** $\frac{1}{10}$
e $\frac{1}{100}$ **f** $\frac{7}{25}$ **g** $\frac{15}{50}$ **h** $\frac{3}{4}$
i $\frac{5}{8}$ **j** $\frac{19}{25}$ **k** $\frac{99}{100}$ **l** $\frac{47}{50}$

First write using a denominator of 100 or, alternatively, multiply by 100.

5 Write these decimals as percentages.

a 0.17 **b** 0.73 **c** 0.48 **d** 0.09
e 0.06 **f** 0.13 **g** 1.13 **h** 1.01
i 0.8 **j** 0.9 **k** 0.99 **l** 0.175

To multiply by 100, move the decimal point two places to the right.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 2 Writing percentages as simplified fractions

Write each of the following percentages as a simplified fraction.

a 37% **b** 58% **c** $6\frac{1}{2}\%$

Solution	Explanation
a $37\% = \frac{37}{100}$	Write the percentage with a denominator of 100.
b $58\% = \frac{58}{100}$	Write the percentage with a denominator of 100.
$= \frac{29}{50}$	Simplify $\frac{58}{100}$ by cancelling, using the HCF of 58 and 100, which is 2. $\frac{\cancel{58}^{29}}{\cancel{100}_{50}} = \frac{29}{50}$
c $6\frac{1}{2}\% = \frac{6\frac{1}{2}}{100}$	Write the percentage with a denominator of 100.
$= \frac{13}{200}$	Double the numerator $\left(6\frac{1}{2}\right)$ and the denominator (100) so that the numerator is a whole number.

6 Write each percentage as a simplified fraction.

a 71% **b** 80% **c** 25% **d** 55%

e 40% **f** 88% **g** 15% **h** $16\frac{1}{2}\%$

i $17\frac{1}{2}\%$ **j** $2\frac{1}{4}\%$ **k** $5\frac{1}{4}\%$ **l** $52\frac{1}{2}\%$

Write with a denominator of 100, then simplify if possible.

Example 3 Writing a percentage as a decimal

Convert these percentages to decimals.

a 93% **b** 7% **c** 30%

Solution	Explanation
a $93\% = 93 \div 100$	Divide the percentage by 100. This is the same as moving the decimal point two places to the left.
$= 0.93$	
b $7\% = 7 \div 100$	Divide the percentage by 100.
$= 0.07$	
c $30\% = 30 \div 100$	Divide the percentage by 100.
$= 0.3$	Write 0.30 as 0.3.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2A

7 Convert these percentages to decimals.

a	61%	**b**	83%	**c**	75%	**d**	45%	**e**	9%	**f**	90%
g	50%	**h**	16.5%	**i**	7.3%	**j**	200%	**k**	430%	**l**	0.5%

Example 4 Finding a percentage of a quantity

Find 42% of \$1800.

Solution	Explanation
42% of \$1800 $= 0.42 \times 1800$ $= \$756$	Remember that 'of' means to multiply. Write 42% as a decimal or a fraction: $42\% = \frac{42}{100} = 0.42$ Then multiply by the amount. If using a calculator, enter 0.42×1800. Without a calculator: $\frac{42}{\cancel{100}} \times 18\cancel{00} = 42 \times 18 = 756$

8 Use a calculator to find:

a	10% of \$250	**b**	50% of \$300	**c**	75% of \$80
d	12% of \$750	**e**	9% of \$240	**f**	43% of 800 grams
g	90% of \$56	**h**	110% of \$98	**i**	$17\frac{1}{2}$% of 2000 m

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9–11 11–14

9 A 300 g pie contains 15 g of saturated fat.

a What fraction of the pie is saturated fat?

b What percentage of the pie is saturated fat?

10 About 80% of the mass of a human body is water. If Hugo is 85 kg, how many kilograms of water are in his body?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

11 Rema spends 12% of the 6.6 hour school day in maths. How many minutes are spent in the maths classroom?

12 In a cricket match, Brett spent 35 minutes bowling.
His team's total fielding time was $3\frac{1}{2}$ hours.
What percentage of the fielding time, correct to two decimal places, did Brett spend bowling?

First convert hours to minutes, and then write a fraction comparing times.

13 Malcolm lost 8 kg, and now weighs 64 kg. What percentage of his original weight did he lose?

14 47.9% of a local council's budget is spent on garbage collection. If a rate payer pays $107.50 per quarter in total rate charges, how much do they contribute in a year to garbage collection?

Australia's statistics — 15

15 Below is the preliminary data on Australia's population growth, as gathered by the Australian Bureau of Statistics for June 2015.

	Population at end June quarter 2015 ('000)	Change over previous year ('000)	Change over previous year (%, one decimal place)
New South Wales	7618.2	104.3	
Victoria	5938.1	99.4	
Queensland	4779.4	58.4	
South Australia	1698.6	13.1	
Western Australia	2591.6	33.2	
Tasmania	516.6	1.9	
Northern Territory	244.6	0.9	
Australian Capital Territory	390.8	5.4	
Australia	23 781.2	317.1	

a Calculate the percentage change for each State and Territory shown using the previous year's population, and complete the table.

$$\%\ \text{Change} = \frac{\text{change}}{\text{population}} \times \frac{100}{1}$$

b What percentage of Australia's overall population, correct to one decimal place, is living in:
i NSW? **ii** Vic? **iii** WA?

c Use a spreadsheet to draw a pie chart (i.e. sector graph) showing the populations of the eight States and Territories in the table. What percentage of the total is represented by each State/Territory? Round your answer to the nearest per cent.

d In your pie chart for part **c**, what is the angle size of the sector representing Victoria?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2B Applications of percentages

There are many applications of percentages. Prices are often increased by a percentage to create a profit or decreased by a percentage when on sale.

When goods are purchased by a store, the cost to the owner is called the cost price. The price of the goods sold to the customer is called the selling price. This price will vary according to whether the store is having a sale or decides to make a certain percentage profit.

Let's start: Discounts

Discuss as a class:

- Which is better: 20% off or a $\$20$ discount?
- If a discount of 20% or $\$20$ resulted in the same price, what was the original price?
- Why are percentages used to show discounts, rather than a dollar amount?

Key ideas

- To increase by a given percentage, multiply by the sum of 100% and the given percentage.
  For example: To increase by 12%, multiply by 112% or 1.12.
- To decrease by a given percentage, multiply by 100% minus the given percentage.
  For example: To decrease by 20%, multiply by 80% or 0.8.
- Profits and discounts:
  - The normal price of the goods recommended by the manufacturer is called the retail price.
  - When there is a sale and the goods are priced less than the retail price, they are said to be **discounted**.
  - **Profit** = selling price − cost price
  - Percentage profit $= \frac{\text{profit}}{\text{cost price}} \times 100$
  - Percentage discount $= \frac{\text{discount}}{\text{cost price}} \times 100$

Discount An amount subtracted from a price

Profit The amount of money made by selling an item or service for more than its cost

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 2B

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

100% + 10% = 1.1
100% − 5% = 0.95

1 By what number do you multiply to increase an amount by:
a 10%? **b** 20%? **c** 50%? **d** 2%? **e** 18%?

2 By what number do you multiply to decrease an amount by:
a 5%? **b** 30%? **c** 15%? **d** 50%? **e** 17%?

3 Decide how much profit or loss is made in each of the following situations.

a	cost price = $15	selling price = $20
b	cost price = $17.50	selling price = $20
c	cost price = $250	selling price = $234
d	cost price = $147	selling price = $158
e	cost price = $3.40	selling price = $1.20

FLUENCY 4–6(½), 7–10 | 4–6(½), 7–12

Example 5 Increasing by a given percentage

Increase $370 by 8%.

Solution	Explanation
$370 × 1.08 = $399.60	100% + 8% = 108% Write 108% as a decimal (or fraction) and multiply by the amount. Show two decimal places to represent the cents.

4 **a** Increase $90 by 5%. **b** Increase $400 by 10%.
c Increase $55 by 20%. **d** Increase $490 by 8%.
e Increase $50 by 12%. **f** Increase $7000 by 3%.
g Increase $49.50 by 14%. **h** Increase $1.50 by 140%.

To increase by 5%, multiply by 100% + 5% = 1.05.

Example 6 Decreasing by a given percentage

Decrease $8900 by 7%.

Solution	Explanation
$8900 × 0.93 = $8277.00	100% − 7% = 93% Write 93% as a decimal (or fraction) and multiply by the amount. Remember to put the units in your answer.

5 **a** Decrease $1500 by 5%. **b** Decrease $400 by 10%.
c Decrease $470 by 20%. **d** Decrease $80 by 15%.
e Decrease $550 by 25%. **f** Decrease $49.50 by 5%.
g Decrease $119.50 by 15%. **h** Decrease $47.10 by 24%.

To decrease by 5%, multiply by 100% − 5% = 0.95.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2B

Example 7 Calculating profit and percentage profit

The cost price for a new car is $24 780 and it is sold for $27 600.

a Calculate the profit.

b Calculate the percentage profit, to two decimal places.

Solution	Explanation
a Profit = selling price − cost price	Write the rule.
$= \$27\,600 - \$24\,780$	Substitute the values and evaluate.
$= \$2820$	
b Percentage profit $= \frac{\text{profit}}{\text{cost price}} \times 100$	Write the rule.
$= \frac{2820}{24\,780} \times 100$	Substitute the values and evaluate.
$= 11.38\%$	Round your answer as instructed.

6 Copy and complete the table on profits and percentage profit.

	Cost price	Selling price	Profit	Percentage profit
a	$10	$16		
b	$240	$300		
c	$15	$18		
d	$250	$257.50		
e	$3100	$5425		
f	$5.50	$6.49		

Percentage profit $= \frac{\text{profit}}{\text{cost price}} \times 100$

Example 8 Finding the selling price

A retailer buys some calico material for $43.60 a roll. He wishes to make a 35% profit.

a What will be the selling price per roll?

b If he sells 13 rolls, what profit will he make?

Solution	Explanation
a Selling price = 135% of $43.60	For a 35% profit the unit price is 135%.
$= 1.35 \times \$43.60$	Write 135% as a decimal (1.35) and evaluate.
$= \$58.86$ per roll	
b Profit per roll $= \$58.86 - \$43.60$	
$= \$15.26$	Selling price − cost price
Total profit $= \$15.26 \times 13$	There are 13 rolls at $15.26 profit per roll.
$= \$198.38$	

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7 A retailer buys some christmas snow globes for $41.80 each. She wishes to make a 25% profit.

a What will be the selling price per snow globe?

b If she sells a box of 25 snow globes, what profit will she make?

8 Ski jackets are delivered to a shop in packs of 50 for $3500. If the shop owner wishes to make a 35% profit:

a What will be the total profit made on a pack?

b What is the profit on each jacket?

9 A second-hand car dealer bought a trade-in car for $1200 and wishes to resell it for a 28% profit. What is the resale price?

Example 9 Finding the discounted price

A shirt worth $25 is discounted by 15%.

a What is the selling price?

b How much is the saving?

Solution	Explanation
a Selling price = 85% of $25	15% discount means there must be 85% left (100% − 15%).
$= 0.85 \times \$25$	Convert 85% to 0.85 and multiply by the amount.
$= \$21.25$	
b Saving = 15% of $25	You save 15% of the original price.
$= 0.15 \times \$25$	Convert 15% to 0.15 and multiply by the original price.
$= \$3.75$	
or saving = $25 − $21.25	Saving = original price − discounted price
$= \$3.75$	

10 Samantha buys a wetsuit from the sports store where she works. Its original price was $79.95. If employees receive a 15% discount:

a What is the selling price?

b How much will Samantha save?

11 A travel agent offers a 12.5% discount on airfares if you travel during May or June.
If the normal fare to London (return trip) is $2446:

a What is the selling price?

b How much is the saving?

12 A store sells second-hand goods at 40% off the recommended retail price. For a lawn mower valued at $369:

a What is the selling price?

b How much would you save?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2B

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 13–15 14–17

13 A pair of sports shoes is discounted by 47%. If the recommended price was $179:
- **a** What is the amount of the discount?
- **b** What will be the discounted price?

14 Jeans are priced at a May sale for $89. If this is a saving of 15% off the selling price, what do the jeans normally sell for?

85% of amount = $89
Find 1% then × 100 to find 100%.

15 Discounted tyres are reduced in price by 35%. They now sell for $69 each. Determine:
- **a** the normal price of one tyre
- **b** the saving if you buy one tyre

16 The local shop purchases a carton of containers for $54. Each container is sold for $4. If the carton had 30 containers, determine:
- **a** the profit per container
- **b** the percentage profit per container, to two decimal places
- **c** the overall profit per carton
- **d** the overall percentage profit, to two decimal places

17 A retailer buys a book for $50 and wants to sell it for a 26% profit. The 10% GST must then be added onto the cost of the book.
- **a** Calculate the profit on the book.
- **b** How much GST is added to the cost of the book?
- **c** What is the advertised price of the book, including the GST?
- **d** Find the overall percentage increase of the final selling price compared to the $50 cost price.

$$\%\ \text{Increase} = \frac{\text{increase}}{\text{cost price}} \times 100$$

Building a gazebo

— 18

18 Christopher designs a gazebo for a new house. He buys the timber from a retailer, who sources it at wholesale price and then marks it up before selling to Christopher at retail price. The table below shows the wholesale prices as well as the mark-up for each type of timber.
- **a** Determine Christopher's overall cost for the material, including the mark-up.
- **b** Determine the profit made by the retailer.
- **c** Determine the retailer's overall percentage profit, to two decimal places.
- **d** If the retailer pays 27% of his profits in tax, how much tax does he pay on this sale?

Quantity	Description	Cost/unit	Mark-up
6	Treated pine posts	$23	20%
11	300 × 50 oregon beams	$75	10%
5	Sheet lattice work	$86	15%
2	300 × 25 oregon fascias	$46	12%
8	Laserlite sheets	$32	10%

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2C Income

You may have earned money for baby-sitting or delivering newspapers or have a part-time job. As you move into the workforce it is important that you understand how you are paid.

Let's start: Who earns what?

As a class, discuss the different types of jobs held by different members of each person's family, and discuss how they are paid.

- What are the different ways that people can be paid?
- What does it mean when you work fewer than full-time hours?
- What does it mean when you work longer than full-time hours?

What other types of income can people in the class think of?

Key ideas

Methods of payment

- Hourly **wages**: You are paid a certain amount per hour worked.
- **Commission**: You are paid a percentage of the total amount of sales.
- **Salary**: You are paid a set amount per year, regardless of how many hours you work.
- **Fees**: You are paid according to the charges you set; e.g. doctors, lawyers, contractors.
- Some terms you should be familiar with include:
  - **Gross income**: the total amount of money you earn before taxes and other deductions
  - **Deductions**: money taken from your income before you are paid; e.g. taxation, union fees, superannuation
  - **Net income**: the amount of money you actually receive after the deductions are taken from your gross income

$$\text{Net income} = \text{gross income} - \text{deductions}$$

Payments by hourly rate

- If you are paid by the hour you will be paid an amount per hour for your normal working time. If you work overtime, the rates may be different.
  Usually, normal working time is 38 hours per week.
  Normal: $1.0 \times$ normal rate
  Time and a half: $1.5 \times$ normal rate
  Double time: $2.0 \times$ normal rate

Wages Earnings paid to an employee based on an hourly rate

Commission Earnings of a salesperson based on a percentage of the value of goods or services sold

Salary An employee's fixed agreed yearly income

Gross income Total income before any deductions (e.g. income tax) are made

Deductions Amounts of money taken from gross income

Net income Income remaining after deductions have been made from gross income

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- If you work shift work the hourly rates may differ from shift to shift.
  For example:

6 a.m.–2 p.m.	$24.00/hour	(regular rate)
2 p.m.–10 p.m.	$27.30/hour	(afternoon shift rate)
10 p.m.–6 a.m.	$36.80/hour	(night shift rate)

Exercise 2C

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 If Tao earns $570 for 38 hours' work, calculate his:
   - **a** hourly rate of pay
   - **b** time-and-a-half rate, using your answer from part **a**
   - **c** double-time rate, using your answer from part **a**
   - **d** annual income, given that he works 52 weeks a year, 38 hours a week

'Annual' means yearly.

2 Which is more: $5600 a month or $67 000 a year?

1 year = 12 months

3 Callum earns $1090 a week and has annual deductions of $19 838. What is Callum's net income for the year? Assume 52 weeks in a year.

Net = total − deductions

FLUENCY 4–7 | 4–8

Example 10 Finding gross and net income (including overtime)

Pauline is paid $13.20 per hour at the local stockyard to muck out the stalls. Her normal hours of work are 38 hours per week. She receives time and a half for the next 4 hours worked and double time after that.

a What will be her gross income if she works 50 hours?

b If she pays $220 per week in taxation and $4.75 in union fees, what will be her weekly net income?

Solution	Explanation
a Gross income $= 38 \times \$13.20$	Normal 38 hours
$+ 4 \times 1.5 \times \$13.20$	Overtime rate for next 4 hours: time and a half $= 1.5 \times$ normal
$+ 8 \times 2 \times \$13.20$	
$= \$792$	Overtime rate for next 8 hours: double time $= 2 \times$ normal
b Net income $= \$792 - (\$220 + \$4.75)$	Net income = gross income − deductions
$= \$567.25$	

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 Copy and complete this table.

	Hourly rate	Normal hours worked	Time and a half hours	Double time hours	Gross income	Deductions	Net income
a	$15	38	0	0		$155	
b	$24	38	2	0		$220	
c	$13.15	38	4	1		$300	
d	$70	40	2	3		$510	
e	$17.55	35	4	6		$184	

Example 11 Calculating shift work

Michael is a shift worker and is paid $31.80 per hour for the morning shift, $37.02 per hour for the afternoon shift and $50.34 per hour for the night shift. Each shift is 8 hours. In a given fortnight he works four morning, two afternoon and three night shifts. Calculate his gross income.

Solution	Explanation
Gross income $= 4 \times 31.80 \times 8$	4 morning shifts at $31.80 per hour for 8 hours
$+ 2 \times 37.02 \times 8$	2 afternoon shifts at $37.02 per hour
$+ 3 \times 50.34 \times 8$	3 night shifts at $50.34 per hour
$= \$2818.08$	Gross income because tax has not been paid.

5 Greg works shifts at a processing plant. In a given rostered fortnight he works:

- 3 day shifts ($31.80 per hour)
- 4 afternoon shifts ($37.02 per hour)
- 4 night shifts ($50.34 per hour).

A fortnight = 2 weeks

a If each shift is 8 hours long, determine Greg's gross income for the fortnight.

b If the answer to part **a** is Greg's average fortnightly income, what will be his gross income for a year (i.e. 52 weeks)?

c If Greg is to be paid monthly, what will be his gross income for a month?

Many hospital workers work shift work.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2C

Example 12 Calculating income involving commission

Jeff sells memberships to a gym and receives $225 per week plus 5.5% commission on his sales. Calculate his gross income after a 5-day week.

Day	1	2	3	4	5
Sales ($)	680	450	925	1200	1375

Solution	Explanation
Total sales = $4630	Determine the total sales: 680 + 450 + 925 + 1200 + 1375.
Commission = 5.5% of $4630 = 0.055 × $4630 = $254.65	Determine the commission on the total sales at 5.5% by multiplying 0.055 by the total sales.
Gross income = $225 + $254.65 = $479.65	Gross income is $225 plus commission.

6 A car salesman earns $5000 a month plus 3.5% commission on all sales. In the month of January his sales total was $56 000. Calculate:
- **a** his commission for January
- **b** his gross income for January

7 A real estate agent receives 2.75% commission on the sale of a house valued at $1 250 000. Find the commission earned.

8 Sarah earns an annual salary of $77 000 plus 2% commission on all sales. Find:
- **a** her weekly base salary before sales
- **b** her commission for a week when her sales totalled $7500
- **c** her gross weekly income for the week in part **b**
- **d** her annual gross income if over the year her sales totalled $571 250

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9–10 9–11

9 If Simone receives $10 000 on the sale of a property worth $800 000, calculate her rate of commission.

10 Jonah earns a commission on his sales of fashion items. For goods to the value of $2000 he receives 6% and for sales over $2000 he receives 9% on the amount in excess of $2000. In a given week he sold $4730 worth of goods. Find the commission earned.

11 William earns 1.75% commission on all sales at the electrical goods store where he works. If William earns $35 in commission on the sale of one television, how much did the TV sell for?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Elmo's payslip

— 12

12 Refer to the payslip below to answer the following questions.

Kuger Incorporated			
Employee ID: 75403A			Page: 1
Name: Elmo Rodriguez			Pay Period: 21/05/2016
Pay Method: EFT		Tax Status: Gen Exempt	
Bank account name: E. Rodriguez			
Bank: Mathsville Credit Union			
BSB: 102-196 Account No: 00754031			
Payment Details this pay:			
Amount	Days	Payment Description	Rate/Frequency
2 777.15	14.00	Normal time	$72 454/annum
Before tax deductions:			
This pay		Description	
170		Salary sacrifice: car pre-tax deduction	
Miscellaneous deductions:			
This pay		Description	
52.90		Health fund	
23.10		Union fees	
76.00			
Reconciliation details:	YTD	Description	
This pay	62 571.60	Taxable gross pay	
2 607.15	14 784.00	less income tax	
	1 824.00	less miscellaneous deductions	
616.00	45 693.60		
76.00			
1 915.15			

a Which company does Elmo work for?

b What is the name of Elmo's bank and what is his account number?

c How much gross pay does Elmo earn in 1 year?

d How often does Elmo get paid?

e How much, per year, does Elmo salary sacrifice?

f How much is Elmo's health fund contribution each week?

g Calculate 1 year's union fees.

h Using the information on this payslip, calculate Elmo's annual tax and also his annual net income.

i If Elmo works Monday to Friday from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m. each day for an entire year, calculate his effective hourly rate of pay. Use Elmo's fortnightly payment as a starting point.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2D Income taxation

It has been said that there are only two sure things in life: death and taxes! The Australian Taxation Office (ATO) collects taxes on behalf of the government to pay for education, hospitals, roads, railways, airports and services, such as the police and fire brigades.

In Australia, the financial year runs from July 1 to June 30 the following year. People engaged in paid employment are normally paid weekly or fortnightly. Most of them pay some income tax every time they are paid for their work. This is known as the Pay-As-You-Go system (PAYG).

At the end of the financial year (June 30), people who earned an income complete an income tax return to determine if they have paid the correct amount of income tax during the year.
If they paid too much, they will receive a refund. If they did not pay enough, they will be required to pay more.

The Australian tax system is very complex and the laws change frequently. This section covers the main aspects only.

Let's start: The ATO website

The Australian Taxation Office website has some income tax calculators. Use one to find out how much income tax you would need to pay if your taxable income is:

$5200 per annum (i.e. $100 per week)

$10 400 per annum (i.e. $200 per week)

$15 600 per annum (i.e. $300 per week)

$20 800 per annum (i.e. $400 per week)

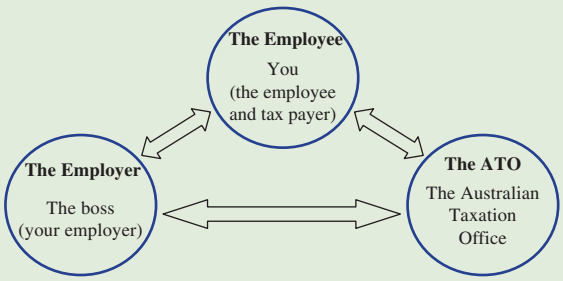
$26 000 per annum (i.e. $500 per week)

Does a person earning $1000 per week pay twice as much tax as a person earning $500 per week?

Does a person earning $2000 per week pay twice as much tax as a person earning $1000 per week?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas



- The PAYG tax system works in the following way.
  - The employee works for and gets paid by the employer every week, fortnight or month.
  - The employer calculates the tax that the employee should pay for the amount earned by the employee.
  - The employer sends that tax to the ATO every time the employee gets paid.
  - The ATO passes the income tax to the federal government.
  - On June 30, the employer gives the employee a payment summary to confirm the amount of tax that has been paid to the ATO on behalf of the employee.
  - Between July 1 and October 31, the employee completes a **tax return** and sends it to the ATO. Some people pay a registered tax agent to do this return for them.
  - On this tax return, the employee lists the following.
    - *All* forms of income, including interest from investments.
    - Legitimate deductions shown on receipts and invoices, such as work-related expenses and donations.
  - **Taxable income** is calculated using the formula:
    Taxable income = gross income − deductions
  - There are tables and calculators on the ATO website, such as the following.

Tax return The forms sent to the ATO which declare income and deductions

Taxable income Income to be taxed after deductions are subtracted

Taxable income	Tax on this income
0 − $18 200	Nil
$18 201 − $37 000	19c for each $1 over $18 200
$37 001 − $80 000	$3572 plus 32.5c for each $1 over $37 000
$80 001 − $180 000	$17 547 plus 37c for each $1 over $80 000
$180 001 and over	$54 547 plus 45c for each $1 over $180 000

This table can be used to calculate the amount of tax you *should have* paid (i.e. the tax payable), as opposed to the tax you *did* pay during the year (i.e. the tax withheld). Each row in the table is called a tax bracket.

  - You may also need to pay the Medicare levy. This is a scheme in which all Australian taxpayers share in the cost of running the medical system. For many people this is currently 2% of their taxable income.
  - It is possible that you may have paid too much tax during the year and will receive a tax refund.
  - It is also possible that you may have paid too little tax and will receive a letter from the ATO asking for the tax liability to be paid.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 2D

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 | 4

Note: The questions in this exercise relate to the tax table given in Key ideas, unless stated otherwise.

1 Complete this statement: Taxable income = _____ income minus _____.

2 Is the following statement true or false?

The highest income earners in Australia pay 45 cents tax for every dollar they earn.

3 In the 2015/16 financial year, Steve paid no income tax. What could his taxable income have been?

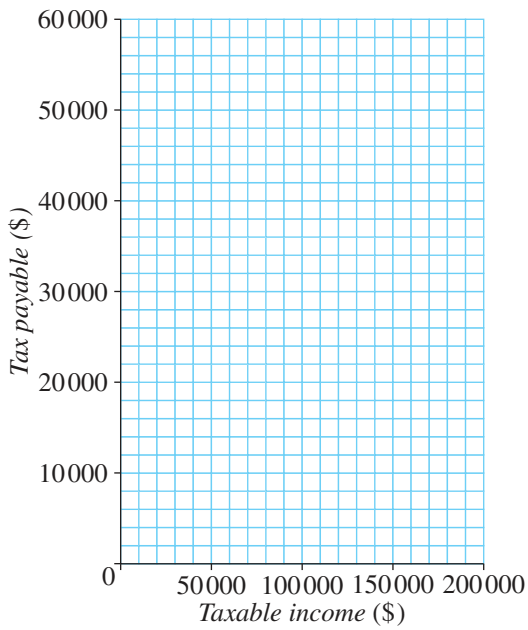
4 In the 2015/16 financial year, Ann's taxable income was $80 000, which puts her at the very top of the middle tax bracket in the tax table. Ben's taxable income was $80 001, which puts him in a higher tax bracket. Ignoring the Medicare levy, how much extra tax did Ben pay compared to Ann?

FLUENCY 5–7 | 6–8

5 Consider the amount of tax payable for these six people.

Taxable income	$0	$18 200	$37 000	$80 000	$180 000	$200 000
Tax payable	$0	$0	$3572	$17 457	$54 547	$63 547

Make a copy of this set of axes, plot the points and then join the dots with straight-line segments.



6 During the past financial year, Jim worked for three different employers. Each employer paid him $15 000. Based on your graph in Question **5**, how much income tax should Jim have paid?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 13 Calculating income tax payable

During the 2015/16 financial year, Richard earned $1050 per week ($54 600 dollars per annum) from his employer and other sources, such as interest on investments. He has receipts for $375 for work-related expenses and donations.

a Calculate Richard's taxable income.

b Use this tax table to calculate Richard's tax payable amount.

Taxable income	Tax on this income
0 – $18 200	Nil
$18 201 – $37 000	19c for each $1 over $18 200
$37 001 – $80 000	$3572 plus 32.5c for each $1 over $37 000
$80 001 – $180 000	$17 547 plus 37c for each $1 over $80 000
$180 001 and over	$54 547 plus 45c for each $1 over $180 000

c Richard must also pay the Medicare levy of 2% of his taxable income. How much is the Medicare levy?

d Add the tax payable and the Medicare levy amounts.

e Express the total tax in part **d** as a percentage of Richard's taxable income, to one decimal place.

f During the financial year, Richard's employer sent a total of $7797 in tax to the ATO. Has Richard paid too much tax or not enough? Calculate his refund or liability.

Solution	Explanation
a Gross income = $54 600 Deductions = $375 Taxable income = $54 225	Taxable income = gross income – deductions
b Tax payable: $\$3572 + 0.325 \times (\$54\,225 - \$37\,000)$ $= \$9170.13$	Richard is in the middle tax bracket in the table, in which it says: $3572 plus 32.5c for each $1 over $37 000 Note: 32.5 cents is $0.325.
c $\frac{2}{100} \times 54\,225 = \$1084.50$	Medicare levy is 2% of the taxable income. Round your answer to the nearest cent.
d $\$9170.13 + \$1084.50 = \$10\,254.63$	This is the total amount of tax that Richard should have paid.
e $\frac{10\,254.63}{54\,225} \times 100 = 18.9\%$ (to 1 d.p.)	This implies that Richard paid approximately 18.9% tax on every dollar. This is sometimes read as '18.9 cents in the dollar'.
f Richard paid $7797 in tax during the year. He should have paid $10 254.63. Richard has not paid enough tax. He must pay another $2457.63 in tax.	This is known as a shortfall or a liability. He will receive a letter from the ATO requesting payment of the difference. $10 254.63 – $7797 = $2457.63

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2D

7 Use the tax table in the key ideas to calculate the income tax payable on these taxable incomes.
a $30 000 **b** $60 000 **c** $150 000 **d** $200 000

8 Lee has come to the end of her first financial year employed as a website developer. On June 30 she made the following notes about the financial year.

Gross income from employer	$58 725
Gross income from casual job	$7500
Interest on investments	$75
Donations	$250
Work-related expenses	$425
Tax paid during the financial year	$13 070

Taxable income = all incomes − deductions

a Calculate Lee's taxable income.
b Use the tax table shown in Example 13 to calculate Lee's tax payable amount.
c Lee must also pay the Medicare levy of 2% of her taxable income. How much is the Medicare levy?
d Add the tax payable and the Medicare levy.
e Express the total tax in part **d** as a percentage of Lee's taxable income, to one decimal place.
f Has Lee paid too much tax or not enough? Calculate her refund or liability.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9, 10, 12, 13 9, 11, 13, 15, 16

9 Alec's Medicare levy is $1750. This is 2% of his taxable income. What is Alec's taxable income?

10 Tara is saving for an overseas trip. Her taxable income is usually about $20 000. She estimates that she will need $5000 for the trip, so she is going to do some extra work to raise the money. How much extra will Tara need to earn in order to save the extra $5000 after tax?

11 When Saled used the tax table to calculate his income tax payable, it turned out to be $23 097. What is his taxable income?

Use the tax table given in Example 13 to determine in which tax bracket Saled falls.

12 Explain the difference between gross income and taxable income.

13 Explain the difference between a tax refund and a tax liability.

14 Gordana looked at the last row of the tax table and said, "It is so unfair that people in that tax bracket must pay 45 cents in every dollar in tax." Explain why Gordana is incorrect.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

15 The most recent significant change to Australian income tax rates was first applied in the 2012/2013 financial year. Consider the tax tables for the two consecutive financial years 2011/2012 and 2012/2013. Note that the amounts listed first in each table is often called the tax-free threshold (i.e. the amount that a person can earn before they must pay tax).

2011/2012	
Taxable income	**Tax on this income**
0 – $6000	Nil
$6001 – $37 000	15c for each $1 over $6000
$37 001 – $80 000	$4650 plus 30c for each $1 over $37 000
$80 001 – $180 000	$17 550 plus 37c for each $1 over $80 000
$180 001 and over	$54 550 plus 45c for each $1 over $180 000
2012/2013	
Taxable income	**Tax on this income**
0 – $18 200	Nil
$18 201 – $37 000	19c for each $1 over $18 200
$37 001 – $80 000	$3572 plus 32.5c for each $1 over $37 000
$80 001 – $180 000	$17 547 plus 37c for each $1 over $80 000
$180 001 and over	$54 547 plus 45c for each $1 over $180 000

a There are some significant changes between the financial years 2011/2012 and 2012/2013. Describe three of them.

b The following people had the same taxable income during both financial years. Find the difference in their tax payable amounts and state whether they were advantaged or disadvantaged by the changes, or not affected at all?

i Ali: Taxable income = $5000
ii Xi: Taxable income = $15 000
iii Charlotte: Taxable income = $30 000
iv Diego: Taxable income = $50 000

16 Below is the 2014/2015 tax table for people who are not residents of Australia but are working in Australia.

Taxable income	Tax on this income
0 – $80 000	32.5c for each $1
$80 001 – $180 000	$26 000 plus 37c for each $1 over $80 000
$180 001 and over	$63 000 plus 45c for each $1 over $180 000

Compare this table to the one in the example for Australian residents.
What difference would it make to the amount of tax paid by these people in 2014/2015 if they were non-residents rather than residents?

a Ali: Taxable income = $5000
b Xi: Taxable income = $15 000
c Charlotte: Taxable income = $30 000
d Diego: Taxable income = $50 000

What are legitimate tax deductions?

— 17

17 **a** Choose an occupation or career in which you are interested. Imagine that you are working in that job. During the year you will need to keep receipts for items you have bought that are legitimate work-related expenses. Do some research on the internet and write down some of the things that you will be able to claim as work-related expenses in your chosen occupation.

b **i** Imagine your taxable income is $80 000. What is your tax payable amount?
ii You just found a receipt for a $100 donation to a registered charity. This decreases your taxable income by $100. By how much does it decrease your tax payable amount?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2E Budgeting

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

Once people have been paid their income for the week, fortnight or month, they must plan how to spend it. Most families work on a budget, allocating money for fixed expenses such as the mortgage or rent and the varying (i.e. changing) expenses of petrol, food and clothing.

Let's start: Expenses for the month

Write down everything that you think your family would spend money on for the week and the month, and estimate how much those things might cost for the entire year. Where do you think savings could be made?

Key ideas

- Managing money for an individual is similar to operating a small business. Expenses can be divided into two areas:
  - **Fixed expenses**: payment of loans, mortgages, regular bills etc.
  - **Variable expenses**: clothing, entertainment, food etc. (these are estimates)
- When your budget is completed you should always check that your figures are reasonable estimates.
- By looking at these figures you should be able to see how much money is remaining; this can be used as savings or to buy non-essential items.
- We often use percentages in budgets, so remember to change percentages to decimals by dividing by 100; e.g. $12\% = 0.12$.

Fixed expenses
Expenses that are set and do not change during a particular time period

Variable expenses
Expenses that may change during a particular period of time or over time

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Exercise 2E

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Binh has an income of $956 a week. His expenses, both fixed and variable, total $831.72 of his income. How much money can Binh save each week?

2 Roslyn has the following monthly expenses. Mortgage = $1458, mobile phone = $49, internet = $60, council rates = $350, water = $55, electricity = $190. What is the total of Roslyn's monthly expenses?

3 Last year, a households' four electricity bills were:
1st quarter = $550, 2nd quarter = $729, 3rd quarter = $497, 4th quarter = $661

Using these values as a guide, what should be the family budget, each week, for electricity for the following year? Round your answer to the nearest dollar.

FLUENCY 4–7 4, 5, 7, 8

Example 14 Budgeting using percentages

Fiona has a net annual income of $36 000 after deductions. She allocates her budget on a percentage basis.

	Mortgage	Car loan	Food	Education	Sundries	Savings
Expenses (%)	20	15	25	20	10	10

a Determine the amount of fixed expenses, including the mortgage, car loan and education.
b How much should Fiona save?
c Is the amount allocated for food reasonable?

Solution	Explanation
a Fixed expenses = 55% of $36 000 = 0.55 × $36 000 = $19 800	The mortgage, car loan and education are 55% in total. Change 55% to a decimal and multiply by the net income.
b Savings = 10% of $36 000 = 0.01 × $36 000 = $3600	Savings are 10% of the budget. Change 10% to a decimal and multiply by the net income.
c Food = 25% of $36 000 = 0.25 × $36 000 = $9000 per year, or $173 per week This seems reasonable.	Food is 25% of the budget. Change 25% to a decimal and calculate. Divide the yearly expenditure by 52 to make a decision on the reasonableness of your answer.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

2E

4 Paul has an annual income of $75 000 after deductions. He allocates his budget on a percentage basis.

	Mortgage	Car loan	Personal loan	Clothing	Food	Other
Expenses (%)	20	10	25	5	10	30

a Determine the amount of fixed expenses, including the mortgage and loans.

b How much should Paul have left over after paying for his mortgage, car loan and personal loan?

c Is the amount allocated for food reasonable?

5 Lachlan has an income of $2120 per month. If he budgets 5% for clothes, how much will he actually have to spend on clothes?

Example 15 Budgeting using fixed values

Running a certain type of car involves yearly, monthly and weekly expenditure. Consider the following vehicle's costs:

- lease $210 per month
- registration $475 per year
- insurance $145 per quarter
- servicing $1800 per year
- petrol $37 per week

a Determine the overall cost to run this car for a year.

b What percentage of a $70 000 salary would this be, correct to one decimal place?

Solution	Explanation
a Overall cost = 210×12	Leasing cost: 12 months in a year
$+ \quad 475$	Registration cost
$+ \quad 145 \times 4$	Insurance cost: 4 quarters in a year
$+ \quad 1800$	Servicing cost
$+ \quad 37 \times 52$	Petrol cost: 52 weeks in a year
$= \quad \$7299$	The overall cost is found by adding the individual totals.
The overall cost to run the car is $7299.	
b % of salary $= \frac{7299}{70\,000} \times 100$	Percentage $= \frac{\text{car cost}}{\text{total salary}} \times 100$
$= 10.4\%$ (to 1 d.p.)	Round as required.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6 Eliana is a student and has the following expenses in her budget.

- rent $270 per week
- electricity $550 per quarter
- phone and internet $109 per month
- car $90 per week
- food $170 per week
- insurance $2000 a year

Use 52 weeks in a year, 12 months in a year and 4 quarters in a year.

a Determine Eliana's costs for a year.

b What percentage of Eliana's net annual salary of $45 000 would this be, correct to one decimal place?

7 The costs of sending a student to Modkin Private College are as follows.

- fees per term (4 terms) $1270
- subject levees per year $489
- building fund per week $35
- uniforms and books per year $367

a Determine the overall cost per year.

b If the school bills twice a year, covering all the items above, what would be the amount of each payment?

c How much should be saved per week to make the biannual payments?

8 A small business owner has the following expenses to budget for.

- rent $1400 a month
- phone line $59 a month
- wages $1200 a week
- electricity $430 a quarter
- water $120 a quarter
- insurance $50 a month

a What is the annual budget for the small business?

b How much does the business owner need to make each week just to break even?

c If the business earns $5000 a week, what percentage of this needs to be spent on wages?

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING

9, 10, 12–14 | 10–12, 14, 15

9 Francine's petrol budget is $47 from her weekly income of $350.

a What percentage of her budget is this? Give your answer to two decimal places.

b If petrol costs $1.59 a litre, how many litres of petrol, correct to two decimal places, is Francine budgeting for in a week?

10 Grant works a 34-hour week at $15.50 per hour. His net income is 65% of his gross income.

a Determine his net weekly income.

b If Grant spends 12% of his net income on entertainment, determine the amount he actually spends per year.

c Grant saves $40 per week. What percentage of his net income is this (to two decimal places)?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2E

11 Dario earns $432 per fortnight at a take-away pizza shop. He budgets 20% for food, 10% for recreation, 13% for transport, 20% for savings, 25% for taxation and 12% for clothing.

a Determine the actual amount budgeted for each category every fortnight.

Dario's wage increases by 30%.

b Determine how much he would now save each week.

c What percentage increase is this on the original amount saved?

d Determine the extra amount of money Dario saves per year after his wage increase.

e If transport is a fixed expense, its percentage of Dario's budget will change. Determine the new percentage.

Example 16 Calculating best buys

Soft drink is sold in three convenient packs at the local store:

- carton of 36 (375 mL) cans at $22.50
- a six-pack of (375 mL) cans at $5.00
- 2 litre bottles at $2.80

Determine the cheapest way to buy the soft drink.

Solution	Explanation
Buying by the carton:	
Cost = $22.50 ÷ (36 × 375)	Total mL = 36 × 375
= $0.0017 per mL	Divide to work out the cost per mL.
Buying by the six-pack:	
Cost = $5 ÷ (6 × 375)	Total mL = 6 × 375
= $0.0022 per mL	
Buying by the bottle:	
Cost = $2.80 ÷ 2000	Total mL = 2 × 1000, since 1 L = 1000 mL.
= $0.0014 per mL.	
∴ The cheapest way to buy the soft drink is to buy the 2 litre bottle.	Compare the three costs per mL.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

12 Tea bags can be purchased from the supermarket in three forms:

- 25 tea bags at $2.36
- 50 bags at $4.80
- 200 bags at $15.00

What is the cheapest way to buy tea bags?

13 A weekly train concession ticket costs $16. A day ticket costs $3.60. If you are going to school only 4 days next week, is it cheaper to buy one ticket per day or a weekly ticket?

14 A holiday caravan park offers its cabins at the following rates.

- $87 per night (Sunday–Thursday)
- $187 for a weekend (Friday and Saturday)
- $500 per week

a Determine the nightly rate in each case.

b Which price is the best value?

15 Tomato sauce is priced at:

- 200 mL bottle $2.35
- 500 mL bottle $5.24

a Find the cost per mL of the tomato sauce in each case.

b Which is the cheapest way to buy tomato sauce?

c What would be the cost of 200 mL at the 500 mL rate?

d How much would be saved by buying the 200 mL bottle at this rate?

e Suggest why the 200 mL bottle is not sold at this price.

Minimum cost of tennis balls

—16

16 Safeserve has a sale on tennis balls for one month. When you buy:

- 1 container, it costs $5
- 6 containers, it costs $28
- 12 containers, it costs $40
- 24 containers, it costs $60

If you need 90 containers for your club to have enough for a season:

a Determine the minimum cost if you buy exactly 90 containers.

b Determine the overall minimum cost, and the number of extra containers you will have in this situation.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2F Simple interest

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

Borrowed or invested money usually has an associated interest rate. The consumer needs to establish the type of interest they are paying and the effects it has on the amount borrowed or invested over time. Some loans or investments deliver the full amount of interest using only the initial loan or investment amount in the interest calculations. These types are said to use simple interest.

Let's start: How long to invest?

Marcus and Brittney each have $\$200$ in their bank accounts. Marcus earns $\$10$ a year in interest. Brittney earns 10% p.a. simple interest.

For how long must each of them invest their money for it to double in value?

Key ideas

- The terms needed to understand **simple interest** are:
  - **Principal (P)**: the amount of money borrowed or invested
  - **Rate of interest (r)**: the annual (yearly) percentage rate of interest (e.g. 3% p.a.)
  - Time (t): the number of years for which the principal is borrowed or invested
  - Interest (I): the amount of interest accrued over a given time.
- The formula for calculating simple interest is:

$$I = \text{principal} \times \text{rate} \times \text{time}$$

$$I = \frac{Prt}{100}$$

- Total repaid = amount borrowed + interest

Simple interest
A type of interest that is paid on a loan or earned on an investment, which is always calculated on the principal amount loaned or invested

Principal (P) An amount of money invested in a financial institution or loaned to a person/business

Rate of interest (r) The annual percentage rate of interest paid or earned on a loan or investment

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 2F

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Copy and complete:

a 12 months = _____ year
b $\frac{1}{2}$ year = _____ months
c _____ weeks = 1 year
d _____ quarters = 1 year
e 1 quarter = _____ months
f $2\frac{1}{2}$ years = _____ months

2 Interest on a loan is fixed at \$60 a year. How much interest is due in:

a 2 years? **b** 7 years? **c** 6 months?

3 Simple interest on \$7000 is 6% p.a. How much interest is earned in:

a 1 year? **b** 2 years? **c** 1 month?

FLUENCY 4–6 | 4–7

Example 17 Using the simple interest formula

Use the simple interest formula, $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$, to find:

a the interest (I) when \$600 is invested at 8% p.a. for 18 months
b the annual interest rate (r) when \$5000 earns \$150 interest in 2 years

Solution	Explanation
a $P = 600$ $r = 8$ $t = 18 \text{ months} = \frac{18}{12} = 1.5 \text{ years}$	Write out the information that you know and the formula.
$I = \frac{Prt}{100}$ $= \frac{600 \times 8 \times 1.5}{100}$ $= 72$	Substitute into the formula using years for t.
The interest is \$72 in 18 months.	
b $P = 5000$ $I = 150$ $t = 2 \text{ years}$	Write the formula and the information known.
$I = \frac{Prt}{100}$ $150 = \frac{5000 \times r \times 2}{100}$ $150 = 100 \times r$ $r = 1.5$	Substitute the values into the formula and solve the equation to find r. $\frac{5000 \times r \times 2}{100} = 100r$
The simple interest rate is 1.5% per year.	Write the rate as a percentage.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2F

4 Copy and complete this table of values for I, P, r and t.

	P	Rate	Time	I
a	\$700	5% p.a.	4 years	
b	\$2000	7% p.a.	3 years	
c	\$3500	3% p.a.	22 months	
d	\$750	$2\frac{1}{2}$% p.a.	30 months	
e	\$22 500		3 years	\$2025
f	\$1770		5 years	\$354

Use $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$

Example 18 Calculating repayments with simple interest

\$3000 is borrowed at 12% p.a. simple interest for 2 years.

a What is the total amount owed over the 2 years?

b If repayments of the loan are made monthly, how much would each payment need to be?

Solution	Explanation
a $P = \$3000,\ r = 12,\ t = 2$	List the information you know.
$I = \frac{Prt}{100}$	Write the formula.
$= \frac{3000 \times 12 \times 2}{100}$	Substitute the values and evaluate.
$= \$720$	
Total amount $= \$3000 + \$720$	Total amount is the original amount *plus* the interest.
$= \$3720$	
b Amount of each payment $= \$3720 \div 24$	2 years = 24 months
$= \$155$ per month	There are 24 payments to be made. Divide the total by 24.

5 \$5000 is borrowed at 11% p.a. simple interest for 3 years.

a What is the total amount owed over the 3 years?

b If repayments of the loan are made monthly, how much would each payment need to be?

Calculate the interest first.

6 Under hire purchase, John bought a second-hand car for \$11 500. He paid no deposit and decided to pay the loan off in 7 years. If the simple interest is 6.45%, determine:

a the total interest paid

b the total amount of the repayment

c the payments per month

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7 $10 000 is borrowed to buy a second-hand BMW. The interest is calculated at a simple interest rate of 19% p.a. over 4 years.

- **a** What is the total interest on the loan?
- **b** How much is to be repaid?
- **c** What is the monthly repayment on this loan?

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–10 10–13

8 How much interest will Giorgio receive if he invests $7000 in stocks at 3.6% p.a. simple interest for 4 years?

9 Rebecca invests $4000 for 3 years at 5.7% p.a. simple interest paid yearly.

- **a** How much interest will she receive in the first year?
- **b** What is the total amount of interest Rebecca will receive over the 3 years?
- **c** How much money will Rebecca have after the 3-year investment?

10 An investment of $15 000 receives an interest payment over 3 years of $7200. What was the rate of simple interest per annum?

Substitute into the formula $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$ and solve the resulting equation.

11 Jonathon wishes to invest $3000 at 8% per annum. How long will he need to invest for his total investment to double?

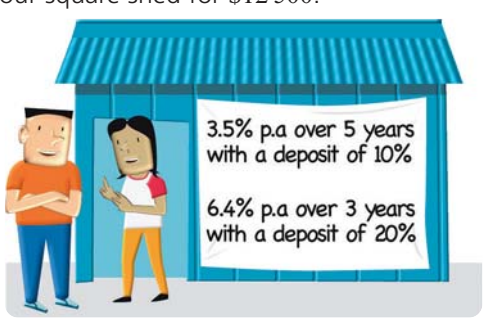
12 Ivan wishes to invest some money for 5 years at 4.5% p.a. paid yearly. If he wishes to receive $3000 in interest payments per year, how much should he invest? Round your answer to the nearest dollar.

13 Gretta's interest payment on her loan totalled $1875. If the interest rate was 5% p.a. and the loan had a life of 5 years, what amount did she borrow?

Which way is best? — 14

14 A shed manufacturer offers finance with a rate of 3.5% p.a. paid at the end of 5 years with a deposit of 10%, or a rate of 6.4% repaid over 3 years with a deposit of 20%.
Melania and Donald decide to purchase a fully erected four-square shed for $12 500.

- **a** How much deposit will they need to pay in each case?
- **b** What is the total interest they will incur in each case?
- **c** If they decided to pay per month, what would be their monthly repayment?
- **d** Discuss the benefits of the different types of purchasing methods.



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Progress quiz

2A **1** Express:

a 32% as a decimal

b 8% as a simplified fraction

c $\frac{11}{25}$ as a percentage

d $\frac{5}{16}$ as a percentage

e 0.252 as a percentage

f $15\frac{1}{2}\%$ as a fraction

2A **2** Gina puts 36% of her \$6000 monthly salary in a savings account. How much does she have left over?

2B **3** Complete the following.

a Increase \$230 by 24%

b Increase 180 mL by 8%

c Decrease 156 cm by 15%

2B **4** A \$299 coffee machine is discounted by 35%. What is the discounted price?

2B **5** An illegal scalper buys a concert ticket for \$150 and sells it for \$210. What is the percentage profit?

2C **6** Find the gross income for a particular week in the following work situations.

a Pippa is a door-to-door sales representative for an air conditioning company. She earns \$300 per week plus 8% commission on her sales. In a particular week she makes \$8200 worth of sales.

b Ari is paid \$15.70 per hour in his job as a shop assistant. The first 36 hours he works in a week are paid at the normal hourly rate, the next 4 hours at time and a half and double time after that. Ari works 42 hours in a particular week.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2D

7 During the 2015/2016 financial year, Cameron earned $76 300 per annum. He had receipts for $425 for donations and work-related expenses.

a Calculate Cameron's taxable income.

b Use this tax table to calculate Cameron's tax payable amount, to the nearest cent.

Taxable income	Tax on this income
0 – $18 200	Nil
$18 201 – $37 000	19c for each $1 over $18 200
$37 001 – $80 000	$3572 plus 32.5c for each $1 over $37 000
$80 001 – $180 000	$17 547 plus 37c for each $1 over $80 000
$180 001 and over	$54 547 plus 45c for each $1 over $180 000

c Cameron also must pay the Medicare levy of 2% of his taxable income. How much is the levy, to the nearest cent?

d During the financial year, Cameron's employer sent a total of $15 255 in tax to the ATO on his behalf. By adding together your answers from parts **b** and **c**, calculate the amount Cameron must pay or will be refunded on his tax return.

2E

8 Charli has the following expenses in her household budget.

- rent $320 per week
- phone and internet $119 per month
- electricity $72 per quarter
- car registration $700 per year
- other car costs $120 per month
- food $110 per week
- clothing $260 per month
- medical and other insurance $160 per month

a Determine the overall cost for running the household for the year. (Use 52 weeks in a year.)

b What percentage of an $82 000 annual salary does this represent? Round your answer to one decimal place.

2F

9 Use the simple interest formula $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$ to find:

a the amount owed when $4000 is borrowed at 6% p.a. for 3 years

b the investment period, in years, if an investment of $2500 at 4% p.a. earns $450 in interest

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2G Compound interest

For simple interest, the interest is always calculated on the principal amount. Sometimes, however, interest is calculated on the actual amount present in an account at each time period that interest is calculated. This means that the interest is added to the amount, then the next lot of interest is calculated again using this new amount. This process is called compound interest.

Compound interest can be calculated using updated applications of the simple interest formula or by using the compound interest formula.

Let's start: Investing using updated simple interest

Consider investing $\$400$ at 12% per annum. What is the balance at the end of 4 years if interest is added to the amount at the end of each year?

Copy and complete the table to find out.

Time	Amount (A)	Interest (I)	New amount
1st year	$\$400$	$\$48$	$\$448$
2nd year	$\$448$	$\$53.76$	$\$501.76$
3rd year	$\$501.76$		
4th year			

As you can see, the amount from which interest is calculated is continually changing.

Key ideas

- **Compound interest** can be found by using updated applications of the simple interest formula. For example, $\$100$ compounded at 10% p.a. for 2 years.

  Year 1: $100 + 10\%$ of $100 = \$110$

  Year 2: $110 + 10\%$ of $110 = \$121$, so compound interest $= \$21$.

- The total amount in an account using compound interest for a given number of time periods is given by:

  $$A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n, \text{ where:}$$

  - Principal (P) = the amount of money borrowed or invested
  - Rate of interest (r) = the percentage applied to the principal per period of investment
  - Periods (n) = the number of periods the principal is invested
  - Amount (A) = the total amount of your investment
- Interest = amount (A) − principal (P)

Compound interest
A type of interest that is paid on a loan or earned on an investment, which is calculated not only on the initial principal but also on the interest accumulated during the loan/investment period

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 2G

UNDERSTANDING 1–5 4, 5

1 Consider \$500 invested at 10% p.a. compounded annually.

a How much interest is earned in the first year?

b What is the balance of the account once the first year's interest is added?

c How much interest is earned in the second year?

d What is the balance of the account at the end of the second year?

e Use your calculator to work out $500(1.1)^2$.

For the second year, you need to use \$500 plus the interest from the first year.

2 Find the value of the following, correct to two decimal places.

a $\$1000 \times 1.05 \times 1.05$

b $\$1000 \times 1.05^2$

c $\$1000 \times 1.05 \times 1.05 \times 1.05$

d $\$1000 \times 1.05^3$

3 Fill in the missing numbers.

a \$700 invested at 8% p.a. compounded annually for 2 years.

$A = \square\,(1.08)^{\square}$

b \$1000 invested at 15% p.a. compounded annually for 6 years.

$A = 1000\,(\square)^6$

c \$850 invested at 6% p.a. compounded annually for 4 years.

$A = 850\,(\square)^{\square}$

For compound interest, $A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$.

Example 19 Converting rates and time periods

Calculate the number of periods and the rates of interest offered per period for each of the following.

a 6% p.a. over 4 years paid monthly

b 18% p.a. over 3 years paid quarterly

Solution	Explanation
a $n = 4 \times 12 = 48$ $\quad r = 6 \div 12 = 0.5$	4 years is the same as 48 months, as 12 months = 1 year. 6% p.a. = 6% in one year. Divide by 12 to find the monthly rate.
b $n = 3 \times 4 = 12$ $\quad r = 18 \div 4 = 4.5$	There are four quarters in 1 year.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2G

4 Calculate the number of periods (n) and the rates of interest (r) offered per period for the following. (Round the interest rate to three decimal places where necessary.)

a 6% p.a. over 3 years paid biannually
b 12% p.a. over 5 years paid monthly
c 4.5% p.a. over 2 years paid fortnightly
d 10.5% p.a. over 3.5 years paid quarterly
e 15% p.a. over 8 years paid quarterly
f 9.6% p.a. over 10 years paid monthly

'Bi-annually' means 'twice a year'.
26 fortnights = 1 year

5 By considering an investment of \$4000 at 5% p.a. compounded annually, copy and complete the table below.

Year	Amount (\$)	Interest (\$)	New amount (\$)
1	4000	200	4200
2	4200		
3			
4			
5			

FLUENCY 6–8(½) 6–8(½)

Example 20 Using the compound interest formula

Determine the amount after 5 years when \$4000 is compounded annually at 8%.

Solution	Explanation
$P = 4000,\ n = 5,\ r = 8$	List the values for the terms you know.
$A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$	Write the formula.
$= 4000\left(1 + \frac{8}{100}\right)^5$	Substitute the values.
$= 4000(1.08)^5$	Simplify and evaluate.
$= \$5877.31$	Write your answer to two decimal places.

6 Determine the amount after 5 years when:

a \$4000 is compounded annually at 5%
b \$8000 is compounded annually at 8.35%
c \$6500 is compounded annually at 16%
d \$6500 is compounded annually at 8%

$A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7 Determine the amount when $\$100\,000$ is compounded annually at 6% for:

a 1 year **b** 2 years **c** 3 years
d 5 years **e** 10 years **f** 15 years

Example 21 Finding compounded amounts using months

Tony's investment of $\$4000$ is compounded at 8.4% p.a. over 5 years. Determine the amount he will have after 5 years if the interest is paid monthly.

Solution	Explanation
$P = 4000$	List the values of the terms you know.
$n = 5 \times 12$ $= 60$	Convert the time in years to the number of periods (in this question, months); i.e. 60 months = 5 years.
$r = 8.4 \div 12$ $= 0.7$	Convert the rate per year to the rate per period (i.e. months) by dividing by 12.
$A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$	Write the formula.
$= 4000(1 + 0.007)^{60}$	Substitute the values.
$= 4000(1.007)^{60}$	Simplify and evaluate.
$= \$6078.95$	

8 Calculate the value of the following investments if interest is compounded monthly.

a $\$2000$ at 6% p.a. for 2 years
b $\$34\,000$ at 24% p.a. for 4 years
c $\$350$ at 18% p.a. for 8 years
d $\$670$ at 6.6% p.a. for $2\frac{1}{2}$ years
e $\$250$ at 7.2% p.a. for 12 years

Convert years to months and the annual rate to the monthly rate.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9–11 10–13

9 An investment of $\$8000$ is compounded at 12.6% over 3 years. Determine the amount the investor will have after 3 years if the interest is compounded monthly.

18% p.a. = 1.5% each month

10 Shafiq invests $\$5000$ compounded monthly at 18% p.a. Determine the value of the investment after:

a 1 month
b 3 months
c 5 months

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2G

11 **a** Calculate the amount of compound interest paid on $8000 at the end of 3 years for each rate below.

Use: 1 year = 12 months
1 year = 52 weeks
1 year = 365 days

- **i** 12% compounded annually
- **ii** 12% compounded biannually (twice a year)
- **iii** 12% compounded monthly
- **iv** 12% compounded weekly
- **v** 12% compounded daily

b What is the difference in the interest paid between annual and daily compounding in this case?

12 The following are expressions relating to compound interest calculations. Determine the principal (P), number of periods (n), rate of interest per period (r), annual rate of interest (R) and the overall time (t).

For 12 time periods with interest paid twice a year, this is 6 years

- **a** $300(1.07)^{12}$, biannually
- **b** $5000(1.025)^{24}$, monthly
- **c** $1000(1.00036)^{65}$, fortnightly
- **d** $3500(1.000053)^{30}$, daily
- **e** $10\,000\,(1.078)^{10}$, annually

13 Ellen needs to decide whether to invest her $13 500 for 6 years at 4.2% p.a. compounded monthly or 5.3% compounded biannually. Decide which investment would be the best for Ellen.

Double your money — 14

14 You have $100 000 to invest and wish to double that amount. Use trial and error in the following.

- **a** Determine, to the nearest whole number of years, the length of time it will take to do this using the compound interest formula at rates of:
  - **i** 12% p.a. **ii** 6% p.a. **iii** 8% p.a.
  - **iv** 16% p.a. **v** 10% p.a. **vi** 20% p.a.
- **b** If the amount of investment is $200 000 and you wish to double it, determine the time it will take using the same interest rates as above.
- **c** Are the lengths of time to double your investment the same in part **a** and part **b**?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2H Investments and loans

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

When you borrow money, interest is charged, and when you invest money, interest is earned. When you invest money, the institution in which you invest (e.g. bank or credit union) pays you interest. However, when you borrow money, the institution from which you borrow charges you interest, so that you must pay back the money you initially borrowed, plus the interest.

Credit cards charge high rates of interest if the full amount owing is not paid off every month.

Let's start: Credit card statements

Refer to Allan's credit card statement below.

a How many days were there between the closing balance and the due date?
b What is the minimum payment due?
c If Allan pays only the minimum, on what balance is the interest charged?
d How much interest is charged if Allan pays $475.23 on 25/5?

Statement Issue Date: 2/5/15		
Date of purchase	**Details**	**Amount**
3/4/15	Opening balance	314.79
5/4/15	Dean's Jeans	59.95
16/4/15	Tyre Warehouse	138.50
22/4/15	Payment made—thank you	−100.00
27/4/15	Cottonworth's Grocery Store	58.64
30/4/15	Interest charges	3.35
2/5/15	Closing balance	475.23
Percentage rate	**Due date**	**Min. payment**
18.95%	25/5/15	23.75

Key ideas

- Interest rates are associated with many loan and savings accounts.
- Bank accounts:
  - accrue interest each month on the minimum monthly balance
  - incur account-keeping fees each month
- **Loans** (money borrowed) have interest charged to them on the amount left owing (i.e. the balance).
- **Repayments** are amounts paid to the bank, usually each month, to repay a loan plus interest within an agreed time period.

Loan Money borrowed and then repaid, usually with interest

Repayment An amount paid to a financial institution at regular intervals to repay a loan, with interest included

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 2H

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Donna can afford to repay $220 a month. How much does she repay over:
a 1 year? **b** 18 months? **c** 5 years?

2 Sarafina buys a new bed on a 'buy now, pay later' offer. No interest is charged if she pays for the bed in 2 years. Sarafina's bed costs $2490 and she pays it back over a period of 20 months in 20 equal instalments. How much is each instalment?

3 A bank pays 0.3% interest on the minimum monthly balance in an account. Determine the interest due on accounts with the following minimum monthly balances.
Note: $0.3\% = 0.3 \div 100 = 0.003$
a $400 **b** $570 **c** $1000 **d** $29.55

FLUENCY 4–8 | 4, 6–9

Example 22 Repaying a loan

Wendy takes out a personal loan of $7000 to fund her trip to South Africa. Repayments are made monthly for 3 years at $275 a month. Find:
a the total cost of Wendy's trip
b the interest charged on the loan

Solution	Explanation
a Toal cost = $275 × 36	3 years = 3 × 12 = 36 months
= $9900	Cost = 36 lots of $275
b Interest = $9900 − $7000	Interest = total paid − amount borrowed
= $2900	

4 Jason has a personal loan of $10 000. He is repaying the loan over 5 years. The monthly repayment is $310.
a Calculate the total amount Jason repays over the 5 year loan.
b How much interest is he charged?

5 Robert borrows $5500 to buy a second-hand car. He repays the loan in 36 equal monthly instalments of $155.
a Calculate the total cost of the loan.
b How much interest does Robert pay?

6 Alma borrows $250 000 to buy a house. The repayments are $1736 a month for 30 years.
a How many repayments does Alma make?
b What is the total amount Alma pays for the house?
c How much interest is paid over the 30 years?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 23 Paying off a purchase

Harry buys a new $2100 computer on the following terms.

- 20% deposit
- monthly repayments of $90 for 2 years

Find:

a the deposit paid
b the total paid for the computer
c the interest charged

Solution	Explanation
a Deposit $= 0.2 \times 2100$ $= \$420$	Find 20% of 2100.
b Repayments $= \$90 \times 24$ $= \$2160$	2 years = 24 months Repay 24 lots of $90.
Total paid $= \$2160 + \$420$ $= \$2580$	Repay = deposit + repayments
c Interest $= \$2580 - \$2100$ $= \$480$	Interest = total paid − original price

7 George buys a car for $12 750 on the following terms: 20% deposit and 36 monthly repayments of $295.

a Calculate the deposit.
b How much is owed after the deposit is paid?
c Find the total of all the repayments.
d Find the cost of buying the car on these terms.
e Find the interest George pays on these terms.

Example 24 Calculating interest

An account has a minimum monthly balance of $200 and interest is credited monthly on this amount at 1.5%.

a Determine the amount of interest to be credited at the end of the month.
b If the bank charges a fixed administration fee of $5 per month and other fees totalling $1.07, what will be the net amount credited or debited to the account at the end of the month?

Solution	Explanation
a Interest = 1.5% of $200 $= 0.015 \times \$200$ $= \$3$	Interest is 1.5% per month. Change 1.5% to a decimal and calculate.
b Net amount $= 3 - (5 + 1.07)$ $= -3.07$	Subtract the deductions from the interest.
$3.07 will be debited from the account.	A negative amount is called a debit.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2H

8 A bank account has a minimum monthly balance of $300 and interest is credited monthly at 1.5%.
- **a** Determine the amount of interest to be credited each month.
- **b** If the bank charges a fixed administration fee of $3 per month and fees of $0.24, what will be the net amount credited to the account at the end of the month?

9 An account has no administration fee. The monthly balances for May–October are in the table below. If the interest payable on the minimum monthly balance is 1%, how much interest will be added:
- **a** for each separate month? **b** over the 6-month period?

May	June	July	August	September	October
$240	$300	$12	$500	$208	$73

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 10, 12, 13 11, 13–15

10 Supersound offers the following two deals on a sound system worth $7500.
- Deal A: no deposit, interest free and nothing to pay for 18 months
- Deal B: 15% off for cash

15% off is 85% of the original amount.

- **a** Nick chooses deal A. Find:
  - **i** the deposit he must pay
  - **ii** the interest charged
  - **iii** the total cost if Nick pays the system off within 18 months
- **b** Phil chooses deal B. What does Phil pay for the same sound system?
- **c** How much does Phil save by paying cash?

11 Camden Finance Company charges 35% flat interest on all loans.
- **a** Mei borrows $15 000 from Camden Finance over 6 years.
  - **i** Calculate the interest on the loan.
  - **ii** What is the total repaid (i.e. loan + interest)?
  - **iii** What is the value of each monthly repayment?
- **b** Lancelle borrows $24 000 from the same company over 10 years.
  - **i** Calculate the interest on her loan.
  - **ii** What is the total repaid?
  - **iii** What is the value of each monthly instalment?

12 A list of transactions that Emma made over a 1-month period is shown. The bank calculates interest *daily* at 0.01% and adds the total to the account balance at the end of this period. It has an administrative fee of $7 per month and other fees over this time total $0.35.
- **a** Copy and complete the table.
- **b** Determine the amount of interest added over this month.
- **c** Determine the final balance after all calculations have been made.
- **d** Suggest what the regular deposits might be for.

In part b, interest is calculated on the end-of-the-day balance.

Date	Deposit	Withdrawal	Balance
1 May			$3010
3 May	$490		
5 May		$2300	
17 May	$490		
18 May		$150	
20 May		$50	
25 May		$218	
31 May	$490		

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

13 The following table shows the interest and monthly repayments on loans when the simple interest rate is 8.5% p.a.

a Use the table to find the monthly repayments for a loan of:

i $1500 over 2 years **ii** $2000 over 3 years **iii** $1200 over 18 months

b Damien and his wife Lisa can afford monthly repayments of $60. What is the most they can borrow and on what terms?

	18-month term		24-month term		36-month term	
Loan amount	Interest ($)	Monthly payments ($)	Interest ($)	Monthly payments ($)	Interest ($)	Monthly payments ($)
1000	127.50	62.64	170.00	48.75	255.00	34.86
1100	140.25	68.90	187.00	53.63	280.50	38.35
1200	153.00	75.17	204.00	58.50	306.00	41.83
1300	165.75	81.43	221.00	63.38	331.50	45.32
1400	178.50	87.69	238.00	68.25	357.00	48.81
1500	191.25	93.96	255.00	73.13	382.50	52.29
1600	204.00	100.22	272.00	78.00	408.00	55.78
1700	216.75	106.49	289.00	82.88	433.50	59.26
1800	229.50	112.75	306.00	87.75	459.00	62.75
1900	242.25	119.01	323.00	92.63	484.50	66.24
2000	255.00	125.28	340.00	97.50	510.00	69.72

14 Part of a credit card statement is shown here.

Understanding your account

CLOSING BALANCE
$403.80

CLOSING BALANCE
This is the amount you owe at the end of the statement period

MINIMUM PAYMENT DUE
$10.00

MINIMUM PAYMENT DUE
This is the minimum payment that must be made towards this account

PAYABLE TO MINIMISE FURTHER INTEREST CHARGES
$403.80

PAYABLE TO MINIMISE FURTHER INTEREST CHARGES
This amount you must pay to minimise interest charges for the next statement period

a What is the closing balance?

b What is due on the card if only the minimum payment is made on the due date?

c This card charges 21.9% p.a. interest calculated daily on the unpaid balances. To find the daily interest amount, the company multiplies this balance by 0.0006. What does it cost in interest per day if only the minimum payment is made?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2H

15 Loans usually involve an establishment fee to set up the loan and an interest rate calculated monthly on your balance. You make a monthly or fortnightly payment, which reduces the balance. Bank fees also apply.
Consider the period for the loan statement shown below.

Complete Home Loan Transactions – Account number 33 164 000				
Date	**Transaction description**	**Debits**	**Credits**	**Balance**
	Balance brought forward from previous page			98 822.90 Dr
15 Oct	Repayment/Payment		378.50	
	Administrative fee	0.23		98 444.63 Dr
24 Oct	Interest charged	531.88		98 976.51 Dr
24 Oct	Fee for servicing your loan	8.00		98 984.51 Dr
29 Oct	Repayment/Payment		378.50	
	Administrative fee	0.23		98 606.24 Dr
12 Nov	Repayment/Payment		378.50	
	Administrative fee	0.23		98 227.97 Dr
24 Nov	Interest charged	548.07		98 776.04 Dr
24 Nov	Fee for servicing your loan	8.00		98 784.04 Dr
26 Nov	Repayment/Payment		378.50	
	Administrative fee	0.23		98 405.77 Dr
→ Change in interest rate on 03/12/15 to 06.800% per annum				
10 Dec	Repayment/Payment		378.50	
	Administrative fee	0.23		98 027.50 Dr
24 Dec	Interest charged	543.08		98 570.58 Dr
24 Dec	Fee for servicing your loan	8.00		98 578.58 Dr
24 Dec	Repayment/Payment		378.50	
	Administrative fee	0.23		98 200.31 Dr
31 Dec	Closing balance			98 200.31 Dr

a What is the opening balance for this statement?
b What is the administrative fee charged by the bank for each transaction?
c What is the regular fee charged by the bank for servicing the loan?
d If the term of the loan is 25 years, what will be the total servicing fees charged by the bank?
e What is the regular fortnightly payment made?
f What will be the total fortnightly payments made over the term of the loan?
g If the loan was originally $100 000, how much extra is paid in interest over the 25 years? (Note that interest does not include any fees.)

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Reducing the balance of loans (a spreadsheet approach)

— 16

16 When you take out a loan from a lending institution you will be asked to make regular payments (usually monthly) for a certain period of time to repay the loan completely. The larger the repayment, the shorter the term of the loan.

Loans work mostly on a reducing balance and you can find out how much balance is owing at the end of each month from a statement, which is issued on a regular basis.

Let's look at an example of how the balance is reducing.

If you borrow \$15 000 at 17% p.a. and make repayments of \$260 per month, at the end of the first month your statement would be calculated as shown at right.

$$\text{Interest due} = \frac{15\,000 \times 0.17}{12}$$
$$= \$212.50$$
$$\text{Repayment} = \$260$$
$$\text{Amount owing} = \$15\,000 + \$212.50 - \$260$$
$$= \$14\,952.50$$

This process would be repeated for the next month:

$$\text{Interest due} = \frac{14\,952.50 \times 0.17}{12}$$
$$= \$211.83$$
$$\text{Repayment} = \$260$$
$$\text{Amount owing} = \$14\,952.50 + \$211.83 - \$260$$
$$= \$14\,904.33$$

As you can see, the amount owing is decreasing and so is the interest owed each month. Meanwhile, more of your repayment is actually reducing the balance of the loan.

A statement might look like this:

Balance	Interest	Repayment	Amount owing
15 000	212.50	260	14 952.50
14 952.50	211.83	260	14 904.33
14 904.33	211.14	260	14 855.47
14 855.47	210.45	260	14 805.92
14 805.92	209.75	260	14 755.67

Check to see that all the calculations are correct on the statement above.
As this process is repetitive, the calculations are best done by means of a spreadsheet. To create a spreadsheet for the process, copy the following, extending your sheet to cover 5 years.

Book1.xls

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Reducing Balance				
2					
3	Loan		Repayment		Interest rate
4	15000		260		=17/12/100
5					
6	Month	Balance	Interest	Repayment	Amount owing
7	0	=A4			=A4
8	=A7+1	=E7	=E$4*B8	=C$4	=B8+C8-D8
9	=A8+1	=E8	=E$4*B9	=C$4	=B9+C9-D9
10	=A9+1	=E9	=E$4*B10	=C$4	=B10+C10-D10
11	=A10+1	=E10	=E$4*B11	=C$4	=B11+C11-D11
12	=A11+1	=E11	=E$4*B12	=C$4	=B12+C12-D12
13	=A12+1	=E12	=E$4*B13	=C$4	=B13+C13-D13
14					
15					
16					
17					
18					
19					
20					
21					
22					

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2I Comparing interest using technology

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

In the following exercise we compare compound and simple interest and look at their applications to the banking world. You are expected to use technology to its best advantage in solving the problems in this section.

Let's start: Who earns the most?

- Ceanna invests \$500 at 8% p.a. compounded monthly over 3 years.
- Huxley invests \$500 at 10% p.a. compounded annually over 3 years.
- Loreli invests \$500 at 15% p.a. simple interest over 3 years.
  - How much does each person have at the end of the 3 years?
  - Who earned the most?

Key ideas

You can calculate the total amount of your investment for either form of interest using technology.

- Using formulas in calculators
  - Simple interest $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$
  - Compound interest $A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$
- **Simple code**
  To create programs for the two types of interest, enter the data shown at right.
  This will allow you to calculate both types of interest for a given time period. If you invest \$100 000 at 8% p.a. paid monthly for 2 years, you will be asked for P, $R = \frac{r}{100}$, t or n and the calculator will do the work for you.
  Note: Some modifications may be needed for the CAS or other calculators or other technology.

```
PROGRAM:SIMPLE
:Prompt P,R,T
:PRT→I
:Disp "INTEREST"
,I
:I+P→A
:Disp "AMOUNT",A
```

```
PROGRAM:COMPOUND
:Prompt P,R,N
:P(1+R)^N→A
:Disp "AMOUNT",A

:A-P→I
:Disp "INTEREST"
,I
```

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Spreadsheet

Copy and complete the spreadsheets as shown on the next page, to compile a simple interest and compound interest sheet.

Fill in the principal in B3 and the rate per period in D3. For example, for \$4000 invested at 5.4% monthly, B3 will be 4000 and D3 will be $\frac{0.054}{12}$.

Book1.xls

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Interest calculator				
2		Principal		Rate	
3		4000		=5.4/100/12	
4					
5		Simple interest		Compound interest	
6	Time (months)	Interest	Amount	Interest	Amount
7	0	0	=B$3+B7	0	=B$3*(1+D$3)^A7
8	=A7+1	=B$3*D$3	=C7+B8	=E8-E7	=B$3*(1+D$3)^A8
9	=A8+1	=B$3*D$3	=C8+B9	=E9-E8	=B$3*(1+D$3)^A9
10	=A9+1	=B$3*D$3	=C9+B10	=E10-E9	=B$3*(1+D$3)^A10
11	=A10+1	=B$3*D$3	=C10+B11	=E11-E10	=B$3*(1+D$3)^A11
12	=A11+1	=B$3*D$3	=C11+B12	=E12-E11	=B$3*(1+D$3)^A12
13	=A12+1	=B$3*D$3	=C12+B13	=E13-E12	=B$3*(1+D$3)^A13
14					
15					
16					
17					
18					

Sheet 1 Sheet 2 Sheet 3 Ready

Exercise 2I

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

Recall: For simple interest $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$

For compound interest $A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$

1 Which is better on an investment of \$100 for 2 years:

A simple interest calculated at 20% p.a.?

B compound interest calculated at 20% p.a. and paid annually?

2 Write down the values of P, r and n for an investment of \$750 at 7.5% p.a., compounded annually for 5 years.

3 Write down the values of I, P, r and t for an investment of \$300 at 3% p.a. simple interest over 300 months.

FLUENCY 4 4, 5

Example 25 Using technology

Find the total amount of the following investments, using technology.

a \$5000 at 5% p.a. compounded annually for 3 years

b \$5000 at 5% p.a. simple interest for 3 years

Solution	Explanation
a \$5788.13	Use $A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$ or a spreadsheet (see Key ideas).
b \$5750	Use $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$ with your chosen technology.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

21

4 **a** Find the total amount of the following investments, using technology.
- **i** $6000 at 6% p.a. compounded annually for 3 years
- **ii** $6000 at 3% p.a. compounded annually for 5 years
- **iii** $6000 at 3.4% p.a. compounded annually for 4 years
- **iv** $6000 at 10% p.a. compounded annually for 2 years
- **v** $6000 at 5.7% p.a. compounded annually for 5 years

b Which of the above yields the most interest?

5 **a** Find the total amount of the following investments, using technology where possible.
- **i** $6000 at 6% p.a. simple interest for 3 years
- **ii** $6000 at 3% p.a. simple interest for 6 years
- **iii** $6000 at 3.4% p.a. simple interest for 7 years
- **iv** $6000 at 10% p.a. simple interest for 2 years
- **v** $6000 at 5.7% p.a. simple interest for 5 years

b Which of the above yields the most interest?

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6, 7 6–8

6 **a** Determine the total simple and compound interest accumulated on the following.
- **i** $4000 at 6% p.a. payable annually for:
  - **I** 1 year **II** 2 years **III** 5 years **IV** 10 years
- **ii** $4000 at 6% p.a. payable biannually for:
  - **I** 1 year **II** 2 years **III** 5 years **IV** 10 years
- **iii** $4000 at 6% p.a. payable monthly for:
  - **I** 1 year **II** 2 years **III** 5 years **IV** 10 years

6% p.a. paid biannually is 3% per 6 months.
6% p.a. paid monthly is $\frac{6}{12} = 0.5\%$ per month.

b Would you prefer the same rate of compound interest or simple interest if you were investing money and paying off the loan in instalments?

c Would you prefer the same rate of compound interest or simple interest if you were borrowing money?

7 **a** Copy and complete the following table if simple interest is applied.

Principal	Rate	Overall time	Interest	Amount
$7000		5 years		$8750
$7000		5 years		$10 500
	10%	3 years	$990	
	10%	3 years	$2400	
$9000	8%	2 years		
$18 000	8%	2 years		

$I = \frac{Prt}{100}$
$A = P + I$

b Explain the effect on the interest when we double the:
- **i** rate
- **ii** period
- **iii** overall time

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8 Copy and complete the following table if compound interest is applied. You may need to use a calculator and trial and error to find some of the missing values.

Principal	Rate	Period	Overall time	Interest	Amount
$7000		Annually	5 years		$8750
$7000		Annually	5 years		$10 500
$9000	8%	Fortnightly	2 years		
$18 000	8%	Fortnightly	2 years		

Changing the parameters

—

9, 10

9 If you invest $5000, determine the interest rate per annum (to two decimal places) if the total amount is approximately $7500 after 5 years and if:

- **a** interest is compounded annually
- **b** interest is compounded quarterly
- **c** interest is compounded weekly

Comment on the effect of changing the period for each payment on the rate needed to achieve the same total amount in a given time.

10 **a** Determine, to one decimal place, the equivalent simple interest rate for the following investments over 3 years.

- **i** $8000 at 4% compounded annually
- **ii** $8000 at 8% compounded annually

b If you double or triple the compound interest rate, how is the simple interest rate affected?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Maths@Work: Finance manager

A bookkeeper and an accounts manager are both occupations that deal with numbers and budgets. They require employees to have good communication and mathematical skills. Employees also need a commitment to detail and to be honest, as they deal with other people's money.

Excellent number skills are essential in these fields. Bookkeepers need to work with spreadsheets, percentages, tax systems and business plans.

Complete these questions that a finance manager may face in their day-to-day job.

1 Consider the information supplied in a section of a business budget for a 3-month period. Round all answers to two decimal places.

Income	July	August	September
Fixed fee (with 25% reduction)	$52 813	$52 813	$52 813
Variable fee (with 25% reduction)	$53 906	$53 906	$53 906
Associate members fees (with 25% reduction)	$1563	$1563	$1563
Shared costs billed EAL	$0	$0	$0
CBA interest earned	$25	$25	$25
Operating costs	$167	$167	$167
Term deposit	$0	$2, 500	$0
Miscellaneous income	$0	$0	$0
Total Income	a	b	c

a Calculate the total income for the month of July.
b Calculate the total income for the month of August.
c Calculate the total income for the month of September.
d Which month had the highest income and by how much?
e What contributed to this increase in income?
f What percentage of the total income for the 3 months shown came from a fixed fee?
g What was the monthly fixed fee before the 25% reduction occurred?

$$\%\text{ of total} = \frac{\text{amount}}{\text{total}} \times \frac{100}{1}$$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 The office expenses for the same company for the same 3-month period are given below.

Office expenses	July	August	September
Rent	$7200	$7200	$7200
Property outgoings (costs)	$220	$220	$220
Cleaning	$250	$250	$250
Maintenance	$50	$50	$50
Capital expenditure	$100	$100	$100
Electricity	$0	$1200	$0
Total office expenses	**$7820**	**$9020**	**$7820**

a Calculate the percentage of the total office expenses for July spent in rent.
b What is the cost of electricity shown in the table, and in what month is it shown?
c Why does the electricity not appear in the other two months?
d What is the projected cost of electricity for the year?

3 The employment expenses for the three months of October, November and December are shown.

Employment expenses	October	November	December
Superannuation	$4800	$4800	$4800
Employees' salaries	$50 424	$50 424	$50 424
Payroll tax	$1200	$1200	$4500
Consultant	$0	$0	$0
Workers compensation	$0	$0	$0
Performance review	$0	$0	$75 000
Training	$335	$335	$335
Parking	$400	$400	$400
Total employment expenses	**$57 159**	**$57 159**	**a**

a Calculate the total employment expenses for the month of December.
b What is the whole number percentage increase of November's total employment expenses from November to December? What was the cause of this increase?
c The company has 11 full-time employees. What is an employee's average:
  i salary per month?
  ii annual salary?
d The company has total expenses for the month of November of $92 117. What percentage of the total expenses for November comes from the employment expenses?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Using technology

4 A trucking business has invested in a new prime mover for hauling cattle by road train. It has a bank loan of $230 000 at 9% per annum charged monthly. The business requires an Excel spreadsheet to show the progress of the debt repayment.

a Develop the following table in an Excel spreadsheet by entering formulas into the yellow shaded cells to calculate their values. Use the notes below to help you.

After entering your formulas, check specific results with a calculator.

	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Debt repayment table					
2	Payment date	Starting balance	Scheduled payment	Interest due	Principal paid	Ending balance
3	1-Jan	$230,000.00	$5,780.00			
4	1-Feb		$5,780.00			
5	1-Mar		$5,780.00			

Notes:

The interest due per month is $\frac{1}{12}$ of 9% of the starting balance for that month.

The principal (i.e. debt) paid will be the scheduled payment minus the interest due.

The ending balances will equal the starting balance minus the principal paid.

The next month's starting balance equals the previous month's ending balance.

b Extend the table for 12 payments and answer the following questions.

i What is the amount of debt remaining on July 1?

ii What is the interest paid in October?

iii Use an Excel formula to find the difference between the principal paid in December and the principal paid in January.

iv Enter 'sum' formulas to determine the total interest paid in the year and the total principal paid off in the year.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1 Find and define the 10 terms related to consumer arithmetic and percentages hidden in this wordfind.

C	O	M	M	I	S	S	I	O	N	Q	R	W
P	G	S	L	E	R	S	T	B	L	D	U	J
H	L	A	A	P	I	E	C	E	W	O	R	K
U	F	N	U	L	N	Q	B	D	Z	T	J	L
V	K	N	S	T	A	M	O	N	T	H	L	Y
B	H	U	A	I	G	R	O	S	S	U	B	S
N	E	A	C	Y	K	S	Y	E	T	Y	M	D
M	A	L	O	V	E	R	T	I	M	E	Q	T
S	F	O	R	T	N	I	G	H	T	L	Y	S

2 How do you stop a bull charging you? Answer the following problems and match the letters to the answers below to find out.

\$19.47 – \$8.53 E	5% of \$89 T	50% of \$89 I
$12\frac{1}{2}$% of \$100 A	If 5% = \$8.90 then 100% is? S	\$4.48 to the nearest 5 cents R
6% of \$89 W	Increase \$89 by 5% H	10% of \$76 O
\$15 monthly for 2 years D	$12\frac{1}{2}$% as a decimal K	\$50 – \$49.73 U
Decrease \$89 by 5% C	\$15.96 + \$12.42 Y	

\$28.38	\$7.60	27c

\$4.45	\$12.50	0.125	\$10.94

\$12.50	\$5.34	\$12.50	\$28.38

\$93.45	\$44.50	\$178

\$84.55	\$4.50	\$10.94	\$360	\$44.50	\$4.45

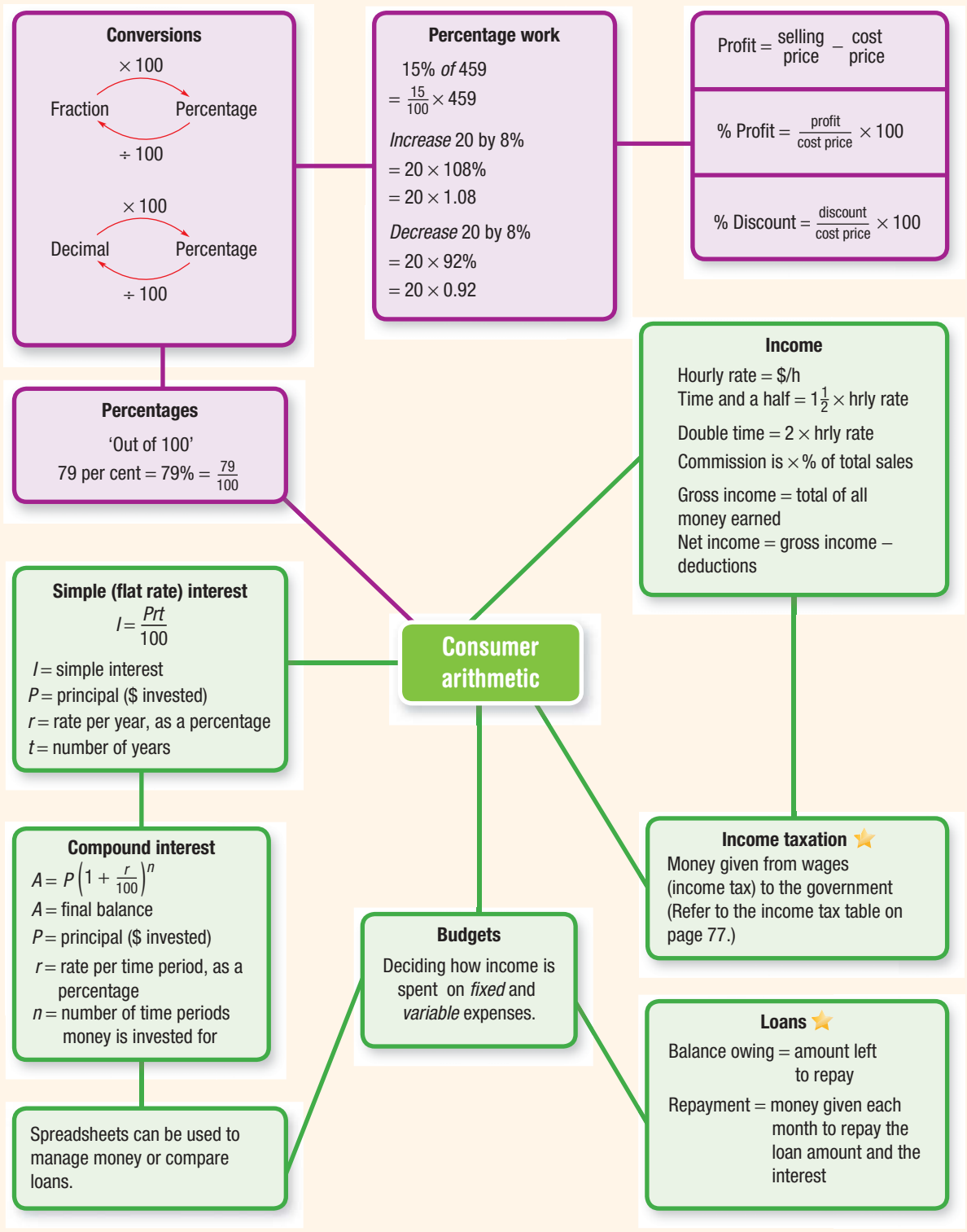
\$84.55	\$12.50	\$4.50	\$360

3 How many years does it take \$1000 to double if it is invested at 10% p.a. compounded annually?

4 The chance of Jayden winning a game of cards is said to be 5%. How many consecutive games should Jayden play to be 95% certain he has won at least one of the games played?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter summary



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter review

Multiple-choice questions

2A **1** 28% of \$89 is closest to:

A \$28.00 **B** \$64.08 **C** \$113.92 **D** \$2492 **E** \$24.92

2A **2** As a percentage, $\frac{21}{60}$ is:

A 21% **B** 3.5% **C** 60% **D** 35% **E** 12.6%

2E **3** If a budget allows 30% for car expenses, how much is allocated from a weekly wage of \$560?

A \$201 **B** \$145 **C** \$100 **D** \$168 **E** \$109

2C **4** The gross income for 30 hours at \$5.26 per hour is:

A \$35.26 **B** \$389.24 **C** \$157.80 **D** \$249.20 **E** \$24.92

2C **5** If Simon receives \$2874 on the sale of a property worth \$195 800, his rate of commission, to one decimal place, is:

A 21% **B** 1.5% **C** 60% **D** 15% **E** 12.6%

2C **6** In a given rostered fortnight, Bilal works the following number of 8-hour shifts:

- three day shifts (\$10.60 per hour)
- three afternoon shifts (\$12.34 per hour)
- five night shifts (\$16.78 per hour).

His total income for the fortnight is:

A \$152.72 **B** \$1457.34
C \$1000 **D** \$168.84
E \$1221.76

2B **7** A computer tablet is discounted by 26%. What is the price if it was originally \$329?

A \$85.54 **B** \$243.46 **C** \$156.05 **D** \$77.78 **E** \$206.90

2H **8** A \$5000 loan is repaid by monthly instalments of \$200 for 5 years. The amount of interest charged is:

A \$300 **B** \$7000 **C** \$12 000 **D** \$2400 **E** \$6000

2F **9** The simple interest earned on \$600 invested at 5% for 4 years is:

A \$570 **B** \$630 **C** \$120 **D** \$720 **E** \$30

2G **10** The compound interest earned on \$4600 invested at 12% p.a. for 2 years is:

A \$1104 **B** \$5704 **C** \$4600 **D** \$5770.24 **E** \$1170.24

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

Short-answer questions

2A **1** Find 15.5% of $9000.

2B **2** **a** Increase $968 by 12%.
b Decrease $4900 by 7%.

2B **3** The cost price of an item is $7.60. If the mark-up is 50%, determine:
a the retail price **b** the profit made

2B **4** An airfare of $7000 is discounted 40% if you fly off-peak. What would be the discounted price?

2B **5** A sofa is discounted to $375. If this is a 35% discount, find the recommended retail price.

2C **6** Josephine budgets 20% of her income for entertainment. If her yearly income is $37 000, how much could be spent on entertainment in:
a a year?
b a month?
c a week?

2C **7** Mariah works a 34-hour week at $25.43 per hour. Her net income is 62% of her wage.
a Work out her net income.
b If 15% is spent on clothing, determine the amount she can spend each week.
c If she saves $100, what percentage (to two decimal places) of her gross weekly income is this?

2E **8** Frank has the following expenses to run his car.

- hire purchase payment $350 per month
- registration $485 per year
- insurance $315 per quarter
- servicing $1700 per year
- petrol $90 per week

a Find the total cost of running his vehicle for 1 year.
b What percentage (to the nearest percentage) of the overall cost to run the car is the cost of the petrol?

2E **9** Ronan works 36 hours at $39.20 per hour. He pays $310 in tax and $20.50 in superannuation. Determine:
a his gross wage **b** his net pay

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

2D **10** Lil receives an annual salary of $90 000.

a Using the tax table shown, calculate the amount of tax she pays over the year.

Taxable income	Tax on this income
0 – $18 200	Nil
$18 201 – $37 000	19c for each $1 over $18 200
$37 001 – $80 000	$3572 plus 32.5c for each $1 over $37 000
$80 001 – $180 000	$17 547 plus 37c for each $1 over $80 000
$180 001 and over	$54 547 plus 45c for each $1 over $180 000

b If Lil pays the 2% Medicare levy on her taxable income, find this amount.

2C **11** Zane receives 4.5% commission on sales of $790. Determine the amount of his commission.

2F **12** Find the interest paid on a $5000 loan under the following conditions.

a 8% p.a. simple interest over 4 years

b 7% p.a. simple interest over 3 years and 4 months

2G **13** Find the interest paid on a $5000 loan under the following conditions.

a 4% p.a. compounded annually over 3 years

b 9.75% p.a. compounded annually over 2 years

2H **14** A vehicle worth $7000 is purchased on a finance package. The purchaser pays 15% deposit and $250 per month over 4 years.

a How much deposit is paid?

b What are the total repayments?

c How much interest is paid over the term of the loan?

Extended-response questions

1 $5000 is invested at 4% p.a. compounding annually for 3 years.

a What is the value of the investment after the 3 years?

b How much interest is earned in the 3 years?

c Using $r = \frac{100I}{Pt}$, what simple interest rate results in the same amount?

d How much interest is earned on the investment if it is compounded monthly at 4% p.a. for the 3 years?

2 Your bank account has an opening July monthly balance of $217.63. You have the following transactions over the month.

Date	Withdrawals	Date	Deposits
7 July	$64.00	July 9th	$140
11 July	$117.34	July 20th	$20
20 July	$12.93	July 30th	$140

a Design a statement of your records if $0.51 is taken out as a fee on 15 July.

b Find the minimum balance.

c If interest is credited monthly on the balance at 0.05%, determine the interest for July, rounded to the nearest cent.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 3

Algebra and indices

What you will learn

- 3A Algebraic expressions (Consolidating)
- 3B Simplifying algebraic expressions
- 3C Expanding algebraic expressions
- 3D Factorising algebraic expressions
- 3E Multiplying and dividing algebraic fractions ★
- 3F Adding and subtracting algebraic fractions ★
- 3G Index notation and index laws 1 and 2
- 3H Index laws 3–5 and the zero power
- 3I Scientific notation
- 3J Exponential growth and decay ★

Australian curriculum

ALGEBRA AND INDICES

Factorise algebraic expressions by taking out a common algebraic factor **(ACMNA230)**

Simplify algebraic products and quotients using **index** laws **(ACMNA231)**

Apply the four operations to simple algebraic fractions with numerical denominators **(ACMNA232)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

Electricity and algebra

The Australian electrotechnology industry is huge. Work areas include: general electrical; refrigeration and air-conditioning; security and fire alarms; renewable energy; data and telecommunications; equipment fitting and repair; marine and auto electronics and IT systems.

The study of electricity uses formulas and requires algebra skills. For example, these formulas apply to electric circuits:

Voltage $V = IR$; Power $P = I^2R$

Resistance $R = \frac{V^2}{P}$; Current $I = \sqrt{\frac{P}{R}}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Pre-test

1 Write algebraic expressions for the following.

a 3 lots of x
b one more than a
c 5 less than $2m$
d 4 times the sum of x and y

2 Find the value of the following when $x = 4$ and $y = 7$.

a $5x$
b $2y + 3$
c $xy - 5$
d $2(x + y)$

3 Decide whether the following pairs of terms are like terms.

a $6x$ and 8
b $3a$ and $7a$
c $4xy$ and $2yx$
d $3x^2$ and $10x$

4 Simplify:

a $3m + 5m$
b $8ab - 3ab$
c $4x + 3y + 2x + 5y$
d $2 \times 4 \times x$
e $5 \times a \times 3 \times b$
f $6y \div 2$

5 Expand:

a $2(x + 5)$
b $3(y - 2)$
c $4(2x - 3)$
d $x(3x + 1)$

6 Find the HCF (highest common factor) of these pairs of terms.

a 8, 12
b 18, 30
c $7a$, $14a$
d $2xy$ and $8xz$
e $5x$ and $8x^2$
f $7x^2y$ and $21xy^2$

7 Simplify:

a $\frac{3}{8} + \frac{2}{5}$
b $\frac{6}{7} - \frac{1}{3}$
c $\frac{5}{9} \times \frac{6}{25}$
d $\frac{2}{3} \div \frac{4}{9}$

8 Write each of the following in index form (e.g. $5 \times 5 \times 5 = 5^3$).

a $7 \times 7 \times 7 \times 7$
b $m \times m \times m$
c $x \times x \times y \times y \times y$
d $3a \times 3a \times 3a \times 3a \times 3a$

9 Evaluate:

a 7^2 **b** 3^3 **c** 2^4 **d** 4^3

10 Write the following as 3 raised to a single power.

a $3^4 \times 3^5$ **b** $3^7 \div 3^5$ **c** $(3^2)^5$ **d** 1 **e** $\frac{1}{3^2}$

11 Complete the following.

a $3.8 \times 10 =$ _____
b $2.31 \times 1000 =$ _____
c $17.2 \div 100 =$ _____
d $0.18 \div 100 =$ _____
e $3827 \div$ _____ $= 3.827$
f $6.49 \times$ _____ $= 64\,900$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

3A Algebraic expressions

CONSOLIDATING

Algebra involves the use of pronumerals (also called variables), which are letters that represent numbers. Numbers and pronumerals connected by multiplication or division form *terms*, and *expressions* are one or more terms connected by addition or subtraction.

If a ticket to an art gallery costs \$12, then the cost for y visitors is the expression $12 \times y = 12y$. By substituting values for y we can find the costs for different numbers of visitors. For example, if there are five visitors, then $y = 5$ and $12y = 12 \times 5 = 60$. So total cost = \$60.

Let's start: Expressions at the gallery

Ben, Alea and Victoria are visiting the art gallery. The three of them combined have \$$c$ between them. Drinks cost \$$d$ and Ben has bought x postcards in the gift shop.

Write expressions for the following.

- The cost of two drinks
- The amount of money each person has if the money is shared equally
- The number of postcards Alea and Victoria bought if Alea bought three more than Ben and Victoria bought five less than twice the number Ben bought.

Key ideas

- Algebraic **expressions** are made up of one or more terms connected by addition or subtraction; e.g. $3a + 7b$, $\frac{x}{2} + 3y$, $3x - 4$.
  - A **term** is a group of numbers and pronumerals connected by multiplication and division; e.g. $2x$, $\frac{y}{4}$, $5x^2$.
  - A **constant term** is a number with no attached pronumerals; e.g. 7, -3.
  - The **coefficient** is the number multiplied by the pronumerals in the term; e.g. 3 is the coefficient of y in $2x + 3y$.
    -4 is the coefficient of x in $5 - 4x$.
    1 is the coefficient of x^2 in $2x + x^2$.

Expression A group of mathematical terms containing no equals sign

Term A number or pronumeral in an expression

Constant term The part of an equation or expression without any pronumerals

Coefficient A numeral placed before a pronumeral, showing that the pronumeral is multiplied by that factor

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

This expression has 3 terms: $3x$, $2y$ and 4.

$3x - 2y + 4$

- 3 is the coefficient of x
- -2 is the coefficient of y
- 4 is the constant term

- Operations:
  - The operations for addition and subtraction are written with '+' and '−'.
  - Multiplication is written without the sign; e.g. $3 \times y = 3y$.
  - Division is written as a fraction; e.g. $y \div 4 = \frac{y}{4}$ or $\frac{1}{4}y$.
- To find the value of an expression (or to **evaluate**), **substitute** a value for each pronumeral. The order of operations (BODMAS) is followed. For example, if $x = 2$ and $y = 3$:

$$\begin{aligned} 4xy - y^2 &= 4 \times 2 \times 3 - 3^2 \\ &= 24 - 9 \\ &= 15 \end{aligned}$$

Substitute To replace pronumerals with numerical values

Evaluate To work out the numerical answer

Exercise 3A

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 4

1 Fill in the missing word(s) in the sentences, using the words *expression, term, constant term* or *coefficient*.

a An algebraic _____ is made up of one or more terms connected by addition and subtraction.

b A term without a pronumeral part is a _____.

c A number multiplied by the pronumerals in a term is a _____.

d Numbers and pronumerals connected by multiplication and division form a _____.

2 Decide which mathematical operation (i.e. $\times, \div, +, -$) matches each of the following.

a sum **b** less than **c** product

d difference **e** more than **f** quotient

3 Substitute the value 3 for the pronumeral x in the following and evaluate.

a $x + 4$ **b** $5x$ **c** $8 - x$ **d** x^2 **e** $\frac{18}{x}$

4 Evaluate:

a $2 \times (-3)$ **b** -4×5 **c** $2 - 8$ **d** $4 - 11$

e $7 - (-2)$ **f** $8 - (-10)$ **g** $-9 + 3$ **h** $-9 + 16$

i $-3 - 4$ **j** $-6 - 7$ **k** $-8 \div 2$ **l** $20 \div (-4)$

Postive × negative = negative. To subtract a negative, add its opposite: $2 - (-3) = 2 + 3$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 5, 6, 7(½) 5, 6–7(½)

Example 1 Naming parts of an expression

Consider the expression $\frac{xy}{2} - 4x + 3y^2 - 2$. Determine:

a the number of terms
b the constant term
c the coefficient of:
  i y^2 **ii** x

Solution	Explanation
a 4	There are four terms with different combinations of pronumerals and numbers, separated by + or −.
b −2	The term with no pronumerals is −2. The negative is included.
c **i** 3	The number multiplied by y^2 in $3y^2$ is 3.
ii −4	The number multiplied by x in $-4x$ is −4. The negative sign belongs to the term that follows.

5 For these algebraic expressions, determine:
  i the number of terms
  ii the constant term
  iii the coefficient of y

a $4xy + 5y + 8$

b $2xy + \frac{1}{2}y^2 - 3y + 2$

c $2x^2 - 4 + y$

The coefficient is the number multiplied by the pronumerals in each term. The constant term has no pronumerals.

Example 2 Writing algebraic expressions

Write algebraic expressions for the following.

a three more than x
b 4 less than 5 times y
c the sum of c and d is divided by 3
d the product of a and the square of b

Solution	Explanation
a $x + 3$	More than means add (+).
b $5y - 4$	Times means multiply ($5 \times y = 5y$) and less than means subtract (−).
c $\frac{c+d}{3}$	Sum c and d first (+), then divide by 3 (÷). Division is written as a fraction.
d ab^2	'Product' means 'multiply'. The square of b is b^2 (i.e. $b \times b$). $a \times b^2 = ab^2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3A

6 Write an expression for the following.

a two more than x
b four less than y
c the sum of ab and y
d three less than 2 lots of x
e the product of x and 5
f twice m
g three times the value of r
h half of x
i three-quarters of m
j the quotient of x and y
k the sum of a and b is divided by 4
l the product of the square of x and y

Quotient means ÷.
Product means ×
$\frac{1}{3}y = \frac{y}{3}$.

Example 3 Substituting values

Find the value of these expressions when $x = 2$, $y = 3$ and $z = -5$.

a $xy + 3y$ **b** $y^2 - \frac{8}{x}$ **c** $2x - yz$

Solution	Explanation
a $xy + 3y = 2 \times 3 + 3 \times 3$	Substitute for each pronumeral: $x = 2$ and $y = 3$.
$= 6 + 9$	Recall that $xy = x \times y$ and $3y = 3 \times y$.
$= 15$	Simplify, following order of operations, by multiplying first.
b $y^2 - \frac{8}{x} = 3^2 - \frac{8}{2}$	Substitute $y = 3$ and $x = 2$.
$= 9 - 4$	$3^2 = 3 \times 3$ and $\frac{8}{2} = 8 \div 2$.
$= 5$	Do subtraction last.
c $2x - yz = 2 \times 2 - 3 \times (-5)$	Substitute for each pronumeral.
$= 4 - (-15)$	$3 \times (-5) = -15$
$= 4 + 15$	To subtract a negative number, add its opposite.
$= 19$	

7 Find the value of these expressions when $a = 4$, $b = -2$ and $c = 3$.

a ac **b** $2a - 5$ **c** $3a - c$
d $a^2 - 2c$ **e** $ac + b$ **f** $3b + a$
g $ab + c^2$ **h** $\frac{a}{2} - b$ **i** $\frac{ac}{b}$
j $2a - b$ **k** $a + bc$ **l** $\frac{6bc}{a}$

$12 + (-2) = 12 - 2$
$2 - (-2) = 2 + 2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–10 9–12

8 Write an expression for the following.

a The cost of 5 pencils at x cents each

b The cost of y apples at 35 cents each

c One person's share when \$500 is divided among n people

d The cost of a pizza (\$11) shared between m people

e Parvinda's age in x years' time if he is 11 years old now

9 A taxi in Sydney has a pick-up charge (i.e. flagfall) of \$3.40 and charges \$2 per km.

a Write an expression for the taxi fare for a trip of d kilometres.

b Use your expression in part **a** to find the cost of a trip that is:

i 10 km **ii** 22 km

The taxi fare has initial cost + cost per km × number of km.

10 **a** Ye thinks of a number, which we will call x.
Now write an expression for each of the following stages.

i He doubles the number.

ii He decreases the result by 3.

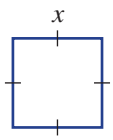
iii He multiplies the result by 3.

b If $x = 5$, use your answer to part **a iii** to find the final number.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3A

11 A square with side length x is changed to a rectangle by increasing the length by 1 and decreasing the width by 1.



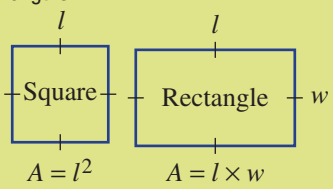
a Write an expression for the new length and width of the rectangle.

b Is there any change in the perimeter of the shape?

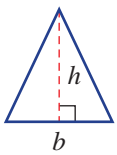
c **i** Write an expression for the area of the rectangle.

ii Use trial and error to determine whether the area of the rectangle is more or less than the original square. By how much?

Perimeter is the sum of the side lengths.



12 The area of a triangle is given by $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$.



a If $b = 6$ and $h = 7$, what is the area?

b If the area is 9, what are the possible whole number values for b if h is also a whole number?

Area and perimeter

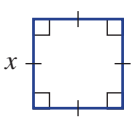
13

13 For the shapes shown, write an expression for:

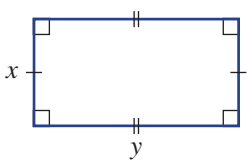
i the perimeter

ii the area

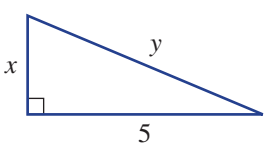
a



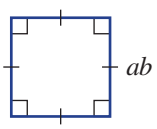
b



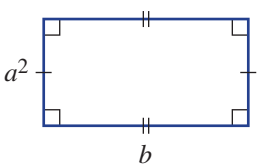
c



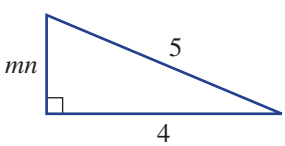
d



e

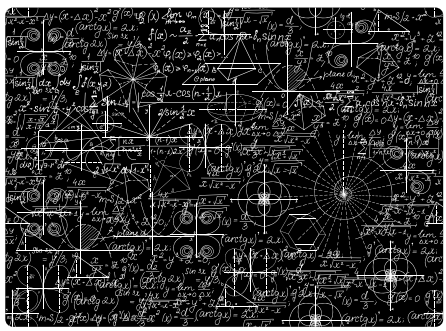


f



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3B Simplifying algebraic expressions



Many areas of finance and industry involve complex algebraic expressions. Often these expressions can be made simpler by applying the rules of addition, subtraction, multiplication and division.

Just as we would write $3+3+3+3$ as 4×3, we write $x+x+x+x$ as $4\times x$ or $4x$. Similarly, $3x+2x=5x$ and $3x-2x=1x$ ($1x$ is written as x).

We also know that $2\times 3=3\times 2$ and $(2\times 3)\times 4=2\times 3\times 4=3\times 4\times 2$ etc., so $2\times x\times 4=2\times 4\times x=8x$. By writing a division as a fraction we can also cancel common factors. For example, $9x\div 3=\frac{9x}{3}=3x$.

Let's start: Equivalent expressions

Split these expressions into two groups that are equivalent by simplifying them first.

$3x+6x$	$17x-5x$	$x+7x+x$	$4x+3+5x-3$
$2\times 6x$	$\frac{24xy}{2y}$	$3x\times 3$	$3x-2y+9x+2y$
$8x+6x-2x$	$18x\div 2$	$\frac{9x^2}{x}$	$6x-(-6x)$

Key ideas

Like terms Terms with the same pronumerals and same powers

- **Like terms** have the exact same pronumeral factors, including powers; e.g. $3x$ and $7x$, and $4x^2y$ and $-3x^2y$.
  - Since $x\times y=y\times x$, $3xy$ and $2yx$ are like terms.
  - $7ab-6ab=1ab=ab$
- Addition and subtraction apply to like terms only.
  For example, $5x+7x=12x$

  $7ab-6ab=1ab=ab$

  $3x+2y$ cannot be simplified
- Multiplication and division apply to all terms.
  - In multiplication, deal with numerals and pronumerals separately:
    $2\times 8a=2\times 8\times a=16a$

    $6x\times 3y=6\times 3\times x\times y=18xy$
- When dividing, write as a fraction and cancel common factors:
  $\frac{\cancel{8}^{4}x}{\cancel{2}^{1}}=4x$

  $6x^2\div(3x)=\frac{6x^2}{3x}=\frac{\cancel{6}^{2}\times\cancel{x}^{1}\times x}{\cancel{3}^{1}\times\cancel{x}^{1}}=2x$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 3B

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 | 4

1 Are the following sets of terms like terms? Answer yes (Y) or no (N).

a $3x, 2x, -5x$ **b** $2ax, 3xa, -ax$ **c** $2ax^2, 2ax, 62a^2x$

d $-3p^2q, 2pq^2, 4pq$ **e** $3ax^2y, 2ayx^2, -x^2ay$ **f** $\frac{3}{4}x^2, 2x^2, \frac{x^2}{3}$

2 Simplify the following.

a $8g + 2g$ **b** $3f + 2f$ **c** $12e - 4e$

d $3h - 3h$ **e** $5x + x$ **f** $14st + 3st$

g $7ts - 4ts$ **h** $4ab - ab$ **i** $9xy - 8xy$

Add or subtract the numerals in like terms.

3 Simplify the following.

a $3 \times 2x$ **b** $4 \times 3a$ **c** $2 \times 5m$ **d** $-3 \times 6y$

4 Simplify these fractions by cancelling.

a $\frac{4}{8}$ **b** $\frac{12}{3}$ **c** $\frac{24}{8}$ **d** $\frac{12}{18}$ **e** $\frac{14}{21}$

f $\frac{35}{15}$ **g** $\frac{27}{36}$ **h** $\frac{18}{45}$ **i** $\frac{42}{84}$ **j** $\frac{15}{60}$

Choose the highest common factor to cancel.

FLUENCY 5–8(½) | 5–8(½)

Example 4 Identifying like terms

Write down the like terms in the following lists.

a $3x, 6a, 2ax, 3a, 5xa$ **b** $-2ax, 3x^2a, 3a, -5x^2a, 3x$

Solution	Explanation
a $6a$ and $3a$	Both terms contain a.
$5xa$ and $2ax$	Both terms contain ax; $x \times a = a \times x$.
b $3x^2a$ and $-5x^2a$	Both terms contain x^2a.

5 Write down the like terms in the following lists.

a $3ac, 2a, 5x, -2ac$ **b** $4pq, 3qp, 2p^2, -4p^2q$

c $7x^2y, -3xy^2, 2xy^2, 4yx^2$ **d** $2r^2, 3rx, -r^2, 4r^2x$

e $-2ab, 5bx, 4ba, 7xa$ **f** $3p^2q, -4pq^2, \frac{1}{2}pq, 4qp^2$

g $\frac{1}{3}lm, 2l^2m, \frac{lm}{4}, 2lm^2$ **h** $x^2y, yx^2, -xy, yx$

Like terms have the same pronumeral factors.
$x \times y = y \times x$, so $3xy$ and $5yx$ are like terms.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 5 Collecting like terms

Simplify the following.

a $4a + 5a + 3$ **b** $3x + 2y + 5x - 3y$ **c** $5xy + 2xy^2 - 2xy + xy^2$

Solution	Explanation
a $4a + 5a + 3 = 9a + 3$	Collect like terms ($4a$ and $5a$) and add coefficients.
b $3x + 2y + 5x - 3y = 3x + 5x + 2y - 3y$ $= 8x - y$	Collect like terms in x ($3 + 5 = 8$) and y ($2 - 3 = -1$). Note: $-1y$ is written as $-y$.
c $5xy + 2xy^2 - 2xy + xy^2$ $= 5xy - 2xy + 2xy^2 + xy^2$ $= 3xy + 3xy^2$	Collect like terms. In xy, the negative belongs to $2xy$. In xy^2, recall that xy^2 is $1xy^2$.

6 Simplify the following by collecting like terms.

a $4t + 3t + 10$ **b** $5g - g + 1$ **c** $3x - 5 + 4x$
d $4m + 2 - 3m$ **e** $2x + 3y + x$ **f** $3x + 4y - x + 2y$
g $8a + 4b - 3a - 6b$ **h** $2m - 3n - 5m + n$ **i** $3de + 3de^2 + 2de + 4de^2$
j $6kl - 4k^2l - 6k^2l - 3kl$ **k** $3x^2y + 2xy^2 - xy^2 + 4x^2y$ **l** $4fg - 5g^2f + 4fg^2 - fg$

Example 6 Multiplying algebraic terms

Simplify the following.

a $2a \times 7d$ **b** $-3m \times 8mn$

Solution	Explanation
a $2a \times 7d = 2 \times 7 \times a \times d$ $= 14ad$	Multiply coefficients and collect the pronumerals: $2 \times a \times 7 \times d = 2 \times 7 \times a \times d$. Multiplication can be done in any order.
b $-3m \times 8mn = -3 \times 8 \times m \times m \times n$ $= -24m^2n$	Multiply coefficients ($-3 \times 8 = -24$) and pronumerals. Recall: $m \times m$ can be written as m^2.

7 Simplify:

a $3r \times 2s$ **b** $2h \times 3u$ **c** $4w \times 4h$
d $2r^2 \times 3s$ **e** $-2e \times 4s$ **f** $5h \times (-2v)$
g $-3c \times (-4m^2)$ **h** $-7f \times (-5l)$ **i** $2x \times 4xy$
j $3ab \times 8a$ **k** $xy \times 3y$ **l** $-2a \times 8ab$
m $-3m^2n \times 4n$ **n** $-5xy^2 \times (-4x)$ **o** $5ab \times 4ab$

Multiply the numerals and collect the pronumerals.
$a \times b = ab$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3B

Example 7 Dividing algebraic terms

Simplify the following.

a $\frac{18x}{6}$ **b** $12a^2b \div (8ab)$

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{\cancel{18}^{3}x}{\cancel{6}^{1}} = 3x$	Cancel highest common factor of numerals; i.e. 6.
b $12a^2b \div (8ab) = \frac{12a^2b}{8ab}$	Write division as a fraction.
$= \frac{^{3}\cancel{12} \times a \times \cancel{a}_{1} \times \cancel{b}_{1}}{_{2}\cancel{8} \times \cancel{a}_{1} \times \cancel{b}_{1}}$	Cancel the highest common factor of 12 and 8 and cancel an a and b.
$= \frac{3a}{2}$	

8 Simplify by cancelling common factors.

a $\frac{7x}{14}$ **b** $\frac{6a}{2}$ **c** $3a \div 9$

d $2ab \div 8$ **e** $\frac{4ab}{2a}$ **f** $\frac{15xy}{5y}$

g $4xy \div (8x)$ **h** $28ab \div (35b)$ **i** $\frac{8x^2}{20x}$

j $\frac{12xy^2}{18y}$ **k** $30a^2b \div (10a)$ **l** $12mn^2 \div (36mn)$

Write each division as a fraction first where necessary.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9, 10 9–12

9 A rectangle's length is three times its width, x. Write a simplified expression for:

a the rectangle's perimeter

b the rectangle's area

Draw a rectangle and label the width x and the length $3 \times x = 3x$.

10 Fill in the missing term to make the following true.

a $8x + 4 - \square = 3x + 4$

b $3x + 2y - \square + 4y = 3x - 2y$

c $3b \times \square = 12ab$

d $4xy \times (\square) = -24x^2y$

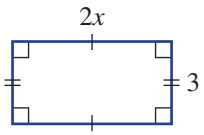
e $12xy \div (\square) = 6y$

f $\square \div (15ab) = \frac{2a}{3}$

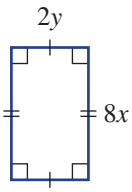
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

11 Find expressions in simplest form for the perimeter (P) and area (A) of these shapes.

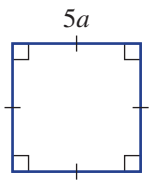
a



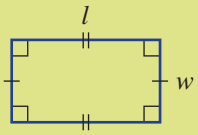
b



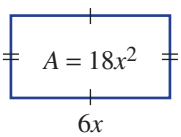
c



Perimeter is the sum of all the sides.
Area = $l \times w$



12 A rectangular garden bed has length given by $6x$ and area $18x^2$. What is the width of the garden bed?



The opposite of $\times$ is $\div$.

Order of operations

— 13

13 Simplify the following expressions, using order of operations.

a $4 \times 3x \div 2$

b $2 + 4a \times 2 + 5a \div a$

c $5a \times 2b \div a - 6b$

d $8x^2 \div (4x) + 3 \times 3x$

e $2x \times (4x + 5x) \div 6$

f $5xy - 4x^2y \div (2x) + 3x \times 4y$

g $(5x - x) \times (16xy \div (8y))$

h $9x^2y \div (3y) + 4x \times (-8x)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

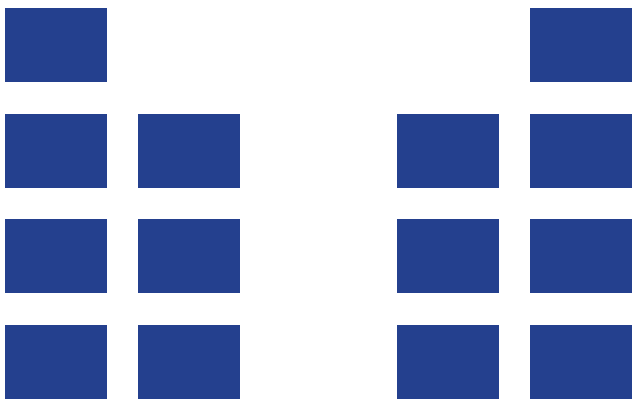
3C Expanding algebraic expressions

When an expression is multiplied by a term, each term in the expression must be multiplied by the term. Brackets are used to show this. For example, to double $4 + 3$ we write $2 \times (4 + 3)$, and each term within the brackets (both 4 and 3) must be doubled. The expanded version of this expression is $2 \times 4 + 2 \times 3$.

Similarly, to double the expression $x + 1$, we write $2(x + 1) = 2 \times x + 2 \times 1$. This expansion of brackets uses the distributive law.

In this diagram, 7 blue blocks are doubled in groups of 4 and 3.

$2 \times (4 + 3) = 2 \times 4 + 2 \times 3$

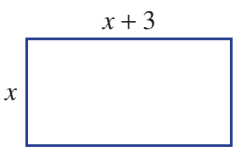


Let's start: Rectangle brackets

A rectangle's length is 3 more than its width.

Write down as many expressions as you can, both with and without brackets, for:

- its perimeter
- its area



Can you explain why all the expressions for the perimeter or area are equivalent?

Key ideas

- The **distributive law** is used to expand and remove brackets.
- The terms inside the brackets are multiplied by the term outside the brackets.

$$a(b + c) = ab + ac \qquad a(b - c) = ab - ac$$

For example, $2(x + 4) = 2 \times x + 2 \times 4$
$= 2x + 8$

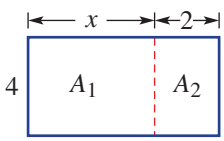
Distributive law
Adding numbers and then multiplying the total gives the same answer as multiplying each number first and then adding the products

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 3C

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 | 3, 4

1 Consider the diagram shown.



- **a** Write an expression for the rectangle area A_1.
- **b** Write an expression for the rectangle area A_2.
- **c** Add your results from parts **a** and **b** to give the area of the rectangle.
- **d** Write an expression for the total length of the rectangle.
- **e** Using part **d**, write an expression for the area of the rectangle.
- **f** Combine your results to complete this statement: $4(x+2) = \square + \square$.

2 Multiply the following expressions involving negatives.

a $2 \times (-4)$	**b** $3 \times (-6)$	**c** $3 \times (-x)$
d $4 \times (-2x)$	**e** -4×5	**f** $-2 \times 8x$
g $-5 \times (-3)$	**h** $-6 \times (-4)$	**i** $-2x \times (-3)$

negative × positive = negative
negative × negative = positive

3 Complete the following.

a $3(x+4) = 3 \times \square + 3 \times \square$
$= 3x + \square$

b $2(x-5) = 2 \times \square + \square \times (-5)$
$= \square - 10$

c $2(4x+3) = 2 \times \square + \square \times 3$
$= \square + 6$

d $x(x-3) = x \times \square + \square \times \square$
$= \square - \square$

4 Simplify the following.

a $3 \times 2x$	**b** $4x \times 2y$	**c** $3x \times 5x$
d $5 + 2x + 4$	**e** $3x + 9 + 4x - 4$	**f** $5x + 10 - 2x - 14$

FLUENCY 5–7(½) | 5–7(½)

Example 8 Expanding expressions with brackets

Expand the following.

a $2(x+5)$ **b** $3(2x-3)$ **c** $3y(2x+4y)$

Solution	Explanation
a $2(x+5) = 2 \times x + 2 \times 5$ $= 2x + 10$	Multiply each term inside the brackets by 2.
b $3(2x-3) = 3 \times 2x + 3 \times (-3)$ $= 6x - 9$	Multiply $2x$ and -3 by 3. $3 \times 2x = 3 \times 2 \times x = 6x$.
c $3y(2x+4y) = 3y \times 2x + 3y \times 4y$ $= 6xy + 12y^2$	Multiply $2x$ and $4y$ by $3y$. $3y \times 2x = 3 \times 2 \times x \times y$ and $3y \times 4y = 3 \times 4 \times y \times y$. Recall: $y \times y$ is written as y^2.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

3C

5 Expand the following.

a $2(x+4)$	**b** $3(x+7)$	**c** $4(y-3)$
d $5(y-2)$	**e** $2(3x+2)$	**f** $4(2x+5)$
g $3(3a-4)$	**h** $7(2y-5)$	**i** $5(2a+b)$
j $3(4a-3b)$	**k** $2x(x+5)$	**l** $3x(x-4)$
m $2a(3a+2b)$	**n** $2y(3x-4y)$	**o** $3b(2a-5b)$

Use the distribution law:

$a(b+c) = a \times b + a \times c$
$= ab + ac$

$a(b-c) = a \times b + a \times (-c)$
$= ab - ac$

Example 9 Expanding expressions with a negative out the front

Expand the following.

a $-3(x-4)$ **b** $-2x(3x-2y)$

Solution	Explanation
a $-3(x-4) = -3 \times x + (-3) \times (-4)$ $= -3x + 12$	Multiply each term inside the brackets by -3. $-3 \times (-4) = +12$ If there is a negative sign outside the bracket, the sign of each term inside the brackets is changed when expanded.
b $-2x(3x-2y) = -2x \times 3x + (-2x) \times (-2y)$ $= -6x^2 + 4xy$	$-2x \times 3x = -2 \times 3 \times x \times x$ and $-2x \times (-2y)$ $= -2 \times (-2) \times x \times y$

6 Expand the following.

a $-2(x+3)$	**b** $-5(m+2)$	**c** $-3(w+4)$
d $-4(x-3)$	**e** $-2(m-7)$	**f** $-7(w-5)$
g $-(x+y)$	**h** $-(x-y)$	**i** $-2x(3x+4)$
j $-3x(2x+5)$	**k** $-4x(2x-2)$	**l** $-3y(2y-9)$
m $-2x(3x-5y)$	**n** $-3x(3x+2y)$	**o** $-6y(2x+3y)$

A negative out the front will change the sign of each term in the brackets when expanded.
$-2(x-3) = -2x+6$

Example 10 Simplifying expressions by removing brackets

Expand and simplify the following.

a $8+3(2x-3)$ **b** $3(2x+2)-4(x+4)$

Solution	Explanation
a $8+3(2x-3) = 8+6x-9$ $= 6x-1$	Expand the brackets: $3 \times 2x + 3 \times (-3) = 6x - 9$. Collect like terms: $8 - 9 = -1$.
b $3(2x+2)-4(x+4) = 6x+6-4x-16$ $= 2x-10$	Expand the brackets first. Note that $-4(x+4) = -4 \times x + (-4) \times 4 = -4x - 16$. Collect like terms: $6x - 4x = 2x$ and $6 - 16 = -10$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7 Expand and simplify the following.

a $2+5(x+3)$ **b** $3+7(x+2)$
c $5+2(x-3)$ **d** $7-2(x+3)$
e $21-5(x+4)$ **f** $4+3(2x-1)$
g $3+2(3x+4)$ **h** $8-2(2x-3)$
i $12-3(2x-5)$
j $3(x+2)+4(x+3)$ **k** $2(p+2)+5(p-3)$
l $4(x-3)+2(3x+4)$
m $3(2s+3)-2(s+2)$ **n** $4(3f+2)-2(6f+2)$
o $3(2x-5)-2(2x-4)$

Expand first, then collect like terms.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8–11

8 Fill in the missing term/number to make each statement true.

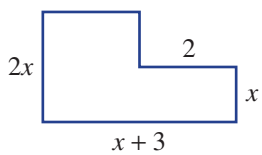
a $\square(x+4)=2x+8$ **b** $\square(2x-3)=8x-12$ **c** $\square(2x+3)=6x^2+9x$
d $4(\square+5)=12x+20$ **e** $4y(\square-\square)=4y^2-4y$ **f** $-2x(\square+\square)=-4x^2-6xy$

9 Four rectangular rooms in a house have floor side lengths listed below. Find an expression for the area of each floor in expanded form.

a 2 and $x-5$ **b** x and $x+3$
c $2x$ and $x+4$ **d** $3x$ and $2x-1$

Area of rectangle = length × width

10 The deck on a house is constructed in the shape shown. Find the area of the balcony in expanded form. (All lines must meet at 90°.)



11 Virat earns $\$x$ but does not have to pay tax on the first $\$18\,200$.

a Write an expression for the amount of money Virat is taxed on.
b Virat is taxed 10% of his earnings in part **a**. Write an expanded expression for how much tax he pays.

To find 10% of an amount, multiply by $\frac{10}{100}=0.1$.

Expanding binomial products — 12

12 A rectangle has dimensions $(x+2)$ by $(x+3)$, as shown. The area can be found by summing the individual areas:

$$(x+2)(x+3)=x^2+3x+2x+6$$
$$=x^2+5x+6$$

	x	3
x	x^2	$3x$
2	$2x$	6

This can be done using the distributive law:

$$(x+2)(x+3)=x(x+3)+2(x+3)$$
$$=x^2+3x+2x+6$$
$$=x^2+5x+6$$

Expand and simplify these binomial products using this method.

a $(x+4)(x+3)$ **b** $(x+3)(x+1)$ **c** $(x+2)(x+5)$
d $(x+2)(x-4)$ **e** $(x+5)(x-2)$ **f** $(x+4)(2x+3)$
g $(2x+3)(x-2)$ **h** $(x-3)(x+4)$ **i** $(4x-2)(x+5)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3D Factorising algebraic expressions

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

Factorising is an important step in solving many types of equations and in simplifying algebraic expressions.

Just as 15 can be expanded and written as 3×5, we can factorise to write an algebraic expression as the product of its factors. Factorising is therefore the opposite of expanding.

Let's start: Products of factors

- Expand the product $6(2x + 4)$.
- Write as many products as you can (using whole numbers) that give the same result as $6(2x + 4)$ when expanded.
- Which of your products has the highest number in front of the brackets? What is this number?
- How does this number relate to the two terms in the expanded form?
- Write a product of factors that expand to $18x + 24$, using the highest common factor.

Key ideas

- Factorisation is the opposite process of expansion.
- To **factorise** an expression, take out the highest common factor (HCF) of each of the terms. This may be a number, variable or product of these.
  - Divide each term by the HCF and leave the expression in the brackets.
  - A factorised expression can be checked by expanding to get the original expression.
  - If the HCF has been removed, the terms in the brackets should have no common factors; e.g. $2(x + 3)$ is fully factorised, but $2(4x + 6)$ is not because 2 can still be divided into both 4 and 6 within the brackets.

  For example: $3x + 12 = 3(x + 4)$ HCF: 3

  $2x^2 + 8x = 2x(x + 4)$ HCF: $2x$

Factorise To write an expression as a product, often involving grouping symbols

Exercise 3D

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Write down the highest common factor (HCF) of these pair of numbers.

a 10 and 16 **b** 4 and 12 **c** 9 and 27

d 18 and 30 **e** 14 and 35 **f** 36 and 48

2 Write down the missing factor.

a $4 \times \square = 4x$ **b** $5 \times \square = 10x$ **c** $x \times \square = 3x^2$

d $3a \times \square = 6ab$ **e** $2x \times \square = 8x^2$ **f** $-4y \times \square = -12y^2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 Consider the expression $4x^2 + 8x$.

a Which of the following factorised forms uses the HCF?

A $2(2x^2 + 4x)$ **B** $4(x^2 + 8x)$ **C** $4x(x + 2)$ **D** $2x(2x + 4)$

b What can be said about the terms inside the brackets once the HCF is removed, which is not the case for the other forms?

FLUENCY 4–7(½) 4–7(½)

Example 11 Finding the HCF

Determine the HCF of the following.

a $8a$ and 20 **b** $3x$ and $6x$ **c** $10a^2$ and $15ab$

Solution	Explanation
a HCF of $8a$ and 20 is 4.	Compare numerals and pronumerals separately. The highest common factor (HCF) of 8 and 20 is 4. a is not a common factor.
b HCF of $3x$ and $6x$ is $3x$.	HCF of 3 and 6 is 3. x is also a common factor.
c HCF of $10a^2$ and $15ab$ is $5a$.	HCF of 10 and 15 is 5. HCF of a^2 and ab is a.

4 Determine the HCF of the following.

a $6x$ and 12 **b** 10 and $15y$ **c** $8a$ and $12b$

d $9x$ and $18y$ **e** $5a$ and $20a$ **f** $10m$ and $22m$

g $14x$ and $21x$ **h** $8a$ and $40ab$ **i** $3a^2$ and $9ab$

j $4x^2$ and $10x$ **k** $16y$ and $25xy$ **l** $15x^2y$ and $25xy$

Find the HCF of the numeral and variable factors.

Example 12 Factorising simple expressions

Factorise the following.

a $4x + 20$ **b** $6a - 15b$

Solution	Explanation
a $4x + 20 = 4(x + 5)$	HCF of $4x$ and 20 is 4. Place 4 in front of the brackets and divide each term by 4. Expand to check: $4(x + 5) = 4x + 20$.
b $6a - 15b = 3(2a - 5b)$	HCF of $6a$ and $15b$ is 3. Place 3 in front of the brackets and divide each term by 3.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3D

5 Factorise the following.

a $3x + 9$	**b** $4x - 8$	**c** $10y - 20$
d $6a + 30$	**e** $5x + 5y$	**f** $12a + 4b$
g $18m - 27n$	**h** $36x - 48y$	**i** $8x + 44y$
j $24a - 18b$	**k** $121m + 55n$	**l** $14k - 63l$

Check your answer by expanding.
$3(x + 3) = 3x + 9$

Example 13 Factorising expressions with pronumeral common factors

Factorise the following.

a $8y + 12xy$ **b** $4x^2 - 10x$

Solution	Explanation
a $8y + 12xy = 4y(2 + 3x)$	HCF of 8 and 12 is 4, HCF of y and xy is y. Place $4y$ in front of the brackets and divide each term by $4y$. Check that $4y(2 + 3x) = 8y + 12xy$.
b $4x^2 - 10x = 2x(2x - 5)$	HCF of $4x^2$ and $10x$ is $2x$. Place $2x$ in front of the brackets and divide each term by $2x$. Recall: $x^2 = x \times x$.

6 Factorise the following.

a $14x + 21xy$	**b** $6ab - 15b$	**c** $32y - 40xy$
d $5x^2 - 5x$	**e** $x^2 + 7x$	**f** $2a^2 + 8a$
g $12a^2 + 42ab$	**h** $9y^2 - 63y$	**i** $6x^2 + 14x$
j $9x^2 - 6x$	**k** $16y^2 + 40y$	**l** $10m - 40m^2$

Place the HCF in front of the brackets and divide each term by the HCF:
$14x + 21xy = 7x(___ + ___)$

Example 14 Factorising expressions by removing a common negative

Factorise $-10x^2 - 18x$.

Solution	Explanation
$-10x^2 - 18x = -2x(5x + 9)$	The HCF of $-10x^2$ and $-18x$ is $-2x$, including the common negative. Place $-2x$ in front of the brackets and divide each term by $-2x$. Dividing by a negative changes the sign of each term.

7 Factorise the following, including the common negative.

a $-2x - 6$	**b** $-4a - 8$	**c** $-3x - 6y$
d $-7a - 14ab$	**e** $-x - 10xy$	**f** $-3b - 12ab$
g $-x^2 - 7x$	**h** $-4x^2 - 12x$	**i** $-2y^2 - 10y$
j $-8x^2 - 14x$	**k** $-12x^2 - 8x$	**l** $-15a^2 - 5a$

Dividing by a negative changes the sign of the term.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8(½), 9–11

8 Factorise these mixed expressions.

a $7a^2b + ab$ **b** $4a^2b + 20a^2$ **c** $xy - xy^2$

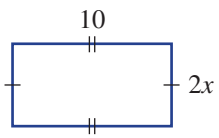
d $x^2y + 4x^2y^2$ **e** $6mn + 18mn^2$ **f** $5x^2y + 10xy^2$

g $-y^2 - 8yz$ **h** $-3a^2b - 6ab$ **i** $-ab^2 - a^2b$

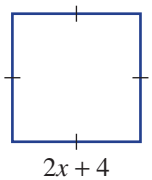
Be sure to find the highest common factor first.

9 Give the perimeter of these shapes in factorised form.

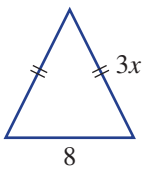
a



b



c



Find the perimeter first, then factorise.

10 A square sandpit has perimeter $(4x + 12)$ metres. What is the side length of the square?

11 Common factors from expressions involving more than two terms can be removed in a similar way. Factorise these by taking out the HCF.

a $2x + 4y + 6z$ **b** $3x^2 + 12x + 6$

c $4x^2 + 8xy + 12$ **d** $6x^2 + 3xy - 9x$

e $10xy - 5xz + 5x$ **f** $4y^2 - 18y + 14xy$

$4a + 6b + 10c$
$= 2(2a + 3b + 5c)$

Taking out a binomial factor — 12

A common factor may be a binomial term, such as $(x + 1)$.
For example, $3(x + 1) + x(x + 1)$ has HCF $= (x + 1)$, so $3(x + 1) + x(x + 1) = (x + 1)(3 + x)$, where $(3 + x)$ is what remains when $3(x + 1)$ and $x(x + 1)$ are divided by $(x + 1)$.

12 Use the method above to factorise the following.

a $4(x + 2) + x(x + 2)$ **b** $x(x + 3) + 2(x + 3)$

c $x(x + 4) - 7(x + 4)$ **d** $x(2x + 1) - 3(2x + 1)$

e $2x(y - 3) + 4(y - 3)$ **f** $2x(x - 1) - 3(x - 1)$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3E Multiplying and dividing algebraic fractions

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

Since pronumerals represent numbers, the rules for algebraic fractions are the same as those for simple numerical fractions. This includes processes such as cancelling common factors to simplify the calculation and dividing by multiplying by the reciprocal of a fraction.

The process of cancelling requires cancelling of factors, for example:

$$\frac{8}{12} = \frac{2 \times \cancel{4}^{1}}{3 \times \cancel{4}_{1}} = \frac{2}{3}$$

For algebraic fractions, you need to factorise the expressions to identify and cancel common factors.

Let's start: Expressions as products of their factors

Factorise these expressions to write them as a product of their factors. Fill in the blanks and simplify.

$\frac{2x+4}{2} = \frac{\square(\square)}{2} = \square$

$\frac{6x+9}{3} = \frac{\square(\square)}{3} = \square$

$\frac{x^2+2x}{x} = \frac{\square(\square)}{x} = \square$

$\frac{4x+4}{4} = \frac{\square(\square)}{4} = \square$

Describe the errors made in these factorisations.

$\frac{\cancel{3}^{1}x+2}{\cancel{3}^{1}} = x+2$

$\frac{\cancel{5}^{1}x+4}{\cancel{5}^{1}} = x+4$

$\frac{x^2+\cancel{3x}^{1}}{\cancel{3x}^{1}} = x^2+1$

$\frac{6\cancel{x}^{1}+6}{\cancel{x}^{1}+1} = \frac{12}{1} = 12$

Key ideas

- Simplify **algebraic fractions** by cancelling common factors in factorised form.
  For example, $\frac{4x+6}{2} = \frac{\cancel{2}_{1}(2x+3)}{\cancel{2}_{1}}$
  $= 2x+3$

Algebraic fraction
A fraction containing pronumerals as well as numbers

- To multiply algebraic fractions:
  - Factorise expressions if possible.
  - Cancel common factors.
  - Multiply numerators and denominators together.

$\frac{\cancel{(x+1)}^{1}}{\cancel{10}_{2}} \times \frac{\cancel{5}^{1}x}{4\cancel{(x+1)}_{1}} = \frac{x}{8}$

- To divide algebraic fractions:
  - Multiply by the reciprocal of the fraction following the division sign (e.g. the reciprocal of 6 is $\frac{1}{6}$, the reciprocal of $\frac{a}{b}$ is $\frac{b}{a}$).
  - Follow the rules for multiplication.

$\frac{2}{(x-2)} \div \frac{8}{3(x-2)}$

$= \frac{\cancel{2}_{1}}{\cancel{(x-2)}_{1}} \times \frac{3\cancel{(x-2)}_{1}}{\cancel{8}_{4}}$

$= \frac{3}{4}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 3E

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 | 3, 4

1 Write these fractions in simplest form by cancelling common factors.

Be sure to cancel the *highest* common factor.

a $\frac{14}{21}$ **b** $\frac{9}{12}$ **c** $\frac{8x}{20}$ **d** $\frac{4x}{10}$

e $\frac{4(x+1)}{8}$ **f** $\frac{3(x-2)}{6}$ **g** $\frac{6(x+4)}{18}$ **h** $\frac{5(x+3)}{25}$

2 Simplify these fractions. Cancel vertically or diagonally before multiplying.

a $\frac{8}{9} \times \frac{3}{10}$ **b** $\frac{15}{21} \times \frac{14}{25}$ **c** $\frac{4}{27} \div \frac{16}{9}$ **d** $\frac{18}{35} \div \frac{9}{14}$

3 Write the reciprocal of these fractions.

a $\frac{3}{2}$ **b** $\frac{5x}{3}$ **c** 7 **d** $\frac{x+3}{4}$

The reciprocal of $\frac{a}{b}$ is $\frac{b}{a}$.

4 Factorise these by taking out the highest common factor.

a $3x+6$ **b** $2x+4$ **c** $8x+12$

d $16-8x$ **e** x^2+3x **f** $4x^2+10x$

g $-2x-6$ **h** $-x^2-5x$ **i** $-3xy-x$

$3x+6$ has a HCF of 3. Place 3 in front of the brackets and divide each term by 3. $3x+6 = 3(___)$

FLUENCY 5–8(½) | 5–8(½)

Example 15 Cancelling common factors

Simplify by cancelling common factors.

a $\frac{8xy}{12x}$ **b** $\frac{3(x+2)}{6(x+2)}$

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{8xy}{12x} = \frac{{}^{2}\cancel{8} \times x^{1} \times y}{{}^{3}\cancel{12} \times \cancel{x}^{1}}$ $= \frac{2y}{3}$	Cancel the highest common factor of 8 and 12 (i.e. 4) and cancel the x.
b $\frac{3(x+2)}{6(x+2)} = \frac{{}^{1}\cancel{3} \times \cancel{(x+2)}^{1}}{{}^{2}\cancel{6} \times \cancel{(x+2)}^{1}}$ $= \frac{1}{2}$	Cancel the highest common factors: 3 and $(x+2)$.

5 Simplify by cancelling common factors.

a $\frac{6xy}{12x}$ **b** $\frac{12ab}{30b}$ **c** $\frac{8x^2}{40x}$ **d** $\frac{25x^2}{5x}$

e $\frac{3(x+1)}{3}$ **f** $\frac{7(x-5)}{7}$ **g** $\frac{4(x+1)}{8}$ **h** $\frac{5(x-2)}{x-2}$

i $\frac{4(x-3)}{x-3}$ **j** $\frac{6(x+2)}{12(x+2)}$ **k** $\frac{9(x+3)}{3(x+3)}$ **l** $\frac{15(x-4)}{10(x-4)}$

Cancel the HCF of the numerals and pronumerals.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

3E

Example 16 Simplifying by factorising

Simplify these fractions by factorising first.

a $\frac{9x-12}{3}$ b $\frac{4x+8}{x+2}$

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{9x-12}{3} = \frac{{}^{1}\cancel{3}(3x-4)}{\cancel{3}_{1}}$ $= 3x-4$	Factorise the expression in the numerator, which has HCF = 3. Then cancel the common factor of 3.
b $\frac{4x+8}{x+2} = \frac{4\cancel{(x+2)}_{1}}{\cancel{x+2}_{1}}$ $= 4$	4 is the HCF in the numerator. After factorising, $(x+2)$ can be seen as a common factor and can be cancelled.

6 Simplify these fractions by factorising first.

a $\frac{4x+8}{4}$ b $\frac{6a-30}{6}$ c $\frac{8y-12}{4}$

d $\frac{14b-21}{7}$ e $\frac{3x+9}{x+3}$ f $\frac{4x-20}{x-5}$

g $\frac{6x+9}{2x+3}$ h $\frac{12x-4}{3x-1}$ i $\frac{x^2+2x}{x}$

j $\frac{x^2-5x}{x}$ k $\frac{2x^2+6x}{2x}$ l $\frac{x^2+4x}{x+4}$

m $\frac{x^2-7x}{x-7}$ n $\frac{2x^2-4x}{x-2}$ o $\frac{3x^2+6x}{x+2}$

Cancel after you have factorised the numerator.

Example 17 Multiplying algebraic fractions

Simplify these products.

a $\frac{12}{5x} \times \frac{10x}{9}$ b $\frac{3(x-1)}{10} \times \frac{15}{x-1}$

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{\cancel{12}_{4}}{\cancel{5x}_{1}} \times \frac{\cancel{10x}^{2}}{\cancel{9}_{3}}$ $= \frac{8}{3}\left(= 2\frac{2}{3}\right)$	Cancel common factors between numerators and denominators: $5x$ and 3. Then multiply the numerators and the denominators.
b $\frac{\cancel{3(x-1)}^{1}}{\cancel{10}^{2}} \times \frac{\cancel{15}_{3}}{\cancel{x-1}_{1}}$ $= \frac{9}{2}\left(= 4\frac{1}{2}\right)$	Cancel the common factors, which are $(x-1)$ and 5. Multiply numerators and denominators.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7 Simplify these products.

a $\frac{3}{x} \times \frac{2x}{9}$ **b** $\frac{4x}{5} \times \frac{15}{8x}$

c $\frac{9a}{14} \times \frac{7}{6a}$ **d** $\frac{2x^2}{5} \times \frac{25}{6x}$

e $\frac{4y^2}{7} \times \frac{21}{8y}$ **f** $\frac{x+1}{6} \times \frac{5}{x+1}$

g $\frac{x+3}{9} \times \frac{4}{x+3}$ **h** $\frac{4(y-7)}{x} \times \frac{5}{y-7}$ **i** $\frac{10}{a+6} \times \frac{3(a+6)}{4}$

j $\frac{4(x-2)}{7} \times \frac{14}{5(x-2)}$ **k** $\frac{3(x+2)}{2x} \times \frac{8}{9(x+2)}$ **l** $\frac{4(2x+1)}{3x} \times \frac{9x}{2x+1}$

Cancel any common factors between numerators and denominators before multiplying.

Example 18 Dividing algebraic fractions

Simplify the following.

a $\frac{3x^2}{8} \div \frac{9x}{4}$ **b** $\frac{2(x-2)}{3} \div \frac{x-2}{6}$

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{3x^2}{8} \div \frac{9x}{4} = \frac{3x^{2\,1}}{8_2} \times \frac{4_1}{{}_3 9 x^1}$	Multiply by the reciprocal of the second fraction.
	The reciprocal of $\frac{9x}{4}$ is $\frac{4}{9x}$.
	Cancel common factors: $3x$ and 4.
	Note: $\frac{3x^2}{9x} = \frac{3^1 \times x \times x^1}{{}_3 9 \times x^1}$
	Multiply the numerators and the denominators.
$= \frac{x}{6}$	
b $\frac{2(x-2)}{3} \div \frac{x-2}{6} = \frac{2(x-2)^1}{3^1} \times \frac{6^2}{x-2^1}$	The reciprocal of $\frac{x-2}{6}$ is $\frac{6}{x-2}$.
	Cancel the common factors $(x-2)$ and 3, and multiply. Recall: $\frac{4}{1} = 4$.
$= 4$	

8 Simplify the following.

a $\frac{x}{5} \div \frac{x}{15}$ **b** $\frac{3x}{10} \div \frac{x}{20}$

c $\frac{4a^2}{9} \div \frac{a}{18}$ **d** $\frac{3x^2}{10} \div \frac{6x}{5}$

e $\frac{4a}{9} \div \frac{5a^2}{6}$ **f** $\frac{2x}{7} \div \frac{x^2}{14}$

g $\frac{x+4}{2} \div \frac{x+4}{6}$ **h** $\frac{5(x-2)}{8} \div \frac{x-2}{4}$

i $\frac{3(x+4)}{10} \div \frac{6(x+4)}{15}$ **j** $\frac{2}{5(2x-1)} \div \frac{10}{2x-1}$

k $\frac{2(x-3)}{x-4} \div \frac{x-3}{5(x-4)}$ **l** $\frac{3(x+1)}{14(x-1)} \div \frac{6(x+1)}{35(x-1)}$

To divide, multiply by the reciprocal of the fraction following the division sign.

$\frac{x}{5} \div \frac{x}{15} = \frac{x}{5} \times \frac{15}{x}$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3E

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9, 10(½) 9–11(½)

9 Find the error in the simplifying of these fractions and correct it.

a $\frac{3x+6}{3} = 3x+2$

b $\frac{x^2+2x}{x} = x^2+2$

c $\frac{4x}{5} \div \frac{10x}{3} = \frac{4x}{5} \times \frac{10x}{3}$
$= \frac{8x^2}{3}$

d $\frac{x+4}{15} \times \frac{3}{x} = \frac{4}{5}$

Remember that common factors can be easily identified when expressions are in factorised form.

10 Simplify these algebraic fractions by factorising expressions first.

a $\frac{7a+14a^2}{21a}$

b $\frac{4x+8}{5x+10}$

c $\frac{x^2+3x}{4x+12}$

d $\frac{2m+4}{15} \times \frac{3}{m+2}$

e $\frac{5-x}{12} \times \frac{14}{15-3x}$

f $\frac{x^2+2x}{4} \times \frac{8}{3x+6}$

g $\frac{2x-1}{10} \div \frac{4x-2}{25}$

h $\frac{2x+4}{6x} \div \frac{3x+6}{x^2}$

i $\frac{2x^2-4x}{3x-6} \div \frac{6x}{x+5}$

11 By removing a negative factor, further simplifying is possible.
For example, $\frac{-2x-4}{x+2} = \frac{-2(x+2)}{x+2} = -2$.

Use this idea to simplify the following.

a $\frac{-3x-9}{x+3}$

b $\frac{-4x-10}{2x+5}$

c $\frac{-x^2-4x}{x+4}$

d $\frac{-3x^2-6x}{-9x}$

e $\frac{-2x+12}{-2}$

f $\frac{-10x+15}{-5}$

Taking out a negative factor changes the sign of each term inside the brackets.

Cancelling of powers

— 12

12 Just as $\frac{x^2}{x} = x$, $\frac{(x+1)^2}{x+1} = x+1$. Use this idea to simplify these algebraic fractions. Some will need factorising first.

a $\frac{(x+1)^2}{8} \times \frac{4}{x+1}$

b $\frac{(x+1)^2}{7x} \times \frac{14x}{3(x+1)}$

c $\frac{9}{x-2} \div \frac{18}{(x-2)^2}$

d $\frac{(x+2)^2}{10} \times \frac{5}{4x+8}$

e $\frac{(x-3)^2}{9x} \times \frac{3x}{4x-12}$

f $\frac{15}{8x+4} \div \frac{6}{(2x+1)^2}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

3F Adding and subtracting algebraic fractions

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

As with multiplying and dividing, the steps for adding and subtracting numerical fractions can be applied to algebraic fractions. A lowest common denominator is required before the fractions can be combined.

Let's start: Steps for adding fractions

- Write out the list of steps you would give to someone to show them how to add $\frac{3}{5}$ and $\frac{2}{7}$.
- Follow your steps to add the fractions $\frac{3x}{5}$ and $\frac{2x}{7}$.
- What is different when these steps are applied to $\frac{x+2}{5}$ and $\frac{x}{7}$?

Key ideas

- To add or subtract algebraic fractions:
  - Determine the lowest common denominator (LCD).
    For example, the LCD of 3 and 5 is 15 and the LCD of 4 and 12 is 12.
  - Write each fraction as an equivalent fraction by multiplying the denominator(s) to equal the LCD. When denominators are multiplied, numerators should also be multiplied.

    For example, $\frac{x}{3}+\frac{2x}{5}$ (LCD of 3 and 5 = 15.)

    $= \frac{x(\times 5)}{3(\times 5)} + \frac{2x(\times 3)}{5(\times 3)}$

    $= \frac{5x}{15} + \frac{6x}{15}$

    $= \frac{5x}{15} + \frac{6x}{15}$

    and $\frac{2x}{4} - \frac{x}{12}$ (LCD of 4 and 12 = 12.)

    $= \frac{2x(\times 3)}{4(\times 3)} - \frac{x}{12}$

    $= \frac{6x}{12} - \frac{x}{12}$
  - Add or subtract the numerators.

    For example, $\frac{5x}{15}+\frac{6x}{15}=\frac{11x}{15}$

    and $\frac{6x}{12}-\frac{x}{12}=\frac{5x}{12}$
- To express $\frac{x+1}{3}$ with a denominator of 12, both numerator and denominator must be multiplied by 4:

  $\frac{(x+1)(\times 4)}{3(\times 4)} = \frac{4x+4}{12}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 3F

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 3–4(½)

1 Write down the lowest common denominator (LCD) for these pairs of fractions.

a $\frac{2}{3}, \frac{3}{4}$ **b** $\frac{1}{6}, \frac{4}{9}$ **c** $\frac{3}{4}, \frac{5}{8}$

d $\frac{x}{3}, \frac{x}{12}$ **e** $\frac{2x}{5}, \frac{x}{4}$ **f** $\frac{3x}{10}, \frac{2x}{15}$

The LCD is not always the two denominators multiplied together; e.g. $3 \times 6 = 18$ but the LCD of 3 and 6 is 6.

2 Simplify these fractions by adding or subtracting. First you will need to express each fraction as an equivalent fraction using the LCD.

a $\frac{1}{6}+\frac{2}{3}$ **b** $\frac{2}{5}+\frac{3}{8}$ **c** $\frac{1}{4}+\frac{5}{6}$

d $\frac{2}{3}-\frac{3}{7}$ **e** $\frac{15}{16}-\frac{3}{4}$ **f** $\frac{5}{6}-\frac{4}{9}$

3 Complete these equivalent fractions by giving the missing term.

a $\frac{x}{4}=\frac{\square}{12}$ **b** $\frac{x}{8}=\frac{\square}{40}$

c $\frac{2x}{5}=\frac{\square}{15}$ **d** $\frac{3x}{2}=\frac{\square}{8}$

e $\frac{x+2}{3}=\frac{\square(x+2)}{9}$ **f** $\frac{x-1}{4}=\frac{\square(x-1)}{20}$

For equivalent fractions, whatever the denominator is multiplied by, the numerator must be multiplied by the same amount.

4 Expand and simplify.

a $4(x+2)+3x$ **b** $3(x-4)+2x$

c $4(x+1)-2x$ **d** $3(x+2)+4(x+3)$

e $5(x+2)+2(x-3)$ **f** $4(x-2)+3(x+6)$

$4(x+2) = 4 \times x + 4 \times 2$
$= 4x + 8$

FLUENCY 5–7(½) 5–7(½)

Example 19 Adding and subtracting algebraic fractions

Simplify the following.

a $\frac{x}{2}+\frac{x}{3}$ **b** $\frac{4x}{5}-\frac{x}{2}$ **c** $\frac{x}{2}-\frac{5}{6}$

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{x(\times 3)}{2(\times 3)}+\frac{x(\times 2)}{3(\times 2)}=\frac{3x}{6}+\frac{2x}{6}$ $=\frac{5x}{6}$	The LCD of 2 and 3 is 6. Express each fraction with a denominator of 6 and add numerators.
b $\frac{4x(\times 2)}{5(\times 2)}-\frac{x(\times 5)}{2(\times 5)}=\frac{8x}{10}-\frac{5x}{10}$ $=\frac{3x}{10}$	The LCD of 5 and 2 is 10. Express each fraction with a denominator of 10 and subtract $5x$ from $8x$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

c $\frac{x}{2}\overset{(\times 3)}{} - \frac{5}{6} = \frac{3x}{6} - \frac{5}{6}$

$= \frac{3x - 5}{6}$

The LCD of 2 and 6 is 6. Multiply the numerator and denominator of $\frac{x}{2}$ by 3 to express with a denominator of 6.
Write as a single fraction; $3x - 5$ cannot be simplified.

5 Simplify the following.

a $\frac{x}{3} + \frac{x}{4}$ **b** $\frac{x}{5} + \frac{x}{2}$ **c** $\frac{x}{3} - \frac{x}{9}$

d $\frac{x}{5} - \frac{x}{7}$ **e** $\frac{2x}{3} + \frac{x}{5}$ **f** $\frac{3x}{4} + \frac{5x}{12}$

g $\frac{5x}{6} - \frac{4x}{9}$ **h** $\frac{7x}{10} - \frac{3x}{8}$ **i** $\frac{x}{7} - \frac{x}{2}$

j $\frac{x}{10} - \frac{2x}{5}$ **k** $\frac{5x}{6} - \frac{13x}{15}$ **l** $\frac{3x}{10} - \frac{3x}{2}$

Express each fraction with a common denominator using the LCD, then add or subtract numerators.

6 Simplify the following.

a $\frac{x}{2} + \frac{3}{4}$ **b** $\frac{x}{5} + \frac{2}{3}$ **c** $\frac{2x}{15} + \frac{7}{20}$

d $\frac{x}{4} - \frac{2}{5}$ **e** $\frac{2x}{3} - \frac{5}{9}$ **f** $\frac{5}{6} - \frac{x}{4}$

Example 20 Adding and subtracting with binomial numerators

Simplify the following algebraic expressions.

a $\frac{x+2}{4} - \frac{x}{6}$ **b** $\frac{x+3}{3} + \frac{x-4}{7}$

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{x+2}{4} - \frac{x}{6} = \frac{3(x+2)}{12} - \frac{2x}{12}$ $= \frac{3x+6-2x}{12}$ $= \frac{x+6}{12}$	The LCD of 4 and 6 is 12. Express each fraction with a denominator of 12. When multiplying $(x+2)$ by 3, brackets are required. Expand the brackets and collect the terms: $3x+6-2x = 3x-2x+6$
b $\frac{x+3}{3} + \frac{x-4}{7} = \frac{7(x+3)}{21} + \frac{3(x-4)}{21}$ $= \frac{7x+21+3x-12}{21}$ $= \frac{10x+9}{21}$	The LCD of 3 and 7 is 21. Express each fraction with a denominator of 21. Expand each pair of brackets first and sum by collecting like terms.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3F

7 Simplify these algebraic expressions.

a $\frac{x+2}{3}+\frac{x}{2}$ **b** $\frac{x+4}{5}+\frac{2x}{3}$

c $\frac{x-2}{4}+\frac{3x}{8}$ **d** $\frac{x+4}{3}-\frac{x}{6}$

e $\frac{x+2}{2}-\frac{2x}{5}$ **f** $\frac{6x+7}{12}-\frac{3x}{8}$

g $\frac{x+3}{5}+\frac{x+2}{4}$ **h** $\frac{2x+3}{7}+\frac{x+1}{2}$

i $\frac{x+8}{6}+\frac{x-3}{4}$ **j** $\frac{2x+5}{3}+\frac{x-2}{4}$

k $\frac{x-3}{5}+\frac{x+4}{10}$ **l** $\frac{2x+1}{8}+\frac{x-2}{3}$

LCD of 2 and 3 is 6:

$\frac{x+2}{3}+\frac{x}{2}=\frac{\square(x+2)}{6}+\frac{\square x}{6}$

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8–10(½)

8 Find the error in each of the following and then correct it.

a $\frac{2x}{3}+\frac{3x}{4}=\frac{5x}{12}$

b $\frac{3x}{5}-\frac{x}{2}=\frac{2x}{3}$

c $\frac{x+2}{5}+\frac{x+4}{3}=\frac{3x+2+5x+4}{15}$

$=\frac{8x+6}{15}$

d $\frac{x+4}{2}+\frac{x-3}{6}=\frac{3x+12+x+3}{6}$

$=\frac{4x+15}{6}$

9 Recall that the expansion $-5(x-2)=-5x+10$, so $6(x+1)-5(x-2)=6x+6-5x+10$ $=x+16$. Use this method to simplify these subtractions.

a $\frac{x+1}{5}-\frac{x-2}{6}$ **b** $\frac{x+2}{3}-\frac{x-4}{5}$ **c** $\frac{x-3}{4}-\frac{x+2}{5}$ **d** $\frac{x+8}{2}-\frac{x+7}{4}$

10 The LCD of the fractions $\frac{4}{x}+\frac{2}{3}$ is $3\times x=3x$.

Use this to find the LCD and simplify these fractions.

a $\frac{4}{x}+\frac{2}{3}$ **b** $\frac{3}{4}+\frac{2}{x}$ **c** $\frac{2}{5}+\frac{3}{x}$

d $\frac{3}{7}-\frac{2}{x}$ **e** $\frac{1}{5}-\frac{4}{x}$ **f** $\frac{3}{x}-\frac{5}{8}$

$\frac{4}{x}+\frac{2}{3}=\frac{\square}{3x}+\frac{\square}{3x}$

$=\frac{\square}{3x}$

Pronumerals in the denominator

— 11

11 As seen in Question **10**, pronumerals may form part of the LCD.

The fractions $\frac{5}{2x}$ and $\frac{3}{4}$ would have a LCD of $4x$, whereas the fractions $\frac{3}{x}$ and $\frac{5}{x^2}$ would have a LCD of x^2.

By first finding the LCD, simplify these algebraic fractions.

a $\frac{3}{4}+\frac{5}{2x}$ **b** $\frac{1}{6}+\frac{5}{2x}$ **c** $\frac{3}{10}-\frac{1}{4x}$ **d** $\frac{3}{x}+\frac{5}{x^2}$

e $\frac{4}{x}+\frac{1}{x^2}$ **f** $\frac{3}{x^2}-\frac{5}{x}$ **g** $\frac{3}{2x}+\frac{2}{x^2}$ **h** $\frac{4}{x}+\frac{7}{3x^2}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Progress quiz

3A **1** For the expression $2x + \frac{y}{2} - 3x^2 + 5$, determine:

a the number of terms
b the constant term
c the coefficient of:
i x^2 **ii** y

3A **2** Find the value of the following expressions if $a = 2$, $b = -5$ and $c = 8$.

a $ab + 2c$ **b** $b^2 - ac$ **c** $\frac{c}{a} - 2b$

3B **3** Simplify the following by collecting like terms.

a $4x - 3 + 2x$ **b** $7x - 3y - 2x + 8y$ **c** $3x^2y + 5xy^2 - x^2y + 2xy^2$

3B **4** Simplify the following.

a $3r \times 4rs$ **b** $\frac{2x}{6}$ **c** $15mn^2 \div (6mn)$

3C **5** Expand the following.

a $3(2x + 3)$ **b** $4x(5x - 2)$ **c** $-6(2x - 3)$

3C **6** Expand and simplify the following.

a $4 + 2(4x - 5)$ **b** $4(2x + 3) - 5(x - 4)$

3D **7** Factorise the following by first identifying the highest common factor. (Include any common negatives.)

a $6m + 12$ **b** $15a - 20ab$
c $4xy + x$ **d** $6x^2 - 10x$
e $-8x - 20$ **f** $-3y^2 - 6y$

3E **8** Simplify by cancelling common factors. You will need to factorise first in parts **b** and **c**.

a $\frac{8(x-1)}{4(x-1)}$ **b** $\frac{15x - 35}{5}$ **c** $\frac{2x^2 + 6x}{x + 3}$

3E **9** Simplify the following algebraic fractions.

a $\frac{8x}{7} \times \frac{21}{16x}$ **b** $\frac{9x}{4(x-1)} \div \frac{12}{x-1}$

3F **10** Simplify the following algebraic fractions.

a $\frac{3x}{5} + \frac{x}{4}$ **b** $\frac{2x}{3} - \frac{4}{9}$

3F **11** Simplify $\frac{x+1}{4} + \frac{x-2}{6}$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3G Index notation and index laws 1 and 2

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

When 9 is written as 3^2, we are using index form. The 2 in 3^2 is called the index, exponent or power, and the 3 is called the base.

When the same factor is multiplied repeatedly, index form provides an efficient way to represent this. For example, $5 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5$ is written as 5^4 instead. For terms with the same base, calculations can be carried out in index form using the index laws.

Areas of banking such as calculating compound interest involve repeatedly multiplying by the same factor. These calculations are done using powers.

Let's start: Simplifying in index form

- Express the following calculations in expanded form and then simplify the result in index form.
  a $5^3 \times 5^4$ **b** $6^2 \times 6^3$
- Describe how you could write these in index form without first expanding them.
- Express the following in expanded form and then cancel common factors to write the result as a single term in index form.
  a $\frac{4^5}{4^2}$ **b** $\frac{7^6}{7^3}$
- Describe how you could write these in index form without first expanding them.

Key ideas

- For a number in **index form**; e.g. a^m, we say 'this is a to the power of m', where a is the **base** and m is the index, exponent or power.
  - The exponent, index or power tells us how many times to multiply the base number by itself.
    For example:

index form		expanded form		basic numeral
5^3	=	$5 \times 5 \times 5$	=	125

  - Note that $a = a^1$
  - The power button ($\boxed{\wedge}$) on a calculator allows you to evaluate 5^4 using $5(\boxed{\wedge})4$.
- The first two index laws deal with multiplication and division of these types of numbers.
  - Index law 1: $a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$; e.g. $5^3 \times 5^4 = 5^{3+4} = 5^7$.
  - Index law 2: $a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$
    or $\frac{a^m}{a^n} = a^{m-n}$; e.g. $7^5 \div 7^2 = 7^{5-2} = 7^3$.

Index form A method of writing numbers that are multiplied by themselves

Base The number or pronumeral that is being raised to a power

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- Negative indices can be expressed as positive indices using the following rules.

$$a^{-m} = \frac{1}{a^m} \text{ and } a^m = \frac{1}{a^{-m}}$$

For $\frac{3^3}{3^5}$, we get $3^{3-5} = 3^{-2}$ and $\frac{3^3}{3^5} = \frac{\cancel{3^1} \times \cancel{3^1} \times \cancel{3^1}}{\cancel{3^1} \times \cancel{3^1} \times \cancel{3^1} \times 3 \times 3} = \frac{1}{3^2}$.

So $3^{-2} = \frac{1}{3^2}$.

Exercise 3G

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2, 3(½), 4 | 3(½), 4

1 Fill in the missing words, using *index, power, multiply, expanded* and *base*.

a In 3^5, 3 is the _____ and 5 is the _____.

b 4^6 is read as 4 to the _____ of 6.

c 7^4 is the _____ form of $7 \times 7 \times 7 \times 7$.

d The power tells you how many times to _____ the base number by itself.

e $6 \times 6 \times 6$ is the _____ form of 6^3.

2 Write the following in expanded form.

a 8^3 **b** 7^5

c x^6 **d** $(ab)^4$

$5^{\textcircled{4}} = \overbrace{5 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5}^{\text{4 times}}$

index form — expanded form

Example 21 Writing in index form

Write each of the following in index form.

a $5 \times 5 \times 5$ **b** $4 \times x \times x \times 4 \times x$ **c** $a \times b \times b \times a \times b \times b$

Solution	Explanation
a $5 \times 5 \times 5 = 5^3$	The factor 5 is repeated 3 times.
b $4 \times x \times x \times 4 \times x = 4 \times 4 \times x \times x \times x$	Group the factors of 4 and the factors of x together.
$= 4^2x^3$	The factor x is repeated 3 times; 4 is repeated twice.
c $a \times b \times b \times a \times b \times b$	Group the like pronumerals.
$= a \times a \times b \times b \times b \times b$	The factor a is repeated twice and the factor b is repeated 4 times.
$= a^2b^4$	

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3G

3 Write the following in index form.

a $9 \times 9 \times 9 \times 9$
b $3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3 \times 3$
c $15 \times 15 \times 15$
d $5 \times x \times x \times x \times 5$
e $4 \times a \times 4 \times a \times 4 \times a \times a$
f $b \times 7 \times b \times b \times b$
g $x \times y \times x \times x \times y$
h $a \times b \times a \times b \times b \times b$
i $3 \times x \times 3 \times y \times x \times 3 \times y \times y$
j $4 \times x \times z \times 4 \times z \times x$

Group different bases together and write each base in index form.

4 Complete the following to write each as a single term in index form.

a $7^3 \times 7^4 = 7 \times 7 \times 7 \times \square$
$= 7^{\square}$

b $\frac{5^6}{5^2} = \frac{5 \times 5 \times \square}{5 \times 5}$
$= 5^{\square}$

FLUENCY 5–8(½) 5–8(½)

Example 22 Expressing negative indices in positive index form

Express the following with positive indices.

a x^{-2} **b** $4y^{-2}$ **c** $2a^{-3}b^2$

Solution	Explanation
a $x^{-2} = \frac{1}{x^2}$	Use $a^{-m} = \frac{1}{a^m}$.
b $4y^{-2} = 4 \times \frac{1}{y^2}$	The negative index applies only to y; i.e. $y^{-2} = \frac{1}{y^2}$.
$= \frac{4}{y^2}$	$4 \times \frac{1}{y^2} = \frac{4}{1} \times \frac{1}{y^2} = \frac{4}{y^2}$
c $2a^{-3}b^2 = 2 \times \frac{1}{a^3} \times b^2$	$a^{-3} = \frac{1}{a^3}$, $\frac{2}{1} \times \frac{1}{a^3} \times \frac{b^2}{1} =$
$= \frac{2b^2}{a^3}$	Multiply the numerators and the denominators.

5 Express the following with positive indices.

a y^{-3} **b** x^{-4} **c** x^{-2} **d** a^{-5}
e $3x^{-2}$ **f** $5b^{-3}$ **g** $4x^{-1}$ **h** $2m^{-9}$
i $2x^2y^{-3}$ **j** $3xy^{-4}$ **k** $3a^{-2}b^4$ **l** $5m^{-3}n^2$

Use $a^{-m} = \frac{1}{a^m}$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 23 Using $\frac{1}{a^{-m}} = a^m$

Rewrite the following with positive indices only.

a $\frac{1}{x^{-3}}$ **b** $\frac{4}{x^{-5}}$ **c** $\frac{5}{a^2b^{-4}}$

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{1}{x^{-3}} = x^3$	Use $\frac{1}{a^{-m}} = a^m$.
b $\frac{4}{x^{-5}} = 4 \times \frac{1}{x^{-5}}$	The 4 remains unchanged.
$= 4 \times x^5$	Note: $\frac{1}{x^{-5}} = x^5$.
$= 4x^5$	
c $\frac{5}{a^2b^{-4}} = \frac{5}{a^2} \times \frac{1}{b^{-4}}$	The negative index applies to b only; i.e. $\frac{1}{b^{-4}} = b^4$.
$= \frac{5}{a^2} \times b^4$	$\frac{5}{a^2} \times b^4 = \frac{5}{a^2} \times \frac{b^4}{1} = \frac{5b^4}{a^2}$
$= \frac{5b^4}{a^2}$	

6 Rewrite the following with positive indices only.

a $\frac{1}{b^{-4}}$ **b** $\frac{1}{x^{-7}}$ **c** $\frac{1}{y^{-1}}$

d $\frac{5}{m^{-3}}$ **e** $\frac{2}{y^{-2}}$ **f** $\frac{3}{x^{-4}}$

g $\frac{5a^2}{b^{-3}}$ **h** $\frac{4}{x^2y^{-5}}$ **i** $\frac{10}{a^{-2}b^4}$

Use $\frac{1}{a^{-m}} = a^m$.

Example 24 Using index law 1: $a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$

Simplify the following, using the first index law.

a $x^7 \times x^4$ **b** $a^2b^2 = ab^3$ **c** $3x^2y^3 \times 4x^3y^4$

Solution	Explanation
a $x^7 \times x^4 = x^{7+4}$	Use law 1, $a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$, to add the indices.
$= x^{11}$	
b $a^2b^2 \times ab^3 = a^{2+1}b^{2+3}$	Add the indices of base a and base b. Recall that $a = a^1$.
$= a^3b^5$	
c $3x^2y^3 \times 4x^3y^4 = (3 \times 4)x^{2+3}y^{3+4}$	Multiply the coefficients and add indices of the common bases x and y.
$= 12x^5y^7$	

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3G

7 Simplify the following, using the first index law.

a $x^3 \times x^4$	**b** $p^5 \times p^2$	**c** $t^7 \times t^2$
d $d^4 \times d$	**e** $g \times g^3$	**f** $f^2 \times f$
g $2p^2 \times p^3$	**h** $3c^4 \times c^4$	**i** $2s^4 \times 3s^7$
j $a^2b^3 \times a^3b^5$	**k** $d^7f^3 \times d^2f^2$	**l** $v^3z^5 \times v^2z^3$
m $3a^2b \times 5ab^5$	**n** $2x^2y \times 3xy^2$	**o** $3e^7r^2 \times 6e^2r$
p $-4p^3c^2 \times 2pc$	**q** $-2r^2s^3 \times 5r^5s^5$	**r** $-3d^4f^2 \times (-2f^2d^2)$

Index law 1:
$a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$
Group common bases and add indices when multiplying.

Example 25 Using index law 2: $a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$

Simplify the following, using the second index law.

a $p^5 \div p^3$ **b** $12m^8 \div (6m^3)$ **c** $\dfrac{4x^2y^4}{8xy^2}$

Solution	Explanation
a $p^5 \div p^3 = p^{5-3}$ $= p^2$	Use law 2, $a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$, to subtract the indices.
b $12m^8 \div (6m^3) = \dfrac{^{2}\cancel{12}m^8}{^{1}\cancel{6}m^3}$ $= 2m^{8-3}$ $= 2m^5$	Write in fraction form. Cancel the highest common factor of 12 and 6. Use law 2 to subtract indices.
c $\dfrac{4x^2y^4}{8xy^2} = \dfrac{^{1}\cancel{4} \times x^2 \times y^4}{^{2}\cancel{8} \times x \times y^2}$ $= \dfrac{x^{2-1}y^{4-2}}{2}$ $= \dfrac{xy^2}{2}$ $\left(\text{or } \dfrac{1}{2}xy^2\right)$	Cancel the common factors of the numerals and subtract the indices of base x and base y.

8 Simplify the following, using the second index law.

a $a^4 \div a^2$	**b** $d^7 \div d^6$	**c** $r^3 \div r$
d $\dfrac{c^{10}}{c^6}$	**e** $\dfrac{l^4}{l^3}$	**f** $\dfrac{b^5}{b^2}$
g $\dfrac{4d^4}{d^2}$	**h** $\dfrac{f^2}{2f^2}$	**i** $\dfrac{9n^4}{3n}$
j $6p^4 \div (3p^2)$	**k** $24m^7 \div (16m^3)$	**l** $10d^3 \div (30d)$
m $\dfrac{8t^4r^3}{2tr^2}$	**n** $\dfrac{5h^6d^4}{3d^3h^2}$	**o** $\dfrac{2p^2q^3}{p^2q}$
p $\dfrac{4x^2y^3}{8xy}$	**q** $\dfrac{3r^5s^2}{9r^3s}$	**r** $6c^4d^6 \div (15c^3d)$
s $2a^4y^2 \div (4ay)$	**t** $13m^4n^6 \div (26m^4n^5)$	**u** $18x^4y^3 \div (-3x^2y)$

Index law 2:
$a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$
or
$\dfrac{a^m}{a^n} = a^{m-n}$
When dividing, subtract indices of common bases.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9–10(½) 9–10(½), 11

Example 26 Combining laws 1 and 2 and negative indices

Simplify, using index laws 1 and 2. Express answers with positive indices.

a $\dfrac{2a^3b \times 3a^2b^3}{12a^4b^2}$ **b** $\dfrac{x^4y^3 \times x^{-2}y^5}{x^5y^4}$

Solution	Explanation
a $\dfrac{2a^3b \times 3a^2b^3}{12a^4b^2} = \dfrac{(2 \times 3)a^{3+2}b^{1+3}}{12a^4b^2}$	Simplify numerator first by multiplying coefficients and using law 1 to add indices of a and b.
$= \dfrac{\cancel{6}^{1}a^5b^4}{\cancel{12}^{2}a^4b^2}$	Cancel common factor of numerals and use law 2 to subtract indices of common bases.
$= \dfrac{a^{5-4}b^{4-2}}{2}$	
$= \dfrac{ab^2}{2}$	
b $\dfrac{x^4y^3 \times x^{-2}y^5}{x^5y^4} = \dfrac{x^{4+(-2)}y^{3+5}}{x^5y^4}$	Use law 1 to add indices of x and y in numerator: $4 + (-2) = 4 - 2 = 2$
$= \dfrac{x^2y^8}{x^5y^4}$	Use law 2 to subtract indices.
$= x^{2-5}y^{8-4}$	
$= x^{-3}y^4$	Express with positive indices; i.e. $x^{-3} = \dfrac{1}{x^3}$.
$= \dfrac{y^4}{x^3}$	$x^{-3}y^4 = \dfrac{1}{x^3} \times \dfrac{y^4}{1}$

9 Simplify the following, using index laws 1 and 2.

a $\dfrac{x^2y^3 \times x^2y^4}{x^3y^5}$ **b** $\dfrac{m^2w \times m^3w^2}{m^4w^3}$

c $\dfrac{r^4s^7 \times r^4s^7}{4^6s^{10}}$ **d** $\dfrac{16a^8b \times 4ab^7}{32a^7b^6}$

e $\dfrac{9x^2y^3 \times 6x^7y^7}{12xy^6}$ **f** $\dfrac{4e^2w^2 \times 12e^2w^3}{12e^4w}$

Simplify the numerator first using index law 1, then apply index law 2.

10 Simplify the following, expressing answers using positive indices.

a $\dfrac{a^6b^2 \times a^{-2}b^3}{a^7b}$ **b** $\dfrac{x^5y^3 \times x^2y^{-1}}{x^3y^5}$

c $\dfrac{x^4y^7 \times x^{-2}y^{-5}}{x^4y^6}$ **d** $\dfrac{a^5b^{-2} \times a^{-3}b^4}{a^6b}$

Index laws 1 and 2 apply to negative indices also.
$x^5 \times x^{-2} = x^{5+(-2)} = x^3$
$\dfrac{x^4}{x^6} = x^{4-6} = x^{-2} = \dfrac{1}{x^2}$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3G

11 When Stuart uses a calculator to raise -2 to the power 4 he gets -16, when in fact the answer is actually 16. What has he done wrong?

Index laws and calculations

— 12, 13

12 Consider the following use of negative numbers.

a Evaluate:

i $(-3)^2$ **ii** -3^2

b What is the difference between your two answers in part **a**?

c Evaluate:

i $(-2)^3$ **ii** -2^3

d What do you notice about your answers in part **c**? Explain.

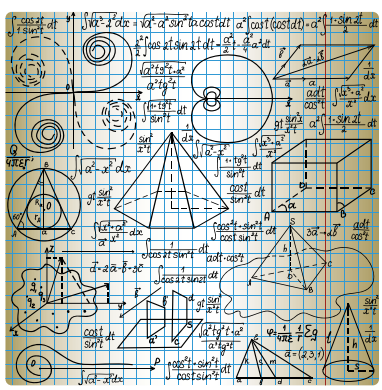
$(-3)^2 = -3 \times (-3)$

$(-2)^3 = -2 \times (-2) \times (-2)$

Consider order of operations.

13 Use index law 2 to evaluate these expressions without the use of a calculator.

a $\frac{13^3}{13^2}$ **b** $\frac{18^7}{18^6}$ **c** $\frac{9^8}{9^6}$ **d** $\frac{3^{10}}{3^7}$ **e** $\frac{4^8}{4^5}$ **f** $\frac{2^{12}}{2^8}$



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3H Index laws 3–5 and the zero power

Using index laws 1 and 2, we can work out four other index laws to simplify expressions, especially those using brackets.

For example, $(4^2)^3 = 4^2 \times 4^2 \times 4^2$

$= 4^{2+2+2} = 4^6$ (Add indices using law 1.)

Therefore, $(4^2)^3 = 4^{2\times 3} = 4^6$.

We also have a result for the zero power.

Consider $5^3 \div 5^3$, which clearly equals 1. Using index law 2, we can see that

$$5^3 \div 5^3 = 5^{3-3} = 5^0$$

Therefore, $5^0 = 1$, leading to the zero power rule: $a^0 = 1$.

Let's start: Indices with brackets

Brackets are used to show that the power outside the brackets applies to each factor inside the brackets.

Consider $(2x)^3 = 2x \times 2x \times 2x$.

- Write this in index form without using brackets.
- Can you suggest the index form of $(3y)^4$ without brackets?

Consider $\left(\frac{3}{5}\right)^4 = \frac{3}{5} \times \frac{3}{5} \times \frac{3}{5} \times \frac{3}{5}$.

- Write the numerator and denominator of this expanded form in index form.
- Can you suggest the index form of $\left(\frac{x}{4}\right)^5$ without brackets?

Write a rule for removing the brackets of the following.

- $(ab)^m$
- $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^m$

Key ideas

- Index law 3: $(a^m)^n = a^{m\times n}$
  Remove brackets and multiply indices.
  For example, $(x^3)^4 = x^{3\times 4} = x^{12}$.
- Index law 4: $(a \times b)^m = a^m \times b^m$
  Apply the index to each factor in the brackets.
  For example, $(3x)^4 = 3^4x^4$.
- Index law 5: $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^m = \frac{a^m}{b^m}$
  Apply the index to the numerator and denominator.
  For example, $\left(\frac{y}{3}\right)^5 = \frac{y^5}{3^5}$.
- The zero power: a^0
  Any number (except zero) to the power of zero is 1.
  For example, $5^0 = 1$, $y^0 = 1$, $4y^0 = 4 \times 1 = 4$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 3H

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

1 Complete the following index laws.

a Any number (except 0) to the power of zero is equal to _____.

b Index law 3 states $(a^m)^n =$ _____.

c Index law 4: $(a \times b)^m =$ _____ $\times$ _____.

d Index law 5: $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^m = \frac{\square}{\square}$.

2 Copy and complete the following.

a $(4^2)^3 = 4^2 \times \square \times \square$

$= 4^{\square}$

b $(2a)^3 = 2a \times \square \times \square$

$= 2 \times \square \times \square \times a \times \square \times \square$

$= 2^{\square}a^{\square}$

c $\left(\frac{4}{7}\right)^4 = \frac{4}{7} \times \square \times \square \times \square$

$= \frac{4 \times \square \times \square \times \square}{7 \times \square \times \square \times \square}$

$= \frac{4^{\square}}{7^{\square}}$

FLUENCY 3–6(½) | 3–6(½)

Example 27 Using the zero power: $a^0 = 1$

Evaluate, using the zero power:

a $4^0 + 2^0$ **b** $3a^0$ **c** $(-3)^0 + 6x^0$

Solution	Explanation
a $4^0 + 2^0 = 1 + 1$ $= 2$	Zero power: $a^0 = 1$, any number to the power zero (except zero) is 1.
b $3a^0 = 3 \times a^0$ $= 3 \times 1$ $= 3$	The zero power applies only to a, so $a^0 = 1$.
c $(-3)^0 + 6x^0 = 1 + 6 \times 1$ $= 7$	Any number to the power of zero is 1. $(-3)^0 = 1, 6x^0 = 6 \times x^0 = 6 \times 1$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 Evaluate, using the zero power.

a 4^0 **b** 5^0 **c** x^0

d a^0 **e** $3e^0$ **f** $4y^0$

g $3^0 + 6^0$ **h** $10 - 10x^0$ **i** $3d^0 - 2$

j $(-4)^0 + 2x^0$ **k** $\frac{2}{m^0}$ **l** $5a^0 + 4b^0$

Any number (except zero) to the power of 0 is 1.
$4a^0 = 4 \times a^0 = 4 \times 1$

Example 28 Using index law 3: $(a^m)^n = a^{m \times n}$

Simplify the following, using the third index law.

a $(x^5)^7$ **b** $3(f^4)^3$

Solution	Explanation
a $(x^5)^7 = x^{5 \times 7}$ $= x^{35}$	Apply index law 3: $(a^m)^n = a^{m \times n}$ to multiply indices.
b $3(f^4)^3 = 3f^{4 \times 3}$ $= 3f^{12}$	Apply index law 3 to the value inside the bracket only.

4 Simplify the following, using the third index law.

a $(b^3)^4$ **b** $(f^5)^4$ **c** $(k^3)^7$

d $3(x^2)^3$ **e** $5(c^9)^2$ **f** $4(s^6)^3$

Index law 3:
$(a^m)^n = a^{m \times n}$

Example 29 Using index laws 4 and 5: $(a \times b)^m = a^m \times b^m$ and $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^m = \frac{a^m}{b^m}$

Simplify the following, using the third, fourth and fifth index laws.

a $(2s)^4$ **b** $(x^2y^3)^5$ **c** $\left(\frac{x}{4}\right)^3$

Solution	Explanation
a $(2s)^4 = 2^4 \times s^4$ $= 16s^4$	Apply index law 4: $(a \times b)^m = a^m \times b^m$. Evaluate $2^4 = 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times 2$.
b $(x^2y^3)^5 = (x^2)^5 \times (y^3)^5$ $= x^{10}y^{15}$	Using index law 4, apply the index 5 to each factor in the brackets. Using index law 3, multiply indices: $(x^2)^5 = x^{2 \times 5}$, $(y^3)^5 = y^{3 \times 5}$
c $\left(\frac{x}{4}\right)^3 = \frac{x^3}{4^3}$ $= \frac{x^3}{64}$	Apply index law 5: $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^m = \frac{a^m}{b^m}$. Evaluate $4^3 = 4 \times 4 \times 4$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

3H

5 Simplify, using the third, fourth and fifth index laws.

a $(3x)^2$ **b** $(4m)^3$ **c** $(5y)^3$

d $(2x^3)^4$ **e** $(x^2y)^5$ **f** $(3a^3)^3$

g $(x^4y^2)^6$ **h** $(a^2b)^3$ **i** $(m^3n^3)^4$

j $\left(\frac{x}{5}\right)^2$ **k** $\left(\frac{y}{3}\right)^4$ **l** $\left(\frac{m}{2}\right)^4$

m $\left(\frac{x^2}{y}\right)^3$ **n** $\left(\frac{x^3}{y^2}\right)^4$ **o** $\left(\frac{x}{y^5}\right)^3$

Index law 4 says $(3 \times x)^2 = 3^2 \times x^2$
Index law 5 says $\left(\frac{x}{5}\right)^2 = \frac{x^2}{5^2}$

Example 30 Combining index laws and negative indices

Simplify, using index laws, and express with positive indices.

a $\frac{3x^2y \times 2x^3y^2}{10xy^3}$ **b** $\left(\frac{2x^2}{y}\right)^4$ **c** $(2x^{-2})^3 + (3x)^0$

Solution	Explanation
a $\frac{3x^2y \times 2x^3y^2}{10xy^3}$	Simplify the numerator by multiplying coefficients and adding indices, using index law 1.
$= \frac{6x^5y^3}{10xy^3}$	Cancel the common factor of 6 and 10 and apply index law 2 to subtract indices of common bases.
$= \frac{3x^4y^0}{5}$	The zero power says $y^0 = 1$.
$= \frac{3x^4}{5}$	
b $\left(\frac{2x^2}{y}\right)^4 = \frac{(2x^2)^4}{y^4}$	Apply index law 5 to apply the index to the numerator and denominator.
$= \frac{2^4 \times (x^2)^4}{y^4}$	Apply laws 3 and 4 to multiply indices.
$= \frac{16x^8}{y^4}$	
c $(2x^{-2})^3 + (3x)^0 = 2^3 \times x^{-6} + 3^0 \times x^0$	Using index law 4, apply the power to each factor inside the brackets: $(x^{-2})^3 = x^{-2\times 3} = x^{-6}$
$= 8x^{-6} + 1 \times 1$	Any number to the power of zero is 1.
$= \frac{8}{x^6} + 1$	Use $a^{-m} = \frac{1}{a^m}$ to express with a positive index.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6 Simplify, using index laws.

a $\dfrac{m^7w \times m^3w^2}{m^4w^3}$ **b** $\dfrac{x^3y^2 \times x^2y^7}{10x^5y^4}$

c $\dfrac{b^3c^5 \times 4b^5c^3}{3b^4c^8}$ **d** $\dfrac{9c^4s^2 \times 3c^3s^5}{2c^3s^7}$

e $\dfrac{(5r^6)^2}{3r^8}$ **f** $\dfrac{(2p^4)^3}{3p^7}$

g $\left(\dfrac{2s^2}{t^3}\right)^4$ **h** $\left(\dfrac{r^2}{5s^3}\right)^4$

First simplify the numerator, then consider the denominator.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7–8(½) 7–9(½)

7 Simplify, using index laws, and express with positive indices.

a $(x^{-4})^2$ **b** $(x^3)^{-2}$ **c** $(x^{-2})^0$

d $(2y^{-2})^3$ **e** $(ay^{-3})^2$ **f** $(4x^{-3})^{-2}$

g $(m^{-4}) + 4(ab)^0$ **h** $(2a^{-2})^3 + (4a)^0$

i $(5a^{-2})^{-2} \times 5a^0$

Remove brackets using index laws, then use $a^{-m} = \dfrac{1}{a^m}$ to express with a positive index.

8 Evaluate without the use of a calculator.

a 2^{-2} **b** $\dfrac{4}{3^{-2}}$ **c** $\dfrac{5}{2^{-3}}$

d $\dfrac{(5^2)^2}{5^4}$ **e** $\dfrac{36^2}{6^4}$ **f** $\dfrac{27^2}{3^4}$

$36^2 = (6^2)^2$

9 Simplify the following.

a $2p^2q^4 \times pq^3$ **b** $4(a^2b)^3 \times (3ab)^3$

c $(4r^2y)^2 \times r^2y^4 \times 3(ry^2)^3$ **d** $2(m^3n)^4 \div m^3$

e $\dfrac{(7s^2y)^2 \times 3sy^2}{7(sy)^2}$ **f** $\dfrac{3(d^4c^3)^3 \times 4dc}{(2c^2d)^3}$

g $\dfrac{4r^2t \times 3(r^2t)^3}{6r^2t^4}$ **h** $\dfrac{(2xy)^2 \times 2(x^2y)^3}{8xy \times x^7y^3}$

All laws together — 10

10 Simplify the following, expressing your answer with positive indices.

a $(a^3b^2)^3 \times (a^2b^4)^{-1}$ **b** $2x^2y^{-1} \times (xy^4)^3$

c $2(p^2)^4 \times (3p^2q)^{-2}$ **d** $\dfrac{2a^3b^2}{a^{-3}} \times \dfrac{2a^2b^5}{b^4}$

e $\dfrac{(3rs^2)^4}{r^{-3}s^4} \times \dfrac{(2r^2s)^2}{s^7}$ **f** $\dfrac{4(x^{-2}y^4)^2}{x^2y^{-3}} \times \dfrac{xy^4}{2s^{-2}y}$

$(3p^2q)^{-2} = \dfrac{1}{(3p^2q)^2}$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3I Scientific notation

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

Scientific notation is useful when working with very large or very small numbers. Combined with the use of significant figures, numbers can be written down with an appropriate degree of accuracy and without the need to write all the zeroes that define the position of the decimal point. The approximate distance between the Earth and the Sun is 150 million kilometres or 1.5×10^8 km, when written in scientific notation. Negative indices can be used for very small numbers, such as $0.0000382 \text{ g} = 3.82 \times 10^{-5}$ g.

Let's start: Amazing facts large and small

Think of an object, place or living thing that is associated with a very large or small number.

- Give three examples of very large numbers.
- Give three examples of very small numbers.
- Can you remember how to write these numbers using scientific notation? List the rules you remember.

Key ideas

- A number written using **scientific notation** is of the form $a \times 10^m$, where $1 \leq a < 10$ or $-10 < a \leq -1$ and m is an integer.
- To write numbers using scientific notation, place the decimal point after the first non-zero digit and then multiply by the power of 10 that corresponds to how many places the decimal point is moved.
  - Large numbers will use positive powers of 10.
    For example, $24\,800\,000 = 2.48 \times 10^7$

    $9\,020\,000\,000 = 9.02 \times 10^9$
  - Small numbers will use negative powers of 10.
    For example, $0.00307 = 3.07 \times 10^{-3}$

    $0.0000012 = 1.2 \times 10^{-6}$
- **Significant figures** are counted from left to right, starting at the first non-zero digit. For example:
  - 47086120 is written 47 086 000 using five significant figures.
  - 2.03684 is written 2.037 using four significant figures.
  - 0.00143 is written 0.0014 using two significant figures.
  - 0.0014021 is written 0.00140 using three significant figures.
    Zeroes at the end of a number are counted for decimals (see 0.00140 above) but not whole numbers (see 47 086 000 above).

Scientific notation A way to express very large and very small numbers using [a number between 1 and 10] $\times 10^{\text{power}}$

Significant figure A digit that indicates how accurate a number is

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- When using scientific notation, the first significant figure sits to the left of the decimal point. For example:
  - $20\,190\,000$ is written 2.02×10^7 using three significant figures.
- The EE or Exp keys on calculators can be used to enter numbers that use scientific notation: $2.3\text{E}{-4}$ means 2.3×10^{-4}.

Exercise 3I

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 | 3, 4

Move the decimal point as many places as there are zeroes.
$\times$ means move the decimal point right.
$\div$ means move the decimal point left.

1 Evaluate the following.

a 1.24×100 **b** 2.8×100 **c** 3.02×1000
d $4.5 \div 100$ **e** $3.75 \div 1000$ **f** $6 \div 100$

2 Write these numbers as powers of 10; e.g 10^4 or 10^{-2}.

a 1000 **b** $10\,000\,000$ **c** 0.000001 **d** $\frac{1}{1000}$

3 State whether these numbers would have positive or negative indices when written in scientific notation.

a 7800 **b** 0.0024 **c** $27\,000$ **d** 0.0009

4 Write the number 4.8721, using the following numbers of significant figures.

a three **b** four **c** two

FLUENCY 5–7(½) | 5–7(½)

Example 31 Converting from scientific notation to a basic numeral

Write these numbers as a basic numeral.

a 5.016×10^5 **b** 3.2×10^{-7}

Solution	Explanation
a $5.016 \times 10^5 = 501\,600$	Move the decimal point 5 places to the right, inserting zeroes after the last digit. 5.01600
b $3.2 \times 10^{-7} = 0.00000032$	Move the decimal point 7 places to the left due to the -7, and insert zeroes where necessary.

5 Write these numbers as a basic numeral.

a 3.12×10^3 **b** 5.4293×10^4 **c** 7.105×10^5
d 8.213×10^6 **e** 5.95×10^4 **f** 8.002×10^5
g 1.012×10^4 **h** 9.99×10^6 **i** 2.105×10^8
j 4.5×10^{-3} **k** 2.72×10^{-2} **l** 3.085×10^{-4}
m 7.83×10^{-3} **n** 9.2×10^{-5} **o** 2.65×10^{-1}
p 1.002×10^{-4} **q** 6.235×10^{-6} **r** 9.8×10^{-1}

For a positive index, move the decimal point right (number gets bigger). For a negative index, move the decimal point left (number gets smaller).

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3I

Example 32 Writing numbers using scientific notation

Write these numbers in scientific notation.

a 5 700 000 **b** 0.0000006

Solution	Explanation
a $5\overset{\curvearrowright}{7}00000 = 5.7 \times 10^6$	Place the decimal point after the first non-zero digit (5) and then multiply by 10^6, as the decimal point has been moved 6 places to the left.
b $0.\overset{\curvearrowright}{0000006} = 6 \times 10^{-7}$	6 is the first non-zero digit. Multiply by 10^{-7} since the decimal point has been moved 7 places to the right.

6 Write these numbers in scientific notation.

a 43 000	**b** 712 000	**c** 901 200
d 10 010	**e** 23 900	**f** 703 000 000
g 0.00078	**h** 0.00101	**i** 0.00003
j 0.03004	**k** 0.112	**l** 0.00192

For scientific notation, place the decimal point after the first non-zero digit and multiply by the power of 10.

Example 33 Converting to scientific notation using significant figures

Write these numbers in scientific notation using three significant figures.

a 5 218 300 **b** 0.0042031

Solution	Explanation
a $5\,218\,300 = 5.22 \times 10^6$	Put the decimal point after 5 and multiply by 10^6: $5.\overset{\curvearrowright}{2}18300$ The digit following the third digit (8) is at least 5, so round the 1 up to 2.
b $0.0042031 = 4.20 \times 10^{-3}$	Put the decimal point after 4 and multiply by 10^{-3}: $0.\overset{\curvearrowright}{0}042031$ Round down in this case, since the digit following the third digit (3) is less than 5, but retain the zero to show the value of the third significant figure.

7 Write these numbers in scientific notation using three significant figures.

a 6241	**b** 572 644	
c 30 248	**d** 423 578	
e 10 089	**f** 34 971 863	
g 72 477	**h** 356 088	
i 110 438 523	**j** 0.002423	
k 0.018754	**l** 0.000125	
m 0.0078663	**n** 0.0007082	
o 0.11396	**p** 0.000006403	
q 0.00007892	**r** 0.000129983	

For three significant figures, count from the first non-zero digit. Look at the digit after the third digit to determine whether you should round up or down.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8–11

8 Write the following numerical facts using scientific notation.

Large numbers have a positive index. Small numbers have a negative index.

- **a** The area of Australia is about $7\,700\,000$ km^2.
- **b** The number of stones used to build the Pyramid of Khufu is about $2\,500\,000$.
- **c** The greatest distance of Pluto from the Sun is about $7\,400\,000\,000$ km.
- **d** A human hair is about 0.01 cm wide.
- **e** The mass of a neutron is about $0.00000000000000000000000001675$ kg.
- **f** The mass of a bacteria cell is about 0.00000000000095 g.

9 Explain why 38×10^7 is not written using scientific notation and then convert it to scientific notation.

10 Use a calculator to evaluate the following, giving the answers in scientific notation using three significant figures.

Locate the $\times 10^x$ or EE or Exp button on your calculator.

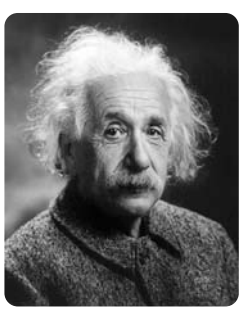
- **a** $(2.31)^{-7}$
- **b** $(5.04)^{-4}$
- **c** $(2.83 \times 10^2)^{-3}$
- **d** $5.1 \div (8 \times 10^2)$
- **e** $9.3 \times 10^{-2} \times 8.6 \times 10^8$
- **f** $(3.27 \times 10^4) \div (9 \times 10^{-5})$
- **g** $\sqrt{3.23 \times 10^{-6}}$
- **h** $\pi(3.3 \times 10^7)^2$

11 The speed of light is approximately 3×10^5 km/s and the average distance between Pluto and the Sun is about 5.9×10^9 km. How long does it take for light from the Sun to reach Pluto? Answer correct to the nearest minute. (Divide by 60 to convert seconds to minutes.)

Time $= \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{speed}}$

$E = mc^2$ — 12

12 $E = mc^2$ is a formula derived by Albert Einstein (1879–1955). The formula relates the energy (E joules) of an object to its mass (m kg), where c is the speed of light (approximately 3×10^8 m/s).



Albert Einstein

Use $E = mc^2$ to answer these questions using scientific notation.

- **a** Find the energy, in joules, contained inside an object with these given masses.
  - **i** 10 kg
  - **ii** 26 000 kg
  - **iii** 0.03 kg
  - **iv** 0.00001 kg
- **b** Find the mass, in kilograms, of an object that contains the given amounts of energy. Give your answer using 3 significant figures.
  - **i** 1×10^{25} J
  - **ii** 3.8×10^{16} J
  - **iii** 8.72×10^4 J
  - **iv** 1.7×10^{-2} J
- **c** The mass of the Earth is about 6×10^{24} kg. How much energy does this convert to?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3J Exponential growth and decay

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

Exponential change occurs when a quantity is continually affected by a constant multiplying factor. The change in quantity is not the same amount each time.

If you have a continual percentage increase, it is called exponential growth. If you have a continual percentage decrease, it is called exponential decay.

Some examples include:

- compound interest at a rate of 5% per year, where the interest is calculated as 5% of the investment value each year, including the previous year's interest
- a radioactive element has a 'half-life' of 5 years, which means the element decays at a rate of 50% every 5 years.

Let's start: A compound rule

Imagine that you have an investment valued at \$100 000 and you hope that it will return 10% p.a. (per annum).
The 10% return is to be added to the investment balance each year.

- Discuss how to calculate the investment balance in the first year.
- Discuss how to calculate the investment balance in the second year.
- Complete this table.

Year	0	1	2	3
Balance (\$)	100 000	$100\,000 \times 1.1$ = _____	$100\,000 \times 1.1 \times$ _____ = _____	_____ = _____

- Recall how indices can be used to calculate the balance after the second year.
- Discuss how indices can be used to calculate the balance after the 10th year.
- What might be the rule connecting the investment balance (\$$A$) and the time, n years?

Key ideas

Exponential growth Repeatedly increasing a quantity by a constant percentage over time

■ **Exponential growth** and **decay** can be modelled by the rule $A = A_0\left(1 \pm \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$.

- A is the amount.
- A_0 is the initial amount (the subscript zero represents time zero).
- r is the percentage rate of increase or decrease.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- n is time; i.e. how many times the percentage increase/decrease is applied.

- For a growth rate of $r\%$ p.a., use $1 + \frac{r}{100}$.
  - For example, for a population increasing at 2% per year, $P = P_0(1.02)^n$.
- For a decay rate of $r\%$ p.a., use $1 - \frac{r}{100}$.
  - For a population decreasing at 3% per year, $P = P_0(0.97)^n$.
- Compound interest involves *adding* any interest earned to the balance at the end of each year or other period. The rule for the investment amount ($\$A$) is given by: $A = P\left(1 + \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$.
  - P is the initial amount or principal.
  - r is the interest rate expressed as a percentage.
  - n is the time.

Exponential decay Repeatedly decreasing a quantity by a constant percentage over time

Exercise 3J

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 An investment of $1000 is to grow by 5% per year. Round your answers to the nearest cent.

5% of x is $0.05 \times x$.

a Find the interest earned in the first year; i.e. 5% of $1000.
b Find the investment balance at the end of the first year; i.e. investment + interest.
c Find the interest earned in the second year; i.e. 5% of answer to part **b**.
d Find the interest earned in the third year.

2 The mass of a 5 kg limestone rock exposed to the weather is decreasing at a rate of 2% per annum.

For decrease in part **b**, use $1 - \frac{r}{100}$.

a Find the mass of the rock at the end of the first year.
b Copy and complete the rule for the mass of the rock (M kg) after n years.
$M = 5(1 - _____)^n = 5 \times _____^n$
c Use your rule to calculate the mass of the rock after 5 years, correct to two decimal places.

3 Decide whether the following represent exponential *growth* or exponential *decay*.

a $A = 1000 \times 1.3^n$
b $A = 200 \times 1.78^n$
c $A = 350 \times 0.9^n$
d $P = 50\,000 \times 0.85^n$
e $P = P_0\left(1 + \frac{3}{100}\right)^n$
f $T = T_0\left(1 - \frac{7}{100}\right)^n$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

3J

FLUENCY 4–6 4(½),5–7

Example 34 Writing exponential rules

Form exponential rules for the following situations.

a Paloma invests her $100 000 in savings at a rate of 14% per annum.

b A city's initial population of 50 000 is decreasing by 12% per year.

Solution	Explanation
a Let A = the amount of money at any time n = the number of years the money is invested $r = 14$ $A_0 = 100\,000$ (initial amount)	Define your variables. The basic formula is $A = A_0\left(1 \pm \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$.
$A = 100\,000\left(1 + \frac{14}{100}\right)^n$ $\therefore A = 100\,000(1.14)^n$	Substitute $r = 14$ and $A_0 = 100\,000$ and use '+' since we have growth. $\frac{14}{100} = 0.14$.
b Let P = the population at any time n = the number of years the population decreases $P_0 = 50\,000$ (starting population) $r = 12$	Define your variables. The basic formula is $P = P_0\left(1 \pm \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$.
$P = 50\,000\left(1 - \frac{12}{100}\right)^n$ $\therefore P = 50\,000(0.88)^n$	Substitute $r = 12$ and $P_0 = 50\,000$ and use '−' since we have decay. $\frac{12}{100} = 0.12$ and $1 - 0.12 = 0.88$.

The exponential rule is of the form $A = A_0\left(1 \pm \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$

- A is the amount
- A_0 is the initial amount
- r is the percentage increase/decrease
- n is the time

Use + for growth and − for decay.

4 Define variables and form exponential rules for the following situations.

a $200 000 is invested at 17% per annum.

b A house initially valued at $530 000 is losing value at 5% per annum.

c The value of a car, bought for $14 200, is decreasing at 3% per annum.

d A population, initially 172 500, is increasing at 15% per year.

e A tank with 1200 litres of water is leaking at a rate of 10% of the water in the tank every hour.

f A cell of area 0.01 cm^2 doubles its size every minute.

g An oil spill, initially covering an area of 2 square metres, is increasing at 5% per minute.

h A substance of mass 30 g is decaying at a rate of 8% per hour.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 35 Applying exponential rules

House prices are rising at 9% per year and Zoe's flat is currently valued at \$600 000.

a Determine a rule for the value of Zoe's flat (\$$V$) in n years' time.

b What will be the value of her flat:

i next year? **ii** in 3 years' time?

c Use trial and error to find when Zoe's flat will be valued at \$900 000, to one decimal place.

Solution

a Let V = value of Zoe's flat at any time

V_0 = starting value \$600 000

n = number of years from now

$r = 9$

$V = V_0(1.09)^n$

$\therefore\ V = 600\,000(1.09)^n$

Explanation

Define your variables.

$V = V_0\left(1 \pm \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$

Use '+' since we have growth.

b i When $n = 1$, $V = 600\,000(1.09)^1$

$= 654\,000$

Zoe's flat would be valued at \$654 000 next year.

Substitute $n = 1$ for next year.

ii When $n = 3$, $V = 600\,000(1.09)^3$

$= 777\,017.40$

In 3 years' time Zoe's flat will be valued at about \$777 017.

For 3 years, substitute $n = 3$.

c

n	4	5	4.6	4.8	4.7
V	846 949	923 174	891 894	907 399	899 613

Zoe's flat will be valued at \$900 000 in about 4.7 years' time.

Try a value of n in the rule. If V is too low, increase your n value; if V is too high, decrease your n value. Continue this process until you get close to 900 000.

5 The value of a house purchased for \$500 000 is expected to grow by 10% per year. Let \$$A$ be the value of the house after n years.

An increase of 10% is $1 + \frac{10}{100}$.

a Copy and complete the rule connecting A and n.

$A = 500\,000 \times$ _____^{n}

b Use your rule to find the expected value of the house after the following number of years. Round your answers to the nearest cent.

i 3 years **ii** 10 years **iii** 20 years

c Use trial and error to estimate when the house will be worth \$1 million. Round your answer to one decimal place.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3J

6 A share portfolio initially worth $\$300\,000$ is reduced by 15% p.a. over a number of years. Let $\$A$ be the share portfolio value after n years.

A decrease of 15% is $1 - \frac{15}{100}$.

a Copy and complete the rule connecting A and n.
$A =$ _____ $\times 0.85^n$

b Use your rule to find the value of the shares after the following number of years. Round your answers to the nearest cent.
i 2 years **ii** 7 years **iii** 12 years

c Use trial and error to estimate when the share portfolio will be valued at $\$180\,000$. Round your answer to one decimal place.

7 A water tank containing $15\,000$ L has a small hole that reduces the amount of water by 6% per hour.

a Determine a rule for the volume of water (V litres) left after n hours.

b Calculate (to the nearest litre) the amount of water left in the tank after:
i 3 hours **ii** 7 hours

c How much water is left after 2 days? Round your answer to two decimal places.

d Using trial and error, determine when the tank holds less than 500 L of water, to one decimal place.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8, 10

8 A certain type of bacteria grows according to the equation $N = 3000(2.6)^n$, where N is the number of cells present after n hours.

'At the start' is $n = 0$ and $a^0 = 1$.

a How many bacteria are there at the start?

b Determine the number of cells (round to the whole number) present after:
i 0 hours **ii** 2 hours **iii** 4.6 hours

c If $5\,000\,000$ bacteria are needed to make a drop of serum, determine by trial and error how long you will have to wait to make a drop (to the nearest minute).

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9 A car tyre has 10 mm of tread when new. It is considered unroadworthy when there is only 3 mm left. The rubber wears at 12.5% every 10 000 km.

a Write an equation relating the depth of tread (D) for every 10 000 km travelled.

b If a tyre lasts 80 000 km ($n = 8$) before becoming unroadworthy, it is considered to be a 'good' tyre. Is this a good tyre?

c Using trial and error, determine when the tyre becomes unroadworthy ($D = 3$), to the nearest 10 000 km.

Use $D = D_0\left(1 - \frac{12.5}{100}\right)^n$ where n is $\frac{\text{number of km}}{10\,000}$ and D_0 is initial tread. In part **b**, is D greater than 3 when $n = 8$?

10 A cup of coffee has an initial temperature of 90°C.

a If the temperature reduces by 8% every minute, determine a rule for the temperature of the coffee (T) after n minutes.

b What is the temperature of the coffee (to one decimal place) after:

i 2 minutes? **ii** 90 seconds?

c Using trial and error, when is the coffee suitable to drink if it is best consumed at a temperature of 68.8°C? Give your answer to the nearest second.

The rule is of the form: $T = T_0\left(1 - \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$

Time periods

— 11, 12

11 Interest on investments can be calculated using different time periods. Consider \$1000 invested at 10% p.a. over 5 years.

- If interest is compounded annually, then $r = 10$ and $n = 5$, so $A = 1000(1.1)^5$.
- If interest is compounded monthly, then $r = \frac{10}{12}$ and $n = 5 \times 12 = 60$,

so $A = 1000\left(1 + \frac{10}{1200}\right)^{60}$.

a If interest is calculated annually, find the value of the investment, to the nearest cent, after:

i 5 years **ii** 8 years **iii** 15 years

b If interest is calculated monthly, find the value of the investment, to the nearest cent, after:

i 5 years **ii** 8 years **iii** 15 years

12 You are given \$2000 and you invest it in an account that offers 7% p.a. compound interest. What will the investment be worth, to the nearest cent, after 5 years if interest is compounded:

a annually? **b** monthly? **c** weekly? (Assume 52 weeks in the year.)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Maths@Work: Electrical trades

Electricians must be able to work in teams and also independently. They need to be good at calculating with decimals, as well as using scientific notation. Understanding and working with electrical charges is one example where this is important.

When evaluating academic readiness for apprenticeship training in the construction trades, which include electricians, plumbers and air conditioning mechanics, scientific notation is seen as important and appears in different areas of their courses.

Complete these questions, which an apprentice electrician may face during their training.

1 The electrical charge (Q) of an object is determined by the number of electrons it has in excess to the number of protons it has.
The unit for measuring electrical charge is the coulomb (C). One coulomb (1C) is approximately 6.24 quintillion electrons (e).

$$1 \text{ C} = 6\,240\,000\,000\,000\,000\,000 \text{ e}$$

a Convert the following electrical charges, in coulombs, to the number of electrons for each. Use scientific notation using three significant figures.

i 1 C **ii** 2 C **iii** 3 C

iv 250 C **v** $\frac{1}{2}$ C **vi** 12 C

b The charge on one electron in coulombs is $(1 \div 6\,240\,000\,000\,000\,000\,000)$ C. Write down the value of the charge of one electron in scientific notation, using two significant figures.

c Amperes (or amps) are a measure of how much electrical charge in coulombs per second is being transmitted. We call this flow of charge electrical current. This means that an electrical current of 1 A (ampere) has 1 coulomb of charge per second, which is exactly $6.24150975 \times 10^{18}$ electrons per second flowing through a point in the wire at any given time.
Calculate the exact number of electrons per second (e/s) flowing through a wire if the current is:

i 2 A **ii** 10 A **iii** 20 A

iv $\frac{1}{2}$ A **v** 5 A

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 When working with metal it is important to know how it behaves under increases in temperature. For each degree Celsius increase in temperature of hard steel it has a linear expansion by a factor of 0.0000132.
Write the following scientific notation answers, using four significant figures.

a Express the value 0.0000132 in scientific notation.

b If a section of hard steel measuring 12 mm thick is subject to a 2°C increase in temperature, what is its increase in length, in mm?

Use $12 \times (1 + 0.0000132)^2$, then substract 12 to find the increase.

c Give one example to illustrate the importance of this information when working with steel.

Using technology

3 Using an Excel spreadsheet, set up a conversion table between electrical charges measured in coulombs and in electrons, as shown below.

The formula for cell D3 : = $(1.60217646 \times 10^{-19}) \times$ C3.
Excel uses capital E to represent a power of 10.

D3 =(1.60217646 *(10^-19))*C3

	A	B	C	D
1	Conversion table between charge (Q) in coulombs (C) and electrons (e)			
2	Charge *Q* (in coulombs, C)	Charge *Q* (in number of electrons, e)	Charge *Q* (in number of electrons, e)	Charge *Q* (in coulombs, C)
3	1	6.24150975E+18	1	1.60217646E-19
4	10		10	
5	100		100	
6	1000		1000	
7	10000		10000	
8	100000		100000	
9	1000000		1000000	

Use your spreadsheet to find the answers to the following questions and write them in scientific notation to nine significant figures.

i State the charge of 100 C as the number of electrons.

ii State the charge in coulombs of 1 million electrons.

iii What is the increase in the number of electrons between charges of 1000 C and $1\,000\,000$ C?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 Using an Excel spreadsheet, set up a conversion table between electrical current in amperes (A), time in seconds and charge in units of C and e, as shown below.
Note: Charge in coulombs = amperes × time in seconds

Formulas using amperes will need $ signs since $A22$ is a fixed cell.

	A	B	C	D
20	**Conversion table between amperes, time and electrical charge measured in coulombs and numbers of electrons**			
21	Electrical current (A)	Time (s)	Charge Q (in coulombs, C)	Charge Q (in number of electrons, e)
22	0.5	1		
23		30		
24		60		
25		90		
26		120		
27		150		
28		180		

When referring to cell A22, type $A$22.

Use your spreadsheet to find the answers to the following questions and write them in scientific notation, to nine significant figures where possible.

a If a current of 0.50 A flows through a circuit for 90 seconds, how much charge will have passed into the circuit:
  i in coulombs? **ii** in number of electrons?

b If a current of 1.5 A flows through a circuit for 150 seconds, how much charge will have passed into the circuit:
  i in coulombs? **ii** in number of electrons?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1 In this magic square, each row and column adds to a sum that is an algebraic expression. Complete the square to find the sum.

$\frac{4x^2}{2x}$	$-y$	$x+3y$
$x-2y$		$2y$

2 Write $3^{n-1} \times 3^{n-1} \times 3^{n-1}$ as a single power of 3.

3 You are offered a choice of two prizes:
- One million dollars right now, or
- You can receive 1 cent on the first day of a 30-day month, double your money every day for 30 days and receive the total amount on the 30th day.

Which prize offers the most money?

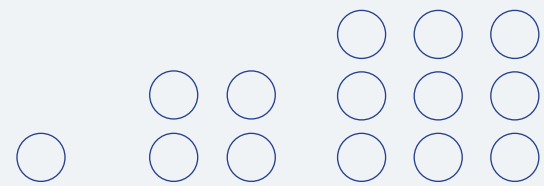
4 Simplify $\frac{25^6 \times 5^4}{125^5}$ without the use of a calculator.

5 Write $(((2^1)^2)^3)^4$ as a single power of 2.

6 How many zeroes are there in 100^{100} in expanded form?

7 Simplify $\frac{x}{2}+\frac{3x}{5}-\frac{4x}{3}+\frac{x+1}{6}$.

8 Write a rule for the number of counters in the nth term of the pattern below. Use this to find the number of counters in the 15th term.



Term 1 Term 2 Term 3

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter summary

Algebra

Simplifying expressions
Add/subtract like terms only. Like terms have the same pronumeral factors.
e.g. $3x$ and $7x$, $2xy$ and $4yx$, not $2x$ and x^2 or $3y$ and $4xy$.
For example,
$3x + 2y - x + 7y = 3x - x + 2y + 7y$
$= 2x + 9y$

Multiply/Divide
$3a \times 2b = 3 \times 2 \times a \times b$
$= 6ab$
$\frac{{}^{1}\cancel{7}xy^{1}}{{}_{2}\cancel{14}y_{1}} = \frac{x}{2}$

Algebraic expressions
$(3xy)$ $(+7x)$ $(-4y)$ $(+3)$
4 terms
3 is the constant term.
7 is the coefficient of x.
-4 is the coefficient of y.

Expanding
$a(b + c) = ab + ac$
$a(b - c) = ab - ac$
e.g. $2(4x + 3) = 8x + 6$
$-3x(2x - y) = -6x^2 + 3xy$

Multiplying/dividing algebraic fractions ★
Multiply: Cancel common factors in factorised form and then multiply.
e.g. $\frac{3(x+4)^{1}}{\cancel{2}^{1}} \times \frac{{}^{4}\cancel{8}x}{\cancel{x+4}^{1}}$
$= 12x$
Divide: Multiply by the reciprocal of the fraction following the ÷ sign.
Reciprocal of $\frac{a}{b}$ is $\frac{b}{a}$.

Factorising
This is the opposite of expanding
Factorised form Expanded form
$2(x + 4)$ = $2x + 8$
Look for highest common factor of terms.
e.g. $3ab + 6a$ HCF is $3a$.
$= 3a(b + 2)$
$-2x^2 - 6x$ HCF is $-2x$.
$= -2x(x + 3)$

Adding/subtracting algebraic fractions ★
Find the lowest common denominator and combine.
e.g. $\frac{x}{2} + \frac{2x}{3}$ LCD is 6.
$= \frac{3x}{6} + \frac{4x}{6}$
$= \frac{7x}{6}$

Indices

Index form a^m
a is the base.
m is the index/power/exponent.
Index form Expanded form
5^4 = $5 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5$
e.g. $3 \times a \times b \times a \times a \times b = 3a^3b^2$

Exponential growth and decay ★
For a repeated percentage increase or decrease, the rule can be
$A = A_0\left(1 \pm \frac{r}{100}\right)^n$, where
A_0 is the initial amount
r is % rate
n is the amount of time.
Use '+' for growth and '–' for decay.

Index laws
Law 1: $a^m \times a^n = a^{m+n}$
Law 2: $a^m \div a^n = a^{m-n}$
Law 3: $(a^m)^n = a^{m \times n}$
Law 4: $(ab)^m = a^m \times b^m$
Law 5: $\left(\frac{a}{b}\right)^m = \frac{a^m}{b^m}$
Zero power: $a^0 = 1$ when $a \neq 0$.

Negative indices
$a^{-m} = \frac{1}{a^m}$
e.g. $x^{-3} = \frac{1}{x^3}$
$\frac{1}{a^{-m}} = a^m$
e.g. $\frac{4}{2^{-3}} = 4 \times 2^3 = 32$

Scientific notation
Used for very large and small numbers in the form $a \times 10^m$, where $1 \leq a < 10$ or $-10 < a \leq -1$.
$3\,870\,000 = 3.87 \times 10^6$
$0.00021 = 2.1 \times 10^{-4}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter review

Multiple-choice questions

3A **1** The coefficient of x in $3xy - 4x + 7$ is:

A 4 **B** 7 **C** -4 **D** 3 **E** -1

3B **2** The simplified form of $7ab + 2b - 5ab + b$ is:

A $2ab + 2b^2$ **B** $2ab + 3b$ **C** $5ab$ **D** $2ab + b$ **E** $12ab + 3b$

3C **3** The expanded form of $2x(3x - 5)$ is:

A $6x^2 - 5$ **B** $6x - 10$ **C** $6x^2 - 10x$ **D** $5x^2 - 10x$ **E** $-4x$

3D **4** The fully factorised form of $8xy - 24y$ is:

A $4y(2x - 6y)$ **B** $8(xy - 3y)$ **C** $8y(x - 24)$ **D** $8y(x - 3)$ **E** $8x(y - 24)$

3E **5** The simplified form of $\frac{2(x+1)}{5x} \times \frac{15}{x+1}$ is:

A $\frac{6}{x+1}$ **B** $\frac{6}{x}$ **C** $\frac{3(x+1)}{x}$ **D** $6x$ **E** $\frac{3x}{x+1}$

3F **6** The sum of the algebraic fractions $\frac{3x}{8} + \frac{x}{12}$ is:

A $\frac{x}{5}$ **B** $\frac{x}{6}$ **C** $\frac{x}{24}$ **D** $\frac{11x}{24}$ **E** $\frac{9x}{24}$

3G **7** $3x^3y \times 2x^5y^3$ is equal to:

A $5x^{15}y^3$ **B** $6x^{15}y^3$ **C** $6x^8y^4$ **D** $5x^8y^4$ **E** $6x^8y^3$

3G **8** $12a^4 \div (4a^7)$ simplifies to:

A $3a^3$ **B** $8a^3$ **C** $3a^{11}$ **D** $\frac{8}{a^3}$ **E** $\frac{3}{a^3}$

3H **9** $(2x^4)^3$ can be written as:

A $2x^{12}$ **B** $2x^7$ **C** $6x^{12}$ **D** $8x^{12}$ **E** $8x^7$

3H **10** $5x^0 - (2x)^0$ is equal to:

A 4 **B** 0 **C** 3 **D** 2 **E** -1

3I **11** 417 000 converted to scientific notation is:

A 4.17×10^{-5} **B** 417×10^3 **C** 4.17×10^5
D 0.417×10^6 **E** 41.7×10^{-2}

3J **12** A rule for the amount of money, A, in an account after n years, if \$1200 is invested at 4% per year, is:

A $A = 1200(4)^n$ **B** $A = 1200(1.4)^n$ **C** $A = 1200(0.96)^n$
D $A = 1200(1.04)^n$ **E** $A = 1200(0.04)^n$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

Short-answer questions

3A **1** Consider the expression $3xy - 3b + 4x^2 + 5$.
- **a** How many terms are in the expression?
- **b** What is the constant term?
- **c** State the coefficient of:
  - **i** x^2 **ii** b

3A **2** Write an algebraic expression for the following.
- **a** 3 more than y
- **b** 5 less than the product of x and y
- **c** the sum of a and b is divided by 4

3A **3** Evaluate the following if $x = 3$, $y = 5$ and $z = -2$.
- **a** $3x + y$ **b** xyz **c** $y^2 - 5z$

3B **4** Simplify the following expressions.
- **a** $4x - 5 + 3x$ **b** $4a - 5b + 9a + 3b$ **c** $3xy + xy^2 - 2xy - 4y^2x$
- **d** $3m \times 4n$ **e** $-2xy \times 7x$ **f** $\frac{8ab}{12a}$

3C **5** Expand the following and collect like terms where necessary.
- **a** $5(2x + 4)$ **b** $-2(3x - 4y)$ **c** $3x(2x + 5y)$
- **d** $3 + 4(a + 3)$ **e** $3(y + 3) + 2(y + 2)$ **f** $5(2t + 3) - 2(t + 2)$

3D **6** Factorise the following expressions.
- **a** $16x - 40$ **b** $10x^2y + 35xy^2$
- **c** $4x^2 - 10x$ **d** $-2xy - 18x$ (include the common negative)

3F **7** Simplify the following algebraic fractions involving addition and subtraction.
- **a** $\frac{2x}{3} + \frac{4x}{15}$ **b** $\frac{3}{7} - \frac{a}{2}$ **c** $\frac{x+4}{4} + \frac{x-3}{5}$

3E **8** Simplify these algebraic fractions by first cancelling common factors in factorised form.
- **a** $\frac{5x}{12} \times \frac{9}{10x}$ **b** $\frac{x+2}{4} \times \frac{16x}{x+2}$ **c** $\frac{12x-4}{4}$ **d** $\frac{x-3}{4} \div \frac{3(x-3)}{8}$

3G **9** Simplify the following, using index laws 1 and 2.
- **a** $3x^5 \times 4x^2$ **b** $4xy^6 \times 2x^3y^{-2}$ **c** $\frac{b^7}{b^3}$ **d** $\frac{4a^3b^5}{6ab^2}$

3G **10** Express the following, using positive indices.
- **a** $4x^{-3}$ **b** $3r^4s^{-2}$ **c** $\frac{2x^{-3}y^4}{3}$ **d** $\frac{4}{m^{-5}}$

3H **11** Simplify the following, using the third, fourth and fifth index laws.
- **a** $(b^2)^4$ **b** $(2m^2)^3$ **c** $\left(\frac{x}{7}\right)^2$ **d** $\left(\frac{4y^2}{z^4}\right)^3$

3H **12** Simplify the following, using the zero power.
- **a** 7^0 **b** $4x^0$ **c** $5a^0 + (2y)^0$ **d** $(x^2 + 4y)^0$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3H **13** Simplify the following, using index laws. Express all answers with positive indices.

a $\dfrac{3x^2y^4 \times 5xy^7}{12x^3y^5}$ **b** $\dfrac{(5x^2y)^2 \times 4xy^2}{8(xy)^2}$

c $\dfrac{2x^3y^2 \times 5xy^2}{x^7y^4}$ **d** $\dfrac{4x^2y^5}{8(x^2)^{-3}y^8}$

3I **14** Write these numbers as a basic numeral.

a 4.25×10^3 **b** 3.7×10^7 **c** 2.1×10^{-2} **d** 7.25×10^{-5}

3I **15** Convert these numbers to scientific notation, using three significant figures.

a 123 574 **b** 39 452 178 **c** 0.0000090241 **d** 0.00045986

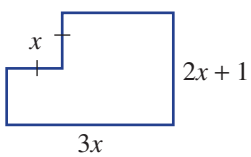
3J **16** Form an exponential equation for the following.

a The population of a colony of kangaroos, which starts at 20 and is increasing at a rate of 10%.

b The amount of petrol in a petrol tank fuelling a generator if it starts with 100 000 litres and uses 15% of its fuel every hour.

Extended-response questions

1 A room in a house has the shape and dimensions, in metres, shown. All lines meet at 90°.



a Find the perimeter of the room, in factorised form.

b If $x = 3$, what is the room's perimeter?

The floor of the room is to be recarpeted.

c Give the area of the floor in terms of x and in expanded form.

d If the carpet costs $20 per square metre and $x = 3$, what is the cost of laying the carpet?

2 During the growing season, a certain type of water lily spreads by 9% per week. The water lily covers an area of 2 m^2 at the start of the growing season.

a Write a rule for the area, A m^2, covered by the water lily after n weeks.

b Calculate the area covered, correct to four decimal places, after:

i 2 weeks

ii 5 weeks

c Use trial and error to determine, to one decimal place, when there will be a coverage of 50 m^2.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 4

Probability

What you will learn

4A Review of probability (Consolidating)
4B Venn diagrams
4C Two-way tables
4D Conditional probability ★
4E Using tables for two-step experiments
4F Using tree diagrams
4G Independent events ★

Australian curriculum

PROBABILITY

Describe the results of two- and three-step chance experiments, both with and without replacements, assign probabilities to outcomes and determine probabilities of events. Investigate the concept of independence **(ACMSP246)**

Use the language of 'if ....then, 'given', 'of', 'knowing that' to investigate conditional statements and identify common mistakes in interpreting such language **(ACMSP247)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

Choices and chance

For many of our life choices, the outcome has an element of chance due to random effects.

A punter may choose a horse to bet on based on its past performance. However, random or unknown factors can mean that a horse with odds as low as 1 in 100 can win the Melbourne Cup.

Investing in the share market involves a certain amount of risk and investors will often buy or sell shares based on recent data about a company's profitability.

The new Bureau of Meteorology 1660 teraflop supercomputer in Victoria generates accurate and fast probability calculations of various weather events. People can make more educated choices when they know the risk level of thunderstorms, wind changes during bushfires or flooding rain etc.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Pre-test

1 A letter is selected from the word PROBABILITY.

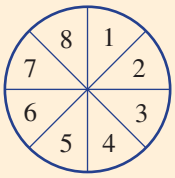
a How many letters are there in total?

b Find the chance (i.e. probability) of selecting:

i the letter R **ii** the letter B **iii** a vowel

iv not a vowel **v** a T or an I **vi** neither a B nor a P

2 A spinning wheel has eight equal sectors numbered 1 to 8. On one spin of the wheel, find the following probabilities.



a Pr(5) **b** Pr(even)

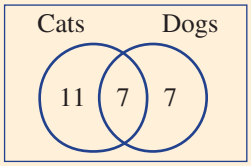
c Pr(not even) **d** Pr(multiple of 3)

e Pr(factor of 12) **f** Pr(odd or a factor of 12)

g Pr(both odd and a factor of 12)

3 Arrange from lowest to highest: $\frac{1}{2}$, 0.4, 1 in 5, 39%, $\frac{3}{4}$, 1, 0, $\frac{9}{10}$, 0.62, 71%.

4 This Venn diagram shows the number of people in a group of 25 who own cats and/or dogs.



a State the number of people who own:

i a dog **ii** a cat or a dog (including both)

iii only a cat

b If a person is selected at random from this group, find the probability that they will own:

i a cat **ii** a cat and a dog **iii** only a dog

5 Drew shoots from the free-throw line on a basketball court. After 80 shots he counts 35 successful throws.

a Estimate the probability, in simplified form, that his next throw will be successful.

b Estimate the probability, in simplified form, that his next throw will not be successful.

6 Two 4-sided dice are rolled and the sum of the two numbers obtained is noted. Copy and complete this grid to help answer the following.

Roll 2 \ Roll 1	1	2	3	4
1				
2				
3				
4				

a What is the total number of outcomes?

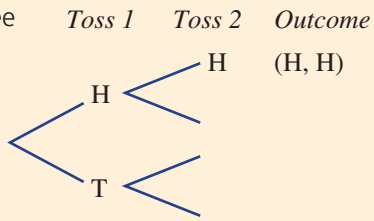
b Find the probability that the total sum is:

i 2 **ii** 4

iii less than 5 **iv** less than or equal to 5

v at most 6 **vi** no more than 3

7 Two coins are tossed. Copy and complete this tree diagram to help answer the following.



a State the total number of outcomes.

b Find the probability of obtaining:

i 2 heads

ii no heads

iii 1 tail

iv at least 1 tail

v 1 of each, a head and a tail

vi at most 2 heads

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4A Review of probability

CONSOLIDATING

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

Probability is an area of mathematics concerned with the likelihood of particular random events. In some situations, such as rolling a die, we can determine theoretical probabilities because we know the total number of outcomes and the number of favourable outcomes. In other cases we can use statistics and experimental results to describe the chance that an event will occur. The chance that a particular soccer team will win its next match, for example, could be estimated using various results from previous games.

A soccer team could win, lose or draw the next match it plays, but these three outcomes do not necessarily have the same probability.

Let's start: Name the event

For each number below, describe an event that has that exact or approximate probability. If you think it is exact, give a reason.

$\frac{1}{2}$ 25% 0.2 0.00001 $\frac{99}{100}$

Key ideas

- Definitions
  - A **trial** is a single undertaking of an experiment, such as a single roll of a die.
  - The **sample space** is the list of outcomes from an experiment, such as $\{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ from rolling a 6-sided die.
  - An **outcome** is a possible result of an experiment, such as a 6 on the roll of a die.
  - An **event** is the list of favourable outcomes, such as a 5 or 6 from the roll of a die.
  - Equally likely outcomes are possible results that have the same chance of occurring.

Trial One run of an experiment

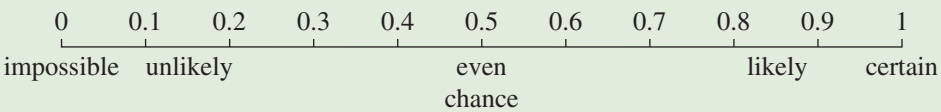
Sample space All the possible outcomes of an event

Outcome One of the possibilities from a chance experiment

Event A situation involving chance or probability trials

Chance The likelihood of an event happening

- In the study of probability, a numerical value based on a scale from 0 to 1 is used to describe levels of **chance**.



- A probability can be written as a decimal, fraction or percentage; e.g. 0.125, $\frac{1}{8}$ or 12.5%.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- The probability of an event in which outcomes are equally likely is calculated as follows:

$$\Pr(\text{Event}) = \frac{\text{number of favourable outcomes}}{\text{total number of outcomes}}$$

- Experimental probability is calculated in the same way as theoretical probability but uses the results of an experiment.

$$\Pr(\text{Event}) = \frac{\text{number of favourable outcomes}}{\text{total number of trials}}$$

  - The long run proportion is the experimental probability for a sufficiently large number of trials.

Exercise 4A

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 2(½), 3

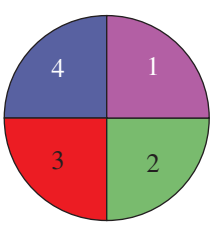
1 Order these events (**A** to **D**) from least likely to most likely.

A The chance that it will rain every day for the next 10 days.
B The chance that a member of class is ill on the next school day.
C The chance that school is cancelled next year.
D The chance that the Sun comes up tomorrow.

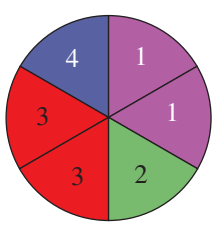
2 For the following spinners, find the probability that the outcome will be a 4.

Since each section is equal,
$\Pr(4) = \frac{\text{number of 4s}}{\text{total number of sections}}$

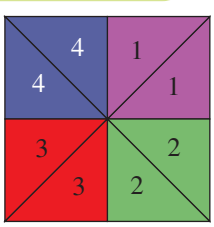
a



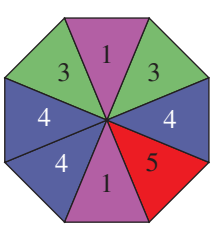
b



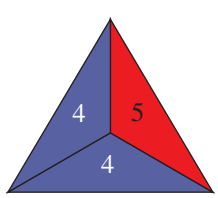
c



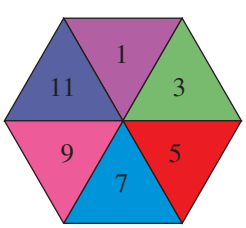
d



e



f



3 A coin is flipped once.

a How many different outcomes are possible from a single flip of the coin?
b What are the possible outcomes from a single flip of the coin (i.e. list the sample space)?
c Are the possible outcomes equally likely?
d What is the probability of obtaining a tail?
e What is the probability of not obtaining a tail?
f What is the probability of obtaining a tail or a head?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 4–6 4, 6, 7

Example 1 Calculating simple theoretical probabilities

A letter is chosen randomly from the word TELEVISION.

a How many letters are there in the word TELEVISION?

b Find the probability that the letter is:

i a V **ii** an E

iii not an E **iv** an E or a V

Solution	Explanation
a 10	The sample space includes 10 letters.
b i $\Pr(V) = \frac{1}{10} (= 0.1)$	$\Pr(V) = \frac{\text{number of Vs}}{\text{total number of letters}}$
ii $\Pr(E) = \frac{2}{10}$	There are 2 Es in the word TELEVISION.
$= \frac{1}{5} (= 0.2)$	Simplify the fraction.
iii $\Pr(\text{not an E}) = \frac{8}{10}$	If there are 2 Es in the word TELEVISION with 10 letters, then there must be 8 letters that are not E.
$= \frac{4}{5} (= 0.8)$	
iv $\Pr(\text{an E or a V}) = \frac{3}{10} (= 0.3)$	The number of letters that are either E or V is 3.

4 A letter is chosen randomly from the word TEACHER.

a How many letters are there in the word TEACHER?

b Find the probability that the letter is:

i an R

ii an E

iii not an E

iv an R or an E

5 A letter is chosen randomly from the word EXPERIMENT. Find the probability that the letter is:

a an E

b a vowel

c not a vowel

d an X or a vowel

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4A

Example 2 Calculating simple experimental probabilities

An experiment involves tossing three coins and counting the number of heads. Here are the results after running the experiment 100 times.

Number of heads	0	1	2	3
Frequency	11	40	36	13

a How many times did 2 heads occur?
b How many times did fewer than 2 heads occur?
c Find the experimental probability of obtaining:
i 0 heads **ii** 2 heads
iii fewer than 2 heads **iv** at least 1 head

Solution	Explanation
a 36	From the table, you can see that 2 heads has a frequency of 36.
b $11 + 40 = 51$	Fewer than 2 means obtaining 0 heads or 1 head.
c **i** $\Pr(0 \text{ heads}) = \frac{11}{100}$ $= 0.11$	$\Pr(0 \text{ heads}) = \frac{\text{number of times 0 heads is observed}}{\text{total number of trials}}$
ii $\Pr(2 \text{ heads}) = \frac{36}{100}$ $= 0.36$	$\Pr(2 \text{ heads}) = \frac{\text{number of times 2 heads is observed}}{\text{total number of trials}}$
iii Pr(fewer than 2 heads) $= \frac{11 + 40}{100}$ $= \frac{51}{100}$ $= 0.51$	Fewer than 2 heads means to observe 0 or 1 head.
iv Pr(at least 1 head) $= \frac{40 + 36 + 13}{100}$ $= \frac{89}{100}$ $= 0.89$	At least 1 head means that 1, 2 or 3 heads can be observed.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6 An experiment involves tossing three coins and counting the number of heads. Here are the results after running the experiment 100 times.

Number of heads	0	1	2	3
Frequency	9	38	43	10

a How many times did 2 heads occur?
b How many times did fewer than 2 heads occur?
c Find the experimental probability of obtaining:
i 0 heads **ii** 2 heads
iii fewer than 2 heads **iv** at least 1 head

The total number of outcomes is 100.

7 An experiment involves rolling two dice and counting the number of 6s. Here are the results after running the experiment 100 times.

Number of 6s	0	1	2
Frequency	62	35	3

Find the experimental probability of obtaining:
a no sixes **b** 2 sixes
c fewer than 2 sixes **d** at least 1 six

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–9 9–11

8 A 10-sided die, numbered 1 to 10, is rolled once. Find these probabilities.
a Pr(8) **b** Pr(odd)
c Pr(even) **d** Pr(less than 6)
e Pr(prime) **f** Pr(3 or 8)
g Pr(8, 9 or 10)

1 2 3
4 5
6 7 8
9 10

Prime numbers less than 10 are 2, 3, 5 and 7.

9 Amelia is a prizewinner in a competition and will be randomly awarded a single prize chosen from a collection of 50 prizes. The type and number of prizes to be handed out are listed below.

Prize	Car	Holiday	iPad	Blu-ray player
Number	1	4	15	30

Find the probability that Amelia will be awarded the following.
a a car
b an iPad
c a prize that is not a car

Remember that the total number of prizes is 50.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4A

10 Many of the 50 cars inspected at an assembly plant contain faults. The results of the inspection are as follows.

Number of faults	0	1	2	3	4
Number of cars	30	12	4	3	1

Find the experimental probability that a car selected from the assembly plant will have:

a 1 fault
b 4 faults
c fewer than 2 faults
d 1 or more faults
e 3 or 4 faults
f at least 2 faults

11 A bag contains red and yellow counters. A counter is drawn from the bag and then replaced. This happens 100 times and 41 of the counters drawn were red.

a How many counters drawn were yellow?
b If there were 10 counters in the bag, how many do you expect were red? Give a reason.
c If there were 20 counters in the bag, how many do you expect were red? Give a reason.

$\frac{41}{100}$ were red.

Cards probability

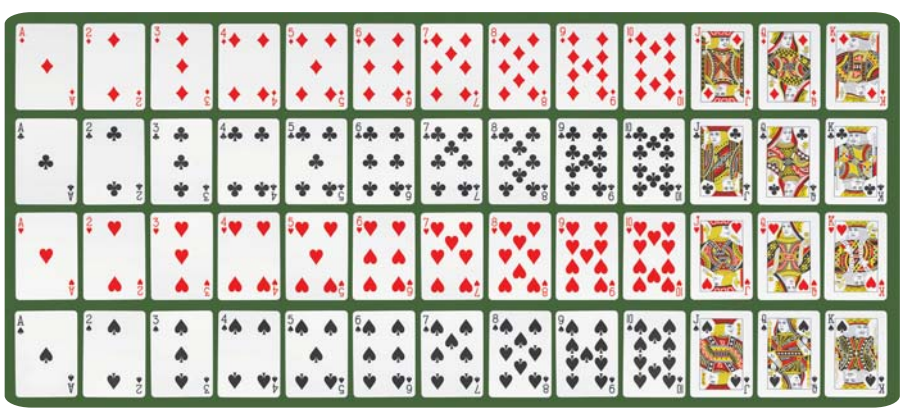
—

12

12 A card is chosen from a standard deck of 52 playing cards that includes 4 aces, 4 kings, 4 queens and 4 jacks. Find the following probabilities.

a Pr(heart)
b Pr(king)
c Pr(king of hearts)
d Pr(heart or club)
e Pr(king or jack)
f Pr(heart or king)
g Pr(not a king)
h Pr(neither a heart nor a king)

There are 4 suits in a deck of cards: hearts, diamonds, spades and clubs.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

4B Venn diagrams

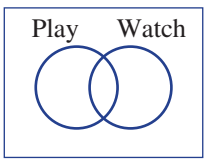
Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

Sometimes we need to work with situations where there are overlapping events. A TV station, for example, might be collecting statistics regarding whether or not a person watches cricket and/or tennis or neither over a certain period of time. The estimated probability that a person will watch cricket *or* tennis will therefore depend on how many people responded *yes* to watching both cricket *and* tennis. Venn diagrams are a useful tool when dealing with such events.

Let's start: How many like both?

Of 20 students in a class, 12 people like to play tennis and 15 people like to watch tennis. Two people like neither playing nor watching tennis. Some like both playing and watching tennis.

- Is it possible to represent this information in a Venn diagram?
- How many students like to play and watch tennis?
- How many students like to watch tennis only?
- From the group of 20 students, what would be the probability of selecting a person that likes watching tennis only?

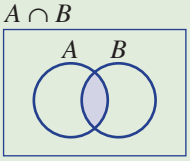


Key ideas

■ **Venn diagram** illustrates how all elements in the sample space are distributed among the events.

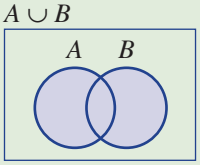
- All elements that belong to both *A and B* make up the **intersection**: $A \cap B$.

$A \cap B$

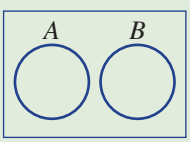


- All elements that belong to either events *A or B* make up the **union**: $A \cup B$.

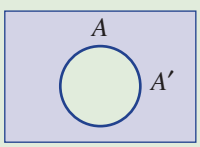
$A \cup B$



- Two sets *A* and *B* are **mutually exclusive** if they have no elements in common.



- For an event *A*, the complement of *A* is *A′* (or 'not *A*'). $\Pr(A') = 1 - \Pr(A)$



- *A* only is defined as all the elements in *A* but not in any other set.

Venn diagram
A diagram using circles to show the relationships between two or more sets of data

Intersection The elements that are common to two or more sets of data

Union The combination of all elements from two or more sets of data

Mutually exclusive
Two events that cannot both occur at the same time

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

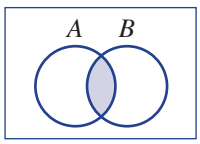
Exercise 4B

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

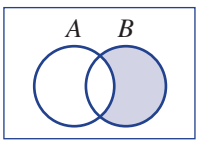
1 Match the symbols (**a**–**e**) to the pictures (**A**–**E**).

a $A \cup B$ (A or B)
b A
c A' (not A)
d $A \cap B$ (A and B)
e B only

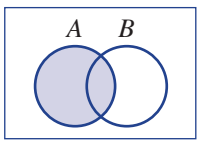
A



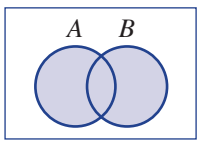
B



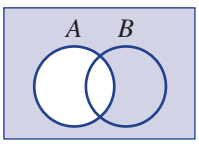
C



D



E



2 Decide whether the events A and B are mutually exclusive.

a $A = \{1, 3, 5, 7\}$
$B = \{5, 8, 11, 14\}$

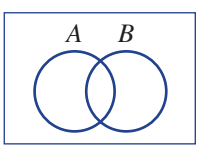
b $A = \{-3, -2, \ldots, 4\}$
$B = \{-11, -10, \ldots, -4\}$

c $A = \{\text{prime numbers}\}$
$B = \{\text{even numbers}\}$

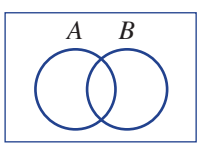
Mutually exclusive events have nothing in common.

3 Copy these Venn diagrams and shade the region described by each of the following.

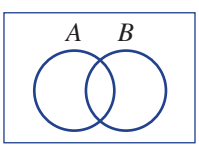
a A



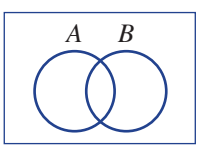
b B



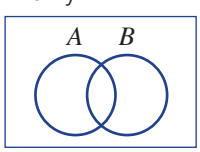
c $A \cap B$ (i.e. A and B)



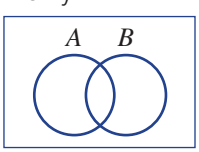
d $A \cup B$ (i.e. A or B)



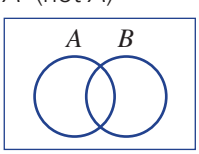
e A only



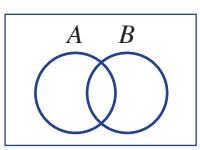
f B only



g A' (not A)



h neither A nor B



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 4–6 5–7

Example 3 Listing sets

Consider the given events A and B that involve numbers taken from the first 10 positive integers.

$A = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6\}$ $B = \{1, 3, 7, 8\}$

a Represent the two events A and B in a Venn diagram.

b List the following sets.

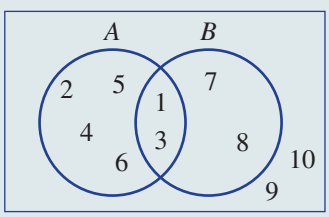
i $A \cap B$ (i.e. A and B)

ii $A \cup B$ (i.e. A or B)

c If a number from the first 10 positive integers is randomly selected, find the probability that the following events occur.

i A **ii** $A \cap B$ **iii** $A \cup B$

d Are the events A and B mutually excusive? Why or why not?

Solution	Explanation
a 	The elements 1 and 3 are common to both sets A and B. The elements 9 and 10 belong to neither set A nor set B.
b **i** $A \cap B = \{1, 3\}$ **ii** $A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8\}$	$A \cap B$ is the intersection of sets A and B. $A \cup B$ contains elements in either A or B.
c **i** $\Pr(A) = \frac{6}{10} = \frac{3}{5}$	There are 6 numbers in A.
ii $\Pr(A \cap B) = \frac{2}{10} = \frac{1}{5}$	$A \cap B$ contains 2 numbers.
iii $\Pr(A \cup B) = \frac{8}{10} = \frac{4}{5}$	$A \cup B$ contains 8 numbers.
d The sets A and B are not mutually exclusive since there are numbers inside $A \cap B$.	The set $A \cap B$ contains at least 1 number.

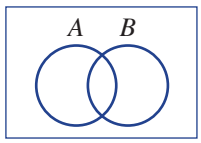
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4B

4 Consider the given events A and B, which involve numbers taken from the first 10 positive integers.

$A = \{1, 2, 4, 5, 7, 8, 10\}$ $B = \{2, 3, 5, 6, 8, 9\}$

$A \cap B$ means A *and* B.
$A \cup B$ means A *or* B.



a Represent events A and B in a Venn diagram.

b List the following sets.
i $A \cap B$ **ii** $A \cup B$

c If a number from the first 10 positive integers is randomly selected, find the probability that the following events occur.
i A **ii** $A \cap B$ **iii** $A \cup B$

d Are the events A and B mutually exclusive? Why or why not?

5 The elements of the events A and B described below are numbers taken from the first 10 prime numbers.

$A = \{2, 5, 7, 11, 13\}$ $B = \{2, 3, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29\}$

a Represent events A and B in a Venn diagram.

b List the elements belonging to the following.
i A and B **ii** A or B

c If a number from the first 10 prime numbers is selected, find the probability that these events occur.
i A **ii** B **iii** $A \cap B$ **iv** $A \cup B$

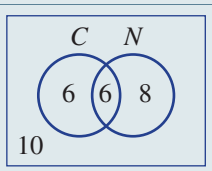
Example 4 Using Venn diagrams

From a class of 30 students, 12 enjoy cricket (C), 14 enjoy netball (N) and 6 enjoy both cricket and netball.

a Illustrate this information in a Venn diagram.

b State the number of students who enjoy:
i netball only **ii** neither cricket nor netball

c Find the probability that a person chosen randomly from the class will enjoy:
i netball **ii** netball only **iii** both cricket and netball

Solution	Explanation
a 	First place the 6 in the intersection (i.e. 6 enjoy cricket and netball), then determine the other values according to the given information. The total must be 30, with 12 in the cricket circle and 14 in netball.
b **i** 8 **ii** 10	Includes students in N but not in C. These are the students outside both C and N.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

c **i** $\Pr(N) = \frac{14}{30} = \frac{7}{15}$ 14 of the 30 students enjoy netball.

ii $\Pr(N \text{ only}) = \frac{8}{30} = \frac{4}{15}$ 8 of the 30 students enjoy netball but not cricket.

iii $\Pr(C \cap N) = \frac{6}{30} = \frac{1}{5}$ 6 students like both cricket and netball.

6 From a group of 50 adults, 35 enjoy reading fiction (F), 20 enjoy reading non-fiction (N) and 10 enjoy reading both fiction and non-fiction.

First enter the '10' in the intersection, then balance all the other regions.

a Illustrate the information in a Venn diagram.

b State the number of people who enjoy:
i fiction only **ii** neither fiction nor non-fiction

c Find the probability that a person chosen randomly from the group will enjoy reading:
i non-fiction **ii** non-fiction only **iii** both fiction and non-fiction

7 At a show, 45 children have the choice of riding on the Ferris wheel (F) and/or the Big Dipper (B). Thirty-five of the children wish to ride on the Ferris wheel, 15 children want to ride on the Big Dipper and 10 children want to ride on both.

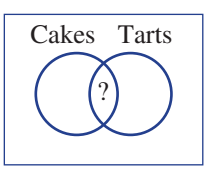
a Illustrate the information in a Venn diagram.

b State the number of children who want to:
i ride on the Ferris wheel only
ii ride on neither the Ferris wheel nor the Big Dipper

c For a child chosen at random from the group, find the probability that they will want to ride on:
i the Ferris wheel
ii both the Ferris wheel and the Big Dipper
iii the Ferris wheel or the Big Dipper
iv not the Ferris wheel
v neither the Ferris wheel nor the Big Dipper

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8–10

8 In a group of 12 chefs, all enjoy baking cakes and/or tarts. In fact, 7 enjoy baking cakes and 8 enjoy baking tarts. Find out how many chefs from the group enjoy baking both cakes and tarts.



9 In a group of 32 car enthusiasts, all collect either vintage cars or modern sports cars. Eighteen collect vintage cars and 19 collect modern sports cars. How many from the group collect both vintage cars and modern sports cars?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4B

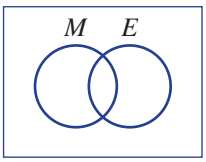
10 Mario and Elisa are choosing a colour to paint the interior walls of their house. They have six colours to choose from: white (w), cream (c), navy (n), sky blue (s), maroon (m) and violet (v).

Mario would be happy with white or cream and Elisa would be happy with cream, navy or sky blue. As they can't decide, a colour is chosen at random for them.

Let M be the event that Mario will be happy with the colour and let E be the event that Elisa will be happy with the colour.

a Represent the events M and E in a Venn diagram.

b Find the probability that the following events occur.



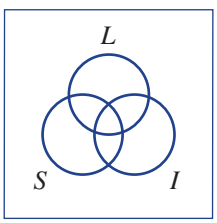
i Mario will be happy with the colour choice; i.e. find Pr(M).
ii Mario will not be happy with the colour choice.
iii Both Mario and Elisa will be happy with the colour choice.
iv Mario or Elisa will be happy with the colour choice.
v Neither Mario nor Elisa will be happy with the colour choice.

Courier companies

—11

11 Of 15 chosen courier companies, 9 offer a local service (L), 7 offer an interstate service (S) and 6 offer an international service (I). Two companies offer all three services, 3 offer both local and interstate services, 5 offer only local services and 1 offers only an international service.

a Draw a Venn diagram displaying the given information.



b Find the number of chosen courier companies that offer neither local, interstate nor international services.

c If a courier is chosen at random from the 15 initially examined, find the following probabilities.

i Pr(L) **ii** Pr(L only)
iii Pr(L or S) **iv** Pr(L and S only)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

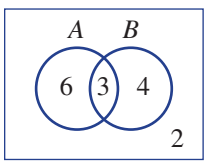
4C Two-way tables

Like a Venn diagram, two-way tables are useful tools for the organisation of overlapping events. The totals at the end of each column and row help to find the unknown numbers required to solve various problems.

Let's start: Comparing Venn diagrams with two-way tables

Here is a Venn diagram and an incomplete two-way table.

- First, can you complete the two-way table?
- Describe what each box in the two-way table means.
- Was it possible to find all the missing numbers in the two-way table without referring to the Venn diagram?

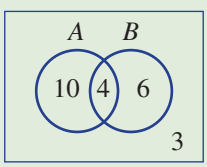


	A	A′	
B		4	
B′			8
	9		15

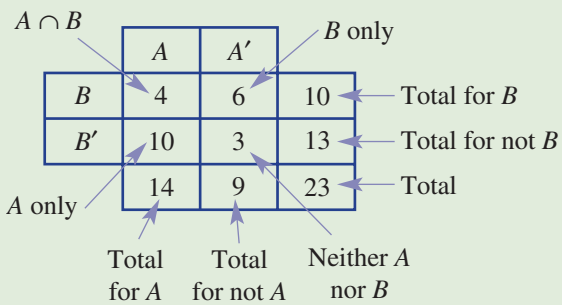
Key ideas

- Two-way tables use rows and columns to describe the number of elements in different regions of overlapping events. Each row and column sums to the total at the end.

Venn diagram



Two-way table



Exercise 4C

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

1 Match the shaded two-way tables (**A–D**) with each description (**a–d**).

a $A \cap B$ **b** B only **c** A **d** $A \cup B$

A

	A	A′	
B			
B′			

B

	A	A′	
B			
B′			

C

	A	A′	
B			
B′			

D

	A	A′	
B			
B′			

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

4C

2 Look at this two-way table.

	A	A'	
B	4	3	7
B'	6	1	7
	10	4	14

a State the number of elements in these events.

i A and B **ii** A only
iii B only **iv** neither A nor B
v A **vi** B
vii A' **viii** B′

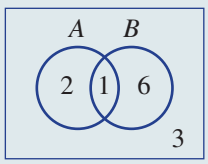
b $A \cup B$ (i.e. A or B) includes $A \cap B$, A only and B only. Find the total number of elements in $A \cup B$.

A only is at the intersection of column A and row B'.

FLUENCY 3, 4 3–5

Example 5 Using two-way tables

The Venn diagram shows the distribution of elements in two sets, A and B.



a Transfer the information in the Venn diagram to a two-way table.

b Find the number of elements for these regions.

i A and B **ii** B only **iii** A only
iv neither A nor B **v** A **vi** not B
vii A or B

c Find:

i $\Pr(A \cap B)$ **ii** $\Pr(A')$ **iii** A only

Solution

a

	A	A'	
B	1	6	7
B'	2	3	5
	3	9	12

Explanation

	A	A'	
B	$A \cap B$	B only	Total the row
B'	A only	Neither A nor B	Total the row
	Total the column	Total the column	Overall total

b **i** 1 In both A and B
ii 6 In B but not A
iii 2 In A but not B
iv 3 In neither A nor B
v 3 Total of A
vi 5 Total not in B
vii $2 + 1 + 6 = 9$ In A only or B only or both (3 regions)

c **i** $\Pr(A \cap B) = \frac{1}{12}$

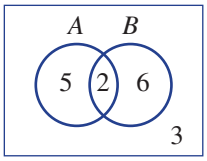
ii $\Pr(A') = \frac{9}{12} = \frac{3}{4}$

iii $\Pr(A \text{ only}) = \frac{2}{12} = \frac{1}{6}$

When calculating probabilities, you will need to divide the number of elements in each set by the number of elements in the sample space, which is 12.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 The Venn diagram shows the distribution of elements in two sets, A and B.



a Transfer the information in the Venn diagram to a two-way table.

b Find the number of elements in these regions.

i A and B **ii** B only **iii** A only

iv neither A nor B **v** A **vi** not B **vii** A or B

c Find:

i $\Pr(A \cap B)$ **ii** $\Pr(A')$ **iii** $\Pr(A \text{ only})$

4 From a total of 10 people, 5 like apples (A), 6 like bananas (B) and 4 like both apples and bananas.

Once you have your Venn diagram, you can transfer to the two-way table.

a Draw a Venn diagram for the 10 people.

b Draw a two-way table.

c Find the number of people who like:

i only bananas **ii** apples

iii apples and bananas **iv** apples or bananas

d Find:

i $\Pr(B)$ **ii** $\Pr(A \cap B)$ **iii** $\Pr(A \text{ only})$

iv $\Pr(B')$ **v** $\Pr(A \cup B)$

5 Of 12 people interviewed at a train station, 7 like staying in hotels, 8 like staying in apartments and 4 like staying in hotels and apartments.

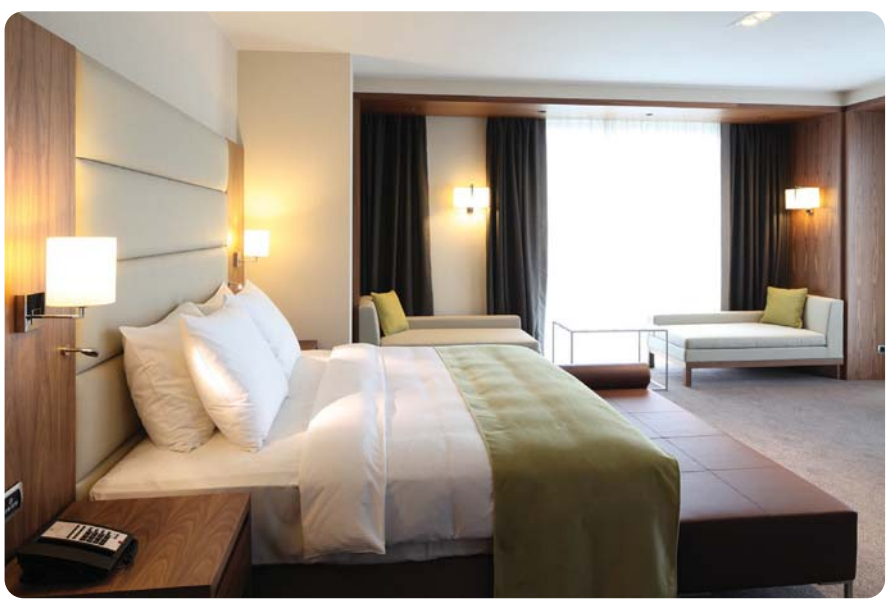
a Draw a two-way table for the 12 people.

b Find the number of people who like:

i only hotels **ii** neither hotels nor apartments

c Find the probability that one of the people interviewed likes:

i hotels or apartments **ii** only apartments



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4C

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6–8 7–10

6 Complete the following two-way tables.

a

	A	A'	
B		3	6
B'			
		4	11

b

	A	A'	
B	2	7	
B'			3
	4		

All the rows and columns should add up correctly.

7 In a class of 24 students, 13 like Mathematics, 9 like English and 3 like both.

a Find the probability that a randomly selected student from the class likes both Mathematics and English.

b Find the probability that a randomly selected student from the class likes neither Mathematics nor English.

8 Two sets, A and B, are mutually exclusive.

a Find $\Pr(A \cap B)$.

b Now complete this two-way table.

	A	A'	
B		6	
B'			12
	10		18

9 Of 32 cars at a show, 18 cars have four-wheel drive, 21 are sports cars and 27 have four-wheel drive or are sports cars.

a Find the probability that a randomly selected car at the show is both four-wheel drive and a sports car.

b Find the probability that a randomly selected car at the show is neither four-wheel drive nor a sports car.

10 A card is selected from a deck of 52 playing cards.
Find the probability that the card is:

a a heart or a king **b** a club or a queen

c a black card or an ace **d** a red card or a jack

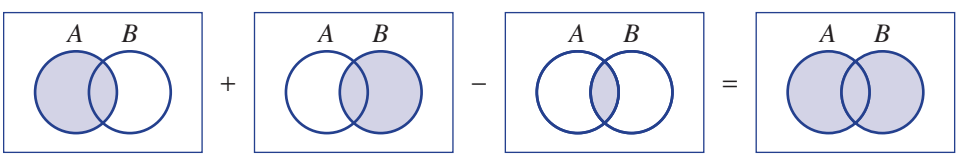
Make sure you don't count some cards twice; e.g. the king of hearts in part **a**.

The addition rule

— 11

11 For some of the problems above you will have noticed the following, which is called the addition rule.

$$A + B - A \cap B = A \cup B$$



Use the addition rule to find $A \cup B$ in these problems.

a Of 20 people at a sports day, 12 people like archery (A), 14 like basketball (B) and 8 like both archery and basketball ($A \cap B$). How many from the group like archery or basketball?

b Of 100 households, 84 have wide-screen TVs, 32 have high-definition TVs and 41 have both. How many of the households have wide-screen or high-definition TVs?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4D Conditional probability

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

The mathematics associated with the probability that an event occurs, given that another event has already occurred, is called conditional probability.

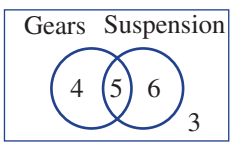
Consider, for example, a group of primary school students who own bicycles. Some of the bicycles have gears, some have suspension and some have both gears and suspension. Consider these two questions.

- What is the probability that a randomly selected bicycle has gears?
- What is the probability that a randomly selected bicycle has gears, given that it has suspension?

The second question is conditional, in that we already know that the bicycle has suspension.

Let's start: Gears and suspension

Suppose that, in a group of 18 bicycles, 9 have gears, 11 have suspension and 5 have both gears and suspension. Discuss the solution to the following question by considering the points below.

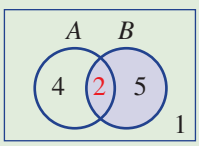


What is the probability that a randomly selected bicycle will have gears, given that it has suspension?

- First look at the information set out in a Venn diagram.
- How many of the bicycles that have suspension also have gears?
- Out of the 11 that have suspension, what is the probability that a bike will have gears?
- What would be the answer to the question in reverse; i.e. what is the probability that a bicycle will have suspension, given that it has gears?

Key ideas

- The probability of event A occurring given that event B has occurred is denoted by $\Pr(A \mid B)$, which reads 'the probability of A given B'.
- $\Pr(A \text{ given } B) = \dfrac{\text{number of elements in } A \cap B}{\text{number of elements in } B}$



$\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{2}{7}$

	A	A′	
B	2	5	7
B′	4	1	5
	6	6	12

$\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{2}{7}$

- $\Pr(B \text{ given } A) = \dfrac{\text{number of elements in } A \cap B}{\text{number of elements in } A}$

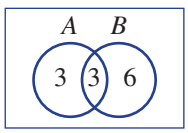
  For the diagrams above, $\Pr(B \mid A) = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Exercise 4D

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Consider this Venn diagram.



a What fraction of the elements in A are also in B? (This finds $\Pr(B|A)$.)

b What fraction of the elements in B are also in A? (This finds $\Pr(A|B)$.)

2 Use this two-way table to answer these questions.

	A	A'	
B	7	5	12
B'	3	1	4
	10	6	16

a What fraction of the elements in A are also in B? (This finds $\Pr(B|A)$.)

b What fraction of the elements in B are also in A? (This finds $\Pr(A|B)$.)

3 In a group of 20 people, 15 are wearing jackets and 10 are wearing hats; 5 are wearing both a jacket and a hat.

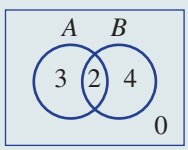
a What fraction of the people who are wearing jackets are wearing hats?

b What fraction of the people who are wearing hats are wearing jackets?

FLUENCY 4, 5 | 4, 5

Example 6 Finding conditional probabilities using a Venn diagram

Consider this Venn diagram, displaying the number of elements belonging to the events A and B.



Find the following probabilities.

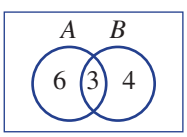
a $\Pr(A)$ **b** $\Pr(A \cap B)$ **c** $\Pr(A|B)$ **d** $\Pr(B|A)$

Solution	Explanation
a $\Pr(A) = \frac{5}{9}$	There are 5 elements in A and 9 in total.
b $\Pr(A \cap B) = \frac{2}{9}$	There are 2 elements common to A and B.
c $\Pr(A\|B) = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$	2 of the 6 elements in B are in A.
d $\Pr(B\|A) = \frac{2}{5}$	2 of the 5 elements in A are in B.

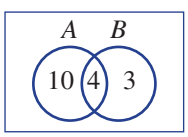
4 The following Venn diagrams display information about the number of elements associated with the events A and B. For each Venn diagram, find:

i $\Pr(A)$ **ii** $\Pr(A \cap B)$ **iii** $\Pr(A|B)$ **iv** $\Pr(B|A)$

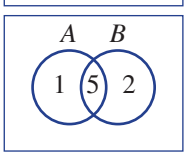
a



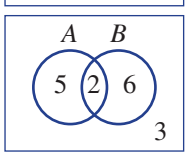
b



c



d



- $A \cap B$ means both A and B.
- $\Pr(A|B) = \frac{\text{number in } A \cap B}{\text{number in } B}$
- $\Pr(B|A) = \frac{\text{number in } A \cap B}{\text{number in } A}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 7 Finding conditional probabilities using a two-way table

From a group of 15 hockey players at a game of hockey, 13 played on the field, 7 sat on the bench and 5 both played and sat on the bench.
A hockey player is chosen at random from the team.
Let A be the event 'the person played on the field' and B be the event 'the person sat on the bench'.

a Represent the information in a two-way table.
b Find the probability that the person only sat on the bench.
c Find the probability that the person sat on the bench, given that they played on the field.
d Find the probability that the person played on the field, given that they sat on the bench.

Solution

a

	A	A'	
B	5	2	7
B'	8	0	8
	13	2	15

Explanation

$A \cap B$ has 5 elements, A has a total of 13 and B a total of 7. There are 15 players in total.

b $\Pr(\text{bench only}) = \frac{2}{15}$

Two people sat on the bench and did not play on the field.

c $\Pr(B \mid A) = \frac{5}{13}$

$\Pr(B \mid A) = \frac{\text{number in } A \cap B}{\text{number in } A}$

d $\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{5}{7}$

$\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{\text{number in } A \cap B}{\text{number in } B}$

5 The following two-way tables show information about the number of elements in the events A and B.
For each two-way table, find:

i $\Pr(A)$ **ii** $\Pr(A \cap B)$
iii $\Pr(A \mid B)$ **iv** $\Pr(B \mid A)$

First decide on the total that gives the denominator of your fraction.

a

	A	A'	
B	2	8	10
B'	5	3	8
	7	11	18

b

	A	A'	
B	1	4	5
B'	3	1	4
	4	5	9

c

	A	A'	
B	7	3	10
B'	1	6	7
	8	9	17

d

	A	A'	
B	4	2	6
B'	8	2	10
	12	4	16

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4D

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6, 7 7–9

6 Of a group of 20 English cricket fans at a match, 13 purchased a pie, 15 drank beer and 9 purchased a pie *and* drank beer.
Let A be the event 'the fan purchases a pie'.
Let B be the event 'the fan drank beer'.

	A	A'	
B	9		
B'			
			20

- **a** Copy and complete this two-way table.
- **b** Find the probability that a fan only purchased a pie (and did not drink beer).
- **c** Find the probability that a fan purchased a pie, given that they drank beer.
- **d** Find the probability that a fan drank beer, given that they purchased a pie.

7 Of 15 musicians surveyed to find out whether they play the violin or the piano, 5 play the violin, 8 play the piano and 2 play both instruments.

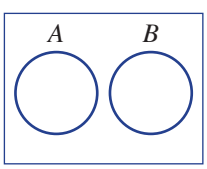
- **a** Represent the information in a Venn diagram.
- **b** How many of the musicians surveyed do not play either the violin or the piano?
- **c** Find the probability that one of the 15 musicians surveyed plays piano, given that they play the violin.
- **d** Find the probability that one of the 15 musicians surveyed plays the violin, given that they play piano.

8 A card is drawn from a deck of 52 playing cards.
Find the probability that:

13 of the cards are hearts. There are 4 kings, including one king of hearts.

- **a** the card is a king given that it is a heart
- **b** the card is a jack given that it is a red card

9 Two events, A and B, are mutually exclusive. What can be said about the probability of A given B (i.e. $\Pr(A|B)$) or the probability of B given A (i.e. $\Pr(B|A)$)? Give a reason.



Cruise control and airbags

— 10

10 On a car production line, 30 cars are due to be completed by the end of the day. Fifteen of the cars have cruise control and 20 have airbags, and 6 have both cruise control and airbags.

- **a** Represent the information provided in a Venn diagram or two-way table.
- **b** Find the probability that a car chosen at random will have:
  - **i** cruise control only
  - **ii** airbags only
- **c** Given that the car chosen has cruise control, find the probability that the car will have airbags.
- **d** Given that the car chosen has airbags, find the probability that the car will have cruise control.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4E Using tables for two-step experiments

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

Some experiments contain more than one step and are called multi-stage experiments. Examples include rolling a die twice, selecting a number of chocolates from a box or choosing people at random to fill positions on a committee. Tables can be used to list all the outcomes from two-step experiments. The number of outcomes depend on whether or not the experiment is conducted with or without replacement.

Let's start: Two prizes, three people

Two special prizes are to be awarded in some way to Bill, May and Li for their efforts in helping at the school fete. This table shows how the prizes might be awarded.

		2nd prize		
		Bill	May	Li
1st prize	Bill	(B, B)	(B, M)	(B, L)
	May	(M, B)		
	Li			

- Complete the table to show how the two prizes can be awarded.
- Does the table show that the same person can be awarded both prizes?
- What is the probability that Bill and Li are both awarded a prize?
- How would the table change if the same person could not be awarded both prizes?
- How do the words 'with replacement' and 'without replacement' relate to the situation above? Discuss.

Key ideas

- Tables are used to list the sample space for two-step experiments.
- If replacement is allowed, then outcomes from each selection can be repeated.
- If selections are made without replacement, then outcomes from each selection cannot be repeated.

For example, two selections are made from the digits $\{1, 2, 3\}$.

With replacement

		1st		
		1	2	3
2nd	1	(1, 1)	(2, 1)	(3, 1)
	2	(1, 2)	(2, 2)	(3, 2)
	3	(1, 3)	(2, 3)	(3, 3)

9 outcomes

Without replacement

		1st		
		1	2	3
2nd	1	×	(2, 1)	(3, 1)
	2	(1, 2)	×	(3, 2)
	3	(1, 3)	(2, 3)	×

6 outcomes

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 4E

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

1 Two letters are chosen from the word DOG.

a Complete a table listing the sample space if selections are made:

i with replacement

		1st		
		D	O	G
2nd	D	(D, D)	(O, D)	
	O			
	G			

ii without replacement

		1st		
		D	O	G
2nd	D	×	(O, D)	
	O		×	
	G			×

b State the total number of outcomes if selection is made:

i with replacement **ii** without replacement

c If selection is made with replacement, find the probability that:

i the two letters are the same

ii there is at least one D

iii there is not an O

iv there is a D or a G

v there is a D and a G

Count up your favourable outcomes and divide by the total.

d If selection is made without replacement, find the probability that:

i the two letters are the same **ii** there is at least one D

iii there is not an O **iv** there is a D or a G

v there is a D and a G

2 Two digits are selected from the set $\{2, 3, 4\}$ to form a two-digit number. Find the number of two-digit numbers that can be formed if the digits are selected:

a with replacement

	2	3	4
2	22	32	
3			
4			

b without replacement

	2	3	4
2	×	32	
3		×	
4			×

FLUENCY 3–5 | 3–5

Example 8 Constructing a table with replacement

A fair 6-sided die is rolled twice.

a List all the outcomes, using a table.

b State the total number of outcomes.

c Find the probability of obtaining the outcome $(1, 5)$.

d Find:

i Pr(double) **ii** Pr(sum of at least 10) **iii** Pr(sum not equal to 7)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Solution

a

		Roll 2					
		1	2	3	4	5	6
Roll 1	1	(1, 1)	(1, 2)	(1, 3)	(1, 4)	(1, 5)	(1, 6)
	2	(2, 1)	(2, 2)	(2, 3)	(2, 4)	(2, 5)	(2, 6)
	3	(3, 1)	(3, 2)	(3, 3)	(3, 4)	(3, 5)	(3, 6)
	4	(4, 1)	(4, 2)	(4, 3)	(4, 4)	(4, 5)	(4, 6)
	5	(5, 1)	(5, 2)	(5, 3)	(5, 4)	(5, 5)	(5, 6)
	6	(6, 1)	(6, 2)	(6, 3)	(6, 4)	(6, 5)	(6, 6)

Explanation

Be sure to place the number from roll 1 in the first position for each outcome.

b 36 outcomes

There is a total of $6 \times 6 = 36$ outcomes.

c $\Pr(1, 5) = \frac{1}{36}$

Only one outcome is $(1, 5)$.

d **i** $\Pr(\text{double}) = \frac{6}{36}$

$= \frac{1}{6}$

Six outcomes have the same number repeated.

ii $\Pr(\text{sum of at least } 10) = \frac{6}{36} = \frac{1}{6}$

Six outcomes have a sum of either 10, 11 or 12.

iii $\Pr(\text{sum not equal to } 7) = 1 - \frac{6}{36}$

$= \frac{30}{36}$

$= \frac{5}{6}$

This is the complement of having a sum of 7.
Six outcomes have a sum of 7.
$\Pr(\text{not } A) = 1 - \Pr(A)$

3 A fair 4-sided die is rolled twice.

a List all the outcomes, using a table.

		1st			
		1	2	3	4
2nd	1	(1, 1)	(2, 1)		
	2				
	3				
	4				

Questions **3** and **4** are making selections 'with replacement' because outcomes can be repeated.

b State the total number of possible outcomes.

c Find the probability of obtaining the outcome $(2, 4)$.

d Find the probability of:

i a double **ii** a sum of at least 5 **iii** a sum not equal to 4

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4E

4 Two coins are tossed, each landing with a head (H) or tail (T).

a List all the outcomes, using a table.

b State the total number of possible outcomes.

c Find the probability of obtaining the outcome (H, T).

d Find the probability of obtaining:

i exactly one tail

ii at least one tail

e If the two coins are tossed 1000 times, how many times would you expect to get two tails?

2nd \ 1st	H	T
H	(H, H)	(T, H)
T		

Example 9 Constructing a table without replacement

Two letters are chosen from the word KICK, without replacement.

a Construct a table to list the sample space.

b Find the probability of:

i obtaining the outcome (K, C)

ii selecting two Ks

iii selecting a K and a C

Solution

a

2nd \ 1st	K	I	C	K
K	×	(I, K)	(C, K)	(K, K)
I	(K, I)	×	(C, I)	(K, I)
C	(K, C)	(I, C)	×	(K, C)
K	(K, K)	(I, K)	(C, K)	×

Explanation

Selection is without replacement, so the same letter (from the same position) cannot be chosen twice.

b **i** $\Pr(K, C) = \frac{2}{12}$

$= \frac{1}{6}$

Two of the 12 outcomes are (K, C).

ii $\Pr(K, K) = \frac{2}{12}$

$= \frac{1}{6}$

Two of the outcomes are K and K, which use different Ks from the word KICK.

iii $\Pr(K \text{ and } C) = \frac{4}{12}$

$= \frac{1}{3}$

Four outcomes contain a K and a C.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 Two letters are chosen from the word SET without replacement.

a Complete this table.

		1st		
		S	E	T
2nd	S	×	(E, S)	(T, S)
	E		×	
	T			×

b Find the probability of:

i obtaining the outcome (E, T)

ii selecting one T

iii selecting at least one T

iv selecting an S and a T

v selecting an S or a T

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6, 7 7–9

6 A letter is chosen from the word LEVEL without replacement and then a second letter is chosen from the same word.

a Draw a table displaying the sample space for the pair of letters chosen.

b State the total number of outcomes possible.

c State the number of outcomes that contain exactly one of the following letters.

i V **ii** L **iii** E

d Find the probability that the outcome will contain exactly one of the following letters.

i V **ii** L **iii** E

e Find the probability that the two letters chosen will be the same.

7 In a quiz, Min guessed that the probability of rolling a sum of 10 or more from two 6-sided dice is 10%. Complete the following to decide whether or not this guess is correct.

a Copy and complete the table representing all the outcomes for possible totals that can be obtained.

		Die 2					
		1	2	3	4	5	6
Die 1	1	2	3	…			
	2	3	…				
	3	4					
	4	⋮					
	5	⋮					
	6						

b State the total number of outcomes.

c Find the number of the outcomes that represent a sum of:

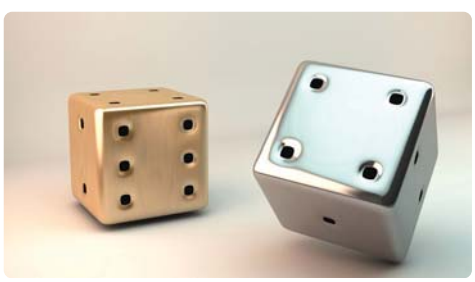
i 3 **ii** 7 **iii** less than 7

d Find the probability that the following sums are obtained.

i 7 **ii** less than 5

iii greater than 2 **iv** at least 11

e Find the probability that the sum is at least 10, and decide whether or not Min's guess is correct.



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4E

8 The 10 students who completed a special flying course are waiting to see if they will be awarded the one Distinction or the one Merit award available for their efforts.

a In how many ways can the two awards be given if:
- **i** the same student can receive both awards?
- **ii** the same student cannot receive both awards?

b Assuming that a student cannot receive both awards, find the probability that a particular student receives:
- **i** the Distinction award
- **ii** the Merit award
- **iii** neither award

c Assuming that a student can receive both awards, find the probability that they receive at least one award.

For part **a**, you might want to start a table but not complete it.

9 Decide whether the following situations would naturally involve selections with replacement or without replacement.

a selecting two people to play in a team
b tossing a coin twice
c rolling two dice
d choosing two chocolates to eat

Random weights

— 11

10 In a gym, Justine considers choosing two weights to fit onto a leg weights machine to make the load heavier. She can choose from 2.5 kg, 5 kg, 10 kg or 20 kg, and there are plenty of each weight available. Justine's friend randomly chooses both weights, with equal probability that she will choose each weight, and places them on the machine. Justine then attempts to operate the machine without knowing which weights were chosen.

a Complete a table that displays all possible total weights that could be placed on the machine.

b State the total number of outcomes.

c How many of the outcomes deliver a total weight described by the following?
- **i** equal to 10 kg **ii** less than 20 kg **iii** at least 20 kg

d Find the probability that Justine will be attempting to lift the following weight.
- **i** 20 kg **ii** 30 kg
- **iii** no more than 10 kg **iv** less than 10 kg

e If Justine is unable to lift more than 22 kg, what is the probability that she will not be able to operate the leg weights machine?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Progress quiz

4A **1** A letter is chosen from the word ELEPHANT. Find the probability that the letter is:
a an E **b** a T or an E **c** not an E **d** a vowel

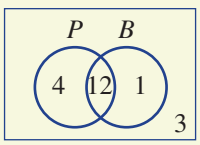
4A **2** An experiment involves rolling two dice and counting the number of even numbers. Here are the results after running the experiment 100 times.

Number of even numbers	0	1	2
Frequency	21	46	33

a How many times did more than 1 even number occur?
b Find the experimental probability of obtaining:
i 0 even numbers
ii fewer than 2 even numbers
iii at least 1 even number

4B/D **3** From a group of 25 students on a school camp, 18 enjoy sailing (S), 15 enjoy bushwalking (B) and 8 enjoy both sailing and bushwalking.
a Illustrate this information in a Venn diagram.
b State the number of students who enjoy:
i sailing only
ii neither sailing nor bushwalking
c Find the following probabilities for a student chosen at random from the group.
i $\Pr(B)$ **ii** $\Pr(S \text{ only})$ **iii** $\Pr(B \cap S)$
iv $\Pr(B')$ **v** $\Pr(S \mid B)$

4C/D **4** The Venn diagram shown shows the distribution of 20 guests staying at a resort in Noosa. Some guests liked to swim at the hotel pool (P), others liked to swim at the beach (B) and others liked both.



a Transfer the information to a two-way table.
b Find the number of guests who like:
i only swimming at the hotel pool
ii swimming at either the beach or the hotel pool
c Find:
i $\Pr(P)$ **ii** $\Pr(B \text{ only})$ **iii** $\Pr(P \cap B)$ **iv** $\Pr(P \mid B)$

4E **5** A fair 6-sided die is rolled and a coin is tossed.

	1	2	3	4	5	6
H	(1, H)	(2, H)…				
T						

a List all the outcomes, using a table.
b State the total number of outcomes.
c Find the probability of obtaining the outcome (3, H).
d Find the probability of obtaining:
i an even number and a tail
ii at least a 2 and a head

4E **6** Two counters are chosen randomly from a bag containing 2 red, 1 blue and 1 green counter, without replacement.
a Construct a table to list the sample space and state the number of outcomes.
b Find the probability of:
i obtaining the outcome (R, G)
ii selecting 2 red counters
iii selecting 1 blue and 1 red counter

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4F Using tree diagrams

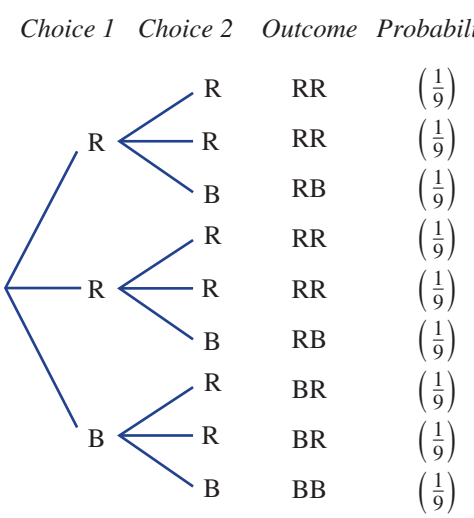
Interactive

Widgets

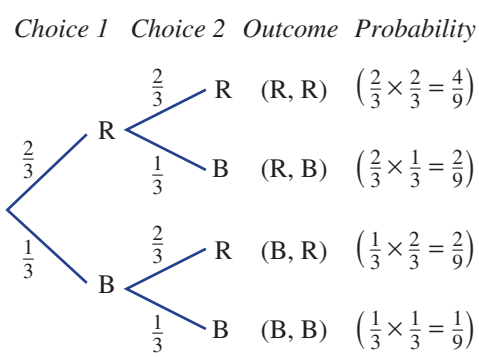
HOTsheets

Walkthrough

Tree diagrams can also be used to help list outcomes for multi-stage experiments. Suppose that a bag contains two red counters and one blue counter and that two counters are selected at random with replacement. One way to display the outcomes is with a tree diagram in which all equally likely outcomes are listed in columns, as shown below left. A more efficient way, however, is to group similar outcomes and write their corresponding probabilities on the branches, as shown below right.



$\Pr(\text{R, B}) = \frac{2}{9}$



$\Pr(\text{R, B}) = \frac{2}{9}$

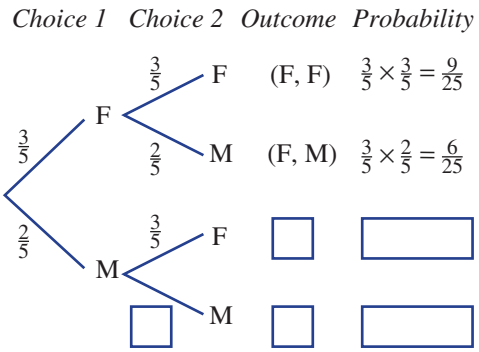
In the tree diagram on the right, the probability of each outcome is obtained by multiplying the branch probabilities. This also applies when selection is made without replacement.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

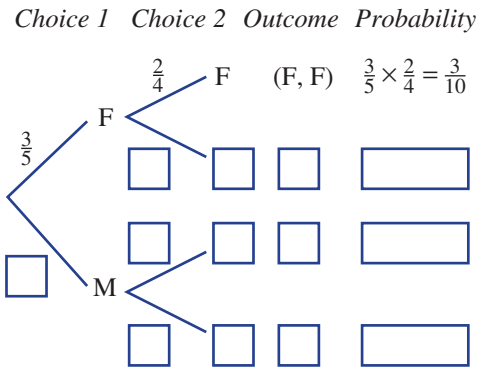
Let's start: Trees with and without replacement

Suppose that two selections are made from a group of 2 male and 3 female workers to complete two extra tasks.

With replacement



Without replacement



- Complete these two tree diagrams to show how these selections can be made, both with and without replacement.
- Explain where the branch probabilities come from on each branch of the tree diagrams.
- What is the total of all the probabilities on each tree diagram?

Key ideas

- Tree diagrams can be used to list the sample space for experiments involving two or more components.
  - Branch probabilities are used to describe the chance of each outcome at each step.
  - The probability of each outcome for the experiment is obtained by multiplying the branch probabilities.
  - Branch probabilities will depend on whether selection is made with or without replacement.
    For experiments *with replacement*, probabilities do not change.
    For experiments *without replacement*, probabilities do change.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 4F

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 1–3

1 A coin is tossed three times and a head or tail is obtained each time.

a How many outcomes are there?

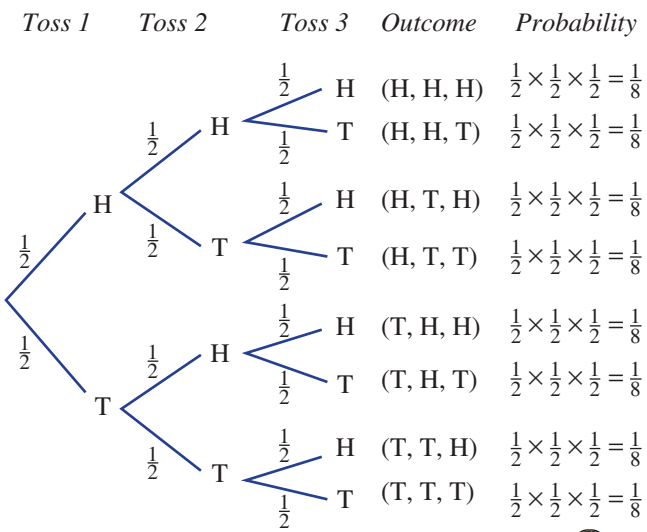
b What is the probability of the outcome HHH?

c How many outcomes obtain:

i 2 tails?

ii 2 or 3 heads?

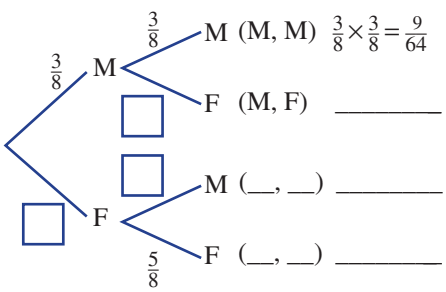
d What is the probability of obtaining at least 1 tail?



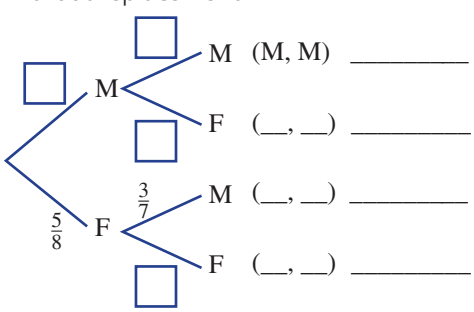
2 Two prizes are awarded to a group of 3 male (M) and 5 female (F) candidates. Copy and complete each tree diagram. Include the missing branch probabilities and outcome probabilities.

For 'without replacement' the second selection is out of 7, not 8.

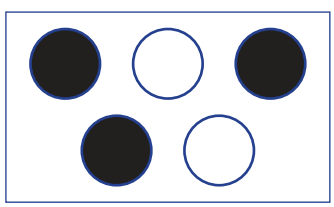
a with replacement



b without replacement



3 A box contains 2 white (W) and 3 black (B) counters.



a A single counter is drawn at random. Find the probability that it is:

i white **ii** black

b Two counters are now drawn at random. The first one is replaced before the second one is drawn. Find the probability that the second counter is:

i white **ii** black

c Two counters are drawn and the first counter is not replaced before the second one is drawn. If the first counter is white, find the probability that the second counter is:

i white **ii** black

After one white counter is taken out, how many of each remain?

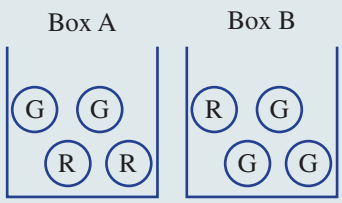
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 4, 5 4–6

Example 10 Constructing a tree diagram for multi-stage experiments

Boxes A and B contain 4 counters each. Box A contains 2 red and 2 green counters and box B contains 1 red and 3 green counters. A box is chosen at random and then a single counter is selected.

a What is the probability of selecting a red counter from box A?
b What is the probability of selecting a red counter from box B?
c Represent the options available as a tree diagram that shows all possible outcomes and related probabilities.
d What is the probability of selecting box B and a red counter?
e What is the probability of selecting a red counter?

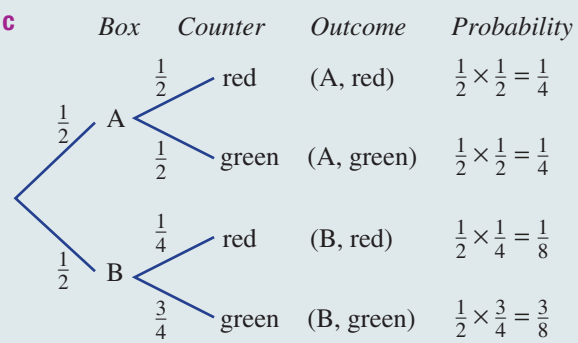


Solution

a $\Pr(\text{red from box A}) = \frac{2}{4} = \frac{1}{2}$

b $\Pr(\text{red from box B}) = \frac{1}{4}$

c



d $\Pr(\text{B, red}) = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4}$
$= \frac{1}{8}$

e $\Pr(1 \text{ red}) = \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2} + \frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{4}$
$= \frac{1}{4} + \frac{1}{8}$
$= \frac{3}{8}$

Explanation

2 of the 4 counters in box A are red.

1 of the 4 counters in box B is red.

First selection is a box followed by a counter.
Multiply each of the probabilities along the branch pathways to find the probability of each outcome.

The probability of choosing box B is $\frac{1}{2}$ and a red counter from box B is $\frac{1}{4}$, so multiply the probabilities for these two outcomes together.

The outcomes (A, red) and (B, red) both contain 1 red counter, so add together the probabilities for these two outcomes.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

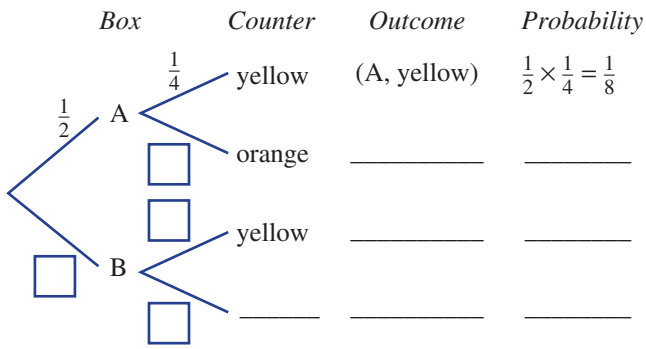
4F

4 Boxes A and B contain 4 counters each. Box A contains 1 yellow and 3 orange counters and box B contains 3 yellow and 1 orange counter. A box is chosen at random and then a single counter is selected.

a If box A is chosen, what is the probability of selecting a yellow counter?

b If box B is chosen, what is the probability of selecting a yellow counter?

c Represent the options available by completing this tree diagram.



For part **e**, add the probabilities for both outcomes that have a yellow counter.

d What is the probability of selecting box B and a yellow counter?

e What is the probability of selecting 1 yellow counter?

Example 11 Using a tree diagram without replacement

A bag contains 5 blue (B) and 3 white (W) marbles and two marbles are selected without replacement.

a Draw a tree diagram showing all outcomes and probabilities.

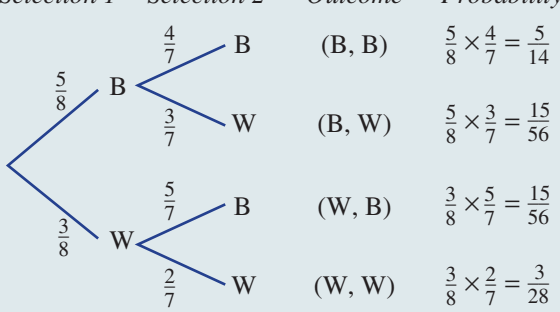
b Find the probability of selecting:

- **i** a blue marble followed by a white marble; i.e. the outcome (B, W)
- **ii** 2 blue marbles
- **iii** exactly one blue marble

c If the experiment is repeated with replacement, find the answers to each question in part **b**.

Solution

a



Explanation

After one blue marble is selected there are 7 marbles remaining: 4 blue and 3 white.

After one white marble is selected there are 7 marbles remaining: 5 blue and 2 white.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

b **i** $\Pr(\text{B, W}) = \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{3}{7}$

$= \frac{15}{56}$

Multiply the probabilities on the (B, W) pathway.

ii $\Pr(\text{B, B}) = \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{4}{7}$

$= \frac{5}{14}$

Only 4 blue marbles remain after the first selection. Multiply the probabilities on the (B, B) pathway.

iii $\Pr(\text{1 blue}) = \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{3}{7} + \frac{3}{8} \times \frac{5}{7}$

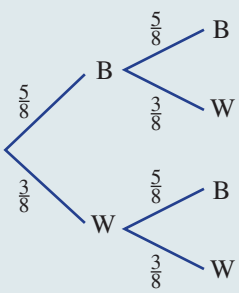
$= \frac{15}{28}$

The outcomes (B, W) and (W, B) both have 1 blue marble. Multiply probabilities to find individual probabilities, then sum for the final result.

c **i** $\Pr(\text{B, W}) = \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{3}{8}$

$= \frac{15}{64}$

When selecting objects with replacement, remember that the number of marbles in the bag remains the same for each selection.



ii $\Pr(\text{B, B}) = \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{5}{8}$

$= \frac{25}{64}$

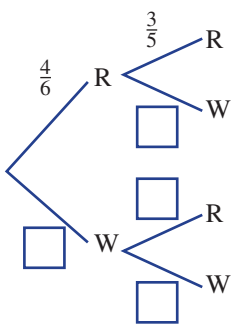
iii $\Pr(\text{1 blue}) = \frac{5}{8} \times \frac{3}{8} + \frac{3}{8} \times \frac{5}{8}$

$= \frac{15}{32}$

5 A bag contains 4 red (R) and 2 white (W) marbles, and two marbles are selected without replacement.

a Complete this tree diagram, showing all outcomes and probabilities.

Selection 1	*Selection 2*	*Outcome*	*Probability*



b Find the probability of selecting:

i a red marble and then a white marble (R, W)

ii 2 red marbles

iii exactly 1 red marble

c If the experiment is repeated with replacement, find the answers to each question in part **b**. You may need to redraw the tree diagram.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4F

6 Two students are selected from a group of 3 males (M) and 4 females (F), without replacement.

a Complete this tree diagram to help find the probability of selecting:

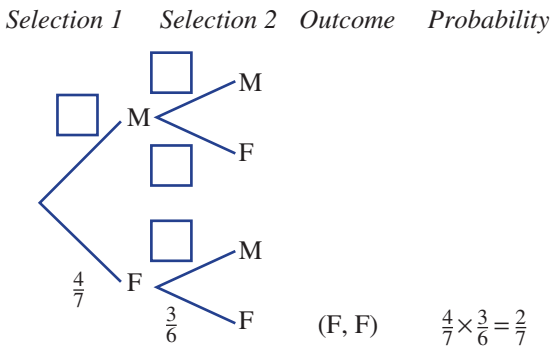
i 2 males

ii 2 females

iii 1 male and 1 female

iv 2 people either both male or both female

b If the experiment is repeated with replacement, find the answers to each question in part **a**.



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8 7–9

7 A fair 4-sided die is rolled twice and the pair of numbers is recorded.

a Complete this tree diagram to list the outcomes.

b State the total number of outcomes.

c Find the probability of obtaining:

i a 4 then a 1; i.e. the outcome (4, 1)

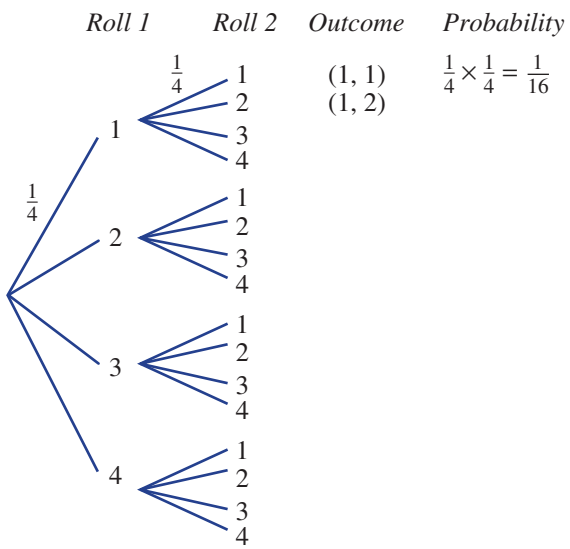
ii a double

d Find the probability of obtaining a sum described by the following:

i equal to 2

ii equal to 5

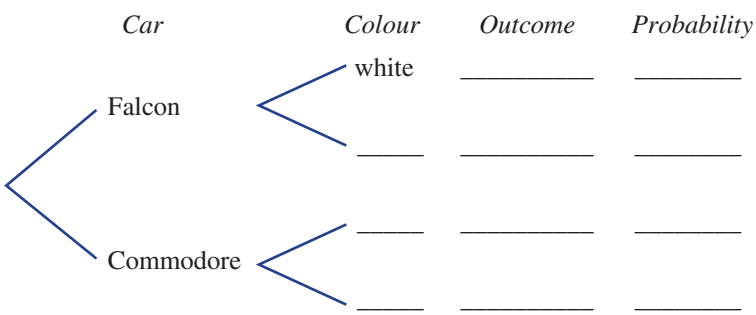
iii less than or equal to 5



8 As part of a salary package, a person can select either a Falcon or a Commodore. There are 3 white Falcons and 1 silver Falcon and 2 white Commodores and 1 red Commodore to choose from.

a Complete a tree diagram showing a random selection of a car make, then a colour.

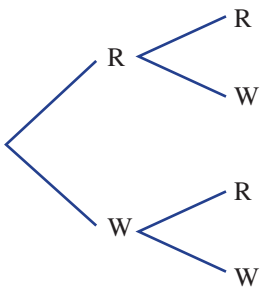
Since car make selection is random, Pr(Falcon) = $\frac{1}{2}$.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

b Find the probability that the person chooses:
- **i** a white Falcon
- **ii** a red Commodore
- **iii** a white car
- **iv** a car that is not white
- **v** a silver car or a white car
- **vi** a car that is not a Falcon nor red

9 Two bottles of wine are randomly selected for tasting from a box containing 2 red and 2 white wines. Use a tree diagram to help answer the following.



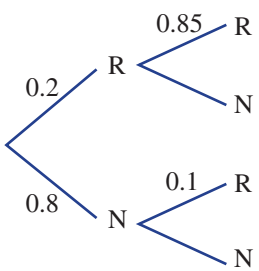
a If the first bottle is replaced before the second is selected, find:
- **i** Pr(2 red)
- **ii** Pr(1 red)
- **iii** Pr(not 2 white)
- **iv** Pr(at least 1 white)

b If the first bottle is not replaced before the second is selected, find:
- **i** Pr(2 red)
- **ii** Pr(1 red)
- **iii** Pr(not 2 white)
- **iv** Pr(at least 1 white)

Rainy days

— 10

10 Imagine that the probability of rain next Monday is 0.2. The probability of rain on a day after a rainy day is 0.85, whereas the probability of rain on a day after a non-rainy day is 0.1.



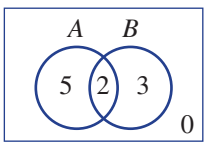
a Next Monday and Tuesday, find the probability of having:
- **i** 2 rainy days
- **ii** exactly 1 rainy day
- **iii** at least 1 dry day

b Next Monday, Tuesday and Wednesday, find the probability of having:
- **i** 3 rainy days
- **ii** exactly 1 dry day
- **iii** at most 2 rainy days

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4G Independent events

In previous sections we have looked at problems involving conditional probability. This Venn diagram, for example, gives the following results.

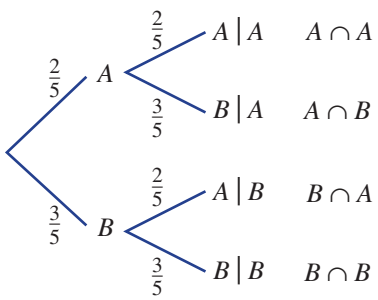


$$\Pr(A) = \frac{7}{10} \text{ and } \Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{2}{5}$$

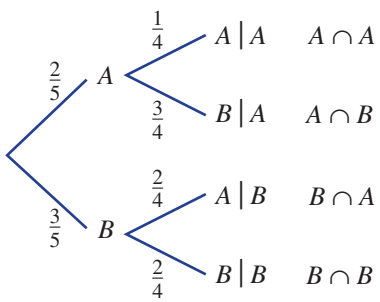
The condition B in $\Pr(A \mid B)$ has changed the probability of A. The events A and B are therefore not independent.

For multi-stage experiments we can consider events either with or without replacement. These tree diagrams, for example, show two selections of marbles from a bag of 2 aqua (A) and 3 blue (B) marbles.

With replacement



Without replacement



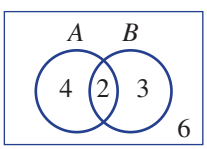
In the first tree diagram $\Pr(A \mid B) = \Pr(A)$, so the events are independent.

In the second tree diagram $\Pr(A \mid B) \neq \Pr(A)$, so the events are not independent.

Let's start: Is it the same to be mutually exclusive and independent?

Use the Venn diagram to consider the following questions.

- Are the events mutually exclusive? Why?
- Find $\Pr(A)$ and $\Pr(A \mid B)$. Does this mean that the events A and B are independent?



Key ideas

Independent events Two events that do not influence or affect each other

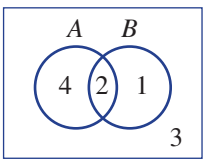
- Two events are **independent** if the outcome of one event does not change the probability of obtaining the other event.
  - $\Pr(A \mid B) = \Pr(A)$ or $\Pr(B \mid A) = \Pr(B)$
  - $\Pr(A \cap B) = \Pr(A) \times \Pr(B)$
- For multi-stage experiments where selection is made with replacement, successive events are independent.
- For multi-stage experiments where selection is made without replacement, successive events are not independent.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 4G

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 This Venn diagram shows the number of elements in events A and B.



Recall:
$\Pr(B \mid A) = \frac{\text{number in } A \cap B}{\text{number in } A}$

a Find:
i $\Pr(B)$ **ii** $\Pr(B \mid A)$

b Is $\Pr(B \mid A) = \Pr(B)$?

c Are the events A and B independent?

2 Complete each sentence.

a For multi-stage experiments, successive events are independent if selections are made _____ replacement.

b For multi-stage experiments, successive events are not independent if selections are made _____ replacement.

Choose from 'with' or 'without'.

3 A coin is tossed twice. Let A be the event 'the first toss gives a tail'. Let B be the event 'the second toss gives a tail'.

a Find:
i $\Pr(A)$ **ii** $\Pr(B)$

b Would you say that events A and B are independent?

c What is $\Pr(B \mid A)$?

FLUENCY 4 4, 5

Example 12 Using Venn diagrams to consider independence

A selection of 10 mobile phone plans includes 4 with free connection and 5 with a free second battery. 1 plan has both free connection and a free second battery.
Let A be the event 'choosing a mobile phone plan with free connection'.
Let B be the event 'choosing a mobile phone plan with a free second battery'.

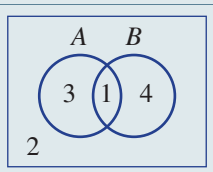
a Summarise the information about the 10 mobile phone plans in a Venn diagram.

b Find **i** $\Pr(A)$ **ii** $\Pr(A \mid B)$

c State whether or not the events A and B are independent.

Solution

a



Explanation

Start with the 1 element that belongs to both A and B and complete according to the given information.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

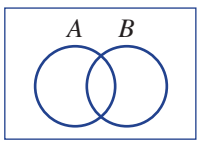
4G

b i $\Pr(A) = \frac{4}{10} = \frac{2}{5}$ 4 of the 10 elements belong to A.

ii $\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{1}{5}$ 1 of the 5 elements in B belongs to A.

c The events A and B are not independent. $\Pr(A \mid B) \neq \Pr(A)$

4 A selection of 8 offers for computer printers includes 3 with a free printer cartridge and 4 with a free box of paper. 2 have both a free printer cartridge and a free box of paper.
Let A be the event 'choosing a printer with a free printer cartridge'.
Let B be the event 'choosing a printer with a free box of paper'.



a Summarise the given information about the 8 computer printer offers in a Venn diagram.

b Find **i** $\Pr(A)$ **ii** $\Pr(A \mid B)$

c State whether or not the events A and B are independent.

If $\Pr(A) = \Pr(A \mid B)$, then the events A and B are independent.

5 A selection of 6 different baby strollers includes 3 with a free rain cover and 4 with a free sun shade. 2 offer both a free rain cover and a free sun shade.
Let A be the event 'choosing a stroller with a free sun shade'.
Let B be the event 'choosing a stroller with a free rain cover'.

a Summarise the given information about the six baby strollers in a Venn diagram.

b Find **i** $\Pr(A)$ **ii** $\Pr(A \mid B)$

c State whether or not the events A and B are independent.

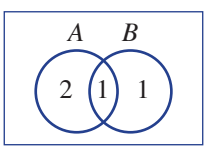
PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6, 7 6–9

6 From events A and B in the given Venn diagrams:

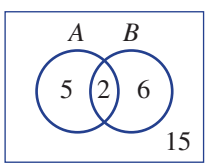
i Find $\Pr(A)$ and $\Pr(A \mid B)$.

ii Hence, decide whether or not events A and B are independent.

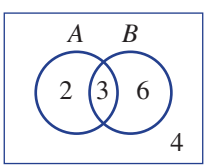
a



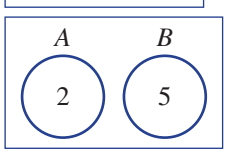
b



c



d



Remember:
$\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{\text{number in } A \cap B}{\text{number in } B}$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7 For the events A and B with details provided in the given two-way tables, find $\Pr(A)$ and $\Pr(A \mid B)$. Decide whether or not the events A and B are independent.

a

	A	A'	
B	1	1	2
B'	3	3	6
	4	4	8

b

	A	A'	
B	1	3	4
B'	2	4	6
	3	7	10

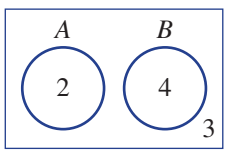
c

	A	A'	
B	3	17	20
B'	12	4	16
	15	21	36

d

	A	A'	
B	1		9
B'			
	5		45

8 Use this diagram to help decide if this statement is true or false:
If two events, A and B, are mutually exclusive, then they are also independent.



9 A coin is tossed 5 times. Find the probability of obtaining:
- **a** 5 heads
- **b** at least 1 tail
- **c** at least 1 head

Coin tosses are independent. From two coins, the probability of two heads is $\frac{1}{2} \times \frac{1}{2}$.

Tax and investment advice — 10

10 Of 17 leading accountants, 15 offer advice on tax (T) and 10 offer advice on business growth (G). Eight of the accountants offer advice on both tax and business growth. One of the 17 accountants is chosen at random.

- **a** Use a Venn diagram or two-way table to help find:
  - **i** $\Pr(T)$
  - **ii** $\Pr(T \text{ only})$
  - **iii** $\Pr(T \mid G)$
- **b** Are the events T and G independent?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Maths@Work: Business analyst

Businesses employ analysts to look at how their businesses run, and how they can run more efficiently. Analysts use probabilities, relative frequencies and graphs to look at data, undertake calculations and make recommendations.

Being able to summarise and interpret data and understand likelihoods are important skills for analysts and business owners to have.

Complete these questions that a business analyst may face in their day-to-day job.

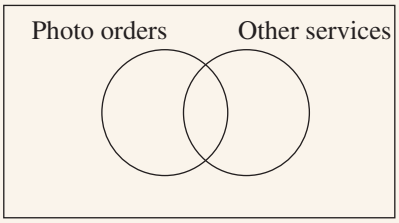
1 An online photo printing company wishes to analyse their customer orders and needs based on the products that are currently purchased from them. They looked at the results for a typical week over two areas of the business: photos and other services, such as canvases, mugs and calendars.
The results of one week's orders are shown in the table below.

	Other services	No other services	Total orders
Photos ordered	561	1179	1740
No photos ordered	260	–	260
Totals	821	1179	2000

a Percentages are often used to in probability. Rewrite the table above using percentages, where 100% equals the total orders for the week.

$\frac{561}{2000} \times \frac{100}{1} = 28.05\%$

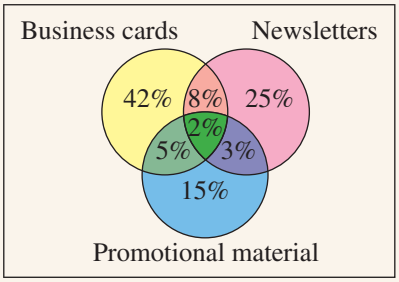
b Show this information in a Venn diagram, using percentages.



c Each customer ordering photos averages 30 prints (size 4×6). The company charges 12 cents a print. How much is the weekly income generated by photos, using the week's orders shown above?

d The company wishes to invest money in some advertising. Should this advertising be for the promotion of their photo printing service or should it be aimed at the other services they supply? Explain your answer.

2 Consider the information of the services offered by a different company wishing to look into how its business operates. They offer three types of products: business cards, newsletter printing and promotional lines, which include calendars, mugs etc. This company does not offer separate photo printing.
The breakdown of their business can be seen in the Venn diagram on the right.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

a If 1000 customers were surveyed, how many of them purchased:
- **i** only one of the three product lines on offer?
- **ii** exactly two of the product lines?
- **iii** at least two of the product lines?
- **iv** all three product lines available?

b What is the single most important product that the company offers? State the statistics for your selection and explain the significance to the company of this information.

c If you were the owners or share holders in this company, ideally how would you like to see the Venn diagram change over time to see growth within the company?

Using technology

3 'Get Set' is an online business selling sportswear. It has been very successful over the past year and its quarterly sales are shown in this table.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	Sportswear sales from Get Set online business						
2	**Sport**	**QUARTER 1**	**QUARTER 2**	**QUARTER 3**	**QUARTER 4**	**Totals**	**Percentages**
3	Golf	159	98	104	137		
4	Running	278	312	320	287		
5	Cycling	209	276	248	268		
6	Dance	94	77	107	68		
7	Gym	169	176	195	284		
8	Yoga	29	47	26	32		
9	**Totals**						
10	**Percentages**						

a Copy the data into an Excel spreadsheet and enter appropriate formulas into the shaded cells to find their values.

b Which type of sportswear is:
- **i** most likely to be sold?
- **ii** least likely to be sold?

c Insert a column graph showing the quarterly sales for each sport.

Use dollar signs (e.g. $H$12) in a formula that links to a fixed cell.

Select the sports and sales area of the table and click on Insert and then Column.

d In the fourth quarter, Get Set offered special prices for one line of sportswear as part of an advertising drive. Which sportswear do you think was on special? Was the advertising successful? Give reasons for your answer.

e Insert a column graph showing the total percentages for each quarter of sales.

f Businesses use graphs to show comparisons between data sets.
What is the increase in total percentage from Quarter 1 to Quarter 4? Comment on whether your graph in part **e** exaggerates this increase and, if so, explain why. Make an adjustment on the graph so that it is not misleading.

Hold the Ctrl button while selecting the titles Quarter 1 to Quarter 4 and also their total percentages row.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

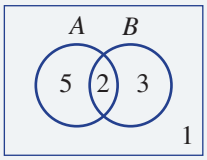
Puzzles and games

1 'I have nothing in common.' Match the answers to the letters in parts **a** and **b** to uncover the code.

$\frac{5}{14}$	5	2	5	7	10	10	$\frac{7}{11}$

$\frac{5}{11}$	$\frac{3}{14}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	10	5	$\frac{10}{11}$	$\frac{1}{7}$	3	$\frac{5}{11}$

a These questions relate to the Venn diagram at right.



T How many elements in $A \cap B$?
L How many elements in $A \cup B$?
V How many elements in B only?
Y Find Pr(A).
S Find Pr($A \cup B$).
E Find Pr(A only).

b These questions relate to the two-way table at right.

	P	P'	
Q	U	4	9
Q'	2		
		A	14

U What number should be in place of the letter U?
A What number should be in place of the letter A?
M Find Pr($P \cap Q$).
C Find Pr(P').
X Find Pr(neither P nor Q).
I Find Pr(P only).

2 What is the chance of rolling a sum of at least 10 from rolling two 6-sided dice?

3 *Game for two people*: You will need a bag or pocket and coloured counters.

- One person places 8 counters of 3 different colours in a bag or pocket. The second person must not look!
- The second person then selects a counter from the bag. The colour is noted, then the counter is returned to the bag. This is repeated 100 times.
- Complete this table.

Colour	Tally	Frequency	Guess
Total:	100	100	

- Using the experimental results, the second person now tries to guess how many counters of each colour are in the bag.

4 Two digits are chosen without replacement from the set $\{1, 2, 3, 4\}$ to form a two-digit number. Find the probability that the two-digit number is:

a 32 **b** even **c** less than 40 **d** at least 22

5 A coin is tossed 4 times. What is the probability that at least 1 tail is obtained?

6 Two leadership positions are to be filled from a group of 2 girls and 3 boys. What is the probability that the positions will be filled by 1 girl and 1 boy?

7 The letters of the word DOOR are jumbled randomly. What is the probability that the final arrangement will spell DOOR?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter summary

Probability

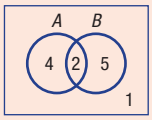
Review

- Sample space is the list of all possible outcomes
- $\Pr(\text{event}) = \dfrac{\text{number of favourable outcomes}}{\text{total number of outcomes}}$

Notation

- Union $A \cup B$ (A or B)
- Intersection $A \cap B$ (A and B)
- Complement of A is A' (not A)
- A only
- Mutually exclusive events $\Pr(A \cap B) = 0$

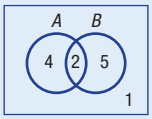
Venn diagram and Two-way table



	A	A'	
B	2	5	7
B'	4	1	5
	6	6	12

Conditional probability ★

$$\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{\text{number in } A \cap B}{\text{number in } B}$$



	A	A'	
B	2	5	7
B'	4	1	5
	6	6	12

$\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{2}{7}$

$\Pr(B \mid A) = \frac{2}{6} = \frac{1}{3}$

Independent events ★

- $\Pr(A \mid B) = \Pr(A)$ or $\Pr(B \mid A) = \Pr(B)$
- $\Pr(A \cap B) = \Pr(A) \times \Pr(B)$

Tables

With replacement

	A	B	C
A	(A, A)	(B, A)	(C, A)
B	(A, B)	(B, B)	(C, B)
C	(A, C)	(B, C)	(C, C)

Without replacement

	A	B	C
A	×	(B, A)	(C, A)
B	(A, B)	×	(C, B)
C	(A, C)	(B, C)	×

Tree diagrams

3 white
4 black

With replacement

Choice 1	*Choice 2*	*Outcome*	*Probability*
$\frac{3}{7}$ W	$\frac{3}{7}$ W	(W, W)	$\frac{9}{49}$
	$\frac{4}{7}$ B	(W, B)	$\frac{12}{49}$
$\frac{4}{7}$ B	$\frac{3}{7}$ W	(B, W)	$\frac{12}{49}$
	$\frac{4}{7}$ B	(B, B)	$\frac{16}{49}$

$\Pr(\text{W, B}) = \frac{3}{7} \times \frac{4}{7}$

$= \frac{12}{49}$

Without replacement

$\frac{3}{7}$ W	$\frac{2}{6}$ W	(W, W)	$\frac{1}{7}$
	$\frac{4}{6}$ B	(W, B)	$\frac{2}{7}$
$\frac{4}{7}$ B	$\frac{3}{6}$ W	(B, W)	$\frac{2}{7}$
	$\frac{3}{6}$ B	(B, B)	$\frac{2}{7}$

$\Pr(\text{1 white}) = \frac{2}{7} + \frac{2}{7}$

$= \frac{4}{7}$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

Multiple-choice questions

4A **1** A letter is chosen from the word SUCCESS. The probability that the letter is not a C is:

A $\frac{2}{7}$ **B** $\frac{3}{5}$ **C** $\frac{5}{7}$ **D** $\frac{4}{7}$ **E** $\frac{3}{7}$

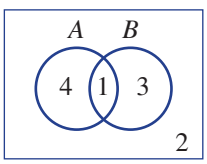
4A **2** The number of manufacturing errors spotted in a car plant on 20 randomly selected days is given by this table.

Number of errors	0	1	2	3	Total
Frequency	11	6	2	1	20

An estimate of the probability that on the next day no errors will be observed is:

A $\frac{3}{10}$ **B** $\frac{9}{20}$ **C** $\frac{11}{20}$ **D** $\frac{17}{20}$ **E** $\frac{3}{20}$

4B **3** For this Venn diagram, $\Pr(A \cup B)$ is equal to:



A $\frac{4}{5}$ **B** $\frac{1}{2}$ **C** $\frac{5}{8}$ **D** $\frac{1}{4}$ **E** $\frac{1}{10}$

4B **4** 15 people like apples or bananas. Of those 15 people, 10 like apples and 3 like both apples and bananas. How many from the group like only apples?

A 5 **B** 3 **C** 13 **D** 7 **E** 10

4E **5** A letter is chosen from each of the words CAN and TOO. The probability that the pair of letters will not have an O is:

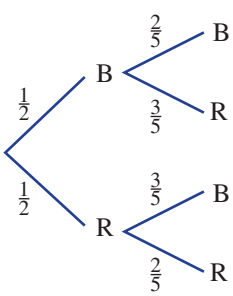
	C	A	N
T	(C, T)	(A, T)	(N, T)
O	(C, O)	(A, O)	(N, O)
O	(C, O)	(A, O)	(N, O)

A $\frac{2}{3}$ **B** $\frac{1}{2}$ **C** $\frac{1}{3}$ **D** $\frac{1}{9}$ **E** $\frac{5}{9}$

4B **6** The sets A and B are known to be mutually exclusive. Which of the following is therefore true?

A $\Pr(A) = \Pr(B)$ **B** $\Pr(A \cap B) = 0$ **C** $\Pr(A) = 0$
D $\Pr(A \cap B) = 1$ **E** $\Pr(A \cup B) = 0$

4F **7** For this tree diagram, what is the probability of the outcome (B, R)?



A $\frac{1}{5}$ **B** $\frac{3}{10}$ **C** $\frac{3}{7}$ **D** $\frac{1}{10}$ **E** $\frac{6}{11}$

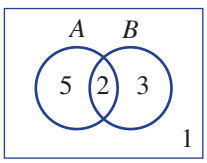
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

4C **8** For this two-way table, $\Pr(A \cap B)$ is:

	A	A'	
B		1	3
B'			4
		4	

A $\frac{2}{3}$ **B** $\frac{1}{4}$ **C** $\frac{1}{7}$ **D** $\frac{1}{3}$ **E** $\frac{2}{7}$

4D **9** For this Venn diagram, $\Pr(A \mid B)$ is:



A $\frac{5}{7}$ **B** $\frac{5}{2}$ **C** $\frac{5}{8}$ **D** $\frac{5}{3}$ **E** $\frac{3}{11}$

4G **10** Two events are independent when:

A $\Pr(A) = \Pr(B)$ **B** $\Pr(A') = 0$ **C** $\Pr(A \cup B) = 0$
D $\Pr(A \mid B) = \Pr(B)$ **E** $\Pr(A) = \Pr(A \mid B)$

Short-answer questions

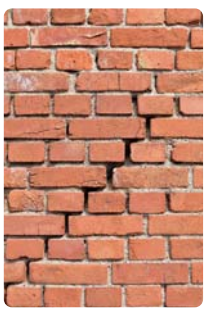
4A **1** A fair 6-sided die is rolled once. Find:

a Pr(4) **b** Pr(even) **c** Pr(at least 3)

4A **2** A letter is chosen from the word INTEREST. Find the probability that the letter will be:

a I **b** E **c** a vowel
d not a vowel **e** E or T

4A **3** An engineer inspects 20 houses in a street for cracks. The results are summarised in this table.



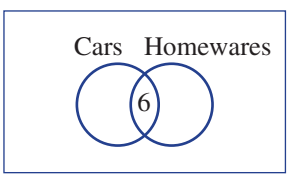
Number of cracks	0	1	2	3	4
Frequency	8	5	4	2	1

a From these results, estimate the probability that the next house inspected in the street will have the following number of cracks.
i 0 **ii** 1 **iii** 2 **iv** 3 **v** 4

b Estimate the probability that the next house will have:
i at least 1 crack
ii no more than 2 cracks

4B/C **4** Of 36 people, 18 have an interest in cars, 11 have an interest in homewares and 6 have an interest in both cars and homewares.

a Complete this Venn diagram.



b Complete this two-way table.

	C	C'	
H	6		
H'			

c State the number of people from the group who do not have an interest in either cars or homewares.

d If a person is chosen at random from the group, find the probability that the person will:
i have an interest in cars and homewares
ii have an interest in homewares only
iii not have any interest in cars

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

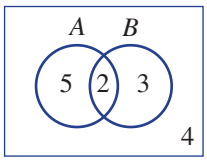
4B/C **5** All 26 birds in an aviary have clipped wings and/or a tag. In total, 18 birds have tags, 14 have clipped wings and 6 have both clipped wings and a tag.

a Find the number of birds that have only clipped wings.

b Find the probability that a bird chosen at random will have a tag only.

4D **6** For these probability diagrams, find $\Pr(A \mid B)$.

a



b

	A	A'	
B	1	4	5
B'	2	2	4
	3	6	9

4E **7** A letter is chosen at random from the word HAPPY and a second letter is chosen from the word HEY.

		1st				
		H	A	P	P	Y
2nd	H	(H, H)	(A, H)	(P, H)		
	E					
	Y					

a List the sample space by completing this table.

b State the total number of outcomes.

c Find the probability that the two letters chosen will be:

i H then E **ii** the same **iii** not the same

4F **8** A fair 4-sided die is rolled twice and the total is noted.

a Complete this tree diagram to list the sample space.

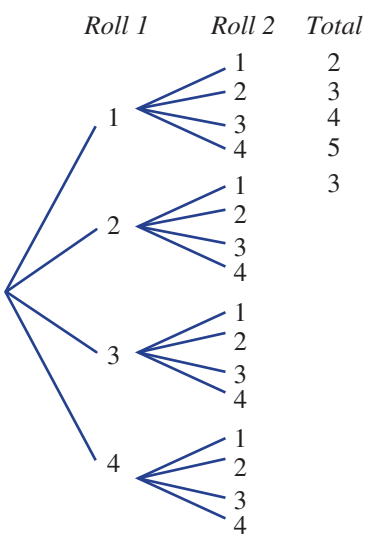
b Find these probabilities.

i Pr(2)

ii Pr(5)

iii Pr(1)

iv Pr(not 1)



4F **9** Two people are selected from a group of 2 females and 3 males, without replacement. Use a tree diagram to find the probability of selecting:

a a female on the first selection

b a male on the second selection given that a female was chosen on the first selection

c 2 males

d 1 male

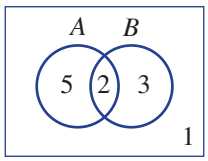
e at least 1 female

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4D/G

10 For each diagram, find Pr(A) and Pr($A \mid B$), then decide if events A and B are independent.

a

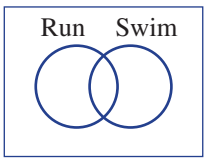


b

	A	A'	
B	3		6
B'			
	5		10

Extended-response questions

1 Of 15 people surveyed to find out if they run or swim for exercise, 6 said they run, 4 said they swim and 3 said they both run and swim.



a How many people surveyed neither run nor swim?

b One of the 15 people is selected at random. Find the probability that they:

i run or swim **ii** only swim

c Represent the information in a two-way table.

d Find the probability that:

i a person swims, given that they run

ii a person runs, given that they swim

2 A bakery sells three types of bread: raisin (R) at \$2 each, sourdough (S) at \$3 each, and white (W) at \$1.50 each. Judy is in a hurry. She randomly selects 2 loaves and quickly takes them to the counter. (Assume an unlimited loaf supply.)

2nd \ 1st	R	S	W
R			
S			
W			

a Complete this table, showing the possible combination of loaves that Judy could have selected.

b Find the probability that Judy selects:

i 2 raisin loaves **ii** 2 loaves that are the same

iii at least 1 white loaf **iv** not a sourdough loaf

Judy has only \$4 in her purse.

c How many different combinations of bread will Judy be able to afford?

d Find the probability that Judy will not be able to afford her two chosen loaves.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 5

Statistics

What you will learn

5A Collecting data
5B Frequency tables, column graphs and histograms (Consolidating)
5C Dot plots and stem-and-leaf plots (Consolidating)
5D Range and measures of centre
5E Quartiles and outliers
5F Box plots
5G Time-series data
5H Bivariate data and scatter plots
5I Line of best fit by eye

Australian curriculum

STATISTICS

Determine quartiles and **interquartile range (ACMSP248)**

Construct and interpret box plots and use them to compare **data** sets **(ACMSP249)**

Compare shapes of box plots to corresponding histograms and dot plots **(ACMSP250)**

Use scatter plots to investigate and comment on relationships between two numerical variables **(ACMSP251)**

Investigate and describe **bivariate numerical data** where the **independent variable** is time **(ACMSP252)**

Evaluate statistical reports in the media and other places by linking claims to displays, statistics and representative **data (ACMSP253)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

Statistics helping the environment

Australian governments and businesses engage environmental scientists to explore and document our unique plant and animal communities. Statistics are used to analyse and present data which managers study to make informed decisions about future developments.

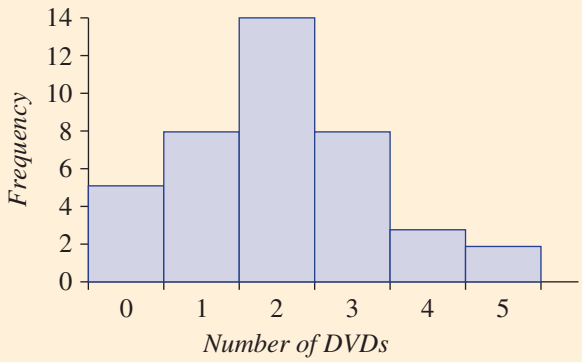
A pollution incident in a stream might result in some species, such as fish, shrimps or crayfish, slowly dying out. A scientist can measure the diversity of life in the stream with regular netting and counting the various species caught. Diversity vs time can be graphed and a trend line drawn through the scattered points. A downward sloping trend line suggests a decline in diversity. Statistical analysis is used to determine if the deviation of data points from the trend line is small enough for the trend to be significant.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016

Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Pre-test

1 The number of DVDs rented per person at a store is shown in this graph.



- **a** How many customers rented three DVDs?
- **b** How many customers were surveyed?
- **c** How many DVDs were rented during the survey?
- **d** How many customers rented fewer than two DVDs?

2 This table shows the frequency of scores in a test.

Score	Frequency
0–	2
20–	3
40–	6
60–	12
80–100	7

- **a** How many scores were in the 40 to less than 60 range?
- **b** How many scores were:
  - **i** at least 60?
  - **ii** less than 80?
- **c** How many scores were there in total?
- **d** What percentage of scores were in the 20 to less than 40 range?

3 Calculate:

a $\frac{6+10}{2}$ **b** $\frac{8+9}{2}$ **c** $\frac{2+4+5+9}{4}$ **d** $\frac{3+5+8+10+14}{5}$

4 For each of these data sets find:

- **i** the mean (i.e. average)
- **ii** the mode (i.e. most frequent)
- **iii** the median (i.e. middle value of ordered data)
- **iv** the range (i.e. difference between highest and lowest)

a 38, 41, 41, 47, 58

b 2, 2, 2, 4, 6, 6, 7, 9, 10, 12

5 This stem-and-leaf plot shows the weight, in grams, of some small calculators.

Stem	Leaf
9	8
10	2 6
11	1 1 4 9
12	3 6
13	8 9 9
14	0 2 5

13 | 6 means 136 grams

- **a** How many calculators are represented in the plot?
- **b** What is the mode (i.e. most frequent)?
- **c** What is the minimum calculator weight and maximum weight?
- **d** Find the range (i.e. maximum value – minimum value).

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5A Collecting data

A statistician is a person who is employed to design surveys. They also collect, analyse and interpret data. They assist the government, companies and other organisations to make decisions and plan for the future.

Statisticians:

- **Formulate** and **refine** questions for a survey.
- Choose some **subjects** (i.e. people) to complete the survey.
- **Collect** the data.
- **Organise and display** the data using the most appropriate graphs and tables.
- **Analyse** the data.
- **Interpret the data** and draw conclusions.

There are many reports in the media that begin with the words 'A recent study has found that…'. These are usually the result of a survey or investigation that a researcher has conducted to collect information about an important issue, such as unemployment, crime or obesity.

Let's start: Critiquing survey questions

Here is a short survey. It is not very well constructed.
Question 1: How old are you?
Question 2: How much time did you spend sitting in front of the television or a computer yesterday?
Question 3: Some people say that teenagers like you are lazy and spend too much time sitting around when you should be outside exercising. What do you think of that comment?

Have a class discussion about the following.

- What will the answers to Question 1 look like? How could they be displayed?
- What will the answers to Question 2 look like? How could they be displayed?
- Is Question 2 going to give a realistic picture of your normal daily activity?
- How could Question 2 be improved?
- What will the answers to Question 3 look like? How could they be displayed?
- How could Question 3 be improved?

Key ideas

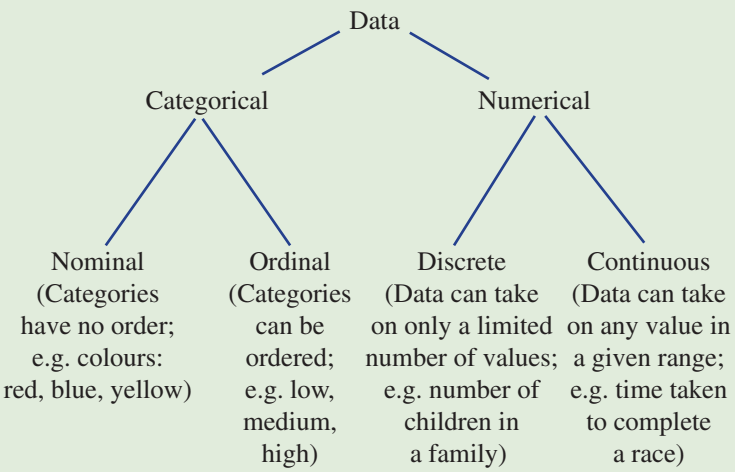
- Surveys are used to collect statistical data.
- Survey questions need to be constructed carefully so that the person knows exactly what sort of answer to give. They should use simple language and should not be ambiguous.
- Survey questions should not be worded so that they deliberately try to provoke a certain kind of response.
- Surveys should respect the privacy of the people being surveyed.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- If the question contains an option to be chosen from a list, the number of options should be an odd number, so that there is a 'neutral' choice. For example, the options could be:

strongly disagree	disagree	unsure	agree	strongly agree

- A *population* is a group of people, animals or objects with something in common. Some examples of populations are:
  - all the people in Australia on Census night
  - all the students in your school
  - all the boys in your Maths class
  - all the tigers in the wild in Sumatra
  - all the cars in Sydney
  - all the wheat farms in NSW
- A *sample* is a group that has been chosen from a population. Sometimes information from a sample is used to describe the whole population, so it is important to choose the sample carefully.
- **Statistical data** can be categorised as follows.



Statistical data
Information gathered by observation, survey or measurement

Exercise 5A

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 2, 3

1 A popular Australian 'current affairs' television show recently investigated the issue of spelling. They suspected that people in their twenties are not as good at spelling as people in their fifties, so they decided to conduct a statistical investigation. They chose a sample of 12 people aged 50–59 years and 12 people aged 20–29 years.
Answer the following questions on paper, then discuss in a small group or as a whole class.
a Do you think that the number of people surveyed is enough?
b How many people do you think there are in Australia aged 20–29 years?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

c How many people do you think there are in Australia aged 50–59 years?
d Use the website of the Australian Bureau of Statistics to look up the answers to parts **b** and **c**.
e Do you think it is fair and reasonable to compare the spelling ability of these two groups of people?
f How would you go about comparing the spelling ability of these two groups of people?
g Would you give the two groups the same set of words to spell?
h How could you give the younger people an unfair advantage?
i What sorts of words would you include in a spelling test for the survey?
j How and where would you choose the people to do the spelling test?

2 Match each word (**a**–**h**) with its definition (**A**–**H**).

a population	**A** A group chosen from a population
b census	**B** A tool used to collect statistical data
c sample	**C** The state of being secret
d survey	**D** An element or feature that can vary
e data	**E** All the people or objects in question
f variable	**F** Statistics collected from an entire population
g statistics	**G** The practise of collecting and analysing data
h confidentiality	**H** The factual information collected from a survey or other source

3 Match each word (**a**–**f**) with its definition (**A**–**F**).

a numerical	**A** Categorical data that has no order
b continuous	**B** Data that are numbers
c discrete	**C** Numerical data that take on a limited number of values
d categorical	**D** Data that can be divided into categories
e ordinal	**E** Numerical data that take any value in a given range
f nominal	**F** Categorical data that can be ordered

FLUENCY 4–6 4, 5, 7

Example 1 Describing types of data

What type of data would the following survey questions generate?
a How many televisions do you have in your home?
b To what type of music do you most like to listen?

Solution	Explanation
a numerical and discrete	The answer to the question is a number with a limited number of values; in this case, a whole number.
b categorical and nominal	The answer is a type of music and these categories have no order.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5A

4 Which one of the following survey questions would generate numerical data?

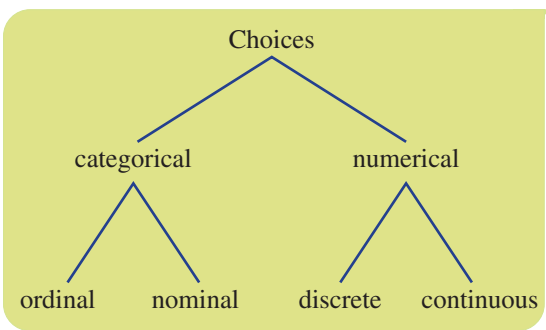
- **A** What is your favourite colour?
- **B** What type of car does your family own?
- **C** How long does it take for you to travel to school?
- **D** What type of dog do you own?

5 Which one of the following survey questions would generate categorical data?

- **A** How many times do you eat at your favourite fast-food place in a typical week?
- **B** How much do you usually spend buying your favourite fast food?
- **C** How many items did you buy last time you went to your favourite fast-food place?
- **D** Which is your favourite fast food?

6 Year 10 students were asked the following questions in a survey. Describe what type of data each question generates.

- **a** How many people under the age of 18 years are there in your immediate family?
- **b** How many letters are there in your first name?
- **c** Which company is the carrier of your mobile telephone calls? Optus/Telstra/Vodafone/3/Virgin/Other (Please specify.)
- **d** What is your height?
- **e** How would you describe your level of application in Maths? (Choose from very high, high, medium or low.)



7 Every student in Years 7 to 12 votes in the prefect elections. The election process is an example of:

- **A** a population
- **B** continuous data
- **C** a representative sample
- **D** a census

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 9–11

8 TV 'ratings' are used to determine the shows that are the most popular. Every week some households are chosen at random and a device is attached to their television. The device keeps track of the shows the households are watching during the week.
The company that chooses the households should always attempt to find:

- **A** a census
- **B** continuous data
- **C** a representative sample
- **D** ungrouped data

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9 The principal decides to survey Year 10 students to determine their opinion of Mathematics. In order to increase the chance of choosing a representative sample, the principal should:

- **A** Give a survey form to the first 30 Year 10 students who arrive at school.
- **B** Give a survey form to all the students studying the most advanced maths subject.
- **C** Give a survey form to five students in every Maths class.
- **D** Give a survey form to 20% of the students in every class.

10 Discuss some of the problems with the selection of a survey sample for each given topic.

- **a** A survey at the train station of how Australians get to work.
- **b** An email survey on people's use of computers.
- **c** Phoning people on the electoral roll to determine Australia's favourite sport.

11 Choose a topic in which you are especially interested, such as football, cricket, movies, music, cooking, food, computer games or social media.
Make up a survey about your topic that you could give to the other students in your class. It must have *four* questions.
Question 1 must produce data that are categorical and ordinal.
Question 2 must produce data that are categorical and nominal.
Question 3 must produce data that are numerical and discrete.
Question 4 must produce data that are numerical and continuous.

The Australian Census

— 12

12 The Australian Census is conducted by the Australian Bureau of Statistics every five years. Research either the 2011 or 2016 Australian Census on the website of the Australian Bureau of Statistics. Find out something interesting from the results of the Census.
Write a short news report or record a 3-minute news report on your computer.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5B Frequency tables, column graphs and histograms

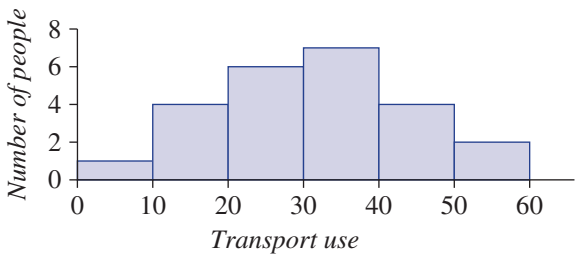
CONSOLIDATING

As a simple list, data can be difficult to interpret. Sorting the data into a frequency table allows us to make sense of it and draw conclusions from it.

Statistical graphs are an essential part of the analysis and representation of data. By looking at statistical graphs, we can draw conclusions about the numbers or categories in the data set.

Let's start: Public transport analysis

A survey was carried out to find out how many times people in a particular group had used public transport in the past month. The results are shown in this histogram.



Discuss what the histogram tells you about this group of people and their use of public transport.

You may wish to include these points:

- How many people were surveyed?
- Is the data symmetrical or skewed?
- Is it possible to work out all the individual data values from this graph?
- Do you think these people were selected from a group in your own community? Give reasons.

Key ideas

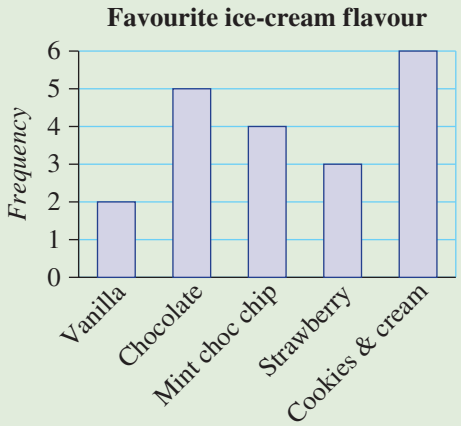
- A **frequency table** displays data by showing the number of values within a set of categories or class intervals. It may include a tally column to help count the data.

Favourite ice-cream flavour	Tally	Frequency
Vanilla	| |	2
Chocolate	𝍸	5
Mint choc chip	𝍸 |	4
Strawberry	| | |	3
Cookies and cream	𝍸 |	6

Frequency table
A table showing all possible scores in one column and the frequency of each score in another column

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- A **column graph** can be used for a single set of categorical or discrete data.

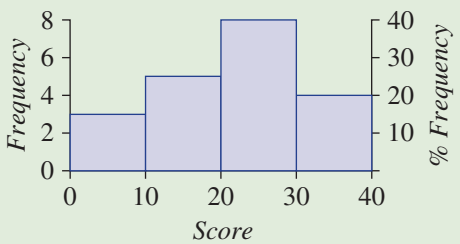


Column graph A graphical representation of a single set of categorical or discrete data, where columns are used to show the frequency of scores

Histogram A special type of column graph with no gaps between the columns; it can represent class intervals

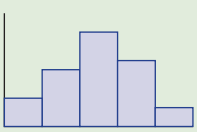
- **Histograms** can be used for grouped discrete or continuous numerical data. The frequency of particular class intervals is recorded.
  - The interval 10– (below) includes all numbers from 10 (including 10) to less than 20.
  - The percentage frequency is calculated as $\%\text{Frequency} = \frac{\text{frequency}}{\text{total}} \times 100$.

Class interval	Frequency	Percentage frequency
0–	3	$\frac{3}{20} \times 100 = 15\%$
10–	5	$\frac{5}{20} \times 100 = 25\%$
20–	8	40%
30–40	4	20%
Total	20	100%

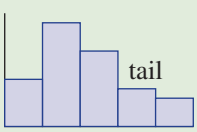


- Data can be symmetrical or skewed.

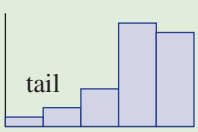
Symmetrical



Positively skewed



Negatively skewed



Exercise 5B

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Classify each set of data as categorical or numerical.

a 4.7, 3.8, 1.6, 9.2, 4.8

b red, blue, yellow, green, blue, red

c low, medium, high, low, low, medium

d 3 g, 7 g, 8 g, 7 g, 4 g, 1 g, 10 g

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5B

2 Complete these frequency tables.

a

Car colour	Tally	Frequency
Red	|||	
White	𝍸	
Green	||	
Silver	||	
Total		

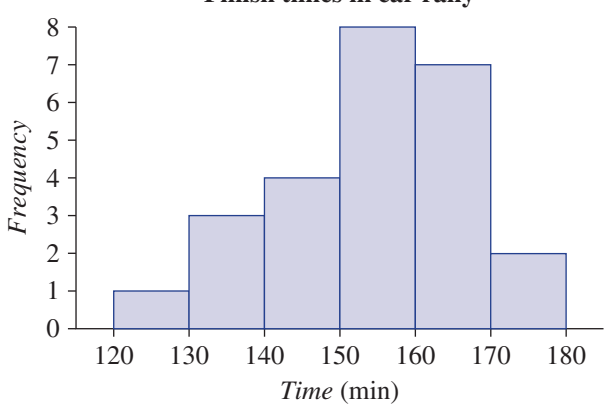
b

Class interval	Frequency	Percentage frequency
80–	8	$\frac{8}{50} \times 100 = 16\%$
85–	23	
90–	13	
90–100		
Total	**50**	

3 This frequency histogram shows how many competitors in a car rally race finished within a given time interval.

a How many competitors finished in a time between 150 and 160 minutes?

b How many cars were there in the race?



c Determine the following.

i How many competitors finished in fewer than 150 minutes?

ii What percentage of competitors finished in fewer than 150 minutes?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 4–6 4, 5, 7

Example 2 Constructing a frequency table and column graph

Twenty people checking out a hotel were surveyed on the level of service provided by the hotel staff. The results were:

Poor	First class	Poor	Average	Good
Good	Average	Good	First class	First class
Good	Good	First class	Good	Average
Average	Good	Poor	First class	Good

a Construct a frequency table to record the data, with headings Category, Tally and Frequency.
b Construct a column graph for the data.

Solution

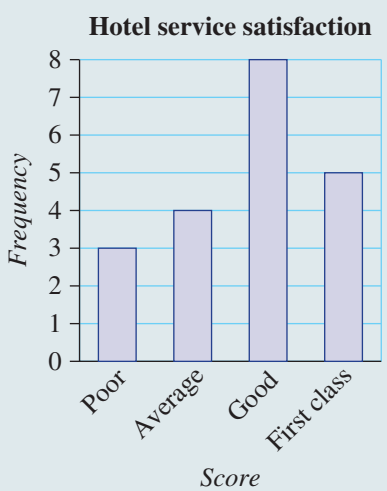
a

Category	Tally	Frequency
Poor	|||	3
Average	||||	4
Good	𝍸 |||	8
First class	𝍸	5
Total	20	20

Explanation

Construct a table with the headings Category, Tally, Frequency.
Fill in each category shown in the data. Work through the data in order, recording a tally mark (|) next to the category. It is a good idea to tick the data as you go, to keep track.
On the 5th occurrrence of a category, place a diagonal line through the tally marks (𝍸). Then start again on the 6th. Do this every five values, as it makes the tally marks easy to count up.
Once all data is recorded, count the tally marks for the frequency.
Check that the frequency total adds up to the number of people surveyed (20).

b



Draw a set of axes with frequency going up to 8.
For each category, draw a column with height up to its frequency value.
Leave gaps between each column.
Give your graph an appropriate heading.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5B

4 For the data below, which was obtained from surveys:

i Copy and complete this frequency table.

Category	Tally	Frequency
⋮	⋮	⋮

ii Construct a column graph for the data and include a heading.

In the column graph, leave spaces between each column.

a The results from 10 subjects on a student's school report are:

Good Low Good Good Excellent
Very Low Low Good Good Low

b The favourite sports of a class of students are:

Football Tennis Basketball Tennis Football
Netball Football Tennis Football Basketball
Basketball Tennis Netball Football Football
Football Basketball Football Netball Tennis

Example 3 Constructing and analysing a histogram

Twenty people were surveyed to find out how many times they use the internet in a week. The raw data are listed.

21, 19, 5, 10, 15, 18, 31, 40, 32, 25
11, 28, 31, 29, 16, 2, 13, 33, 14, 24

a Organise the data into a frequency table, using class intervals of 10. Include a percentage frequency column.
b Construct a histogram for the data, showing both the frequency and percentage frequency on the one graph.
c Which interval is the most frequent?
d What percentage of people used the internet 20 times or more?

Solution

a

Class interval	Tally	Frequency	Percentage frequency
0–	||	2	10%
10–	𝍸 |||	8	40%
20–	𝍸	5	25%
30–	||||	4	20%
40–49	|	1	5%
Total	20	20	100%

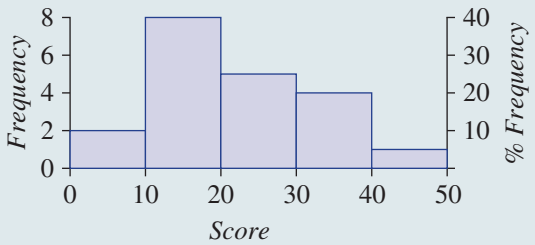
Explanation

The interval 10– includes all numbers from 10 (including 10) to less than 20, so 10 is in this interval but 20 is not.

Count the tally marks to record the frequency.
Add the frequency column to ensure all 20 values have been recorded.
Calculate each percentage frequency by dividing the frequency by the total (20) and multiplying by 100%; i.e. $\frac{2}{20} \times 100 = 10$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

b **Number of times the internet is accessed**



Transfer the data from the frequency table to the histogram. Axes scales are evenly spaced and the histogram bar is placed across the boundaries of the class interval. There is no space between the bars.

c The 10– interval is the most frequent.

The frequency (8) is highest for this interval. It is the highest bar on the histogram.

d 50% of those surveyed used the internet 20 or more times.

Sum the percentages for the class intervals from 20– and above.
$25 + 20 + 5 = 50$

5 The Maths test results of a class of 25 students were recorded as:

74	65	54	77	85	68	93	59	75
71	82	57	98	73	66	88	76	
92	70	77	65	68	81	79	80	

Construct a frequency table like this:

Class interval	Tally	Frequency	Percentage frequency
50–	|||	3	$\frac{\text{freq.}}{\text{total}} \times 100$
60–			
70–			
80–			
90–100			
Total			

a Organise the data into a frequency table, using class intervals of 10. Include a percentage frequency column.

b Construct a histogram for the data, showing both the frequency and percentage frequency on the one graph.

c Which interval is the most frequent?

d If an A is awarded for a mark of 80 or more, what percentage of the class received an A?

6 The number of wins scored this season is given for 20 hockey teams. Here are the raw data.

4, 8, 5, 12, 15, 9, 9, 7, 3, 7
10, 11, 1, 9, 13, 0, 6, 4, 12, 5

a Organise the data into a frequency table, using class intervals of 5. Start with 0–, then 5– etc. and include a percentage frequency column.

b Construct a histogram for the data, showing both the frequency and percentage frequency on the one graph.

c Which interval is the most frequent?

d What percentage of teams scored 5 or more wins?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5B

7 This frequency table displays the way in which 40 people travel to and from work.

Type of transport	Frequency	Percentage frequency
Car	16	
Train	6	
Tram	8	
Walking	5	
Bicycle	2	
Bus	3	
Total	**40**	

a Copy and complete the table.

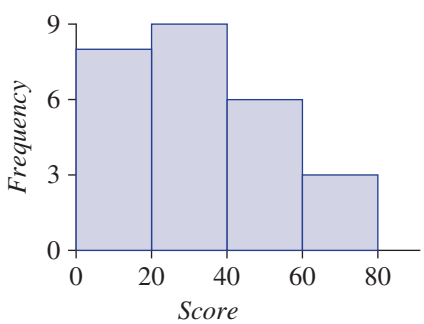
b Use the table to find:
- **i** the frequency of people who travel by train
- **ii** the most popular form of transport
- **iii** the percentage of people who travel by car
- **iv** the percentage of people who walk or cycle to work
- **v** the percentage of people who travel by public transport, including trains, buses and trams

Percentage frequency:
$$= \frac{\text{frequency}}{\text{total}} \times 100$$

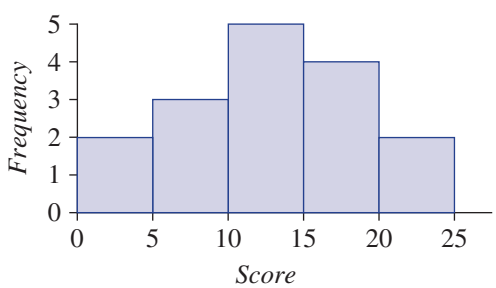
PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8, 10, 11

8 Which of these histograms shows a symmetrical data set and which one shows a skewed data set?

a



b



9 This tally records the number of mice that were weighed and categorised into particular mass intervals for a scientific experiment.

a Construct a table using these column headings: Mass, Frequency and Percentage frequency.

b Find the total number of mice weighed in the experiment.

c State the percentage of mice that were in the 20– gram interval.

d Which was the most common weight interval?

e What percentage of mice were in the most common mass interval?

f What percentage of mice had a mass of 15 grams or more?

Mass (grams)	Tally
10–	𝍸
15–	𝍸 |
20–	𝍸 𝍸 𝍸 |
25–	𝍸 𝍸 𝍸 𝍸 |
30–34	𝍸

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10 A school orchestra contains four musical sections: string, woodwind, brass and percussion. The number of students playing in each section is summarised in this tally.

Section	Tally
String	𝍸 𝍸 𝍸 𝍸 |
Woodwind	𝍸 |||
Brass	𝍸 ||
Percussion	||||

a Construct and complete a percentage frequency table for the data.

b What is the total number of students in the school orchestra?

c What percentage of students play in the string section?

d What percentage of students do not play in the string section?

e If the number of students in the string section increased by three, what would be the percentage of students who play in the percussion section? (Round your answer to one decimal place.)

11 Describe the information that is lost when displaying data using a histogram.

Interpreting other graphical displays

— 12, 13

12 The graph shown compares the life expectancy of males and females in 10 different countries. Use the graph to answer the following questions.

a Which country has the biggest difference in life expectancy for males and females? Approximately how many years is this difference?

b Which country appears to have the smallest difference in life expectancy between males and females?

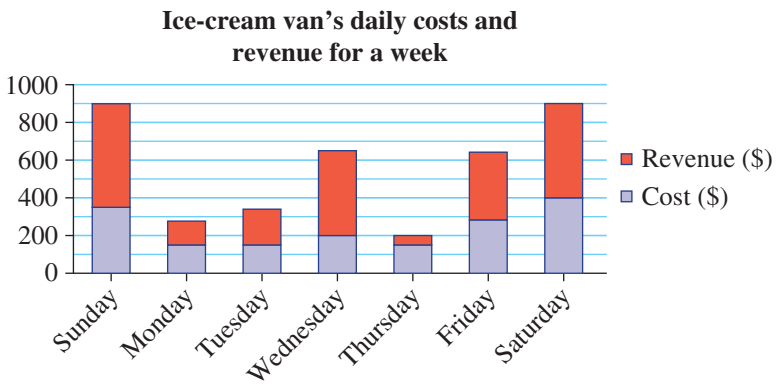
c From the information in the graph, write a statement comparing the life expectancy of males and females.

d South Africa is clearly below the other countries. Provide some reasons why you think this may be the case.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5B

13 This graph shows the amount spent (Cost) on the purchase and storage of ice-cream each day by an ice-cream vendor, and the amount of money made from the daily sales of ice-cream (Revenue) over the course of a week.



a On which days was the cost highest for the purchase and storage of ice-cream? Why do you think the vendor chose these days to spend the most?

b Wednesday had the greatest revenue for any weekday. What factors may have led to this?

c Daily profit is determined by the difference in revenue and cost. Identify:

i on which day the largest profit was made and state this profit (in dollars)

ii on which day the vendor suffered the biggest financial loss

d Describe some problems associated with this type of graph.

Using technology 5B: Using calculators to graph grouped data

This activity is available on the companion website as a printable PDF.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

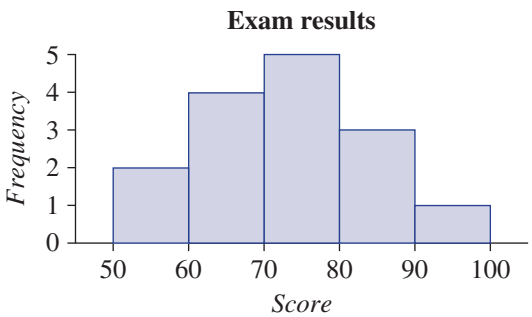
5C Dot plots and stem-and-leaf plots

CONSOLIDATING

In addition to column graphs, dot plots and stem-and-leaf plots can be used to display categorical or discrete data. They can also display two related sets for comparison. Like a histogram, they help to show how the data are distributed. A stem-and-leaf plot has the advantage of still displaying all the individual data items.

Let's start: Alternate representations

The histogram and stem-and-leaf plot below represent the same set of data. They show the scores achieved by a class in an exam.



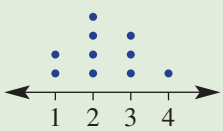
Stem	Leaf
5	1 3
6	5 7 8
7	1 2 4 6
8	3 4 7
9	6

6 | 8 means 68

- Describe the similarities in what the two graphs display.
- What does the stem-and-leaf provide that the histogram does not? What is the advantage of this?
- Which graph do you prefer?
- Discuss any other types of graphs that could be used to present the data.

Key ideas

- A **dot plot** records the frequency of each category or discrete value in a data set.
  - Each occurence of the value is marked with a dot.



Number of goals

- A **stem-and-leaf plot** displays each value in the data set using a stem number and a leaf number.
  - The data are displayed in two parts: a stem and a leaf.
  - The 'key' tells you how to interpret the stem and leaf parts.
  - The graph is similar to a histogram with class intervals, but the original data values are not lost.
  - The stem-and-leaf plot is ordered to allow for further statistical calculations.

Stem	Leaf
1	0 1 1 5
2	3 7
3	4 4 6
4	2 9

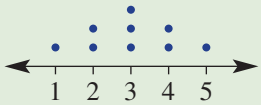
2 | 3 means 23
key

Dot plot A graph in which each dot represents one score

Stem-and-leaf plot A table that lists numbers in order, grouped in rows

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

- The shape of each of these graphs gives information about the distribution of the data.
  - A graph that is even either side of the centre is symmetrical.



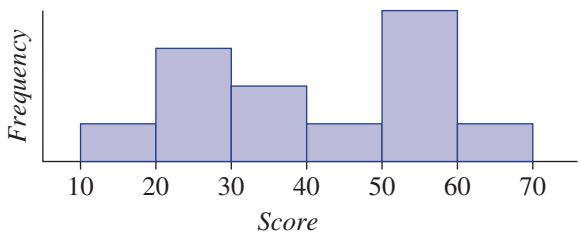
  - A graph that is bunched to one side of the centre is skewed.

Exercise 5C

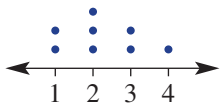
UNDERSTANDING 1–4 4

1 Name each of these types of graphs.

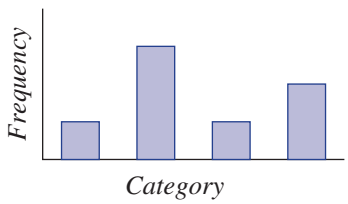
a



b



c



d

Stem	Leaf
0	1 1 3
1	2 4 7
2	0 2 2 5 8
3	1 3

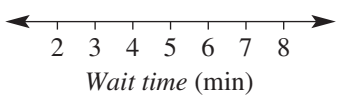
2 | 5 means 25

2 A student records the following wait times, in minutes, for his school bus over 4 school weeks.

5 4 2 8 4 2 7 5 3 3

5 4 2 5 4 5 8 7 2 6

Copy and complete this dot plot of the data.



3 List all the data shown in these stem-and-leaf plots (e.g. 32, 35, …).

a

Stem	Leaf
3	2 5
4	1 3 7
5	4 4 6
6	0 2
7	1 1

4 | 1 means 41

b

Stem	Leaf
0	2 3 7
1	4 4 8 9
2	3 6 6
3	0 5

2 | 3 means 2.3

Look at the key '4 | 1 means 41' to see how the stems and leaves go together.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 Redraw this stem-and-leaf plot, with all the data ordered correctly.

Stem	Leaf
12	7 2 3
10	1 4 8 1
13	9 0 2
11	3 0 3 6

12 | 2 means 122

Stems and leaves need to be placed in numerical order.

FLUENCY 5, 6, 7–8(½) 5, 6, 7–8(½)

Example 4 Interpreting a dot plot

This dot plot shows the number of goals per game scored by a team during the soccer season.

Number of goals per game

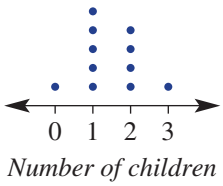
a How many games were played?
b What was the most common number of goals per game?
c How many goals were scored for the season?
d Describe the data in the dot plot.

Solution	Explanation
a There were 20 matches played.	Each dot represents a match. Count the number of dots.
b 6 goals in a game occured most often.	The most common number of goals has the most dots.
c $2 \times 0 + 2 \times 2 + 2 \times 3 + 3 \times 4 + 4 \times 5 + 5 \times 6 + 2 \times 7$ $= 0 + 4 + 6 + 12 + 20 + 30 + 14$ $= 86$ goals	Count the number of games (dots) for each number of goals and multiply by the number of goals. Add these together.
d Two games resulted in no goals but the data were generally skewed towards a higher number of goals.	Consider the shape of the graph; it is bunched towards the 6 end of the goal scale.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5C

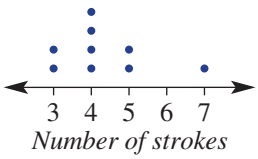
5 A number of families were surveyed to find the number of children in each. The results are shown in this dot plot.



- **a** How many families were surveyed?
- **b** What was the most common number of children in a family?
- **c** How many children were there in total?
- **d** Describe the data in the dot plot.

4 families had 2 children (4 dots), so that represents 8 children from these families.

6 This dot plot shows the number of strokes a golfer played, each hole, in his round of golf.



- **a** How many holes did he play?
- **b** How many strokes did he play in the round?
- **c** Describe his round of golf.

Example 5 Constructing a stem-and-leaf plot

For the following set of data:

- **a** Organise the data into an ordered stem-and-leaf plot.
- **b** Describe the distribution of the data as symmetrical or skewed.

22 62 53 44 35 47 51 64 72
32 43 57 64 70 33 51 68 59

Solution

a

Stem	Leaf
2	2
3	2 3 5
4	3 4 7
5	1 1 3 7 9
6	2 4 4 8
7	0 2

5 | 1 means 51

Explanation

For two-digit numbers, select the tens value as the stem and the units as the leaves.
The data rages from 22 to 72, so the graph will need stems 2 to 7.
Work through the data and record the leaves in the order of the data.

Stem	Leaf
2	2
3	5 2 3
4	4 7 3
5	3 1 7 1 9
6	2 4 4 8
7	2 0

5 | 1 means 51

51 occurs twice, so the leaf 1 is recorded twice in the 5 stem row.
Once data are recorded, redraw and order the leaves from smallest to largest.
Include a key to explain how the stem and leaf go together; i.e. 5 | 1 means 51.

b The distribution of the data is symmetrical.

The shape of the graph is symmetrical (i.e. evenly spread) either side of the centre.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7 For each of the following sets of data:

- **i** Organise the data into an ordered stem-and-leaf plot.
- **ii** Describe the distribution of the data as symmetrical or skewed.

a 46 22 37 15 26 38 52 24
31 20 15 37 21 25 26

b 35 16 23 55 38 44 12 48 21 42
53 36 35 25 40 51 27 31 40 36 32

c 153 121 124 117 125 118 135 137 162
145 147 119 127 149 116 133 160 158

d 4.9 3.7 4.5 5.8 3.8 4.3 5.2 7.0 4.7
4.4 5.5 6.5 6.1 3.3 5.4 2.0 6.3 4.8

Remember to include a key such as '4 | 6 means 46'.

Symmetrical

Stem	Leaf
1	1 2
2	1 2 3
3	1 2 3 4
4	1 2 7
5	3

Skewed

Stem	Leaf
1	2 5 7 8
2	3 4 7 6
3	1 2
4	5

Example 6 Constructing back-to-back stem-and-leaf plots

Two television sales representatives sell the following number of televisions each week over a 15-week period.

Employee 1
23 38 35 21 45 27 43 36
19 35 49 20 39 58 18

Employee 2
28 32 37 20 30 45 48 17
32 37 29 17 49 40 46

a Construct an ordered back-to-back stem-and-leaf plot.
b Describe the distribution of each employee's sales.

Solution

a

Employee 1 Leaf	Stem	Employee 2 Leaf
9 8	1	7 7
7 3 1 0	2	0 8 9
9 8 6 5 5	3	0 2 2 7 7
9 5 3	4	0 5 6 8 9
8	5	

3 | 7 means 37

b Employee 1's sales are symmetrical, whereas employee 2's sales are skewed.

Explanation

Construct an ordered stem-and-leaf plot with employee 1's sales on the left-hand side and employee 2's sales on the right-hand side. Include a key.

Observe the shape of each employee's graph. If appropriate, use the words symmetrical (i.e. spread evenly around the centre) or skewed (i.e. bunched to one side of the centre).

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5C

8 For the following sets of data:

i Draw a back-to-back stem-and-leaf plot.

ii Comment on the distribution of the two data sets.

a Set 1: 61 38 40 53 48 57 64
39 42 59 46 42 53 43

Set 2: 41 55 64 47 35 63 61
52 60 52 56 47 67 32

b Set 1: 176 164 180 168 185 187 195 166 201
199 171 188 175 192 181 172 187 208

Set 2: 190 174 160 170 186 163 182 171
167 187 171 165 194 182 163 178

For part **a** use a key like '3 | 7 means 37' and for part **b** use a key like '15 | 6 means 156'.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9, 10 9, 11, 12

9 Two football players, Logan and Max, compare their personal tallies of the number of goals scored for their team over a 12-match season. Their tallies are as follows.

Game	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
Logan	0	2	2	0	3	1	2	1	2	3	0	1
Max	0	0	4	1	0	5	0	3	1	0	4	0

a Draw a dot plot to display Logan's goal-scoring achievement.

b Draw a dot plot to display Max's goal-scoring achievement.

c How would you describe Logan's scoring habits?

d How would you describe Max's scoring habits?

10 This stem-and-leaf plot shows the times, in minutes, that Chris has achieved in the past 14 fun runs she competed in.

Stem	Leaf
20	5 7
21	1 2 6
22	2 4 6 8
23	4 5 6
24	3 6

22 | 4 means 22.4

a What is the difference between her slowest and fastest times?

b Just by looking at the stem-and-leaf plot, what would you estimate to be Chris' average time?

c If Chris records another time of 24.9 minutes, how would this affect your answer to part **b**?

11 The data below show the distances travelled (in km) by students at an inner-city and an outer-suburb school.

Inner city: 3 10 9 14 21 6
1 12 24 1 19 4

Outer suburb: 12 21 18 9 34 19
24 3 23 41 18 4

a Draw a back-to-back stem-and-leaf plot for the data.

b Comment on the distribution of distances for each school.

c Give a practical reason for the distribution of the data.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

12 Determine the possible values of the pronumerals in the following ordered stem-and-leaf plots.

a

Stem	Leaf
1	2 4
2	3 6 9 b
3	1 4
4	7 c 8

2 | 3 means 2.3

b

Stem	Leaf
20	a 1 4
21	2 2 9
22	0 b 5 7
23	1 4

22 | 7 means 227

The stems and leaves are ordered from smallest to largest.
A leaf can appear more than once.

Splitting stems

— 13

13 The back-to-back stem and leaf plot below shows the maximum daily temperature for two cities over a 2-week period.

Maximum temperature

City A leaf	Stem	City B leaf
	0	
9 8 8	0*	
4 3 3 1 1 1	1	
8 8 6 6 5	1*	7 9
	2	0 2 2 3 4 4
	2*	5 6 7 7 8
	3	1

1 | 4 means 14

1* | 5 means 15

a Describe the difference between the stems 1 and 1^*.

b To which stem would these numbers be allocated?

i 12°C **ii** 5°C

c Why might you use this process of splitting stems, like that used for 1 and 1^*?

d Compare and comment on the differences in temperatures between the two cities.

e What might be a reason for these different temperatures?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5D Range and measures of centre

In the previous sections you have seen how to summarise data in the form of a frequency table and to display data using graphs. Key summary statistics also allow us to describe the data using a single numerical value. The mean (i.e. average), for example, may be used to describe a student's performance over a series of tests. The median (i.e. middle value when data are ordered) is often used when describing the house prices in a suburb. These are termed *measures of centre*. Providing information about the spread of the data is the range, which measures the difference between the maximum and minimum values.

Let's Start: Mean, median or mode?

The following data represent the number of goals scored by Ellie in each game of a 9-game netball season.

24 18 25 16 3 23 27 19 25

It is known that the figures below represent, in some order, the mean, median and mode.

25 20 23

- Without doing any calculations, can you suggest which statistic is which? Explain.
- From the data, what gives an indication that the mean (i.e. average) will be less than the median (i.e. middle value)?
- Describe how you would calculate the mean, median and mode from the data values.

Key ideas

- The **mean** (or average) is calculated by summing all the data values and dividing by the total number of values.

$$\text{Mean}(\bar{x}) = \frac{\text{sum of all data values}}{\text{number of data values}}$$

  - The mean is affected by extreme values in the data.
- The **mode** is the most commonly occurring value in the data set.
  - A data set can have two modes (called **bimodal**) or no unique mode at all.

Bimodal When a set of data has two modes

Mean An average value calculated by dividing the total of a set of numbers by the number of values

Mode The score that appears most often in a set of numbers

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- The **median** is the middle value of a data set when the data are arranged in order.
  - When the data set has an even number of values, the median is the average of the two middle values.
    For example,

    2 3 ⑥ 8 12

    Median = 6

    4 7 8 10 13 17

    $$\text{Median} = \frac{8+10}{2} = 9$$
  - The median is not significantly affected by extreme values in the data.
- The **range** is a measure of how spread out the data is.
  - Range = maximum value − minimum value

Median The middle score when all the numbers in a set are arranged in order

Range The difference between the highest and lowest numbers in a set

Exercise 5D

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 3, 4

1 Use the words from the list below to fill in the missing word in these sentences.

mean, median, mode, bimodal, range

a The _____ is the most frequently occurring value in a data set.
b Dividing the sum of all the data values by the total number of values gives the _____.
c The middle value of a data set ordered from smallest to largest is the _____ .
d A data set with two most common values is _____ .
e A data set has a maximum value of 7 and a minimum value of 2. The _____ is 5.

2 Calculate the following.

a $\frac{1+4+5+8+2}{5}$ **b** $\frac{3+7+6+2}{4}$ **c** $\frac{3.1+2.3+6.4+1.7+2.5}{5}$

3 Circle the middle value(s) of these ordered data sets.

a 2 4 6 7 8 10 11
b 6 9 10 14 17 20

Recall that an even number of data values will have two middle values.

4 Aaron drinks the following number of cups of coffee each day in a week.

4 5 3 6 4 3 3

a How many cups of coffee does he drink in the week (sum of the data values)?
b How many days are in the week (total number of data values)?
c What is the mean number of cups of coffee Aaron drinks each day (part **a** ÷ part **b**)?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5D

FLUENCY 5–6(½) 5–6(½), 7

Example 7 Finding the mean, mode and range

For the following data sets, find:

i the mean ii the mode iii the range

a 2, 4, 5, 8, 8 **b** 3, 15, 12, 9, 12, 15, 6, 8

Solution	Explanation
a i Mean $= \frac{2+4+5+8+8}{5}$	Mean = $\frac{\text{sum of all data values}}{\text{number of data values}}$
$= \frac{27}{5}$	Add all the data and divide by the number of values (5).
$= 5.4$	
ii The mode is 8.	The mode is the most common value in the data.
iii Range $= 8 - 2$	Range = maximum value − minimum value
$= 6$	
b i Mean $= \frac{3+15+12+9+12+15+6+8}{8}$	Mean = $\frac{\text{sum of all data values}}{\text{number of data values}}$
$= \frac{80}{8}$	Add all the data and divide by the number of values (8).
$= 10$	
ii There are two modes: 12 and 15.	The data set is bimodal: 12 and 15 are the most common data values.
iii Range $= 15 - 3$	Range = maximum value − minimum value
$= 12$	

5 For each of the following data sets, find:

i the mean ii the mode iii the range

a 2 4 5 8 8
b 5 8 10 15 20 12 10 50
c 55 70 75 50 90 85 50 65 90
d 27 30 28 29 24 12
e 2.0 1.9 2.7 2.9 2.6 1.9 2.7 1.9
f 1.7 1.2 1.4 1.6 2.4 1.3

Recall:
Mean = $\frac{\text{sum of data values}}{\text{number of data values}}$
Mode is the most common value.
Range = maximum − minimum

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 8 Finding the median

Find the median of each data set.

a 4, 7, 12, 2, 9, 15, 1 **b** 16, 20, 8, 5, 21, 14

Solution	Explanation
a 1 2 4 (7) 9 12 15 Median = 7	The data must first be ordered from smallest to largest. The median is the middle value. For an odd number of data values, there will be one middle value.
b 5 8 14 16 20 21 $\text{Median} = \frac{14+16}{2}$ $= 15$	Order the data from smallest to largest. For an even number of data values, there will be two middle values. The median is the average of these two values (i.e. the value halfway between the two middle numbers).

6 Find the median of each data set.

a 1 4 7 8 12
b 1 2 2 4 4 7 9
c 11 13 6 10 14 13 11
d 62 77 56 78 64 73 79 75 77
e 2 4 4 5 6 8 8 10 12 22
f 1 2 2 3 7 12 12 18
g 30 36 31 38 27 40
h 2.4 2.0 3.2 2.8 3.5 3.1 3.7 3.9

First make sure that the data values are in order. For two middle values, find their average.

7 Nine people watch the following number of hours of television on a weekend.

4 4 6 6 6 8 9 9 11

a Find the mean number of hours of television watched.
b Find the median number of hours of television watched.
c Find the range of the television hours watched.
d What is the mode number of hours of television watched?

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–10 10–13

8 Eight students compare the amount of pocket money they receive. The data are as follows.

$12 $15 $12 $24 $20 $8 $50 $25

a Find the range of pocket money received.
b Find the median amount of pocket money.
c Find the mean amount of pocket money.
d Why is the mean larger than the median?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

5D

Example 9 Calculating summary statistics from a stem-and-leaf plot

For the data in this stem and leaf plot, find:

a the range
b the mode
c the mean
d the median

Stem	Leaf
2	5 8
3	1 2 2 2 6
4	0 3 3
5	2 6

5 | 2 means 52

Solution	Explanation
a Minimum value = 25 Maximum value = 56 Range = 56 − 25 = 31	In an ordered stem-and-leaf plot, the first data item is the minimum and the last is the maximum. Use the key '5 | 2 means 52' to see how to put the stem and leaf together. Range = maximum value − minimum value
b Mode = 32	The mode is the most common value. The leaf 2 appears three times with the stem 3.
c Mean $= \frac{25+28+31+32+32+32+36+40+43+43+52+56}{12}$ $= \frac{450}{12}$ = 37.5	Form each data value from the graph and add them all together. Then divide by the number of data values in the stem-and-leaf plot.
d Median $= \frac{32+36}{2}$ = 34	There is an even number of data values: 12. The median will be the average of the middle two values (i.e. the 6th and 7th data values).

9 For the data in these stem-and-leaf plots, find:
i the range **ii** the mode
iii the mean (rounded to one decimal place)
iv the median

Use the key to see how the stem and leaf go together.

a

Stem	Leaf
2	1 3 7
3	2 8 9 9
4	4 6

3 | 2 means 32

b

Stem	Leaf
0	4 4
1	0 2 5 9
2	1 7 8
3	2

2 | 7 means 27

c

Stem	Leaf
10	1 2 4
11	2 6
12	5

11 | 6 means 116

d

Stem	Leaf
3	0 0 5
4	2 7
5	1 3 3
6	0 2

3 | 2 means 3.2

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10 This back-to-back stem-and-leaf plot shows the results of two students, Hugh and Mark, on their end-of-year examination in each subject.

Hugh leaf	Stem	Mark leaf
8 8 5	6	4
7 3	7	4 7
5 4 2 1 1	8	2 4 6 8
	9	2 4 5

7 | 4 means 74%

a For each student, find:
i the mean **ii** the median **iii** the range

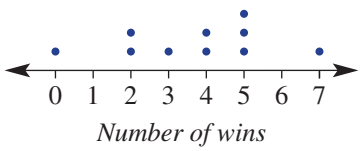
b Compare the performance of the two students using your answers to part **a**.

11 A real estate agent recorded the following amounts for the sale of five properties:

$120 000 $210 000 $280 000 $370 000 $1 700 000

The mean is $536 000 and the median is $280 000.
Which is a better measure of the centre of the five property prices: the mean or the median? Give a reason.

12 This dot plot shows the number of wins recorded by a school sports team in the past 10 eight-game seasons.



a What was the median number of wins?
b What was the mean number of wins?
c The following season, the team records 3 wins. What effect will this have (i.e. increase/decrease/no change) on the:
i median? **ii** mean?

13 Catherine achieves the following scores on her first four Maths tests: 64, 70, 72, 74.

a What is her mean mark from the Maths tests?
b In the fifth and final test, Catherine is hoping to raise her mean mark to 73. What mark does she need on the last test to achieve this?

Moving run average — 14

14 A moving average is determined by calculating the average of all data values up to a particular time or place in the data set.
Consider a batsman in cricket with the following runs scored from 10 completed innings.

Innings	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
Score	26	38	5	10	52	103	75	21	33	0
Moving average	26	32								

In the table, 26 is the average after 1 innings and 32 is the average after 2 innings.

a Complete the table by calculating the moving average for innings 3–10. Round your answer to the nearest whole number where required.

b Plot the score and moving averages for the batsman on the same set of axes, with the innings number on the horizontal axis. Join the points to form two line graphs.

c Describe the behaviour of the:
i score graph **ii** moving average graph

d Describe the main difference in the behaviour of the two graphs. Give reasons.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

5E Quartiles and outliers

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

In addition to the median of a single set of data, there are two related statistics called the upper and lower quartiles. If data are placed in order, then the lower quartile is central to the lower half of the data. The upper quartile is central to the upper half of the data. These quartiles are used to calculate the interquartile range, which helps to describe the spread of the data, and show whether or not any data points do not fit the rest of the data (outliers).

Let's start: House prices

A real estate agent tells you that the median house price for a suburb in 2016 was \$753 000 and the mean was \$948 000.

- Is it possible for the median and the mean to differ by so much?
- Under what circumstances could this occur? Discuss.

Key ideas

- The **five-figure summary** uses the following statistical measures.
  - Minimum value (min) — the lowest value
  - Lower **quartile** (Q_1) — the number above 25% of the ordered data
  - Median (Q_2) — the middle value above 50% of the ordered data
  - Upper quartile (Q_3) — the number above 75% of the ordered data
  - Maximum value (max) — the highest value

Odd number of data values

1 2 2 3) 5 (6 6 7 9

$Q_1 = \frac{2+2}{2} = 2$ Q_2 $Q_3 = \frac{6+7}{2} = 6.5$

Even number of data values

2 3 3 4 7 | 8 8 9 9 9

$Q_1 = 3$ $Q_2 = 7.5$ $Q_3 = 9$

- Another measure of the spread of the data is the **interquartile range (IQR)**.
  IQR = upper quartile − lower quartile
  $= Q_3 - Q_1$
- **Outliers** are data elements outside the vicinity of the rest of the data.
  A data point is an outlier if it is either:
  - less than the lower fence, where lower fence = $Q_1 - 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$ or
  - greater than the upper fence, where upper fence = $Q_3 + 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$

Five-figure summary A set of numbers that summarise a set of data: the minimum score, first quartile, median, third quartile and maximum score

Quartiles The three values that separate the scores when a set of ordered data is divided into four equal parts

Interquartile range A measure of spread giving the difference between the upper and lower quartiles

Outlier Any value that is much larger or much smaller than the rest of the data in a set

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 5E

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 4

1 **a** State the five values that need to be calculated for a five-figure summary.
b Explain the difference between the range and the interquartile range.
c What is an *outlier*?

2 Complete the following for calculating outliers.
a Numbers below _____ $-1.5 \times$ IQR (lower fence)
b Numbers above $Q_3 +$ _____ $\times$ IQR (upper fence).

3 The data show, in order, the numbers of cars owned by 10 families surveyed.

$0, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 2, 3, 3$

a Find the median (the middle value).
b By splitting the data in half, determine:
i the lower quartile Q_1 (middle of lower half)
ii the upper quartile Q_3 (middle of upper half)

4 For the data set with $Q_1 = 3$ and $Q_3 = 8$:
a Find IQR $= Q_3 - Q_1$.
b Calculate $Q_1 - 1.5 \times$ IQR (lower fence) and $Q_3 + 1.5 \times$ IQR (upper fence).
c Identify the name that would be given to the value 18 in the data set.

FLUENCY 5–7 5–7, 8(½)

Example 10 Finding quartiles and IQR for an even number of data values

Consider this data set:
2, 2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, 13, 16, 20

a Find the upper quartile (Q_3) and the lower quartile (Q_1).
b Determine the IQR.

Solution

a 2 2 (4) 5 6 | 8 10 (13) 16 20

$Q_2 = \frac{6+8}{2} = 7$

Q_1 Q_3

$Q_1 = 4$ and $Q_3 = 13$

b IQR $= 13 - 4$
$= 9$

Explanation

The data are already ordered. Since there is an even number of values, split the data in half to locate the median.
Q_1 is the middle value of the lower half:
2 2 (4) 5 6
Q_3 is the middle value of the upper half:

IQR $= Q_3 - Q_1$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5E

5 For these data sets, find:
- **i** the upper quartile (Q_3) and the lower quartile (Q_1)
- **ii** the IQR

a 3, 4, 6, 8, 8, 10
b 10, 10, 11, 14, 14, 15, 16, 18, 20, 21
c 41, 49, 53, 58, 59, 62, 62, 65
d 1.2, 1.7, 1.9, 2.2, 2.4, 2.5, 2.9, 3.2

For an even number of data values, split the ordered data in half:

2 4 7 | 8 10 12

Q_1 Q_3

$IQR = Q_3 - Q_1$

Example 11 Finding quartiles and IQR for an odd number of data values

Consider this data set:
2.2, 1.6, 3.0, 2.7, 1.8, 3.6, 3.9, 2.8, 3.8

a Find the upper quartile (Q_3) and the lower quartile (Q_1).
b Determine the IQR.

Solution

a 1.6 1.8 | 2.2 2.7 2.8 3.0 3.6 | 3.8 3.9

$Q_1 = \frac{1.8 + 2.2}{2}$

$= \frac{4.0}{2}$

$= 2.0$

Q_2

$Q_3 = \frac{3.6 + 3.8}{2}$

$= \frac{7.4}{2}$

$= 3.7$

Explanation

First order the data and locate the median (Q_2).
Split the data in half; i.e. either side of the median.
Q_1 is the middle value of the lower half; for two middle values, average the two numbers.
Q_3 is the middle value of the upper half.

b $IQR = 3.7 - 2.0$

$= 1.7$

$IQR = Q_3 - Q_1$

6 For these data sets, find:
- **i** the upper quartile (Q_3) and the lower quartile (Q_1)
- **ii** the IQR

a 1, 2, 4, 8, 10, 11, 14
b 10, 7, 14, 2, 5, 8, 3, 9, 2, 12, 1
c 0.9, 1.3, 1.1, 1.2, 1.7, 1.5, 1.9, 1.1, 0.8
d 21, 7, 15, 9, 18, 16, 24, 33, 4, 12, 13, 18, 24

For an odd number of data values, split ordered data in half, leaving out the middle value.

0 2 4) 7 (9 14 16

Q_1 Q_3

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 12 Finding the five-figure summary and outliers

The following data set represents the number of flying geese spotted on each day of a 13-day tour of England.
5, 1, 2, 6, 3, 3, 18, 4, 4, 1, 7, 2, 4

a For the data, find:
- **i** the minimum and maximum number of geese spotted
- **ii** the median
- **iii** the upper and lower quartiles
- **iv** the IQR

b Find any outliers.

c Can you give a possible reason for why the outlier occurred?

Solution	Explanation
a i Min = 1, max = 18	Look for the largest and smallest numbers and order the data:
ii 1, 1, 2, 2, 3, 3, (4), 4, 4, 4, 5, 6, 7, 18 ∴ Median = 4	1 1 2 | 2 3 3) 4 (4 4 5 | 6 7 18 ↑ Q_1 ↑ Q_2 ↑ Q_3
iii Lower quartile $(Q_1) = \frac{2+2}{2}$ $= 2$ Upper quartile $(Q_3) = \frac{5+6}{2}$ $= 5.5$	Since Q_2 falls on a data value, it is not included in the lower or higher halves when Q_1 and Q_3 are calculated.
iv IQR = 5.5 − 2 = 3.5	IQR = $Q_3 - Q_1$
b Lower fence = $Q_1 - 1.5 \times$ IQR $= 2 - 1.5 \times 3.5$ $= 2 - 5.25$ $= -3.25$	A data point is an outlier if it is less than the lower fence = $Q_1 - 1.5 \times$ IQR or greater than the upper fence = $Q_3 + 1.5 \times$ IQR.
Upper fence = $Q_3 + 1.5 \times$ IQR $= 5.5 + 1.5 \times 3.5$ $= 5.5 + 5.25$ $= 10.75$ ∴ The outlier is 18.	There are no numbers less than −3.25 but 18 is greater than 10.75.
c Perhaps a flock of geese was spotted that day.	

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5E

7 The following numbers of cars were counted on each day for 15 days, travelling on a quiet suburban street.

10, 9, 15, 14, 10, 17, 15, 0, 12, 14, 8, 15, 15, 11, 13

a For the given data, find:
- **i** the minimum and maximum number of cars counted
- **ii** the median
- **iii** the lower and upper quartiles (Q_1 and Q_3)
- **iv** the IQR

b Find any outliers.

c Give a possible reason for the outlier.

Outliers:
more than $Q_3 + 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$
or
less than $Q_1 - 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$

8 Summarise the data sets below by finding:
- **i** the minimum and maximum values
- **ii** the median (Q_2)
- **iii** the lower and upper quartiles (Q_1 and Q_3)
- **iv** the IQR
- **v** any outliers

a 4, 5, 10, 7, 5, 14, 8, 5, 9, 9

b 24, 21, 23, 18, 25, 29, 31, 16, 26, 25, 27

c 10, 13, 2, 11, 10, 8, 24, 12, 13, 15, 12

d 3, 6, 10, 11, 17, 4, 4, 1, 8, 4, 10, 8

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9, 10 10–12

9 Twelve different calculators had the following numbers of buttons:
36, 48, 52, 43, 46, 53, 25, 60, 128, 32, 52, 40

a For the given data, find:
- **i** the minimum and maximum number of buttons on the calculators
- **ii** the median
- **iii** the lower and upper quartiles (Q_1 and Q_3)
- **iv** the IQR
- **v** any outliers
- **vi** the mean

b Which is a better measure of the centre of the data: the mean or the median? Explain.

c Can you give a possible reason why the outlier has occurred?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

10 At an airport, Paul checks the weight of 20 luggage items. If the weight of a piece of luggage is an outlier, then the contents undergo a further check. The weights in kilograms are:

1 4 5 5 6 7 7 7 8 8
10 10 10 13 15 16 17 19 30 31

How many luggage items will undergo a further check?

11 The prices of nine fridges are displayed in a sale catalogue. They are:
$350 $1000 $850 $900 $1100 $1200 $1100 $1000 $1700
How many of the fridge prices could be considered outliers?

12 For the data in this stem-and-leaf plot, find:

a the IQR
b any outliers
c any outliers if the number 32 was added to the list

Stem	Leaf
0	1
1	6 8
2	0 4 6 8
3	0

2 | 4 means 24

Split the data in half to find Q_2, then find Q_1 and Q_3.

Some research

13

13 Use the internet to search for data about a topic that interests you. Try to choose a single set of data that includes between 15 and 50 values.

a Organise the data using:
  i a stem-and-leaf plot
  ii a frequency table and histogram
b Find the mean and the median.
c Find the range and the interquartile range.
d Write a brief report describing the centre and spread of the data, referring to parts **a** to **c** above.
e Present your findings to your class or a classmate.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5F Box plots

Interactive

Widgets

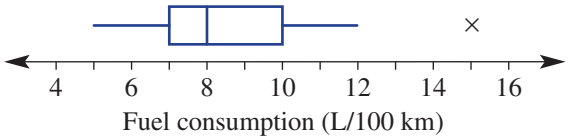
HOTsheets

Walkthrough

The five-figure summary (min, Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, max) can be represented in graphical form as a box plot. Box plots are graphs that summarise single data sets. They clearly display the minimum and maximum values, the median, the quartiles and any outliers. Q_1, Q_2 and Q_3 divide the data into quarters. Box plots also give a clear indication of how data are spread, as the IQR (interquartile range) is shown by the width of the central box.

Let's start: Fuel consumption

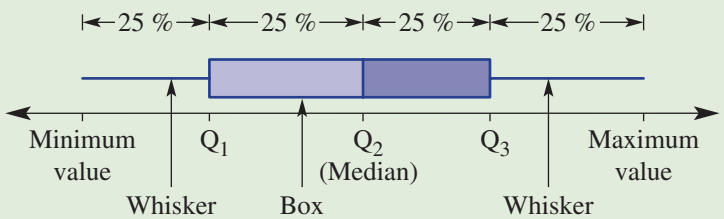
This box plot summarises the average fuel consumption (litres per 100 km) for a group of European-made cars.



- What does each part of the box plot represent in terms of the five-figure summary?
- What do you think the cross (×) represents?
- Describe how you can use the box plot to find the IQR.
- For the top 25% of cars, what would you expect the fuel consumption to be above?

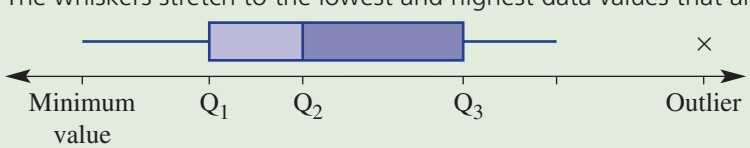
Key ideas

- A **box plot** (also called a box-and-whisker plot) can be used to summarise a data set. It displays the five-figure summary (min, Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, max), as shown.



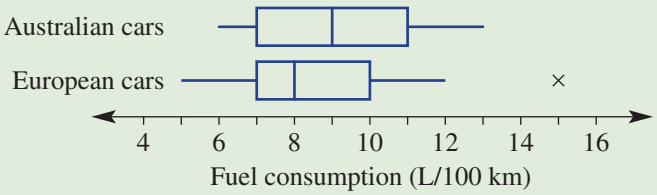
Box plot A diagram using rectangles and ranges to show the spread of a set of data, using five important values

- An outlier is marked with a cross (×).
  - An outlier is greater than $Q_3 + 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$ (lower fence) or less than $Q_1 - 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$ (upper fence).
  - $\text{IQR} = Q_3 - Q_1$
  - The whiskers stretch to the lowest and highest data values that are not outliers.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

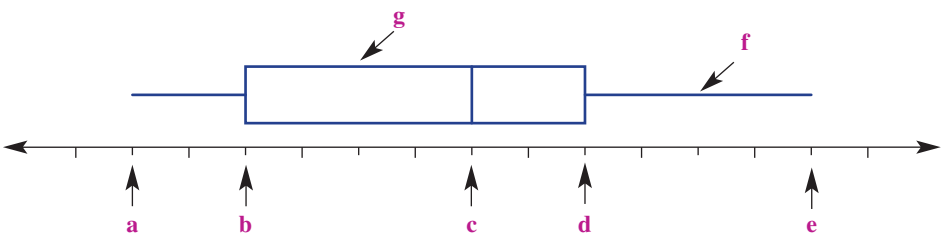
- Parallel box plots are box plots drawn on the same scale. They are used to compare data sets within the same context.



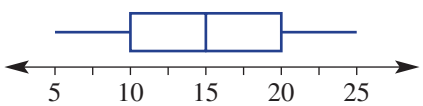
Exercise 5F

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 4

1 Label the parts **a**–**g** of the box plot below.



2 For this simple box plot, find the:

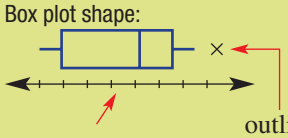


- **a** median (Q_2)
- **b** minimum
- **c** maximum
- **d** range
- **e** lower quartile (Q_1)
- **f** upper quartile (Q_3)
- **g** interquartile range (IQR)

3 Construct a box plot showing these features.

- **a** Min = 1, Q_1 = 3, Q_2 = 4, Q_3 = 7, max = 8
- **b** Outlier = 5, minimum above outlier = 10, Q_1 = 12, Q_2 = 14, Q_3 = 15, max = 17

Box plot shape:



include an even scale.

4 Select from the list below to fill in the blanks.
minimum, Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, *maximum*.

- **a** The top 25% of data are above _____.
- **b** The middle 50% of data are between _____ and _____.
- **c** The lowest or first 25% of data are between the _____ and _____.
- **d** The highest or last 25% of data are between _____ and the _____.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

5F

FLUENCY 5–6(½) 5–6(½)

Example 13 Constructing box plots with no outliers

Consider the given data set.
12 26 14 11 15 10 18 17 21 27

a Find the five-figure summary (i.e., the minimum, lower quartile (Q_1), median (Q_2), upper quartile (Q_3) and the maximum).
b Draw a box plot to summarise the data.

Solution

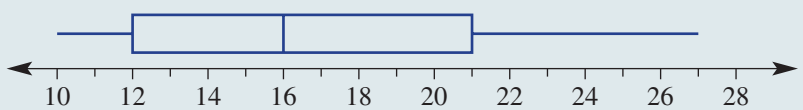
a 10 11 (12) 14 15 | 17 18 (21) 26 27

Q_1 $Q_2 = \frac{15 + 17}{2}$ Q_3

min $= 16$ max

Minimum = 10
$Q_1 = 12$, $Q_2 = 16$, $Q_3 = 21$
Maximum = 27

b



Explanation

a Order the data from smallest to largest.
Locate the median (Q_2) first. For 10 data values there are two middle values, 15 and 17. Average these to find Q_2.
Split the data in half at the median. Q_1 is the middle value of the lower half. Q_3 is the middle value of the upper half. The minimum is the smallest value and the maximum the largest value.
b Draw an even scale, covering the minimum and maximum values.
Mark the minimum (10), Q_1 (12), Q_2 (16), Q_3 (21) and the maximum (27) to draw the box plot.

5 For the given data sets:
i Find the five-figure summary (minimum, Q_1, Q_2, Q_3, maximum).
ii Draw a box plot to summarise the data.

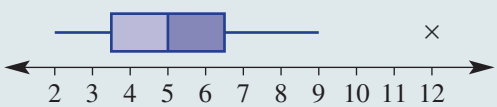
a 11, 15, 18, 17, 1, 2, 8, 12, 19, 15
b 0, 1, 5, 4, 4, 4, 2, 3, 3, 1, 4, 3
c 124, 118, 119, 117, 120, 120, 121, 118, 122
d 62, 85, 20, 34, 40, 66, 47, 82, 25, 32, 28, 49, 41, 30, 22

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 14 Constructing box plots with outliers

Consider the given data set.
5, 9, 4, 3, 5, 6, 6, 5, 7, 12, 2, 3, 5

a Determine the quartiles Q_1, Q_2 and Q_3.
b Determine whether any outliers exist.
c Draw a box plot to summarise the data, marking outliers if they exist.

Solution	Explanation
a 2 3 3 4 5 5 (5) (5 6 6 7 9 12) Q_1 Q_2 Q_3 $Q_1 = \frac{3+4}{2}$ $= 3.5$ $Q_3 = \frac{6+7}{2}$ $= 6.5$	Order the data to help find the quartiles. Locate the median Q_2 (i.e. the middle value), then split the data in half above and below this value. Q_1 is the middle value of the lower half and Q_3 is the middle value of the upper half. Average the two middle values to find the median.
b $IQR = 6.5 - 3.5 = 3$ $Q_1 - 1.5 \times IQR = 3.5 - 1.5 \times 3$ $= -1$ $Q_3 + 1.5 \times IQR = 6.5 + 1.5 \times 3$ $= 11$ $\therefore$ 12 is an outlier.	Determine $IQR = Q_3 - Q_1$. Check for any outliers; i.e. numbers below $Q_1 - 1.5 \times IQR$ or above $Q_3 + 1.5 \times IQR$. There are no data below -1 but $12 > 11$.
c 	Draw a line and mark in a uniform scale, reaching from 2 to 12. Sketch the box plot by marking the minimum 2 and the outlier 12, and Q_1, Q_2 and Q_3. The end of the five-point summary is the nearest value below 11; i.e. 9.

6 Consider the data sets below.
- **i** Determine the quartiles Q_1, Q_2 and Q_3.
- **ii** Determine whether any outliers exist.
- **iii** Draw a box plot to summarise the data, marking outliers if they exist.

a 4, 6, 5, 2, 3, 4, 4, 13, 8, 7, 6
b 1.8, 1.7, 1.8, 1.9, 1.6, 1.8, 2.0, 1.1, 1.4, 1.9, 2.2
c 21, 23, 18, 11, 16, 19, 24, 21, 23, 22, 20, 31, 26, 22
d 37, 48, 52, 51, 51, 42, 48, 47, 39, 41, 65

Outliers:
more than $Q_3 + 1.5 \times IQR$
or
less than $Q_1 - 1.5 \times IQR$.
Mark with a X.
The next value above or below an outlier is used as the new end of the whisker.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5F

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8 7–10

7 A butcher records the weight (in kilograms) of a dozen parcels of sausages sold on one morning.

1.6 1.9 2.0 2.0 2.1 2.2
2.2 2.4 2.5 2.7 3.8 3.9

a Write down the value of:
- **i** the minimum
- **ii** Q_1
- **iii** Q_2
- **iv** Q_3
- **v** the maximum
- **vi** IQR

b Find any outliers.

c Draw a box plot for the weight of the parcels of sausages.

8 Joel the gardener records the number of days that it takes for 11 special bulbs to germinate. The results are:

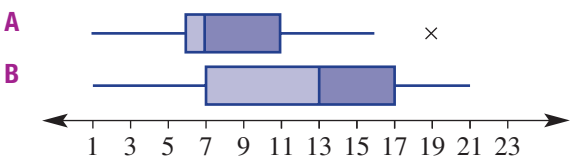
8 14 15 15 16 16 16 17 19 19 24

a Write down the value of:
- **i** the minimum
- **ii** Q_1
- **iii** Q_2
- **iv** Q_3
- **v** the maximum
- **vi** IQR

b Are there any outliers? If so, what are they?

c Draw a box plot for the number of days it takes for the bulbs to germinate.

9 Consider these parallel box plots, A and B.



Parallel box plots are two box plots that can be compared using the same scale. Compare the box plots at each point of the five-figure summary.

a What statistical measure do these box plots have in common?

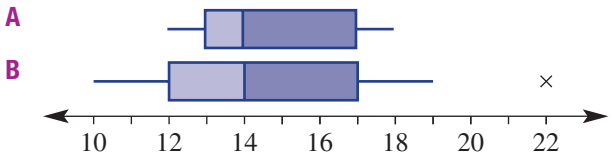
b Which data set (A or B) has a wider range of values?

c Find the IQR for:
- **i** data set A
- **ii** data set B

d How would you describe the main difference between the two sets of data from which the parallel box plots have been drawn?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10 Two data sets can be compared using parallel box plots on the same scale, as shown below.



a What statistical measures do these box plots have in common?

b Which data set (A or B) has a wider range of values?

c Find the IQR for:

i data set A **ii** data set B

d How would you describe the main difference between the two sets of data from which the parallel box plots have been drawn?

Creating parallel box plots

— 11

11 Fifteen essays are marked for spelling errors by a particular examiner and the following numbers of spelling errors are counted.

3, 2, 4, 6, 8, 4, 6, 7, 6, 1, 7, 12, 7, 3, 8

The same 15 essays are marked for spelling errors by a second examiner and the following numbers of spelling errors are counted.

12, 7, 9, 11, 15, 5, 14, 16, 9, 11, 8, 13, 14, 15, 13

a Draw parallel box plots for the data.

b Do you believe there is a major difference in the way the essays were marked by the two examiners? If yes, describe this difference.

Using technology 5F: Using calculators to draw box plots

This activity can be found in the interactive textbook in the form of a printable PDF.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Progress quiz

5A **1** Name the type of data that would be generated by the following survey questions.

a What is your favourite sport?

b How many times did you exercise in the past week?

5B **2** Twenty-five people were surveyed as to the number of hours of sleep they had the previous night. The data are listed below.

6	5	8	9	7	10	5	8	8
12	7	9	4	2	9	8	7	
10	8	7	5	7	10	6	9	

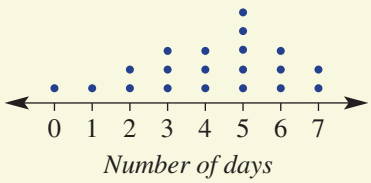
a Organise the data into a frequency table using class intervals of 3, starting with 0−, then 3− etc. Include a percentage frequency column.

b Construct a histogram for the data, showing both the frequency and percentage frequency on the one graph.

c What percentage of people surveyed had fewer than 6 hours sleep?

d Which interval is the most frequent?

5C/D **3** This dot plot shows the number of days a group of students did homework in a week.



a How many students were surveyed?

b What was the mode number of days of homework?

c What was the median number of days of homework?

d What was the mean number of days of homework?

e What was the range of the number of days of homework?

5C/D **4** Consider the given data set.

7	11	46	42	34	40	24	45	15	22
21	16	49	25	33	30	47	30	3	48

a Organise the data into an ordered stem-and-leaf plot.

b Describe the distribution of the data as symmetrical or skewed.

c Use the stem-and-leaf plot to find:

i the mode **ii** the median

5D **5** For the following data set, find the:

8, 15, 23, 12, 3, 19, 42, 33

a mean **b** median **c** range

5E **6** Consider the given data set.

10 13 8 15 24 18 11 20

a Find the upper quartile (Q_3) and lower quartile (Q_1).

b Determine the IQR.

5F **7** The data below show the number of cars that travel down a particular road between 5:30 p.m. and 6 p.m. each day for a week.

0 82 75 49 102 110 97

a Determine the quartiles Q_1, Q_2 and Q_3.

b Determine whether any outliers exist.

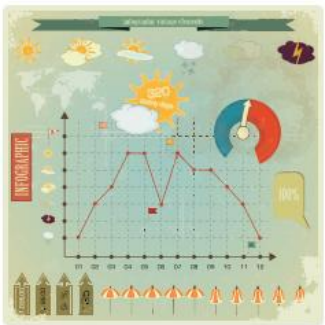
c Draw a box plot to summarise the data.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5G Time-series data

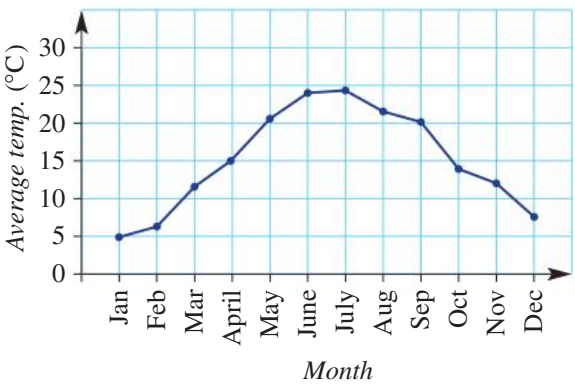
Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

A time series is a sequence of data values that are recorded at regular time intervals. Examples include temperature recorded on the hour, speed recorded every second, population recorded every year and profit recorded every month. A line graph can be used to represent time-series data. This can help to analyse the data, describe trends and make predictions about the future.



Let's start: Changing temperatures

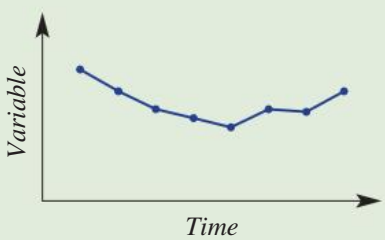
The average monthly maximum temperature for a city is illustrated by this graph.

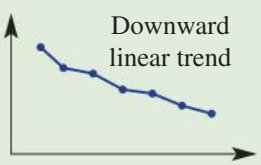


- Describe the trend in the data at different times of the year.
- Explain why the average maximum temperature for December is close to the average maximum temperature for January.
- Do you think this graph is for an Australian city? Explain.
- If another year of temperatures was included on this graph, what would you expect the shape of the graph to look like?
- Do you think this city is in the Northern Hemisphere or the Southern Hemisphere? Give a reason.

Key ideas

- **Time-series data** are recorded at regular time intervals.
- The graph or plot of a time series uses:
  - time on the horizontal axis
  - line segments connecting points on the graph
- If the time-series plot results in points being on or near a straight line, then we say that the trend is linear.





Time-series data A set of data collected in sequence over a period of time

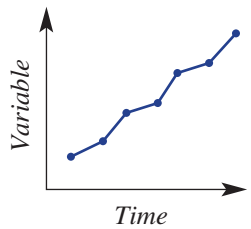
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 5G

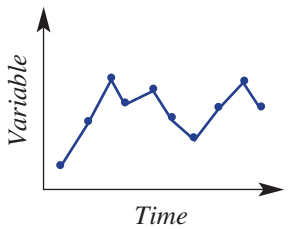
UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

1 Describe the following time-series plots as having a linear (i.e. straight line) trend, non-linear trend (i.e. a smooth curve) or no trend.

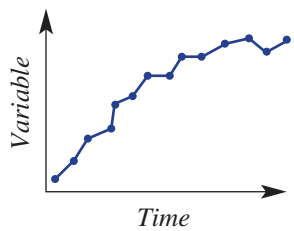
a



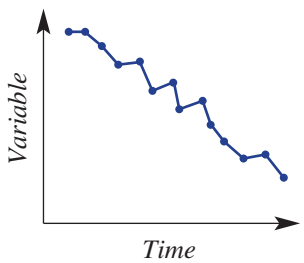
b



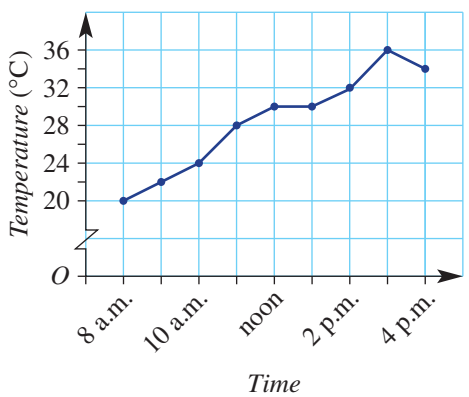
c



d



2 This time-series graph shows the temperature over the course of 8 hours of a day.



a State the temperature at:
- **i** 8 a.m.
- **ii** noon
- **iii** 1 p.m.
- **iv** 4 p.m.

b What was the maximum temperature?

c During what times did the temperature:
- **i** stay the same?
- **ii** decrease?

d Describe the general trend in the temperature for the 8 hours.

FLUENCY 3, 4 | 3, 5

Example 15 Plotting and interpreting a time-series plot

The approximate population of a small town is recorded from 2000 to 2015.

Year	2000	2001	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015
Population	1300	1250	1250	1150	1000	950	900	950	800	700	800	750	850	950	800	850

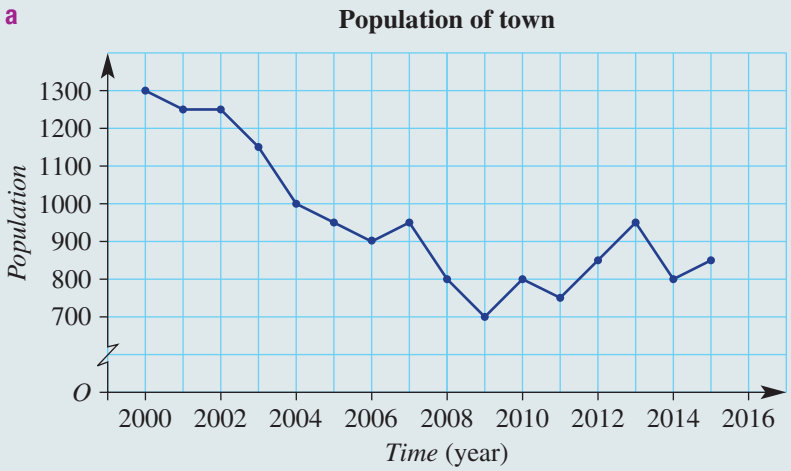
a Plot the time-series graph.

b Describe the trend in the data over the 16 years.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Solution

a



Explanation

Use time on the horizontal axis. Break the y-axis so as to not include 0–700. Label an even scale on each axis. Join points with line segments.

b The population declines steadily for the first 10 years. The population rises and falls in the last 6 years, resulting in a slight upwards trend.

Interpret the overall rise and fall of the lines on the graph.

3 The approximate population of a small town is recorded from 2005 to 2015.

Year	2005	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015
Population	550	500	550	600	700	650	750	750	850	950	900

a Plot the time-series graph. Break the y-axis so it does not include 0–500

b Describe the general trend in the data over the 11 years.

c For the 11 years, what was the:

i minimum population?

ii maximum population?

The *year* will be on the horizontal axis. Place *population* on the vertical axis.

The vertical axis will need to range from 500 to 950. A scale going up in 100s would suit.

4 A company's share price over 12 months is recorded in this table.

Month	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Price ($)	1.30	1.32	1.35	1.34	1.40	1.43	1.40	1.38	1.30	1.25	1.22	1.23

a Plot the time-series graph. Break the y-axis to exclude values from \$0 to \$1.20.

b Describe the way in which the share price has changed over the 12 months.

c What is the difference between the maximum and minimum share price in the 12 months?

The scale on the vertical axis will need to include from \$1.20 to \$1.43. Choose an appropriate scale.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5G

5 The pass rate (%) for a particular examination is given in this table.

Year	2006	2007	2008	2009	2010	2011	2012	2013	2014	2015
Pass rate (%)	74	71	73	79	85	84	87	81	84	83

a Plot the time-series graph for the 10 years.

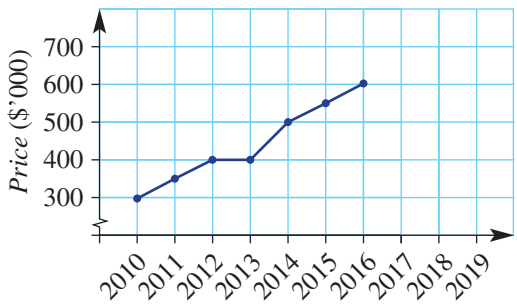
b Describe the way in which the pass rate for the examination has changed in the given time period.

c In what year is the pass rate a maximum?

d By how much has the pass rate improved from 2006 to 2010?

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6, 7 6, 8, 9

6 This time-series plot shows the upwards trend of house prices in an Adelaide suburb over 7 years from 2010 to 2016.



Recall that a linear trend has the points on or near a straight line.

a Would you say that the general trend in house prices is linear or non-linear?

b Assuming that the trend in house prices continues for this suburb, what would you expect the house price to be in:

i 2017? **ii** 2019?

7 The following data show the monthly sales of strawberries ($'000s) for a particular year.

$'000s means 22 represents $22 000.

Month	Jan	Feb	Mar	Apr	May	Jun	Jul	Aug	Sep	Oct	Nov	Dec
Sales ($'000s)	22	14	9	11	12	9	7	9	8	10	18	25

a Plot the time-series graph for the year.

b Describe any trends in the data over the year.

c Give a reason why you think the trends you observed may have occurred.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8 The two top-selling book stores for a company list their sales figures for the first 6 months of the year. Sales amounts are in thousands of dollars.

	July	August	September	October	November	December
City Central ($'000)	12	13	12	10	11	13
Southbank ($'000)	17	19	16	12	13	9

a What is the difference in the sales volume for:
i August? **ii** December?

b How many months did the City Central store sell more books than the Southbank store?

c Construct a time-series plot for both stores on the same set of axes.

d Describe the trend of sales for the 6 months for:
i City Central **ii** Southbank

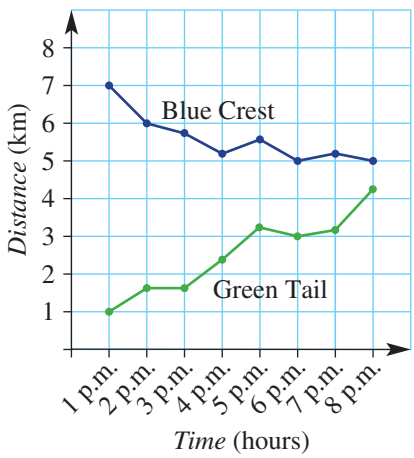
e Based on the trend for the sales for the Southbank store, what would you expect the approximate sales volume to be in January?

9 Two pigeons (Green Tail and Blue Crest) each have a beacon that communicates with a recording machine. The distance of each pigeon from the machine is recorded every hour for 8 hours.

a State the distance from the machine at 3 p.m. of:
i Blue Crest **ii** Green Tail

b Describe the trend in the distance from the recording machine for:
i Blue Crest **ii** Green Tail

c Assuming that the given trends continue, predict the time when the pigeons will be the same distance from the recording machine.



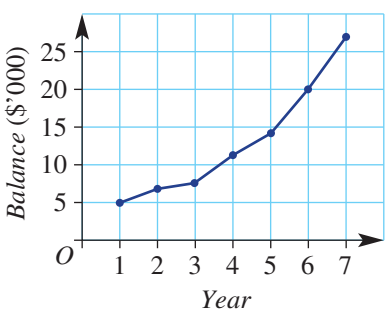
Non-linear trends

— 10, 11

10 The balance of an investment account is shown in this time-series plot.

a Describe the trend in the account balance over the 7 years.

b Give a practical reason for the shape of the curve that models the trend in the graph.



11 A drink at room temperature is placed in a fridge that is at 4°C.

a Sketch a time-series plot that might show the temperature of the drink after it has been placed in the fridge.

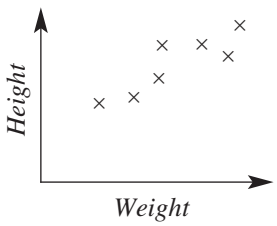
b Would the temperature of the drink ever get to 3°C? Why?

c Record the temperature at regular intervals of a drink at room temperature that is placed in a fridge. Plot your results and compare them to your answer in part **a**.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5H Bivariate data and scatter plots

When we collect information about two variables in a given context we are collecting bivariate data. As there are two variables involved in bivariate data, we use a number plane to graph the data. These graphs are called scatter plots and are used to show a relationship that may exist between the variables. Scatter plots make it very easy to see the strength of the relationship between the two variables.



Let's start: A relationship or not?

Consider the two variables in each part below.

- Would you expect there to be some relationship between the two variables in each of these cases?
- If you feel that a relationship exists, would you expect the second-listed variable to increase or to decrease as the first variable increases?

a *Height of person* and *Weight of person*
b *Temperature* and *Life of milk*
c *Length of hair* and *IQ*
d *Depth of topsoil* and *Brand of motorcycle*
e *Years of education* and *Income*
f *Spring rainfall* and *Crop yield*
g *Size of ship* and *Cargo capacity*
h *Fuel economy* and *CD track number*
i *Amount of traffic* and *Travel time*
j *Cost of 2 litres of milk* and *Ability to swim*
k *Background noise* and *Amount of work completed*

Key ideas

Bivariate data Data that involves two variables

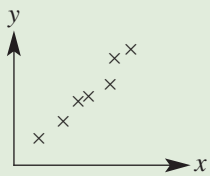
Scatter plot A diagram that uses coordinates to display values for two variables for a set of data

- **Bivariate data** is data that involves two variables.
  - The two variables are usually related; for example, height and weight.
- A **scatter plot** is a graph on a number plane in which the axes variables correspond to the two variables from the bivariate data. Points are marked with a cross.
- The words *relationship*, *correlation* and *association* are used to describe the way in which the variables are related.
- Types of correlation:
  - The correlation is positive if the y variable generally increases as the x variable increases.
  - The correlation is negative if the y variable generally decreases as the x variable increases.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

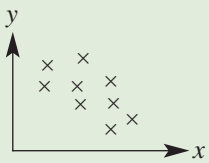
Examples:

Strong positive correlation



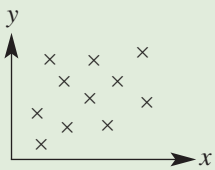
As x increases, y clearly increases.

Weak negative correlation



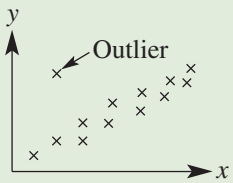
As x increases, y generally decreases.

No correlation



As x increases, there is no particular effect on y.

- An outlier can be clearly identified as a data point that is isolated from the rest of the data.



Exercise 5H

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

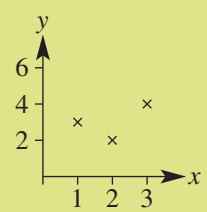
1 Decide whether it is likely or unlikely that there will be a strong relationship between these pairs of variables.

- **a** *Height of door* and *Width of door*
- **b** *Weight of car* and *Fuel consumption*
- **c** *Temperature* and *Length of phone calls*
- **d** *Colour of flower* and *Strength of perfume*
- **e** *Amount of rain* and *Size of vegetables in the vegetable garden*

2 For each of the following sets of bivariate data with variables x and y:

- **i** Draw a scatter plot by hand.
- **ii** Decide whether y generally increases or decreases as x increases.

On a scatter plot mark each point of the plot with a cross.



a

x	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
y	3	2	4	4	5	8	7	9	11	12

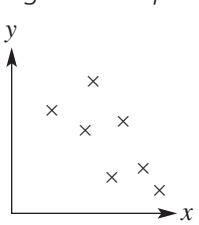
b

x	0.1	0.3	0.5	0.9	1.0	1.1	1.2	1.6	1.8	2.0	2.5
y	10	8	8	6	7	7	7	6	4	3	1

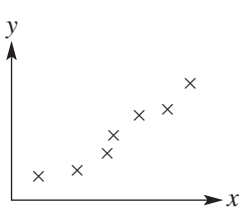
3 For these scatter plots, choose two words from those listed below to best describe the correlation between the two variables.

strong *weak* *positive* *negative*

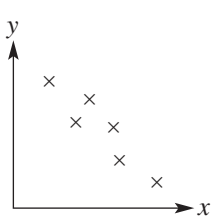
a



b



c



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

5H

FLUENCY 4, 5 4, 6

Example 16 Constructing and interpreting scatter plots

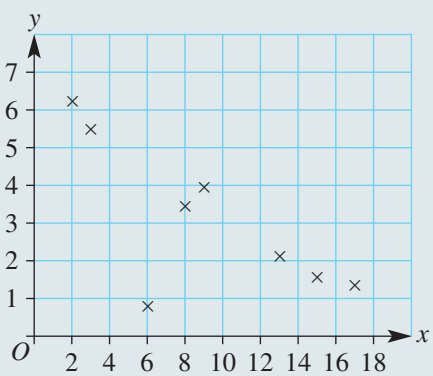
Consider this simple bivariate data set.

x	13	9	2	17	3	6	8	15
y	2.1	4.0	6.2	1.3	5.5	0.9	3.5	1.6

a Draw a scatter plot for the data.
b Describe the correlation between x and y as positive or negative.
c Describe the correlation between x and y as strong or weak.
d Identify any outliers.

Solution

a



Explanation

Draw an appropriate scale on each axis by looking at the data:
- x is up to 17
- y is up to 6.2

The scale must be spread evenly on each axis.
Plot each point using a cross symbol on graph paper.

b Negative correlation

Looking at the scatter plot, as x increases y decreases.

c Strong correlation

The downwards trend in the data is clearly defined.

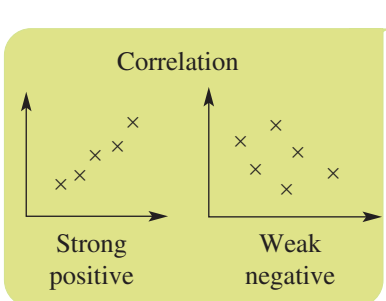
d The outlier is $(6, 0.9)$.

This point defies the trend.

4 Consider this simple bivariate data set.

x	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
y	1.0	1.1	1.3	1.3	1.4	1.6	1.8	1.0

a Draw a scatter plot for the data.
b Describe the correlation between x and y as positive or negative.
c Describe the correlation between x and y as strong or weak.
d Identify any outliers.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

5 Consider this simple bivariate data set.

x	14	8	7	10	11	15	6	9	10
y	4	2.5	2.5	1.5	1.5	0.5	3	2	2

a Draw a scatter plot for the data.
b Describe the correlation between x and y as positive or negative.
c Describe the correlation between x and y as strong or weak.
d Identify any outliers.

6 By completing scatter plots for each of the following data sets, describe the correlation between x and y as *positive*, *negative* or *none*.

a

x	1.1	1.8	1.2	1.3	1.7	1.9	1.6	1.6	1.4	1.0	1.5
y	22	12	19	15	10	9	14	13	16	23	16

b

x	4	3	1	7	8	10	6	9	5	5
y	115	105	105	135	145	145	125	140	120	130

c

x	28	32	16	19	21	24	27	25	30	18
y	13	25	22	21	16	9	19	25	15	12

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8 7, 9, 10

7 A tomato grower experiments with a new organic fertiliser and sets up five separate garden beds: A, B, C, D and E. The grower applies different amounts of fertiliser to each bed and records the diameter of each tomato picked.
The average diameter of a tomato from each garden bed and the corresponding amount of fertiliser are recorded below.

Bed	A	B	C	D	E
Fertiliser (grams per week)	20	25	30	35	40
Average diameter (cm)	6.8	7.4	7.6	6.2	8.5

a Draw a scatter plot for the data with 'Diameter' on the vertical axis and 'Fertiliser' on the horizontal axis. Label the points A, B, C, D and E.
b Which garden bed appears to go against the trend?
c According to the given results, would you be confident saying that the amount of fertiliser fed to tomato plants does affect the size of the tomato produced?

8 For common motor vehicles, consider the two variables *Engine size* (cylinder volume) and *Fuel economy* (number of kilometres travelled for every litre of petrol).
a Do you expect there to be some relationship between these two variables?
b As the engine size increases, would you expect the fuel economy to increase or decrease?
c The following data were collected for 10 vehicles.

Car	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J
Engine size	1.1	1.2	1.2	1.5	1.5	1.8	2.4	3.3	4.2	5.0
Fuel economy	21	18	19	18	17	16	15	20	14	11

i Do the data generally support your answers to parts **a** and **b** above?
ii Which car gives a fuel economy reading that does not support the general trend?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5H

9 On 14 consecutive days a local council measures the volume of sound heard from a freeway at various points in a local suburb. The volume (V) of sound, in decibels, is recorded against the distance (d), in metres, between the freeway and the point in the suburb.

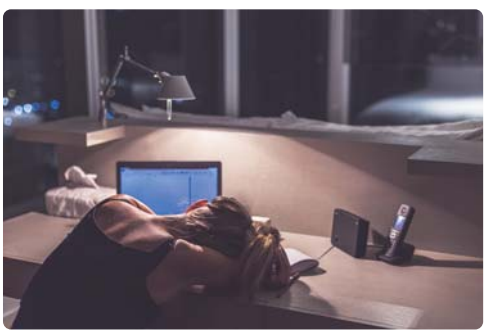
d	200	350	500	150	1000	850	200	450	750	250	300	1500	700	1250
V	4.3	3.7	2.9	4.5	2.1	2.3	4.4	3.3	2.8	4.1	3.6	1.7	3.0	2.2

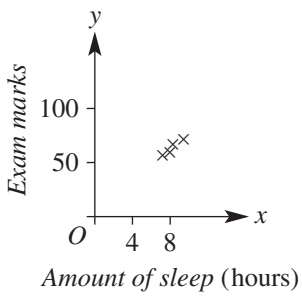
a Draw a scatter plot of V against d, plotting V on the vertical axis and d on the horizontal axis.

b Describe the correlation between d and V as positive, negative or none.

c Generally, as d increases, does V increase or decrease?

10 A person presents you with this scatter plot and suggests to you that there is a strong correlation between the amount of sleep and exam marks. What do you suggest is the problem with the person's graph and conclusions?





Crime rates and police

— 11

11 A government department is interested in convincing the electorate that a large number of police on patrol leads to lower crime rates. Two separate surveys are completed over a 1-week period and the results are listed in this table.

	Area	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
Survey 1	Number of police	15	21	8	14	19	31	17
	Incidence of crime	28	16	36	24	24	19	21
Survey 2	Number of police	12	18	9	12	14	26	21
	Incidence of crime	26	25	20	24	22	23	19

a Using scatter plots, determine whether or not there is a relationship between the number of police on patrol and the incidence of crime, using the data in:
i survey 1 **ii** survey 2

b Which survey results do you think the government will use to make its point? Why?

Number of police will be on the horizontal axis.

Using technology 5H: Using calculators to draw scatter plots
This activity is available on the companion website as a printable PDF.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5I Line of best fit by eye

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

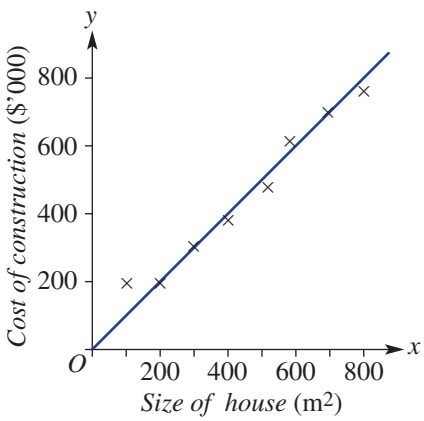
Walkthrough

When bivariate data have a strong linear correlation, we can model the data with a straight line. This line is called a trend line or line of best fit. When we fit the line 'by eye', we try to balance the number of data points above the line with the number of points below the line. This trend line can then be used to construct other data points inside and outside the existing data points.

Let's start: Size versus cost

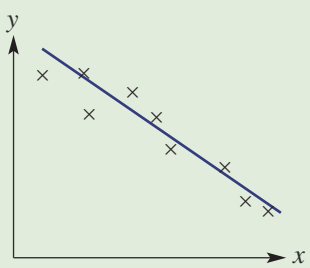
This scatter plot shows the estimated cost of building a house of a given size by a building company. A trend line has been added to the scatter plot.

- Why is it appropriate to fit a trend line to this data?
- Do you think the trend line is a good fit to the points on the scatter plot? Why?
- How can you predict the cost of a house of 1000 m^2 with this building company?



Key ideas

- For bivariate data showing a clearly defined positive or negative correlation, a straight line can be fitted by eye.
- A **line of best fit** (or trend line) is positioned by eye by balancing the number of points above the line with the number of points below the line.
  - The distance of each point from the trend line also needs to be taken into account.
  - Outliers should be ignored.
- The line of best fit can be used for:
  - **interpolation:** finding unknown points within the given data range
  - **extrapolation:** finding unknown points outside the given data range



Line of best fit A line that has the closest fit to a set of data points displayed in a scatter plot

Interpolation Finding unknown points within the given data range

Extrapolation Finding unknown points outside the given data range

Exercise 5I

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 4

1 **a** When is it suitable to add a line of best fit to a scatterplot?

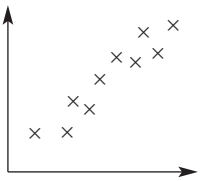
b Describe the general guideline for placing a line of best fit.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

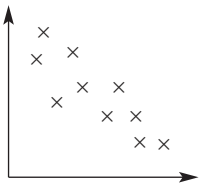
5I

2 Practise fitting a line of best fit on these scatter plots by trying to balance the number of points above the line with the number of points below the line. (Using a pencil might help.)

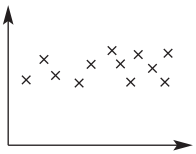
a



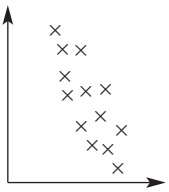
b



c



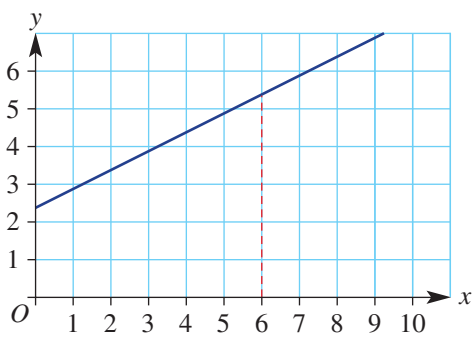
d



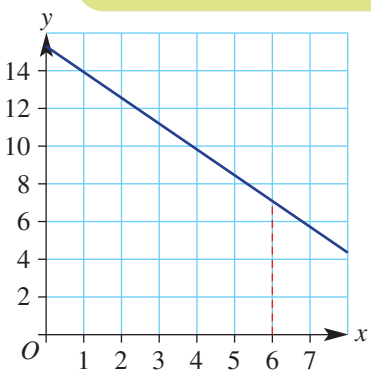
3 For each graph, use the given line of best fit shown to estimate the y value when $x = 6$.

Continue a horizontal line to the y-axis from where the vertical dashed line touches the line of best fit.

a

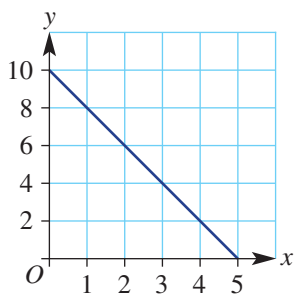


b

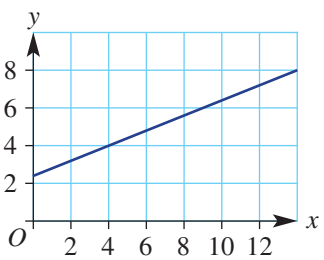


4 For each graph, use the given line of best fit shown to find the x value when $y = 7$.

a



b



FLUENCY 5–7 5, 7, 8

Example 17 Fitting a line of best fit

Consider the variables x and y and the corresponding bivariate data.

x	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
y	1	2	2	3	4	4	5

a Draw a scatter plot for the data.

b Is there positive, negative or no correlation between x and y?

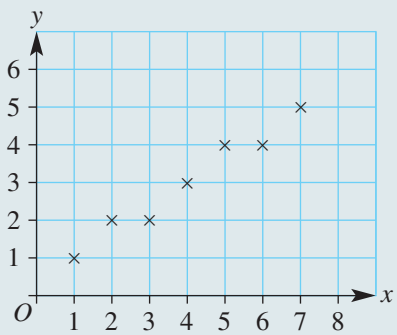
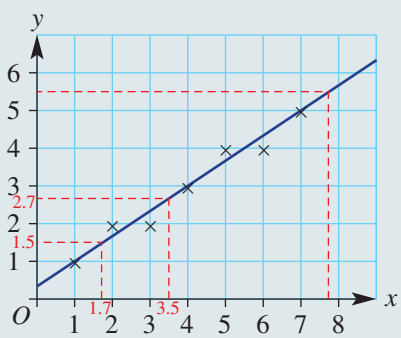
c Fit a line of best fit by eye to the data on the scatter plot.

d Use your line of best fit to estimate:

i y when $x = 3.5$ **ii** y when $x = 0$

iii x when $y = 1.5$ **iv** x when $y = 5.5$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Solution	Explanation
a 	Plot the points on graph paper.
b Positive correlation	As x increases, y increases.
c 	Since a relationship exists, draw a line on the plot, keeping as many points above as below the line. (There are no outliers in this case.)
d **i** $y \approx 2.7$ **ii** $y \approx 0.4$ **iii** $x \approx 1.7$ **iv** $x \approx 7.8$	Start at $x = 3.5$. Draw a vertical line to the line of best fit, then draw a horizontal line to the y-axis and read off your solution. Extend vertical and horizontal lines from the values given and read off your solution. As they are approximations, we use $\approx$ sign and not the $=$ sign.

5 Consider the variables x and y and the corresponding bivariate data.

x	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
y	2	2	3	4	4	5	5

a Draw a scatter plot for the data.

b Is there positive, negative or no correlation between x and y?

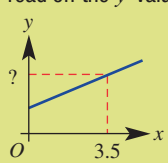
c Fit a line of best fit by eye to the data on the scatter plot.

d Use your line of best fit to estimate:

i y when $x = 3.5$ **ii** y when $x = 0$

iii x when $y = 2$ **iv** x when $y = 5.5$

Locate $x = 3.5$ and read off the y-value.



6 Consider the variables x and y and the corresponding data below.

x	1	2	4	5	7	8	10	12
y	20	16	17	16	14	13	9	10

a Draw a scatter plot for the data.

b Is there a positive, negative or no correlation between x and y?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

51

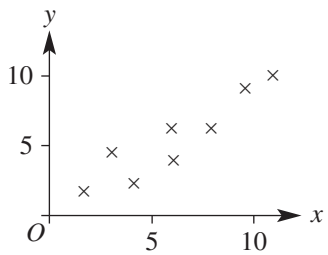
c Fit a line of best fit by eye to the data on the scatter plot.

d Use your line of best fit to estimate:

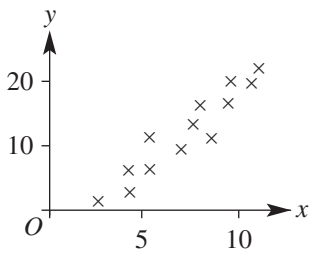
i y when $x = 7.5$ **ii** y when $x = 0$ **iii** x when $y = 12$ **iv** x when $y = 15$

7 For the following scatter plots, pencil in a line of best fit by eye, and then use your line to estimate the value of y when $x = 5$.

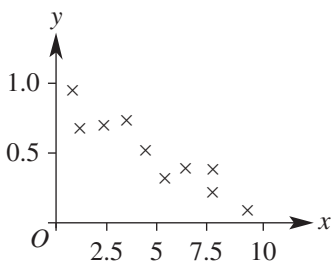
a



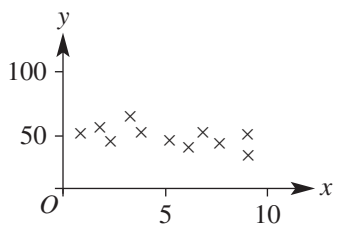
b



c



d



8 This chart shows data for the *number of people* entering a suburban park and the corresponding *maximum temperature* for 10 spring days.

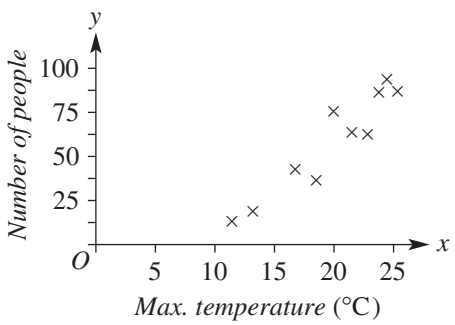
a Generally, as the maximum daily temperature increases, does the number of people who enter the park increase or decrease?

b Draw a line of best fit by eye on the given chart.

c Use your line of best fit to estimate:

i the number of people expected to enter the park if the maximum daily temperature is 20°C

ii the maximum daily temperature when the total number of people who visit the park on a particular day is 25.



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9, 10 9, 11

9 A small book shop records its profit and number of customers for the past 8 days.

Number of customers	6	12	15	9	8	5	8
Profit ($)	200	450	550	300	350	250	300

a Draw a scatter plot for the data, using profit on the vertical axis.

b Fit a line of best fit by eye.

c Use your line of best fit to predict the profit for 17 customers.

d Use your line of best fit to predict the number of customers for a $100 profit.

For 17 customers, you will need to extend your line beyond the data. This is called extrapolation.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10 Over eight consecutive years, a city nursery has measured the growth of an outdoor bamboo species for that year. The annual rainfall in the area where the bamboo is growing was also recorded. The data are listed in the table.

Rainfall (mm)	450	620	560	830	680	650	720	540
Growth (cm)	25	45	25	85	50	55	50	20

a Draw a scatter plot for the data, showing growth on the vertical axis.

b Fit a line of best fit by eye.

c Use your line of best fit to estimate the growth expected for the following rainfall readings.
i 500 mm **ii** 900 mm

d Use your line of best fit to estimate the rainfall for a given year if the growth of the bamboo is:
i 30 cm **ii** 60 cm

11 At a suburban sports club, the distance record for the hammer throw has increased over time. The first recorded value was 72.3 m in 1967. The most recent record was 118.2 m in 1996. Further details are in this table.

Year	1967	1968	1969	1976	1978	1983	1987	1996
New record (m)	72.3	73.4	82.7	94.2	99.1	101.2	111.6	118.2

a Draw a scatter plot for the data.

b Fit a line of best fit by eye.

c Use your line of best fit to estimate the distance record for the hammer throw for:
i 2000 **ii** 2015

d Would you say that it is realistic to use your line of best fit to estimate distance records beyond 2015? Why?

Heart rate and age — 12

12 Two independent scientific experiments confirmed a correlation between *Maximum heart rate* and *Age*. The data for the two experiments are in this table.

Experiment 1													
Age (years)	15	18	22	25	30	34	35	40	40	52	60	65	71
Max. heart rate (b.p.m.)	190	200	195	195	180	185	170	165	165	150	125	128	105
Experiment 2													
Age (years)	20	20	21	26	27	32	35	41	43	49	50	58	82
Max. heart rate (b.p.m.)	205	195	180	185	175	160	160	145	150	150	135	140	90

a Sketch separate scatter plots for experiment 1 and experiment 2, with age on the horizontal axis.

b By fitting a line of best fit by eye to your scatter plots, estimate the maximum heart rate for a person aged 55 years, using the results from:
i experiment 1 **ii** experiment 2

c Estimate the age of a person who has a maximum heart rate of 190 b.p.m., using the results from:
i experiment 1 **ii** experiment 2

d For a person aged 25 years, which experiment estimates a lower maximum heart rate?

e Research the average maximum heart rate of people by age and compare with the results given above.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Maths@Work: Project manager on a building site

Project managers are responsible for coordinating a build. They need to be organised, must be able to read and interpret plans, manage staff, coordinate the supply and costs of labour and equipment, as well as problem solve unexpected situations on the worksite.

Project managers also need to evaluate their staff. Performance reviews are often used to evaluate staff performance. In some companies, bonuses and other incentives are linked to these reviews.

The performance review below is from a work-site, and used by the project manager to review their staff.

Use the performance review to answer the following questions that a project manager may face on their day-to-day job.

1 Consider trainee A.

- **a** Calculate their mean score on this review.
- **b** What is their median score?
- **c** Write down the five-figure summary from the data given in this review.

Don't forget to order the data before finding the median.

2 Consider trainee B.

- **a** Calculate their mean score on this review.
- **b** What is their median score?
- **c** Write down the five-figure summary from the data given in this review.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 Display the data for all three trainees in parallel box plots on the same scale.

4 Compare the competency of trainees A, B and C by listing the following for *each* trainee. Then decide who is the most competent trainee, giving reasons.

- **a** the mean
- **b** the median
- **c** the lowest score
- **d** the highest score
- **e** the interquartile range
- **f** the range

The five-figure summary includes min, Q_1, Q_2, Q_3 and max.

Performance review

Competency - please score 0 to 10	Trainee A	Trainee B	Trainee C
1. Please score the individual's punctuality when arriving to work.	9	8	8
2. Please score the individual's attitude when performing required tasks.	8.5	9	6.5
3. Once the individual has completed a task, do they ask for additional work?	8	8	5
4. How would you score the individual's willingness to learn?	9.5	8	6
5. How would you score the individual's application to competencies or requirements, as taught by the site team?	8	7	6
6. Please score the individual's accuracy when performing required tasks.	8.5	7.5	6.5
7. Please score the individual's skills in email, faxes and letter writing.	7	8	8.5
8. Please score the individual's skills in drafting site instructions.	7.5	7	5
9. Please score the individual's skills in drafting or issuing RFIs.	8	6.5	5
10. Please score the individual's respect earned within the site/ department team for their required role.	8	7.5	5.5
11. Please score the individual's respect earned with subcontractors for their required role.	7.5	7	5.5
12. Please score the individual's respect earned with consultants for their required role.	8	7	5
13. How would you score the individual's application/focus to the required tasks you have assigned?	8.5	8	5
14. Do you consider that the individual has integrated well with the site/ department team?	9	8	4.5
15. Do you find that the individual has improved their skills while under your supervision?	8	7.5	5.5
16. Would you take the individual to your next project to continue their competency training in other aspects of construction? Yes - score 10 Maybe - score 5 No - score 0	10	5	0
17. How would you score the individual's progression through their required tasks?	9	8.5	3

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Using technology

5 The following data gives the competency scores (C) for trainee D.

C 1	C 2	C 3	C 4	C 5	C 6	C 7	C 8	C 9
9	7	7	7	6	7	7	6	6
C 10	C 11	C 12	C 13	C 14	C 15	C 16	C 17	
7	8	6	7	9	8	5	8	

a Using a CAS calculator, enter the data for trainees B and D and draw parallel box plots. Note that an activity ('Using calculators to draw box plots') showing how to enter data and draw box plots for both the TI-Nspire and Class Pad is available in the interactive textbook.

b For trainees B and D, write down the five-figure summaries from the box plots.

c Compare the IQRs for trainee B and D. Which IQR shows more consistent competency? Give reasons for your answer.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1 The mean mass of six boys is 71 kg. The mean mass of five girls is 60 kg. Find the mean mass of all 11 children together.

2 Sean has a current four-topic average of 78% for Mathematics. What score does he need in the fifth topic to have an overall average of 80%?

3 I am a data set made up of five whole number values. My mode is 2 and both my mean and median are 5. What is my biggest possible range?

4 A single data set has 3 added to every value. Describe the change in:
- **a** the mean
- **b** the median
- **c** the range

5 Find the interquartile range for a set of data if 75% of the data is above 2.6 and 25% of the data is above 3.7.

6 I am a data set with four whole number values.
- I have a range of 8.
- I have a mode of 3.
- I have a median of 6.

What are my four values?

7 A single-ordered data set includes the following data.
$2, 4, 5, 6, 8, 10, x$
What is the largest possible value of x if it is not an outlier?

8 Describe what happens to the mean, median and mode of a data set if each value in the set:
- **a** is increased by 10
- **b** is multiplied by 10

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter summary

Statistics

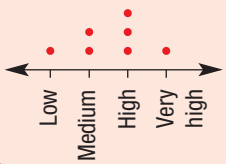
Data

Categorical
- Nominal (red, blue, ...)
- Ordinal (low, medium, ...)

Numerical
- Discrete (1, 2, 3, ...)
- Continuous (0.31, 0.481, ...)

Graphs for a single set of categorical or discrete data

Dot plot



Column graphs

Stem-and-leaf plot

Stem	Leaf
0	1 6
1	2 7 9
2	3 8
3	4

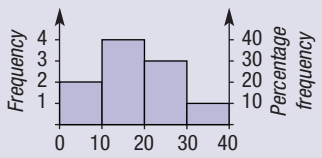
2 | 3 means 23

Frequency tables

Class interval	Frequency	Percentage frequency
0–	2	20%
10–	4	40%
20–	3	30%
30–40	1	10%
Total	10	100%

$$\text{Percentage frequency} = \frac{\text{frequency}}{\text{total}} \times 100$$

Histogram



Measures of centre

- Mean ($\bar{x}$) = $\frac{\text{sum of all values}}{\text{number of scores}}$
- Median (Q_2) = middle value of ordered data

odd number	even number
1 4 6 9 12	1 2 4 6 7 11
median	Median = $\frac{4+6}{2} = 5$

- Mode = most common value
- A data set with two modes is bimodal.

Measures of spread

- Range = max – min
- Interquartile range (IQR) = $Q_3 - Q_1$

Quartiles

Q_1: above 25% of the data (middle value of lower half)
Q_3: above 75% of the data (middle value of upper half)

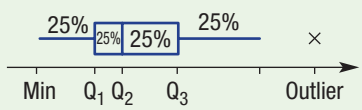
2 3 5 7 8 | 9 11 12 14 15

$Q_1 = 5$ $Q_2 = 8.5$ $Q_3 = 12$

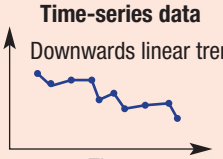
1 2 3 | 6 | 7 10 13

$Q_1 = 2$ Q_2 $Q_3 = 10$

Box plots

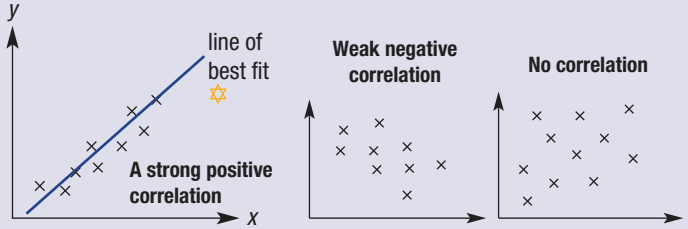


Time-series data



Bivariate data

- Two related variables
- Scatter plot



Outliers

- Single data set
  - less than $Q_1 - 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$ or more than $Q_3 + 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$
- Bivariate
  - not in the vicinity of the rest of the data

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter review

Multiple-choice questions

5A **1** The number of pets in 10 households are recorded after a survey is conducted. The type of data recorded could be described as:

A categorical and discrete
B categorical and ordinal
C categorical and nominal
D numerical and discrete
E numerical and continuous

Questions **2** and **3** refer to the stem-and-leaf plot below, at right.

Stem	Leaf
2	4 9
3	1 1 7 8
4	2 4 6
5	0 4

4 | 2 means 42

5C **2** The minimum score in the data is:

A 4 **B** 0 **C** 24
D 38 **E** 54

5C **3** The mode is:

A 3 **B** 31 **C** 4
D 38 **E** 30

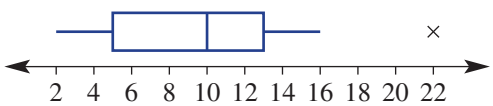
5D **4** The range and mean of 2, 4, 3, 5, 10 and 6 are:

A range = 8, mean = 5
B range = 4, mean = 5
C range = 8, mean = 4
D range = 2 − 10, mean = 6
E range = 8, mean = 6

5D **5** The median of 29, 12, 18, 26, 15 and 22 is:

A 18 **B** 22 **C** 20 **D** 17 **E** 26

Questions **6–8** refer to the box plot below.



5E/F **6** The interquartile range (IQR) is:

A 8 **B** 5 **C** 3
D 20 **E** 14

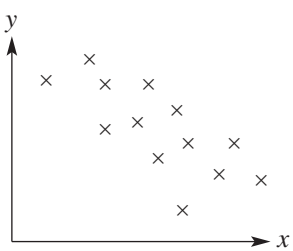
5F **7** The outlier is:

A 2 **B** 0 **C** 20 **D** 16 **E** 22

5F **8** The median is:

A 2 **B** 3 **C** 10 **D** 13 **E** 16

5H **9** The variables x and y in this scatter plot could be described as having:



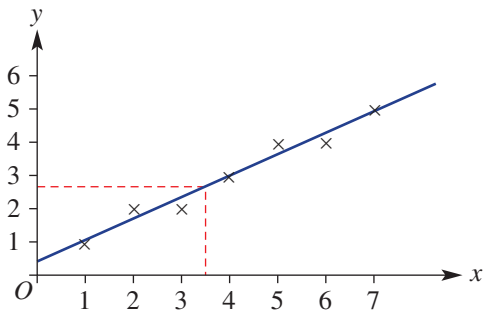
A no correlation
B strong positive correlation
C strong negative correlation
D weak negative correlation
E weak positive correlation

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter review

5I **10** According to this scatter plot, when x is 3.5, y is approximately:

A 4.4 **B** 2.7
C 2.5 **D** 3.5
E 5



Short-answer questions

5B **1** A group of 16 people was surveyed to find the number of hours of television they watch in a week. The raw data are listed:
6, 5, 11, 13, 24, 8, 1, 12, 7, 6, 14, 10, 9, 16, 8, 3

a Organise the data into a table with class intervals of 5. Start at 0−, 5− etc. Include a tally, frequency and percentage frequency column.
b Construct a histogram for the data, showing both the frequency and percentage frequency on the graph.
c Would you describe the data as symmetrical or skewed?

5C **2** A basketball team scores the following points per match for a season.
20, 19, 24, 37, 42, 34, 38, 49, 28, 15, 38, 32, 50, 29

a Construct an ordered stem-and-leaf plot for the data.
b Describe the distribution of scores.

5D **3** For the following sets of data, determine:
i the mean **ii** the range **iii** the median

a 2, 7, 4, 8, 3, 6, 5
b 10, 55, 67, 24, 11, 16
c 1.7, 1.2, 1.4, 1.6, 2.4, 1.3

5D **4** Thirteen adults compare their ages at a party. They are:
40, 41, 37, 32, 48, 43, 32, 76, 29, 33, 26, 38, 87

a Find the mean age of the adults, to one decimal place.
b Find the median age of the adults.
c Why do you think the mean age is larger than the median age?

5E **5** Determine Q_1, Q_2 and Q_3 for these sets of data.

a 4, 5, 8, 10, 10, 11, 12, 14, 15, 17, 21
b 14, 6, 2, 23, 11, 6, 15, 14, 12, 18, 16, 10

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5F **6** For each set of data below, complete the following tasks.

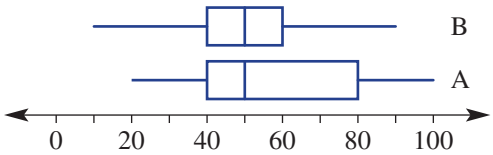
- **i** Find the lower quartile (Q_1) and the upper quartile (Q_3).
- **ii** Find the interquartile range ($IQR = Q_3 - Q_1$).
- **iii** Locate any outliers.
- **iv** Draw a box plot.

a 2, 2, 3, 3, 3, 4, 5, 6, 12

b 11, 12, 15, 15, 17, 18, 20, 21, 24, 27, 28

c 2.4, 0.7, 2.1, 2.8, 2.3, 2.6, 2.6, 1.9, 3.1, 2.2

5F **7** Compare these parallel box plots, A and B, and answer the following as true or false.



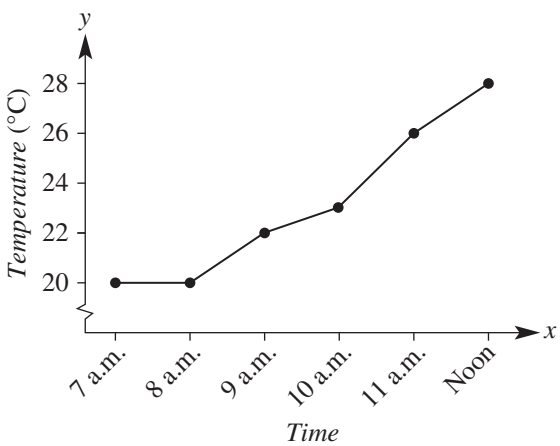
a The range for A is greater than the range for B.

b The median for A is equal to the median for B.

c The interquartile range is smaller for B.

d 75% of the data for A sits below 80.

5G **8** This time series plot shows six temperature readings taken over 5 hours.

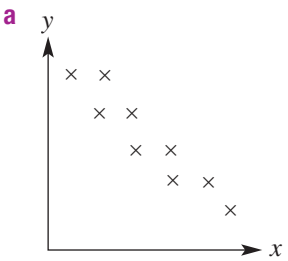


a Would you describe the trend as linear or non-linear?

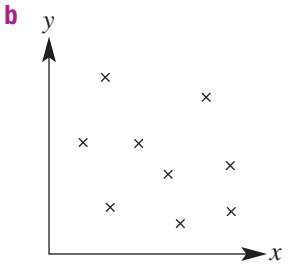
b During which hour does the largest temperature increase occur?

5H **9** For the scatter plots below, describe the correlation between x and y as positive, negative or none.

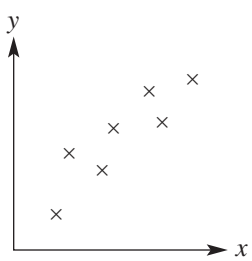
a



b



c



5H **10** Consider the simple bivariate data set.

x	1	4	3	2	1	4	3	2	5	5
y	24	15	16	20	22	11	5	17	6	8

a Draw a scatter plot for the data.

b Describe the correlation between x and y as positive or negative.

c Describe the correlation between x and y as strong or weak.

d Identify any outliers.

e Fit a line of best fit by eye.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

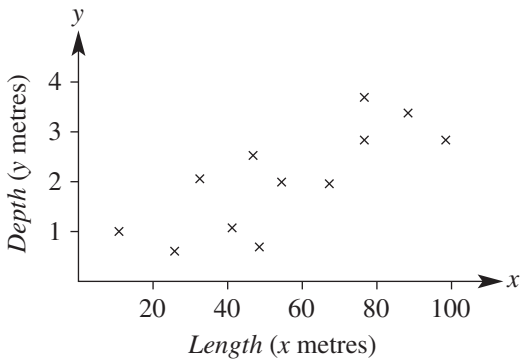
Chapter review

5I

11 The given scatter plot shows the maximum *length* (x metres) and *depth* (y metres) of 11 public pools around town.

a Draw a line of best fit by eye.

b Use your line to estimate the maximum depth of a pool that is 50 m in length.



Extended-response questions

1 The number of flying foxes taking refuge in a fig tree is recorded over a period of 14 days. The data collected is given here.

Tree	73	50	36	82	15	24	73	57	65	86	51	32	21	39

a Find the IQR.

b Identify any outliers.

c Draw a box plot for the data.

2 A newsagency records the *number of customers* and *profit* for 14 working days.

Number of customers	18	13	15	24	29	12	18	16	15	11	4	32	26	21
Profit ($)	150	70	100	210	240	90	130	110	120	80	30	240	200	190

a Draw a scatter plot for the data and draw a line of best fit by eye. Place *Number of customers* on the horizontal axis.

b Use your line of best fit to predict the profit for:

i 10 customers **ii** 20 customers **iii** 30 customers

c Use your line of best fit to predict the number of customers for a:

i $50 profit **ii** $105 profit **iii** $220 profit

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Measurement

Multiple-choice questions

1 The number of centimetres in 2.8 metres is:

A 0.28 **B** 28 **C** 280 **D** 2.8 **E** 2800

2 A rectangle has length 7 cm and perimeter 22 cm. Its width is:

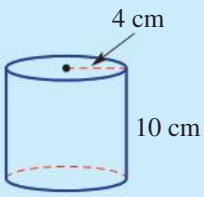
A 7.5 cm **B** 15 cm **C** 14 cm **D** 8 cm **E** 4 cm

3 The area of a circle with diameter 10 cm is given by:

A $\pi(10)^2$ cm^2 **B** $\pi(5)^2$ cm^2 **C** 10π cm^2
D $5 \times \pi$ cm^2 **E** 25 cm^2

4 The surface area of this cylinder is closest to:

A 351.9 cm^2 **B** 301.6 cm^2 **C** 175.9 cm^2
D 276.5 cm^2 **E** 183.4 cm^2



5 The area of the triangular cross-section of a prism is 8 mm^2 and the prism's height is 3 mm. The prism's volume is:

A 48 mm^3 **B** 12 mm^3 **C** 24 mm^2
D 24 mm^3 **E** 12 mm^2

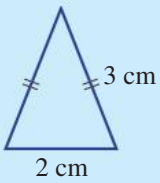
Short-answer questions

1 Convert these measurements to the units shown in the brackets.

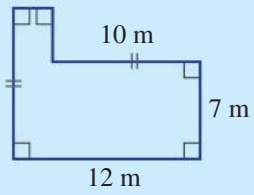
a 0.43 m (cm) **b** 32 000 mm^2 (cm^2) **c** 0.03 m^3 (cm^3)

2 Find the perimeter of each of these shapes.

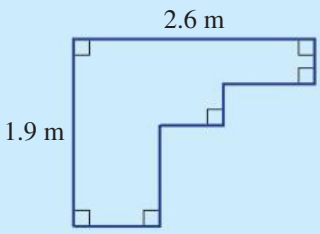
a



b



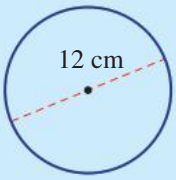
c



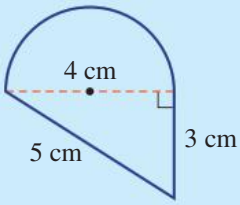
3 For these shapes, find, correct to two decimal places:

i the perimeter **ii** the area

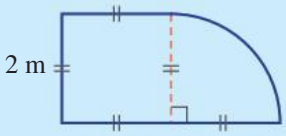
a



b



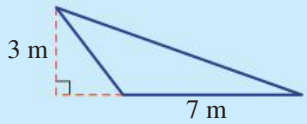
c



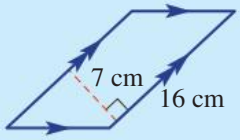
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 Find the area of each of these shapes.

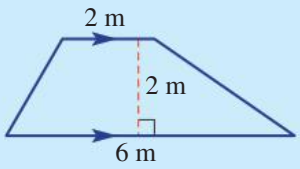
a



b



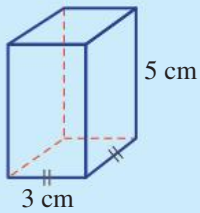
c



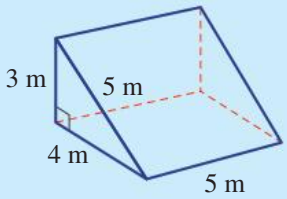
5 For these solids, find (correct to two decimal places where necessary):

i the volume **ii** the total surface area

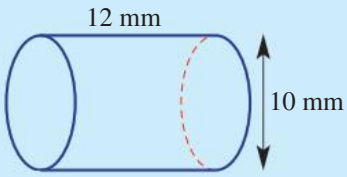
a



b



c



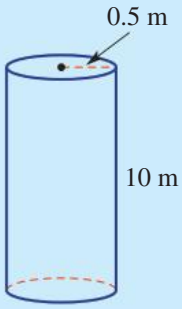
Extended-response question

A concrete cylindrical pole has radius 0.5 m and height 10 m. The outside curved surface only is to be painted. Answer the following, to two decimal places.

a What volume of concrete was used to make the pole?

b What area is to be painted?

c A litre of paint covers 6 m^2. Paint costs \$12 per litre and there are 18 poles to be painted. What is the cost of paint required? Round your answer to the nearest \$10.



Consumer arithmetic

Multiple-choice questions

1 Nigel earns \$1256 a week. His annual income is:

A \$24.15 **B** \$32 656 **C** \$65 312
D \$15 072 **E** \$12 560

2 Who earns the most?

A Priya: \$56 982 p.a.
B Suresh: \$1986 per fortnight
C Henry: \$1095 per week
D Yasmin: \$32.57 per hour, 38-hour weeks for 44 weeks
E Bill: \$20 000 p.a.

3 Adrian works 35 hours a week, earning \$575.75. His wage for a 38-hour week is:

A \$16.45 **B** \$21 878.50 **C** \$625.10 **D** \$530.30 **E** \$575.75

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 Jake earns a retainer of $420 per week plus a 2% commission on all sales. Find his fortnightly pay when his sales total $56 000 for the fortnight.

A $2240 **B** $840 **C** $1540 **D** $1960 **E** $56 420

5 Antonia earns $4700 gross a month. She has annual deductions of $14 100 in tax and $1664 in health insurance. Her net monthly income is:

A $3386.33 **B** $11 064 **C** $40 636 **D** $72 164 **E** $10 000

Short-answer questions

1 Sven earns $28.40 per hour working in a bar. What would he earn for working a 6-hour shift?

2 Theo's weekly wage is $875. Calculate:

a his annual wage
b his hourly rate if he works 35 hours a week

3 Cara invests 10% of her net annual salary for 1 year into an investment account earning 4% p.a. simple interest for 5 years. Calculate the simple interest earned if her annual net salary is $77 500.

4 Tobias earns $55.20 an hour as a mechanic. Calculate his:

a time-and-a-half rate
b double-time rate
c weekly wage for 38 hours at normal rate
d weekly wage for 38 hours at normal rate plus 3 hours at time and a half

5 Fatima earns $60.80 an hour on weekdays and double time on the weekends. Calculate her weekly pay if she works 9 a.m.–3 p.m. Monday to Friday and 9 a.m. till 11:30 a.m. on Saturday.

6 Marina has a taxable income of $42 600. Calculate her income tax if she falls into the following tax bracket.

$3572 plus 32.5c for each $1 over $37 000

7 Darren earns $672 per week plus 1% commission on all sales. Find his weekly income if his sales for the week total $22 500.

8 Each fortnight, Raj earns $1430 gross and pays $34.94 in superannuation, $23.40 in union fees and $493.60 in tax.

a What is Raj's annual gross income?
b How much tax does Raj pay each year?
c What is Raj's net annual income?
d What is Raj's net weekly income?

9 Find the final value of an investment of $7000 at 6% p.a., compounded annually for 4 years.

10 Jason earns $664.20 in a week, where he works 35 hours at his normal hourly rate and 4 hours at time and a half. Calculate Jason's normal hourly rate.

11 A $120 Blu-ray player is discounted by 15%. What is the sale price?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Extended-response question

A computer tablet with a recommended retail price of $749 is offered for sale in three different ways:

Method A	Method B	Method C
5% discount for cash	3% fee for a credit card payment	20% deposit and then $18.95 per month for 3 years

a Jai buys a tablet for cash. How much does he pay?
b Thalia buys a tablet using her mother's credit card. How much more does Tahlia pay for her tablet compared to Jai?
c Georgia chooses to pay for her tablet using method C.
  i Calculate the deposit Georgia must pay.
  ii What is the final cost of purchasing the tablet on terms?
  iii How much interest does Georgia pay on her purchase?
  iv What percentage of the recommended retail price is Georgia's interest? Round your answer to two decimal places.

Algebra and indices

Multiple-choice questions

1 The expanded and simplified form of $4(2x - 3) - 4$ is:
A $8x - 7$ **B** $6x - 11$ **C** $8x - 16$ **D** $8x - 8$ **E** $6x - 7$

2 The fully factorised form of $4x^2 + 12x$ is:
A $4(x^2 + 3x)$ **B** $4x(x + 12)$ **C** $4(x^2 + 12x)$ **D** $4x(x + 3)$ **E** $2x(x + 6)$

3 $\frac{5(x-2)}{3} \times \frac{12}{x-2}$ simplifies to:
A 20 **B** -6 **C** $\frac{20}{x}$ **D** $16(x - 2)$ **E** $\frac{(x-2)}{6}$

4 Using index laws, $\frac{3x^2y \times 2x^3y^2}{xy^3}$ simplifies to:
A $\frac{5x^5}{y}$ **B** $6x^5$ **C** $\frac{6x^2}{y}$ **D** $6x^4$ **E** $\frac{6x^4}{y}$

5 $(a^3)^4b^{-2}$ expressed with positive indices is:
A $\frac{a^7}{b^2}$ **B** $\frac{a^{12}}{b^2}$ **C** $\frac{1}{a^7b^2}$ **D** $\frac{a^{12}}{b^{-2}}$ **E** a^7b^2

Short-answer questions

1 Simplify the following.
a $2xy + 7x + 5xy - 3x$ **b** $-3a \times 7b$ **c** $\frac{4a^2b}{8ab}$

2 **a** Expand and simplify the following.
i $-4(x - 3)$ **ii** $3x(5x + 2)$ **iii** $4(2x + 1) + 5(x - 2)$
b Factorise the following.
i $18 - 6b$ **ii** $3x^2 + 6x$ **iii** $-8xy - 12y$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 Simplify these algebraic fractions.

a $\frac{6x+18}{6}$ **b** $\frac{3(x-1)}{8x} \div \frac{x-1}{2x}$ **c** $\frac{x}{2}+\frac{2x}{5}$ **d** $\frac{x}{4}-\frac{3}{8}$

4 Use index laws to simplify the following. Express with positive indices.

a $2x^2 \times 5x^4$ **b** $\frac{12x^3y^2}{3xy^5}$ **c** $(2m^4)^3$ **d** $3x^0+(4x)^0$

e $\left(\frac{3a}{b^4}\right)^2$ **f** $3a^{-5}b^2$ **g** $\frac{4}{t^{-5}}$ **h** $\frac{4x^5y^3 \times 5x^{-2}y}{10x^7y^2}$

5 **a** Write the following as basic numerals.

i 4.73×10^5 **ii** 5.21×10^{-3}

b Convert these to scientific notation, using three significant figures.

i 0.000027561 **ii** 8 707 332

Extended-response question

Julie invests $3000 at an interest rate of 6% per year, compounded.

a Write a rule for the amount of money, $\$A$, in her account after n years.

b How much will be in her account, correct to two decimal places, in:

i 2 years' time?

ii 6 years' time?

c Use trial and error to determine how long it will take her to double her initial investment. Answer to one decimal place.

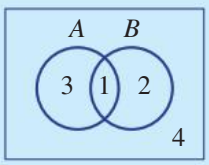
Probability

Multiple-choice questions

1 A letter is chosen from the word PROBABILITY. What is the probability that it will not be a vowel?

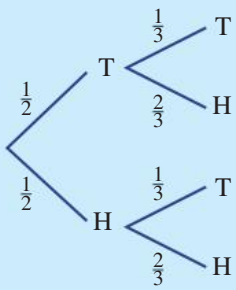
A $\frac{3}{11}$ **B** $\frac{4}{11}$ **C** $\frac{7}{11}$ **D** $\frac{1}{2}$ **E** $\frac{8}{11}$

2 For this Venn diagram, $\Pr(A \cup B)$ is equal to:



A 1 **B** $\frac{1}{6}$ **C** $\frac{1}{10}$ **D** $\frac{3}{10}$ **E** $\frac{3}{5}$

3 For this tree diagram, what is the probability of the outcome (T, H)?



A $\frac{1}{3}$ **B** $\frac{1}{6}$ **C** $\frac{1}{2}$ **D** $\frac{1}{4}$ **E** $\frac{2}{3}$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 The number of faults in a computer network over a period of 10 days is recorded in this table.

Number of faults	0	1	2	3
Frequency	1	5	3	1

An estimate for the probability that on the next day there would be at least two errors is:

A $\frac{3}{10}$ **B** $\frac{1}{5}$ **C** $\frac{4}{5}$ **D** $\frac{2}{5}$ **E** $\frac{1}{10}$

5 Two events are mutually exclusive when:

A $\Pr(A) = 0$ **B** $\Pr(A \cap B) = 0$ **C** $\Pr(A \cup B) = 0$
D $\Pr(A|B) = \Pr(A)$ **E** $\Pr(A \cap B) = \Pr(A) \times \Pr(B)$

Short-answer questions

1 A keen birdwatcher records the number of different species of birds in her backyard over a 20-day period.

Number of species	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Frequency	0	2	3	8	4	2	1

From these results, estimate the probability that on the next day the birdwatcher will observe the following number of species.

a 3 **b** 2 or 3
c fewer than 5 **d** at least 2

2 Of 25 students, 18 are wearing jackets, 14 are wearing hats and 10 are wearing both jackets and hats.

a Represent this information in a Venn diagram.
b Represent this information in a two-way table.
c How many students are wearing neither a hat nor a jacket?
d If a student is chosen randomly from the group, find the probability that the student will be wearing:
  i a hat and not a jacket
  ii a hat or a jacket
  iii a hat and a jacket
  iv a hat, given that they are wearing a jacket

3 Two 6-sided dice are rolled and the total is recorded.

a Complete the table to find the total number of outcomes.
b Find:
  i Pr(5) **ii** Pr(7)
  iii Pr(at least 7) **iv** Pr(at most 4)

Die 2 \ Die 1	1	2	3	4	5	6
1	2	3	4			
2	3	4				
3						
4						
5						
6						

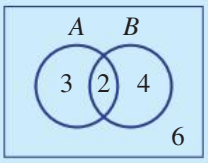
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 Two people are chosen without replacement from a group of 2 males and 4 females. Use a tree diagram to help find the probability of selecting:

- **a** 2 males
- **b** 1 male and 1 female
- **c** at least 1 female

5 For each diagram, find $\Pr(A)$ and $\Pr(A \mid B)$ and then decide if events A and B are independent.

a



b

	A	A'	
B	3	2	5
B'	2	1	3
	5	3	8

Extended-response question

A hot dog stall produces two types of hot dogs: traditional (T) at \$4 each and Aussie (A) at \$5 each. Gareth randomly selects two hot dogs.

- **a** Complete this table to show the possible selections.
- **b** Find the probability of selecting:
  - **i** 2 Aussie hot dogs
  - **ii** at least 1 Aussie hot dog

	T	A
T	(T, T)	
A		

- **c** Gareth has only \$8. What is the probability that he will be able to afford two hot dogs?

Statistics

Multiple-choice questions

1 The values of a and b in this frequency table are:

Colour	Frequency	Percentage frequency
Blue	4	16
Red	7	b
Green	a	12
White	6	24
Black	5	20
Total	25	

- **A** $a = 3, b = 28$
- **B** $a = 4, b = 28$
- **C** $a = 4, b = 19$
- **D** $a = 6, b = 20$
- **E** $a = 3, b = 30$

2 The mean, median and mode of the data set 3, 11, 11, 7, 1, 9 are:

- **A** mean = 7, median = 9, mode = 11
- **B** mean = 6, median = 9, mode = 11
- **C** mean = 7, median = 8, mode = 11
- **D** mean = 7, median = 11, mode = 8
- **E** mean = 8, median = 7, mode = 11

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 For the given stem-and-leaf plot, the range and median, respectively, of the data are:

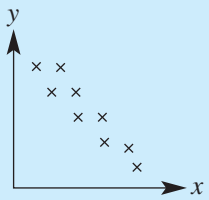
Stem	Leaf
0	2 2 6 7
1	0 1 2 3 5 8
2	3 3 5 7 9

1 | 5 means 15

A 20, 12.5 **B** 7, 12 **C** 27, 12.5
D 29.3 **E** 27, 13

4 The interquartile range (IQR) for the data set 2, 3, 3, 7, 8, 8, 10, 13, 15 is:
A 5 **B** 8.5 **C** 7 **D** 13 **E** 8

5 The best description of the correlation between the variables for the scatter plot shown is:



A weak negative
B strong positive
C strong negative
D weak positive
E no correlation

Short-answer questions

1 Twenty people were surveyed to find out how many days in the past completed month they used public transport. The results are as follows:
7, 16, 22, 23, 28, 12, 18, 4, 0, 5, 8, 19, 20, 22, 14, 9, 21, 24, 11, 10

a Organise the data into a frequency table with class intervals of 5 and include a percentage frequency column.

b Construct a histogram for the data, showing both the frequency and the percentage frequency on the one graph.

c **i** State the frequency of people who used public transport on 10 or more days.

ii State the percentage of people who used public transport on fewer than 15 days.

iii State the most common interval of days for which public transport was used. Can you think of a reason for this?

2 The data set shows the number of DVDs owned by students in a school class.
12 24 36 17 8 24 9 4 15 32 41 26 15 18 7

a Display this data using a stem-and-leaf plot.

b Describe the distribution of the data as symmetrical or skewed.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 For the data set 8, 10, 2, 17, 6, 30, 12, 7, 12, 15, 4:

a Order the data.

b Determine:

i the minimum and maximum values

ii the median

iii the lower quartile (Q_1) and the upper quartile (Q_3)

iv IQR ($= Q_3 - Q_1$)

v any outliers

c Draw a box plot of the data.

4 Farsan's bank balance over 12 months is recorded below.

Month	J	F	M	A	M	J	J	A	S	O	N	D
Balance ($)	1500	2100	2300	2500	2200	1500	1200	1600	2000	2200	1700	2000

a Plot the time series for the 12 months.

b Describe the way in which the bank balance has changed over the 12 months.

c Between which consecutive months did the biggest change in the bank balance occur?

d What is the overall change in the bank balance over the year?

Extended-response question

The heights of plants in a group of the same species after a month of watering with a set number of millimetres of water per day are recorded below.

Water (mL)	8	5	10	14	12	15	18
Height (cm)	25	27	34	40	35	38	45

a Draw a scatter plot for the data, using 'Water' for the x-axis.

b Describe the correlation between water and height as positive, negative or none.

c Fit a line of best fit by eye to the data on the scatter plot.

d Use your line of best fit to estimate:

i the height of a plant watered with 16 mL of water per day

ii the daily amount of water given to a plant of height 50 cm

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 6

Straight-line graphs

What you will learn

- 6A Interpretation of straight-line graphs (Consolidating)
- 6B Distance–time graphs
- 6C Plotting straight lines (Consolidating)
- 6D Midpoint and length of a line segment
- 6E Exploring gradient
- 6F Rates from graphs
- 6G $y = mx + c$ and special lines
- 6H Parallel and perpendicular lines
- 6I Sketching with x- and y-intercepts
- 6J Linear modelling ★
- 6K Direct and inverse proportion ★

Australian curriculum

STRAIGHT LINE GRAPHS

Solve problems involving linear equations, including those derived from formulas

Solve problems involving parallel and perpendicular lines **(ACMNA238)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

Expansion joints

Steel expands or cools in proportion to the temperature. An expansion joint is a gap made between two sections of a construction to stop any buckling under heat.

A linear equation such as $w = 6.5 - 0.06t$ can find the width, w cm, of a bridge expansion joint at temperature t °C. This equation shows a gap of 6.5 cm at 0°C and decreasing by 0.06 cm/°C increase.

For example, at $t = 20$, $w = 5.3$ and at $t = 35$, $w = 4.4$, showing the gap has decreased by 0.9 cm because the bridge has expanded by 0.9 cm.

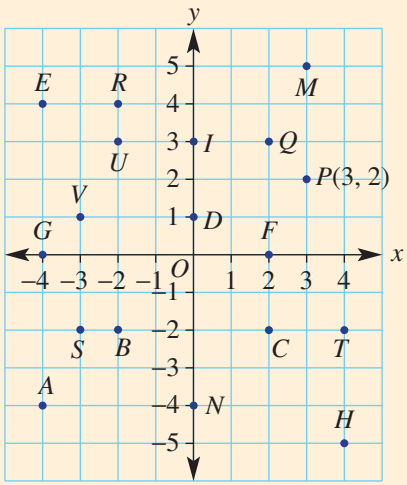
You may notice expansion joints in a concrete pathway, a road, between sections of a bridge or railway track, or in a pipe system.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Pre-test

1 The coordinates of P on this graph are $(3, 2)$.
Write down the coordinates of:

a M **b** T **c** A
d V **e** C **f** F



2 Name the point with coordinates:

a $(-4, 0)$ **b** $(0, 1)$ **c** $(-2, -2)$
d $(-3, -2)$ **e** $(0, -4)$ **f** $(2, 3)$

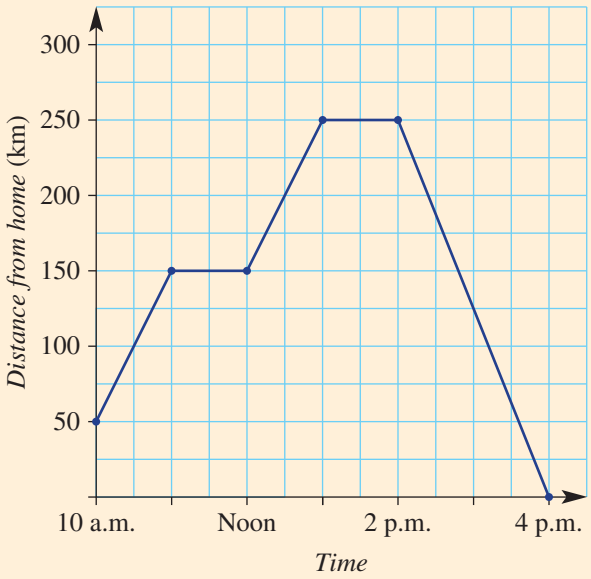
3 Draw up a four-quadrant number plane and plot the following points.
What shape do they form? (Choose from hexagon, rectangle, square, pentagon, equilateral triangle, isosceles triangle.)

a $(0, 0), (0, 5), (5, 5), (5, 0)$
b $(-3, -1), (-3, 1), (4, 0)$
c $(-2, 3), (-4, 1), (-2, -3), (2, -3), (4, 1), (2, 3)$

4 Find the mean (i.e. average) of the following pairs.

a 10 and 12 **b** 15 and 23 **c** 6 and 14 **d** 3 and 4
e −6 and 6 **f** −3 and 1 **g** 0 and 7 **h** −8 and −10

5 **a** For how many minutes did the Heart family stop on their trip, according to their journey shown in this travel graph?

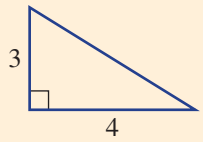


b How far had the Heart family travelled by 1 p.m., after starting at 10 a.m.?
c What was their speed in the first hour of travel?

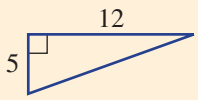
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6 Find the length of the hypotenuse in each right-angled triangle. Use $a^2 + b^2 = c^2$. Round your answers to two decimal places in parts **e** and **f**.

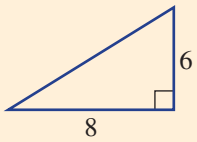
a



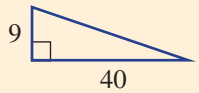
b



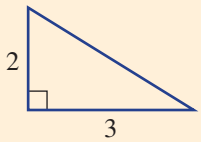
c



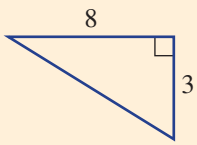
d



e



f



7 Copy and complete the table of values for each rule given.

a $y = x + 3$

x	0	1	2	3
y				

b $y = x - 2$

x	0	1	2	3
y				

c $y = 2x$

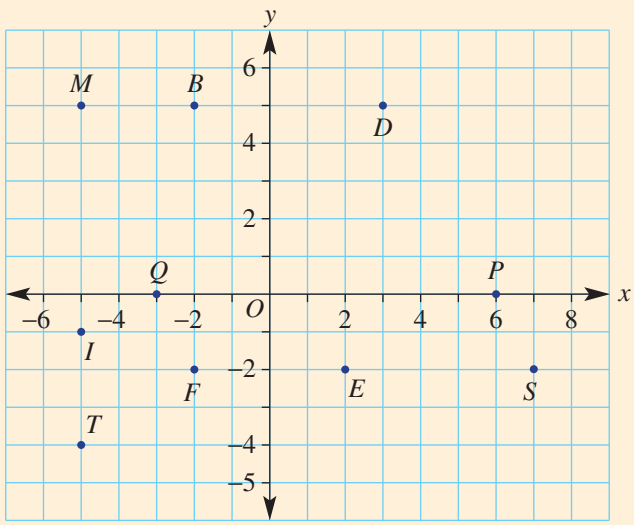
x	0	1	2
y			

d $y = 4 - x$

x	−2	−1	0
y			

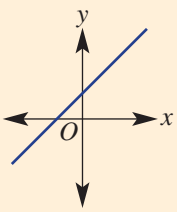
8 Use the graph to find the following distances.

a OP
b QP
c MB
d FS
e BD
f TM

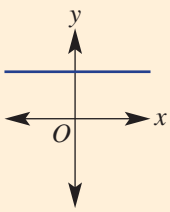


9 Select a word (i.e. positive, negative, zero or undefined) to describe the gradient (slope) of the following lines.

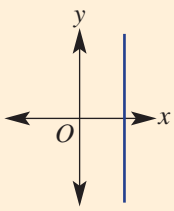
a



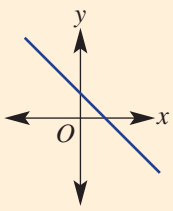
b



c



d



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6A Interpretation of straight-line graphs

CONSOLIDATING

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

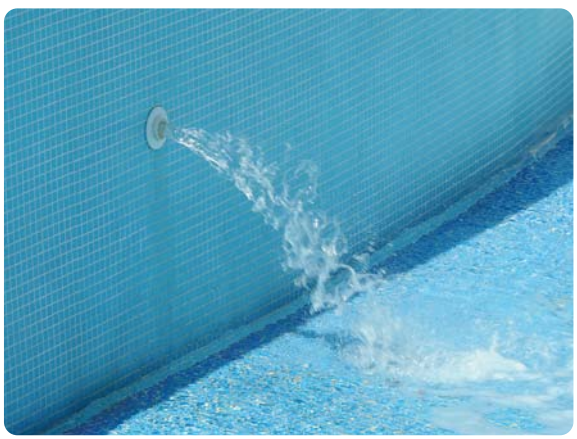
When two variables are related, we can use mathematical rules to describe the relationship. The simplest kind of relationship forms a straight-line graph and the rule is called a linear equation.

Information can be easily read from within a linear graph – this is called interpolation. A straight line also can be extended to determine information outside of the original data – this is called extrapolation.

For example, if a swimming pool is filled at 1000 L per hour, the relationship between volume and time is linear because the volume is increasing at the constant rate of 1000 L/h.

$$\text{Volume} = 1000 \times \text{number of hours}$$

This rule is a linear equation and the graph of volume versus time will be a straight line.

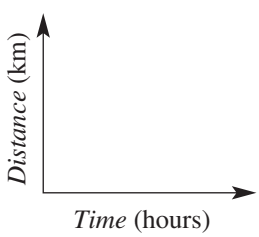


When a pool is filled with water at a constant rate, the graph of volume versus time will be a straight line.

Let's start: Graphing a straight-line

Jozef is an athlete who trains by running 24 km in 2 hours at a constant rate. Draw a straight-line graph to show this linear relation.

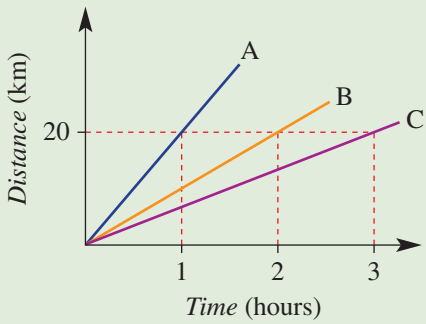
- Draw axes with time (up to 2 hours) on the horizontal axis and distance (up to 24 km) on the vertical axis.
- How far has Jozef run at zero hours? Mark this point on your graph.
- Mark the point on the graph that shows the end of Jozef's run.
- Join these two points with a straight line.
- Mark the point on the graph that shows Jozef's position after half an hour.
  How far had he run?
- Mark the point on the graph that shows Jozef's position after 18 km. For how long had Jozef been running?
- Name the variables shown on the graph.
- Discuss some advantages of showing information on a graph.

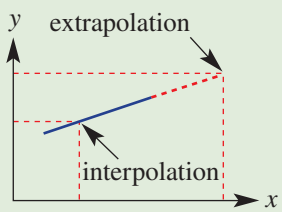


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

- A **variable** is an unknown that can take on many different values.
- When two variables have a **linear relationship** they can be represented as a straight-line graph.
  Information about one of the variables based on information about the other variable is easily determined by reading from the graph:
  - A: 20 km in 1 hour
  - B: 20 km in 2 hours
  - C: 20 km in 3 hours
- Information can be found from:
  - reading within a graph (**interpolation**) or
  - reading off an extended graph (**extrapolation**)





Variable An unknown, which can take on any value

Linear relationship The relationship between a variable and a constant term

Interpolation Reading information from within a graph

Extrapolation Determining information outside of the original data

Exercise 6A

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

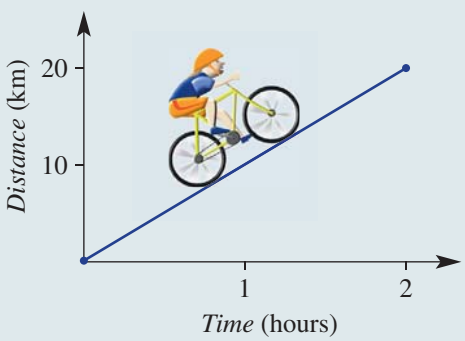
Example 1 Reading information from a graph

This graph shows the journey of a cyclist from one place (*A*) to another (*B*).

a How far did the cyclist travel?

b How long did it take the cyclist to complete the journey?

c If the cyclist were to ride from *A* to *B* and then halfway back to *A*, how far would the journey be?



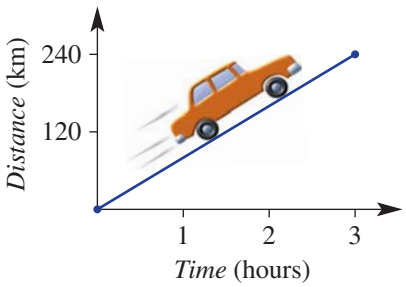
Solution	Explanation
a 20 km	Draw an imaginary line from the end point (*B*) to the vertical axis; i.e. 20 km.
b 2 hours	Draw an imaginary line from the end point (*B*) to the horizontal axis; i.e. 2 hours.
c $20 + 10 = 30$ km	Cyclist would ride 20 km out and 10 km back.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6A

1 This graph shows a car journey from one place (A) to another (B).

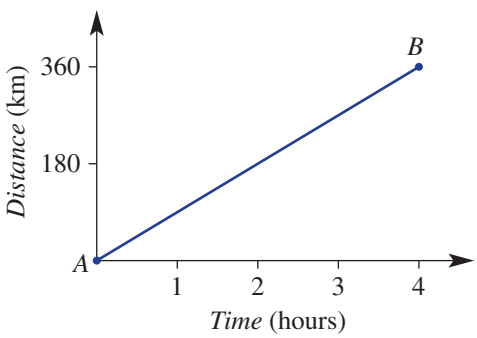
- **a** How far did the car travel?
- **b** How long did it take to complete the journey?
- **c** If the car were to be driven from A to B, then halfway back to A, how far would the journey be?



2 This graph shows a motorcycle journey from one place (A) to another (B).

- **a** How far did the motorcycle travel?
- **b** How long did it take to complete the journey?
- **c** If the motorcycle were to be driven from A to B, then halfway back to A, how far would the journey be?

To find the total time taken to go from A to B, look on the time scale that is aligned with the right end point.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 3–5 4–6

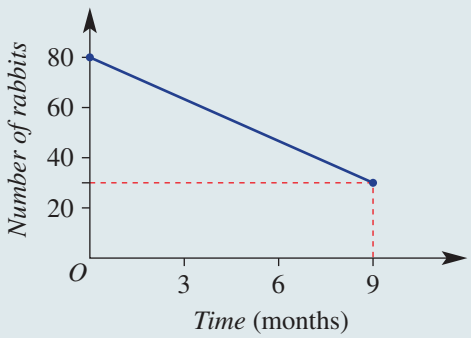
Example 2 Interpreting information from a graph

The number of rabbits in a colony has decreased according to this graph.

a How many rabbits were there in the colony to begin with?

b How many rabbits were there after 9 months?

c How many rabbits disappeared from the colony during the 9-month period?



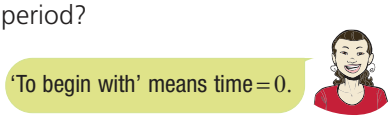
Solution	Explanation
a 80 rabbits	At $t = 0$ there were 80 rabbits.
b 30 rabbits	Read the number of rabbits from the graph at $t = 9$.
c $80 - 30 = 50$ rabbits	There were 80 rabbits at the start and 30 after 9 months.

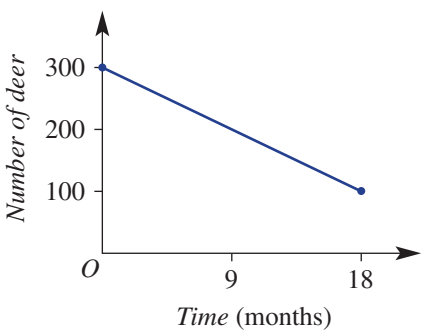
3 The number of deer in a particular forest has decreased over recent months according to the graph shown.

a How many deer were there to begin with?

b How many deer were there after 18 months?

c How many deer disappeared from the colony during the 18-month period?



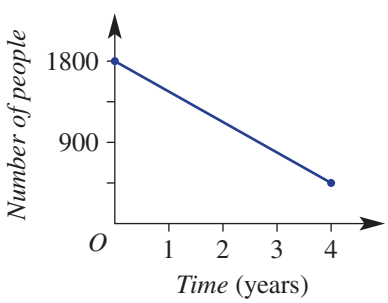


4 The number of people living in a small village has decreased over recent years according to the graph shown.

a How many people lived there to begin with?

b How many people lived there after 4 years?

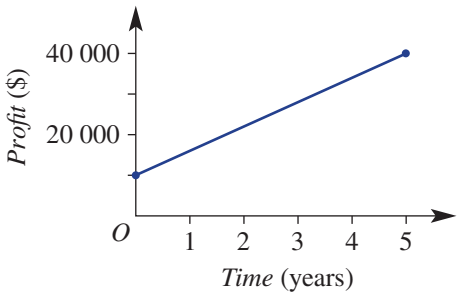
c How many people left the village during the 4-year period?



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

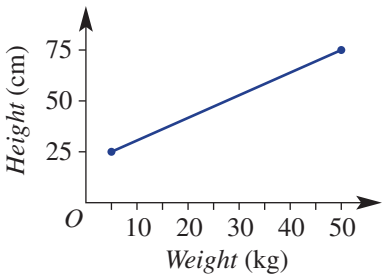
6A

5 This graph shows a company's profit result over a 5-month period.



- **a** What is the company's profit at:
  - **i** the beginning of the 5-month period?
  - **ii** the end of the 5-month period?
- **b** Has the profit increased or decreased over the 5-year period?
- **c** How much has the profit increased over the 5 years?

6 A height versus weight graph for a golden retriever dog breed is shown.



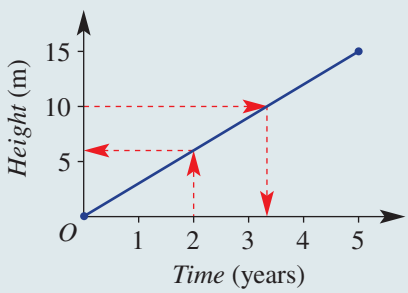
- **a** From the smallest to the largest dog, use the graph to find the total increase in:
  - **i** height
  - **ii** weight
- **b** Fill in the missing numbers.
  - **i** The largest weight is ___ times the smallest weight.
  - **ii** The largest height is ___ times the smallest height.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7–9 7, 9, 10

Example 3 Reading within a graph (interpolation)

This graph shows the growth of a tree over 5 years.

- **a** How many metres has the tree grown over the 5 years?
- **b** Use the graph to find how tall the tree is after 2 years.
- **c** Use the graph to find how long it took for the tree to grow to 10 metres.



Solution	Explanation
a 15 metres	The end point of the graph is at 15 metres.
b 6 metres	Draw a dotted line at 2 years and read the height.
c 3.3 years	Draw a dotted line at 10 metres and read the time.

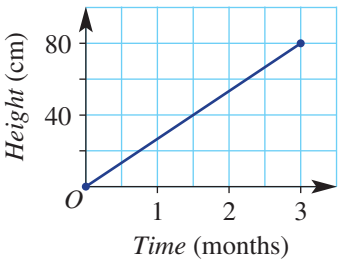
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

7 This graph shows the height of a tomato plant over 3 months.

a How many centimetres has the plant grown over 3 months?

b Use the graph to find how tall the tomato plant is after $1\frac{1}{2}$ months.

c Use the graph to find how long it took for the plant to grow to 60 centimetres.



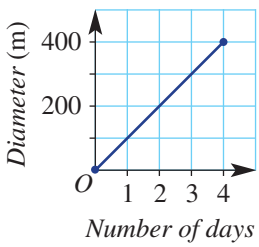
Start at 60 cm on the height axis, then go across to the straight line and down to the time axis. Read off the time.

8 The diameter of an oil slick increased every day after an oil tanker hit some rocks. Use the graph to answer the following.

a How wide is the oil slick after 4 days?

b How wide is the oil slick after 2.5 days?

c How many days does it take for the oil slick to reach a diameter of 350 m?



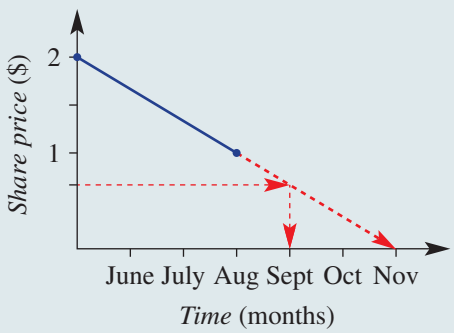
Example 4 Reading off an extended graph (extrapolation)

Due to poor performance, the value of a company's share price is falling.

a By the end of August, how much has the share price fallen?

b At the end of November what would you estimate the share price to be?

c Near the end of which month would you estimate the share price to be 70 cents?

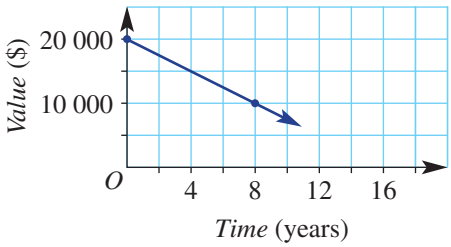


Solution	Explanation
a Price has dropped by $1.	By August the price has changed from $2 to $1.
b $0	Use a ruler to extend your graph (shown by the dotted line) and read the share price for November.
c September	Move across from 70 cents to the extended line and read the month.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6A

9 The value of a car decreases with time.



Use your ruler on the line to 'extend' it.

a By the end of 8 years, how much has the car's value fallen?

b At the end of 16 years, what would you estimate the car's value to be?

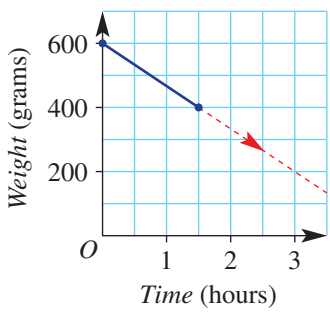
c Near the end of which year would you estimate the car's value to be $5000?

10 The weight of a wet sponge is reduced after it is left in the Sun to dry.

a The weight of the sponge has been reduced by how many grams over the first 1.5 hours?

b What would you estimate the weight of the sponge to be after 3 hours?

c How many hours would it take for the sponge to weigh 300 g?

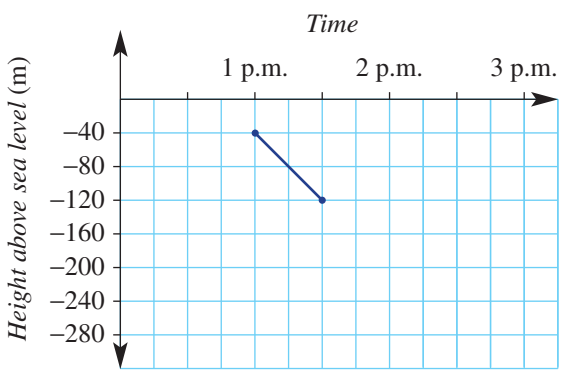


Submarine depth

—

11

11 A submarine goes to depths below sea level, as shown in this graph.



a How long does it take for the submarine to drop from 40 m to 120 m below sea level?

b At what time of day is the submarine at:

i −40 m? **ii** −80 m?

iii −60 m? **iv** −120 m?

c What is the submarine's depth at:

i 1:30 p.m.?

ii 1:15 p.m.?

d Extend the graph to find the submarine's depth at:

i 12:45 p.m. **ii** 1:45 p.m. **iii** 2:30 p.m.

e Use your extended graph to estimate the time when the submarine is at:

i 0 m **ii** −200 m **iii** −320 m

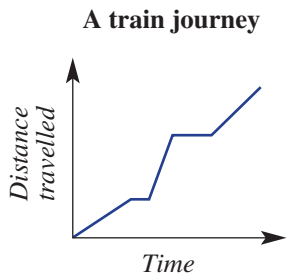
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6B Distance–time graphs

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

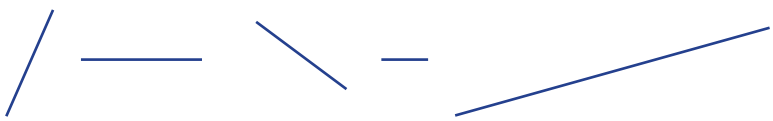
Some of the graphs considered in the previous section were distance–time graphs, which show the distance on the vertical axis and the time on the horizontal axis. Many important features of a journey can be displayed on such graphs. Each section of a journey that is at a constant rate of movement can be graphed with a straight-line segment. Several different line segments can make up a total journey.

For example, a train journey could be graphed with a series of sloping line segments that show travel between stations and flat line segments that show when the train is stopped at a station.



Let's start: An imaginary journey

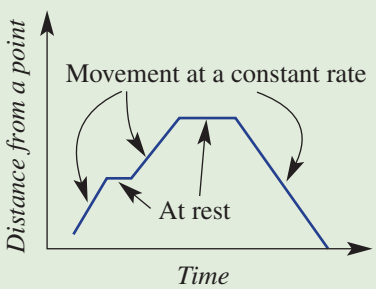
Here are five line segments.



- Use five similar line segments, arranged in any order you choose, and draw a distance–time graph. Each segment must be joined to the one next to it.
- Write a summary of the journey shown by your distance–time graph.
- Swap graphs with a classmate and explain the journey that you think your classmate's graph is showing.

Key ideas

- Graphs of *distance* versus *time* usually consist of **line segments**.
- Each segment shows whether the object is moving or at rest.
- To draw a graph of a journey, use time on the horizontal axis and distance on the vertical axis.



Line segment
A section of a straight line

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 6B

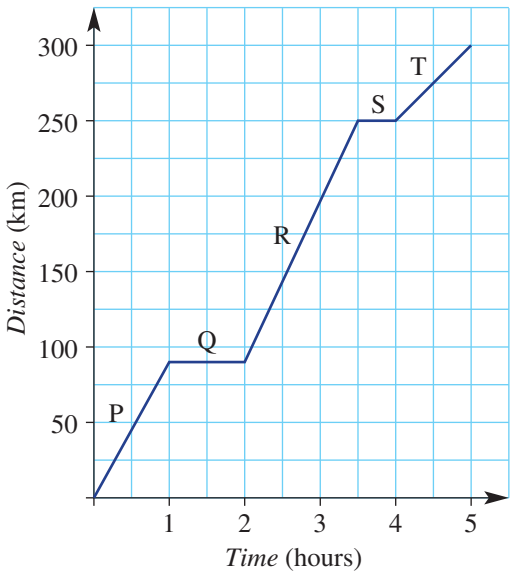
UNDERSTANDING 1 1

1 The Martino family makes a 300-km car journey, which takes 5 hours. The distance–time graph of this journey is shown. For each description below, choose the line segment of the graph that matches it. Some segments will have more than one descriptor.

- **a** A half-hour rest break is taken after travelling 250 km.
- **b** In the first hour, the car travels 90 km.
- **c** The car is at rest for 1 hour, 90 km from the start.
- **d** The car takes 1.5 hours to travel from 90 km to 250 km.
- **e** The distance from 250 km to 350 km takes 1 hour.
- **f** The distance travelled stays constant at 250 km for half an hour.

A flat line segment shows that the car has stopped.

Distance–time graph of car journey

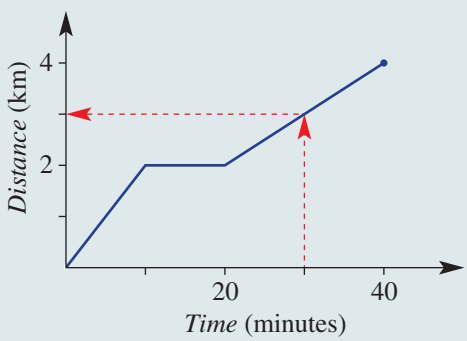


FLUENCY 2, 3, 5 2, 4, 6

Example 5 Interpreting a distance–time graph

This distance–time graph shows a car's journey from home, to school and then to the local shopping centre.

- **a** What is the total distance travelled?
- **b** How long is the car resting while at the school?
- **c** What is the total distance travelled after 30 minutes?



Solution	Explanation
a 4 km	Read the distance from the end point of the graph.
b 10 minutes	The rest starts at 10 minutes and finishes at 20 minutes.
c 3 km	Draw a line from 30 minutes and read off the distance.

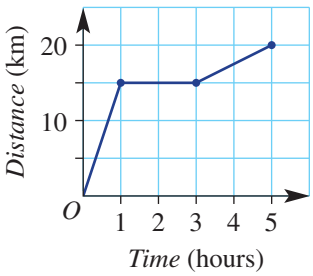
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

2 A bicycle journey is shown on this distance–time graph.

a What is the total distance travelled?

b How long is the cyclist at rest?

c How far has the cyclist travelled after 4 hours?



From the end of the line, go across to the distance scale. This will show the total distance travelled.

3 The weight of a water container increases while water is poured into it from a tap.

a What is the total weight of the container after:

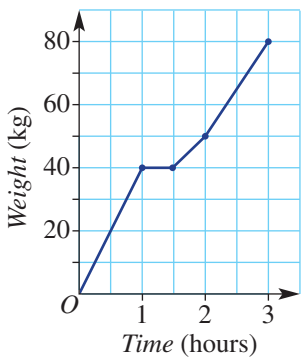
i 1 hour?

ii 2 hours?

iii 3 hours?

b During the 3 hours, how long is the container not actually being filled with water?

c During which hour is the container filling the fastest?



A flat line segment shows that the weight is not changing, so no water is being poured in at that time.

4 This graph shows a shopper's short walk in a shopping mall.

a What is the total distance the shopper travelled?

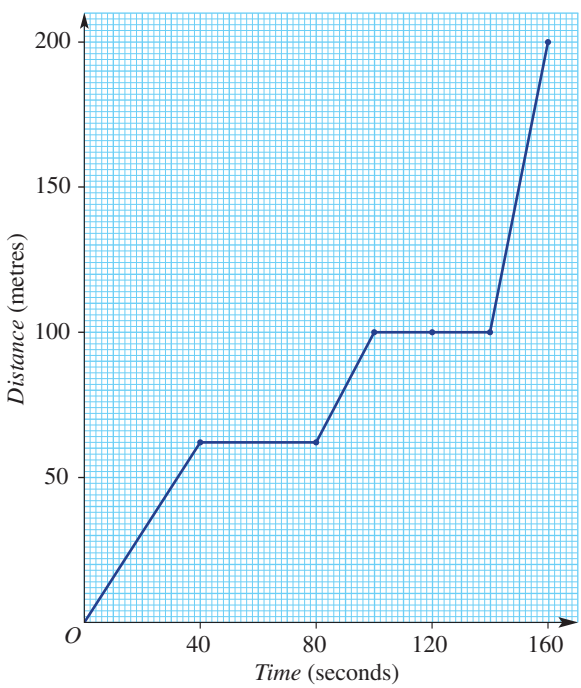
b How long was the shopper not walking?

c What was the total distance the shopper travelled by the following times?

i 20 seconds

ii 80 seconds

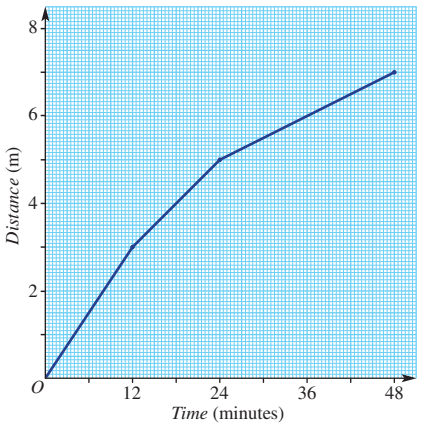
iii 2.5 minutes



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6B

5 A snail makes its way across a footpath, garden bed and lawn according to this graph.



a How far does the snail travel on:
i the footpath? **ii** the garden bed? **iii** the lawn?

b On which surface does the snail spend the most time?

c Use your graph to find how far the snail travelled after:
i 6 minutes **ii** 18 minutes **iii** 42 minutes

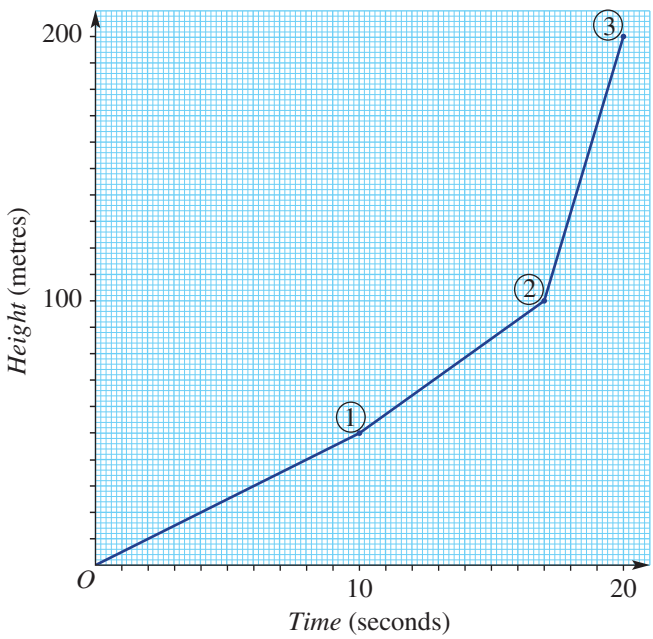
The line segment that has the largest horizontal change is the surface that the snail spent most time on.

6 The distance travelled during three phases of a rocket launch are shown on this graph.

a How long does it take for the rocket to get to:
i 50 m?
ii 100 m?
iii 200 m?

b During which of the three phases does the rocket gain the most height in the shortest time?

c Use your graph to find the height of the rocket after:
i 8 seconds
ii 15 seconds
iii 19 seconds



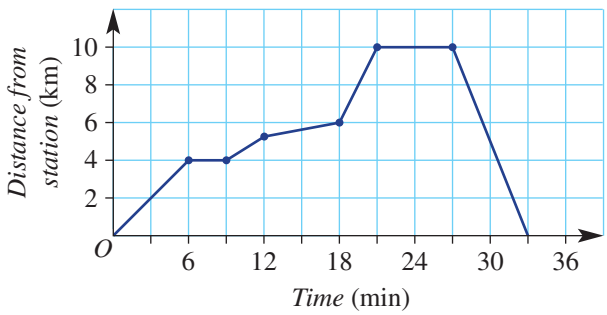
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7–9 9–12

7 This graph shows the distance of a train from the city station over a period of time.

Remember to include the return trip in the total distance travelled.

- **a** What is the farthest distance the train travelled from the station?
- **b** What is the total distance travelled?
- **c** After how many minutes does the train begin to return to the station?
- **d** What is the total number of minutes the train was at rest?

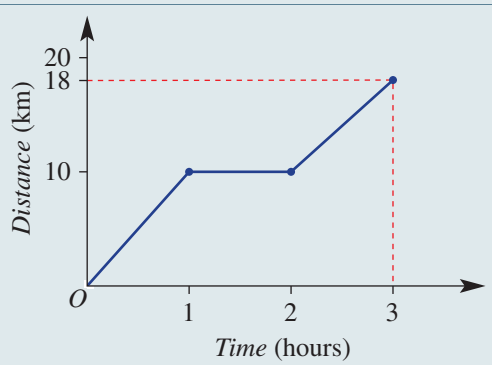


Example 6 Sketching a distance–time graph

Sketch a distance–time graph displaying all of the following information.

- total distance covered is 18 km in 3 hours
- 10 km covered in the first hour
- a 1-hour long rest after the first hour

Solution



Explanation

Draw axes with time on the horizontal (up to 3 hours) and distance on the vertical (up to 18 km).

Start at time zero.

Draw the first hour with 10 km covered.

Draw the rest stop, which lasts for 1 hour.

Draw the remainder of the journey, so that 18 km is completed after 3 hours.

8 Sketch a distance–time graph displaying all of the following information.

- total distance covered is 100 km in 2 hours
- 50 km covered in the first hour
- a half-hour rest stop after the first hour

Draw axes with time on the horizontal (up to 2 hours) and distance on the vertical (up to 100 km).

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6B

9 Sketch a graph to illustrate a journey described by the following.
- total distance covered is 15 metres in 40 seconds
- 10 metres covered in the first 10 seconds
- a 25-second rest after the first 10 seconds

Always use a ruler to draw line segments.

10 A bus travels 5 km in 6 minutes, stops for 2 minutes, travels 10 km in 8 minutes, stops for another 2 minutes and then completes the journey by travelling 5 km in 4 minutes.

Find the total time taken to determine the scale for the horizontal axis. Find the total distance travelled to determine the scale for the vertical axis.

a What is the total distance travelled?

b What is the total time taken?

c Sketch a distance–time graph for the journey.

11 A 1-day, 20 km bush hike included the following features.
- a 3-hour hike to waterfalls (10 km distance)
- a half-hour rest at the falls
- a 2-hour hike to the mountain peak (5 km distance)
- a $1\frac{1}{2}$-hour hike to the camp site

Sketch a distance–time graph for the journey.

12 For each of the following journeys:

i Draw a distance–time graph.

ii Decide the total travel time, not including rest stops.

a
- 20 km in 1 hour
- a half-hour rest
- 10 km in $\frac{3}{4}$ hours
- 15 km in $1\frac{1}{2}$ hours

b
- 4 m in 3 seconds
- 2-second rest
- 10 m in 5 seconds
- 3-second rest
- 12 m in 10 seconds

Pigeon flight

— 13

13 The distance travelled by a pigeon is described by these points.
- a half-hour flight, covering a distance of 18 km
- a 15-minute rest
- a 15-minute flight, covering 12 km
- a half-hour rest
- turning and flying 10 km back towards 'home' over the next half hour
- a rest for a quarter of an hour
- reaching 'home' after another 45-minute flight

a Sketch a graph illustrating the points above using *Distance* on the vertical axis.

b What is the fastest speed (in km/h) that the pigeon flew? $\left(\text{Speed} = \frac{\text{distance}}{\text{time}}\right)$

c Determine the pigeon's average speed, in km/h. $\left(\text{Average speed} = \frac{\text{total distance}}{\text{total flying time}}\right)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6C Plotting straight lines

CONSOLIDATING

On a number plane, a pair of coordinates gives the exact position of a point. The number plane extends both a horizontal axis (x) and vertical axis (y) to include negative numbers. The point where these axes cross over is called the origin (O). It provides a reference point for all other points on the plane.

A rule that relates two variables can be used to generate a table that shows coordinate pairs (x, y). The coordinates can be plotted to form the graph. Rules that give straight-line graphs are described as being linear.

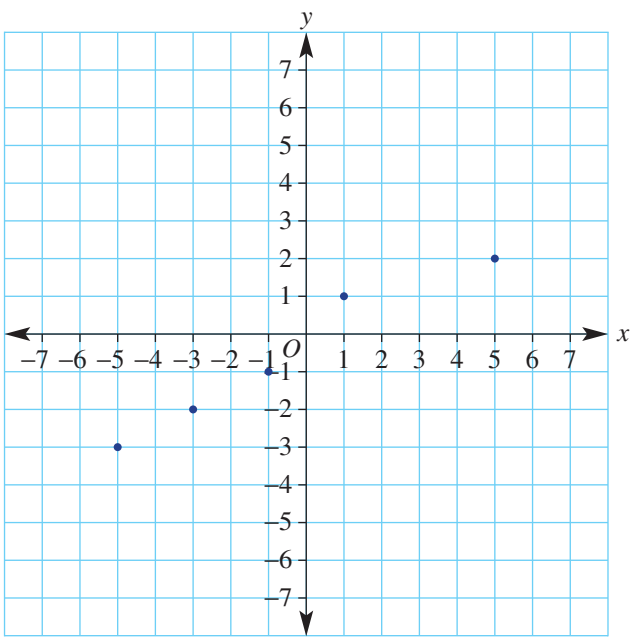
Architects apply their knowledge of two-dimensional straight lines and geometric shapes to form interesting three-dimensional surfaces. Computers use line equations to produce visual models.

Let's start: What's the error?

- Which point is not in line with the rest of the points on this graph? What should its coordinates be so it is in line? List two other points that would be in line with the points on this graph.
- This table shows coordinates for the rule $y = 4x + 3$. Which y value has been calculated incorrectly in the table? What would be the correct y value?

x	0	1	2	3	4
y	3	7	11	12	19

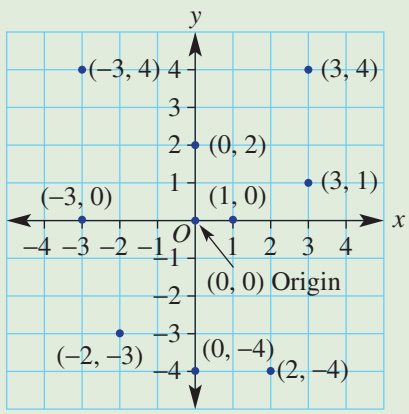
- Which two points in the list below will not be in the same line as the other points?
  $(-2, 4), (-1, 2), (0, 0), (1, -2), (2, 4), (3, 6)$
  What would be the correct coordinates for these two points, using the given x values?
- Points that follow a linear rule will always be in a straight line. Discuss some ways of checking whether the coordinates of a point have been calculated incorrectly.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

- A **number plane** or **Cartesian plane** includes a vertical y-axis and a horizontal x-axis intersecting at right angles.



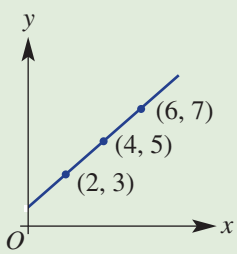
x-coordinate The first coordinate of an ordered pair

y-coordinate The second coordinate of an ordered pair

Point of intersection The point at which two lines cross each other and therefore have the same coordinates

- A point on a number plane has **coordinates** (x, y).
  - The x-coordinate is listed first, followed by the y-coordinate.
- The point $(0, 0)$ is called the origin (O).
- $(x, y) = \left(\begin{array}{c}\text{horizontal}\\ \text{units from}\\ \text{origin}\end{array}, \begin{array}{c}\text{vertical}\\ \text{units from}\\ \text{origin}\end{array}\right)$
- A rule is an equation connecting two or more variables.
- A straight-line graph will result from a rule that is linear.
- For two variables, a linear rule is often written with y as the subject. For example, $y = 2x - 3$ or $y = -x + 7$.
- To graph a linear relationship using a rule:
  - Construct a table of values finding a y-coordinate for each given x-coordinate. Substitute each x-coordinate into the rule.
  - Plot the points given in the table on a set of axes.
  - Draw a line through the points to complete the graph.

x	2	4	6
y	3	5	7



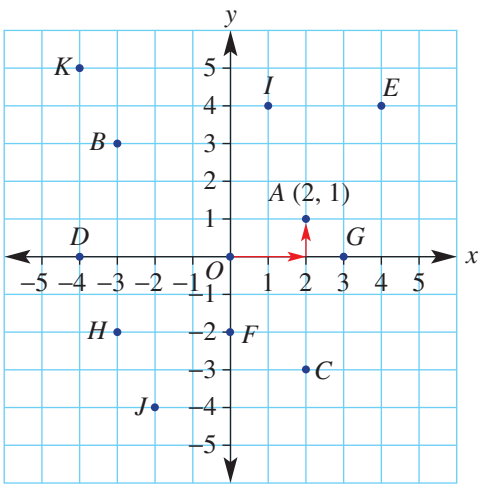
- The **point of intersection** of two lines is the point where the lines cross over each other.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Exercise 6C

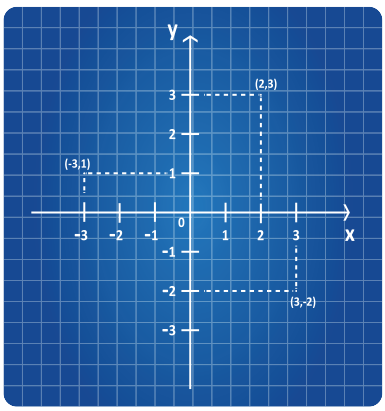
UNDERSTANDING 1–4 4

1 **a** List the coordinates of each point (A–L) plotted on the number plane below.
b Which points are on the x-axis?
c Which points are on the y-axis?
d What are the coordinates of the point called the 'origin'?



$(x, y) = \begin{pmatrix} \text{right} & \text{up} \\ \text{or} & \text{or} \\ \text{left} & \text{down} \end{pmatrix}$

The 'origin' is the point where the x-axis and y-axis meet.



2 Ethan is finding the coordinates of some points that are on the line $y = -2x + 4$.
Copy and complete these calculations, stating the coordinates for each point.

a $x = -3, y = -2 \times (-3) + 4 = 6 + 4 =$ $(-3,\ )$
b $x = -2, y = -2 \times (-2) + 4 =$ $=$ $(\ ,\ )$
c $x = -1, y = -2 \times (-1) + 4 =$ $=$ $(\ ,\ )$
d $x = 0, y = -2 \times 0 + 4 =$ $=$ $(\ ,\ )$
e $x = 1, y = -2 \times 1 + 4 =$ $=$ $(\ ,\ )$
f $x = 2, y = -2 \times 2 + 4 =$ $=$ $(\ ,\ )$
g $x = 3, y = -2 \times 3 + 4 =$ $=$ $(\ ,\ )$

In the order of operations, first do any multiplication, then do addition or subtraction from left to right.
When multiplying, same signs make a positive and different signs make a negative.

3 Write the coordinates for each point listed in this table.

x	−2	−1	0	1	2
y	1	−1	−3	−5	−7

Coordinates are written as (x, y).

x	−2
y	1

$\}$ $(-2, 1)$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

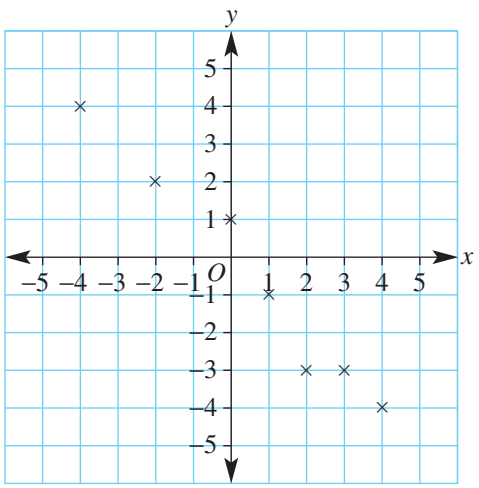
6C

4 Jenna has plotted these points for the rule $y = -x$ and she knows they should be all in a straight line.

a State the coordinates of any points that are not in line with most of the other points.

b Using the rule $y = -x$, calculate the correct coordinates for these two points, using the same x values.

Place your ruler along the plotted points. Any point not in a straight line needs to be re-calculated.



FLUENCY 5–6(½) 5–6(½), 7

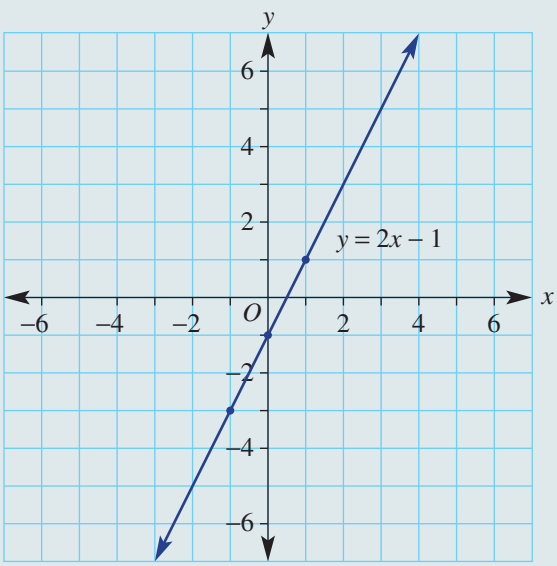
Example 7 Plotting a graph from a rule

Plot the graph of $y = 2x - 1$ by first completing the table of values.

x	−1	0	1
y			

Solution

x	−1	0	1
y	−3	−1	1



Explanation

Substitute each value into the equation:

$x = -1, y = 2 \times (-1) - 1 = -3 \quad (-1, -3)$

$x = 0, y = 2 \times 0 - 1 = -1 \quad (0, -1)$

$x = 1, y = 2 \times 1 - 1 = 1 \quad (1, 1)$

Plot the points and draw the line with a ruler.

When labelling axes, put the numbers on the grid lines, not in the spaces.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 Complete the following tables, then plot the graph of each one on a separate number plane.

a $y = 2x$

x	-1	0	1
y			

b $y = x + 4$

x	0	1	2
y			

c $y = 2x - 3$

x	0	1	2
y			

d $y = -2x$

x	-1	0	1
y			

e $y = x - 4$

x	1	2	3
y			

f $y = 6 - x$

x	0	1	2
y			

When multiplying, same signs make a positive; e.g. $-2 \times (-1) = 2$

6 Complete the following tables, then plot the graph of each pair on the same axes.

a i $y = x + 2$

x	0	2	4
y			

ii $y = -x + 2$

x	0	2	4
y			

b i $y = x - 4$

x	0	4	6
y			

ii $y = 4 - x$

x	0	1	2
y			

c i $y = 2 + 3x$

x	-3	0	3
y			

ii $y = 3x - 4$

x	-3	0	3
y			

For each part, draw line **i** and line **ii** on the same axes.

7 By plotting the graphs of each of the following pairs of lines on the same axes, find the coordinates of the point of intersection. Use a table of values, with x from -2 to 2.

a $y = 2x$ and $y = x$

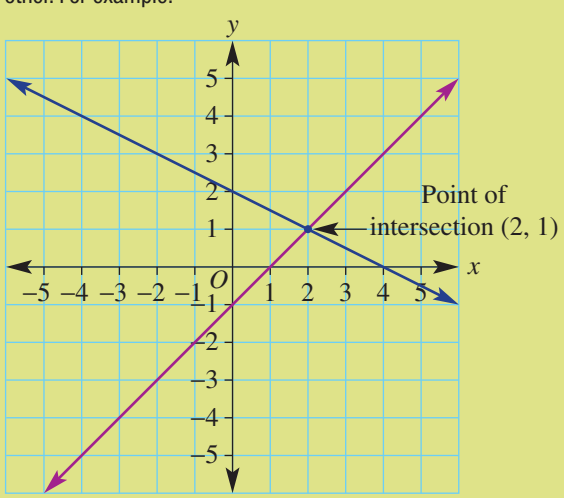
b $y = x + 3$ and $y = 2x + 2$

c $y = 2 - x$ and $y = 2x + 5$

d $y = 2 - x$ and $y = x + 2$

e $y = 2x - 3$ and $y = x - 4$

The point of intersection of two lines is where they cross each other. For example:



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6C

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 10 9, 11

Example 8 Interpreting a graph when given a table of values

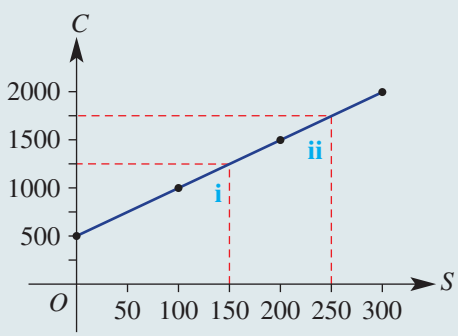
Jasmine is organising a school dance. The venue is chosen and the costs are shown in the table.

Number of students (S)	0	100	200	300
Total cost in dollars (C)	500	1000	1500	2000

a Plot a graph of the total cost against the number of students.
b Use the graph to determine:
- **i** the total cost for 150 students
- **ii** how many students could attend the dance if Jasmine has \$1750 to spend

Solution

a



Explanation

Construct a set of axes using S between 0 and 300 and C between 0 and 2000.

Number of students is placed on the horizontal axis.

Plot each point using the information in the table.

b i The total cost for 150 students is \$1250.

Draw a vertical dotted line at $S = 150$ to meet the graph, then draw another dotted line horizontally to the C-axis.

ii 250 students could attend the dance if the budget is \$1750.

Draw a horizontal dotted line at $C = 1750$ to meet the graph, then draw a dotted line vertically to the S-axis.

8 A furniture removalist charges per hour. His rates are shown in the table below.

No. of hours (n)	0	1	2	3	4	5
Cost (C)	200	240	280	320	360	400

a Plot a graph of cost against hours.
b Use the graph to determine:
- **i** the total cost for 2.5 hours of work
- **ii** the number of hours the removalist will work for \$380

Place 'Number of hours' on the horizontal axis.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9 Olive oil is sold in bulk for \$8 per litre.

No. of litres (L)	1	2	3	4	5
Cost (C)	8	16	24	32	40

a Plot a graph of cost against number of litres.

b Use the graph to determine:

i the total cost for 3.5 litres of oil

ii the number of litres of oil you can buy for \$20

Example 9 Constructing a table and graph for interpretation

An electrician charges \$50 for a service call and \$60 an hour for labour.

a Complete the table of values.

No. of hours (n)	1	2	3	4	5
Cost (C)					

b Plot a graph of cost against number of hours.

c Use the graph to determine:

i the cost for 4.5 hours of work

ii how long the electrician will work for \$260

Solution

a

No. of hours (n)	1	2	3	4	5
Cost (C)	110	170	230	290	350

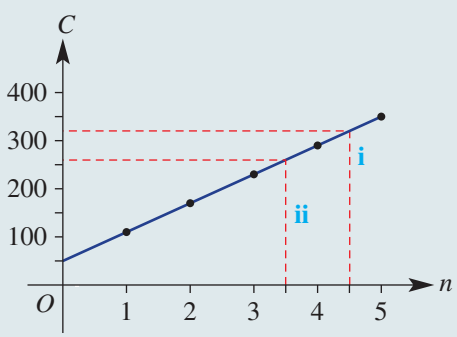
Explanation

Cost for 1 hour = \$50 + \$60 = \$110

Cost for 2 hours = \$50 + 2 × \$60 = \$170

Cost for 3 hours = \$50 + 3 × \$60 = \$230 etc.

b



Plot the points from the table using C on the vertical axis and n on the horizontal axis. Join all the points to form the straight line.

c **i** The cost is \$320.

Draw a vertical dotted line at $n = 4.5$ to meet the graph, then draw a line horizontally to the C-axis.

ii The electrician will work for 3.5 hours.

Draw a horizontal dotted line at $C = 260$ to meet the graph, then draw vertically to the n-axis.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6C

10 A car rental firm charges $200 plus $1 for each kilometre travelled.

a Complete the table of values below.

No. of km (k)	100	200	300	400	500
Cost (C)					

b Plot a graph of cost against kilometres.

c Use the graph to determine:

i the cost if you travel 250 km

ii how many kilometres you can travel on a budget of $650

11 Matthew delivers pizza for a fast-food outlet. He is paid $20 a shift plus $3 per delivery.

a Complete the table of values below.

No. of deliveries (d)	0	5	10	15	20
Pay (P)					

b Plot a graph of Matthew's pay against number of deliveries.

c Use the graph to determine:

i the amount of pay for 12 deliveries

ii the number of deliveries made if Matthew is paid $74

Which mechanic?

—12

12 Two mechanics charge different rates for their labour. Yuri charges $75 for a service call plus $50 per hour. Sherry charges $90 for a service call plus $40 per hour.

a Create a table for each mechanic for up to 5 hours of work.

b Plot a graph for the total charge against the number of hours worked for Yuri and Sherry, on the same axes.

c Use the graph to determine:

i the cost of hiring Yuri for 3.5 hours

ii the cost of hiring Sherry for 1.5 hours

iii the number of hours of work if Yuri charges $100

iv the number of hours of work if Sherry charges $260

v the number of hours of work if the cost from Yuri and Sherry is the same

d Write a sentence describing who is cheaper for different hours of work.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6D Midpoint and length of a line segment

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

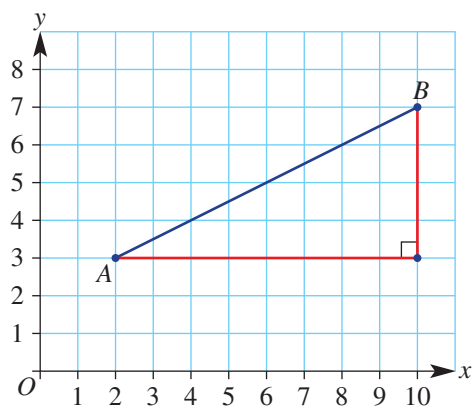
A line segment has a definite length and also has a point in the middle of the segment called the midpoint. Both the midpoint and length can be found by using the coordinates of the end points.

Builders use mathematical calculations to determine the length, midpoint and angle of inclination of wooden beams when constructing the timber frame of a house.

Let's start: Finding a method

This is a graph of the line segment AB. A right-angled triangle has been drawn so that AB is the hypotenuse.

- How many units long are the horizontal and vertical sides of this right-angled triangle?
- Discuss and explain a method for finding the length of the line segment AB.
- What is the x value of the middle point of the horizontal side of the right-angled triangle?
- What is the y value of the middle point of the vertical side of the right-angled triangle?
- What are the coordinates of the point in the middle of the line segment AB?
- Discuss and explain a method for finding the midpoint of a line segment.

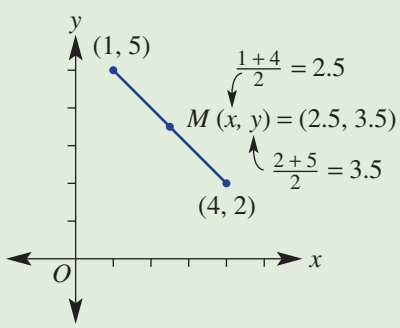


Key ideas

■ The **midpoint** (M) of a line segment is the halfway point between the two end points.

- We find the mean of the two x values at the end points and the mean of the two y values at the end points.
- $M = \left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$

Midpoint The point on an interval that is equidistant from the end points of the interval



- When finding the mean, add the values in the numerator before dividing by 2.

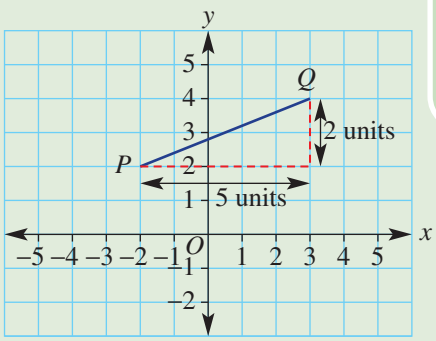
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

■ The length of a line segment is found using **Pythagoras' theorem**.
To find the length of the line segment PQ:

- Draw a right-angled triangle with the line segment PQ as the hypotenuse (i.e. longest side).
- Count the grid squares to find the length of each smaller side.
- Apply Pythagoras' theorem:

$$PQ^2 = 5^2 + 2^2$$
$$= 25 + 4$$
$$= 29$$
$$PQ = \sqrt{29} \text{ units}$$

- $\sqrt{29}$ is the length of line segment PQ, in square root form.

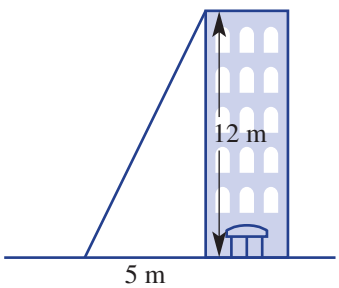


Pythagoras' theorem In a right-angled triangle, the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the other two sides

Exercise 6D

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Imagine that a firefighter's ladder is extended to the top of a 12 m building, with the foot of the ladder on the ground 5 m out from the base of the building.



a Name the theorem that can be used to find the length of the ladder.

b Apply this method and calculate the length of this ladder.

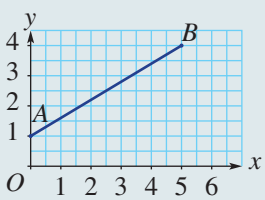
Firefighter Fred stands with his feet exactly halfway up the ladder.

c What height of the building is level with Fred's feet?

d How far out are Fred's feet from the building?

Example 10 Finding the length of a line segment from a graph

Find the length of the line segment between $A(0, 1)$ and $B(5, 4)$.



Solution

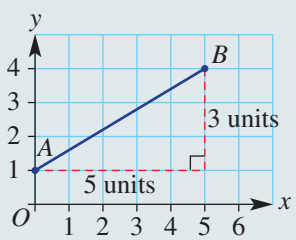
$AB^2 = 5^2 + 3^2$

$AB^2 = 25 + 9$

$AB^2 = 34$

$AB = \sqrt{34}$

Explanation

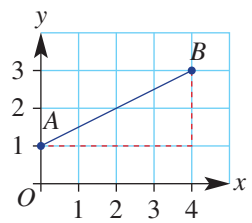


Create a right-angled triangle and use Pythagoras' theorem. For $AB^2 = 34$, take the square root of both sides to find AB. $\sqrt{34}$ is the exact answer.

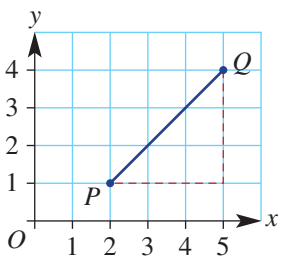
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

2 Find the length of each of the following line segments. Leave each answer in square root form.

a



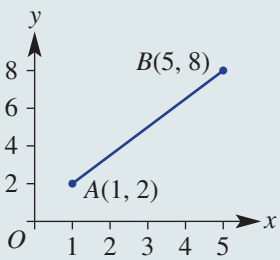
b



Count the 'spaces' to find the number of units for the horizontal and vertical sides.

Example 11 Finding the midpoint of a line segment from a graph

Find the midpoint of the interval between $A(1, 2)$ and $B(5, 8)$.



Solution

Average of x values $= \frac{1+5}{2}$

$= \frac{6}{2}$

$= 3$

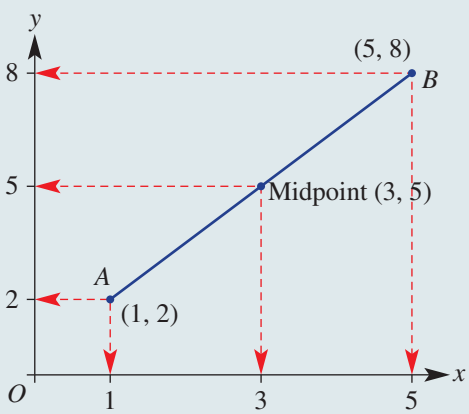
Average of y values $= \frac{2+8}{2}$

$= \frac{10}{2}$

$= 5$

Midpoint is $(3, 5)$.

Explanation

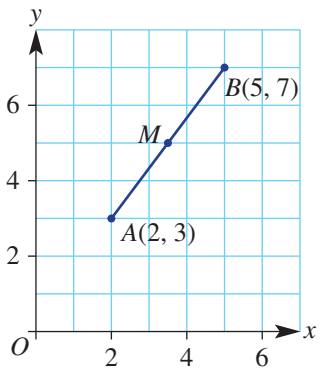


ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

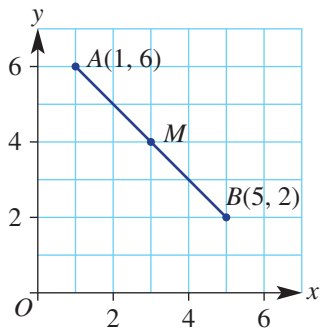
6D

3 Find the midpoint, M, of each of the following intervals.

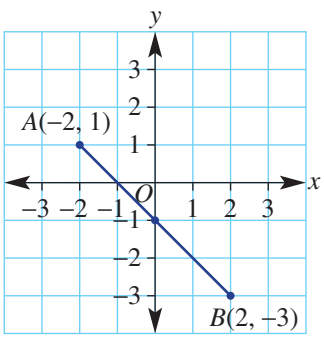
a



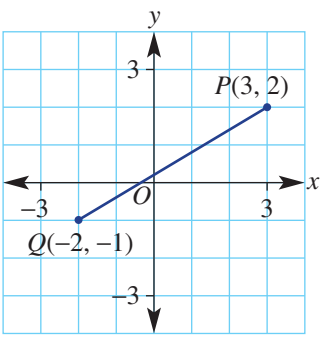
b



c



d

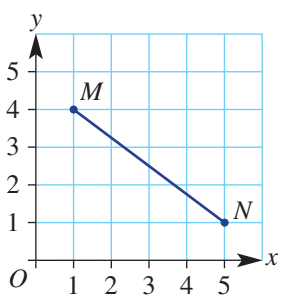


In finding the average, add the numerator values before dividing by 2.

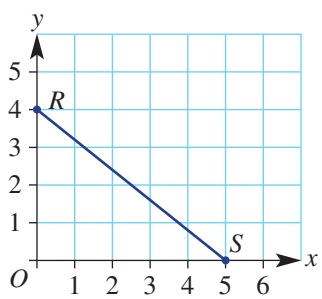
FLUENCY 4, 5, 6(½), 8(½) 4–8(½)

4 Find the length of each of the following line segments.

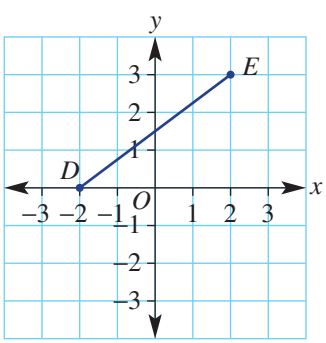
a



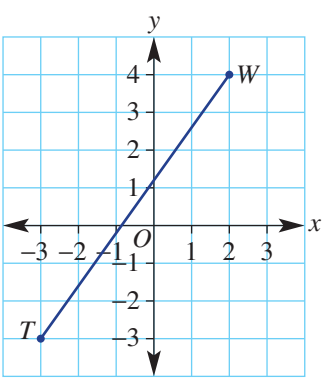
b



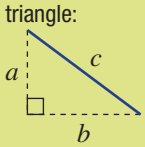
c



d



Use Pythagoras' theorem ($c^2 = a^2 + b^2$) by forming a right-angled triangle:



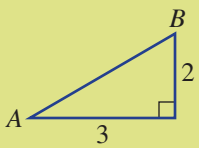
Write the answer in square root form if it is not a known square root.

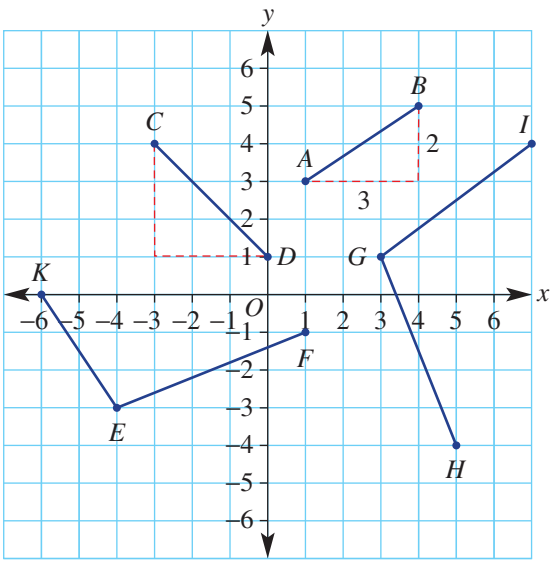
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

5 Find the length of each line segment on the following number plane. Leave your answers in square root form.

a AB **b** CD
c EF **d** GH
e KE **f** GI

First sketch a right-angled triangle for each line segment, labelling the known sides. For example:

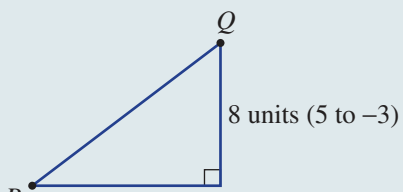




Example 12 Finding the length of a line segment when given the coordinates of the end points

Find the distance between the points P and Q if P is at $(-2, -3)$ and Q is at $(4, 5)$.

Solution



$PQ^2 = 6^2 + 8^2$

$PQ^2 = 36 + 64$

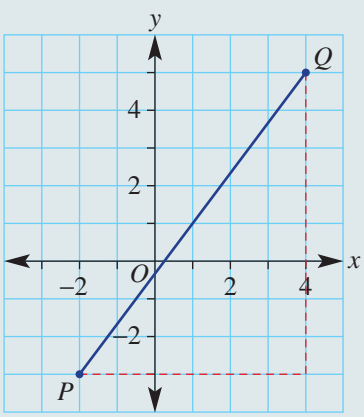
$PQ^2 = 100$

$PQ = \sqrt{100}$

$PQ = 10$ units

Explanation

Use Pythagoras' theorem to find PQ, the hypotenuse.



If you know the value of the square root, write its value.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6D

6 Plot each of the following pairs of points and find the distance between them, correct to one decimal place where necessary.

a $(2, 3)$ and $(5, 7)$
b $(0, 1)$ and $(6, 9)$
c $(0, 0)$ and $(-5, 10)$
d $(-4, -1)$ and $(0, -5)$
e $(-3, 0)$ and $(0, 4)$
f $(0, -1)$ and $(2, -4)$

First rule up your axes with x from -5 to 10 and y from -5 to 10.

7 Find the exact length between these pairs of points.

a $(1, 3)$ and $(2, 2)$
b $(4, 1)$ and $(7, 3)$
c $(-3, -1)$ and $(0, 4)$
d $(-2, -3)$ and $(3, 5)$
e $(-1, 0)$ and $(-6, 1)$
f $(1, -3)$ and $(4, -2)$

Exact length means leave the $\sqrt{}$ sign in the answers.

Example 13 Finding the midpoint of a line segment when given the coordinates of the end points

Find the midpoint of the line segment joining $P(-3, 1)$ and $Q(5, -4)$.

Solution	Explanation
$x = \frac{-3+5}{2}$	Average the x-coordinates.
$= \frac{2}{2}$	Calculate the numerator before dividing by 2; i.e. $-3+5=2$.
$= 1$	
$y = \frac{1+(-4)}{2}$	Average the y-coordinates.
$= \frac{-3}{2}$	Calculate the numerator before dividing by 2; i.e. $1+(-4)=1-4=-3$.
$= -1.5$	
Midpoint is $(1, -1.5)$.	Write the coordinates of the midpoint.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

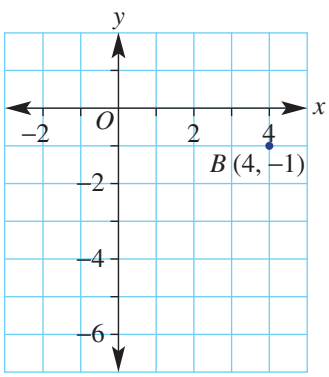
8 Find the midpoint of the line segment joining the following points.

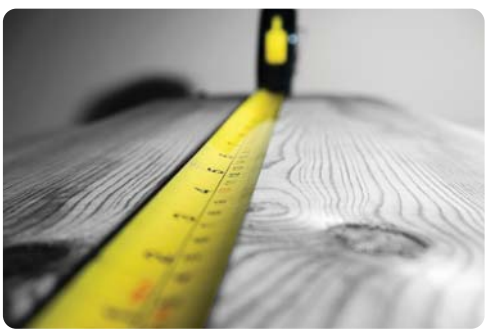
a $(1, 4)$ and $(3, 6)$
b $(3, 7)$ and $(5, 9)$
c $(0, 4)$ and $(6, 6)$
d $(2, 4)$ and $(3, 5)$
e $(7, 2)$ and $(5, 3)$
f $(1, 6)$ and $(4, 2)$
g $(0, 0)$ and $(-2, -4)$
h $(-2, -3)$ and $(-4, -5)$
i $(-3, -1)$ and $(-5, -5)$
j $(-3, -4)$ and $(5, 6)$
k $(0, -8)$ and $(-6, 0)$
l $(3, -4)$ and $(-3, 4)$

Check that your answer appears to be halfway between the endpoints.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9, 10 9–11

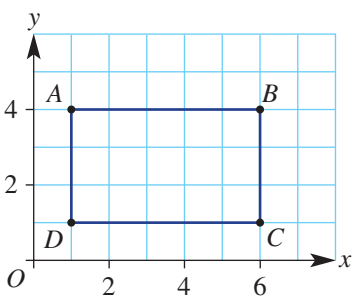
9 Copy the diagram on the right. Mark the point $B(4, -1)$, as shown, then mark the point $M(1, -3)$. Find the coordinates of A if M is the midpoint of the interval AB.





10 Copy the diagram of rectangle $ABCD$.

a What are the coordinates of each vertex?
b Find the midpoint of the diagonal AC.
c Find the midpoint of the diagonal BD.
d What does this tell us about the diagonals of a rectangle?



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6D

11 **a** Draw up a four-quadrant number plane like the one shown.

b Plot the points $A(-4, 0)$, $B(0, 3)$ and $C(0, -3)$ and form the triangle ABC.

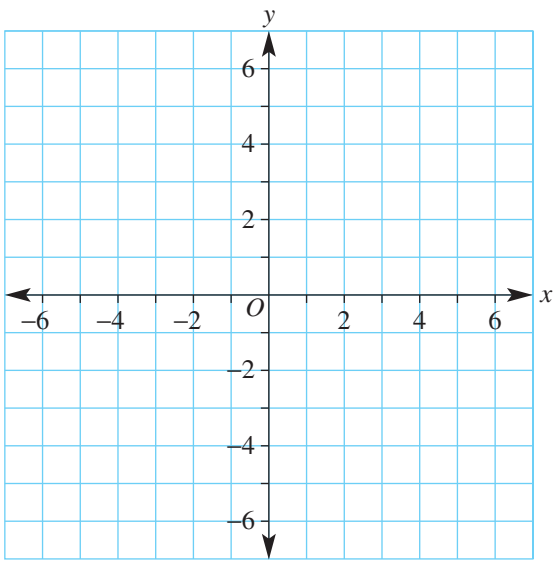
c What is the length of:

i AB? **ii** AC?

d What type of triangle is ABC?

e Calculate its perimeter and area.

f Write down the coordinates of D such that $ABDC$ is a rhombus.



A rhombus has all sides of equal length.

Features of a circle

12

12 The diameter of a circle is shown on this graph.

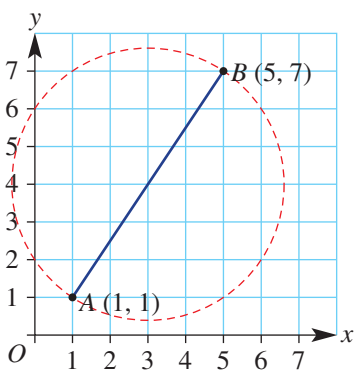
a What are the coordinates of X, the centre of the circle? Mark this point on your graph.

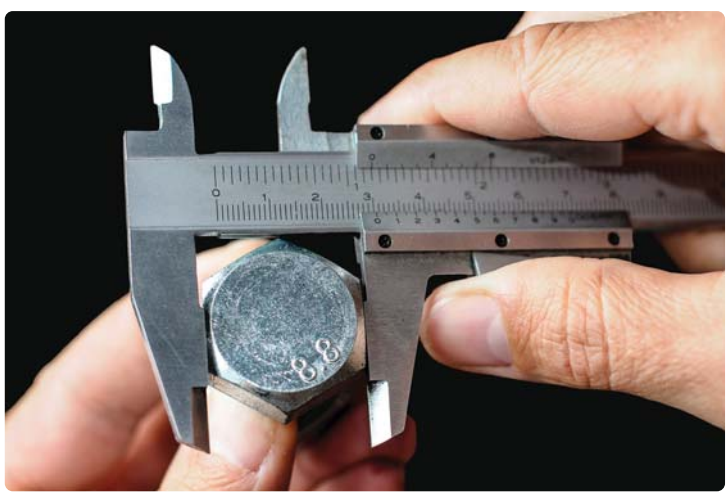
b What is the length of the radius XA?

c Find the distance from X to the point $(5, 1)$. How can we tell that $(5, 1)$ lies on the circle?

d Use $C = 2\pi r$ to find the circumference of the circle shown. Round your answer to one decimal place.

e Calculate the area of this circle using $A = \pi r^2$, correct to one decimal place.

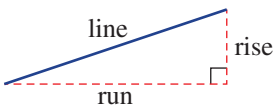




Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6E Exploring gradient

The gradient of a line is a measure of its slope. It is a number that shows the steepness of a line. It is calculated by knowing how far a line rises or falls (called the *rise*) within a certain horizontal distance (called the *run*). The gradient is equal to the *rise* divided by the *run*. The letter m is used to represent gradient.

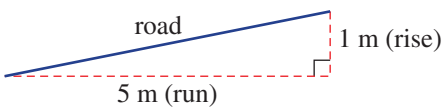


$$\text{Gradient of line} = m = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$$

Engineers apply their knowledge of gradients when designing roads, bridges, railway lines and buildings. Some mountain railways have a gradient greater than 1, which is a slope far too steep for a normal train or even a powerful car.

For example, this train takes tourists to the Matterhorn, a mountain in Switzerland. To cope with the very steep slopes it has an extra wheel with teeth, which grips a central notched line.

Let's start: What's the gradient?



A road that rises by 1 m for each 5 m of horizontal distance has a gradient of 0.2 or 20%. Trucks would find this gradient very steep.

The gradient is calculated by finding the rise divided by the run.

$$\text{Gradient} = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}} = \frac{1}{5} = 0.2 = 20\%$$

1 Find the gradient for each of these roads. Give the answer as a decimal and a perentage.

- **a** Baldwin Street, Dunedin, New Zealand is known as the steepest street in the world. For each 2.86 m of horizontal (run) distance, the road rises by 1 m.
- **b** Gower Street, Toowong, is Brisbane's steepest street. For each 3.2 m of horizontal (run) distance, the road rises by 1 m.

2 The Scenic Railway, Katoomba, NSW has a maximum gradient of 122% as it passes through a gorge in the cliff. What is its vertical distance (rise) for each 1 m of horizontal distance (run)?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Use computer software (dynamic geometry) to produce a set of axes and grid. Now:

- Construct a line segment with end points on the grid. Show the coordinates of the end points.
- Calculate the rise (i.e. vertical distance between the end points) and the run (i.e. horizontal distance between the end points).
- Calculate the gradient as the *rise* divided by the *run*.
- Now drag the end points and explore the effect on the gradient.
- Can you drag the end points but retain the same gradient value? Explain why this is possible.
- Can you drag the end points so that the gradient is zero or undefined? Describe how this can be achieved.

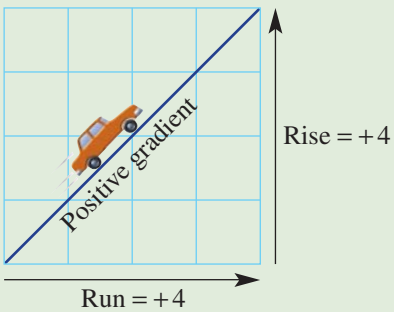
Key ideas

Gradient (*m*) The steepness of a slope

- **Gradient (m)** $= \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$

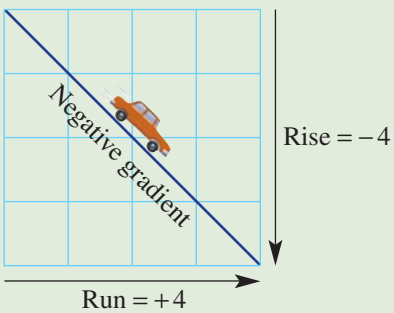
  Always move from left to right when considering the rise and the run.
  - The horizontal 'run' always goes to the right and is always positive. The vertical 'rise' can go up (positive) or down (negative).
  - If the line slopes up from left to right, the rise is positive and the gradient is positive.

    e.g. $m = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}} = \frac{+4}{+4} = 1$

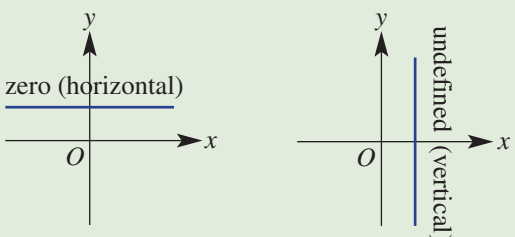


  - If the line slopes down from left to right, the rise is considered to be negative and the gradient is negative.

    e.g. $m = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}} = \frac{-4}{+4} = -1$



- The gradient can also be zero (when a line is horizontal) and undefined (when a line is vertical).



- Between two points (x_1, y_1) and (x_2, y_2), the gradient (m) is $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1} \frac{\text{(rise)}}{\text{(run)}}$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 6E

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 4

1 Use the words *positive*, *negative*, *zero* or *undefined* to complete each sentence.

a The gradient of a horizontal line is _____.

b The gradient of the line joining $(0, 3)$ and $(5, 0)$ is _____.

c The gradient of the line joining $(-6, 0)$ and $(1, 1)$ is _____.

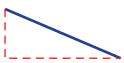
d The gradient of a vertical line is _____.

Lines going downhill from left to right have a negative gradient.

2 Decide whether each of the following lines would have a positive or negative gradient.

a

b



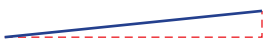
c

d

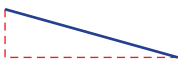
e

f

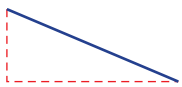
g



h



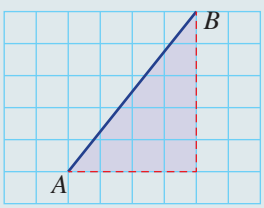
i



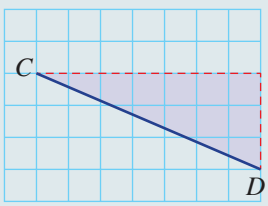
Example 14 Finding the gradient from a grid

Find the gradient of the following line segments, where each grid box equals 1 unit.

a



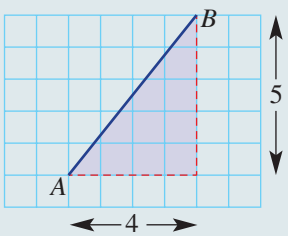
b



Solution | **Explanation**

a Gradient of $AB = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$

$= \frac{5}{4}$

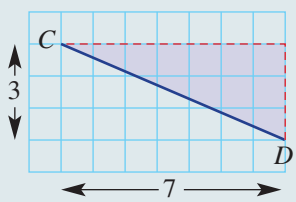


The slope is upwards, therefore the gradient is positive.
The rise is 5 and the run is 4.

b Gradient of $CD = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$

$= \frac{-3}{7}$

$= -\frac{3}{7}$



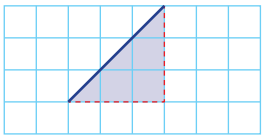
The slope is downwards, therefore the gradient is negative.
The fall is 3, so we write rise = −3, and the run is 7.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

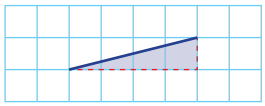
6E

3 Find the gradient of the following line segments.

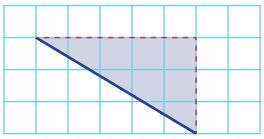
a



b

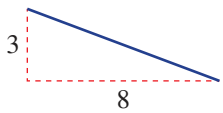


c

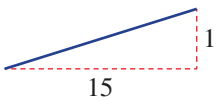


4 Find the gradient of the following.

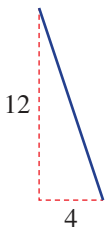
a



b



c



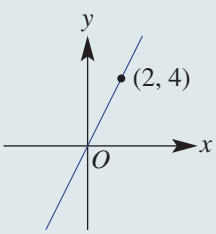
The gradient is written as a fraction or a whole number.

FLUENCY 5, 7 5(½), 6, 7

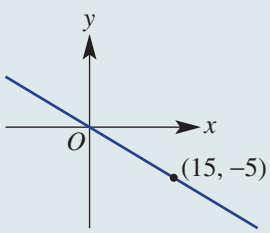
Example 15 Finding the gradient from graphs

Find the gradient of the following lines.

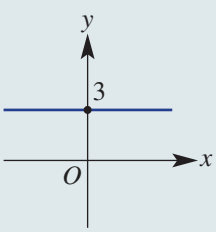
a



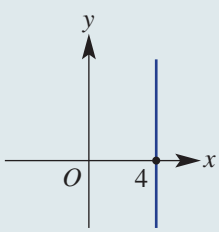
b



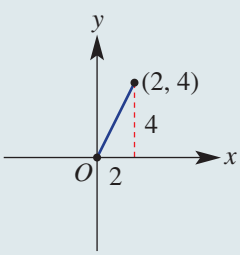
c



d



Solution	Explanation
a Gradient $= \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$	Write the rule each time.
$= \frac{4}{2}$	The rise is 4 and the run is 2 between the two points (0, 0) and (2, 4).
$= 2$	Simplify by cancelling.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

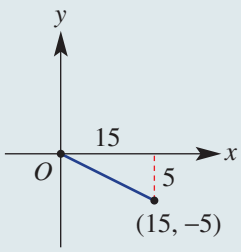
b Gradient $= \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$

$= \frac{-5}{15}$

$= \frac{-1}{3}$

$= -\frac{1}{3}$

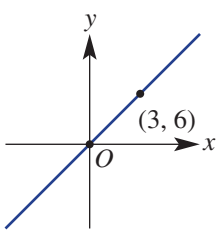
Note this time that, when working from left to right, there will be a slope downwards.
The fall is 5 (rise = −5) and the run is 15.
Simplify.

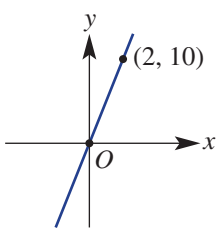


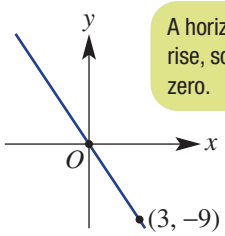
c Gradient = 0 Horizontal lines have a zero gradient.

d Gradient is undefined. Vertical lines have an undefined gradient.

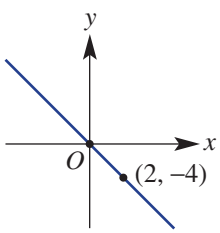
5 Find the gradient of the following lines.

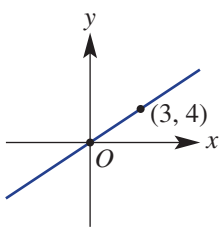
a


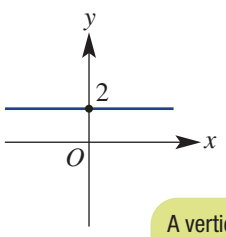
b


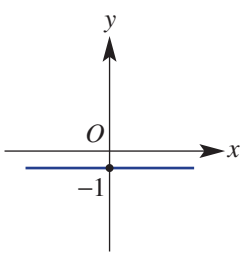
c


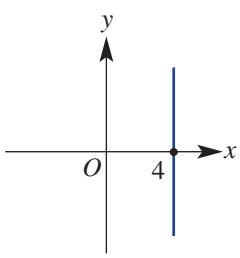
A horizontal line has zero rise, so its gradient is zero.

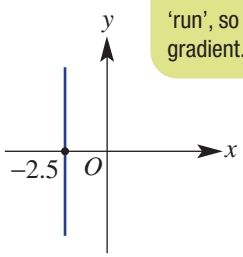
d


e


f


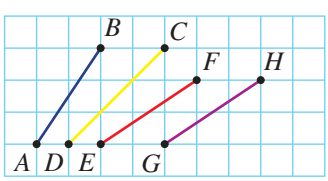
g


h


i


A vertical line has no 'run', so it has undefined gradient.

6 Use the grid to find the gradient of these line segments. Then order the segments from least to steepest gradient.

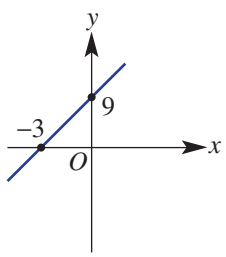


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

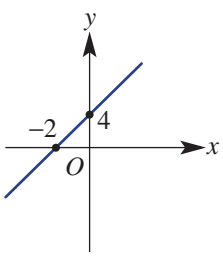
6E

7 Determine the gradient of the following lines.

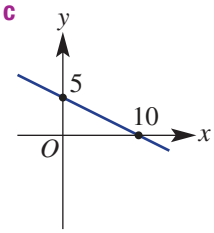
a

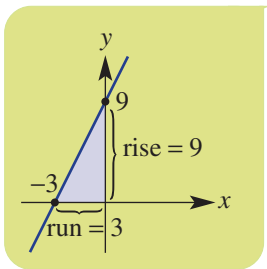


b

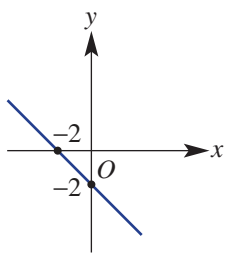


c

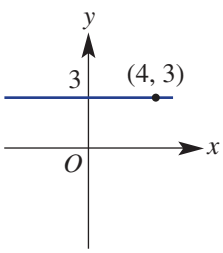




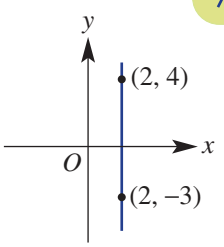
d



e

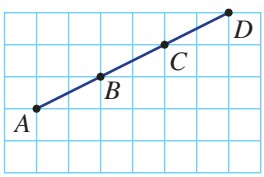


f



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 9–10(½), 11

8 a Copy and complete the table below.



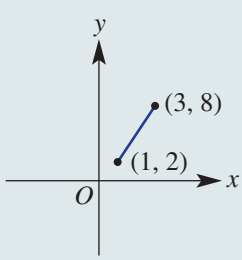
Line segment	Rise	Run	Gradient
AB			
AC			
AD			
BC			
BD			
CD			

b What do you notice about the gradient between points on the same line?

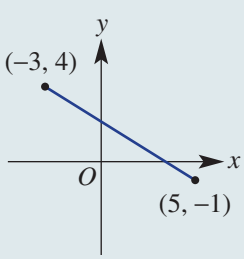
Example 16 Using a formula to calculate gradient

Use the formula $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ to find the gradient of the line segments between the following pairs of points.

a



b



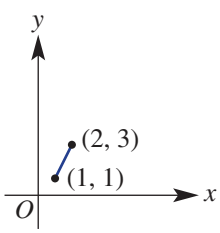
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Solution	Explanation
a $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ $= \frac{8 - 2}{3 - 1}$ $= \frac{6}{2}$ $= 3$	Write the rule. $(1, 2) \quad (3, 8)$ $x_1\ y_1 \quad x_2\ y_2$ It does not matter which point is labelled (x_1, y_1) and which is (x_2, y_2).
b $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ $= \frac{-1 - 4}{5 - (-3)}$ $= \frac{-5}{8}$ $= -\frac{5}{8}$	Write the rule. $(5, -1) \quad (-3, 4)$ $x_1\ y_1 \quad x_2\ y_2$ Remember that $5 - (-3) = 5 + 3 = 8$.

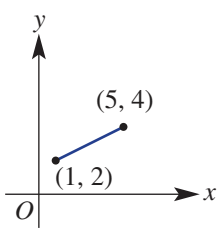
9 Use the formula $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$ to find the gradient between these pairs of points.

First copy the coordinates and label them.
e.g. $(1, 1) \quad (2, 3)$
$x_1\ y_1 \quad x_2\ y_2$

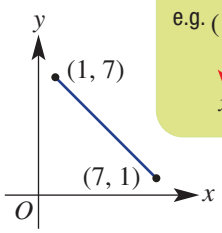
a



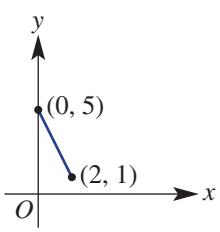
b



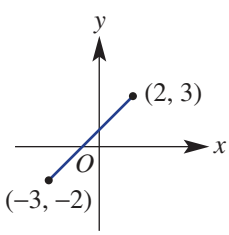
c



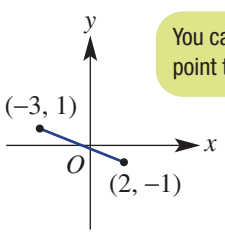
d



e



f



You can choose either point to be (x_1, y_1).

10 Find the gradient between the following pairs of points.

a $(1, 3)$ and $(5, 7)$
b $(-1, -1)$ and $(3, 3)$
c $(-3, 4)$ and $(2, 1)$
d $(-6, -1)$ and $(3, -1)$
e $(1, -4)$ and $(2, 7)$
f $(-4, -2)$ and $(-1, -1)$

Use $m = \frac{y_2 - y_1}{x_2 - x_1}$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

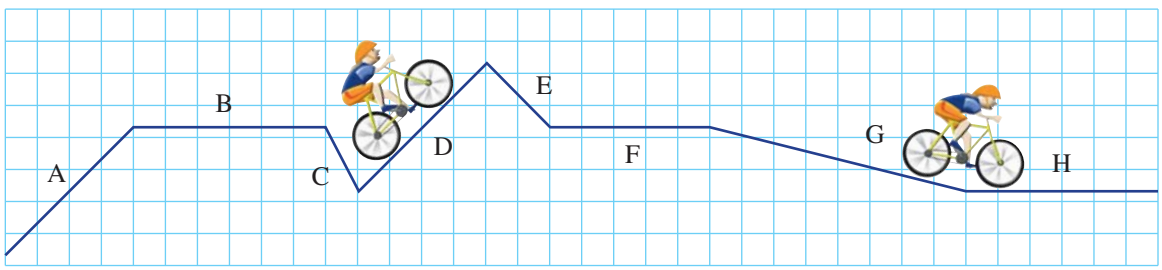
6E

11 The first section of the Cairns Skyrail travels from Caravonica terminal at 5 m above sea level to Red Peak terminal, which is 545 m above sea level. This is across a horizontal distance of approximately 1.57 km. What is the overall gradient of this section of the Skyrail? Round your answer to three decimal places.

From Bakersville to Rolland

—12

12 A transversal map for a bike ride from Bakersville to Rolland is shown.



a Which sections, A, B, C, D, E, F, G or H, indicate travelling a positive gradient?
b Which sections indicate travelling a negative gradient?
c Which will be the hardest section to ride?
d Which sections show a zero gradient?
e Which section is the flattest of the downhill rides?

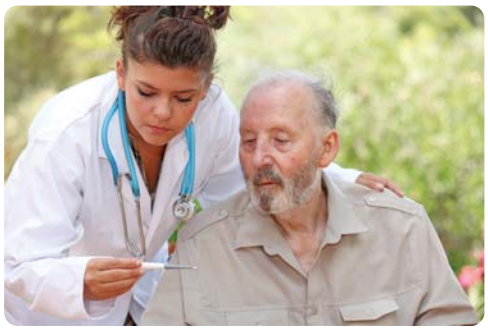
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6F Rates from graphs

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

The speed or rate at which something changes can be analysed by looking at the gradient (steepness) of a graph. Two common rates are kilometres per hour (km/h) and litres per second (L/s).

Graphs of a patient's records provide valuable information for a doctor. For example, from a graph of temperature versus time, the rate of temperature change in °C/min can be calculated. This rate provides important information to help a doctor diagnose an illness.



Let's start: What's the rate?

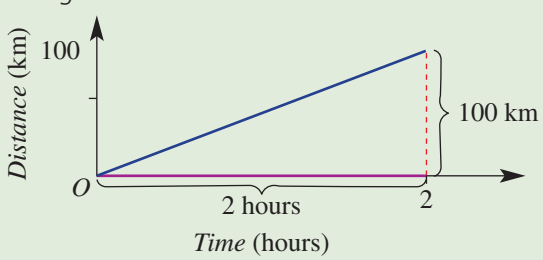
Calculate each of these rates.

- **a** $60 000 for 200 tonnes of wheat.
- **b** Lee travels 840 km in 12 hours.
- **c** A foal grows 18 cm in height in 3 months.
- **d** Petrol costs $96 for 60 litres.
- **e** Before take-off, a hot-air balloon of volume 6000 m^3 is filled in 60 seconds.

Key ideas

Rate A measure of one quantity against one unit of another

- A **rate** compares two quantities. Many rates show how a quantity changes over *time*.



$$\text{Rate} = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}} = \frac{100}{2} = 50 \text{ km/h}$$

- Rate = change in quantity ÷ change in time
  (L, kg, ...) (seconds, hours, ...)
- The gradient of a line gives the rate.
- A common rate is speed.
  - Speed = change in distance ÷ change in time
    (cm, km, ...) (seconds, hours, ...)
- To determine a rate from a linear graph, calculate the gradient and include the units (y unit/x unit); e.g. km/h.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 6F

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

1 Complete the sentences.

a A rate is found from a linear graph by calculating the _____ of the line.

b A rate compares _____ quantities.

c A rate has two _____.

d A speed of 60 kilometres per hour is written as 60 _____.

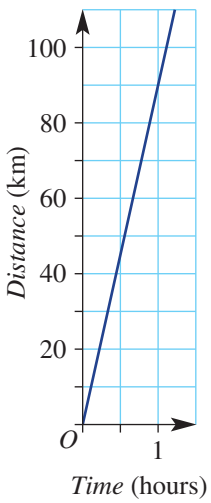
e If the rate of filling a bath is 50 litres per minute, this is written as 50 _____.

Choose from: *km/h, gradient, units, L/min, two.*

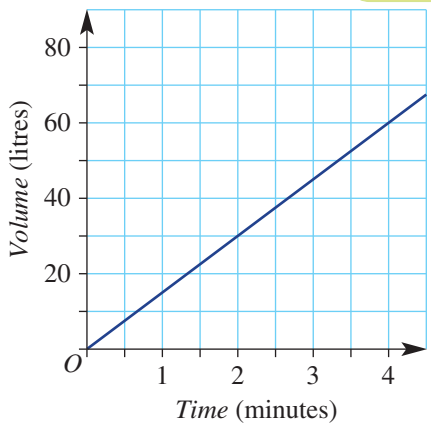
2 Write down the rate by calculating the gradient of each line graph.

A rate = gradient with units.
Gradient = $\frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$

a



b



FLUENCY 3–5 | 3, 5, 6

Example 17 Calculating speed from a graph

A 4WD vehicle completes a journey, which is described by this graph.

a For the first hour, find:

i the total distance travelled

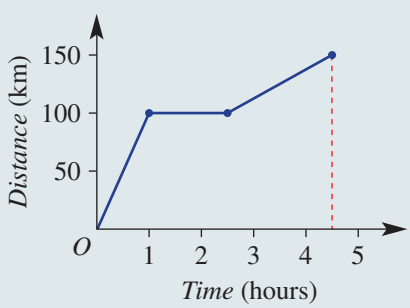
ii the speed

b How fast was the 4WD travelling during:

i the first hour?

ii the second section?

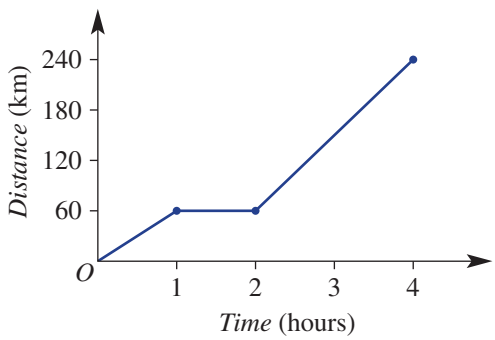
iii the third section?



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Solution	Explanation
a i 100 km	Read the distance at 1 hour.
ii 100 km/1 h = 100 km/h	Speed = distance ÷ time
b i 100 km/1 h = 100 km/h	Speed = distance ÷ time
ii 0 km/1.5 h = 0 km/h	The vehicle is at rest.
iii (150 − 100) km/(4.5 − 2.5) h	Determine the distance travelled and the amount of time, then apply the rate formula.
= 50 km/2 h	
= 25 km/h	Speed = distance ÷ time
	50 km in 2 hours is $\frac{50}{2}$ = 25 km in 1 hour.

3 A car completes a journey, which is described by this graph.



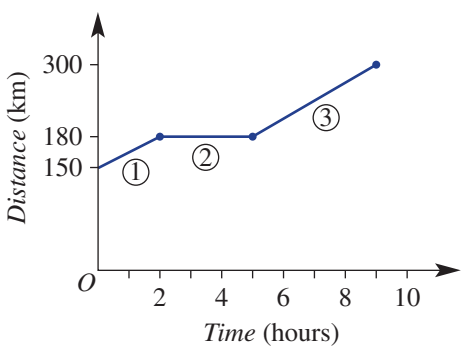
a For the first hour, find:
- **i** the total distance travelled
- **ii** the speed

b How fast was the car travelling during:
- **i** the first hour?
- **ii** the second section?
- **iii** the third section?

4 A cyclist training for a professional race includes a rest stop between two travelling sections.

a For the first hour, find:
- **i** the total distance travelled
- **ii** the speed

b How fast was the cyclist travelling during:
- **i** the second section?
- **ii** the third section?



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

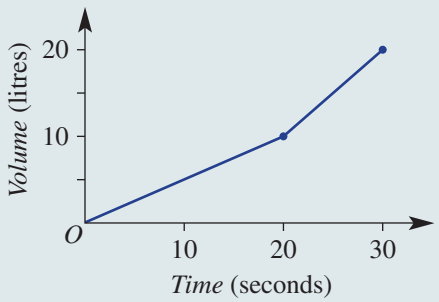
6F

Example 18 Calculating the rate of change of volume in L/s

A container is being filled with water from a hose.

a How many litres are filled during:
- **i** the first 10 seconds?
- **ii** the final 10 seconds?

b How fast (i.e. what rate in L/s) is the container being filled:
- **i** during the first 10 seconds?
- **ii** during the final 10 seconds?
- **iii** between the 10 and 20 second marks?



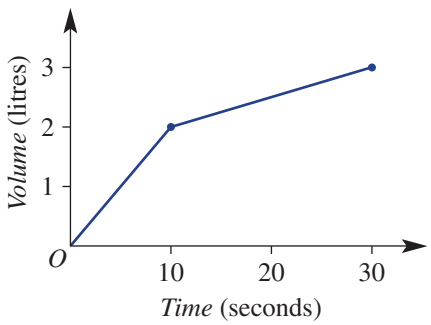
Solution		Explanation
a	**i** 5 litres	Read the number of litres after 10 seconds.
	ii 10 litres	Read the change in litres from 20 to 30 seconds.
b	**i** 5 L/10 s = 0.5 L/s	5 litres is added in the first 10 seconds.
	ii 10 L/10 s = 1 L/s	10 litres is added in the final 10 seconds.
	iii 5 L/10 s = 0.5 L/s	5 litres is added between 10 and 20 seconds.

5 A large carton is being filled with milk.

a How many litres are filled during:
- **i** the first 10 seconds?
- **ii** the final 10 seconds?

Rate = volume ÷ time

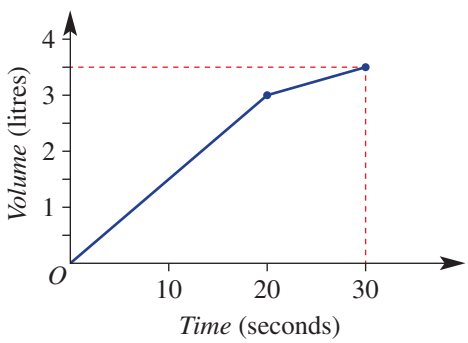
b How fast (i.e. what rate in L/s) is the container being filled:
- **i** during the first 10 seconds?
- **ii** during the final 10 seconds?
- **iii** between the 10 and 20 second marks?



6 A large bottle with a long narrow neck is being filled with water.

a How many litres are filled during:
- **i** the first 10 seconds?
- **ii** the final 10 seconds?

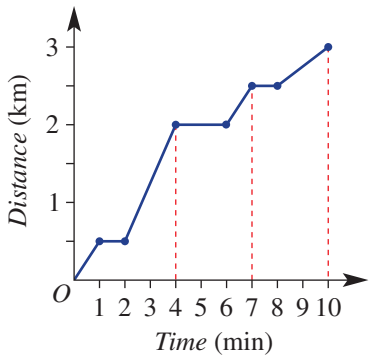
b How fast (i.e. what rate in L/s) is the bottle being filled:
- **i** during the first 10 seconds?
- **ii** during the final 10 seconds?
- **iii** between the 10 and 20 second marks?



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8 8–10

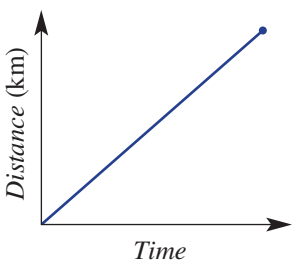
7 A postal worker stops to deliver mail to each of three houses along a country lane.



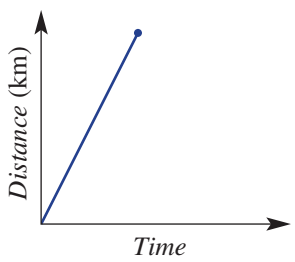
- **a** What is the total length of the country lane?
- **b** What is the total time the postal worker spends standing still?
- **c** Find the speed (use km/min) of the postal worker at the following times.
  - **i** before the first house
  - **ii** between the first and the second house
  - **iii** between the second and the third house
  - **iv** after his delivery to the third house

8 Three friends, Anna, Billy and Cianne, travel 5 km from school to the library. Their journeys are displayed in the three graphs below. All three graphs are drawn to the same scale.

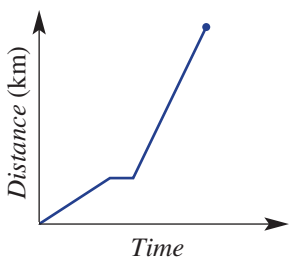
i



ii



iii



- **a** If Anna walked a short distance before getting picked up by her mum, which graph represents her trip?
- **b** If Cianne arrived at the library last, which graph best represents her journey?
- **c** Which graph represents the fastest journey? Explain your answer.

9
- **a** Draw your own graph to show the following journey: 10 km/h for 2 hours, then rest for 1 hour, and then 20 km/h for 2 hours.
- **b** Then use your graph to find the total distance travelled.

Mark each segment one at a time.
10 km/h for 2 hours covers a distance of $10 \times 2 = 20$ km.

10 A lift starts on the ground floor (height 0 m) and moves to floor 3 at a rate of 3 m/s for 5 seconds. After waiting at floor 3 for 9 seconds, the lift rises 45 m to floor 9 in 9 seconds. The lift rests for 11 seconds before returning to ground level at a rate of 6 m/s. Draw a graph to help find the total time taken to complete the movements described. Use time, in seconds, on the horizontal axis.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6F

Sienna's training

11

11 Sienna is training for the Sydney Marathon. Her distance–time graph is shown below.

a How many stops does Sienna make?

b How far does she jog between:

i 6 a.m. and 7 a.m.?

ii 7:30 a.m. and 8:30 a.m.?

c Which sections of the graph have a zero gradient?

d Which sections of the graph have the steepest gradient?

e At what speed does Sienna run in section:

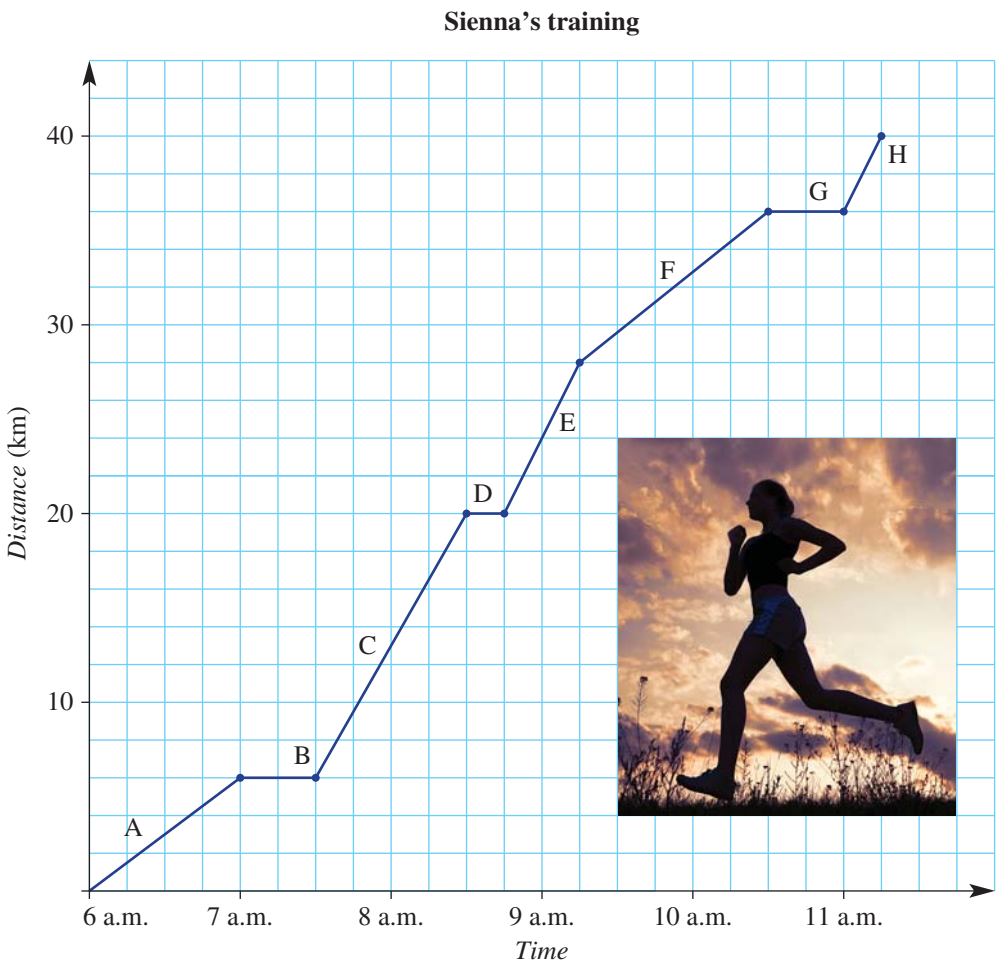
i A? **ii** C? **iii** E? **iv** F? **v** H?

f In which sections is Sienna travelling at the same speed? How does the graph show this?

g How long does the training session last?

h What is the total distance travelled by Sienna during the training session?

i What is her average speed for the entire trip, excluding rest periods?

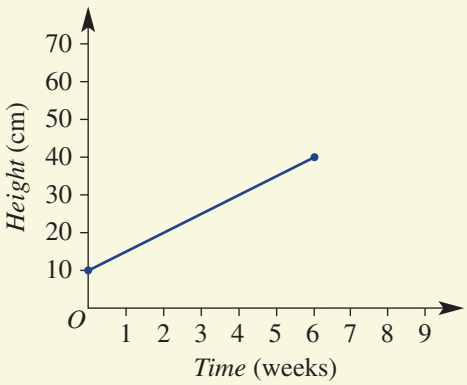


ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Progress quiz

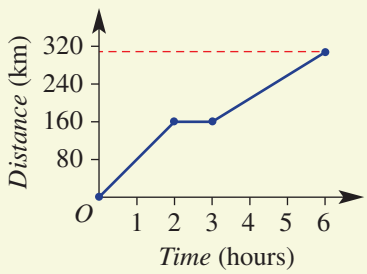
6A **1** The graph at right shows the growth of a plant measured at weekly intervals.

- **a** What is the initial height of the plant?
- **b** How much does the plant grow in 6 weeks?
- **c** Use the graph to find the height of the plant after 4 weeks.
- **d** Extend the graph to estimate the height of the plant after 8 weeks.



6B/F **2** The graph at right shows the journey of a car.

- **a** What is the distance travelled in the first 2 hours?
- **b** What is the speed in the first 2 hours?
- **c** What is the speed in the final section after the rest break?



6B **3** Sketch a distance–time graph for a runner's training session. Display the following information in your graph.

- covers 6 km in 30 minutes
- 4 km covered in first 15 minutes
- a 5-minute rest after 15 minutes

6C **4** Plot the graphs of the following by first completing the table of values.

a $y = 3x + 1$

x	−2	−1	0	1	2
y					

b $y = -2x + 3$

x	−2	−1	0	1	2
y					

6C **5** A sailing boat can be hired for \$60 per hour with an initial fee of \$ 40.

- **a** Complete the table of values.

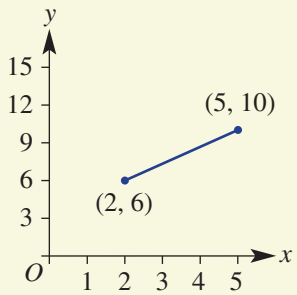
No. of hours (n)	1	2	3	4	5
Cost (\$$C$)					

- **b** Plot a graph of cost against number of hours.
- **c** Use the graph to determine:
  - **i** the cost for 2.5 hours of hire
  - **ii** how long the sailing boat was hired if the cost was \$250

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6D **6** Find the midpoint and length of the following.

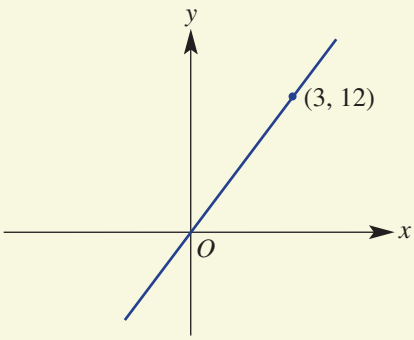
a



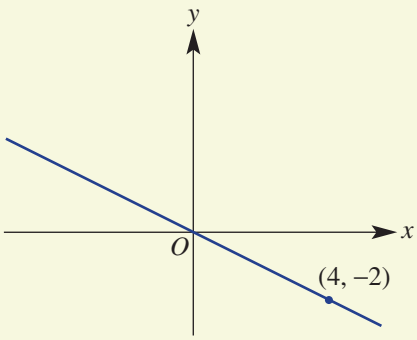
b a line segment joining $(-2, 7)$ and $(4, 12)$

6E **7** Find the gradient of the following lines.

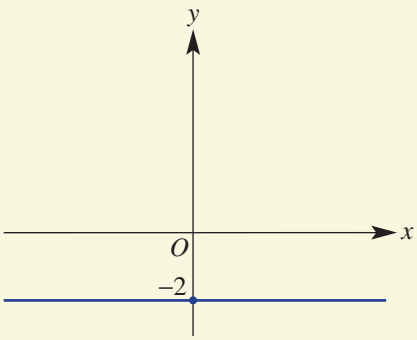
a



b



c



6E **8** Calculate the gradient of the line segment with end points $(-3, 2)$ and $(2, 6)$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6G $y = mx + c$ and special lines

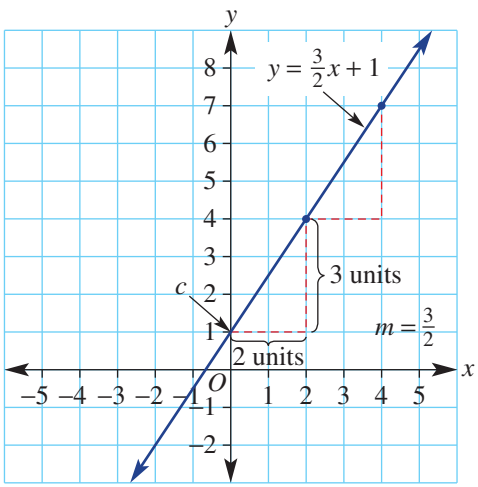
Most straight-line graphs can be described by a linear equation $y = mx + c$.

The gradient, m, is the coefficient of x, and c is the y-intercept. This is why this rule is called the gradient–intercept form.

At right is a graph of $y = \frac{3}{2}x + 1$

the gradient $m = \frac{3}{2}$

the y-intercept $c = +1$



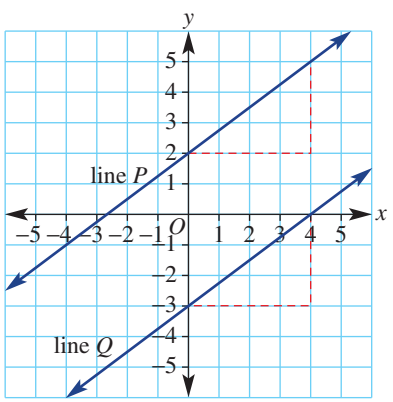
Mathematicians use rules and graphs to help determine how many items should be manufactured to make the maximum profit. For example, profit would be reduced by making too many of a certain style of mobile phone that soon will be outdated. A knowledge of graphs is important in business.

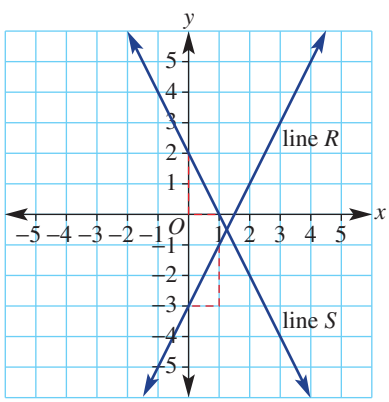
Let's start: Matching lines with equations

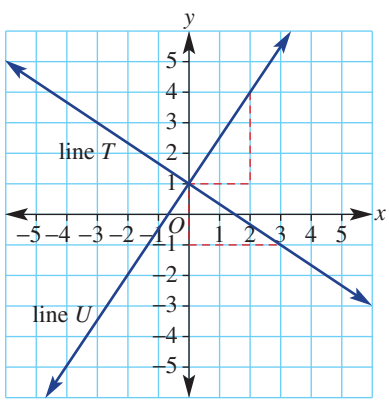
Below are some equations of lines and some graphs. Work with a classmate and help each other to match each equation with its correct line graph.

a $y = 2x - 3$ **b** $y = \frac{3}{4}x + 2$ **c** $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + 1$

d $y = -2x + 2$ **e** $y = \frac{3}{4}x - 3$ **f** $y = \frac{3}{2}x + 1$



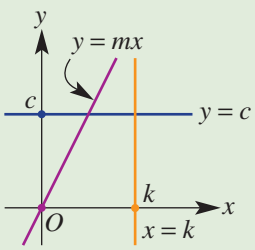




Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Key ideas

- $y = mx + c$ is called the **gradient–intercept form**, where m and c are constants.
  Examples are $y = 3x + 4$, $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 3$ and $y = 2$.
- The gradient or slope equals m (the **coefficient** of x).
- The ***y*-intercept** is the y value at the point where the line cuts the y-axis. In $y = mx + c$, the y-intercept is c.
- Some special lines include:
  - horizontal lines: $y = c$ $(m = 0)$
  - vertical lines: $x = k$ (m is undefined)
  - lines passing through the origin $(0, 0)$: $y = mx$ $(c = 0)$



Gradient–intercept form The equation of a straight line, written with y as the subject of the equation

Coefficient A numeral placed before a pronumeral, showing that the pronumeral is multiplied by that factor

***y*-intercept** The point at which a line or curve cuts the y-axis

Exercise 6G

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

1 Complete the sentences.

a $y = mx + c$ is called the _____ — _____ form of a straight line.

b The symbol m stands for the _____.

c In the equation, the gradient, m, is the _____ of x.

d The symbol c stands for the _____.

e A horizontal line has a _____ gradient.

Choose from: *gradient, intercept, zero, y-intercept, coefficient.*

Example 19 Reading the gradient and *y*-intercept from an equation

For the following equations, state:

i the gradient **ii** the y-intercept

a $y = 3x + 4$

b $y = -\frac{3}{4}x - 7$

Solution	Explanation
a i Gradient is 3.	The coefficient of x is 3; i.e. $m = 3$.
ii y-intercept is 4.	The value of c is $+4$.
b i Gradient is $-\frac{3}{4}$.	The coefficient of x is $-\frac{3}{4}$; i.e. $m = -\frac{3}{4}$.
ii y-intercept is -7.	The value of c is -7; don't forget to include the – sign.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 For each of the following equations, state the:
i gradient **ii** y-intercept

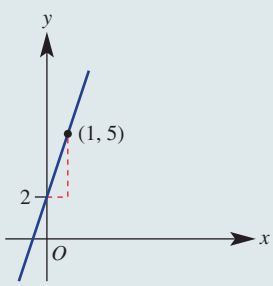
a $y = 2x + 4$
b $y = 6x - 7$
c $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + 7$
d $y = -7x - 3$
e $y = \frac{3}{5}x - 8$
f $y = 9x - 5$

The gradient is the coefficient of x, which is the number multiplied by x. It does not include the x. Write the y-intercept, including the sign of c.

FLUENCY 3, 4(½), 5 3–6(½)

Example 20 Sketching a line using the y-intercept and gradient

Sketch the graph of $y = 3x + 2$ by considering the y-intercept and the gradient.

Solution	Explanation
	Consider $y = mx + c$; the value of c is 2 and therefore the y-intercept is 2. The value of m is 3 and therefore the gradient is 3 or $\frac{3}{1}$. Start at the y-intercept 2 and, with the gradient of $\frac{3}{1}$, move 1 right (run) and 3 up (rise) to the point (1, 5). Join the points in a line.

3 Sketch the graph of the following by considering the y-intercept and the gradient.

a $y = 2x + 3$
b $y = 3x - 12$
c $y = x + 4$
d $y = -2x + 5$
e $y = -5x - 7$
f $y = -x - 4$

Plot the y-intercept first.
For a line with $m = -2$:
$m = -2 = \frac{-2}{1} = \frac{\text{down } 2}{\text{right } 1}$.
From the y-intercept, go right 1 then down 2 to plot the next point.

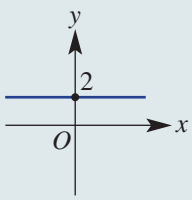
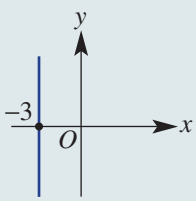
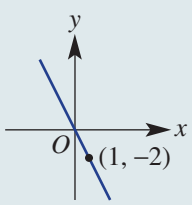
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6G

Example 21 Sketching special lines

Sketch the graphs of these equations.

a $y = 2$ **b** $x = -3$ **c** $y = -2x$

Solution	Explanation
a 	Sketch a horizontal line passing through $(0, 2)$.
b 	Sketch a vertical line passing through $(-3, 0)$.
c When $x = 0$, $y = -2(0) = 0$.	The line passes through the origin $(0, 0)$.
When $x = 1$, $y = -2(1) = -2$.	Use $x = 1$ to find another point.
	Sketch the graph passing through $(0, 0)$ and $(1, -2)$.

4 Sketch the following lines.

a $y = 3x$ **b** $y = 6x$ **c** $y = -2x$
d $y = 4$ **e** $y = -2$ **f** $y = 5$
g $x = 5$ **h** $x = -2$ **i** $x = 9$

For the line equation $y = 2$, every point on the line has a y value of 2;
e.g. $(-3, 2)$ $(0, 2)$ $(1, 2)$ $(3, 2)$.
For the line equation $x = -3$, every point on the line has an x value of -3;
e.g. $(-3, 1)$ $(-3, 0)$ $(-3, -4)$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 Write the equation of the following lines.

a gradient = 4
y-intercept at 2

b gradient = 3
y-intercept at −2

c gradient = 5
y-intercept at 0

d gradient = −3
y-intercept at 5

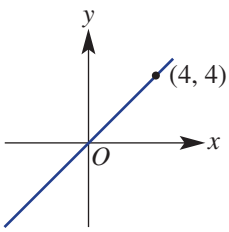
e gradient = −4
y-intercept at −3

f gradient = −2
y-intercept at 0

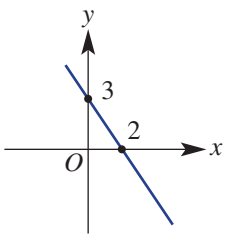
A line has equation $y = mx + c$.
m: gradient
c: y-intercept

6 Determine the gradient and y-intercept for the following lines.

a

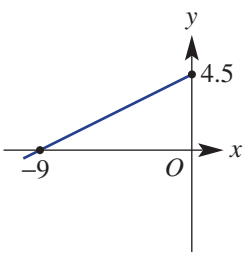


b

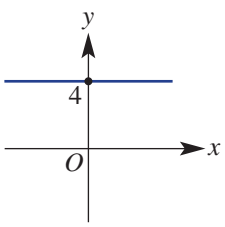


Use $m = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$ for the gradient between two known points.

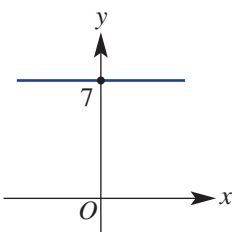
c



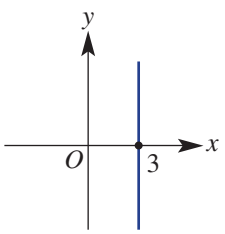
d



e



f



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6G

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8–9(½), 11 7, 10–12

7 Match each of the following linear equations to one of the sketches shown.

a $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + 2$ **b** $y = -x + 4$ **c** $y = x + 3$

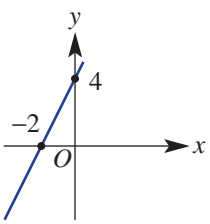
d $y = 2x + 4$ **e** $y = 4$ **f** $y = 7x$

g $y = -3x + 6$ **h** $x = 2$ **i** $y = -3x$

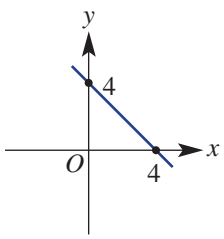
A linear equation is an equation that gives a straight-line graph.

For a negative gradient, move the negative sign to the numerator.
$m = -\frac{2}{3} = \frac{-2}{3} = \frac{\text{down } 2}{\text{right } 3}$

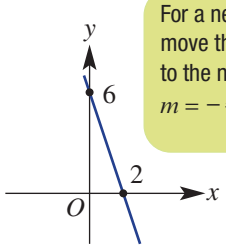
i



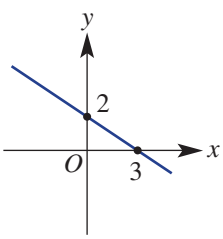
ii



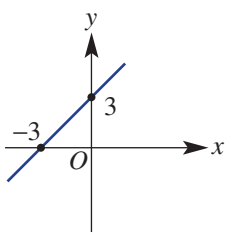
iii



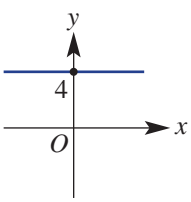
iv



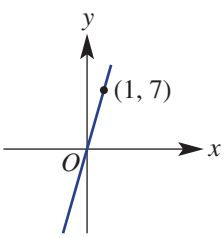
v



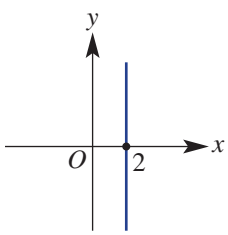
vi



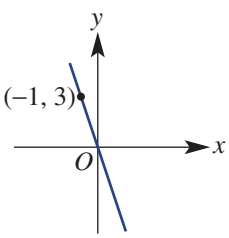
vii



viii



ix



8 **a** Write down three different equations that have a graph with a y-intercept of 5.

b Write down three different equations that have a graph with a y-intercept of -2.

c Write down three different equations that have a graph with a y-intercept of 0.

9 **a** Write down three different equations that have a graph with a gradient of 3.

b Write down three different equations that have a graph with a gradient of -1.

c Write down three different equations that have a graph with a gradient of 0.

d Write down three different equations that have a graph with an undefined gradient.

10 **a** Which of the following points lie on the line $y = 2$?

i $(2, 3)$ **ii** $(1, 2)$ **iii** $(5, 2)$ **iv** $(-2, -2)$

b Which of the following points lie on the line $x = 5$?

i $(5, 3)$ **ii** $(3, 5)$ **iii** $(1, 7)$ **iv** $(5, -2)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 22 Identifying points on a line

Does the point $(3, -4)$ lie on the line $y = 2x - 7$?

Solution	Explanation
$y = 2x - 7$	Copy the equation and substitute $x = 3$.
$y = 2 \times 3 - 7$	The y value for $x = 3$ is $y = -1$.
$y = -1$	Compare the y values.
$\neq -4$	The point $(3, -1)$ is *on* the line.
No, $(3, -4)$ is not on the line.	So $(3, -4)$ is *not* on the line.

11 **a** Does the point $(3, 2)$ lie on the line $y = x + 2$?
b Does the point $(-2, 0)$ lie on the line $y = x + 2$?
c Does the point $(1, -5)$ lie on the line $y = 3x + 2$?
d Does the point $(2, 2)$ lie on the line $y = x$?
e Does the line $y - 2x = 0$ pass through the origin?

Substitute the x value into the equation and compare the two y values. When the y values are the same, the point is on the line.

12 Draw each of the following on a number plane and write down the equation of the line.

a

x	0	1	2	3
y	4	5	6	7

b

x	0	1	2	3
y	−1	0	1	2

c

x	−2	0	4	6
y	−1	0	2	3

d

x	−2	0	2	4
y	−3	1	5	9

Use your graph to find the gradient between two points (m) and locate the y-intercept (c). Then use $y = mx + c$.

Graphs using technology

— 13, 14

13 Use technology to sketch a graph of these equations.

a $y = x + 2$ **b** $y = -4x - 3$ **c** $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 1$ **d** $y = 1.5x + 3$
e $y = 2x - 5$ **f** $y = 0.5x + 5$ **g** $y = -0.2x - 3$ **h** $y = 0.1x - 1.4$

14 **a** On the same set of axes, plot graphs of $y = 2x$, $y = 2x + 1$, $y = 2x + 4$, $y = 2x - 2$ and $y = 2x - 3$, using a calculator.
Discuss what you see and describe the connection with the given equations.

b On the same set of axes, plot graphs of $y = x - 1$, $y = 2x - 1$, $y = 3x - 1$, $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 1$ and $y = \frac{3}{4}x - 1$, using a calculator.
Discuss what you see and describe the connection with the given equations.

c The equations of families of graphs can be entered into a calculator using one line only. For example, $y = 2x + 1$, $y = 2x + 2$ and $y = 2x + 3$ can be entered as $y = 2x + \{1, 2, 3\}$ using set brackets. Use this notation to draw the graphs of the rules in parts **a** and **b**.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6H Parallel and perpendicular lines

Interactive

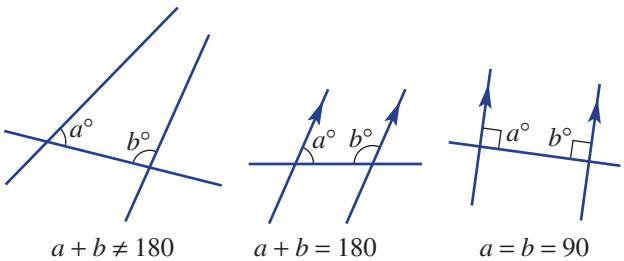
Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

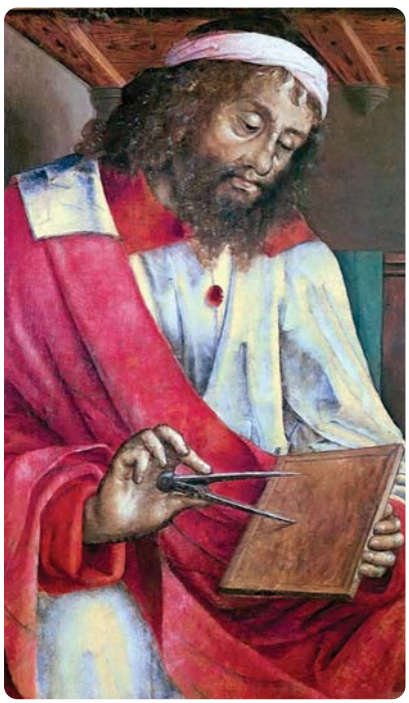
Euclid of Alexandria (300 BC) was a Greek mathematician and is known as the 'Father of geometry'. In his texts, known as *Euclid's Elements*, his work is based on five simple axioms.

His fifth axiom, the Parallel Postulate, says that if cointerior angles do not sum to 180° then the two lines are not parallel. Furthermore, if the two interior angles are equal and also sum to 180°, then the third line must be perpendicular to the other two.



$a + b \neq 180$ $a + b = 180$ $a = b = 90$

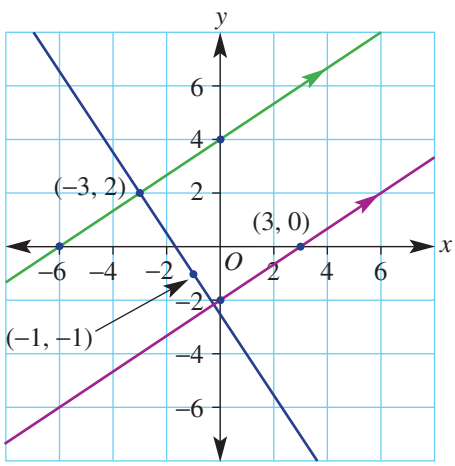
Parallel and perpendicular lines, including their gradient and rule, are the focus of this section.



Let's start: Gradient connection

Shown here is a pair of parallel lines and a third line that is perpendicular to the other two lines.

- Find the gradient of each line using the coordinates shown on the graph.
- What is common about the gradients for the two parallel lines?
- Is there any connection between the gradients of the parallel lines and the perpendicular line? Can you write down this connection as a formula?



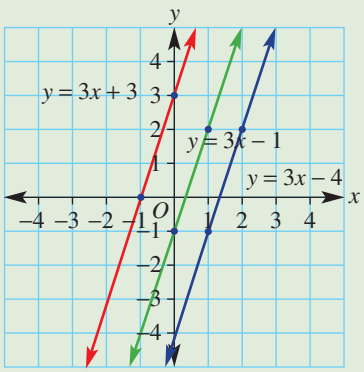
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

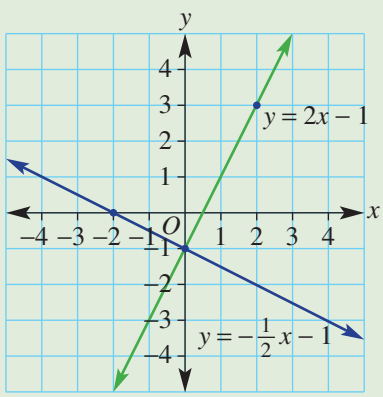
- Two **parallel lines** have the same gradient.
  For example, $y = 3x - 1$ and $y = 3x + 8$ have the same gradient of 3.

Parallel lines Lines that point in the same direction

Perpendicular lines Lines that are at a right angle to each other (i.e. at 90°)



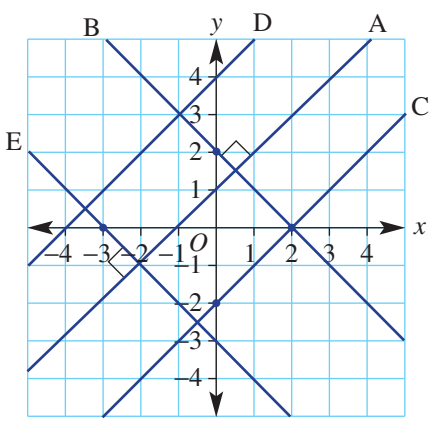
- Two **perpendicular lines** with gradients m_1 and m_2 satisfy the following rule:
  $m_1 \times m_2 = -1$ or $m_2 = -\frac{1}{m_1}$ (i.e. m_2 is the negative reciprocal of m_1).
  In the graph shown, $m_1 \times m_2 = 2 \times \left(-\frac{1}{2}\right) = -1$.
- Equations of parallel or perpendicular lines can be found by:
  - first finding the gradient (m)
  - then substituting a point to find c in $y = mx + c$



Exercise 6H

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 For this diagram:
- **a** Which lines, B, C, D or E, are parallel to line A?
- **b** Which lines, B, C, D or E, are perpendicular to line A?
- **c** Are lines C and D parallel?
- **d** Are lines B and E parallel?
- **e** Are lines E and C perpendicular?



2 Write down the gradient of a line that is parallel to the graph of these equations.
- **a** $y = 4x - 6$
- **b** $y = -7x - 1$
- **c** $y = -\frac{3}{4}x + 2$
- **d** $y = \frac{8}{7}x - \frac{1}{2}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6H

3 Use $m_2 = -\frac{1}{m_1}$ to find the gradient of the line that is perpendicular to the graphs of these equations.

a $y = 3x - 1$ **b** $y = -2x + 6$

c $y = \frac{7}{8}x - \frac{2}{3}$ **d** $y = -\frac{4}{9}x - \frac{4}{7}$

In part **a**, $m_1 = 3$ so find m_2, which is the perpendicular gradient. Note: $-\frac{1}{\left(\frac{7}{8}\right)} = -1 \div \frac{7}{8} = -1 \times \frac{8}{7}$

FLUENCY 4–6(½) 4–6(½)

Example 23 Deciding if lines are parallel or perpendicular

Decide if the graph of each pair of rules will be parallel, perpendicular or neither.

a $y = 4x + 2$ and $y = 4x - 6$ **b** $y = -3x - 8$ and $y = \frac{1}{3}x + 1$

Solution		Explanation
a $y = 4x + 2, m = 4$	(1)	Note that both equations are in the form $y = mx + c$.
$y = 4x - 6, m = 4$	(2)	
So the lines are parallel.		Both lines have a gradient of 4, so the lines are parallel.
b $y = -3x - 8, m = -3$	(1)	Both equations are in the form $y = mx + c$.
$y = \frac{1}{3}x + 1, m = \frac{1}{3}$	(2)	
$-3 \times \frac{1}{3} = -1$		Test $m_1 \times m_2 = -1$.
So the lines are perpendicular.		

4 Decide if the line graphs of each pair of rules will be parallel, perpendicular or neither.

a $y = 2x - 1$ and $y = 2x + 1$

b $y = 3x + 3$ and $y = -\frac{1}{3}x + 1$

c $y = 5x + 2$ and $y = 6x + 2$

d $y = -4x - 1$ and $y = \frac{1}{5}x - 1$

e $y = 3x - 1$ and $y = 3x + 7$

f $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 6$ and $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 4$

g $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + 1$ and $y = \frac{2}{3}x - 3$

h $y = -4x - 2$ and $y = x - 7$

i $y = -\frac{3}{7}x - \frac{1}{2}$ and $y = \frac{7}{3}x + 2$

j $y = -8x + 4$ and $y = \frac{1}{8}x - 2$

If the gradients are equal then the lines are parallel. If $m_1 \times m_2 = -1$, then the lines are perpendicular.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 24 Finding the equation of a parallel or perpendicular line when given the *y*-intercept

Find the equation of the line, given the following description.

a A line passes through $(0, 2)$ and is parallel to another line with gradient 3.

b A line passes through $(0, -1)$ and is perpendicular to another line with gradient -2.

Solution	Explanation
a $m = 3$ and $c = 2$ So $y = 3x + 2$.	A parallel line has the same gradient. Use $y = mx + c$ with $m = 3$ and y-intercept 2.
b $m = -\left(\frac{1}{-2}\right) = \frac{1}{2}$ and $c = -1$ So $y = \frac{1}{2}x - 1$.	Being perpendicular, use $m_2 = -\frac{1}{m_1}$. Note also that the y-intercept is -1.

5 Find the equation of the lines with the following description.

a A line passes through $(0, 2)$ and is parallel to another line with gradient 4.

b A line passes through $(0, 4)$ and is parallel to another line with gradient 2.

c A line passes through $(0, -3)$ and is parallel to another line with gradient -1.

In $y = mx + c$, m is the gradient and c is the y-intercept.

d A line passes through $(0, 3)$ and is perpendicular to another line with gradient 2.

e A line passes through $(0, -5)$ and is perpendicular to another line with gradient 3.

f A line passes through $(0, -10)$ and is perpendicular to another line with gradient $\frac{1}{2}$.

g A line passes through $(0, 6)$ and is perpendicular to another line with gradient $\frac{1}{6}$.

$-\frac{1}{\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)} = -2$

h A line passes through $(0, -7)$ and is perpendicular to another line with gradient $-\frac{1}{4}$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6H

Example 25 Finding the equation of a parallel or perpendicular line

Find the equation of the line that is:

a parallel to $y = -2x - 7$ and passes through $(1, 9)$

b perpendicular to $y = \frac{1}{4}x - 1$ and passes through $(3, -2)$

Solution	Explanation
a $y = mx + c$	
$m = -2$	Since the line is parallel to $y = -2x - 7$, $m = -2$.
$y = -2x + c$	
Substitute $(1, 9)$: $9 = -2(1) + c$	Substitute the given point $(1, 9)$, where $x = 1$ and $y = 9$, and solve for c.
$11 = c$	
$\therefore y = -2x + 11$	
b $y = mx + c$	
$m = -\frac{1}{\frac{1}{4}}$	The gradient is the negative reciprocal of $\frac{1}{4}$.
$= -1 \times \frac{4}{1}$	
$= -4$	
$y = -4x + c$	
Substitute $(3, -2)$: $-2 = -4(3) + c$	Substitute $(3, -2)$ and solve for c.
$-2 = -12 + c$	
$c = 10$	
$\therefore y = -4x + 10$	

6 Find the equation of the line that is:

a parallel to $y = x + 3$ and passes through $(1, 5)$

b parallel to $y = -x - 5$ and passes through $(1, 7)$

c parallel to $y = -4x - 1$ and passes through $(-1, 3)$

d parallel to $y = \frac{2}{3}x + 1$ and passes through $(3, -4)$

e parallel to $y = -\frac{4}{5}x + \frac{1}{2}$ and passes through $(5, 3)$

f perpendicular to $y = 2x + 3$ and passes through $(2, 5)$

g perpendicular to $y = -4x + 1$ and passes through $(-4, -3)$

h perpendicular to $y = \frac{2}{3}x - 4$ and passes through $(4, -1)$

i perpendicular to $y = \frac{4}{3}x + \frac{1}{2}$ and passes through $(-4, -2)$

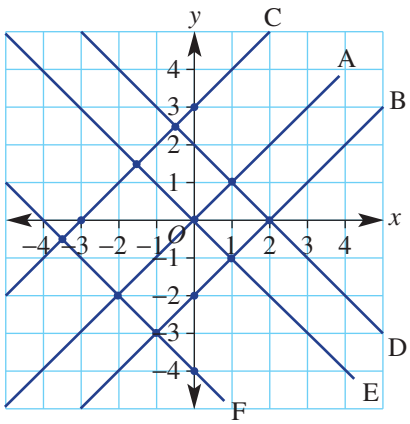
j perpendicular to $y = -\frac{2}{7}x - \frac{3}{4}$ and passes through $(-8, 3)$

First find m. Then write $y = mx + c$. Substitute a point to find c; e.g. for $(1, 5)$ substitute $x = 1$ and $y = 5$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8 7, 9, 10

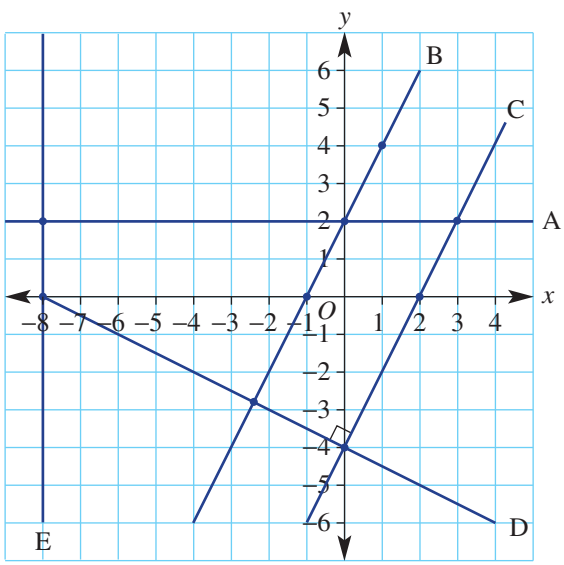
7 The lines on this grid are either parallel or perpendicular to each other.



a What is the gradient of each of these lines?
i A **ii** D

b What is the equation for the following lines?
i A **ii** B
iii C **iv** D
v E **vi** F

8 In its original position, the line A has equation $y = 2$, as shown.



a Line A is rotated to form line B. What is its new rule?

b Line B is shifted to form line C. What is its new rule?

c Line C is rotated 90° to form line D. What is its new rule?

d Line A is rotated 90° to form line E. What is its new rule?

9 Recall that the negative reciprocal of, say, $\frac{2}{3}$ is $-\frac{3}{2}$.

Use this to help find the equation of a line that:

a passes through $(0, 7)$ and is perpendicular to $y = \frac{2}{3}x + 3$

b passes through $(0, -2)$ and is perpendicular to $y = \frac{3}{2}x + 1$

c passes through $(0, 2)$ and is perpendicular to $y = -\frac{4}{5}x - 3$

d passes through $(1, -2)$ and is perpendicular to $y = -\frac{2}{3}x - 1$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6H

10 Decide if the graphs of each pair of rules will be parallel, perpendicular or neither.

a $2y + x = 2$ and $y = -\frac{1}{2}x - 3$

b $x - y = 4$ and $x - y = 4$ and $y = x + \frac{1}{2}$

c $8y + 2x = 3$ and $y = 4x + 1$

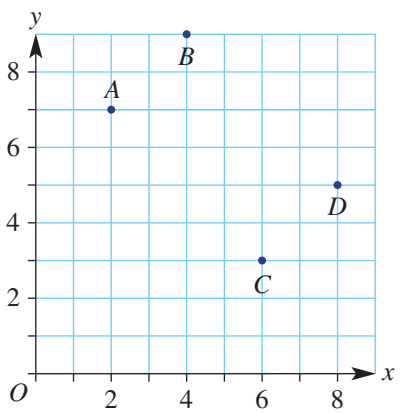
d $3x - y = 2$ and $x + 3y = 5$

First write in the form $y = mx + c$.

Perpendicular and parallel geometry

—/11, 12

11 A quadrilateral, $ABCD$, has vertex coordinates $A(2, 7)$, $B(4, 9)$, $C(6, 3)$ and $D(8, 5)$.



a Find the gradient of these line segments.

i AB **ii** CD

iii BD **iv** AC

b What do you notice about the gradient of the opposite sides?

c What type of quadrilateral is $ABCD$?

12 The vertices of triangle ABC are $A(0, 0)$, $B(3, 4)$ and $C\left(\frac{25}{3}, 0\right)$.

a Find the gradient of these line segments.

i AB **ii** BC **iii** CA

b What type of triangle is $\triangle ABC$?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6I Sketching with *x*- and *y*-intercepts

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

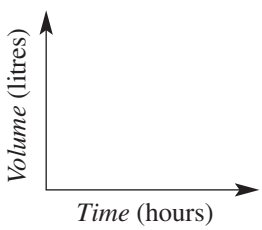
Only two points are required to define a straight line. Two convenient points are the x- and y-intercepts. These are the points where the graph crosses the x- and y-axis, respectively.

The axis intercepts are quite significant in practical situations. For example, imagine that $200\ m^3$ of dirt needs to be removed from a construction site before foundations for a new building can be laid. The graph of volume remaining versus time taken to remove the dirt has a y-intercept of 200, showing the total volume to be removed, and an x-intercept showing the time taken for the job.

Let's start: Leaking water

A family that is camping has 20 litres of water in a plastic container. The water begins to slowly leak at a rate of 2 litres per hour.

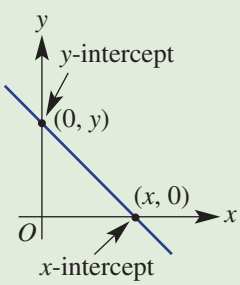
- Sketch two axes labelled 'Volume' and 'Time'.
- At $t = 0$, what is the volume of water in the tank? Mark and label this point on the Volume axis.
- How long will it take the water container to be empty? Mark this point on the Time axis.
- Join these two points with a straight line.
- Write the coordinates of the Volume axis intercept and the Time axis intercept. Follow the order (i.e. Time, Volume).
- Can you suggest a rule for finding the volume of the water in the tank after t hours?



Key ideas

To sketch a straight line by finding intercepts:

- The ***x*-intercept** is where $y = 0$.
  Find the x-intercept by substituting $y = 0$ into the equation.
- The ***y*-intercept** is where $x = 0$.
  Find the y-intercept by substituting $x = 0$ into the equation.



***x*-intercept** The point at which a line or curve cuts the x-axis

***y*-intercept** The point at which a line or curve cuts the y-axis

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 6I

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Copy and complete these sentences.

a The x-intercept is where _____ $= 0$.

b The y-intercept is where _____ $= 0$.

2 **a** Perform these calculations.

i $\frac{-21}{-7}$ **ii** $6 \times (-3)$ **iii** $-12 - 18$

iv $-12 + 18$ **v** $\frac{28}{-4}$

b Solve these equations for x.

i $0 = 3x - 12$ **ii** $0 = -4x + 2$

iii $0 = 5x - 2$ **iv** $0 = -2x - 13$

When multiplying and dividing, the same signs make a positive answer and different signs make a negative answer.

Example 26 Finding the x-intercept

Find the coordinates of the x-intercept for each line equation.

a $y = -2x - 7$ **b** $y = -\frac{3}{4}x + 6$

Solution	Explanation
a $y = -2x - 7$	
x-int ($y = 0$):	Substitute $y = 0$ for an x-intercept calculation.
$0 = -2x - 7$	The opposite of -7 is $+7$, so add 7 to both sides.
$7 = -2x$	Divide both sides by -2.
$x = \frac{7}{-2}$	When dividing two numbers with different signs, the answer is negative.
$x = -3\frac{1}{2}$	Write the answer as a mixed number.
$\therefore$ x-intercept is $-3\frac{1}{2}$.	
b $y = -\frac{3}{4}x + 6$	
x-int ($y = 0$):	Substitute $y = 0$.
$0 = -\frac{3}{4}x + 6$	The opposite of $+6$ is -6, so subtract 6 from both sides. Change the fraction $-\frac{3}{4}$ to $\frac{-3}{4}$.
$-6 = \frac{-3}{4}x$	Multiply both sides by 4.
$-24 = -3x$	Divide both sides by -3.
$x = 8$	When dividing two numbers with the same sign, the answer is positive. $8 = x$ can be written with x as the subject: $x = 8$.
$\therefore$ x-intercept is 8.	

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 Find the x-intercept for each line equation.

a $y = 2x - 8$ **b** $y = -3x - 10$ **c** $y = \frac{3}{2}x + 9$

d $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 9$ **e** $y = -\frac{3}{4}x + 9$ **f** $y = -\frac{5}{3}x - 10$

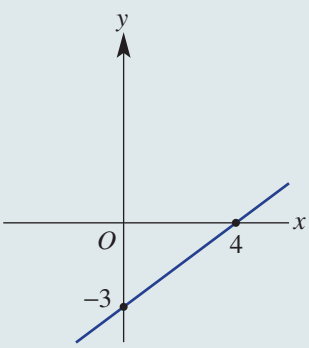
At the x-intercept, $y = 0$. Show all steps in each calculation.

FLUENCY 4(½), 5, 6 4(½), 5, 6(½), 7

Example 27 Sketching lines in the form *ax + by = d*, using *x*- and *y*-intercepts

Sketch a graph of $3x - 4y = 12$ by finding the x- and y-intercepts.

Solution		Explanation
$3x - 4y = 12$		
x-intercept ($y = 0$):	$3x - 4(0) = 12$	Find the x-intercept by substituting $y = 0$.
	$3x = 12$	Simplify. Any number multiplied by 0 is 0.
	$x = 4$	Divide both sides by 3 to solve for x.
y-intercept ($x = 0$):	$3(0) - 4y = 12$	Find the y-intercept by substituting $x = 0$.
	$-4y = 12$	Simplify and retain the negative sign.
	$y = -3$	Divide both sides by -4 to solve for y.



Sketch the graph by first marking the x-intercept $(4, 0)$ and the y-intercept $(0, -3)$ and join them with a line.

4 Sketch graphs of the following equations by finding the x- and y-intercepts.

a $3x + 2y = 6$ **b** $2x + 6y = 12$

c $3x - 4y = 12$ **d** $5x - 2y = 20$

e $-2x + 7y = 14$ **f** $-x + 3y = 3$

g $-x - 2y = 8$ **h** $-5x - 9y = 90$

Two calculations are required:
Substitute $y = 0$ and solve for x-intercept.
Substitute $x = 0$ and solve for y-intercept.

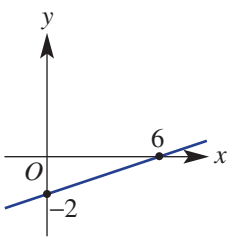
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6I

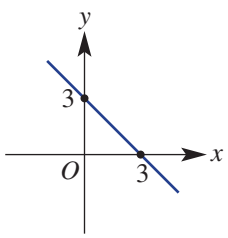
5 Match each of the following linear equations of the form $ax + by = d$ to one of the graphs shown.

a $x + y = 3$ **b** $2x - y = 4$ **c** $x - 3y = 6$

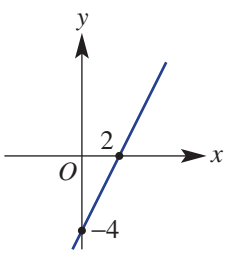
i



ii



iii

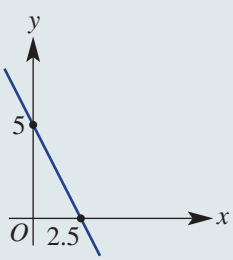


First find the x- and y-intercepts for the line equation.

Example 28 Sketching lines in the form $y = mx + c$, using x- and y-intercepts

Sketch the graph of $y = -2x + 5$ by finding the x- and y-intercepts.

Solution		Explanation
$y = -2x + 5$		
x-intercept ($y = 0$):	$0 = -2x + 5$	Substitute $y = 0$.
	$-5 = -2x$	Subtract 5 from both sides.
	$x = 2.5$	Divide both sides by -2.
y-intercept is ($x = 0$):	$y = -2(0) + 5$	Substitute $x = 0$.
	$= 5$	Simplify.



Sketch the graph by first marking the x-intercept (2.5, 0) and the y-intercept (0, 5).

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6 Sketch graphs of the following equations by finding the x- and y-intercepts.

a $y = 2x + 1$ **b** $y = 3x - 2$ **c** $y = -4x - 3$

d $y = -x + 2$ **e** $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 1$ **f** $y = \frac{3}{2}x - 3$

6e: $0 = -\frac{1}{2}x + 1$

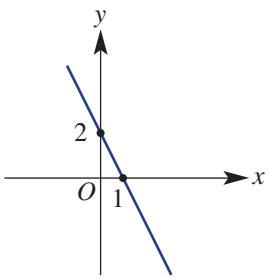
$\frac{1}{2}x = 1$

Now multiply both sides by 2.

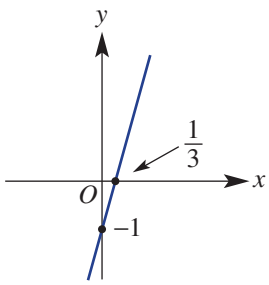
7 Match each of the following linear equations of the form $y = mx + c$ to one of the sketches shown.

a $y = x + 1$ **b** $y = 3x - 1$ **c** $y = -2x + 2$

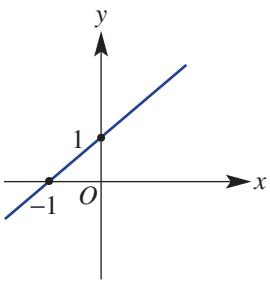
i



ii



iii



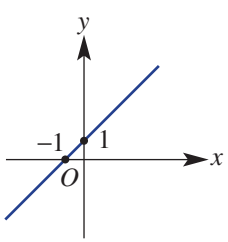
PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–10 9–12

8 Match each of the following linear equations to one of the graphs shown.

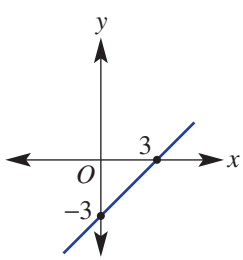
a $2x + y = 4$ **b** $x - y = 3$ **c** $y = x + 1$

d $y = -2x - 3$ **e** $3x - 5y = 15$ **f** $y = \frac{2}{5}x - 1$

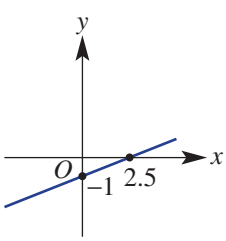
i



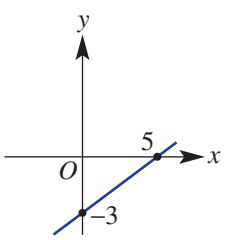
ii



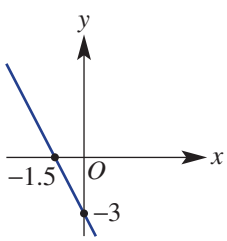
iii



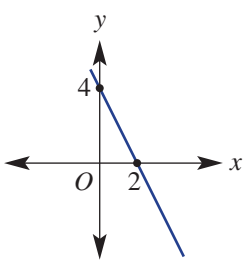
iv



v



vi



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

61

9 By first finding the x- and y-intercepts of the graphs of these equations, find the gradient in each case.

a $2x + y = 4$ **b** $x - 5y = 10$

c $4x - 2y = 5$ **d** $-1.5x + 3y = 4$

A quick sketch of each line and the axis intercepts will help to show the rise and run.

10 For the graphs of each of the following equations, find:

i the x- and y-intercepts

ii the area of the triangle enclosed by the x- and y-axes and the graph of each equation

Remember that the area of a triangle is $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$.

a $2x - y = 4$ **b** $-3x + 3y = 6$ **c** $y = -2x - 3$ **d** $y = \frac{1}{2}x + 2$

11 The height, h, in metres, of a lift above ground after t seconds is given by $h = 90 - 12t$.

a How high is the lift initially (i.e. at $t = 0$)?

b How long does it take for the lift to reach the ground (i.e. at $h = 0$)?

12 If $ax + by = d$, find a set of numbers for a, b and d that give an x-intercept of $(2, 0)$ and y-intercept of $(0, 4)$.

Use trial and error to start.

Axes intercepts using technology

— 13

13 For the following rules, use technology to sketch a graph and find the x- and y-intercepts.

a $y = 2x - 4$ **b** $y = -2x - 10$

c $y = -x + 1$ **d** $y + 2x = 4$

e $2y - 3x = 12$ **f** $3y - 2x = 2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6J Linear modelling

Interactive

Widgets

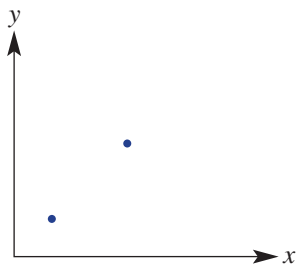
HOTsheets

Walkthrough

When given at least two points, you can find the equation of a straight line.

If the relationship between two variables is linear, then:

- The graph of the relation is a straight line.
- A rule can be written in the form $y = mx + c$.



Only one straight line can be drawn to pass through these two points.

Let's start:

Isabella has a trainee scholarship to complete her apprenticeship as a mechanic. She is paid \$50 per week plus \$8/h for work at the garage.

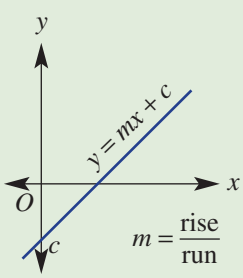
Isabella's weekly wage can be modelled by the rule:

Wage = $8t + 50$, where t is the number of hours worked in a week.

- Explain why the rule for Isabella's wage is Wage = $8t + 50$.
- Show how the rule can be used to find Isabella's wage after 10, 20 and 35 hours.
- Show how the rule can be used to find how long Isabella worked if she earned \$114, \$202 and \$370.

Key ideas

- The equation of a straight line can be determined using:
  - $y = mx + c$
  - Gradient = $m = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$
  - y-intercept = c
- If the y-intercept is not obvious, then it can be found by substituting a point.
- Vertical and horizontal lines:
  - Vertical lines have the equation $x = k$, where k is the x-intercept.
  - Horizontal lines have the equation $y = c$, where c is the y-intercept.
- Modelling may involve:
  - writing a rule linking two variables
  - sketching a graph
  - using the rule or the graph to help solve related problems



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 6J

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Each week Ava gets paid $30 plus $15 per hour. Decide which rule shows the relationship between Ava's total weekly pay, P, and the number of hours she works, n.

A $P = 30 + n$ **B** $P = 15n$ **C** $P = 30 + 15$ **D** $P = 30 + 15n$

2 Riley is 100 km from home and is cycling home at 20 km/h. Decide which rule shows the relationship between Riley's distance from home, d km, and the number of hours he has been cycling, t.

A $P = 100t$ **B** $P = 100 - 20$ **C** $P = 100 - 20t$ **D** $P = 100 + 20t$

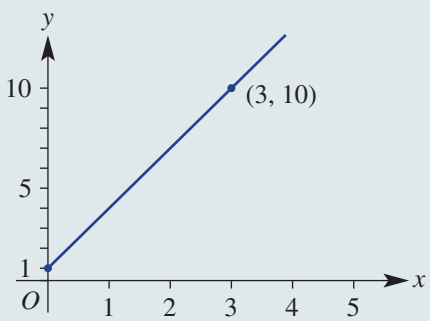
Example 29 Finding the equation of a line from a graph with a known y-intercept

For the straight line shown:

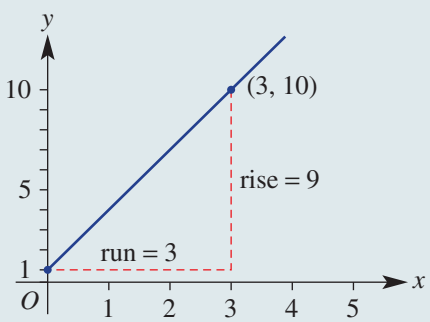
a Determine its gradient.

b Find the y-intercept.

c Write the equation of the line.



Solution	Explanation
a $m = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$ $= \frac{9}{3}$ $= 3$	Draw a triangle on the graph and decide whether the gradient is positive or negative.
b The y-intercept is 1, so $c = 1$.	Look at where the graph meets the y-axis.
c $y = 3x + 1$	Substitute m and c into $y = mx + c$.

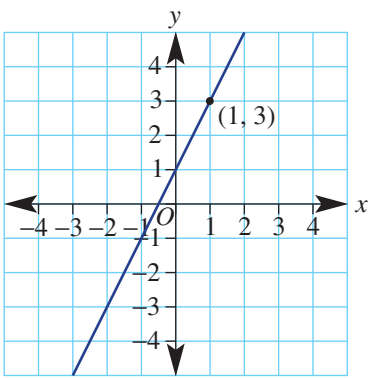


ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

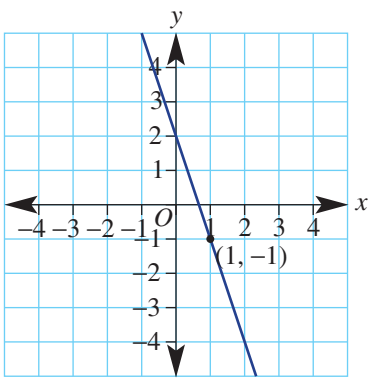
3 For the straight lines shown:
- **i** Determine the gradient.
- **ii** Find the y-intercept.
- **iii** Write the equation of the line.

To find the rise and run, form a right-angled triangle using the y-intercept and the second point.

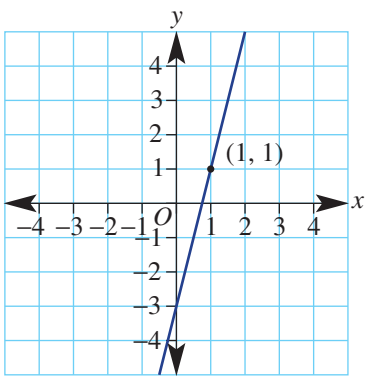
a



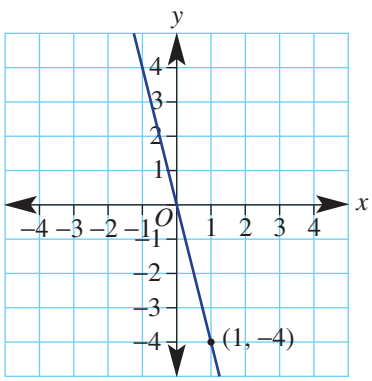
b



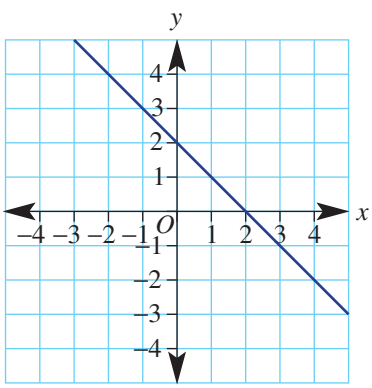
c



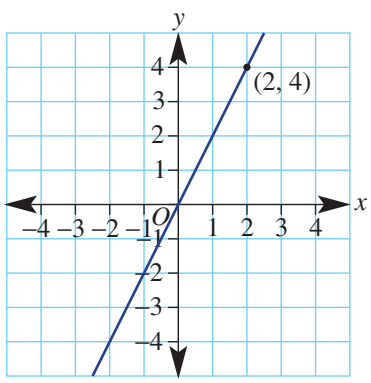
d



e



f



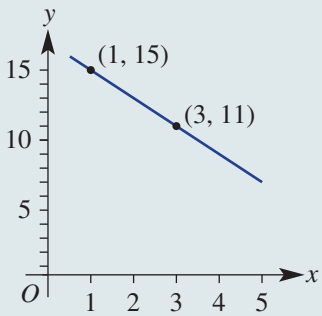
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6J

FLUENCY 4–6(½) 4–7(½)

Example 30 Finding the equation of a line when given a graph with two known points

For the straight line shown:
- **a** Determine the gradient.
- **b** Find the y-intercept.
- **c** Write the equation of the line.



Solution	Explanation
a $m = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$	The gradient is negative.
$= \frac{-4}{2}$	Run $= 3 - 1 = 2$ Rise $= 11 - 15 = -4$ A 'fall' of 4 means rise $= -4$.
$= -2$	Simplify.
b $y = -2x + c$	Write $y = mx + c$ using $m = -2$.
$11 = -2(3) + c$	Substitute a chosen point into $y = -2x + c$, (use $(3, 11)$ or $(1, 15)$). Here, $x = 3$ and $y = 11$.
$11 = -6 + c$	
$17 = c$, so the y-intercept is 17.	Simplify and solve for c.
c $y = -2x + 17$	Substitute $m = -2$ and $c = 17$ into $y = mx + c$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

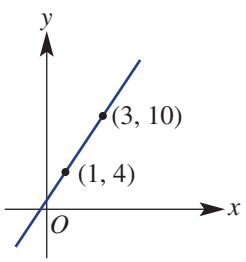
4 For the straight lines shown:

i Determine the gradient.

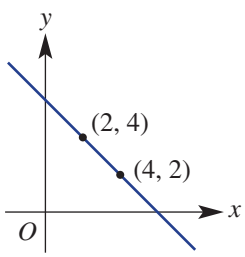
ii Find the y-intercept.

iii Write the equation of the line.

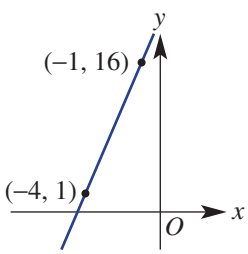
a



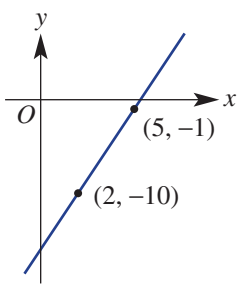
b



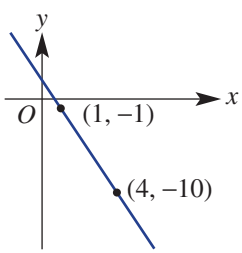
c



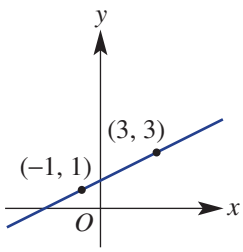
d



e



f



For m, find the rise and run between the two given points.

Choose either point to substitute when finding c. If $m = 4$ and $(3, 5) = (x, y)$:

$y = mx + c$.

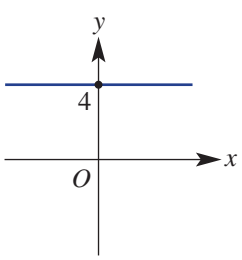
$5 = 4 \times 3 + c$

Solve for c.

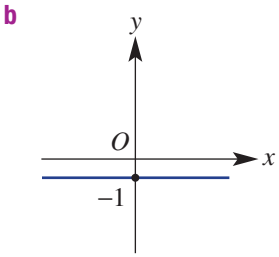
5 Determine the equation of each of the following lines. Remember from Section 6G that vertical and horizontal lines have special equations.

Vertical lines cut the x-axis and have an equation such as $x = 3$. Horizontal lines cut the y-axis and have an equation such as $y = -4$.

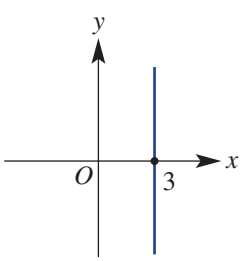
a



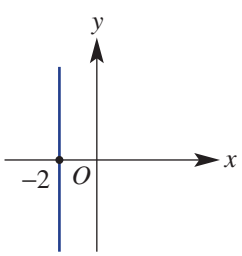
b



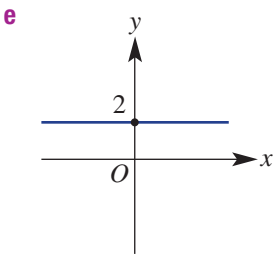
c



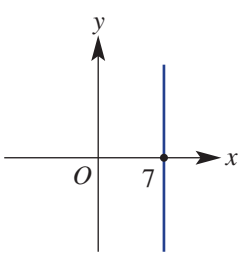
d



e



f

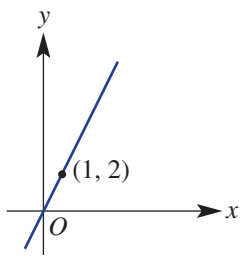


ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

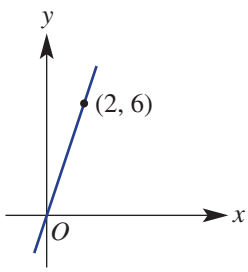
6J

6 Remember that equations of graphs that pass through the origin are of the form $y = mx$ (since $c = 0$). Find the equation of each of these graphs.

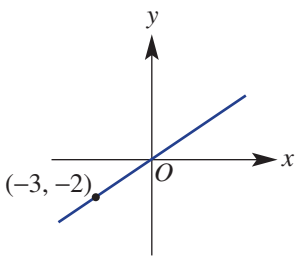
a



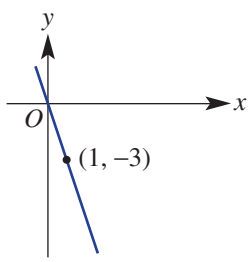
b



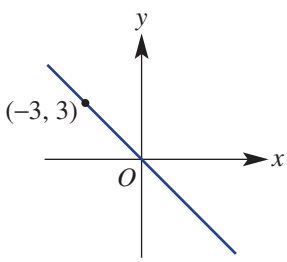
c



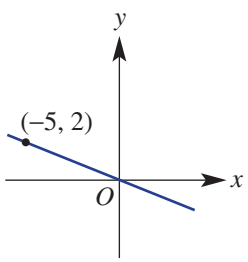
d



e



f



7 For the line joining the following pairs of points, find:

i the gradient **ii** the equation of the line

a $(0, 0)$ and $(1, 7)$ **b** $(0, 0)$ and $(2, -3)$

c $(-1, 1)$ and $(1, 3)$ **d** $(-2, 3)$ and $(2, -3)$

e $(-4, 2)$ and $(7, 2)$ **f** $(3, -3)$ and $(3, 1)$

Substitute the gradient and a point in $y = mx + c$ to find c in part **ii**.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8, 10, 11

Example 31 Modelling with linear graphs

An employee gets paid \$20 plus \$10 for each hour of work. If he earns \$$C$ for t hours of work, complete the following.

a Write a rule for C in terms of t.

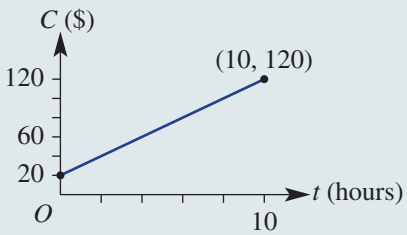
b Sketch a graph, using t between 0 and 10.

c Use your rule to find:

i the amount earned after working 8 hours

ii the number of hours worked if \$180 is earned

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Solution	Explanation
a $C = 10t + 20$	\$10 is earned for each hour and \$20 is a fixed amount.
b 	20 is the y-intercept and the gradient is $10 = \frac{10}{1}$. For $t = 10$, $C = 10(10) + 20 = 120$.
c i $C = 10(8) + 20$ $= 100$ \$100 is earned.	Substitute $t = 8$ into $C = 10t + 20$. Simplify. Write your answer in words.
ii $180 = 10t + 20$ $160 = 10t$ $t = 16$ 16 hours of work is completed.	Substitute $C = 180$ into $C = 10t + 20$. Subtract 20 from both sides. Divide both sides by 10. Write your answer in words.

8 A seasonal worker gets paid \$10 plus \$2 per kg of tomatoes that they pick. If the worker earns \$$P$ for n kg of tomatoes picked, complete the following.

rate of pay

$y = mx + c$

P n fixed amount

- **a** Write a rule for P in terms of n.
- **b** Sketch a graph of P against n for n between 0 and 10.
- **c** Use your rule to find:
  - **i** the amount earned after picking 9 kg of tomatoes
  - **ii** the number of kilograms of tomatoes picked if the worker earns \$57

9 An architect charges \$100 for the initial consultation plus \$60 per hour thereafter. If the architect earns \$$A$ for t hours of work, complete the following.

Draw a line between the points at $t = 0$ and $t = 15$.

- **a** Write a rule for A in terms of t.
- **b** Sketch a graph of A against t for t between 0 and 15.
- **c** Use your rule to find:
  - **i** the amount earned after working for 12 hours
  - **ii** the number of hours worked if the architect earns \$700

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6J

10 A man's weight when holding two empty buckets of water is 80 kg. 1 kg is added for each litre of water poured into the buckets. If the man's total weight is W kg with l litres of water, complete the following.

- **a** Write a rule for W in terms of l.
- **b** Sketch a graph of W against l for l between 0 and 20.
- **c** Use your rule to find:
  - **i** the man's weight after 7 litres of water are added
  - **ii** the number of litres of water added if the man's weight is 109 kg

11 The amount of water (W litres) in a leaking tank after t hours is given by the rule $W = -2t + 1000$.

- **a** State the gradient and y-intercept for the graph of the rule.
- **b** Sketch a graph of W against t for t between 0 and 500.
- **c** State the initial water volume at $t = 0$.
- **d** Find the volume of water after:
  - **i** 320 hours **ii** 1 day **iii** 1 week
- **e** Find the time taken, in hours, for the water volume to fall to:
  - **i** 300 litres **ii** 185 litres

Production lines

— 12

12 An assembly plant needs to order some new parts. Three companies can supply them but at different rates.

- Mandy's Millers charge: set-up fee \$0 + \$1.40 per part
- Terry's Turners charge: set-up fee \$3000 + \$0.70 per part
- Lenny's Lathes charge: set-up fee \$4000 + \$0.50 per part

- **a** Complete a table of values similar to the following for each of the companies.

No. of parts (p)	0	1000	2000	3000	4000	5000	6000	7000	8000	9000
Cost (C)										

- **b** Plot a graph of the total cost against the number of parts for each company on the same set of axes. Make your axes quite large as there are three graphs to complete.

- **c** Use the graphs to find the lowest price for:
  - **i** 1500 parts
  - **ii** 1000 parts
  - **iii** 6500 parts
  - **iv** 9500 parts
- **d** Advise the assembly plant when it is best to use Mandy's, Terry's or Lenny's company.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6K Direct and inverse proportion

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

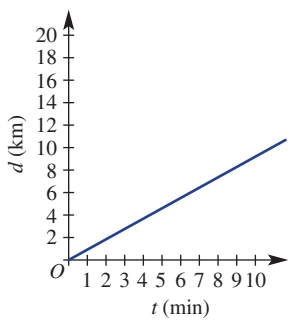
Two variables are said to be directly proportional when the rate of change of one variable with respect to the other is constant. So if one variable increases, then the other also increases and at the same rate. For example, distance is directly proportional to speed because, in a given time, if the speed is doubled then the distance travelled is doubled also.

Two variables are said to be indirectly proportional when an increase in one variable causes the other variable to decrease. For example, when a pizza is shared equally, the size of each pizza slice is indirectly (or inversely) proportional to the number of people sharing it. If the number of people sharing increases, then the size of each pizza slice decreases.

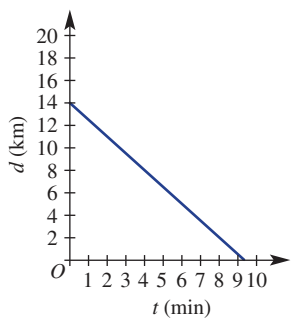
Let's start: Discovering the features of direct variation

Here are five different travel graphs showing how the distance from home varies with time.

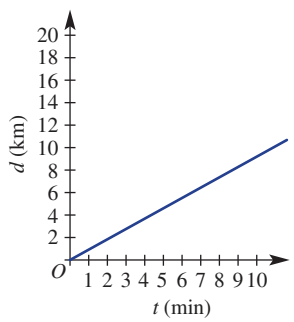
A



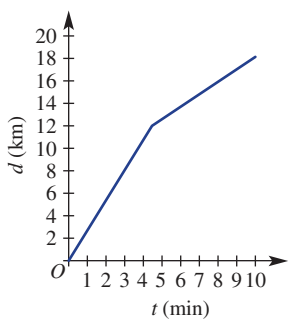
B



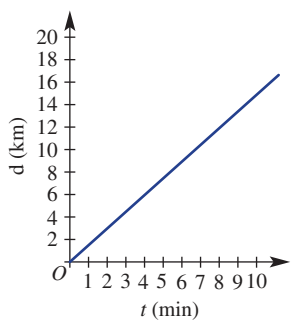
C



D



E



List all the graphs that show:

- The distance from home increases as the time increases.
- The distance from home decreases as the time increases.
- The person travels at a constant speed throughout the trip.
- The person starts from home.
- The person starts from home and also travels at a constant speed throughout the trip.
- The graph starts at $(0, 0)$ and the gradient is constant.
- The distance is directly proportional to the time (i.e. the equation is of the form $y = mx$).

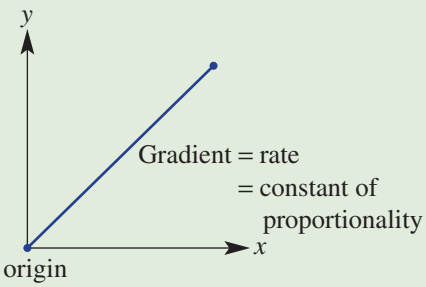
List three features of graphs that show when two variables are directly proportional to each other.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

- For two variables that are **directly proportional**:
  - Both variables will increase together or decrease together. For example, the cost of buying some sausages is directly proportional to the weight of the sausages. If the weight increases, then the cost increases; when the weight decreases, the cost decreases.

Graph of direct variation



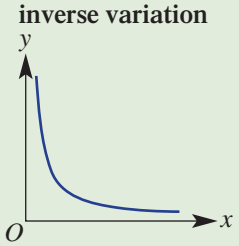
Directly proportional When two variables increase together or decrease together at the same rate.

Inversely (or indirectly) proportional When one variable increases, then the other variable decreases

  - The rate of change of one variable with respect to the other is constant.
  - The graph is a straight line passing through the origin $(0, 0)$.
  - The rule is of the form $y = mx$ (i.e. $c = 0$).
  - The rule is usually written as $y = kx$, where k is the constant of proportionality.
  - The constant of proportionality, k, is the gradient with units.
  - The constant of proportionality, k, is the same as the rate.

- For two variables that are **inversely or indirectly proportional**:
  - When one variable increases, then the other variable decreases.
  - The graph is a curve showing that as x increases, then y decreases. For example, speed is indirectly or inversely proportional to travelling time. As the speed decreases, the time taken to travel a particular distance increases; as the speed increases, the time taken to travel a particular distance decreases.

Graph of indirect or inverse variation



- Changing rate units
  - Each of the units can be changed to the required unit.
  - Then find the value of the rate per 1 'unit'.

  For example: 90 km/h = 90 000 m/60 min

$\div 60$ (m) and $\div 60$ (min)

= 1500 m in 1 min

90 km/h = 1500 m/min

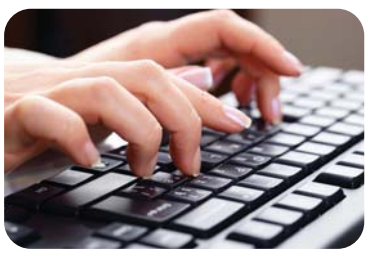
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 6K

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 4

1 For each part, state whether the variables are directly or indirectly (i.e. inversely) proportional.

- **a** As the number of questions correct increases, the total mark for the test increases.
- **b** As the speed decreases, the time taken to travel a particular distance increases.
- **c** As the number of hours worked increases, the pay for that work increases.
- **d** As the size of a computer file decreases, the time required to transfer it decreases.
- **e** As the rate of typing words per minute increases, the time needed to type an assignment decreases.



2 Write in the missing words for these statements.

- **a** As the volume of fuel decreases, the distance a car can travel _____.
- **b** The volume of remaining fuel and the distance travelled are in _____ proportion.
- **c** As the volume of fuel decreases, the cost of filling the tank _____.
- **d** The volume of *remaining* fuel and the cost of filling the tank are in _____ or _____ proportion.

3 **a** Which of these equations show that y is directly proportional to x?

i $y = 2x + 4$ **ii** $y = 3x$ **iii** $y = x - 2$
iv $y = 8x + 5$ **v** $y = 70x$

b State the value of k, the constant of proportionality, for each of these direct proportion equations.

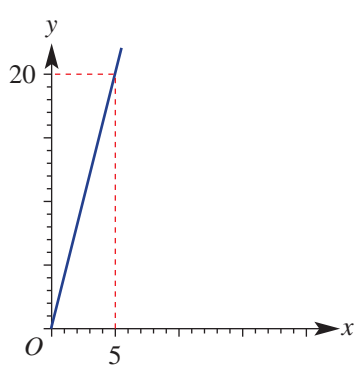
i $y = 5x$ **ii** $y = 12x$ **iii** $d = 40t$
iv $V = 22t$ **v** $C = 7.5w$

The direct proportion rule is $y = kx$, where k is the constant of proportionality.

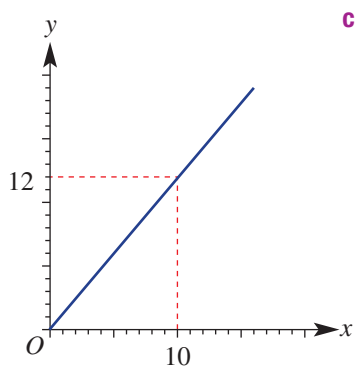
k = gradient = $\frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$
Equation: $y = kx$

4 For each of the following graphs of direct variation, determine the value of k and write the equation.

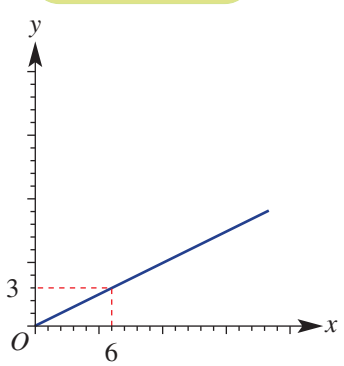
a



b



c



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6K

FLUENCY 5, 6, 8, 9(½) 6, 8, 9(½)

5 The cost (C) of buying fuel is directly proportional to the volume (V) of fuel pumped.

a Copy and complete this table for the cost of diesel, using the rule $C = 1.5V$.

Volume (V) of diesel, in litres	0	10	20	30	40	50
Cost (C), in dollars						

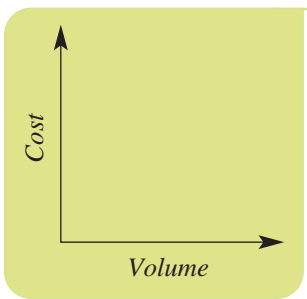
b Plot these points and then use a ruler to join them to form a neat graph of Volume (V) vs Cost (C).

c Find the gradient, m, of the line.

d At what rate is the cost of fuel increasing, in \$/L?

e What is the constant of proportionality, k, between cost and volume?

Rate = gradient with units
Rate = constant of proportionality, k.

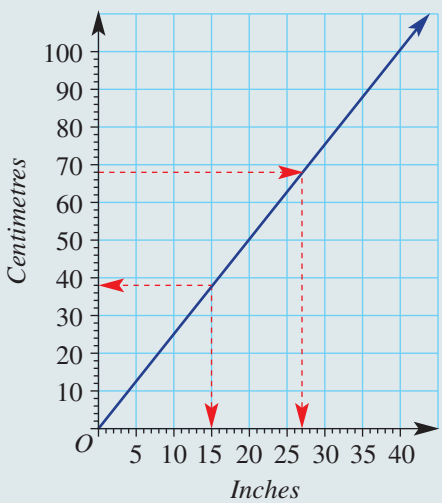


Example 32 Using a unit conversion graph

A length, measured in centimetres, is directly proportional to that length in inches. Use the graph below to make the following unit conversions.

a 15 inches to cm **b** 68 cm to inches

Length unit conversion graph



Solution	Explanation
a 38 cm	Start at 15 inches. Now move up to the line and then across to the centimetre scale.
b 27 inches	Start at 68 cm. Now move across to the line and then down to the inches scale. Round your answer to the nearest whole number.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6 Use the graph in Example 32 to make the following unit conversions. Round your answers to the nearest whole number.

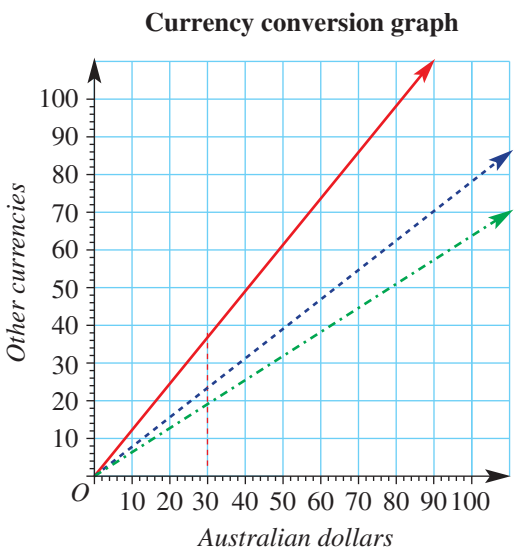
- **a** 19 inches to cm
- **b** 25 cm to inches
- **c** 1 foot (12 inches) to cm
- **d** 1 hand (4 inches) to cm
- **e** The height, in cm, of a miniature pony that is 7.5 hands high.
- **f** The height, in inches, of the world's shortest living man, who is 54.6 cm tall.
- **g** The height, in cm, of the world's shortest living woman, who is about 2 feet and 1 inch tall.
- **h** The length, in cm, of a giant Australian earthworm that is 39.5 inches long.

7 Use the length unit conversion graph in Example 32 to answer these questions.

- **a** Convert 94 cm to inches and use these values to find the gradient of the line, to two decimal places.
- **b** State the conversion rate in cm/inch, to two decimal places.
- **c** State the value of k, the constant of proportionality, to two decimal places.
- **d** Write the direct proportion equation between centimetres (y) and inches (x).
- **e** Use the equation to calculate the number of centimetres in 50 inches.

Gradient $= \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}} = \frac{\text{cm}}{\text{inches}}$
k = rate = gradient with units

8 At any given time, an amount in Australian dollars is directly proportional to that amount in a foreign currency. This graph shows the direct variation (at a particular time) between Australian dollars (AUD) and New Zealand dollars (NZD), European euros (EUR) and Great British pounds (GBP).



- **a** Use the graph to make these currency conversions.
  - **i** 80 AUD to NZD
  - **ii** 80 AUD to EUR
  - **iii** 80 AUD to GBP
  - **iv** 50 NZD to AUD
  - **v** 32 EUR to AUD
  - **vi** 26 GBP to AUD
- **b** Answer these questions, using the line that shows the direct variation between the euro (EUR) and the Australian dollar (AUD).
  - **i** Find 40 EUR in AUD and, hence, find the gradient of the line, to one decimal place.
  - **ii** State the conversion rate in EUR/AUD, to one decimal place.
  - **iii** State the value of k, the constant of proportionality, to one decimal place.
  - **iv** Write the direct proportion equation between EUR (y) and AUD (x).
  - **v** Use the equation to calculate the value in euros for 625 Australian dollars.

The rate in EUR/AUD = ? euros, per 1 Australian dollar.
The rate = the constant of proportionality, k.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6K

Example 33 Converting units between rates

Convert the following rates to the units given in brackets.

a \$12/h (cents/min)
b 7.2 L/h (mL/s)
c 90 km/h (m/s)
d 300 g/month (kg/year)

Solution	Explanation
a \$12/h = \$12 in 1 hour	
= 1200 cents in 60 minutes	Change each unit to the required unit.
= 20 cents in 1 minute	Divide both amounts by 60 so that it is 'per 1 unit'.
= 20 cents/min	The solidus or forward slash (/) is read as 'per'.
b 7.2 L/h = 7.2 litres in 1 hour	
= 7200 mL in 3600 seconds	7.2 L × 1000 = 7200 mL; 1 h × 60 × 60 = 3600 s
= 2 mL in 1 second	Divide both amounts by 3600 so that it is 'per 1 unit'.
= 2 mL/s	
c 90 km/h = 90 km in 1 hour	
= 90 000 m in 3600 seconds	90 km × 1000 = 90 000 m; 1 h × 60 × 60 = 3600 s
= 25 m in 1 second	Divide both amounts by 3600 so that it is 'per 1 unit'.
= 25 m/s	
d 300 g/month = 300 grams in 1 month	Multiply both amounts by 12 to get 1 year's amount.
= 3600 grams in 12 months	3600 g ÷ 1000 = 3.6 kg
= 3.6 kg in 1 year	
= 3.6 kg/year	

9 Convert the following rates to the units given in brackets.

a \$9/h (cents/min)
b \$24/h (cents/min)
c 10.8 L/h (mL/s)
d 18 L/h (mL/s)
e 72 km/h (m/s)
f 18 km/h (m/s)
g \$15/kg (cents/g)
h \$32/kg (cents/g)
i 400 g/month (kg/year)
j 220 g/day (kg/week)

1000 m = 1 km
1000 mL = 1 L
1000 g = 1 kg

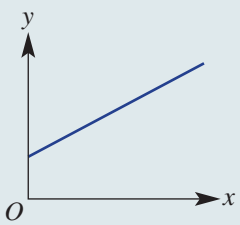
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 10, 11 12–13(½)

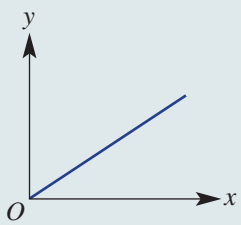
Example 34 Recognising direct and inverse proportion from graphs

Decide whether the following graphs show x and y in direct proportion or inverse (i.e. indirect) proportion and state the reason why.

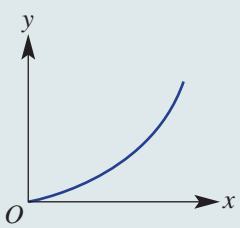
a



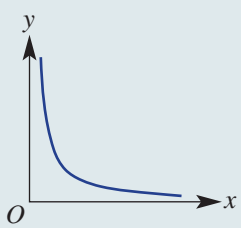
b



c



d



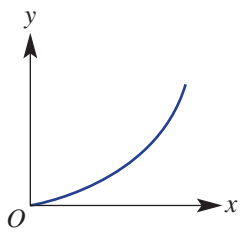
Solution	Explanation
a Not in direct proportion because the line doesn't pass through the origin.	A graph showing direct proportion is a straight line through the origin $(0, 0)$.
b Yes, in direct proportion because it is a straight line through the origin.	
c Not in direct proportion because it is not a straight line.	As x increases then y increases, so this graph is not showing inverse proportion.
d Yes, in inverse proportion because as x increases, y decreases.	A graph showing inverse (or indirect) proportion is a curve showing that when x increases, y decreases.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

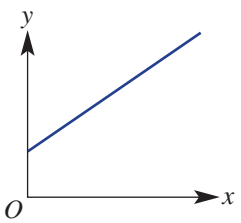
6K

10 Decide if the following graphs show direct proportion or inverse proportion and state your reasons.

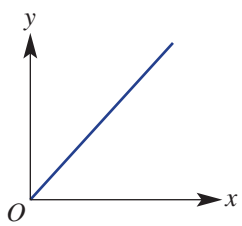
a



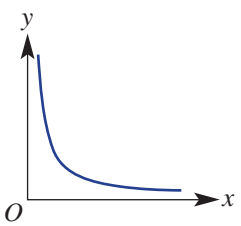
b



c



d



11 For each of the following pair of variables, describe, using sentences, why the variables are in direct proportion to each other or why they are not in direct proportion.

a The number of *hours* worked and *wages* earned at a fixed rate per hour.
b The *cost* of buying tomatoes and the *number of kilograms* at a fixed price per kilogram.
c The *speed* and *time* taken to travel a certain distance.
d The *size* of a movie file and the *time* taken to download it to a computer at a constant rate of kB/s.
e The *cost* of a taxi ride and the *distance* travelled. The cost includes flag fall (i.e. a starting charge) and a fixed rate of $/km.

Example 35 Forming direct proportion equations when given the constant of proportionality, *k*

For a fixed price per litre, the cost (C) of buying fuel is directly proportional to the number (n) of litres.

a Write the direct proportion equation, given that $k = \$1.45$/L.
b Use this equation to calculate the cost of 63 L.

Solution	Explanation
a $C = 1.45n$	$y = kx$ becomes $C = kn$, where $k = 1.45$.
b $C = 1.45 \times 63$	Substitute $n = 63$ into the equation.
$= \$91.35$	Write the answer in dollars.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

12 **a** For a fixed price per litre, the cost (C) of buying fuel is directly proportional to the number (n) of litres of fuel pumped.
- **i** Write the direct proportion equation, given that $k = \$1.38$/L.
- **ii** Use this equation to calculate the cost of 48 L.

b For a fixed rate of pay, wages (W) are directly proportional to the number (n) of hours worked.
- **i** Write the direct proportion equation, given that $k = \$11.50$/h.
- **ii** Use this equation to calculate the wages earned for 37.5 hours worked.

c At a fixed flow rate, the volume (V) of water flowing from a tap is directly proportional to the amount of time (t) the tap has been turned on.
- **i** Write the direct proportion equation, given that $k = 6$ L/min.
- **ii** Use this equation to calculate the volume of water, in litres, flowing from a tap for 4 hours.
- **iii** Change the constant of proportionality to units of L/day and re-write the equation with this new value of k.
- **iv** Use this equation to calculate the volume of water, in litres, flowing from a tap for 1 week.

d For a fixed speed, the distance (d) that a car travels is directly proportional to time (t).
- **i** Write the direct proportion equation, given that $k = 90$ km/h.
- **ii** Use this equation to calculate the distance travelled after 3.5 h.
- **iii** Change the constant of proportionality to units of m/s and re-write the equation with this new value of k.
- **iv** Use this equation to calculate the distance, in metres, that a car would travel in 4 seconds.

Example 36 Forming direct proportion equations from given information

The amount of wages Sonali earns is in direct proportion to the number of hours she works.
- **a** Find the constant of proportionality, k, given that Sonali earned \$166.50 in 18 hours.
- **b** Write the direct proportion equation relating Sonali's wages (W) and the number of hours (n) that she worked.
- **c** Calculate the wages earned for 8 hours and 45 minutes of work.
- **d** Calculate the number of hours Sonali must work to earn \$259.

Solution	Explanation
a $k = \frac{166.50}{18}$ $= \$9.25$/h	The constant of proportionality, k, is the rate of pay. Include units in the answer.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6K

b $W = 9.25n$ — $y = kx$ becomes $W = kn$, where $k = 9.25$.

c $W = 9.25n$ — Write the equation.

$= 9.25 \times 8.75$ — 45 min $= 45 \div 60 = 0.75$ h. Substitute $n = 8.75$.

$= \$80.94$ — Write \$ in the answer and round to two decimal places.

d $W = 9.25n$ — Write the equation.

$259 = 9.25n$ — Substitute $W = 259$.

$\frac{259}{9.25} = n$ — Divide both sides by 9.25.

$n = 28$

$\therefore$ Sonali must work for 28 h. — Write the answer in words.

Check: $W = 9.25 \times 28 = \$259$ — Check that your answer is correct.

13 **a** Daniel's wages earned are in direct proportion to the hours he works at the local service station.

- **i** Find the constant of proportionality, k, given that Daniel earned \$200 in 16 hours.
- **ii** Write the direct proportion equation relating Daniel's wages (W) and the number of hours (n) worked.
- **iii** Calculate the wage earned for 6 hours of work.
- **iv** Calculate the number of hours Daniel must work to earn a wage of \$237.50.

b The amount that a farmer earns from selling wheat is in direct proportion to the number of tonnes harvested.

- **i** Find the constant of proportionality, k, given that a farmer receives \$8296 for 34 tonnes of wheat.
- **ii** Write the direct proportion equation relating selling price (P) and number of tonnes (n).
- **iii** Calculate the selling price of 136 tonnes of wheat.
- **iv** Calculate the number of tonnes of harvested wheat that is sold for \$286 700.

c When flying at a constant speed, the distance that an aeroplane has travelled is in direct proportion to the time it has been flying.

- **i** Find the constant of proportionality, k, given that the plane flies 1161 km in 1.5 h.
- **ii** Write the direct proportion equation relating distance (d) and time (t).
- **iii** Calculate the time taken, in hours, for the aeroplane to fly from Sydney to Perth, a distance of around 3300 km. Round your answer to two decimal places.
- **iv** Change the constant of proportionality, k, to units of km/min and re-write the equation with this new value of k.
- **v** Calculate the distance that the plane would fly in 48 minutes.
- **vi** If the plane is 200 km from a city, determine how many minutes it would take for the plane to be flying over the city.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Currency conversions

— 14

14 At any given time, an amount of money in a foreign currency is in direct proportion to the corresponding amount in Australian dollars.
For example, if 8 Hong Kong dollars is equivalent to 1 Australian dollar, the conversion rate is HK $8/AUD and the direct proportion equation is HK = 8 × AUD.

- To change A$24 to Hong Kong dollars, we must substitute 24 for AUD:
  $HK = 8 \times 24$
  $= \$192$
- To change HK $24 to Australian dollars, we substitute 24 for HK:
  $24 = 8 \times AUD$
  $\frac{24}{8} = AUD$
  $AUD = \$3$

Follow the example above to complete the following questions.

a Singapore dollar (SGD)
- **i** Write the direct proportion equation, given the conversion rate is 1.2 SGD/AUD.
- **ii** Convert AUD 240 to SGD.
- **iii** Convert SGD 240 to AUD.

b Chinese yuan (CNY)
- **i** Write the direct proportion equation, given the conversion rate is 6.47 CNY/AUD.
- **ii** Convert AUD 75 to CNY.
- **iii** Convert CNY 75 to AUD.

c Korean won (KRW)
- **i** Write the direct proportion equation, given the conversion rate is 1160 KRW/AUD.
- **ii** Convert AUD 1000 to KRW.
- **iii** Convert KRW 1000 to AUD.

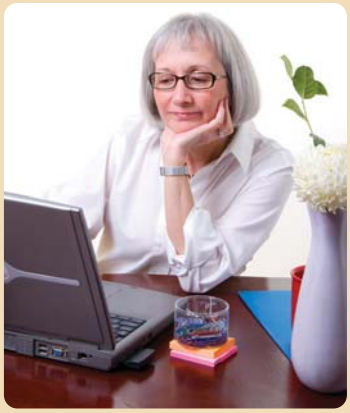
d South African rand (ZAR)
- **i** Write the direct proportion equation, given the conversion rate is 9.5 ZAR/AUD.
- **ii** Convert AUD 50 to ZAR.
- **iii** Convert ZAR 50 to AUD.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Maths@Work: Accountant or small business owner

Accountants and small business owners need to have an understanding of operating costs and income. It is important to understand break-even points, which are when the costs or expenses equal the income. This is essential knowledge for small business owners, given that many start-up businesses fail in their first 3 years.

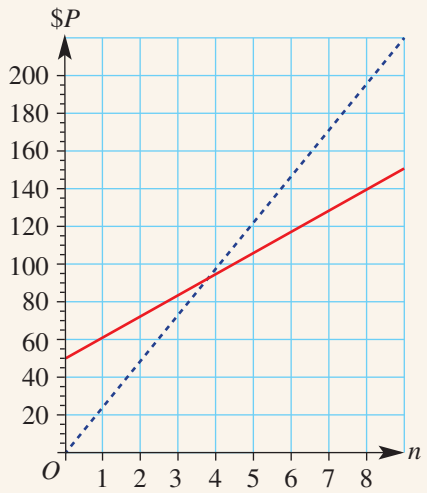
Reading and drawing graphs helps accountants and business owners understand break-even points. Many business situations can be displayed using linear functions.



Complete these questions that an accountant or small business owner may face in their day-to-day job.

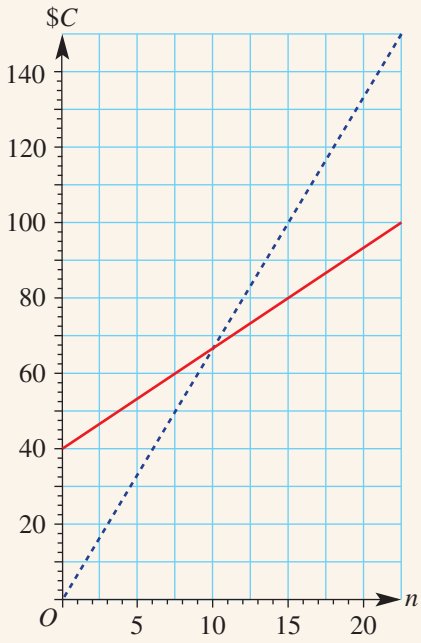
1 Chloe buys and sells necklaces at a local community weekend market. She sells each necklace for \$25 and her costs, C, are calculated using the formula $C = 50 + 12n$, where n is the number of necklaces Chloe buys and \$50 is the fixed cost of hiring the stand each weekend.

- **a** For the graph shown at right, which line represents Chloe's costs and which line represents Chloe's income?
- **b** State the possible numbers of necklaces to be sold each weekend that will result in Chloe making a loss.
- **c** What is the loss at the break-even point? What is the profit at the break-even point?
- **d** State the minimum number of necklaces to be sold each weekend for Chloe to start making a profit.
- **e** Sketch a copy of the graph and shade the region that represents the area of profit.
- **f** Write down a rule, in terms of n, for calculating Chloe's profit, \$$P$, each weekend.
- **g** How much profit is made by selling:
  - **i** 10 necklaces?
  - **ii** 15 necklaces?
  - **iii** 30 necklaces?
  - **iv** 50 necklaces?



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 Consider this graph for a company creating retro drinking glasses.



- **a** What is the value of the y-intercept for the costs relationship, and what could it represent in this situation?
- **b** What is the wholesale price of each glass?
- **c** What is the gradient of the income line and what does this represent?
- **d** How many glasses must be sold for the company to break even?
- **e** Write an equation for the:
  - **i** cost
  - **ii** income
  - **iii** profit

Using technology

3 An industrial plant produces car parts, which they sell to car manufacturers for \$80 per car part. The costs of production for the plant are \$200 plus \$50 per car part produced each day.

- **a** Write an equation for the costs (\$$C$) of production of n car parts.
- **b** Write an equation for the income (\$$I$) generated.
- **c** Use a graphics calculator or digital graphing tool to graph these two equations.
- **d** From the graphs, what is the break-even point for the plant each day?
- **e** Determine the profit when 32 car parts are sold on any given day.

4 Alex has a start-up company. He estimates his costs, including staff, rent, electricity and insurance, to be \$3000 per month. He buys computer parts at \$4 per part and sells them on at a retail price of \$$a$ per part.

Use a graphics calculator or a digital graphing tool to answer these questions.

- **a** By drawing pairs of graphs, find the number of parts, x, and Alex's costs, at each break-even point when the retail price, \$$a$, per part is:
  i \$10 **ii** \$12 **iii** \$14 **iv** \$16
  Hint: Enter all the graph equations into the graphics calculator or computer graphing tool and then select two equations at a time to graph.
- **b** Alex buys a batch of 500 parts. Write an equation for Alex's profit when these parts are sold at the retail price \$$a$ per part.
- **c** Calculate the profit made when the parts are sold at each value of \$$a$ given in part **a** above.
- **d** Give one reason why Alex must limit the retail price charged per part.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Puzzles and games

1 What is not so devious? Solve the puzzle to find the answer.
Match the letter beside each question to the answers below.

Find where each line cuts the x-axis:

O $y = 3x - 24$

! $y = -\frac{3}{2}x - 9$

N $4x - 2y = -20$

I This line joins $(0, 4)$ to $(5, -1)$.

S $x = -7$

Find the gradient of each line:

E $y = 3x - 4$

L $y = -\frac{5}{2}x + 7$

P This line joins the origin to $(3, -6)$.

G This line joins $(2, 5)$ to $(-4, 11)$.

T $y = 5$

$\overline{-2}$ $\overline{-2.5}$ $\overline{8}$ $\overline{-0}$ $\overline{-0}$ $\overline{4}$ $\overline{-5}$ $\overline{-1}$ $\overline{-2.5}$ $\overline{4}$ $\overline{-5}$ $\overline{3}$ $\overline{-7}$ $\overline{-6}$

2 Solve the wordfind below.

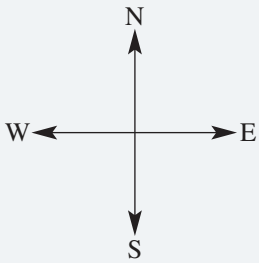
T	F	Z	T	V	M	V	Z	J	H	E	R
O	W	I	M	J	G	R	J	O	A	L	A
T	M	G	T	E	R	K	R	U	T	B	T
E	C	N	A	T	S	I	D	N	E	A	E
S	T	M	P	R	Z	A	E	S	I	I	F
R	P	H	G	O	X	M	E	O	Z	R	E
D	Y	E	N	Z	G	J	U	R	X	A	F
H	G	T	E	E	J	Q	W	G	C	V	H
I	A	L	S	D	R	U	S	G	U	N	A
L	P	G	R	A	P	H	A	P	R	P	I

- DISTANCE
- GRAPH
- HORIZONTAL
- INCREASE
- RATE
- SEGMENT
- SPEED
- TIME
- VARIABLE

3 Cooper and Sophie are in a cycling orienteering competition.

- From the starting point, Cooper cycles 7 km east, then 3 km south to checkpoint 1. From there, Cooper cycles 5 km east and 8 km north to checkpoint 2.
- Sophie cycles 10 km north from the starting point to checkpoint 3.

Use calculations to show that the distance between where Sophie and Cooper are now is the same as the direct distance that Cooper is now from the starting point.



4 Lucas and Charlotte want to raise money for their school environment club, so they have volunteered to run a strawberry ice-cream stall at their town's annual show.
It costs \$200 to hire the stall and they make \$1.25 profit on each ice-cream sold.

a How many ice-creams must be sold to make zero profit (i.e. not a loss)?

b If they make \$416.25 profit, how many ice-creams were sold?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

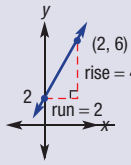
Chapter summary

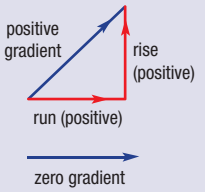
Straight-line graphs

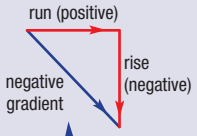
Gradient of a line

Gradient measures the slope of a line

Gradient, $m = \frac{\text{rise}}{\text{run}}$ e.g. $m = \frac{4}{2} = 2$

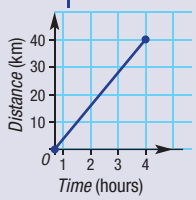






A rate equals the gradient with units.

e.g. Speed $= \frac{40}{4} = 10$ km/h



Equation of a line

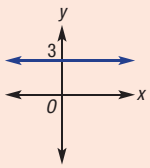
$y = mx + c$

gradient m, y-intercept c

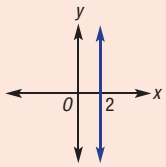
- The rule is a linear equation.
- The graph is made up of points in a straight line.

Special lines

Horizontal lines e.g. $y = 3$



Vertical lines e.g. $x = 2$

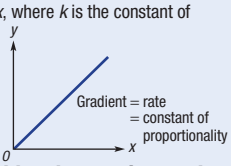


Parallel and perpendicular lines

- Parallel-lines have the same gradient; e.g. $y = 3x - 4$ and $y = 3x + 1$
- For perpendicular lines, the product of their gradients is -1, so $m_1 \times m_2 = -1$ or $m_2 = -\frac{1}{m_1}$.

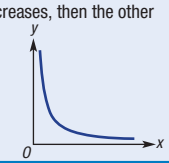
For two variables that are directly proportional ⭐

- Both variables will increase or decrease together at the same rate.
- The rule is $y = kx$, where k is the constant of proportionality.



For two variables that are inversely (or indirectly) proportional ⭐

- When one variable increases, then the other variable decreases.
- The graph is a curve.



Sketching a line

Plotting straight-line graphs:

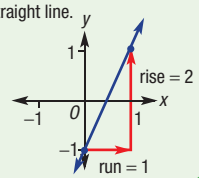
- Complete a table of values.
- Plot points and join them to form a straight line.

Using the y-intercept and gradient:

- Plot the y-intercept (c).
- Use the gradient to plot the next point.
- Join points to form a straight line.

e.g. $y = 2x - 1$

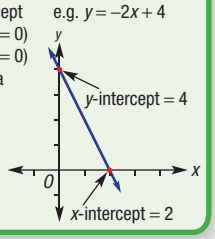
$c = -1$ $m = \frac{2}{1}$



Using the axes intercepts

- Plot each axis intercept
  x-intercept (when $y = 0$)
  y-intercept (when $x = 0$)
- Join points to form a straight line.

e.g. $y = -2x + 4$



Midpoint of a line segment

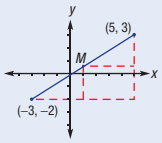
Find the average of the end point coordinates.

$M = \left(\frac{x_1 + x_2}{2}, \frac{y_1 + y_2}{2}\right)$

$x = \frac{-3+5}{2} = \frac{2}{2} = 1$

$y = \frac{-2+3}{2} = \frac{1}{2} = 0.5$

$\therefore M = (1, 0.5)$



Length of a line segment

Use Pythagoras' theorem.

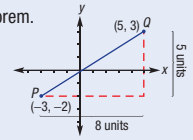
$PQ^2 = 8^2 + 5^2$

$PQ^2 = 64 + 25$

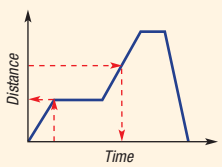
$PQ^2 = 89$

$PQ = \sqrt{89}$

$\sqrt{89}$ is an exact length.



Distance–time graph



- Flat segment means the object is at rest.

Reading from a graph:

- Start on given distance; move across to line and then down to time scale (or in reverse).

Linear modelling ⭐

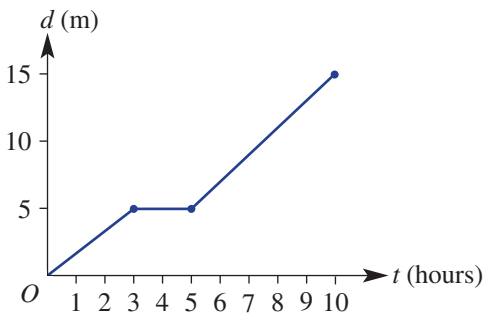
- Find a rule in the form $y = mx + c$, using the appropriate pronumerals.
- Sketch a graph.
- Apply the rule to solve problems.
- Answer the problem in words.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

Multiple-choice questions

Questions 1–4 refer to the following graph of the movement of a snail.



6A **1** The total number of hours the snail is at rest is:

A 2 **B** 4 **C** 5 **D** 6 **E** 10

6B **2** The distance travelled in the first 3 hours is:

A 3 m **B** 3 hours **C** 7 m **C** 4 m **D** 5 m

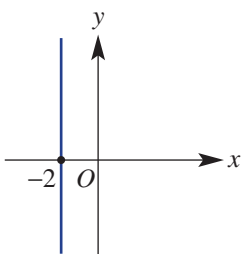
6F **3** The speed of the snail in the last 5 hours is:

A 5 hours **B** 10 m **C** 10 m/h **D** 2 m/h **E** 5 m/h

6B **4** The total distance travelled by the snail is:

A 15 m **B** 10 m **C** 5 m **D** 12 m **E** 8 m

6G **5** The equation of the line shown at the right is:



A $x = 2$ **B** $x = -2$ **C** $y = 1$ **D** $y = -2$ **E** $y = -2x$

6G **6** The graph of $C = 10t + 5$ would pass through which of the following points?

A $(1, 10)$ **B** $(1, 20)$ **C** $(2, 20)$ **D** $(4, 50)$ **E** $(5, 55)$

6E **7** The gradient of the line joining $(0, 0)$ and $(2, -6)$ is:

A 2 **B** 3 **C** -3 **D** 6 **E** -6

6E **8** A vertical line has gradient:

A undefined **B** zero **C** positive **D** negative **E** 1

6E **9** A line passes through $(-2, 7)$ and $(1, 2)$. The gradient of the line is:

A -3 **B** $-\frac{5}{3}$ **C** 3 **D** $\frac{5}{3}$ **E** $-\frac{3}{5}$

6I **10** The x- and y-intercepts of the graph of the rule $3x - y = 4.5$ are, respectively:

A $(0, 3.5)$ and $(4.5, 0)$ **B** $(-1.5, 0)$ and $(4.5, 0)$ **C** $(1.5, 0)$ and $(0, 4.5)$ **D** $(1.5, 0)$ and $(0, -4.5)$ **E** $(0, 3.5)$ and $(-4.5, 0)$

6G **11** Which of the following equations has a gradient of 2 and a y-intercept of -1?

A $2y + x = 2$ **B** $y - 2x = 1$ **C** $y = -2x + 1$ **D** $y = 2x - 1$ **E** $2x + y = 1$

6I **12** A line has x- and y-intercepts of, respectively, 1 and 2. Its equation is:

A $2x - y = 2$ **B** $y = -x + 2$ **C** $y = 2x + 2$ **D** $x + 2y = 1$ **E** $y = -2x + 2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6H **13** The gradient of the line that is perpendicular to the line with equation $y = -2x - 5$ is:

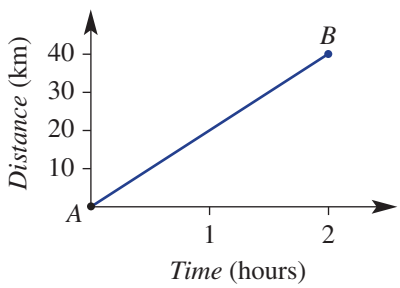
A 2 **B** -2 **C** $\frac{1}{2}$ **D** $-\frac{1}{2}$ **E** $\frac{1}{5}$

6K **14** Which equation shows that y is directly proportional to x?

A $y = 5x - 6$ **B** $y = \frac{6}{x}$ **C** $y = 2x + 4$ **D** $y = 12x$ **E** $y = 20 - 3x$

Short-answer questions

6A/B **1** This graph shows the journey of a cyclist from place A to place B.

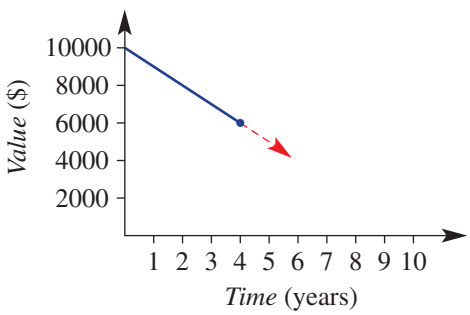


a How far does the cyclist travel?

b How long does it take the cyclist to complete the journey?

c If the cyclist were to ride from A to B and then halfway back to A, how far would the journey be?

6A **2** The value of a poor investment has decreased according to this graph.



a Find the value of the investment after:

i 4 years **ii** 2 years

iii 1 year

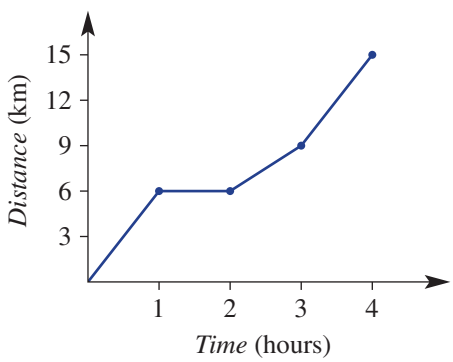
b Extend the graph and use it to estimate the value of the investment after:

i 8 years **ii** 6 years

iii 5 years

c After how many years will the investment be valued at \$0?

6B **3** The distance travelled by a walker is described by this graph.



a What is the total distance walked?

b For how long does the person actually walk?

c How far has the person walked after:

i 1 hour? **ii** 2 hours?

iii 3 hours? **iv** 4 hours?

d How long does it take the walker to walk a distance of 12 km?

6B **4** Sketch a graph to show a journey described by:

- a total distance of 60 m in 15 seconds
- 30 m covered in the first 6 seconds
- a 5 second rest after the first 6 seconds

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

6C **5** Francene delivers burgers for a fast-food outlet. She is paid $10 a shift plus $5 per delivery.

a Complete the table of values.

No. of deliveries (d)	0	5	10	15	20
Pay (P)					

b Plot a graph of amount paid against number of deliveries.

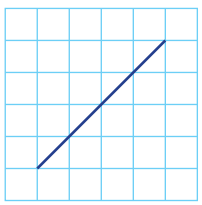
c Use the graph to determine:

i the amount of pay for 12 deliveries

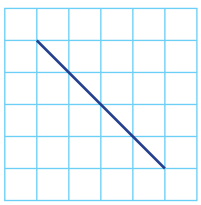
ii the number of deliveries made if Francene is paid $95

6E **6** Find the gradient of the following lines.

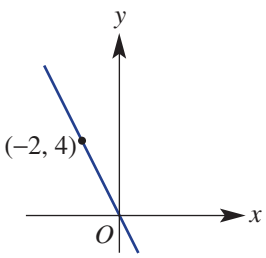
a



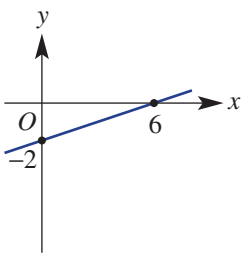
b



c

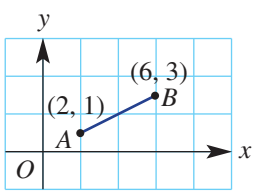


d



6D **7** Find the midpoint of each line segment.

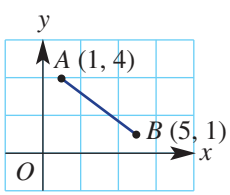
a



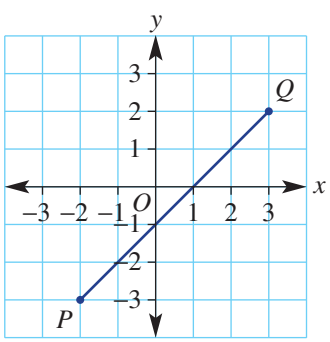
b $P(5, 7)$ to $Q(-1, -2)$ **c** $G(-3, 8)$ to $H(6, -10)$

6D **8** Find the length of each line segment.

a



b



6G **9** State the gradient and y-intercept of the following lines.

a $y = 3x + 4$ **b** $y = -2x$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6G **10** Sketch the following lines by considering the y-intercept and the gradient.

a $y = 2x + 3$ **b** $y = -4x$ **c** $y = 2$ **d** $x = -1$

6I **11** Sketch the following lines by considering the x- and y-intercepts.

a $3x + 4y = 12$ **b** $2x - y = 6$ **c** $y = 3x - 9$

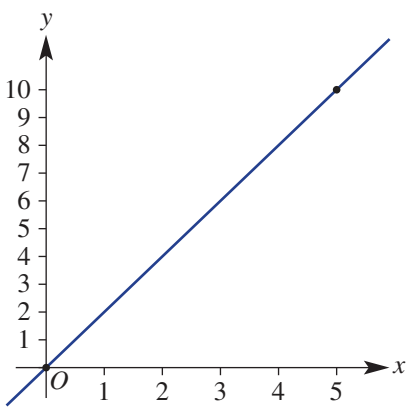
6G **12** For each of the straight lines shown:

i Determine the gradient.

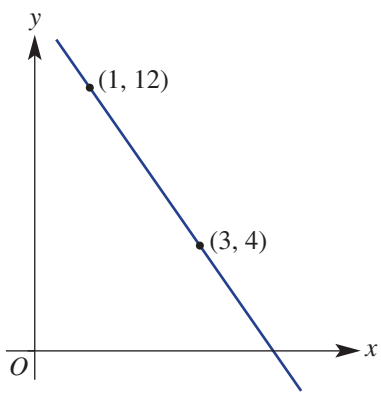
ii Find the y-intercept.

iii Write the equation of the line.

a



b

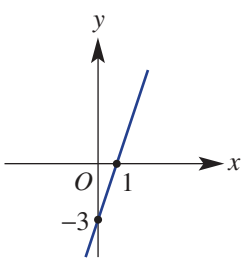


6G/I **13** Match each of the linear equations to the lines shown.

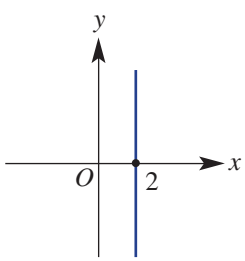
a $y = 3x - 3$ **b** $y = 5x$ **c** $5x + 4y = 20$

d $x = 2$ **e** $-2x + 5y = 10$ **f** $y = -4$

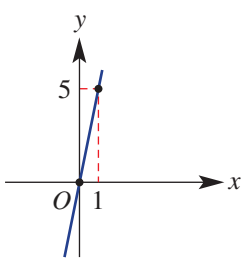
i



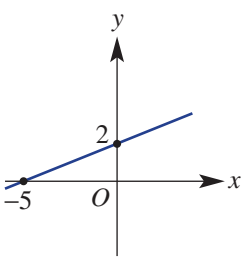
ii



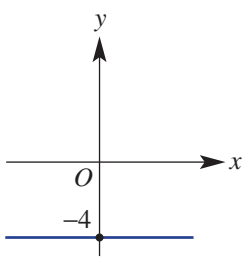
iii



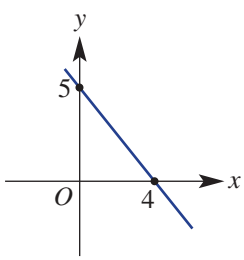
iv



v



vi



6J **14** A fruit picker earns \$50 plus \$20 per bin of fruit picked. If the picker earns \$$E$ for n bins picked, complete the following:

a Write a rule for E in terms of n.

b Sketch a graph for n between 0 and 6.

c Use your rule to find:

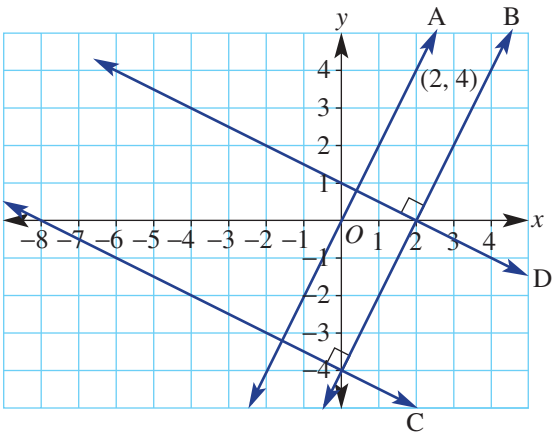
i the amount earned after picking four bins of fruit

ii the number of bins of fruit picked if \$160 is earned.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

6H **15** Use the grid given to find the equations of the lines A, B, C and D.



6H **16** Find the equation of the lines with the given description.

a A line passes through $(0, 3)$ and is parallel to another line with gradient 2.

b A line passes through $(0, -1)$ and is parallel to another line with gradient $\frac{1}{2}$.

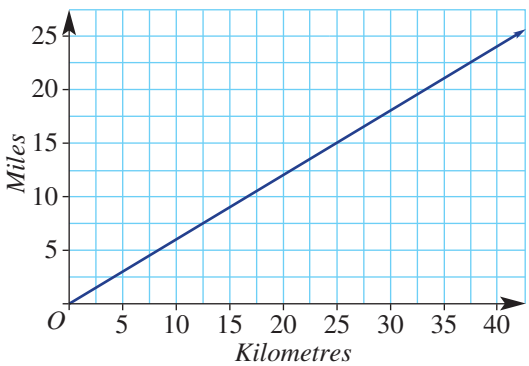
c A line passes through $(0, 2)$ and is perpendicular to another line with gradient 1.

d A line passes through $(0, -7)$ and is perpendicular to another line with gradient $\frac{3}{4}$.

e A line passes through $(1, 2)$ and is parallel to another line with gradient -4.

f A line passes through $(-2, 5)$ and is perpendicular to another line with gradient 2.

6K **17** This graph shows the direct proportional relationship between miles and kilometres.



a Use the graph to convert 5 miles to kilometres.

b Use the graph to convert 35 kilometres to miles.

c Given that 15 miles is 24.14 km, find the gradient, to three decimal places.

d State the conversion rate in miles/km, to three decimal places.

e Determine the constant of proportionality, k, to three decimal places.

f Write the direct proportion equation between miles (y) and kilometres (x).

g Use this equation to find the number of miles in 100 km.

h Use this equation to find the number of kilometres in 100 miles.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6K

18 State whether these variables are in direct or indirect proportion and give a reason why.

- **a** Cost of buying cricket balls and the number of balls.
- **b** Cost per person of renting a beach house for a week and the number of people sharing it.

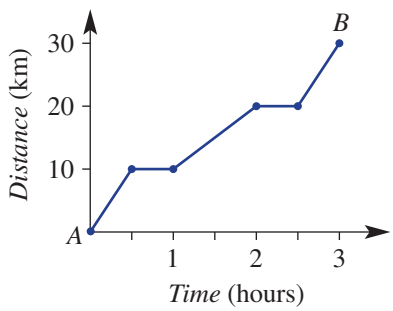
6K

19 Convert these units to the units given in brackets.

- **a** \$18/h (cents/min)
- **b** 5 m/s (km/h)
- **c** 720 km/h (m/s)
- **d** 36 L/h (mL/s)

Extended-response questions

1 A courier van picks up goods from two different houses, *A* and *B*, as shown on the graph.



- **a** Between houses *A* and *B*, find:
  - **i** the distance travelled
  - **ii** the average speed (not including stops)
- **b** How fast is the courier van driving during:
  - **i** the first $\frac{1}{2}$ hour?
  - **ii** the second $\frac{1}{2}$ hour?
  - **iii** the final $\frac{1}{2}$ hour?

2 David and Kaylene travel from Melton to Moorbank army base to watch their daughter's march-out parade. The total distance for the trip is 720 km, and they travel an average of 90 km per hour.

- **a** Complete the table of values below from 0 to 8 hours.

Time in hours (t)	0	2	4	6	8
km from Moorbank	720				

- **b** Plot a graph of the number of kilometres from Moorbank army base against time.
- **c** David and Kaylene start their trip at 6 a.m. If they decide to stop for breakfast at Albury and Albury is 270 km from Melton, what time would they stop for breakfast?
- **d** If the car they are driving needs refilling every 630 km, how long could they drive for before refilling the car?
- **e** What would be the total driving time if they didn't stop at all?
- **f** If the total number of breaks, including food and petrol stops, is 2 hours, when would they arrive at the army base?

3 A young maths whiz in the back of a car is counting down the distance to the nearest town, which initially is 520 km away. The car is travelling at an average speed of 80 km per hour.

- **a** Find the distance to the town after:
  - **i** 1 hour **ii** 3 hours
- **b** If D km is the distance to the town after t hours:
  - **i** Write a rule for D in terms of t.
  - **ii** Sketch a graph for t between 0 and 6.5.
- **c** Use your rule to find:
  - **i** the distance to the town after 4.5 hours
  - **ii** the time it takes for the distance to the town to be 340 km

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 7

Geometry

What you will learn

7A Parallel lines (Consolidating)
7B Triangles (Consolidating)
7C Quadrilaterals
7D Polygons ★
7E Congruent triangles
7F Similar triangles
7G Applying similar triangles
7H Applications of similarity in measurement ★

Australian curriculum

GEOMETRY

Formulate proofs involving **congruent triangles** and **angle** properties **(ACMMG243)**

Apply logical reasoning, including the use of **congruence** and **similarity**, to proofs and numerical exercises involving plane shapes **(ACMMG244)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

Opera House geometry

The geometry of the Sydney Opera House is based on triangles drawn on a sphere. To understand how this was achieved, imagine an orange sliced into wedges and then each wedge is cut into two pieces in a slanting line across the wedge. The orange skin of each wedge portion is a 3D triangle and illustrates the shape of one side of an Opera House sail. One full sail has two congruent curved triangular sides joined, each a reflection of the other. The edges of the sails form arcs of circles. All the curved sides of the 14 Opera House sails could be joined to form one very large, whole sphere.

The Danish architect Jørn Utzon and engineer Ove Arup chose a radius of 75 m for the virtual sphere from which to design the curved triangular sails. The calculations required high level mathematical modelling, including the applications of circle and spherical geometry. Designed in the 1950s and 1960s, it was one of the first ever projects to use CAD (computer assisted drawing).

Overall the Opera House is 120 m wide, 85 m long and 67 m high (20 storeys above the water level). The sails are covered with about 1 million tiles and it is visited by over 8 million people each year.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Pre-test

1 Write the missing word. Choose from: *right*, *reflex*, *straight*, *complementary*, *acute*, *revolution*, *obtuse*, *supplementary*.

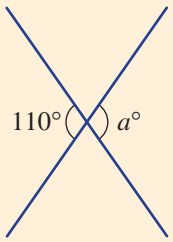
a _____ angles are between 0° and 90°.
b A _____ angle is 90°.
c An _____ angle is between 90° and 180°.
d A 180° angle is called a _____ angle.
e A _____ angle is between 180° and 360°.
f A _____ is 360°.
g _____ angles sum to 90°.
h _____ angles sum to 180°.

2 Match the type of triangle (**A**–**F**) with the given properties (**a**–**f**).

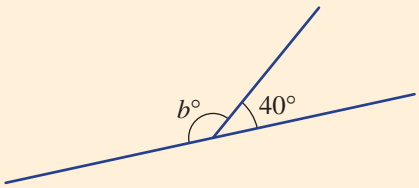
a all sides of different length	**A** obtuse angled
b two sides of the same length	**B** isosceles
c one right angle	**C** equilateral
d one obtuse angle	**D** acute angled
e three sides of equal length	**E** scalene
f all angles acute	**F** right angled

3 Find the values of the pronumerals.

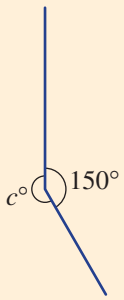
a



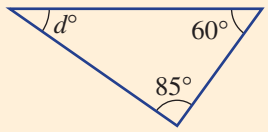
b



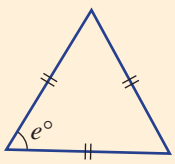
c



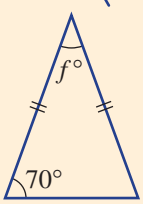
d



e

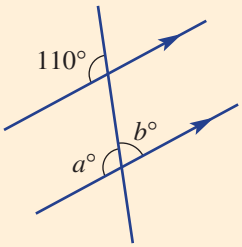


f

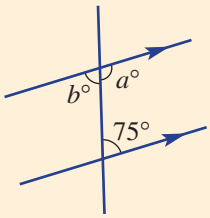


4 Find the value of the pronumerals in these sets of parallel lines.

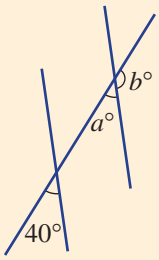
a



b



c



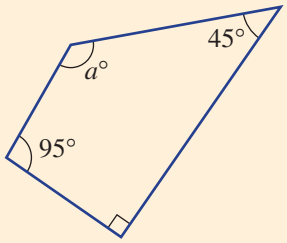
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 How many special quadrilaterals have these properties?

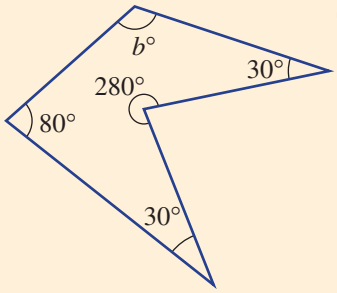
- **a** All sides equal and all angles 90°
- **b** Two pairs of parallel sides
- **c** Two pairs of parallel sides and all angles 90°
- **d** Two pairs of parallel sides and all sides equal
- **e** One pair of parallel sides
- **f** Two pairs of equal-length sides and no sides parallel

6 Use the angle sum formula, $S = 180° \times (n - 2)$, to find the angle sum of these polygons and the value of the pronumeral.

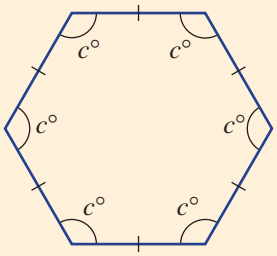
a



b



c

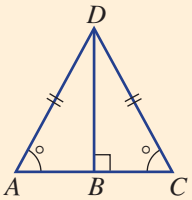


7 Choose from **A**–**E** for:

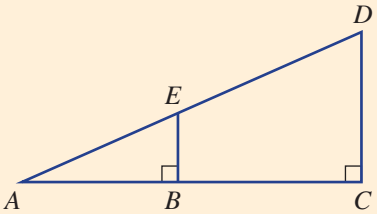
- **a** the tests for congruence of triangles
- **b** the tests for similarity of triangles

- **A** SSS, SA, AA, RHS
- **B** S, SAS, A, RAS
- **C** SSS, SAS, AAA, RHS
- **D** SSS, SAS, AAS, RHS
- **E** SSS, AAA, RS

8 Complete this sentence for the given diagram. $\triangle AB\square$ is congruent to $\triangle\square BD$.



9 Complete this sentence for the given diagram.
$\triangle A\square D$ is similar to $\triangle AB\square$.



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7A Parallel lines

CONSOLIDATING

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

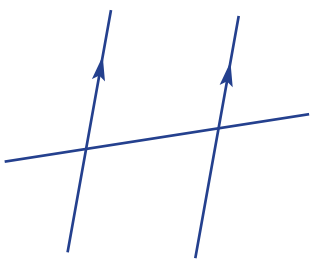
Parallel lines are everywhere – in buildings, in nature and on clothing patterns. Steel or concrete uprights at road intersections are an example.

Parallel lines are always the same distance apart and never meet. In diagrams, arrows are used to show that lines are parallel.

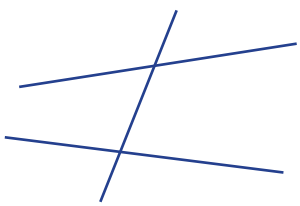
Let's start: 2, 4 or 8 different angles

Here are two pairs of lines crossed by a transversal. One pair is parallel and the other is not.

A



B

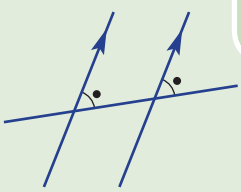


- How many angles of different size are in set A?
- How many angles of different size are in set B?
- If only one angle is known in set A, can you determine all other angles? Give reasons.

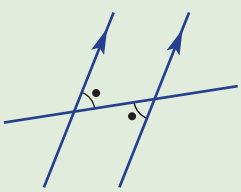
Key ideas

- A **transversal** is a line cutting two or more other lines.
- For parallel lines:
  - Corresponding angles are equal.

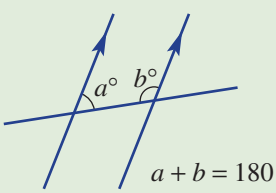
Transversal A line that cuts two or more lines



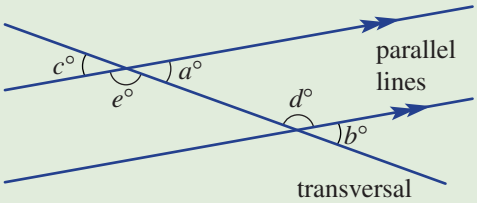
  - Alternate angles are equal.



  - Cointerior angles are supplementary.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press



$a = b$	Corresponding angles
$a = c$	Vertically opposite angles
$d = e$	Alternate angles
$a + e = 180$	Supplementary angles
$a + d = 180$	Cointerior angles

Exercise 7A

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

Choose from:
180°, *equal, supplementary*

1 Write the missing word or number.

a Supplementary angles add to _____.

b Vertically opposite angles are _____.

c When two lines are parallel and are crossed by a transversal, then:

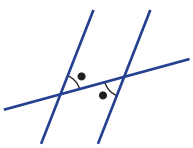
i Corresponding angles are _____.

ii Alternate angles are _____.

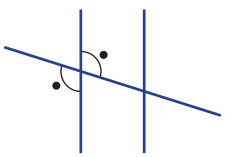
iii Cointerior angles are _____.

2 For the given diagrams, decide whether the given pair of marked angles are corresponding, alternate, cointerior or vertically opposite.

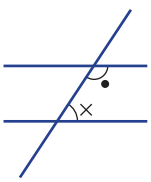
a



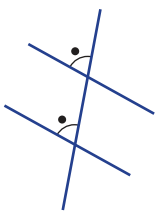
b



c



d



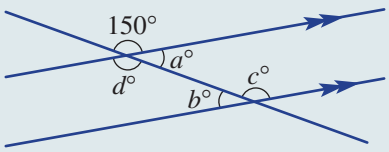
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7A

FLUENCY 3–5 3, 4, 5(½)

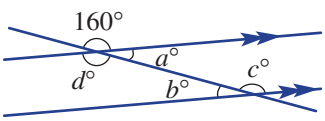
Example 1 Finding angles in parallel lines

Find the values of the pronumerals in this diagram.
Write down the reason in each case.

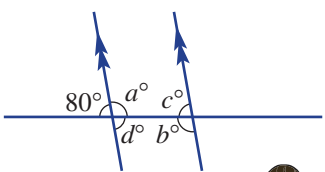


Solution	Explanation
$a = 180 - 150 = 30$ $a°$ and $150°$ are supplementary.	Two angles on a straight line sum to $180°$.
$b = 30$ $b°$ is alternate to $a°$.	Alternate angles are equal in parallel lines.
$c = 150$ $c°$ is corresponding to $150°$ or cointerior to $a°$.	Corresponding angles are equal in parallel lines. Cointerior angles are supplementary in parallel lines.
$d = 150$ $d°$ is vertically opposite to $150°$.	Vertically opposite angles are equal.

3 Find the values of the pronumerals in this diagram.
Write down the reason in each case.

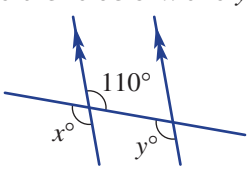


4 Find the values of the pronumerals in this diagram.
Write down the reason in each case.

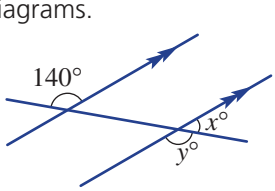


5 Find the value of x and y in these diagrams.

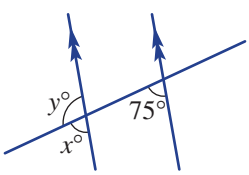
a



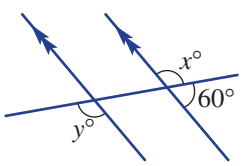
b



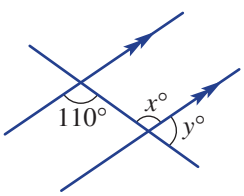
c



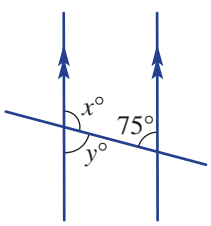
d



e



f



When lines are parallel:
Corresponding angles are equal.
Alternate angles are equal.
Cointerior angles add to $180°$.

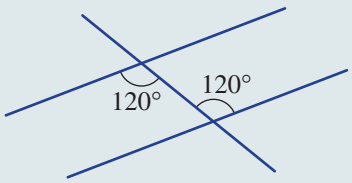
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6–8(½) 7–10

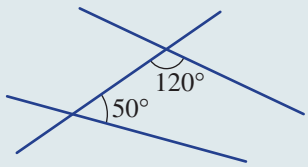
Example 2 Proving that two lines are parallel

Decide, with reasons, whether the given pairs of lines are parallel.

a



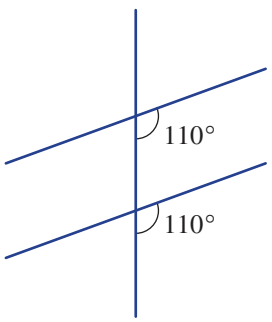
b



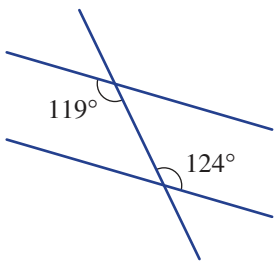
Solution	Explanation
a Yes – alternate angles are equal.	If alternate angles are equal, then lines are parallel.
b No – cointerior angles are not supplementary.	If lines are parallel, then cointerior angles should add to 180°, but $120° + 50° = 170°$.

6 Decide, with reasons, whether the given pairs of lines are parallel.

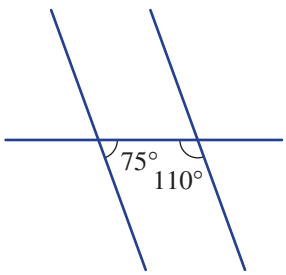
a



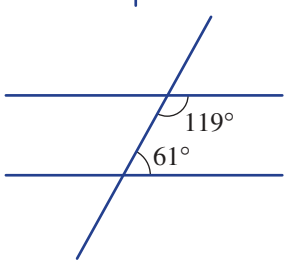
b



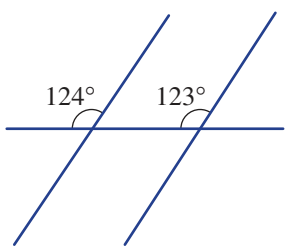
c



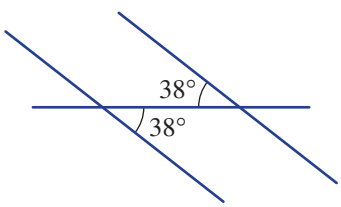
d



e

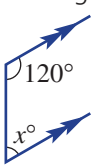


f

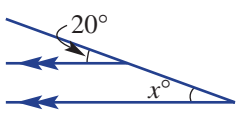


7 These diagrams have a pair of parallel lines. Find the unknown angle, x.

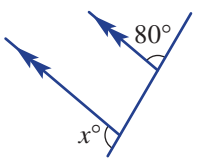
a



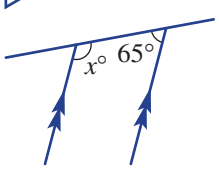
b



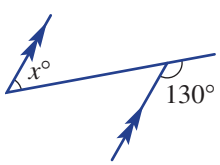
c



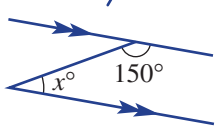
d



e



f

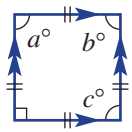


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

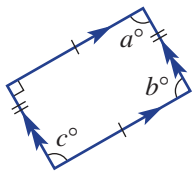
7A

8 These common shapes consist of parallel lines. One or more internal angles are given. Find the values of the pronumerals.

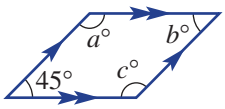
a



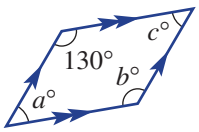
b



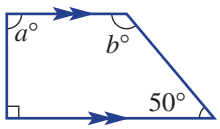
c



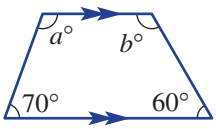
d



e



f



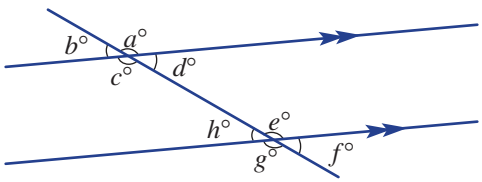
9 For this diagram, list all pairs of angles that are:

a corresponding

b alternate

c cointerior

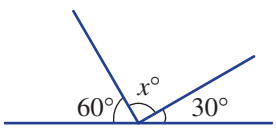
d vertically opposite



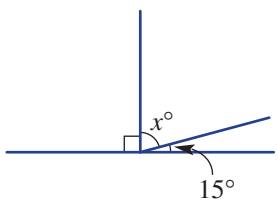
One example for part **a** is (a, e).

10 Find the unknown value, x, in each of these cases.

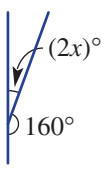
a



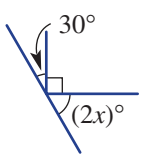
b



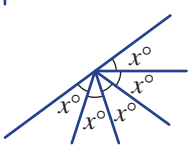
c



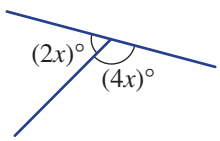
d



e



f



Angles on a straight line add to 180°.

The roof truss

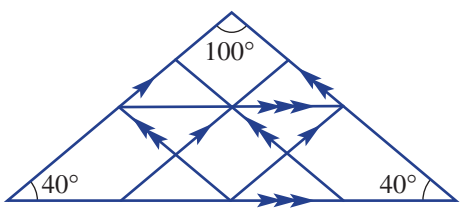
— 11

11 This diagram is of a roof truss with three groups of parallel supports.
How many of the angles are:

a 100° in size?

b 40° in size?

c 140° in size?



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7B Triangles

CONSOLIDATING

The triangle is at the foundation of geometry, and its properties are used to work with more complex geometry.

One of the best known and most useful properties of triangles is the internal angle sum (180°).

You can check this by measuring and adding up the three internal angles of any triangle.

Interactive

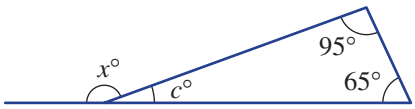
Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

Let's start: Exterior angle proof

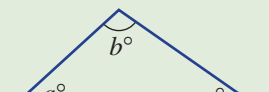
Consider this triangle with exterior angle $x°$.



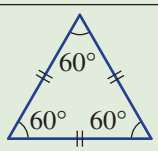
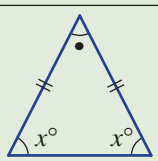
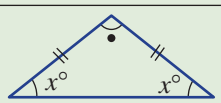
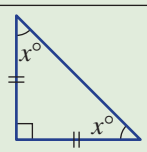
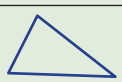
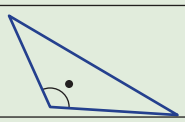
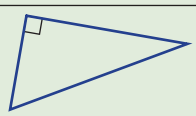
- Use the angle sum of a triangle to find the value of c.
- Now find the value of x.
- What do you notice about $x°$ and the two given angles? Is this true for other triangles?
  Give examples and reasons.

Key ideas

- The sum of all three internal angles of a triangle is 180°.
- Triangles can be classified by their side lengths or their internal angles.

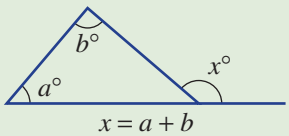


$a + b + c = 180$

		Classified by internal angles		
		Acute-angled triangles (all angles acute, < 90°)	Obtuse-angled triangles (one angle obtuse, > 90°)	Right-angled triangles (one right angle, 90°)
Classified by side lengths	Equilateral triangles (three equal side lengths)		Not possible	Not possible
	Isosceles triangles (two equal side lengths)			
	Scalene triangles (no equal side lengths)			

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

■ The **exterior angle theorem**:
The exterior angle is equal to the sum of the two opposite interior angles.



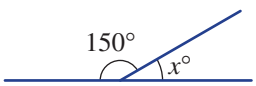
Exterior angle theorem The theorem that, in a triangle, the exterior angle is equal to the sum of the two opposite interior angles

Exercise 7B

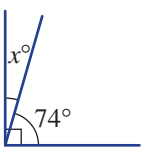
UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Give the value of x in these diagrams.

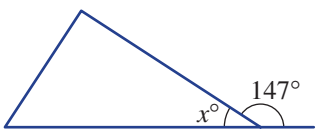
a



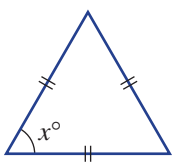
b



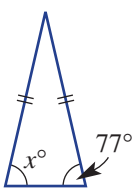
c



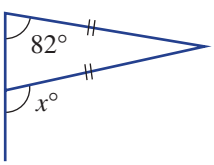
d



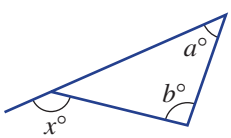
e



f

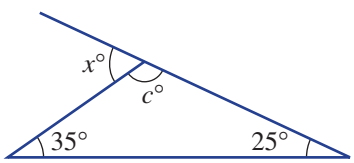


2 Choose the correct expression for this exterior angle.



A $a = x + b$ **B** $b = x + a$
C $x = a + b$ **D** $a + b = 180$
E $2a + b = 2x$

3 The two given interior angles for this triangle are 25° and 35°.



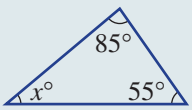
a Use the angle sum (180°) to find the value of c.
b Hence, find the value of x.
c What do you notice about the value of x and the two given interior angles?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

FLUENCY 4–6(½) 4–6(½)

Example 3 Using the angle sum

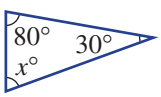
Find the value of the unknown angle, x, in this triangle.



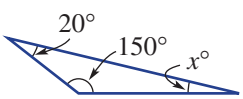
Solution	Explanation
$x + 85 + 55 = 180$	The sum of the three internal angles in a triangle is 180°.
$x + 140 = 180$	Simplify before solving for x.
$x = 40$	Solve for x by subtracting 140 from both sides of the 'equals' sign.
∴ The unknown angle is 40°.	

4 Find the value of the unknown angle, x, in these triangles.

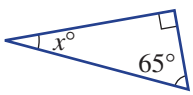
a



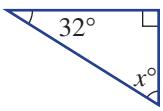
b



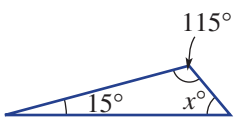
c



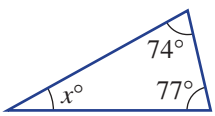
d

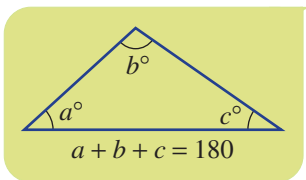


e



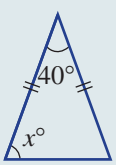
f





Example 4 Working with an isosceles triangle

Find the value of x in this isosceles triangle.



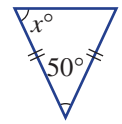
Solution	Explanation
$x + x + 40 = 180$	The triangle is isosceles and therefore the two base angles are equal.
$2x + 40 = 180$	Collect like terms.
$2x = 140$	Subtract 40 from both sides.
$x = 70$	Divide both sides by 2.
∴ The unknown angle is 70°.	

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

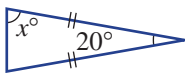
7B

5 Find the value of the unknown angle, x, in these triangles.

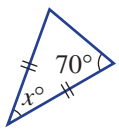
a



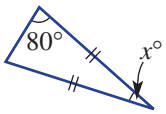
b



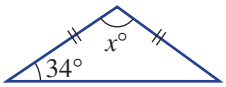
c



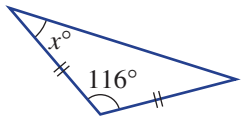
d



e



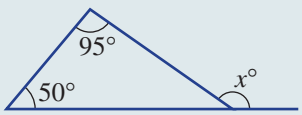
f



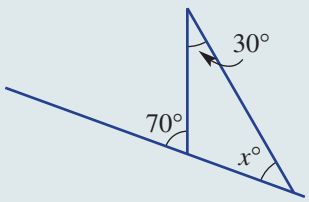
Example 5 Using the exterior angle theorem

Use the exterior angle theorem to find the value of x.

a



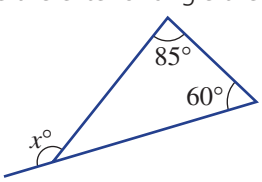
b



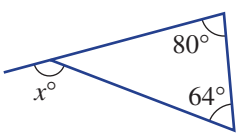
Solution	Explanation
a $x = 95 + 50$ $= 145$	The exterior angle $x°$ is the sum of the two opposite interior angles.
b $x + 30 = 70$ $x = 40$	The two opposite interior angles are $x°$ and 30°, and 70° is the exterior angle.

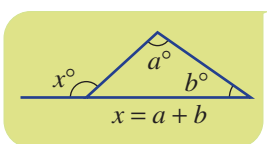
6 Use the exterior angle theorem to find the value of x.

a

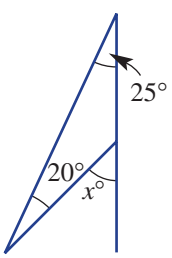


b

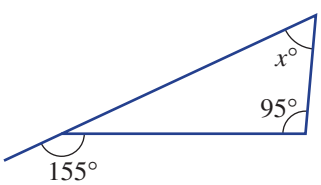




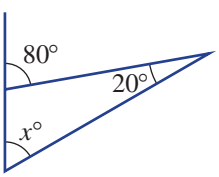
c



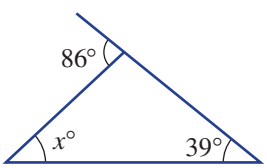
d



e



f



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

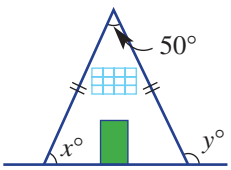
PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8 7, 9, 10

7 Decide whether the following are possible. If so, make a drawing.

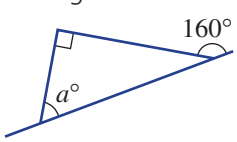
a acute scalene triangle
b acute isosceles triangle
c obtuse equilateral triangle
d acute equilateral triangle
e obtuse isosceles triangle
f obtuse scalene triangle
g right equilateral triangle
h right isosceles triangle
i right scalene triangle

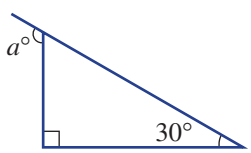
8 An architect draws the cross-section of a new ski lodge, which includes a very steep roof, as shown. The angle at the top is 50°. Find:

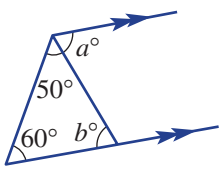
a the acute angle the roof makes with the floor ($x°$)
b the obtuse angle the roof makes with the floor ($y°$).

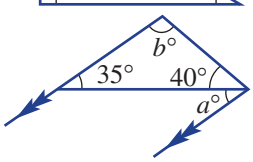


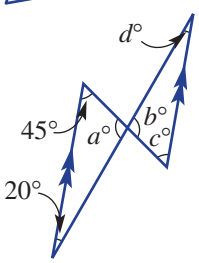
9 Use your knowledge of parallel lines and triangles to find out the value of the pronumerals in these diagrams.

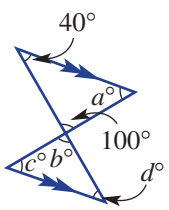
a


b


c


d


e


f


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

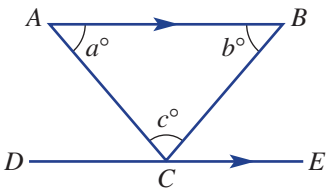
7B

10 For this diagram, AB is parallel to DE.

a What is the size of $\angle ACD$? Use a pronumeral and give a reason.

b What is the size of $\angle BCE$? Use a pronumeral and give a reason.

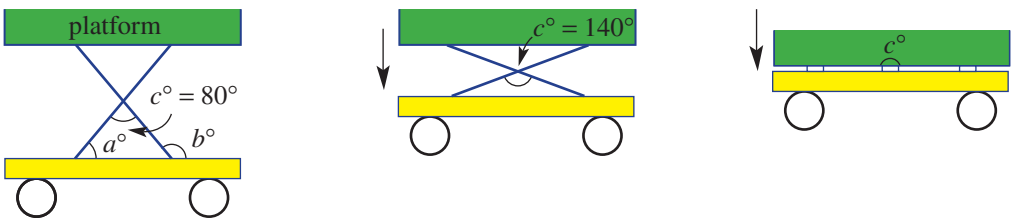
c Since $\angle DCE = 180°$, what does this tell us about a, b and c?



The hydraulic platform

11

11 A hydraulic platform includes a movable 'X' shape support system, as shown. When the platform is at its highest point, the angle at the centre ($c°$) of the 'X' is $80°$, as shown.



a Find the following when the platform is at its highest position.

i the acute angle the 'X' makes with the platform ($a°$)

ii the obtuse angle the 'X' makes with the platform ($b°$)

b The platform now moves down so that the angle at the centre ($c°$) of the 'X' changes from $80°$ to $140°$. With this platform position, find the values of:

i the acute angle the 'X' makes with the platform ($a°$)

ii the obtuse angle the 'X' makes with the platform ($b°$)

c The platform now moves down to the base so that the angle at the centre ($c°$) of the 'X' is now $180°$. Find:

i the acute angle the 'X' makes with the platform ($a°$)

ii the obtuse angle the 'X' makes with the platform ($b°$)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

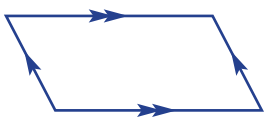
7C Quadrilaterals

Quadrilaterals are shapes that have four straight sides with a special angle sum of 360°. There are six special quadrilaterals, each with their own special set of properties.

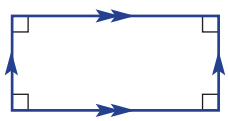
When you look around any old or modern building, you will see examples of these shapes.

Let's start: Why is a rectangle a parallelogram?

By definition, a parallelogram is a quadrilateral with two pairs of parallel sides.



Parallelogram

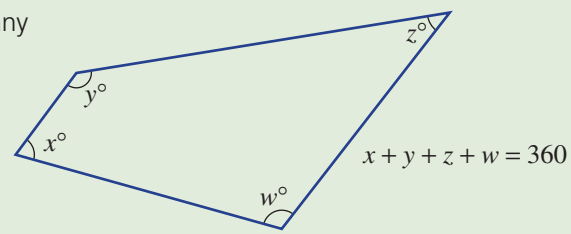


Rectangle

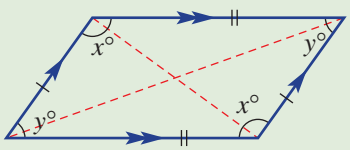
- Using this definition, do you think that a rectangle is also a parallelogram? Why?
- What properties does a rectangle have that a general parallelogram does not?
- What other special shapes are parallelograms? What are their properties?

Key ideas

- The sum of the interior angles of any quadrilateral is 360°.



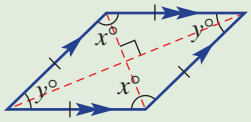
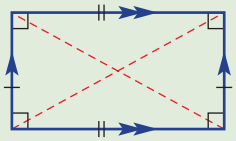
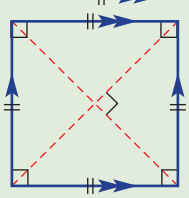
- **Parallelogram** Two pairs of parallel lines
  Two pairs of equal length sides
  Opposite angles equal
  Diagonals are not equal in length

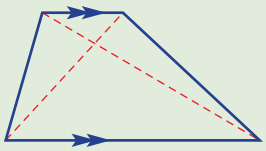
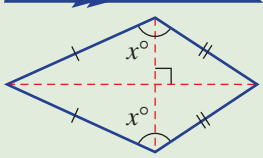


  - Parallelograms are quadrilaterals with two pairs of parallel sides. These include the square, rectangle and rhombus.

Parallelogram
A quadrilateral with both pairs of opposite sides parallel

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Parallelogram	Properties	Drawing
Rhombus	Two pairs of parallel lines All sides of equal length Opposite angles equal Diagonals intersect at right angles	
Rectangle	Two pairs of parallel lines Two pairs of equal-length sides All angles 90° Diagonals equal in length	
Square	Two pairs of parallel lines All sides of equal length All angles 90° Diagonals equal and intersect at right angles.	

Other quadrilaterals	Properties	Drawing
Trapezium	At least one pair of parallel sides	
Kite	Two pairs of equal-length adjacent sides One pair of equal angles Diagonals intersect at right angles	

Exercise 7C

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 2, 3

1 Which three special quadrilaterals are parallelograms?

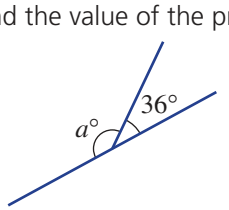
2 List all the quadrilaterals that have the following properties.

a two pairs of parallel sides
b two pairs of equal-length sides
c equal opposite angles
d one pair of parallel sides
e one pair of equal angles
f all angles 90°
g equal-length diagonals
h diagonals intersecting at right angles

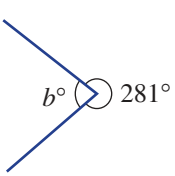
Refer to the Key ideas for help.

3 Find the value of the pronumerals.

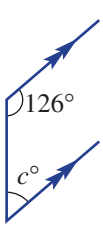
a



b



c

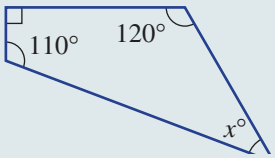


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 4–5(½) 4–5(½)

Example 6 Using the angle sum of a quadrilateral

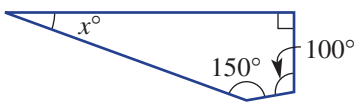
Find the unknown angle in this quadrilateral.



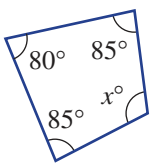
Solution	Explanation
$x + 110 + 120 + 90 = 360$	The sum of internal angles is 360°.
$x + 320 = 360$	Simplify.
$x = 40$	Subtract 320 from both sides.
∴ The unknown angle is 40°.	

4 Find the unknown angles in these quadrilaterals.

a

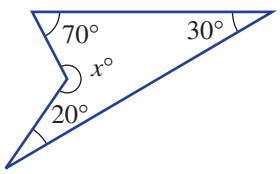


b

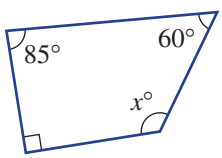


The angle sum of a quadrilateral is 360°.

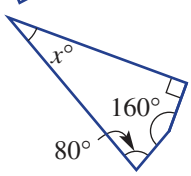
c



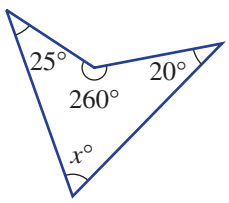
d



e



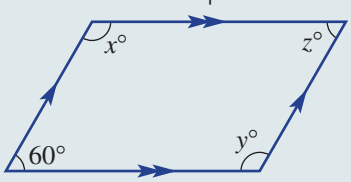
f



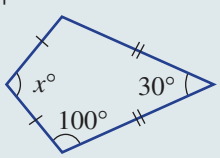
Example 7 Finding angles in special quadrilaterals

Find the value of the pronumerals in these special quadrilaterals.

a



b



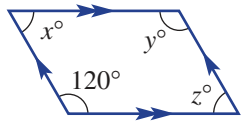
Solution	Explanation
a $x + 60 = 180$	$x°$ and 60° are cointerior angles and sum to 180°.
$x = 120$	Subtract 60 from both sides.
$\therefore y = 120$	$y°$ is opposite and equal to $x°$.
$\therefore z = 60$	$z°$ is opposite and equal to 60°.
b $x + 100 + 100 + 30 = 360$	A kite has a pair of equal opposite angles, so there are two 100° angles.
$x + 230 = 360$	The total sum is still 360°.
$x = 130$	

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

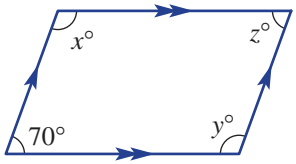
7C

5 Find the value of the pronumerals in these special quadrilaterals.

a

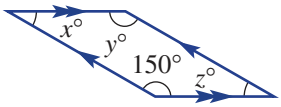


b

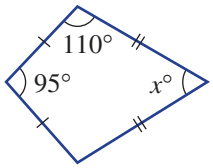


Refer to the properties of special quadrilaterals for help.

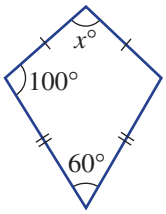
c



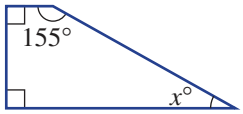
d



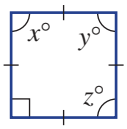
e



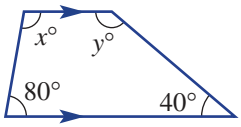
f



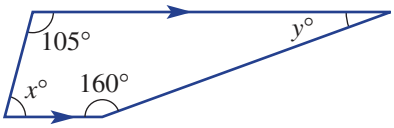
g



h



i

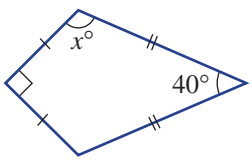


PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING

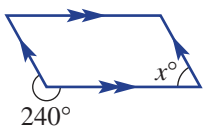
6, 7 | 6–9

6 Find the value of the pronumerals in these shapes.

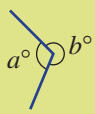
a



b

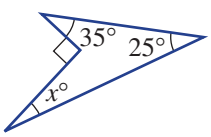


Angles in a revolution add to 360°.

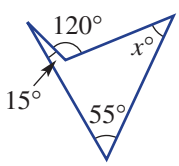


$a + b = 360$

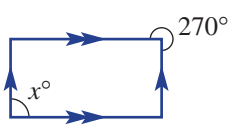
c



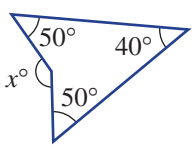
d



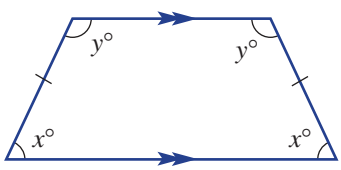
e



f



7 This shape is called an isosceles trapezium.



a Why do you think it is called an isosceles trapezium?

b **i** When $x = 60$, find y.

ii When $y = 140$, find x.

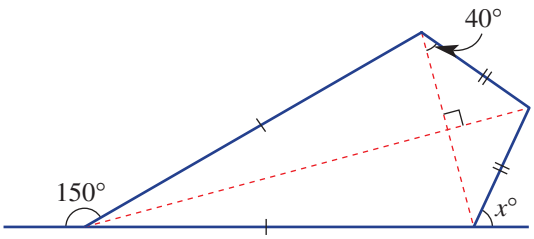
c List the properties of an isosceles trapezium.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8 A modern hotel is in the shape of a kite.
Some angles are given in the diagram.

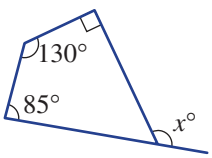
a Draw a copy of only the kite shape, including the diagonals.

b Find the angle that the right-hand wall makes with the ground ($x°$).

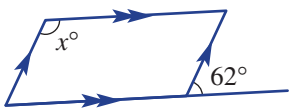


9 These quadrilaterals also include exterior angles. Find the value of x.

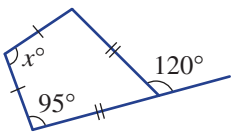
a



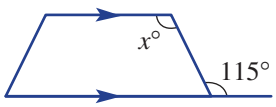
b

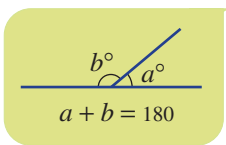


c



d



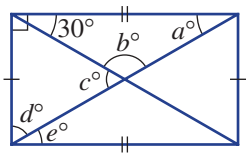


Quadrilaterals and triangles

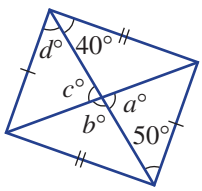
— 10

10 The following shapes combine quadrilaterals with triangles. Find the value of the pronumerals.

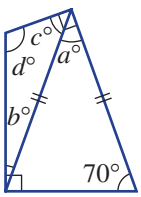
a



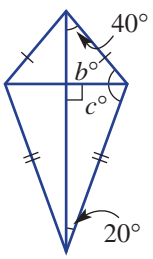
b



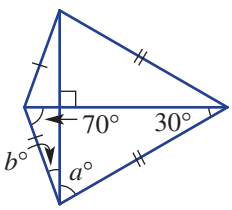
c



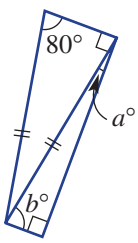
d



e



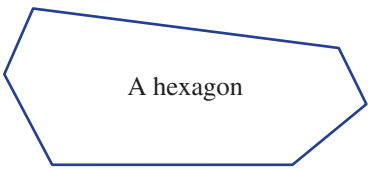
f



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7D Polygons

A closed shape with all straight sides is called a polygon. Like triangles and quadrilaterals (which are both polygons), they all have a special angle sum.



The Pentagon building in Washington, D.C.

Let's start: Remember the names

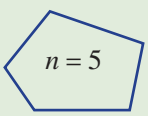
From previous years you should remember some of the names for polygons. See if you can remember them by completing this table.

Number of sides	Name
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	Heptagon

Number of sides	Name
8	
9	
10	
11	Undecagon
12	

Key ideas

- A **polygon** is a shape with straight sides.
  - They are named by their number of sides.
- The sum of internal angles (S) of a polygon is given by this rule:
  $S = 180° \times (n - 2)$
  where n is the number of sides



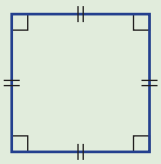
$$S = 180° \times (n - 2)$$
$$S = 180° \times (5 - 2)$$
$$= 180° \times 3$$
$$= 540°$$

Polygon A two-dimensional shape where three or more straight lines are joined together to form a closed figure

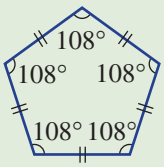
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

■ **A regular polygon** has sides of equal length and equal angles.

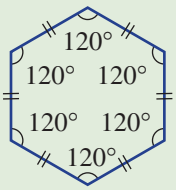
regular quadrilateral (square) (four sides)



regular pentagon (five sides)



regular hexagon (six sides)



Regular polygon
A polygon with all sides equal and all angles equal

Exercise 7D

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 2(½), 3

1 How many sides do these shapes have?

a quadrilateral **b** octagon **c** decagon **d** heptagon
e nonagon **f** hexagon **g** pentagon **h** dodecagon

2 Use the angle sum rule, $S = 180° \times (n - 2)$, to find the angle sum of these polygons.

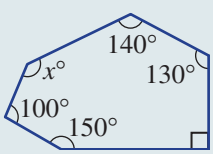
a pentagon ($n = 5$) **b** hexagon ($n = 6$) **c** heptagon ($n = 7$)
d octagon ($n = 8$) **e** nonagon ($n = 9$) **f** decagon ($n = 10$)

3 What is always true about a polygon that is regular?

FLUENCY 4(½), 5 4(½), 6

Example 8 Finding and using the angle sum of a polygon

For this polygon, find the angle sum and then the value of x.



Solution	Explanation
$S = 180° \times (n - 2)$ $= 180° \times (6 - 2)$	Use the angle sum rule first, with $n = 6$ since there are 6 sides.
$= 720°$	Find the angle sum.
$x + 100 + 150 + 90 + 130 + 140 = 720$	Use the total angle sum to find the value of x.
$x + 610 = 720$	Solve for the value of x.
$x = 110$	

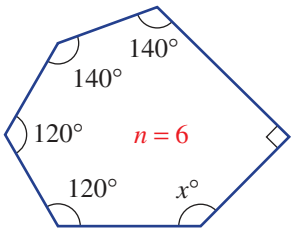
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7D

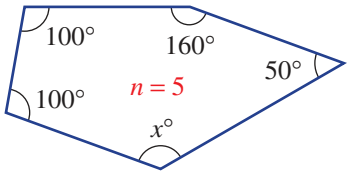
4 For these polygons, find the angle sum and then find the value of x.

First use $S = 180° \times (n - 2)$

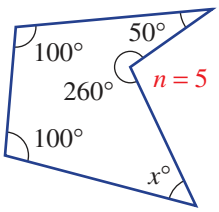
a



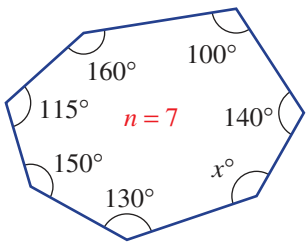
b



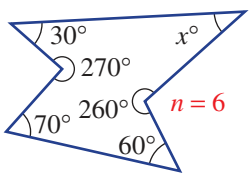
c



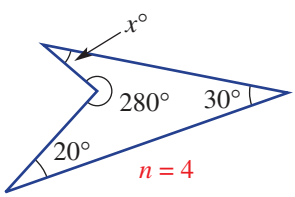
d



e



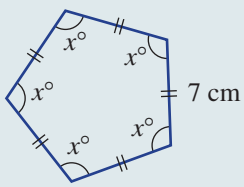
f



Example 9 Working with regular polygons

Shown here is a regular pentagon with a straight edge side length of 7 cm.

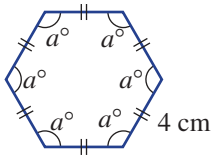
a Find the perimeter of the pentagon.
b Find the total internal angle sum (S).
c Find the size of each internal angle, $x°$.



Solution	Explanation
a 35 cm	There are five sides at 7 cm each.
b $S = 180° \times (n - 2)$ $= 180° \times (5 - 2)$ $= 180° \times 3$ $= 540°$	Write the general rule for the sum of internal angles for a polygon. $n = 5$ since there are five sides. Simplify and evaluate.
c $540° \div 5 = 108°$ $x° = 108°$	There are five equally-sized angles since it is a regular pentagon.

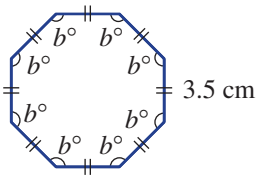
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 Shown here is a regular hexagon with straight-edge side length 4 cm.



- **a** Find the perimeter of the pentagon.
- **b** Find the total internal angle sum (S).
- **c** Find the size of each internal angle, $a°$.

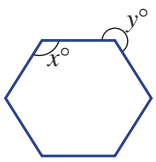
6 Shown here is a regular octagon with straight-edge side length 3.5 cm.



- **a** Find the perimeter of the pentagon.
- **b** Find the total internal angle sum (S).
- **c** Find the size of each internal angle, $b°$.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8, 10 9–12

7 The cross-section of a pencil is a regular hexagon.



- **a** Find the interior angle ($x°$).
- **b** Find the outside angle ($y°$).

8 Find the total internal angle sum for a polygon with:

- **a** 11 sides
- **b** 20 sides

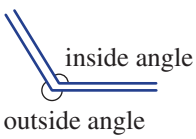
Remember:
$S = 180° \times (n - 2)$

9 Find the size of a single internal angle for a regular polygon with:

- **a** 10 sides
- **b** 25 sides

10 A castle turret is in the shape of a regular hexagon.
At each of the six corners, find:

- **a** the inside angle
- **b** the outside angle



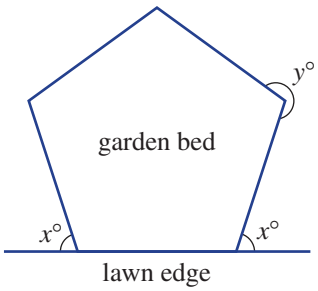
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7D

11 A garden bed is to be designed in the shape of a regular pentagon and sits adjacent to a lawn edge, as shown.

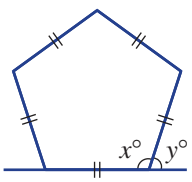
a Find the angle the lawn edge makes with the garden bed ($x°$).

b Find the outside angle for each corner ($y°$).

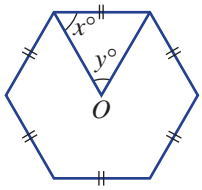


12 For these diagrams, find the values of the unknowns. The shapes are regular.

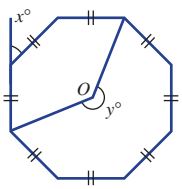
a



b



c



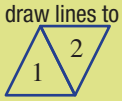
In parts **b** and **c**, the point at O is the centre.

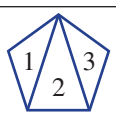
Develop the angle sum rule

13

13 **a** Copy and complete this table.

For the diagram, choose are vertex and draw lines to all other vertices.

e.g. 

Polygon	Number of sides	Diagram	Number of triangles	Total angle sum *(S)*	Single internal angle *(A)*
Triangle					
Quadrilateral					
Pentagon	5		3	$3 \times 180 = 540$	$540 \div 5 = 108$
Hexagon					
…					
n-gon	n				

b Complete these sentences by writing the rule.

i For a polygon with n sides, the total angle sum, S, is given by $S =$ _____.

ii For a regular polygon with n sides, a single internal angle, A, is given by $A =$ _____.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7E Congruent triangles

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

In solving problems or in the building of structures, for example, it is important to know whether or not two expressions or objects are identical. The mathematical word used to describe identical objects is *congruence*.

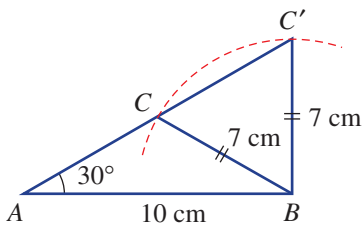
For congruent triangles there are four important tests that can be used to prove congruence.

Federation Square, Melbourne

Let's start: Why are AAA and ASS not tests for congruence?

AAA and ASS are not tests for the congruence of triangles.

- For AAA, can you draw two different triangles using the same three angles? Why does this mean that AAA is not a test for congruence?
- Look at this diagram, showing triangle ABC and triangle ABC'. Both triangles have a 30° angle and two sides of length 10 cm and 7 cm. Explain how this diagram shows that ASS is not a test for congruence of triangles.

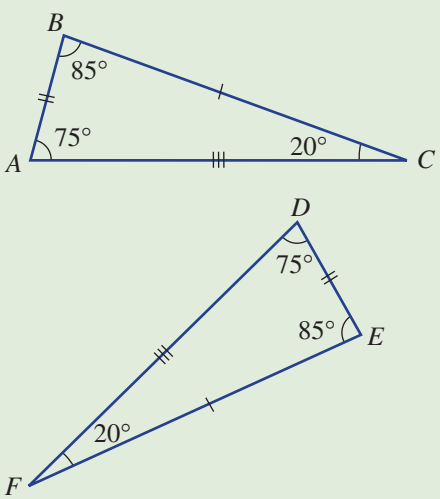


Key ideas

- Two triangles are said to be **congruent** if they are exactly the same 'size' and 'shape'.
  Corresponding sides and angles will be of the same size, as shown in the triangles below right.

Congruent (figures)
Figures that are exactly the same size and shape

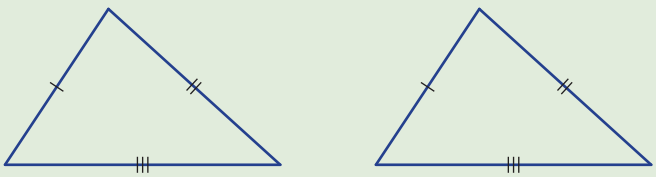
- If triangle ABC is congruent to triangle DEF, we write $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$.
  - This is called a congruence statement.
  - Letters are usually written in matching order.
  - If two triangles are not congruent, we write: $\triangle ABC \not\equiv \triangle DEF$.



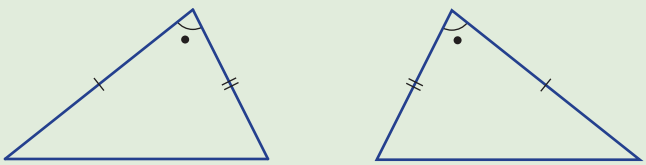
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

■ Two triangles can be tested for congruence by considering the following necessary conditions.

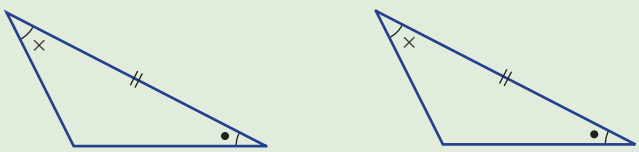
1 Three pairs of corresponding sides are equal (**SSS**).



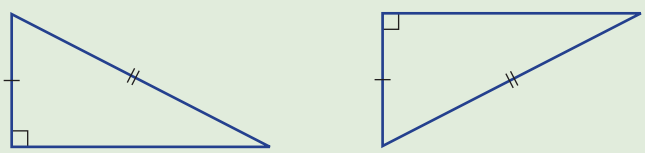
2 Two pairs of corresponding sides and the angle between them are equal (**SAS**).



3 Two angles and any pair of corresponding side are equal (**AAS**).



4 A right angle, the hypotenuse and one other pair of corresponding sides are equal (**RHS**).



Exercise 7E

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 True or false?

a SSA is a test for the congruence of triangles.

b AAA is a test for the congruence of triangles.

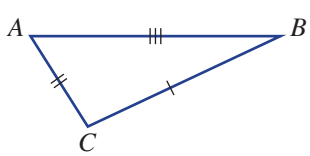
c Two congruent triangles are the same shape and size.

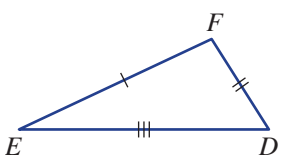
d If $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$, then triangle ABC is congruent to triangle DEF.

2 Write the four tests for congruence, using their abbreviated names.

SAS is one of the answers.

3 Here is a pair of congruent triangles.





a Which point on $\triangle DEF$ corresponds to point B on $\triangle ABC$?

b Which side on $\triangle ABC$ corresponds to side DF on $\triangle DEF$?

c Which angle on $\triangle DEF$ corresponds to $\angle BAC$ on $\triangle ABC$?

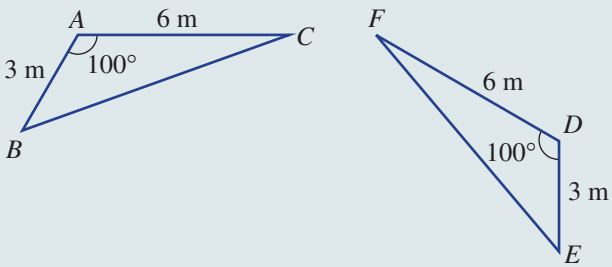
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 4, 5(½) 4–5(½)

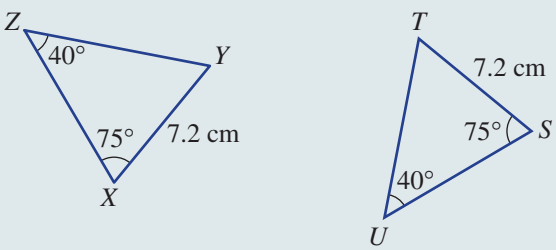
Example 10 Choosing a test for congruence

Write a congruence statement and the test to prove congruence for these pairs of triangles.

a



b

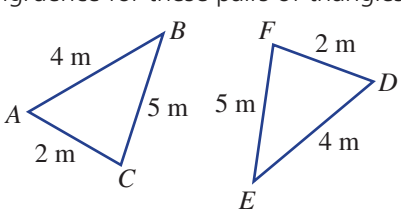


Solution	Explanation
a $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SAS)	Write letters in corresponding (matching) order. Two pairs of sides are equal as well as the angle between.
b $\triangle XYZ \equiv \triangle STU$ (AAS)	X matches S, Y matches T, and Z matches U. Two angles and one pair of matching sides are equal.

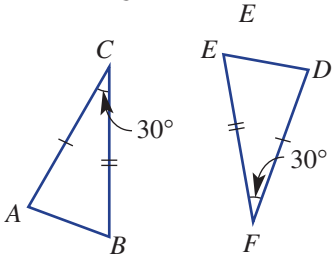
4 Write a congruence statement and the test to prove congruence for these pairs of triangles.

$\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ is a congruence statement. Choose one of the tests SSS, SAS, AAS or RHS.

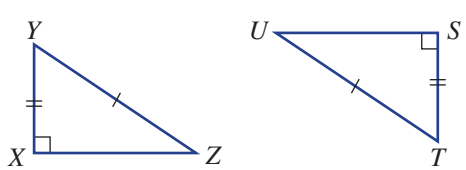
a



b



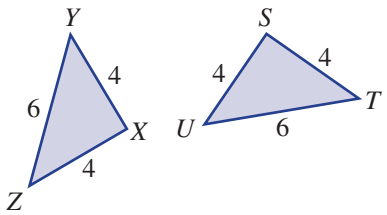
c



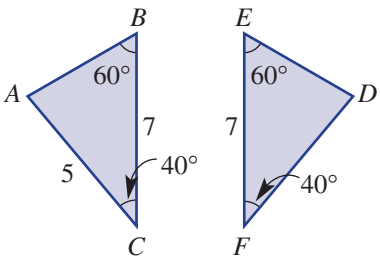
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7E

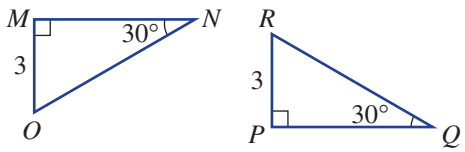
d



e



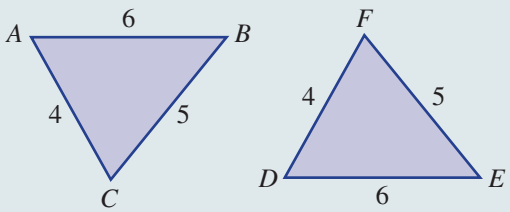
f



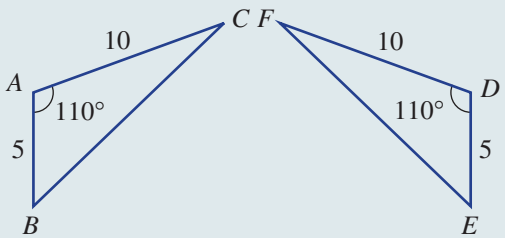
Example 11 Proving that a pair of triangles are congruent

Give reasons why the following pairs of triangles are congruent.

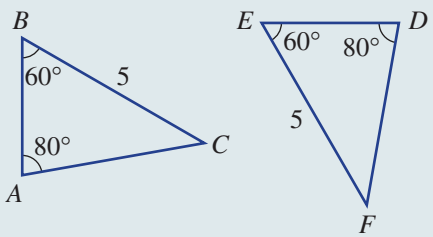
a



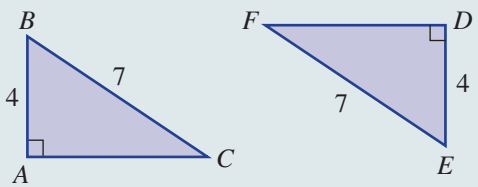
b



c



d



Solution		Explanation
a $AB = DE$	(S)	First choose all the corresponding side lengths.
$AC = DF$	(S)	Corresponding side lengths will have the same length.
$BC = EF$	(S)	
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$	(SSS)	Write the congruence statement and the abbreviated reason.
b $AB = DE$	(S)	Note that two corresponding side lengths are equal and the included angles are equal.
$\angle BAC = \angle EDF$	(A)	
$AC = DF$	(S)	
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$	(SAS)	Write the congruence statement and the abbreviated reason.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

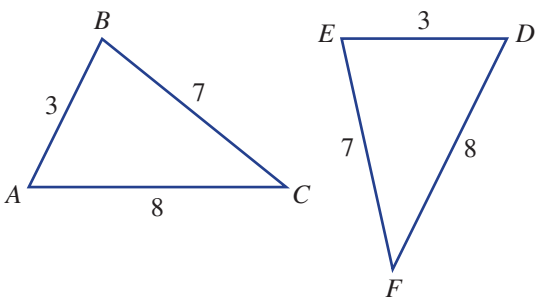
c $\angle ABC = \angle DEF$ (A) — Two of the angles are equal and one of the corresponding sides are equal.
$\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)
$BC = EF$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (AAS) — Write the congruence statement and the abbreviated reason.

d $\angle BAC = \angle EDF = 90°$ (R) — Note that both triangles are right angled, the hypotenuse of each triangle is of the same length and another corresponding side is of the same length.
$BC = EF$ (H)
$AB = DE$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (RHS) — Write the congruence statement and the abbreviated reason.

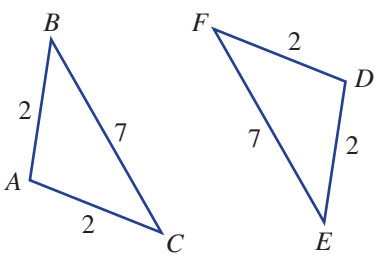
5 Give reasons why the following pairs of triangles are congruent.

List reasons as in the examples to establish SSS, SAS, AAS or RHS.

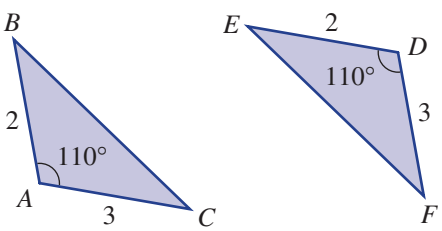
a



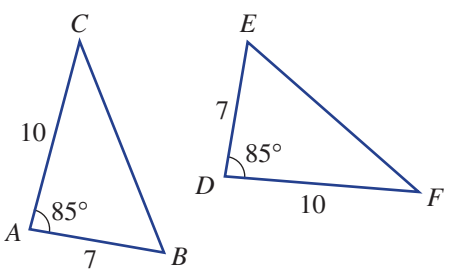
b



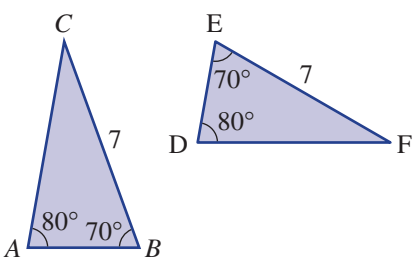
c



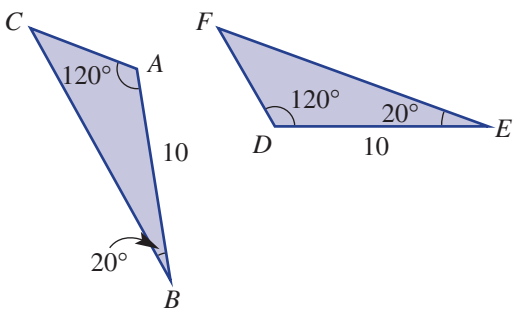
d



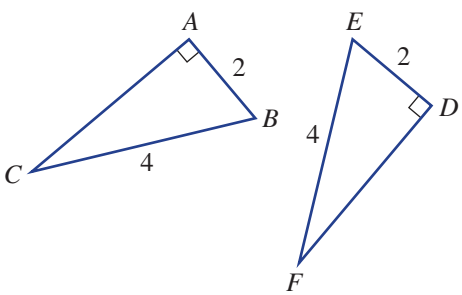
e



f



g



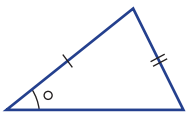
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7E

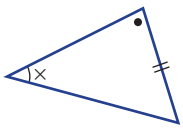
PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6, 7 6, 7, 8(½)

6 Identify the pairs of congruent triangles from those below.

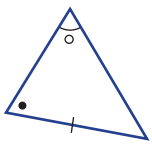
a



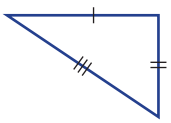
b



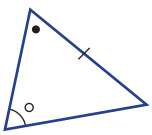
c



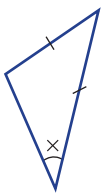
d



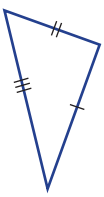
e



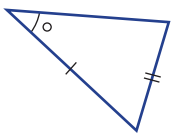
f



g



h

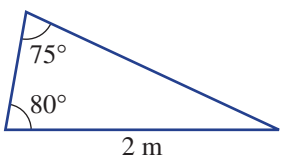


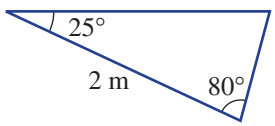
Sides with the same markings and angles with the same mark are equal.

7 Two triangular windows have the given dimensions.

a Find the missing angle in each triangle.

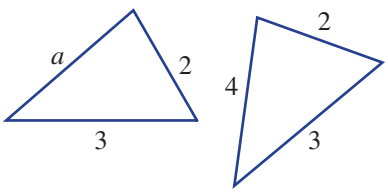
b Are the two triangles congruent? Give a reason.



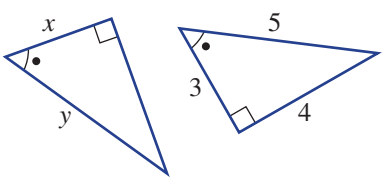


8 For the pairs of congruent triangles, find the values of the pronumerals.

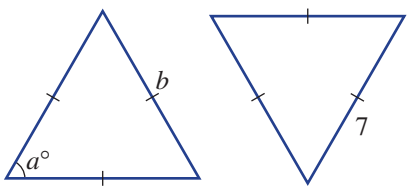
a



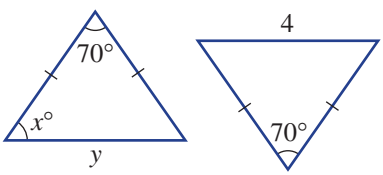
b



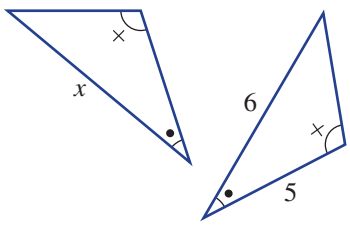
c



d



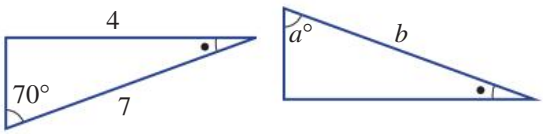
e



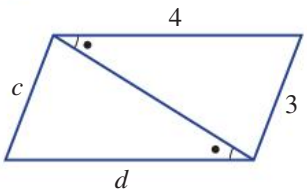
Given that these triangles are congruent, corresponding sides are equal, as are corresponding angles.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

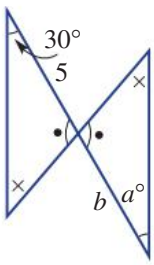
f



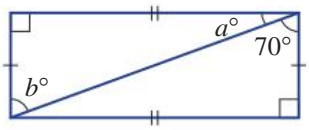
g



h



i



Lawn landscaping

— 9

9 A new garden design includes two triangular lawn areas, as shown.

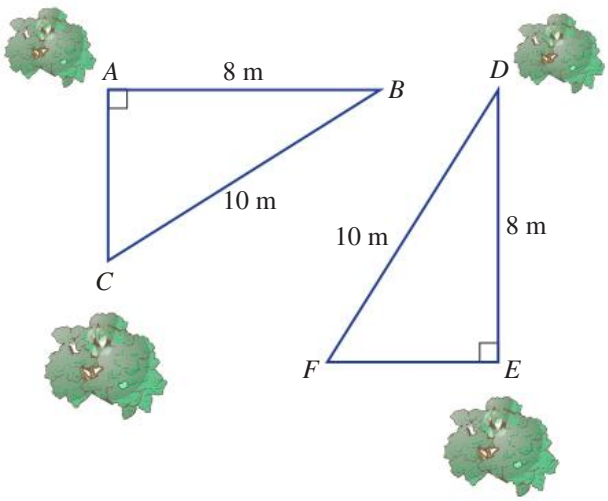
a Give reasons why the two triangular lawn areas are congruent.

b If the length of AC is 6 m, find the length of EF.

c If the angle $ABC = 37°$, find the angles:

i $\angle EDF$

ii $\angle DFE$

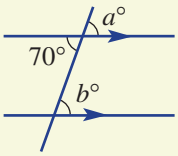


ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

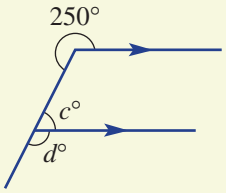
Progress quiz

7A **1** Find the values of the pronumerals in these diagrams with parallel lines, giving reasons.

a

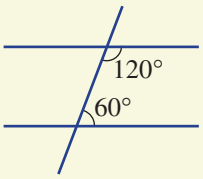


b

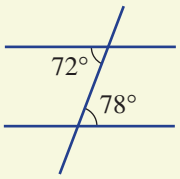


7A **2** State, with reasons, if the following pairs of lines are parallel.

a

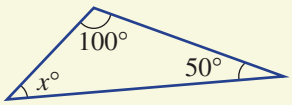


b

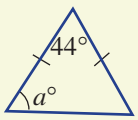


7B/C **3** Find the values of the pronumerals in these triangles and quadrilaterals.

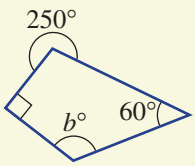
a



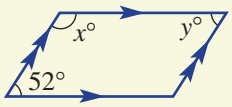
b



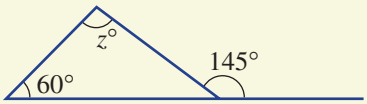
c



d

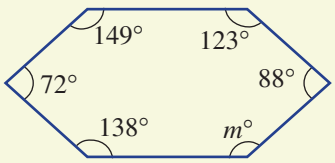


7B **4** Use the exterior angle theorem to find the value of z.

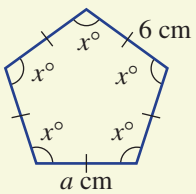


7D **5** Find the angle sum of these polygons and then find the value of each pronumeral.

a

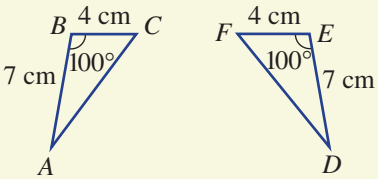


b

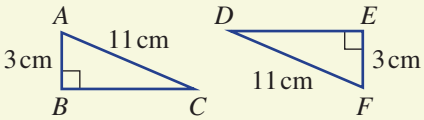


7E **6** Give reasons why the following pairs of triangles are congruent and write a congruence statement.

a



b



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

7F Similar triangles

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

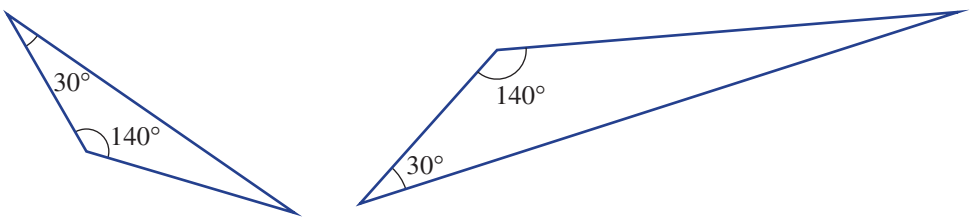
When two objects are similar, they are the same shape but of different size. For example, a computer image reproduced on a large screen with the same aspect ratio (e.g. 16:9) will show all aspects of the image in the same way except in size.

The computer image and screen image are said to be similar figures.

An image on a laptop computer reproduced on a large TV screen with the same aspect ratio (e.g. 16:9) is the same in all aspects except size.

Let's start: Is AA the same as AAA?

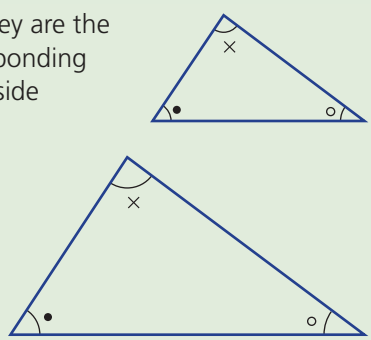
Look at these two triangles.



- What is the missing angle in each triangle?
- Do you think the triangles are similar? Why?
- Is the AA test equivalent to the AAA test?

Key ideas

- Two triangles are said to be **similar** if they are the same shape but different in size. Corresponding angles will be equal and corresponding side lengths will be in the same ratio.
- If $\triangle ABC$ is similar to $\triangle DEF$, then we write $\triangle ABC \,|||\, \triangle DEF$ or $\triangle ABC \sim \triangle DEF$.

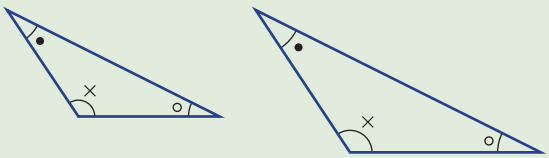


Similar (triangles)
Triangles whose corresponding angles are equal and whose corresponding sides are in the same ratio

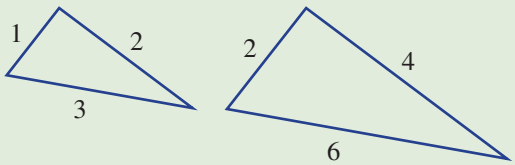
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- Two triangles can be tested for similarity by considering the following necessary conditions.

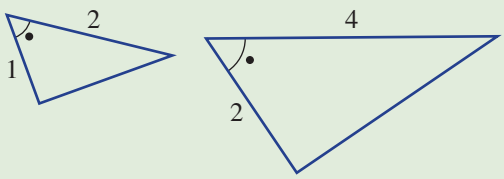
1. All three pairs of corresponding angles are equal (**AAA**). (Remember that if two pairs of corresponding angles are equal then the third pair of corresponding angles is also equal.)



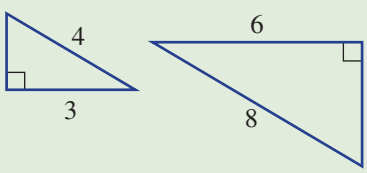
2. All three pairs of corresponding sides are in the same ratio (**SSS**).
$\frac{6}{3} = \frac{4}{2} = \frac{2}{1} = 2$



3. Two pairs of corresponding sides are in the same ratio and the included corresponding angles between these sides are equal (**SAS**).
$\frac{4}{2} = \frac{2}{1} = 2$

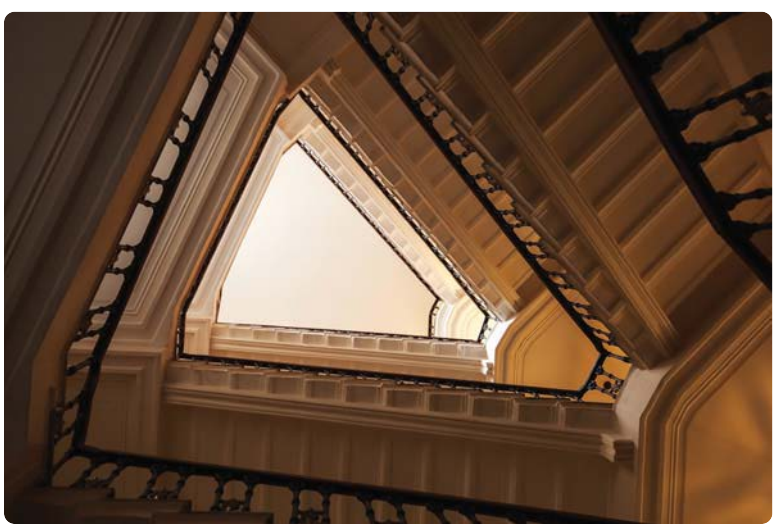


4. The hypotenuses and a pair of corresponding sides in a right-angled triangle are in the same ratio (**RHS**).
$\frac{8}{4} = \frac{6}{3} = 2$



- The **scale factor** is calculated using a pair of corresponding sides. In the three examples above, the scale factor is 2.

Scale factor The number you multiply each side length by to enlarge or reduce a shape



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

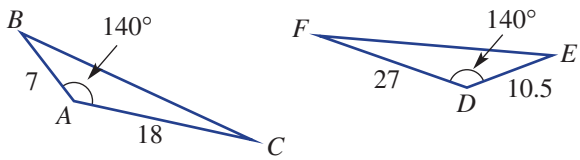
Exercise 7F

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Which of the following is not a test for the similarity of triangles?
SSS, SAS, RHS, SSA, AAA

2 Why is the AA test the same as the AAA test for similar triangles?

3 Consider this pair of triangles.



a Work out $\frac{DE}{AB}$.

b Work out $\frac{DF}{AC}$. What do you notice?

c What is the scale factor?

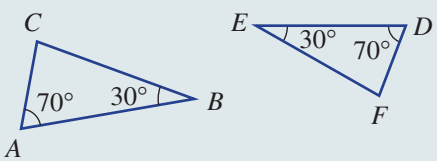
d Which of SSS, SAS, AAA or RHS would be used to explain their similarity?

FLUENCY 4(½), 5 | 4(½), 5

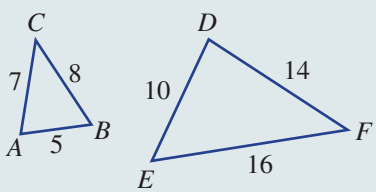
Example 12 Proving similar triangles

Decide whether the pairs of triangles are similar, giving reasons.

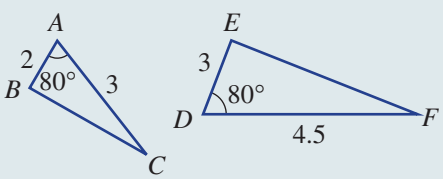
a



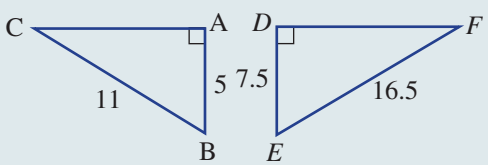
b



c



d

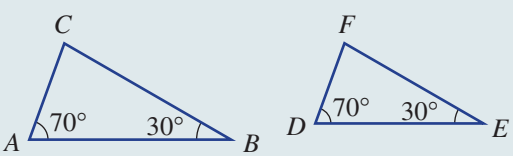


Solution

a $\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)
$\angle ABC = \angle DEF$ (A)
$\angle ACB = \angle DFE$ (A)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \,|||\, \triangle DEF$ (AAA)

Explanation

Two corresponding angles are equal and therefore the third corresponding angle is also equal.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7F

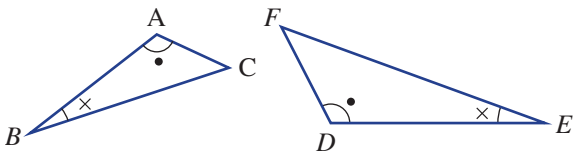
Solution		Explanation
b $\frac{DE}{AB} = \frac{10}{5} = 2$	(S)	All three corresponding sides are in the same ratio or proportion.
$\frac{EF}{BC} = \frac{16}{8} = 2$	(S)	
$\frac{DF}{AC} = \frac{14}{7} = 2$	(S)	
$\therefore \triangle ABC \|\|\| \triangle DEF$	(SSS)	
c $\frac{DE}{AB} = \frac{3}{2} = 1.5$	(S)	Two corresponding sides are in the same ratio and the included corresponding angles are equal.
$\angle BAC = \angle EDF$	(A)	
$\frac{DF}{AC} = \frac{4.5}{3} = 1.5$	(S)	
$\therefore \triangle ABC \|\|\| \triangle DEF$	(SAS)	
d $\angle BAC = \angle EDF = 90°$	(R)	They are right-angled triangles with the hypotenuses and one other pair of corresponding sides in the same ratio.
$\frac{EF}{BC} = \frac{16.5}{11} = 1.5$	(H)	
$\frac{DE}{AB} = \frac{7.5}{5} = 1.5$	(S)	
$\therefore \triangle ABC \|\|\| \triangle DEF$	(RHS)	

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

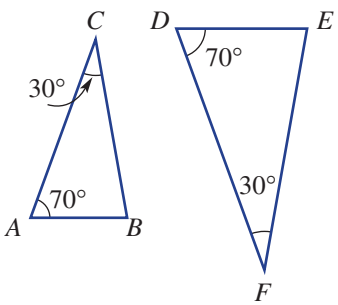
4 Decide whether the pairs of triangles are similar, giving reasons.

List all the equal angles and corresponding pairs of sides, as in Example 12.

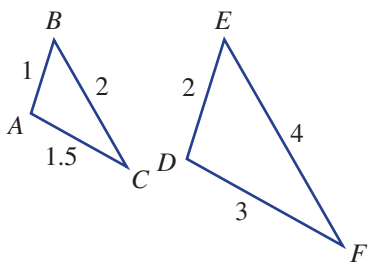
a



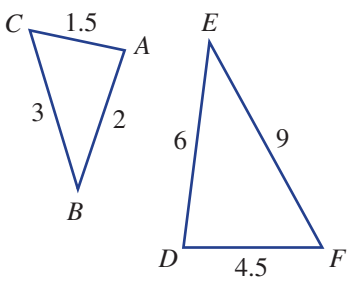
b



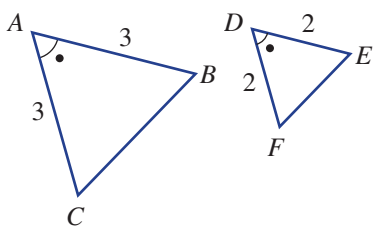
c



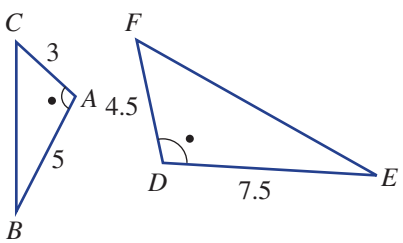
d



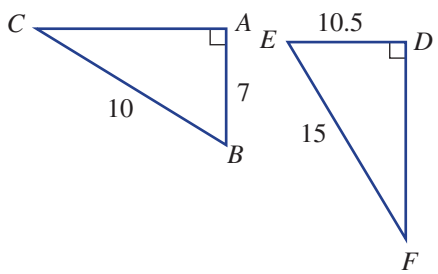
e



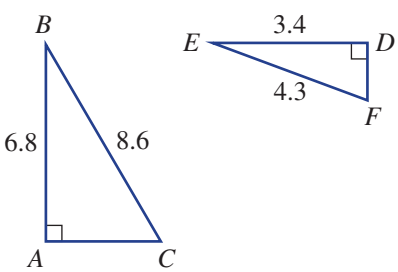
f



g



h

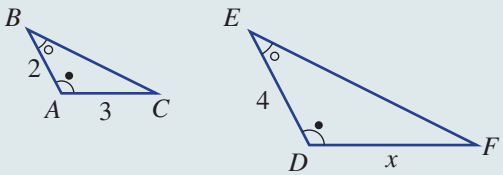


ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7F

Example 13 Using similar triangles to find an unknown length

If the given pair of triangles are known to be similar, find the value of x.

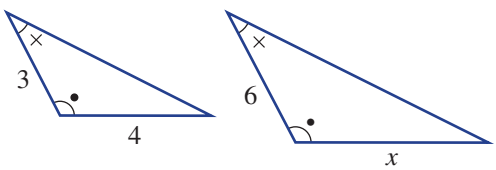


Solution	Explanation
Scale factor $= \frac{DE}{AB} = \frac{4}{2} = 2$	First find the scale factor using a pair of corresponding sides. Divide the larger number by the smaller number.
$x = 3 \times 2$	Multiply the corresponding length on the smaller triangle using the scale factor.
$= 6$	

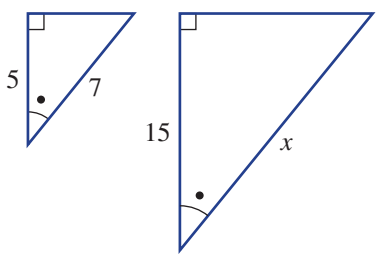
5 If the given pair of triangles are known to be similar, find the value of x.

For parts **c** and **d**, use division to find x.

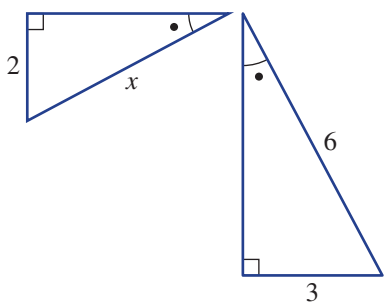
a



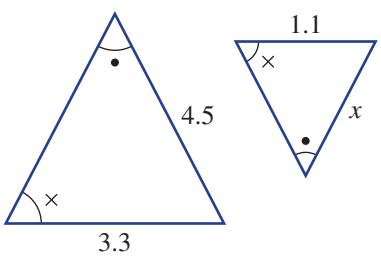
b



c



d



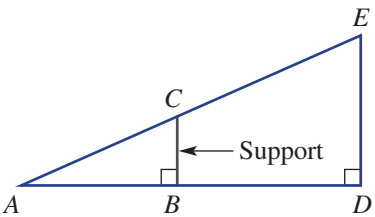
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6 6, 7

6 A ski ramp has a vertical support, as shown.

a List the two triangles that are similar.

b Why are the two triangles similar?



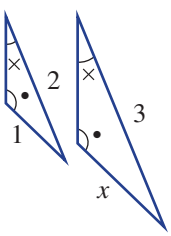
List triangles like this: $\triangle STU$.

c If $AB = 4$ m and $AD = 10$ m, find the scale factor.

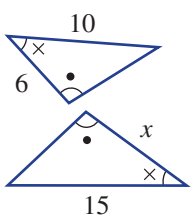
d If $BC = 1.5$ m, find the height of the ramp, DE.

7 State why the pairs of triangles are similar (give the abbreviated reason) and determine the value of x in each case.

a

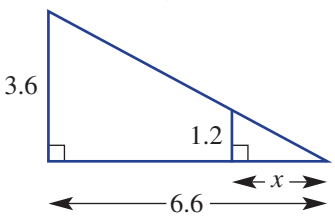


b



They all have the same reason.

c



Triangles in parallel lines

— 8

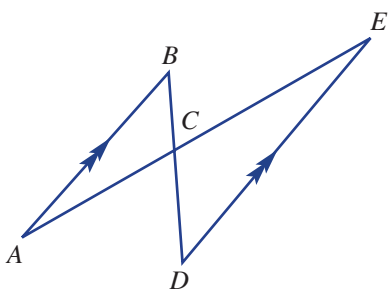
8 In the given diagram, AB is parallel to DE.

a List the three pairs of angles that are equal and give a reason.

b If $AB = 8$ cm and $DE = 12$ cm, find:

i DC if $BC = 4$ cm

ii AC if $CE = 9$ cm



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7G Applying similar triangles

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

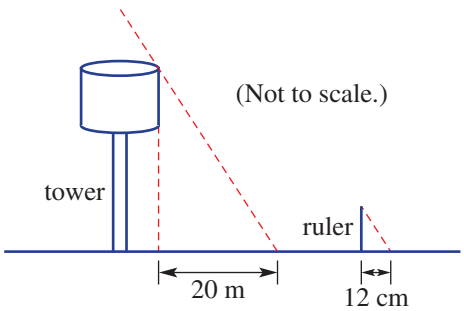
Once it is established that two triangles for a particular situation are similar, the ratio or scale factor between side lengths can be used to find unknown side lengths.

Similar triangles have many applications in the real world. One application is finding an inaccessible distance, like the height of a tall object or the distance across a deep ravine.

Let's start: The tower and the ruler

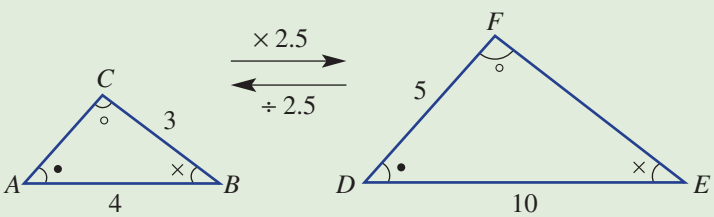
Franklin wants to know how tall a water tower is in his town. At a particular time of day he measures its shadow to be 20 m long. At the same time he stands a 30 cm ruler near the tower, which gives a 12 cm shadow.

- Explain why the two formed triangles are similar.
- What is the scale factor?
- What is the height of the tower?



Key ideas

- For two similar triangles, the ratio of the corresponding side lengths, written as a single number, is called the scale factor.



- Once the scale factor is known, it can be used to find unknown side lengths.

$\frac{DE}{AB} = \frac{10}{4} = \frac{5}{2} = 2.5$

$\therefore$ Scale factor is 2.5.

$\therefore EF = 3 \times 2.5 = 7.5$

$AC = 5 \div 2.5 = 2$

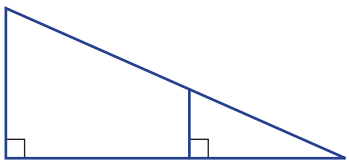
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 7G

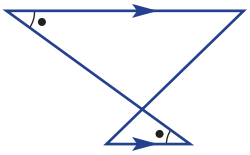
UNDERSTANDING 1–2 2

1 Give reasons why the pairs of triangles in each diagram are similar.

a



b



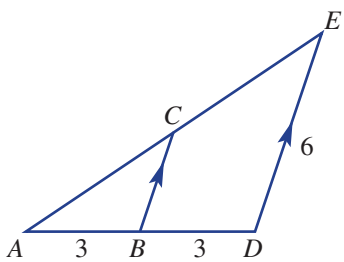
Think about all the corresponding pairs of angles. How many equal pairs are there?

2 For the pair of triangles in the given diagram:

a Which reason would be chosen to explain their similarity: SSS, SAS, AAA or RHS?

b What is the scale factor?

c What is the length of BC?



FLUENCY 3, 4 3, 5

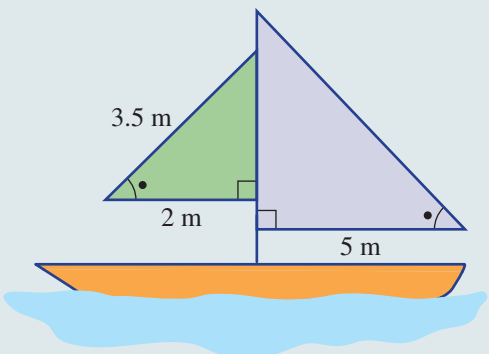
Example 14 Applying similar triangles

A home-made raft consists of two sails with measurements and angles as shown in this diagram.

a Give reasons why the two sails are similar in shape.

b Find the scale factor for the side lengths of the sails.

c Find the length of the longest side of the large sail.



Solution	Explanation
a AAA (there are three equal pairs of angles)	Two of the three angles are clearly equal, so the third must be equal.
b Scale factor $= \frac{5}{2} = 2.5$	Choose two corresponding sides with known lengths and divide the larger by the smaller.
c Longest side $= 3.5 \times 2.5$ $= 8.75$ m	Multiply the corresponding side on the smaller triangle by the scale factor.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

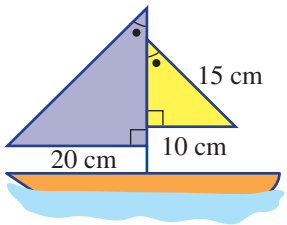
7G

3 A toy yacht consists of two sails with measurements and angles as shown in this diagram.

a Give reasons why the two sails are similar in shape.

b Find the scale factor for the side lengths of the sails.

c Find the length of the longest side of the large sail.



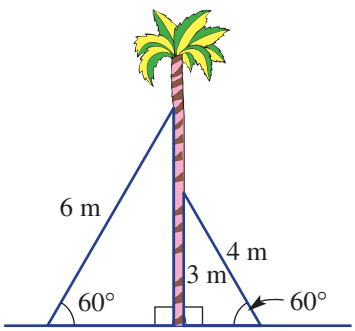
You can't choose SSS, SAS or RHS because only one pair of corresponding sides is given.

4 A tall palm tree is held in place with two cables of length 6 m and 4 m, as shown.

a Give reasons why the two triangles created by the cables are similar in shape.

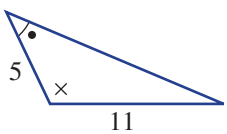
b Find the scale factor for the side lengths of the cables.

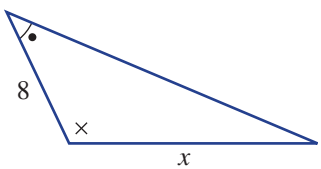
c Find the height of the point above the ground where the longer cable is attached to the palm tree.



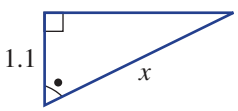
5 These pairs of triangles are known to be similar. By finding the scale factor, find the value of x.

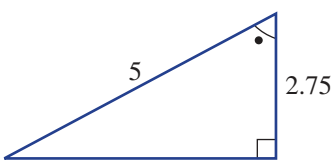
a





b





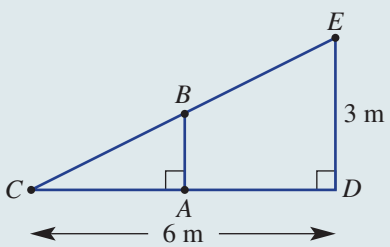
PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6–8, 10 7–10

Example 15 Working with combined triangles

A ramp is supported by a vertical stud, AB, where A is at the centre of CD. It is known that $CD = 6$ m and that the ramp is 3 m high.

a Using the letters given, name the two triangles that are similar and give your reason.

b Find the length of the stud AB.



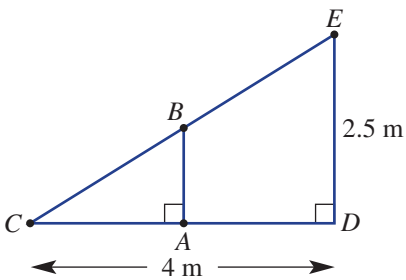
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Solution	Explanation
a $\triangle ABC$ and $\triangle DEC$ (AAA)	The angle at C is common to both triangles and they both have a right angle.
b $AC = 3$ m	Since A is in the centre of CD, then AC is half of CD.
Scale factor $= \frac{6}{3} = 2$	$CD = 6$ m and $AC = 3$ m.
$\therefore AB = 3 \div 2$	Divide the larger side length, DE, by the scale factor.
$= 1.5$ m	

6 A ramp is supported by a vertical stud, AB, where A is at the centre of CD. It is known that $CD = 4$ m and that the ramp is 2.5 m high.

a Using the letters given, name the two triangles that are similar and give your reason.

b Find the length of the stud AB.



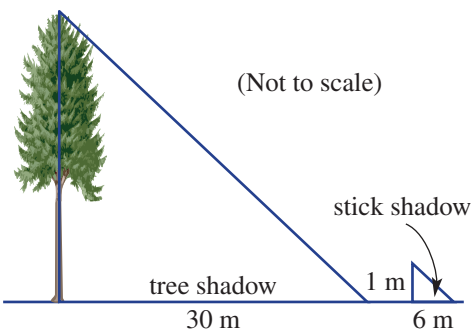
7 A 1 m vertical stick and a tree cast their shadows at a particular time in the day. The shadow lengths are shown in this diagram.

a Give reasons why the two triangles shown are similar in shape.

b Find the scale factor for the side lengths of the triangles.

c Find the height of the tree.

At the same time of day, the angle that the light makes with the ground will be the same.



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

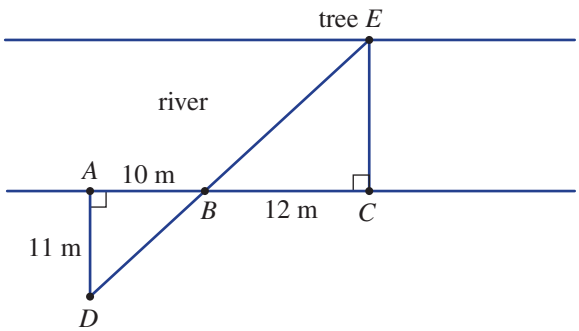
7G

8 From a place on the river (C), a tree (E) is spotted on the opposite bank. The distances between selected trees A, B, C and D are measured as shown.

a List two similar triangles and give a reason why they are similar.

b Find the scale factor.

c Find the width of the river.



AB corresponds to CB and AD corresponds to CE.

9 At a particular time of day, Leon casts a shadow 1.3 m long, whereas Jackson, who is 1.75 m tall, casts a shadow 1.2 m long. Find the height of Leon to two decimal places.

Draw a diagram to find the scale factor.

10 Try this activity with a classmate but ensure that at least one person knows their height.

a Go out into the Sun and measure the length of each person's shadow.

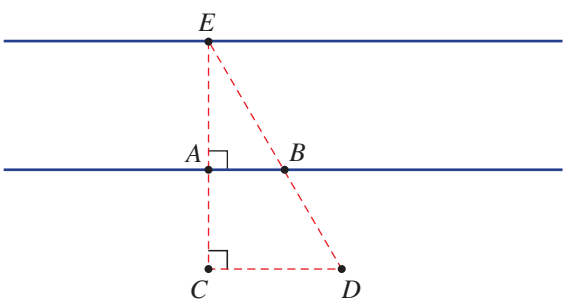
b Use these measurements plus the known height of one person to find the height of the other person.

Gorge challenge

— 11

11 Mandy sets up a series of rocks alongside a straight section of a deep gorge. She places rocks A, B, C and D as shown. Rock E sits naturally on the other side of the gorge. Mandy then measures the following distances.

- $AB = 10$ m
- $AC = 10$ m
- $CD = 15$ m



a Explain why $\triangle ABE \,|||\, \triangle CDE$.

b What is the scale factor?

c Use trial and error to find the distance across the gorge from rocks A to E.

d Can you find the length AE by setting up an equation?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

7H Applications of similarity in measurement

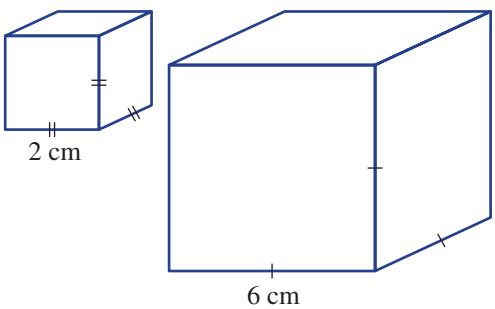
Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

Shapes or objects that are similar have a distinct length, area and volume ratio relationship.

For example, if the lengths on a model of a building are one-hundredth of the actual structure, then the length ratio is $1:100$. From this, the surface area and volume ratios are $1^2:100^2$ $(1:10\,000)$ and $1^3:100^3$ $(1:1\,000\,000)$, respectively. These ratios can be used to calculate the amount of material that is needed for the construction of the building.

Let's start: Cube analysis

These two cubes have a 2 cm and 6 cm side length.



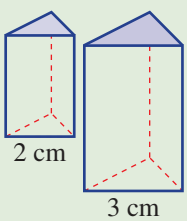
- What is the side length ratio when comparing the two cubes?
- What are the surface areas of the two cubes?
- What is the surface area ratio? What do you notice?
- What are the volumes of the two cubes?
- What is the volume ratio? What do you notice?

Key ideas

■ When two objects are similar and have a length ratio of $a:b$, then:

- Length ratio $= a:b$ Scale factor $= \frac{b}{a}$
- Area ratio $= a^2:b^2$ Scale factor $= \frac{b^2}{a^2}$
- Volume ratio $= a^3:b^3$ Scale factor $= \frac{b^3}{a^3}$

- one dimension: length ratio $= 2^1:3^1 = 2:3$
- two dimensions: area ratio $= 2^2:3^2 = 4:9$
- three dimensions: volume ratio $= 2^3:3^3 = 8:27$



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

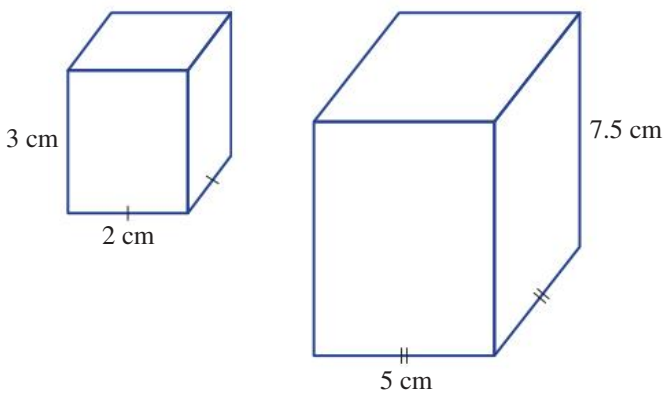
Exercise 7H

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

Length ratio	$a:b$
Area ratio	$a^2:b^2$
Volume ratio	$a^3:b^3$

1 The length ratio for two objects is $2:3$.
- **a** What would be the area ratio?
- **b** What would be the volume ratio?

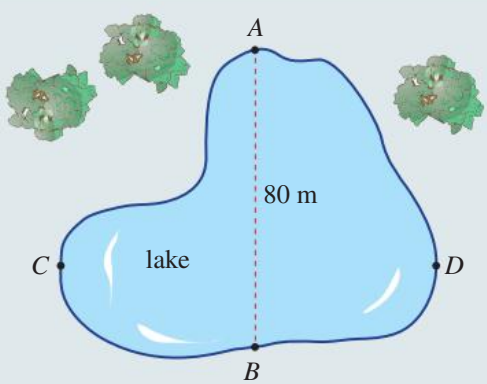
2 These two rectangular prisms are similar.
- **a** What is the side length ratio?
- **b** What is the surface area of each prism?
- **c** What is the surface area ratio? What do you notice?
- **d** What is the volume of each prism?
- **e** What is the volume ratio? What do you notice?



FLUENCY 3, 4, 7 | 4–8

Example 16 Measuring to find actual lengths

The given diagram is a simple map of a park lake.
- **a** Use a ruler to measure the distance across the lake (AB). (Answer in cm.)
- **b** Find the scale factor between the map and ground distance.
- **c** Use a ruler to measure the map distance across the lake (CD). (Answer in cm.)
- **d** Use your scale factor to find the real distance across the lake (CD). (Answer in m).



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Solution	Explanation
a 4 cm	Check with your ruler.
b $\frac{8000}{4} = 2000$	Using the same units, divide the real distance (80 m = 8000 cm) by the measured distance (4 cm).
c 5 cm	Check with your ruler.
d $5 \times 2000 = 10\,000$ cm $= 100$ m	Multiply the measured distance by the scale factor and convert to metres by dividing by 100.

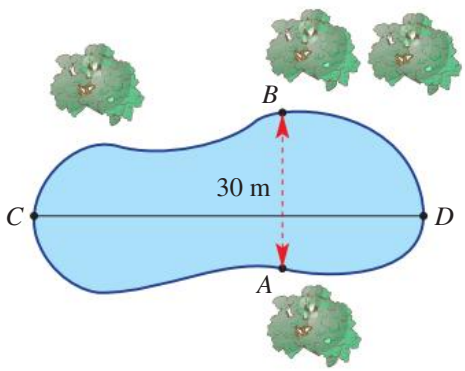
3 The given diagram is a simple map of a park lake.

a Use a ruler to measure the distance across the lake (AB). (Answer in cm.)

b Find the scale factor between the map and ground distance.

c Use a ruler to find the map distance across the lake (CD). (Answer in cm.)

d Use your scale factor to find the real distance across the lake (CD). (Answer in m.)



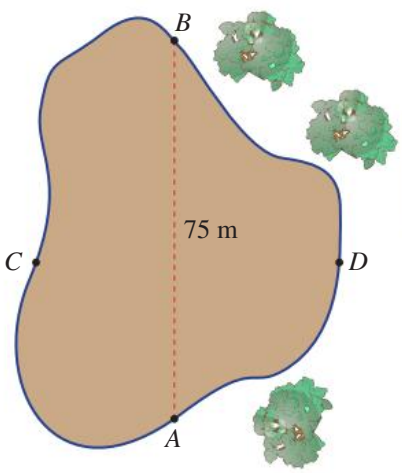
4 The given diagram is a simple map of a children's play area.

a Use a ruler to measure the distance across the children's play area (AB). (Answer in cm.)

b Find the scale factor between the map and ground distance.

c Use a ruler to find the map distance across the children's play area (CD). (Answer in cm.)

d Use your scale factor to find the real distance across the children's play area (CD). (Answer in m.)



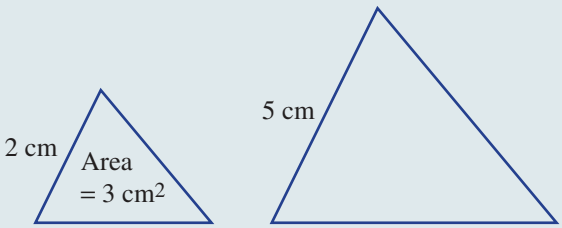
Use the measured distance AB and the actual distance AB to find the scale factor.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7H

Example 17 Using similarity to find areas

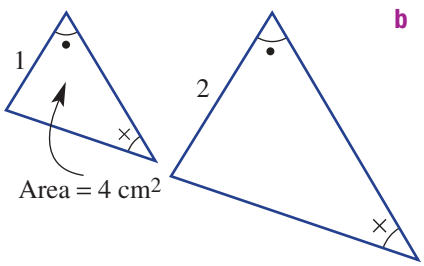
The two given triangles are known to be similar.
Find the area of the larger triangle.



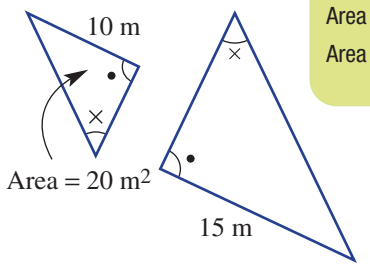
Solution	Explanation
Length ratio $= 2^1 : 5^1 = 2 : 5$	First, write the length ratio.
Area ratio $= 2^2 : 5^2 = 4 : 25$	Square each number in the length ratio to get the area ratio.
Area scale factor $= \frac{25}{4} = 6.25$	Divide the two numbers in the area ratio to get the scale factor.
$\therefore$ Area of larger triangle $= 3 \times 6.25$ $= 18.75 \text{ cm}^2$	Multiply the area of the smaller triangle by the scale factor.

5 The two given triangles are known to be similar. Find the area of the larger triangle.

a



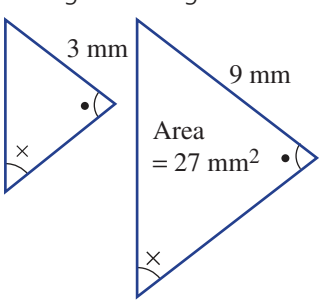
b



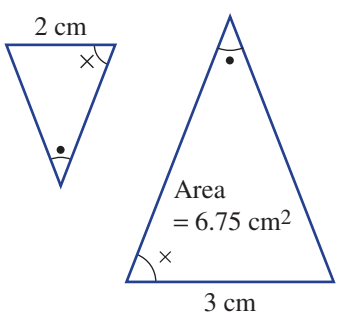
Length ratio $= a : b$
Area ratio $= a^2 : b^2$
Area scale factor $= \frac{b^2}{a^2}$

6 The two given triangles are known to be similar. Find the area of the smaller triangle.

a



b

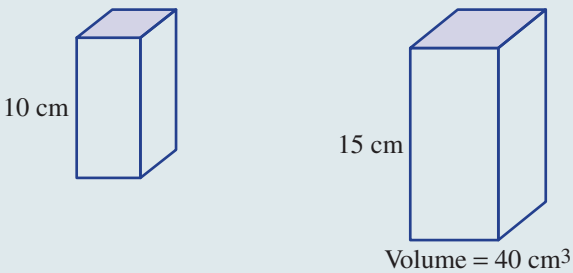


You will need to divide the larger area by the area scale factor.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Example 18 Using similarity to find volume

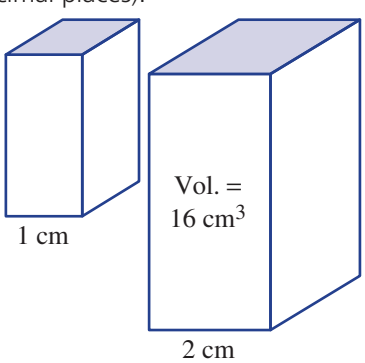
The two given prisms are known to be similar.
Find the volume of the smaller prism, correct to two decimal places.



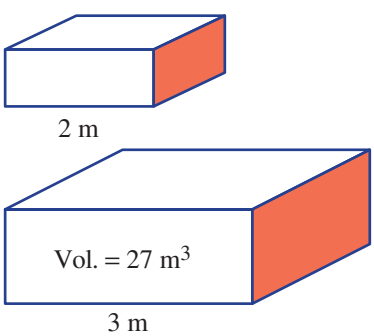
Solution	Explanation
Length ratio = $10^1 : 15^1 = 2:3$	First, write the length ratio and simplify.
Volume ratio = $2^3 : 3^3 = 8:27$	Cube each number in the length ratio to get the volume ratio.
Volume scale factor = $\frac{27}{8} = 3.375$	Divide the two numbers in the volume ratio to get the scale factor.
$\therefore$ Volume of smaller prism = $40 \div 3.375$ $= 11.85 \text{ cm}^3$	Divide the volume of the larger triangle by the scale factor and round as required.

7 The two given prisms are known to be similar. Find the volume of the smaller prism (to two decimal places).

a



b



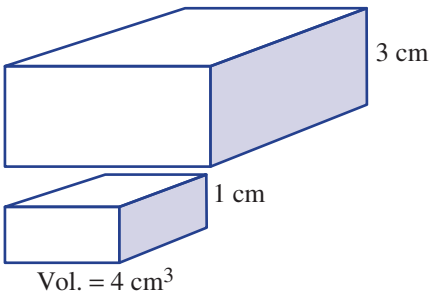
Volume scale factor = $\frac{b^3}{a^3}$ if the length ratio is $a:b$.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

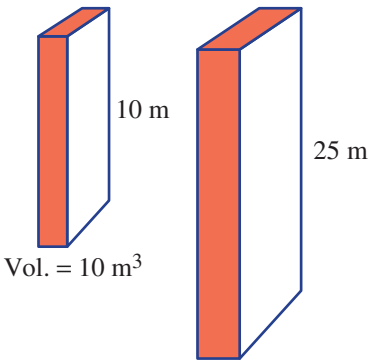
7H

8 The two given prisms are known to be similar. Find the volume of the larger prism.

a



b



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING

9, 10 | 10–12

9 The given map has a scale factor of 50 000 (i.e. ratio 1 : 50 000).

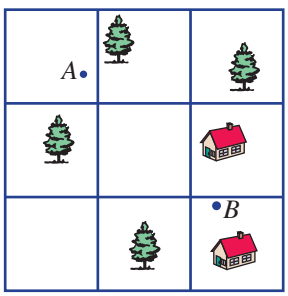
1 m = 100 cm
1 km = 1000 m

a How far on the ground, in km, is represented by these map distances?

i 2 cm **ii** 6 cm

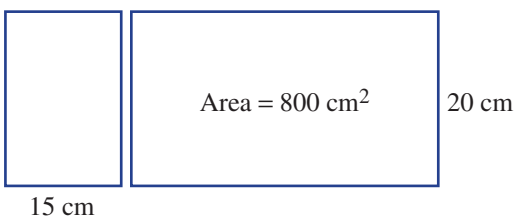
b How far on the map, in cm, is represented by these ground distances?

i 5 km **ii** 0.5 km



c What is the actual ground distance between the two points A and B? Use your ruler to measure the distance between A and B.

10 Two pieces of paper are similar in shape, as shown.

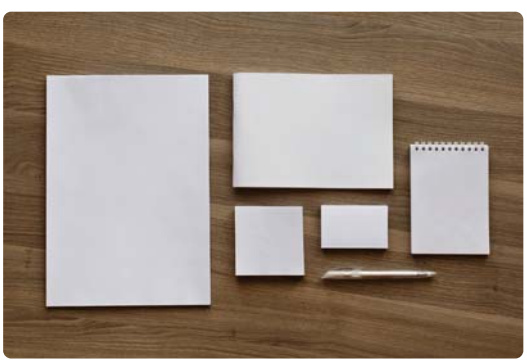


a What is:

i the length ratio?

ii the area ratio?

b Find the area of the smaller piece of paper.

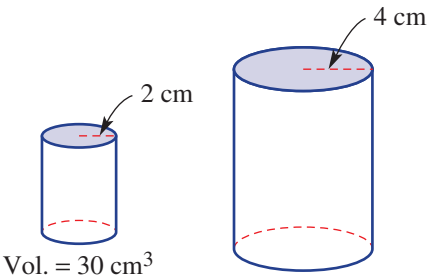


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

11 Two cylinders are similar in shape, as shown.

a Find the volume ratio.

b Find the volume of the larger cylinder.



12 Two rectangular prisms are known to be similar.

a Find the following ratios.

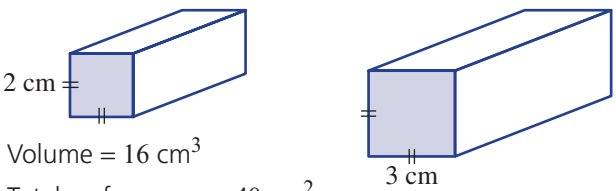
i length

ii area

iii volume

b Find the total surface area of the larger prism.

c Find the volume of the larger prism.



Skyscraper model

— 13

$1\ m^2 = 100 \times 100$
$= 10\ 000\ cm^2$

13 A scale model of a skyscraper is 1 m tall and the volume is 2 m^3. The actual height of the skyscraper is 300 m tall.

a Find the volume ratio between the model and actual skyscraper.

b Find the volume of the actual skyscraper.

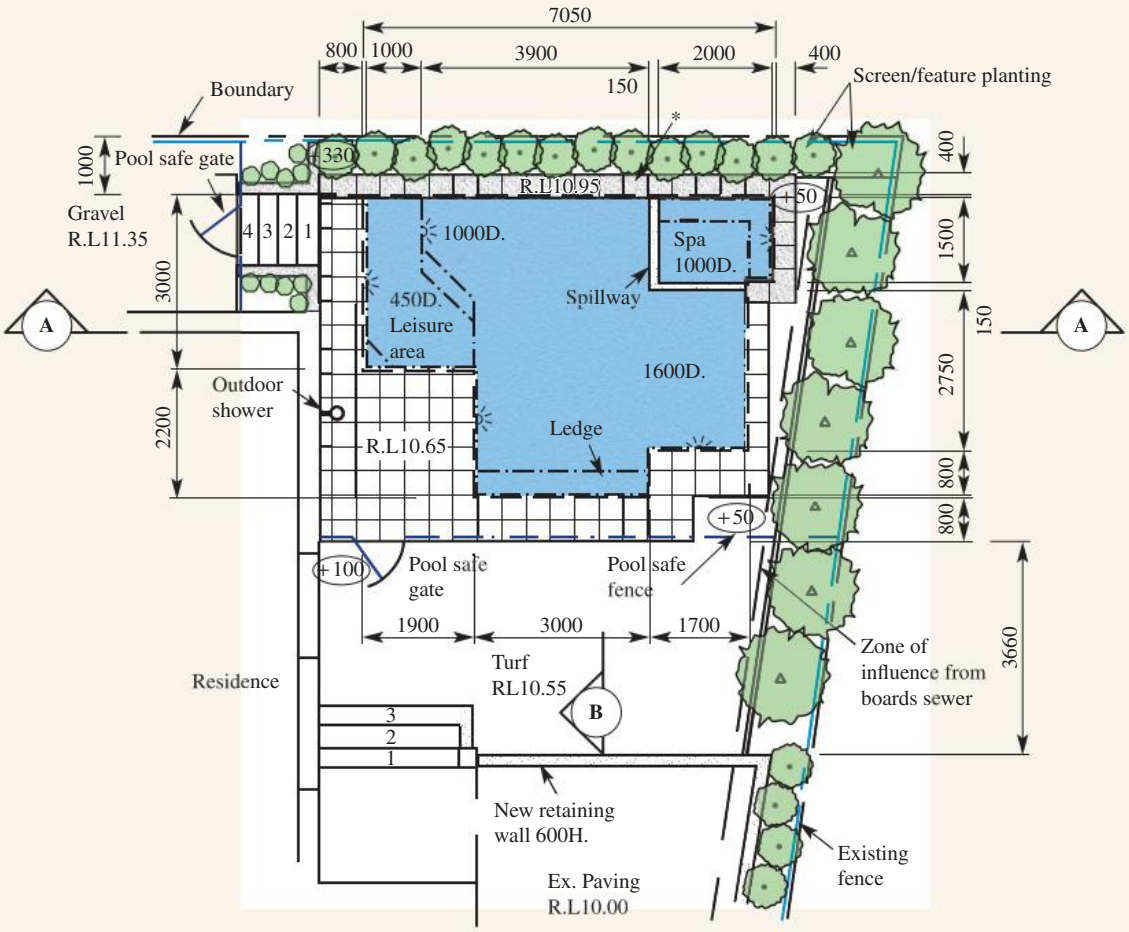
c If the area of a window on the model is 1 cm^2, find the area of the actual window, in m^2.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Maths@Work: Pool builder

Pool builders and designers need to understand many aspects of measurement and geometry to be able to accurately undertake the task of designing and building pools that meet the specifications of the client. They must be able to read plans, measure the angles, create similar figures and work with parallel lines, especially when they create and work from the pool plans and drawings.

Below are the plans for a pool drawn by a designer. All lengths are given in mm. Answer the questions on the next page relating to the design of this pool.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

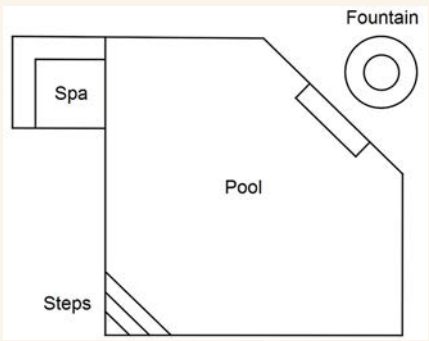
1 Refer to the plans to answer the following:
- **a** What is the total length of the pool when looking across the top of the plans, in metres?
- **b** How deep is the proposed spa, in metres?
- **c** What is the height of the new retaining wall, in cm?
- **d** What is the area taken up by the internal dimensions of the spa? Include the seated area and give your answer in square metres.
- **e** What is the angle between the back fence and the right side fence?
- **f** If you walked around the outside of the pool/spa area, how many right angles would you turn? Assume you start and finish at the same point, facing in the same direction.

2 Consider the section of the pool called Leisure area, including the two steps which are a part of this area.
- **a** By counting the number of outside edges, decide what is the shape of the proposed leisure area.
- **b** What is the sum of the interior angles of the leisure area, using your knowledge of the angle sum of any polygon?
- **c** Use a protractor to measure the angles of the leisure area to check that the total is what you expect from part **b**.
- **d** Using your geometrical equipment, ruler and protractor, create an enlargement of the leisure area. Use the enlargement factor of 4. Your drawing will be mathematically similar to the original. Add all the labelled measurements from the original drawing.

3 Consider this pool tile, which will be used in the spa of this pool.
- **a** What are two shapes being used in its design?
- **b** Are both shapes regular?
- **c** What are the internal angles of the two shapes?
- **d** This pattern is a tessellation of two shapes. Why does there need to be two different shapes used here? Explain.
- **e** Design your own tessellation using two regular shapes, ensuring they are different from the ones used here.

Using technology

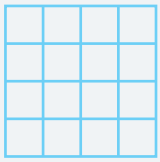
4 Use a geometry package, like GeoGebra, Cabri or Geometer's sketchpad, to come up with your own pool design. You may wish to add length and angle measurements to add detail. Here is a simple example.



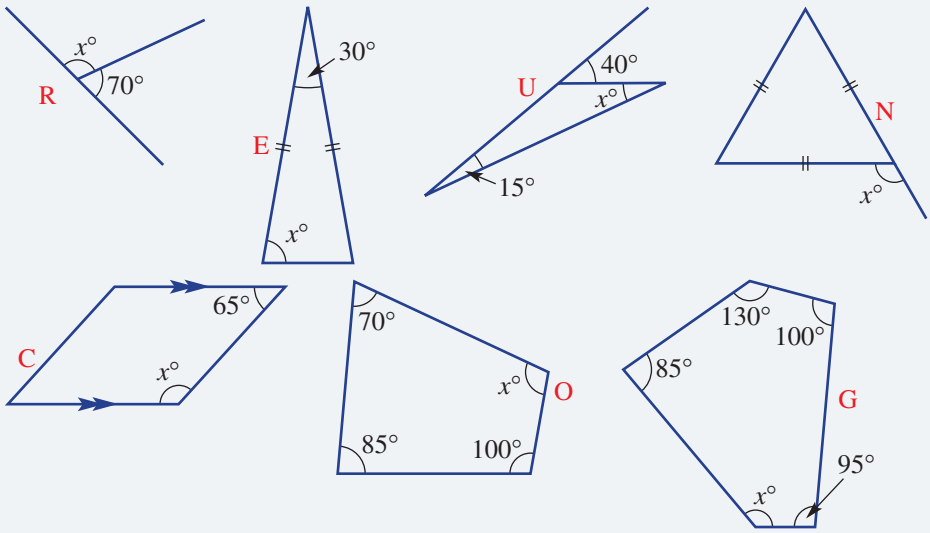
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Puzzles and games

1 How many squares can you see in this diagram?

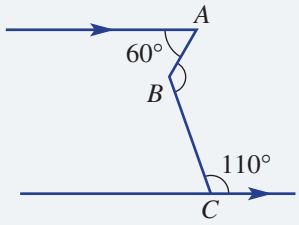


2 'I think of this when I look in the mirror.' Find the value of x in each diagram, then match the letters beside the diagrams to the answers below.



$\overline{115}$ $\overline{105}$ $\overline{120}$ $\overline{130}$ $\overline{110}$ $\overline{25}$ $\overline{75}$ $\overline{120}$ $\overline{115}$ $\overline{75}$

3 What is the size of the acute angle $\angle ABC$ in this diagram?

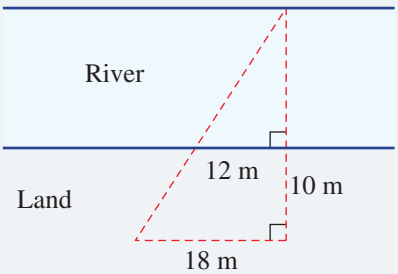


4 This rectangle is subdivided by three straight lines.

a How many regions are formed?

b What is the maximum number of regions formed if four lines are used instead of three?

5 Find the distance across the river.

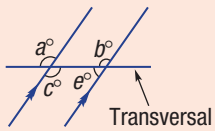


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter summary

Geometry

Parallel lines



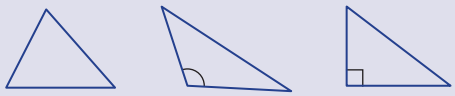
$a = b$ corresponding angles
$b = c$ alternate angles
$c + e = 180$ cointerior angles
$a = c$ vertically opposite angles

Triangles

Angle sum = 180°

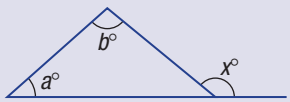
Scalene | Isosceles | Equilateral

Acute | Obtuse | Right



Exterior angles

$x = a + b$



Congruent triangles

Equal in size and shape

Tests: SSS, SAS, AAS, RHS

A congruence statement:
$\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$

Similar triangles

Equal in shape and sides are in the same ratio

Tests: SSS, SAS, AAA, RHS

A similarity statement:
$\triangle ABC \| \| \| \triangle DEF$

Quadrilaterals

Angle sum = 360°

Special types include:
- parallelogram
- square
- rectangle
- rhombus
- kite
- trapezium

Applications of similarity

When $\triangle ABC \| \| \| \triangle DEF$, then:
- Scale factor $= \frac{DE}{AB}$ or $\frac{DF}{AC}$ or $\frac{EF}{BC}$
- Length ratio $a : b$, Scale factor $= \frac{b}{a}$ ★
- Area ratio $a^2 : b^2$, Scale factor $= \frac{b^2}{a^2}$ ★
- Volume ratio $a^3 : b^3$, Scale factor $= \frac{b^3}{a^3}$ ★

Polygons ★

Angle sum, $S = 180° \times (n - 2)$

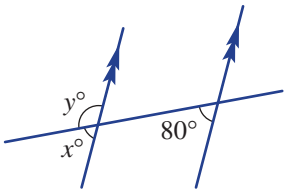
Regular polygons have:
- equal side lengths
- equal angles

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

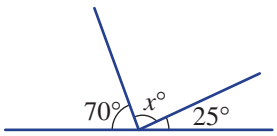
Multiple-choice questions

7A **1** The values of x and y in this diagram are, respectively:



A 100, 100 **B** 80, 100
C 80, 80 **D** 60, 120
E 80, 60

7A **2** The unknown value x in this diagram is:

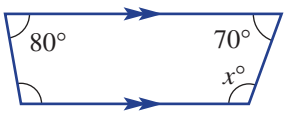


A 85 **B** 105 **C** 75
D 80 **E** 90

7B **3** A triangle has one angle of 60° and another angle of 70°. The third angle is:

A 60° **B** 30° **C** 40°
D 50° **E** 70°

7C **4** The value of x in this quadrilateral is:



A 130 **B** 90 **C** 100
D 120 **E** 110

7D **5** The sum of the internal angles of a hexagon is:

A 180° **B** 900° **C** 360°
D 540° **E** 720°

7E **6** Which abbreviated reason is not relevant for proving congruent triangles?

A AAS **B** RHS **C** SSS
D AAA **E** SAS

7F **7** Two similar triangles have a length ratio of 2 : 3. If one side on the smaller triangle is 5 cm, the length of the corresponding side on the larger triangle is:

A 3 cm **B** 7.5 cm **C** 9 cm
D 8 cm **E** 6 cm

7G **8** A stick of length 2 m and a tree of unknown height stand vertically in the Sun. The shadow lengths cast by each are 1.5 m and 30 m, respectively. The height of the tree is:

A 40 m **B** 30 m **C** 15 m **D** 20 m **E** 60 m

7H **9** Two similar triangles have a length ratio of 1 : 3 and the area of the large triangle is 27 cm^2. The area of the smaller triangle is:

A 12 cm^2 **B** 1 cm^2 **C** 3 cm^2 **D** 9 cm^2 **E** 27 cm^2

7H **10** Two similar prisms have a length ratio of 2 : 3. The volume ratio is:

A 4 : 9 **B** 8 : 27 **C** 2 : 27 **D** 2 : 9 **E** 4 : 27

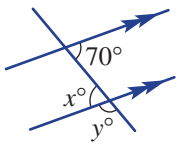
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

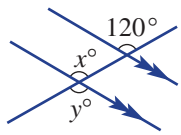
Short-answer questions

7A **1** Find the value of x and y in these diagrams.

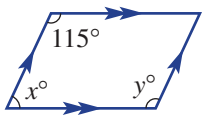
a



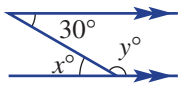
b



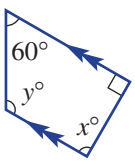
c



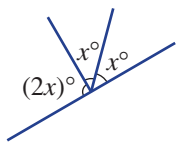
d



e

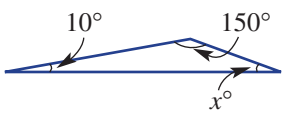


f

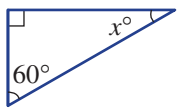


7B **2** Find the value of x in these triangles.

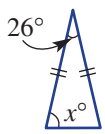
a



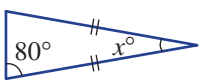
b



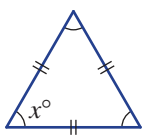
c



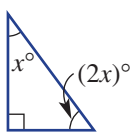
d



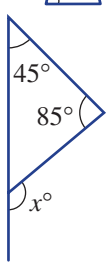
e



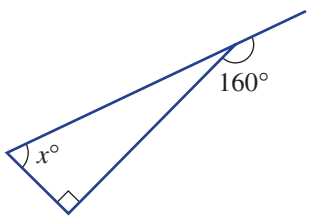
f



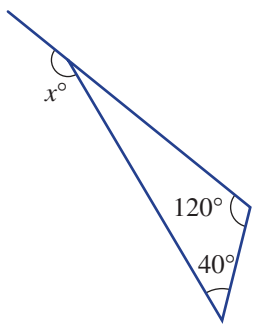
g



h



i



7C **3** List all the quadrilaterals that have:

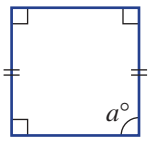
- **a** two pairs of parallel lines
- **b** opposite angles that are equal
- **c** one pair of equal angles
- **d** diagonals intersecting at right angles

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

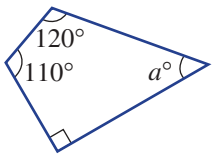
Chapter review

7C **4** Find the values of the pronumerals in these quadrilaterals.

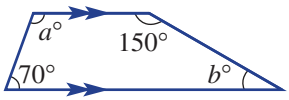
a



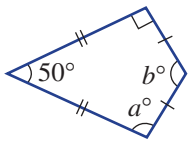
b



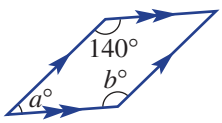
c



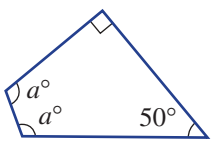
d



e

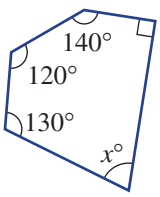


f

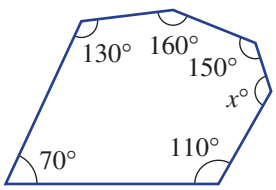


7D **5** Find the value of x by first finding the angle sum. Use $S = 180° \times (n - 2)$.

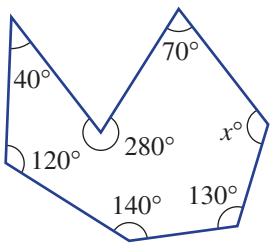
a



b



c

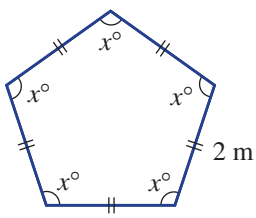


7D **6** Shown here is an example of a regular pentagon ($n = 5$) with side lengths 2 m.

a Find the perimeter of the pentagon.

b Find the total internal angle sum (S).

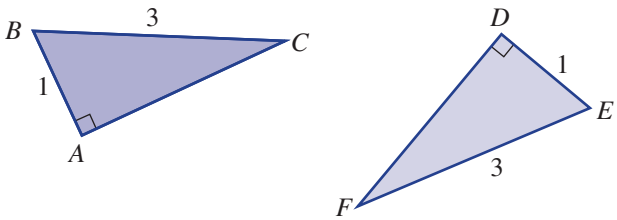
c Find the size of each internal angle (x).



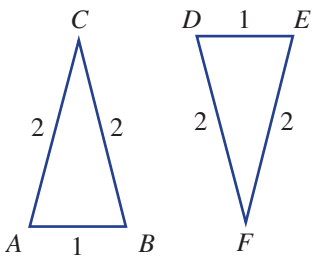
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7E **7** Give reasons why the following pairs of triangles are congruent.

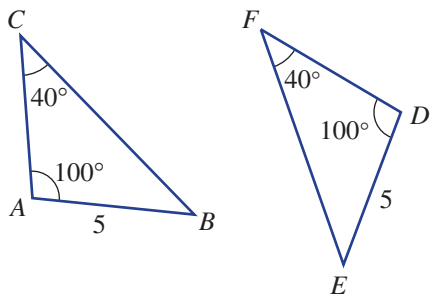
a



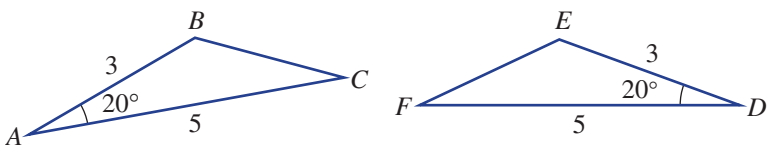
b



c

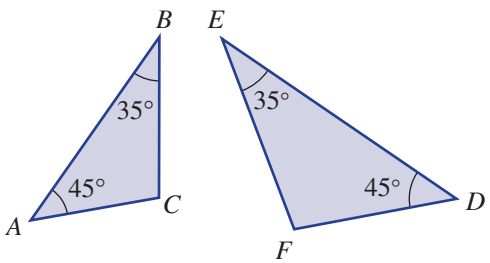


d

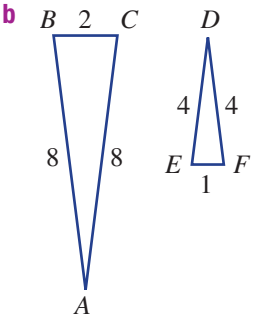


7F **8** Decide whether the given pairs of triangles are similar and give your reasons.

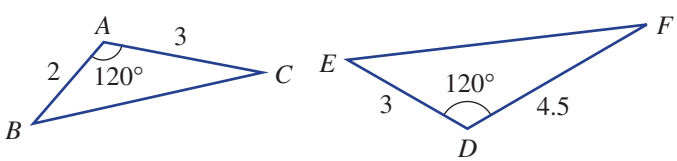
a



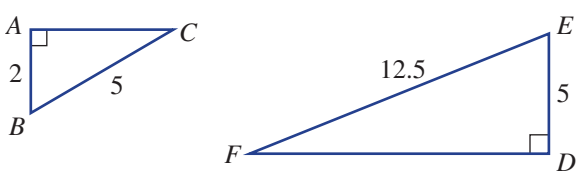
b



c



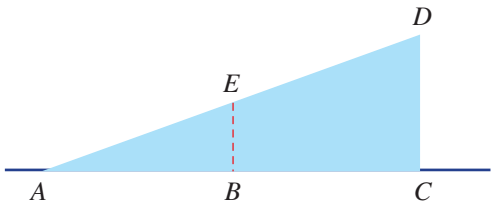
d



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

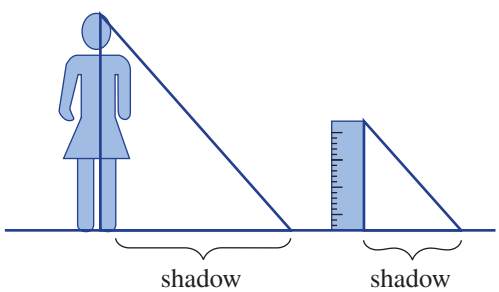
Chapter review

7G **9** A skateboard ramp is supported by two vertical struts, BE (2 m) and CD (5 m).



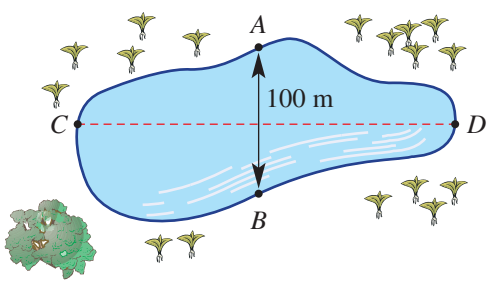
- **a** Name two triangles that are similar, using the letters A, B, C, D and E.
- **b** Give a reason why the triangles are similar.
- **c** Find the scale factor from the smallest to the largest triangle.
- **d** If the length AB is 3 m, find the horizontal length of the ramp AC.

7G **10** The shadow of Clara standing in the Sun is 1.5 m long, whereas the shadow of a 30 cm ruler is 24 cm.



- **a** Give a reason why the two created triangles are similar.
- **b** Find the scale factor between the two triangles.
- **c** How tall is Clara?

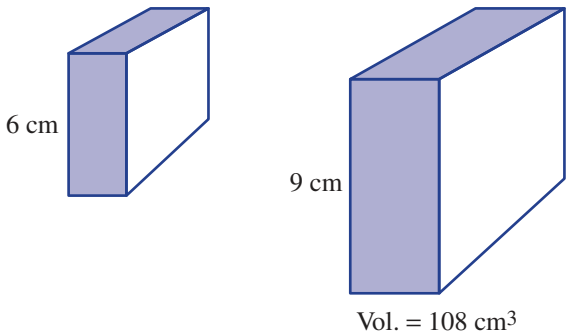
7H **11** The given diagram is a simple map of a swamp in bushland.



- **a** Use a ruler to measure the distance across the swamp (AB). (Answer in cm.)
- **b** Find the scale factor between the map and actual ground distance.
- **c** Use a ruler to find the map distance across the swamp (CD). (Answer in cm.)
- **d** Use your scale factor to find the real distance across the lake (CD). (Answer in m.)

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

7H **12** The two rectangular prisms shown are known to be similar.

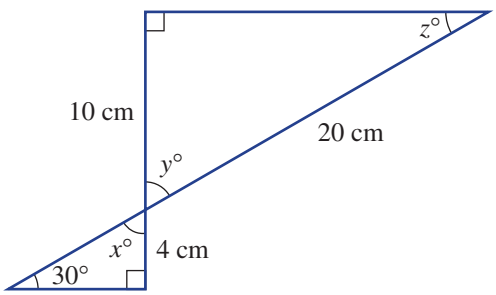


a Find:
- **i** the length ratio
- **ii** the area ratio
- **iii** the volume ratio

b Find the volume of the smaller prism.

Extended-response questions

1 A company logo contains two triangles, as shown.



a Write down the value of x, y and z.
b Explain why the two triangles are similar.
c Write down the scale factor for length.
d Find the length of the longest side of the smaller triangle.
e Write down the area ratio of the two triangles.
f Write down the area scale factor of the two triangles.

2 A toy model of a car is 8 cm long and the actual car is 5 m long.

a Write down the length ratio of the toy car to the actual car.
b If the toy car is 4.5 cm wide, what is the width of the actual car?
c What is the surface area ratio?
d If the actual car needs 5 litres of paint, what amount of paint would be needed for the toy car?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 8

Equations

What you will learn

- 8A Solving linear equations (Consolidating)
- 8B Solving more difficult linear equations ★
- 8C Using formulas
- 8D Linear inequalities
- 8E Solving simultaneous equations graphically
- 8F Solving simultaneous equations using substitution ★
- 8G Solving simultaneous equations using elimination ★

Australian curriculum

NUMBER AND ALGEBRA

Substitute values into formulas to determine an unknown **(ACMNA234)**

Solve problems involving linear equations, including those derived from formulas **(ACMNA235)**

Solve linear inequalities and graph their solutions on a **number line (ACMNA236)**

Solve linear simultaneous equations, using algebraic and graphical techniques, including using digital technology **(ACMNA237)**

Solve linear equations involving simple algebraic fractions **(ACMNA240)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

Tracking business profits

There are over 2 million businesses in Australia with many thousands of new start-ups each year. To be successful, a business must not confuse incoming cash with profit. All operating expenses need to be considered to accurately determine production costs.

Analysing and monitoring business finances requires mathematical skills. Two important business equations calculate the number of items N, to break-even (i.e. no profit and no loss) and profit margin M (i.e. profit as a percentage of sales).

$$N = \frac{\text{Fixed costs per year}}{\text{Item sale price} - \text{Production cost per item}}$$

$$M = \frac{\text{Total sales in \$} - \text{Production costs}}{\text{Total sales in \$}} \times 100$$

It takes more than a talent for coming up with good ideas for new products and services for a business to be successful. A good grasp of these equations helps talented business owners keep track of cash flow and ensure their ideas are turned into profit.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Pre-test

1 When $a = 6$ and $b = -3$, evaluate the following.

a $a - b$ **b** ab **c** b^2 **d** $3(a + 2b)$

2 When $m = 4$, $n = 7$ and $p = -2$, evaluate the following.

a $4m + p$ **b** $p(4 - n)$ **c** $\frac{8m}{p}$ **d** $2m^2$

3 Simplify the following.

a $a + 2a$ **b** $4m - m$ **c** $6p + 2p$ **d** $7m - 7m$

e $2m - 7m$ **f** $8x + y - x$ **g** $8p + 4p - 3p$ **h** $7m - 4m + 3m$

4 Simplify the following.

a $5x \times 3$ **b** $4p \times 4$ **c** $8x \times 4y$

d $6a \times (-5)$ **e** $a \times b$ **f** $6x \div 6$

g $m \div m$ **h** $6a \div 3$ **i** $\frac{15a}{5a}$

5 Complete the following.

a $x + 5 - \square = x$ **b** $w - 3 + \square = w$ **c** $p - 5 + \square = p$

d $z + 1 - \square = z$ **e** $w \times 4 \div \square = w$ **f** $a \div 2 \times \square = a$

g $m - 3 + \square = m$ **h** $2m \div \square = m$ **i** $\frac{x}{4} \times \square = x$

j $\frac{m}{3} \times \square = m$ **k** $6a \div \square = a$ **l** $10x \div \square = x$

6 Write an expression for each of the following.

a the sum of x and 3 **b** six more than n

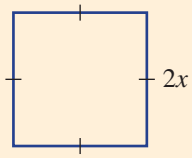
c double w **d** half of x

e six more than double x **f** seven less than x

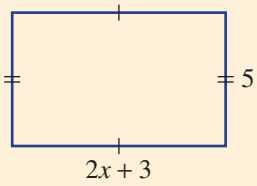
g three more than x and then doubled **h** one more than triple x

7 Write an expression for the perimeter of the following.

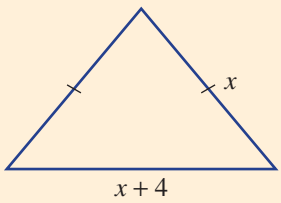
a



b



c



8 State true (T) or false (F) for whether the following are equations.

a $x + 3$ **b** $3x - 6 = 9$ **c** $x^2 - 8$

d $2x$ **e** $3a = 12$ **f** $x^2 = 100$

g $1 = x - 3$ **h** $m - m$ **i** $2p = 0$

9 Solve the following simple equations.

a $m + 3 = 10$ **b** $y - 7 = 12$ **c** $3x = 15$ **d** $\frac{b}{4} = 3$

10 Answer true (T) or false (F) to the following.

a $5 > 3$ **b** $-2 < 7$ **c** $4 \leq 2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8A Solving linear equations

CONSOLIDATING

A cricket batsman will put on socks, then cricket shoes and, finally, pads in that order. When the game is over, these items are removed in reverse order: first the pads, then the shoes and finally the socks. Nobody takes their socks off before their shoes. A similar reversal occurs when solving equations.

We can undo the operations around x by doing the opposite operation in the reverse order to how they have been applied to x. To keep each equation balanced, we always apply the same operation to both sides of an equation.

For example:

Applying operations to $x = 7$

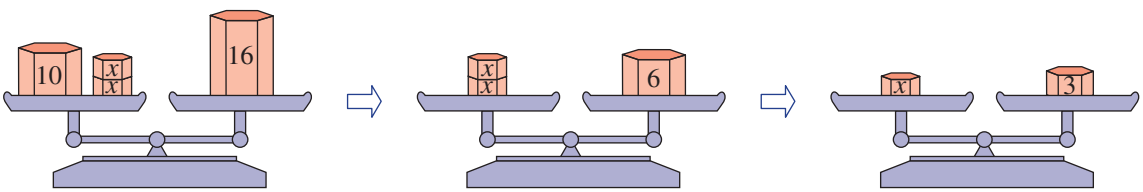
$x = 7$
$\times 2$ $\times 2$
$2x = 14$
$+12$ $+12$
$2x + 12 = 26$

Undoing the operations around x

$2x + 12 = 26$
-12 -12
$2x = 14$
$\div 2$ $\div 2$
$x = 7$

Let's start: Keeping it balanced

Three weighing scales are each balanced with various weights on the left and right pans.



Balanced scales 1 Balanced scales 2 Balanced scales 3

- What weight has been removed from each side of scales 1 to get to scales 2?
- What has been done to both the left and right sides of scales 2 to get to scales 3?
- What equations are represented in each of the balanced scales shown above?
- What methods can you recall for solving equations?

Key ideas

- An **equation** has an equals sign. The equation will be true only for certain value(s) of the pronumeral(s) that make the left-hand side equal to the right-hand side.
  For example: $\frac{5x}{6} = -2$, $3p + 2t = 6$ are equations; $6x - 13$ is not an equation.

Equation A mathematical statement that states that two expressions have the same value

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

- A **linear equation** contains a variable (e.g. x) to the power of 1 and no other powers.
  For example: $3x - 5 = 7$, $4(m - 3) = m + 6$ are linear equations;
  $x^2 = 49$ is not linear.
- To **solve** an equation, undo the operations built around x by doing the opposite operation in the reverse order.
  - Always perform the same operation to both sides of an equation so it remains balanced.
    For example:
    For $5x + 2 = 17$, we observe operations that have been applied to x:

$$x \xrightarrow{\times 5} 5x \xrightarrow{+2} 5x + 2$$

So we solve the equation by 'undoing' them in reverse order on both sides of the equation:

$$5x + 2 \xrightarrow{-2} 5x \xrightarrow{\div 5} x \text{ and } 17 \xrightarrow{-2} 15 \xrightarrow{\div 5} 3$$

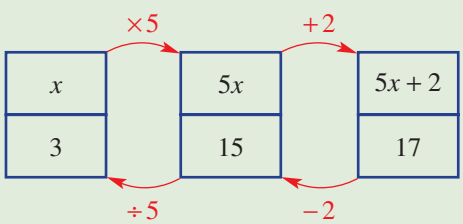
This gives the solution:

$$\begin{array}{l} 5x + 2 = 17 \\ -2 \quad\quad -2 \\ 5x = 15 \\ \div 5 \quad\quad \div 5 \\ x = 3 \end{array}$$

  - Alternatively, a solution need not show the operations applied to each side. These can be done mentally. For example:

$$\begin{aligned} 5x + 2 &= 17 \\ 5x &= 15 \\ x &= 3 \end{aligned}$$

- A flow chart can be used to solve equations. First, the equation is built up following the order of operations applied to x and then the solution for x is found by undoing these operations in the reverse order.
  For example, here is a flow chart solution to $5x + 2 = 17$.



  Solution $x = 3$.
  - Backtracking is the process of undoing the operations applied to x.
- To verify an answer means to check that the solution is correct by substituting the answer to see if it makes the equation true.
  e.g. Verify that $x = 3$ is a solution to $5x + 2 = 17$.

$$\begin{aligned} \text{LHS} &= 5x + 2 \qquad \text{RHS} = 17 \\ &= 5(3) + 2 \\ &= 17 \qquad \therefore\ x = 3 \text{ is a solution.} \end{aligned}$$

Linear equation An equation whose pronumerals are always to the power of 1 and do not multiply or divide each other

Solve To find the value of an unknown quantity

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 8A

UNDERSTANDING 1–5(½) 3–5(½)

1 Decide whether $x = 2$ is a solution to these equations.

a $x + 3 = 5$ **b** $2x = 7$ **c** $x - 1 = 4$
d $2x - 1 = 10$ **e** $3x + 2 = 8$ **f** $2 - x = 0$

Substitute $x = 2$ to see whether LHS = RHS.

Example 1 Solving one-step equations involving addition

Solve $x + 7 = 12$.

Solution	Explanation
$x + 7 = 12$	Write the equation. The opposite of $+7$ is -7.
$x = 12 - 7$	Subtract 7 from both sides.
$x = 5$	Simplify.
Verify: LHS $= 5 + 7$ RHS $= 12$	Check that your answer is correct.
$= 12$	

2 Solve the following.

a $t + 5 = 8$ **b** $m + 4 = 10$ **c** $8 + x = 14$
d $m + 7 = 0$ **e** $x + 3 = 11$ **f** $x + 6 = 2$
g $m + 8 = 40$ **h** $a + 1 = -5$ **i** $16 = m + 1$

$8 + x = 14$ is the same as $x + 8 = 14$.
$16 = m + 1$ is the same as $m + 1 = 16$.

Example 2 Solving one-step equations involving subtraction

Solve $x - 9 = 3$.

Solution	Explanation
$x - 9 = 3$	Write the equation. The opposite of -9 is $+9$.
$x = 3 + 9$	Add 9 to both sides.
$x = 12$	Simplify.
Verify: LHS $= 12 - 9$ RHS $= 3$	Check that your answer is correct.
$= 3$	

3 Find the value of x.

a $x - 3 = 3$ **b** $x - 7 = 2$ **c** $x - 8 = 9$
d $x - 3 = 0$ **e** $x - 2 = -8$ **f** $x - 5 = 7$
g $x - 12 = 24$ **h** $x - 50 = 70$ **i** $x - 1 = 100$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8A

Example 3 Solving one-step equations involving multiplication

Solve $3x = 12$.

Solution	Explanation
$3x = 12$	Write the equation. The opposite of $\times 3$ is $\div 3$.
$x = \frac{12}{3}$	Divide both sides by 3.
$x = 4$	Simplify.
Verify: LHS $= 3 \times 4$ RHS $= 12$ $= 12$	Check that your answer is correct.

4 Solve the following.

a $8p = 24$ **b** $5c = 30$ **c** $27 = 3d$

d $2m = 16$ **e** $5z = 125$ **f** $9w = 81$

g $15p = 15$ **h** $6m = -42$ **i** $-10 = 20p$

$27 = 3d$ is the same as $3d = 27$.

Example 4 Solving one-step equations involving division

Solve $\frac{x}{4} = 20$.

Solution	Explanation
$\frac{x}{4} = 20$	Write the equation. The opposite of $\div 4$ is $\times 4$.
$x = 20 \times 4$	Multiply both sides by 4.
$x = 80$	Simplify.
Verify: LHS $= \frac{80}{4}$ RHS $= 20$ $= 20$	Check that your answer is correct.

5 Solve each of the following equations.

a $\frac{x}{5} = 10$ **b** $\frac{m}{3} = 7$ **c** $\frac{a}{6} = -2$

d $\frac{z}{7} = 0$ **e** $\frac{x}{8} = -1$ **f** $\frac{w}{9} = -3$

g $\frac{r}{7} = 8$ **h** $\frac{w}{3} = \frac{1}{2}$ **i** $\frac{m}{2} = \frac{1}{4}$

$3 \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{1} \times \frac{1}{2} = \frac{3}{2}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 6–9(½) 6–9(½)

6 Solve the following equations.

a $x + 9 = 12$ **b** $x + 3 = 12$ **c** $x + 15 = 4$
d $x - 7 = 3$ **e** $x - 2 = 12$ **f** $x - 5 = 5$
g $3x = 9$ **h** $4x = 16$ **i** $2x = 100$
j $\frac{x}{5} = 4$ **k** $\frac{x}{3} = 7$ **l** $\frac{x}{7} = 1$

Carry out the 'opposite' operation to solve for x.

Example 5 Solving two-step equations

Solve $4x + 5 = 17$.

Solution	Explanation
$4x + 5 = 17$	Write the equation.
$4x = 12$	Subtract 5 from both sides first.
$x = \frac{12}{4}$	Divide both sides by 4.
$x = 3$	Simplify.
Verify: LHS $= 4(3) + 5$ RHS $= 17$ $= 17$	Check your answer.

7 Solve the following equations.

a $2x + 5 = 7$ **b** $3x + 2 = 11$ **c** $4x - 3 = 9$
d $6x + 13 = 1$ **e** $8x + 16 = 8$ **f** $10x + 92 = 2$
g $3x - 4 = 8$ **h** $2x - 7 = 9$ **i** $5x - 4 = 36$
j $2x - 6 = -10$ **k** $7x - 3 = -24$ **l** $6x - 3 = 27$

First choose to add or subtract a number from both sides and then divide by the coefficient of x.

Example 6 Solving two-step equations involving simple fractions

Solve $\frac{x}{5} - 3 = 4$.

Solution	Explanation
$\frac{x}{5} - 3 = 4$	Write the equation.
$\frac{x}{5} = 7$	Add 3 to both sides.
$x = 35$	Multiply both sides by 5.
Verify: LHS $= \frac{35}{5} - 3$ RHS $= 4$ $= 4$	Check that your answer is correct.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8A

8 Solve the following equations.

a $\frac{x}{3}+2=5$ **b** $\frac{x}{6}+3=3$ **c** $\frac{x}{7}+4=12$

d $\frac{x}{4}-3=2$ **e** $\frac{x}{5}-4=3$ **f** $\frac{x}{10}-2=7$

g $\frac{x}{8}-2=-6$ **h** $\frac{x}{4}-3=-8$ **i** $\frac{x}{2}-1=-10$

When solving equations, the order of steps is important. For $\frac{x}{3}-5$, undo the -5 first, then undo the $\div 3$.

Example 7 Solving more two-step equations

Solve $\frac{x+4}{2}=6$.

Solution	Explanation
$\frac{x+4}{2}=6$	Write the equation.
$x+4=12$	In $\frac{x+4}{2}$ we first add 4 and then divide by 2. So to undo we first multiply both sides by 2.
$x=8$	Subtract 4 from both sides.
Verify: LHS $=\frac{8+4}{2}$ RHS $=6$ $=6$	Check that your answer is correct.

9 Solve the following.

a $\frac{m+1}{2}=3$ **b** $\frac{a-1}{3}=2$ **c** $\frac{x+5}{2}=3$

d $\frac{x+5}{3}=2$ **e** $\frac{n-4}{5}=1$ **f** $\frac{m-6}{2}=8$

g $\frac{w+4}{3}=-1$ **h** $\frac{m+3}{5}=2$ **i** $\frac{w-6}{3}=7$

j $\frac{a+7}{4}=2$ **k** $\frac{a-3}{8}=-5$ **l** $\frac{m+5}{8}=0$

When solving equations, the order of steps is important. For $\frac{x+7}{3}$, undo the $\div 3$ first, then undo the $+7$. Never cancel a number joined by $+$ or $-$ to an x. In $\frac{x+8}{4}$, you cannot cancel the 4 into the 8.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 10, 11 11–13

Example 8 Writing equations from word problems

For each of the following statements, write an equation and solve for the pronumeral.

a When 7 is subtracted from x, the result is 12.

b When x is divided by 5 and then 6 is added, the result is 10.

c When 4 is subtracted from x and that answer is divided by 2, the result is 9.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Solution	Explanation
a $x - 7 = 12$ $x = 19$	Subtract 7 from x means to start with x and then subtract 7. 'The result' means '='.
b $\frac{x}{5} + 6 = 10$ $\frac{x}{5} = 4$ $x = 20$	Divide x by 5, then add 6 and make it equal to 10. Solve the equation by subtracting 6 from both sides first.
c $\frac{x-4}{2} = 9$ $x - 4 = 18$ $x = 22$	Subtracting 4 from x gives $x - 4$, and divide that answer by 2. Undo $\div 2$ by multiplying both sides by 2, then add 4 to both sides.

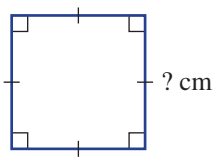
10 For each of the following statements, write an equation and solve for the pronumeral.

a When 4 is added to x, the result is 6.
b When x is added to 12, the result is 8.
c When 5 is subtracted from x, the result is 5.
d When x is divided by 3 and then 2 is added, the result is 8.
e Twice the value of x is added to 3 and the result is 9.
f $(x - 3)$ is divided by 5 and the result is 6.
g 3 times x plus 4 is equal to 16.

5 subtracted from x is $x - 5$.

11 Write an equation and solve it for each of these questions.

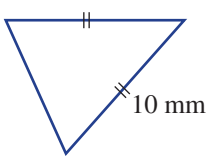
a The perimeter of a square is 52 cm. Determine the length of the side.



$P = 52$ cm

Draw a diagram and choose a pronumeral to represent the unknown side. Then write an equation and solve it.

b The perimeter of an isosceles triangle is 32 mm. If the equal sides are both 10 mm, determine the length of the other side.



$P = 32$ cm

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8A

12 Convert the following into equations, then solve them for the unknown number.

a n is multiplied by 2, then 5 is added. The result is 11.
b Four times a certain number is added to 9 and the result is 29. What is the number?
c Half of a number less 2 equals 12. What is the number?
d A number plus 6 has been divided by 4. The result is 12. What is the number?
e 12 is subtracted from a certain number and the result is divided by 5. If the answer is 14, what is the number?

Choose a pronumeral to represent the unknown number, then write an equation using the pronumeral.
$\frac{1}{2}$ of x can be written as $\frac{x}{2}$.

13 Write an equation and solve it for each of these questions.

a The sum of two consecutive whole numbers is 23. What are the numbers?
b If I add 5 to twice a number, the result is 17. What is the number?
c Three less than five times a number is 12. What is the number?
d One person is 19 years older than another person. Their age sum is 69. What are their ages?
e Andrew threw the shot-put 3 m more than twice the distance Barry threw it. If Andrew threw the shot-put 19 m, how far did Barry throw it?

Consecutive whole numbers are one number apart; e.g. 3, 4, 5, 6 etc. The next consecutive number after x is $x + 1$.

Modelling with equations

—
14, 15

14 A service technician charges \$40 up front and \$60 for each hour she works.

a Find a linear equation for the total charge, \$$C$, of any job for h hours worked.
b What will a 4-hour job cost?
c If the technician works on a job for 3 days and averages 6 hours per day, what will be the overall cost?
d If a customer is charged \$400, how long did the job take?

15 A petrol tank holds 71 litres of fuel. It originally contained 5 litres. If a petrol pump fills it at 6 litres per minute, find:

a a linear equation for the amount of fuel (V litres) in the tank at time t minutes
b how long it will take to fill the tank to 23 litres
c how long it will take to fill the tank

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8B Solving more difficult linear equations

More complex linear equations may have variables on both sides of the equation and/or brackets. Examples are $6x = 2x - 8$ or $5(x + 3) = 12x + 4$.

Brackets can be removed by expanding. Equations with variables on both sides can be solved by collecting variables to one side, using addition or subtraction of a term.

More complex linear equations of this type are used when constructing buildings and in science and engineering.

Let's start: Steps in the wrong order

The steps to solve $8(x + 2) = 2(3x + 12)$ are listed here in the incorrect order.

$$8(x + 2) = 2(3x + 12)$$
$$x = 4$$
$$2x + 16 = 24$$
$$8x + 16 = 6x + 24$$
$$2x = 8$$

- Arrange them in the correct order, working from the question to the solution.
- By considering all the steps in the correct order, write what has happened in each step.

Key ideas

■ When solving complicated linear equations:

1 First, **expand** any brackets.
In this example, multiply the 3 into the first bracket and the -2 into the second bracket.

$$3(2x - 1) - 2(x - 2) = 22$$
$$6x - 6 - 2x + 4 = 22$$

2 Collect any **like terms** on the LHS and any like terms on the RHS.
Collecting like terms on each side of this example:
$5x - 3x = 2x$, $-4 - 9 = -13$, $x + 2x = 3x$ and $-5 + 10 = 5$

$$5x - 4 - 3x - 9 = x - 5 + 2x + 5$$
$$2x - 13 = 3x + 5$$

Expand Remove grouping symbols (such as brackets)

Like terms Terms with the same pronumerals and same powers

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 If an equation has variables on both sides, collect to one side by adding or subtracting one of the terms.
For example, when solving the equation $12x + 7 = 5x + 19$, first subtract $5x$ from both sides:
LHS: $12x + 7 - 5x = 7x + 7$, RHS: $5x + 19 - 5x = 19$:

$$12x + 7 = 5x + 19 \quad (-5x, -5x)$$
$$7x + 7 = 19$$

4 Start to perform the opposite operation to both sides of the equation.
5 Repeat Step 4 until the equation is solved.
6 Verify that the answer is correct.

- To solve a word problem using algebra:
  - Read the problem and find out what the question is asking for.
  - Define a pronumeral and write a statement such as: 'Let x be the number of …'. The pronumeral is often what you have been asked to find in the question.
  - Write an equation using your defined pronumeral.
  - Solve the equation.
  - Answer the question in words.

Exercise 8B

UNDERSTANDING 1–2(½) 2(½)

1 Expand brackets and collect like terms in each of these expressions.

a $3(x - 1)$ **b** $5(x + 3)$
c $-2(x + 2)$ **d** $-3(x - 4)$
e $-4(2x - 1)$ **f** $2(x + 5) + 3(x + 1)$
g $5(x + 4) + 2(x + 3)$ **h** $6(x + 2) + 3(x - 1)$
i $2(x - 8) - 3(x + 1)$ **j** $5(x - 4) - 11(x - 3)$

The number in front of the bracket needs to be multiplied to both terms inside the bracket.

$-5(2x - 3) = -10x + 15$

2 For each of these equations, first collect the term from the right side to the left side and then solve for x.

a $5x = 2x + 12$ **b** $2x = x - 4$
c $8x = 3x + 25$ **d** $7x = -x + 8$
e $5x - 4 = 2x + 11$ **f** $8x + 2 = 3x + 47$
g $7x - 5 = -2x + 13$ **h** $2x + 3 = -3x + 38$

Add or subtract to remove the term containing x on the RHS.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 3–8(½), 9 3–8(½)

Example 9 Solving equations with brackets

Solve $4(x - 1) = 16$.

Solution	Explanation
$4(x - 1) = 16$	
$4x - 4 = 16$	Expand the brackets: $4 \times x$ and $4 \times (-1)$.
$4x = 20$	Add 4 to both sides.
$x = 5$	Divide both sides by 4.

3 Solve each of the following equations by first expanding the brackets.

a $3(x + 2) = 9$ **b** $4(x - 1) = 16$ **c** $3(x + 5) = 12$
d $4(a - 2) = 12$ **e** $5(a + 1) = 10$ **f** $2(x - 10) = 10$
g $6(m - 3) = 6$ **h** $3(d + 4) = 15$ **i** $7(a - 8) = 14$
j $10(a + 2) = 20$ **k** $5(3 + x) = 15$ **l** $2(a - 3) = 0$

Example 10 Solving equations with two sets of brackets

Solve $3(2x + 4) + 2(3x - 2) = 20$.

Solution	Explanation
$3(2x + 4) + 2(3x - 2) = 20$	Use the distributive law to expand each set of brackets.
$6x + 12 + 6x - 4 = 20$	
$12x + 8 = 20$	Collect like terms on the LHS.
$12x = 12$	Subtract 8 from both sides.
$x = 1$	Divide both sides by 12.

4 Solve the following equations.

a $3(2x + 3) + 2(x + 4) = 25$ **b** $2(2x + 3) + 4(3x + 1) = 42$
c $2(2x + 3) + 3(4x - 1) = 51$ **d** $3(2x - 2) + 5(x + 4) = 36$
e $4(2x - 3) + 2(x - 4) = 10$ **f** $2(3x - 1) + 3(2x - 3) = 13$
g $2(x - 4) + 3(x - 1) = -21$ **h** $4(2x - 1) + 2(2x - 3) = -22$

Expand each pair of brackets and collect like terms before solving.

5 Solve the following equations.

a $3(2x + 4) - 4(x + 2) = 6$ **b** $2(5x + 4) - 3(2x + 1) = 9$
c $2(3x - 2) - 3(x + 1) = -7$ **d** $2(x + 1) - 3(x - 2) = 8$
e $8(x - 1) - 2(3x - 2) = 2$ **f** $5(2x - 3) - 2(3x - 1) = -9$
g $5(2x + 1) - 3(x - 3) = 35$ **h** $4(2x - 3) - 2(3x - 1) = -14$

$-4(x + 2) = -4x - 8$
$-4(x - 2) = -4x + 8$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8B

Example 11 Solving equations with variables on both sides

Solve $7x + 9 = 2x - 11$ for x.

Solution	Explanation
$7x + 9 = 2x - 11$	
$5x + 9 = -11$	Subtract $2x$ from both sides.
$5x = -20$	Subtract 9 from both sides.
$x = -4$	Divide both sides by 5.

6 Find the value of x in the following.

a $7x = 2x + 10$
b $10x = 9x + 12$
c $8x = 4x - 12$
d $6x = 2x + 80$
e $2x = 12 - x$
f $2x = 8 + x$
g $3x + 4 = x + 12$
h $4x + 9 = x - 3$
i $2x - 9 = x - 10$
j $6x - 10 = 12 + 4x$
k $9x = 10 - x$
l $1 - x = x + 3$

Remove the term containing x on the RHS. For parts **e**, **k** and **l**, you will need to add x to both sides.

Example 12 Solving equations with fractions

Solve $\frac{2x+3}{4} = 2$ for x

Solution	Explanation
$\frac{2x+3}{4} = 2$	
$2x + 3 = 8$	Multiply both sides by 4.
$2x = 5$	Subtract 3 from both sides.
$x = 2.5$	Divide both sides by 2.

7 Solve the following equations.

a $\frac{x+2}{3} = 5$
b $\frac{x+4}{2} = 5$
c $\frac{x-1}{3} = 4$
d $\frac{x-5}{3} = 2$
e $\frac{2x+1}{7} = 3$
f $\frac{2x+2}{3} = 4$
g $\frac{5x-3}{3} = 9$
h $\frac{3x-6}{2} = 9$
i $\frac{5x-2}{4} = -3$

First multiply by the denominator.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 13 Solving equations with more difficult fractions

Solve $\frac{3x}{2} - 4 = 2$ for x.

Solution	Explanation
$\frac{3x}{2} - 4 = 2$	
$\frac{3x}{2} = 6$	Add 4 to both sides.
$3x = 12$	Multiply both sides by 2.
$x = 4$	Divide both sides by 3.

8 Solve the following equations.

a $\frac{x}{3} + 1 = 5$ **b** $\frac{x}{3} + 1 = 7$ **c** $\frac{x}{4} - 5 = 10$

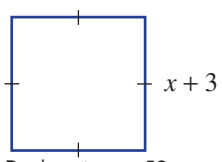
d $\frac{3x}{4} - 2 = 5$ **e** $\frac{2x}{5} - 3 = -1$ **f** $\frac{3x}{2} - 5 = -14$

First add or subtract a number from both sides.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9–11 10–12

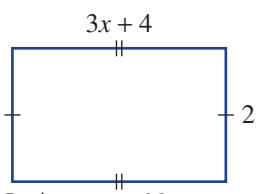
9 For each of these questions, write an equation and solve it for x.

a



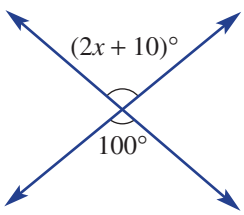
Perimeter = 52 cm

b



Perimeter = 22 cm

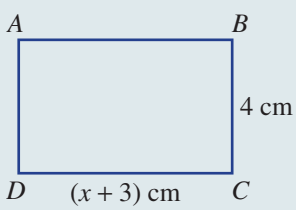
c



Vertically opposite angles are equal.

Example 14 Solving a word problem

Find the value of x if the area of rectangle $ABCD$ shown is 24 cm^2.

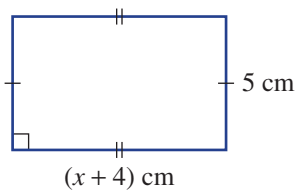


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

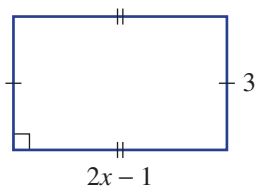
8B

Solution	Explanation
$A = l \times w$	Write an equation for area.
$24 = (x + 3) \times 4$	Substitute: $l = (x + 3)$, $w = 4$, $A = 24$.
$24 = 4x + 12$	Expand the brackets: $(x + 3) \times 4 = 4(x + 3)$.
$12 = 4x$	Subtract 12 from both sides.
$3 = x$	Divide both sides by 4.
$x = 3$	Write the answer.

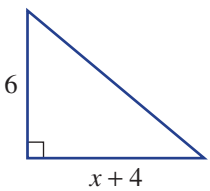
10 **a** Find the value of x if the area is 35 cm^2.



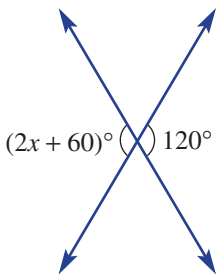
b Find the value of x if the area is 27 cm^2.



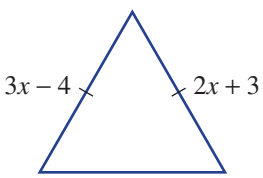
c Find the value of x if the area is 42 cm^2.



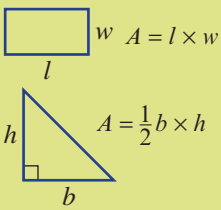
d Vertically opposite angles are equal. Find the value of x.



e Find the value of x.



Form the area equation first.



11 Using x for the unknown number, write down an equation and then solve it to find the number.

a The product of 5 and 1 more than a number is 40.
b The product of 5 and 6 less than a number is −15.
c When 6 less than 3 lots of a number is doubled, the result is 18.
d When 8 more than 2 lots of a number is tripled, the result is 36.
e 10 more than 4 lots of a number is equivalent to 6 lots of the number.
f 5 more than 4 times a number is equivalent to 1 less than 5 times the number.
g 6 more than a doubled number is equivalent to 5 less than 3 lots of the number.

- 'Product' means 'to multiply'
- The product of 5 and 1 more than a number means $5(x + 1)$.
- '6 less than 3 lots of a number is doubled' will require brackets.
- 'Tripled' means three times a number.
- 'Equivalent' means 'equal to'.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

12 Valentina and Harrison are planning to hire a car for their wedding day. 'Vehicles For You' have the following deal: $\$850$ hiring fee plus a charge of $\$156$ per hour.

a Write an equation for the cost ($\$C$) of hiring a car for h hours.

b If Valentina and Harrison have budgeted for the car to cost a maximum of $\$2000$, find the maximum number of full hours they can hire the car.

c If the car picks up the bride at 1:15 p.m., at what time must the event finish if the cost is to remain within budget?

More than one fraction

— 13

Consider:

$$\frac{4x-2}{3} = \frac{3x-1}{2}$$

$\frac{{}^{2}\cancel{6}(4x-2)}{\cancel{3}_{1}} = \frac{{}^{3}\cancel{6}(3x-1)}{\cancel{2}_{1}}$ (Multiply both sides by 6 to get rid of the fractions.)

$2(4x-2) = 3(3x-1)$ (Simplify.)

$8x - 4 = 9x - 3$ (Expand both sides.)

$-4 = x - 3$ (Subtract $8x$ from both sides.)

$-1 = x$ (Add 3 to both sides.)

$\therefore x = -1$

13 Solve the following equations.

a $\frac{x+2}{3} = \frac{x+1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{x+1}{2} = \frac{x}{3}$ **c** $\frac{3x+4}{4} = \frac{x+6}{3}$

d $\frac{5x+2}{3} = \frac{3x+4}{2}$ **e** $\frac{2x+1}{7} = \frac{3x-5}{4}$ **f** $\frac{5x-1}{3} = \frac{x-4}{4}$

Using technology 8B: Solving linear equations

This activity is available on the companion website as a printable PDF.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8C Using formulas

A formula (or rule) is an equation that relates two or more variables. You can find the value of one of the variables if you are given the value of all other unknowns.

You will already be familiar with many formulas. For example, $C = 2\pi r$ is the formula for finding the circumference, C, of a circle when given its radius, r.

$F = \frac{9}{5}C + 32$ is the formula for converting degrees Celsius, C, to degrees Fahrenheit, F.

$s = \frac{d}{t}$ is the formula for finding the speed, s, when given the distance, d, and time, t.

C, F and s are said to be the subjects of the formulas given above.

A metal worker building pipes applies circle, area and volume formulas.

Let's start: Jumbled solution

Problem: The formula for the area of a trapezium is $A = \frac{h}{2}(a + b)$.

Xavier was asked to find a, given that $A = 126$, $b = 10$ and $h = 14$, and to write the explanation beside each step of the solution.

Xavier's solution and explanation are below. His solution is correct but he has jumbled up the steps in the explanation. Copy Xavier's solution and write the correct instruction(s) beside each step.

Solution	Jumbled explanation
$A = \frac{h}{2}(a + b)$	Subtract 70 from both sides.
$126 = \frac{14}{2}(a + 10)$	Divide both sides by 7.
$126 = 7(a + 10)$	Substitute the given values.
$126 = 7a + 70$	Copy the formula.
$56 = 7a$	Simplify $\frac{14}{2}$.
$a = 8$	Expand the brackets.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

- The **subject** of a **formula** is a variable that usually sits on its own on the left-hand side. For example, the C in $C = 2\pi r$ is the subject of the formula.
- A variable in a formula can be evaluated by substituting numbers for all other variables.
- A formula can be rearranged to make another variable the subject. $C = 2\pi r$ can be rearranged to give $r = \frac{C}{2\pi}$.
- Note that $\sqrt{a^2} = a$ when $a \geq 0$ and $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2} \neq a + b$.

Subject The pronumeral or variable that is alone on one side of an equation

Formula A general rule for finding the value of one quantity when given the values of others

Exercise 8C

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

1 State the letter that is the subject in these formulas.

a $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$ **b** $F = ma$ **c** $V = \frac{4}{3}\pi r^3$

d $A = \pi r^2$ **e** $c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ **f** $P = 2x + 2y$

The subject of a formula is the letter on its own, on the left-hand side.

2 Substitute the given values into each of the following formulas to find the value of each subject. Round the answer to one decimal place where appropriate.

a $m = \frac{F}{a}$, when $F = 180$ and $a = 3$

b $A = lw$, when $l = 6$ and $w = 8$

c $A = \frac{1}{2}(a + b)h$, when $a = 6$, $b = 12$ and $h = 4$

d $v^2 = u^2 + 2as$, when $u = 6$ and $a = 12$ and $s = 7$

e $m = \sqrt{\frac{x}{y}}$, when $x = 56$ and $y = 4$

Copy each formula, substitute the given values and then calculate the answer.

FLUENCY 3–8(½) | 4–5(½), 7–9(½)

Example 15 Substituting values and solving equations

If $v = u + at$, find t when $v = 16$, $u = 4$ and $a = 3$.

Solution	Explanation
$v = u + at$	Substitute each value into the formula. $v = 16, u = 4, a = 3$
$16 = 4 + 3t$	An equation now exists. Solve this equation for t.
$12 = 3t$	Subtract 4 from both sides.
$4 = t$	Divide both sides by 3.
$t = 4$	Answer with the pronumeral on the left-hand side.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8C

3 If $v = u + at$, find t when:

a $v = 16$, $u = 8$ and $a = 2$ **b** $v = 20$, $u = 8$ and $a = 3$

c $v = 100$, $u = 10$ and $a = 9$ **d** $v = 84$, $u = 4$ and $a = 10$

4 If $P = 2(l + 2b)$, find b when:

a $P = 60$ and $l = 10$ **b** $P = 48$ and $l = 6$

c $P = 96$ and $l = 14$ **d** $P = 12.4$ and $l = 3.6$

First copy the formula. Then substitute the given values. Then solve the equation.

5 If $V = lwh$, find h when:

a $V = 100$, $l = 5$ and $w = 4$ **b** $V = 144$, $l = 3$ and $w = 4$

c $V = 108$, $l = 3$ and $w = 12$ **d** $V = 280$, $l = 8$ and $w = 5$

6 If $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$, find b when:

a $A = 90$ and $h = 12$ **b** $A = 72$ and $h = 9$

c $A = 108$ and $h = 18$ **d** $A = 96$ and $h = 6$

For $90 = \frac{1}{2} \times b \times 12$,

$\frac{1}{2} \times b \times 12 = \frac{1}{2} \times 12 \times b$

$= 6b$

So, $90 = 6b$

Solve for b.

7 If $A = \frac{h}{2}(a + b)$, find h when:

a $A = 20$, $a = 4$ and $b = 1$

b $A = 48$, $a = 5$ and $b = 7$

c $A = 108$, $a = 9$ and $b = 9$

d $A = 196$, $a = 9$ and $b = 5$

When solving the equation first undo the division by 2 by multiplying both sides by 2.

8 $E = mc^2$. Find m when:

a $E = 100$ and $c = 5$ **b** $E = 4000$ and $c = 10$

c $E = 72$ and $c = 1$ **d** $E = 144$ and $c = 6$

Square the c value before solving the equation.

9 If $V = \pi r^2 h$, find h (to one decimal place) when:

a $V = 160$ and $r = 3$ **b** $V = 400$ and $r = 5$

c $V = 1460$ and $r = 9$ **d** $V = 314$ and $r = 2.5$

For $160 = 9\pi h$, divide both sides by 9π to find h:

$h = \frac{160}{9\pi}$

Then evaluate on a calculator.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 10–12 10, 12–14

10 The formula $F = \frac{9C}{5} + 32$ is used to convert temperature from degrees Celsius (°C) (which is used in Australia) to degrees Fahrenheit (°F) (which is used in the USA).

When finding C, you will have an equation to solve.

a When it is 30°C in Sydney, what is the temperature in Fahrenheit?

b How many degrees Celsius is 30° Fahrenheit? Answer to one decimal place.

c Water boils at 100°C. What is this temperature in degrees Fahrenheit?

d What is 0°F in degrees Celsius? Answer to one decimal place.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

11 The cost, in dollars, of a taxi is $C = 3 + 1.45d$, where d is the distance travelled, in kilometres.

a What is the cost of a 20 km trip?

b How many kilometres can be travelled for $90?

12 $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$ calculates interest on an investment. Find:

a P when $I = 60$, $r = 8$ and $t = 1$

b t when $I = 125$, $r = 5$ and $P = 800$

c r when $I = 337.50$, $P = 1500$ and $t = 3$

13 The number of tablets a nurse must give a patient is found using the formula:

$$\text{Tablets} = \frac{\text{strength required}}{\text{tablet strength}}$$

a 750 milligrams of a drug must be administered to a patient. How many 500 milligram tablets should the nurse give the patient?

b If the nurse administers 2.5 of these tablets to another patient, how much of the drug did the patient take?

14 A drip is a way of pumping a liquid drug into a patient's blood. The flow rate of the pump, in millilitres per hour, is calculated using the formula: $\text{Rate} = \frac{\text{volume (mL)}}{\text{time (h)}}$.

a A patient needs 300 mL of the drug administered over 4 hours. Calculate the rate, in mL/h, which needs to be delivered by the pump.

b A patient was administered 100 mL of the drug at a rate of 300 mL/h. How long was the pump running?

Calculation challenges

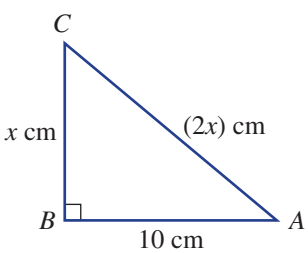
— 15–17

15 A tax agent charges $680 for an 8-hour day. The agent uses the formula $F = \frac{680x}{8}$ to calculate a fee to a client, in dollars.

a What does the x represent?

b If the fee charged to a client is $637.50, how many hours, to one decimal place, did the agent spend working on the client's behalf?

16 Find the area and perimeter of triangle ABC, shown. Round to two decimal places.



Use Pythagoras' theorem to find x.

17 Iqra is 10 years older than Urek. In 3 years' time, she will be twice as old as Urek. How old are they now?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8D Linear inequalities

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

There are many situations in which a solution to the problem is best described using one of the symbols <, ≤, > or ≥. For example, a medical company will publish the lowest and highest amounts for a safe dose of a particular medicine;
e.g. 20 mg/day ≤ dose ≤ 55 mg/day, meaning that the dose should be between 20 and 55 mg/day.

An inequality is a mathematical statement that uses an 'is less than' (<), an 'is less than or equal to' (≤), an 'is greater than' (>) or an 'is greater than or equal to' (≥) symbol. Inequalities may result in an infinite number of solutions. These can be illustrated using a number line.

The safe dosage range of a drug can be expressed as an inequality.

You can solve inequalities in a similar way to solving equations.

Let's start: What does it mean for x?

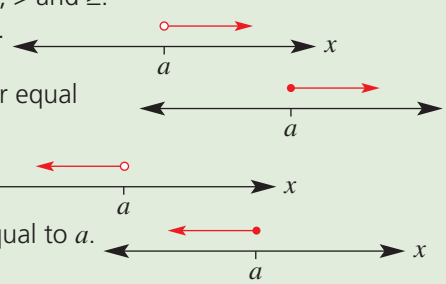
The following inequalities provide some information about the number x.

a $x < 6$ **b** $x \geq 4$ **c** $-5 \geq x$ **d** $-2 < x$

- Can you describe the possible values for x that satisfy each inequality?
- Test some values to check.
- How would you write the solution for x? Illustrate each on a number line.

Key ideas

- The four **inequality signs** are <, ≤, > and ≥.
  - $x > a$ means x is greater than a.
  - $x \geq a$ means x is greater than or equal to a.
  - $x < a$ means x is less than a.
  - $x \leq a$ means x is less than or equal to a.



- On the number line, a closed circle (•) indicates that the number is included. An open circle (◦) indicates that the number is not included.
- Solving **linear inequalities** follows the same rules as solving linear equations, except:
  - We reverse an inequality sign if we multiply or divide by a negative number. For example, $-5 < -3$ and $5 > 3$, and if $-2x < 4$ then $x > -2$.
  - We reverse the inequality sign if the sides are switched. For example, if $2 \geq x$, then $x \leq 2$.

Inequality sign A symbol that compares the size of two or more expressions or numbers by pointing to the smaller one

Linear inequality An inequality that involves a linear function

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 8D

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2(½) 2(½)

1 Match each inequality given with the correct number line.

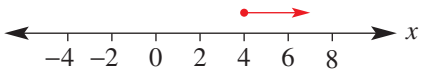
a $x > 4$

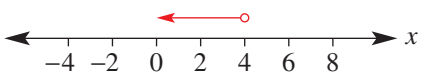
b $x < 4$

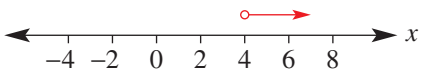
c $x \geq 4$

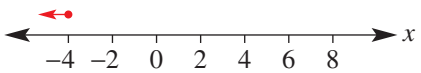
d $x > -4$

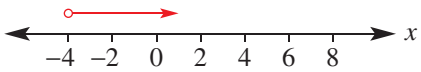
e $x \leq -4$

1


2


3


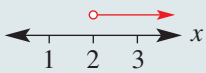
4


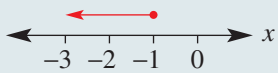
5


Look back at the Key ideas. The direction of the arrowhead is the same as the direction of the inequality sign.

Example 16 Writing inequalities from number lines

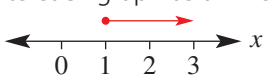
Write each graph as an inequality.

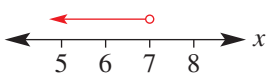
a


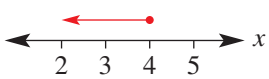
b


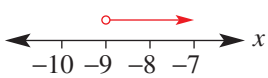
Solution	Explanation
a $x > 2$	An open circle means 2 is not included.
b $x \leq -1$	A closed circle means -1 is included.

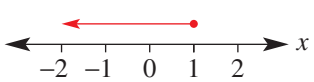
2 Write each graph as an inequality.

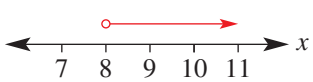
a


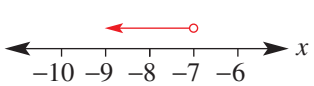
b


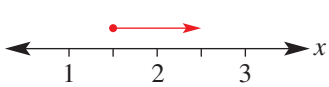
c


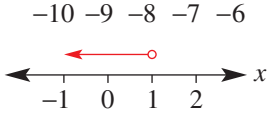
d


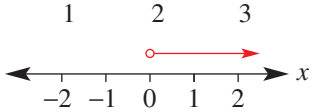
e


f


g


h


i


j


The inequality sign will have the same direction as the arrow.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

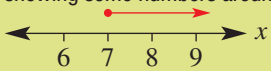
8D

FLUENCY 3–4(½), 5, 6 | 3–4(½), 6, 7

3 Show each of the following on separate number lines.

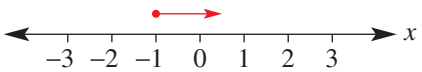
a $x \geq 7$ **b** $x > 1$ **c** $x < 1$
d $x \leq 1$ **e** $x \geq -1$ **f** $a \geq 0$
g $p \geq -2$ **h** $a > -15$ **i** $h < 5$

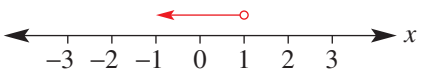
For $x \geq 7$, draw a number line showing some numbers around 7.



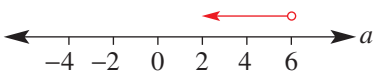
Use a closed circle (•) for ≥ and ≤.
Use an open circle (◦) for > and <.

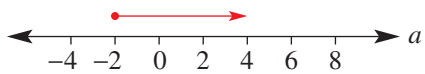
4 Write an inequality to describe what is shown on each of the following number lines.

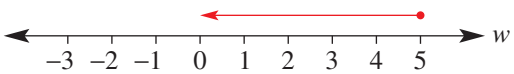
a


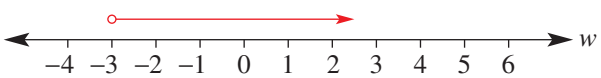
b


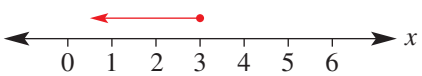
The pronumeral is at the end of the number line.

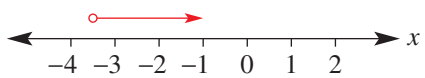
c


d


e


f


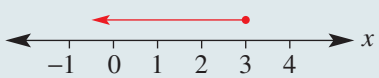
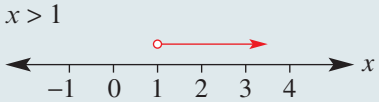
g


h


Example 17 Writing and graphing inequalities

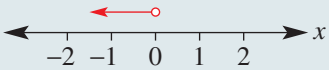
Write each of the following as an inequality and then show each solution on a number line.

a x is less than or equal to 3 **b** x is greater than 1
c x is less than 0 **d** x is greater than or equal to −2

Solution	Explanation
a $x \leq 3$ 	Less than or equal to, ≤, closed circle
b $x > 1$ 	Greater than, >, open circle

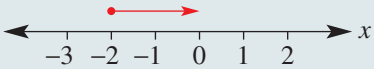
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

c $x < 0$



Less than, <, open circle

d $x \geq -2$



Greater than or equal to, ≥, closed circle

5 Write each of the following as an inequality and then show each solution on a number line.

a x is less than or equal to 6
b x is greater than 4
c x is less than 2
d x is greater than or equal to 5

6 Write each of the following as an inequality, using the pronumeral n.

a The number of people who visit the Sydney Opera House each year is more than 100 000.
b The number of lollies in a bag should be at least 50.
c A factory worker must pack more than three boxes a minute.
d More than 100 penguins take part in the nightly parade on Philip Island.
e The weight of a suitcase is 30 kg or less.

'At least 50' means '50 or more'.

7 Write each of the following statements as an inequality and determine which of the numbers below make each inequality true.

$-6, -2, -\frac{1}{2}, 0, 2, 5, 7, 10, 15, 24$

a x is less than zero
b x is greater than 10
c x is greater than or equal to 10
d x is less than or equal to zero
e x is greater than or equal to -1
f x is less than 10

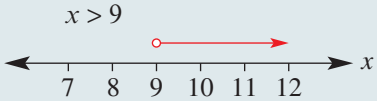
Write the inequality, then list the given numbers that make it true.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–11(½) 9–12(½)

Example 18 Solving and graphing inequalities

Solve the following and show your solution on a number line.

a $2x - 1 > 17$ **b** $\frac{x}{3} \leq -2$

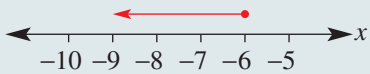
Solution	Explanation
a $2x - 1 > 17$	Add 1 to both sides.
$2x > 18$	Divide both sides by 2.
$x > 9$	
	> uses an open circle.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

8D

b $\frac{x}{3} \leq -2$ — Multiply both sides by 3.

$x \leq -6$ — ≤ uses a closed circle.



8 Solve each of the following inequalities and show your solution on a number line.

a $2x > 10$ **b** $x + 2 < 7$ **c** $3x > 15$

d $\frac{x}{2} \geq 8$ **e** $x - 3 > 4$ **f** $x - 3 < 4$

g $p + 8 \leq 0$ **h** $3a > 0$ **i** $x - 7 < 0$

j $2x \leq 14$ **k** $5m > -15$ **l** $d - 3 > 2.4$

m $\frac{x}{7} \leq 0.1$ **n** $\frac{1}{2}x \leq 6$ **o** $5 + x > 9$

Keep the inequality sign the same when:
- adding or subtracting a number from both sides
- multiplying or dividing both sides by a positive number.

9 Solve the following.

a $2 + 4a \leq 10$ **b** $5 + 2y > 11$ **c** $3p - 1 > 14$

d $3x - 2 \geq 10$ **e** $3x - 2 < 1$ **f** $5 + 2w \geq 8$

g $5x + 5 < 10$ **h** $5x - 5 \geq 0$ **i** $10p - 2 < 8$

10 Give the solution set for each of the following.

a $\frac{x+2}{4} \leq 1$ **b** $\frac{a-3}{2} \leq -1$ **c** $\frac{x}{4} - 1 \geq 6$

d $\frac{x}{3} + 7 > 2$ **e** $5 + \frac{x}{2} < 7$ **f** $\frac{x+2}{4} < 8$

g $\frac{2x-7}{3} > 4$ **h** $\frac{2x+1}{5} < 0$ **i** $\frac{3x}{2} + 1 \geq -3$

j $5x - 4 > 2 - x$ **k** $4(2x + 1) \geq 16$ **l** $3x + 7 < x - 2$

For $\frac{x+2}{4} \leq 1$, first multiply both sides by 4.
For $\frac{x}{4} - 1 \geq 6$, first add 1 to both sides.

11 For each of the following, write an inequality and solve it to find the possible values of x.

a When a number, x, is multiplied by 3, the result is less than 9.

b When a number, x, is multiplied by 3 and the result divided by 4, it creates an answer less than 6.

c When a number, x, is doubled and then 15 is added, the result is greater than 20.

d Thuong is x years old and Gary is 4 years older. The sum of their ages is less than 24.

e Kaitlyn has x rides on the Ferris wheel at $4 a ride and spends $7 on food. The total amount she spends is less than or equal to $27.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 19 Solving inequalities when the pronumeral has a negative coefficient

Solve $4 - x \geq 6$.

Solution	Explanation
$4 - x \geq 6$	Subtract 4 from both sides.
$-x \geq 2$	Divide both sides by -1.
$x \leq -2$	When we divide both sides by a *negative* number, the inequality sign is reversed.
Alternative solution:	
$4 - x \geq 6$	Add the x to both sides so that it is positive.
$4 \geq 6 + x$	Subtract 6 from both sides.
$-2 \geq x$	Switch the sides to have the x on the left-hand side.
$x \leq -2$	Reverse the inequality sign. Note that the inequality sign still 'points' to the x.

12 Choose an *appropriate strategy* to solve the following.

a $5 - x < 6$ **b** $7 - x \geq 10$
c $-p \leq 7$ **d** $9 - a < -10$
e $-w \geq 6$ **f** $-3 - 2p < 9$
g $5 - 2x < 7$ **h** $-2 - 7a \geq 4$

Remember to reverse the inequality sign when multiplying or dividing by a negative number.
e.g.
$\times(-1)$ $-x < 7$, $x > -7$ $\times(-1)$
$\div(-2)$ $-2x \geq 20$, $x \leq -10$ $\div(-2)$

Investigating inequalities

— 13

13 a Let us start with the numbers 4 and 6 and the true relationship $4 < 6$. Copy and complete the following table.

				True or false?
4 and 6	4	6	4 < 6	True
Add 3	$4 + 3$	$6 + 3$	$7 < 9$	True
Subtract 3	$4 - 3$		$1 < 3$	True
Multiply by 2				
Divide by 2				
Multiply by -2				False $(-8 > -12)$
Divide by -2	$4 \div (-2)$	$6 \div (-2)$		

b Copy and complete the following.
When solving an inequality, you can add or _____ a number from both sides and the inequality remains true. You can multiply or _____ by a _____ number and the _____ also remains true. However, if you _____ or _____ by a negative _____ the inequality sign must be reversed for the inequality to remain _____.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8E Solving simultaneous equations graphically

When we approach an intersection while driving, we near the shared position of two or more roads.

Like two roads, two straight lines in the same plane will always intersect unless they are parallel.

If we try to find the point of intersection, we are said to be solving the equations simultaneously.

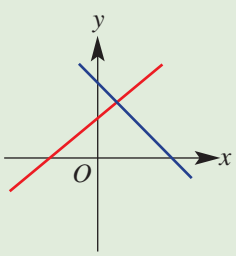
Let's start: Which job has better pay?

You start working as a delivery person for the Hasty Tasty Pizza Company. You're paid $25 per shift and $4 per pizza delivery.
A second pizza company, More-2-Munch Pizzas, offers you a job at $15 per shift and $5 per pizza delivery.

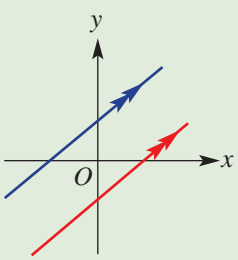
- How much does each company pay for delivery of 7 pizzas in one shift? How much does each company pay for delivery of 12 pizzas in one shift?
- For each pizza company, draw up a table to show the money you could earn for delivery of up to 15 pizzas delivered in one shift.
- On the same sheet, draw a graph of the information in your tables for each pizza company. Draw the graph for each pizza company on the same set of axes.
- What does the point of intersection show us?
- Write a sentence describing which job pays better for different numbers of pizzas delivered.
- Write down one advantage of using a graph to compare these two wages.

Key ideas

- At a point of intersection, two lines will have the same **coordinates**.
- When two lines are **parallel**, they have the same gradient and there is no point of intersection.



1 point of intersection



0 points of intersection

Coordinates An ordered pair written in the form (x, y) that states the location of a point on the Cartesian plane

Parallel lines Lines in the same plane that are the same distance apart and never intersect

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

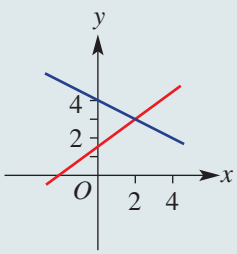
Exercise 8E

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 | 2

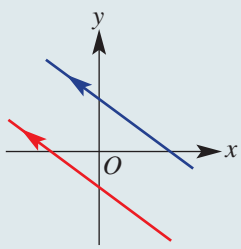
Example 20 Reading the coordinates of the point of intersection of two lines

State the point of intersection (x, y) for the following lines, if there is one.

a



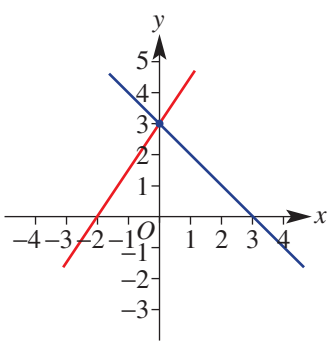
b



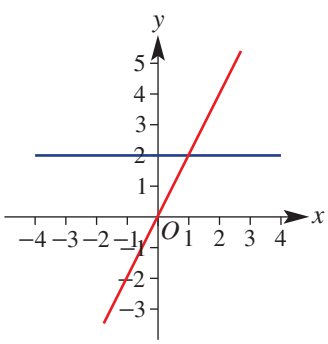
Solution	Explanation
a Point of intersection at (2, 3)	Read the x-coordinate, then the y-coordinate, directly from the graph.
b No point of intersection	Parallel lines have no point of intersection.

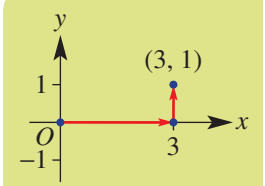
1 State the point of intersection (x, y) for the following lines, if there is one.

a



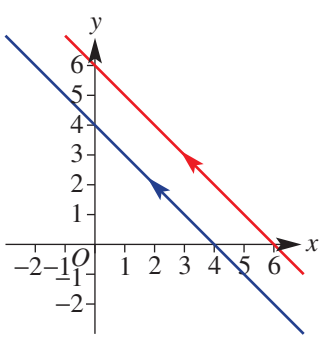
b



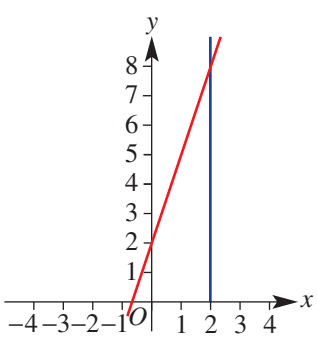


(3, 1) = (across 3 up 1)

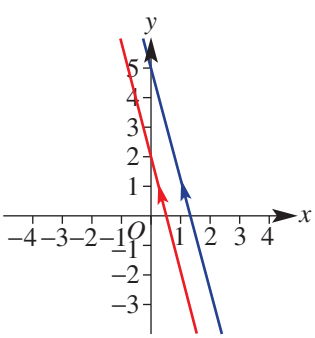
c



d



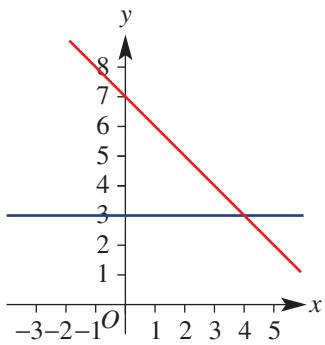
e



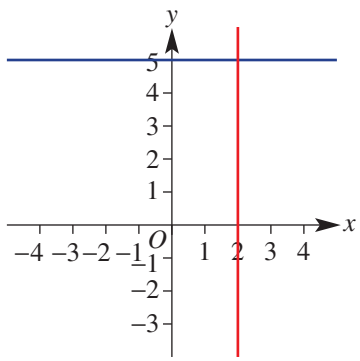
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

8E

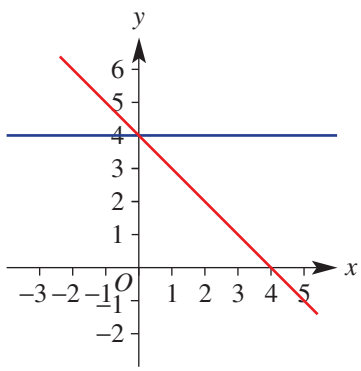
f



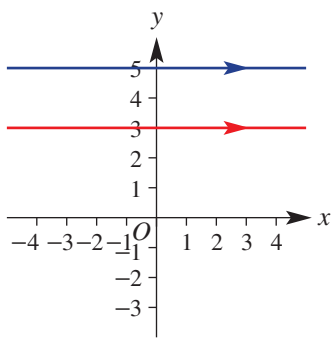
g



h



i



2 Complete the following.

a At the x-intercept, $y =$ _____.

b At the y-intercept, $x =$ _____.

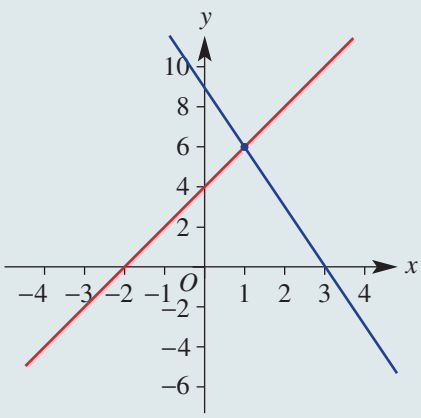
FLUENCY 3(½), 4, 5 3(½), 4–6

Example 21 Finding the point of intersection by graphing

Find the point of intersection (x, y) of $y = 2x + 4$ and $3x + y = 9$ by sketching accurate graphs on the same axes.

Solution	Explanation
$y = 2x + 4$	First, find the x- and y-intercepts of each graph.
y-intercept at $x = 0$: $y = 2(0) + 4 = 4$	Substitute $x = 0$.
x-intercept at $y = 0$: $0 = 2x + 4$	Substitute $y = 0$.
$2x = -4$	Subtract 4 from both sides.
$x = -2$	Divide both sides by 2.
$3x + y = 9$	
y-intercept at $x = 0$: $3(0) + y = 9$	Substitute $x = 0$.
$y = 9$	Simplify.
x-intercept at $y = 0$: $3x + (0) = 9$	Substitute $y = 0$.
$3x = 9$	Simplify.
$x = 3$	Divide both sides by 3.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.



Sketch the graphs using the x- and y-intercepts.
For $y = 2x + 4$, the x-intercept = -2 and the y-intercept = 4.
For $3x + y = 9$, the x-intercept = 3 and the y-intercept = 9.

The point of intersection is $(1, 6)$.

Read off the intersection point, listing x followed by y.

3 Find the point of intersection (x, y) of each pair of equations by plotting an accurate graph.
- **a** $y = x + 1$ and $3x + 2y = 12$
- **b** $y = 3x + 2$ and $2x + y = 12$
- **c** $y = 2x + 9$ and $3x + 2y = 18$
- **d** $y = x + 11$ and $4x + 3y = 12$

y-intercept: $x = 0$
x-intercept: $y = 0$

4 Find the point of intersection of each pair of equations by plotting an accurate graph.
- **a** $y = 3$ and $x = 2$
- **b** $y = -2$ and $x = 3$

$y = 3$ cuts the y-axis at 3 and is horizontal.
$x = 2$ cuts the x-axis at 2 and is vertical.

5 Find the point of intersection of each pair of equations by plotting an accurate graph.
- **a** $y = 3x$ and $y = 2x + 3$
- **b** $y = -3x$ and $y = 2x - 5$

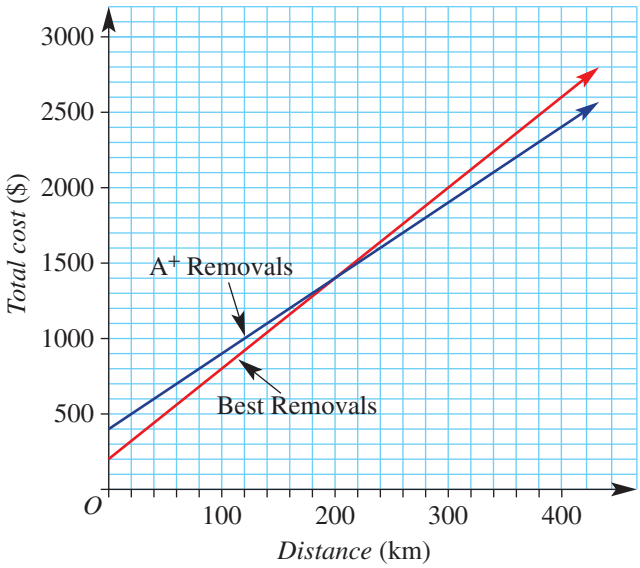
6 Find the point of intersection of each pair of equations by plotting an accurate graph.
- **a** $y = 2x - 6$ and $y = 3x - 7$
- **b** $y = -2x + 3$ and $y = 3x - 2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8E

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8 8–10

7 This graph represents the cost of hiring two different removalist companies to move a person's belongings for various distances.



a Determine the number of kilometres for which the total cost of the removalists is the same.

b What is the price when the total cost is equal?

c If a person wanted to move 100 km, which company would be cheaper and by how much?

d If a person wanted to move 400 km, which company would be cheaper and by how much?

8 The pay structures for baking companies A and B are given by the following.
Company A: $20 per hour
Company B: $45 plus $15 per hour

a Complete two tables, showing the pay by each company for up to 12 hours.

b Draw a graph of the pay by each company (on the vertical axis) versus time, in hours (on the horizontal axis). Draw the graphs for both companies on the same set of axes.

c State the number of hours worked for which the earnings are the same for the two companies.

d State the amount earned when the earnings are the same for the two companies.

9 **a** Graph these three lines on the same coordinate axes by plotting the axis intercepts for each: $y = 3$, $y = x + 1$, $y = 1 - x$.

b Write the coordinates of the points of intersection.

c Find the length of each line segment formed between the intersection points.

d What type of triangle is formed by these line segments?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10 The value of two cars is depreciating (i.e. decreasing) at a constant rate according to the information in this table.

Car	Initial value	Annual depreciation
Luxury sports coupe	$70 000	$5000
Family sedan	$50 000	$3000

Annual depreciation means how much the car's value goes down by each year.

a Complete two tables showing the value of each car every second year from zero to 12 years.
b Draw a graph of the value of each car (on the vertical axis) versus time, in years (on the horizontal axis). Draw both graphs on the same set of axes.
c From the graph, determine the time taken for the cars to have the same value.
d State the value of the cars when they have the same value.

Multiple intersections

— 11, 12

Use a calculator to complete these questions.

11 On the same axes, plot the graphs of $y = 2x$, $y = 2x + 1$, $y = 2x + 2$ and $y = 2x + 3$.
a Are there any points of intersection?
b Suggest a reason for your answer to part **a**.
c Plot the graph of $y = 3x + 6$.
d Determine the points of intersection of the graphs already drawn and $y = 3x + 6$.

12 On the same axes, plot $y = x - 1$, $y = 2x - 1$, $y = 3x - 1$ and $y = 4x - 1$.
a Are there any points of intersection?
b Suggest a reason for your answer to part **a**.
c Plot the graph of $y = 2x + 1$.
d Determine the points of intersection of the graphs already drawn and $y = 2x + 1$.

Using technology 8E: Finding intersections
This activity is available on the companion website as a printable PDF.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Progress quiz

8A **1** Solve the following one-step equations.

a $x + 12 = 18$ **b** $y - 9 = 8$ **c** $3m = 21$ **d** $\frac{x}{5} = -2$

8A/B **2** Solve the following equations.

a $2x - 3 = 15$ **b** $1 - 2y = 9$ **c** $\frac{x}{3} + 4 = 7$

d $\frac{x-2}{4} = 1$ **e** $\frac{2y+2}{5} = 4$ **f** $2 - \frac{x}{5} = 3$

8B **3** Solve these equations with brackets.

a $3(x - 1) = 6$ **b** $5(2a + 3) = -45$

c $3(y + 4) + 2(2y - 3) = 27$ **d** $4(2x - 1) - 3(x - 2) = 22$

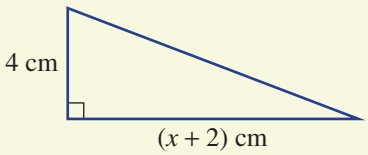
8A/B **4** Write equations for the following and solve for the pronumeral.

a When x is doubled and then 3 is added, the result is 25.

b When 3 is subtracted from x and the answer is divided by 2, the result is 6.

c When 2 is subtracted from x and the answer is multiplied by 3, the result is 12.

d The area of the triangle shown is 16 cm^2.



8B **5** Solve these equations with variables on both sides.

a $8x = 2x - 12$ **b** $9x + 4 = 4x + 14$ **c** $3x + 4 = 20 - x$

8C **6** Find the value of the unknown in these formulas by substituting the given values.

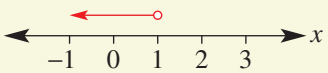
a For $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$, find b when $A = 28$ and $h = 14$.

b For $s = ut + \frac{1}{2}at^2$, find u when $a = 2$, $t = 3$ and $s = 24$.

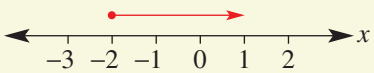
c For $S = 2\pi rh$, find h (to one decimal place) when $S = 30$ and $r = 2$.

8D **7** Write each of the following as inequalities.

a



b



8D **8** Solve the following inequalities and show the solution on a number line.

a $3x + 1 < 10$ **b** $\frac{x+1}{3} \geq 2$ **c** $3 - 2x < 13$

8E **9** Find the point of intersection of $x + y = 4$ and $y = 2x + 1$ by sketching accurate graphs on the same axes.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8F Solving simultaneous equations using substitution

A pair of simultaneous equations is formed when there are two unknown quantities (i.e. variables) and two pieces of information relating these quantities. The solution to these simultaneous equations gives the variable values that make both equations true.

In the previous section, the solution was found from the point of intersection of two line graphs. In this section, you will learn how to find the solution using the algebraic method of *substitution*.

An example of two variables is the cost of a wedding reception and the number of invited guests. Two simultaneous equations could be made from two different catering companies. The solution will be the number of guests that make the costs equal for the two companies. Using equations gives an accurate comparison of two deals.

Let's start: Equations and solutions

Match each set of simultaneous equations with the correct solution.

Simultaneous equations

J
$a + b = 100$
$12a + 5b = 920$

K
$x = 4y$
$2x + 2y = 1000$

L
$3x + 2y = 29$
$2x - y = 3$

M
$y = 500 + 70x$
$y = 700 + 68x$

N
$a + b = 50$
$a - b = 6$

O
$a = b - 5$
$2a + b = 35$

Solutions

a $x = 5$ and $y = 7$
b Elias' age (a) is 10 years and Marisa's age (b) is 15 years.
c Nicole's age (a) is 28 years and Julian's age (b) is 22 years.
d The length (x) of a playing field is 400 m and the width (y) is 100 m.
e 60 adults (a) and 40 children (b) attended a rugby match. The tickets cost \$12 per adult and \$5 per child.
f A wedding reception with 100 guests (x) costs \$7500 (y).

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

- The algebraic method of substitution is generally used when at least one of the linear equations has x or y as the subject;
  e.g. $y = 3x + 4$ or $y = -2x + 6$ or $x = 2$
  $3x + y = 2$ $y = -x - 1$ $2x - y = 5$
- The method involves:
  - substituting one equation into the other
  - solving for the remaining variable
  - substituting to find the value of the second variable
- When problem-solving with simultaneous linear equations:
  - Define/describe two unknowns using pronumerals.
  - Write down two equations using your pronumerals.
  - Solve the equations using the method of substitution.
  - Answer the original question in words.

Exercise 8F

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2(½) 2(½)

1 Write the missing words to complete each statement.

a _____ equations involve two equations and two variables.

b When two equations have been graphed, the x and y values that make both equations true are the coordinates of the point of _____.

c If x (or y) is replaced with a number, then we have _____ that number for x.

d If x (or y) is replaced with an algebraic expression, then we have _____ that expression for x (or y).

e When we algebraically substitute one equation into another, this is called solving simultaneous equations by the method of _____.

2 Solve these equations for the unknown variable.

a $5x = 2x - 9$ **b** $3x = 5x + 10$

c $3y - 12 = 2y + 1$ **d** $2(x + 3) + 5x = 20$

e $5(2y - 1) - 5y = 30$ **f** $7x + 3(x + 2) = 26$

g $4y - 2(3y - 1) = -12$ **h** $-3y - (3y - 6) = 12$

i $3x - 2(2x + 1) = 4$ **j** $2(1 - x) + 4x = 8$

Expand any brackets first, then collect like terms on one side and solve.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

FLUENCY 3–4(½), 6 3–4(½), 5–7

Example 22 Using the substitution method to solve simultaneous equations

Determine the point of intersection of $y = 5x$ and $y = 2x + 6$.

Solution	Explanation
$y = 5x$ (1) $y = 2x + 6$ (2)	Label the two equations.
Substitute (1) into (2):	Explain how you are substituting the equations.
$5x = 2x + 6$	Replace y in the second equation with $5x$.
$3x = 6$	Subtract $2x$ from both sides.
$x = 2$	Divide both sides by 3.
Substitute $x = 2$ into (1):	Alternatively, substitute into equation (2).
$y = 5(2)$	Replace x with the number 2.
$y = 10$	Simplify.
The point of intersection is $(2, 10)$.	Write the solution.
Check: $10 = 2(2) + 6$	Substitute your solution into the other equation to check.

3 Determine the point of intersection for the following pairs of lines.

a $y = 5x$
$y = 3x + 4$

b $y = 3x$
$y = 2x - 5$

c $y = 2x$
$y = 4x + 8$

d $y = 4x$
$y = -3x + 7$

e $y = x$
$y = -5x + 12$

f $y = 6x$
$y = -2x + 16$

$y = 5x$
$y = 3x + 4$
$5x = 3x + 4$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8F

Example 23 Solving simultaneous equations with the substitution method

Solve the simultaneous equations $y = x + 3$ and $2x + 3y = 19$ using the substitution method; i.e. find the point of intersection.

Solution	Explanation
$y = x + 3$ (1) $2x + 3y = 19$ (2)	Label the two equations.
Substitute (1) into (2):	Explain how you are substituting the equations.
$2x + 3(x + 3) = 19$	Replace y in the second equation with $(x + 3)$.
$2x + 3x + 9 = 19$	Expand the brackets.
$5x + 9 = 19$	Simplify.
$5x = 10$	Subtract 9 from both sides.
$x = 2$	Divide both sides by 5.
Substitute $x = 2$ into (1):	Alternatively, substitute into equation (2).
$y = 2 + 3$	Replace x with the number 2.
$y = 5$	Simplify.
The point of intersection is (2, 5).	Write the solution.
Check: $2(2) + 3(5) = 19$	Substitute your solution into the other equation to check.

4 Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations using the substitution method; i.e. find the point of intersection.

- **a** $y = x + 3$ and $2x + 3y = 19$
- **b** $y = x + 2$ and $3x + y = 6$
- **c** $y = x - 1$ and $3x + 2y = 8$
- **d** $y = x - 1$ and $3x + 5y = 27$
- **e** $y = x + 2$ and $2x + 3y = -19$
- **f** $y = x + 5$ and $5x - y = -1$
- **g** $y = x - 3$ and $5x - 2y = 18$
- **h** $y = x - 4$ and $3x - y = 2$

In part **a**, replace y in the second equation with $(x + 3)$. It is important to use brackets.

$y = (x + 3)$

$2x + 3(y) = 19$

Remember that

$3(x + 3) = 3x + 9$

5 Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations; i.e. find the point of intersection.

- **a** $y = 2$, $y = 2x + 4$
- **b** $y = -1$, $y = 2x - 7$
- **c** $y = 4$, $2x + 3y = 20$

Replace y in the second equation with 2.

$y = (2)$

$(y) = 2x + 4$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

6 Determine the point of intersection for the following.

a $x = 2$
$3x + 2y = 14$

b $x = -3$
$y = -2x - 4$

c $x = 7$
$4x - 3y = 31$

7 Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations using the substitution method; i.e. find the point of intersection.

a $y = 2x + 3$
$11x - 5y = -14$

b $y = 3x - 2$
$7x - 2y = 8$

c $y = 3x - 5$
$3x + 5y = 11$

d $y = 4x + 1$
$2x - 3y = -23$

Replace x in the second equation with 2.
$x = 2$
$3x + 2y = 14$
Remember that $3x$ means $3 \times x$.

Be careful with signs when expanding brackets.
$-5 \times (+3) = -15$
$11x - 5(2x + 3)$
$= 11x - 10x - 15$
When multiplying numbers with different signs, the answer is negative.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8, 10, 11

Example 24 Solving word problems with simultaneous equations (substitution)

Jade is 5 years older than Marian. If their combined age is 33, find their ages.

Solution	Explanation
Let j be Jade's age and m be Marian's age.	Define two pronumerals using words.
$j = m + 5 \quad (1)$	The first piece of information is that Jade is 5 years older than Marian.
$j + m = 33 \quad (2)$	The second piece of information is that their combined age is 33.
$(m + 5) + m = 33$	Substitute $m + 5$ for j in the second equation.
$2m + 5 = 33$	Collect any like terms, so $m + m = 2m$.
$2m = 28$	Subtract 5 from both sides.
$m = 14$	Divide both sides by 2.
$j = m + 5 \quad (1)$ $j = 14 + 5$ $j = 19$	Use the first equation, $j = m + 5$, to find j.
Jade is 19 years old and Marian is 14 years old.	Answer the original question in words.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8F

8 Kye is 5 years older than Viviana. If their combined age is 81, determine their ages.

First define a pronumeral for Kye's age and another pronumeral for Viviana's age. Then write two equations before solving.

9 The length of a rectangle is three times the width. If the perimeter of the rectangle is 48 cm, determine its dimensions.

Draw a diagram to help form the perimeter equation.

10 A vanilla thick shake is \$2 more than a fruity twirl. If three vanilla thick shakes and five fruity twirls cost \$30, determine their individual prices.

If a fruity twirl costs \$$x$, then 5 will cost \$5x.

11 Carlos is 3 more than twice Ella's age. If the sum of their ages is 54 years, determine their ages.

Rentals

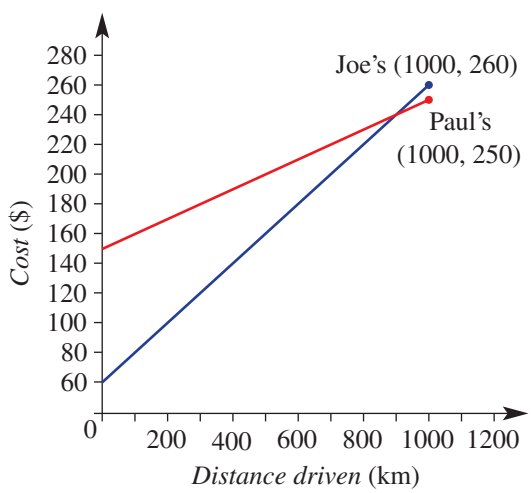
— 12

12 The given graph represents the rental cost of a new car from two car rental firms called Paul's Motor Mart and Joe's Car Rental.

a Determine:

- **i** the initial rental cost from each company
- **ii** the cost per kilometre when renting from each company
- **iii** the linear equations for the total cost from each company
- **iv** the number of kilometres at which the total cost is the same for both rental firms, using the method of substitution.

b Describe when you would use Joe's or Paul's rental firm.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8G Solving simultaneous equations using elimination

A second method for solving simultaneous equations, called elimination, can sometimes be more efficient, depending on how the equations are structured in the first place.

When setting up equations for real situations, we should define the unknown quantities using pronumerals. When solving simultaneous linear equations there should be only two unknown quantities for two equations formed from the given information.

Using simultaneous equations, we can compare the overall cost of a diesel 4WD to that of a petrol 4WD.

For example, two related variables are the cost of owning a car and the number of kilometres driven. For two different cars, two equations could be made relating these variables. The simultaneous solution gives the number of kilometres that makes the total running costs of each car equal. Solving simultaneous equations provides information for an accurate comparison of costs between two vehicles.

Let's start: Eliminating a variable

One step in the elimination method involves adding or subtracting two equations in order to eliminate one of the variables. When adding, we write (1) + (2); when subtracting, we write (1) − (2).

- A student has either added or subtracted pairs of equations, but has many incorrect answers.
- Determine which answers are incorrect and write the correct answer for these. (Note: Do not solve the equations for x or y.)

A $5x + 3y = 34$ (1)
$7x - 3y = 26$ (2)
(1) + (2) gives:
$12x + 0 = 60$

B $3x + 2y = 18$ (1)
$2x - 2y = 2$ (2)
(1) + (2) gives:
$5x - 4y = 20$

C $3x - 3y = 9$ (1)
$2x - 3y = 4$ (2)
(1) − (2) gives:
$5x + 0 = 5$

D $2x - 2y = 8$ (1)
$4x - 2y = 24$ (2)
(1) − (2) gives:
$2x - 4y = 16$

E $4x + 3y = 16$ (1)
$-4x + 2y = 3$ (2)
(1) + (2) gives:
$0 + y = 19$

F $3x + 2y = 25$ (1)
$2x + 2y = 18$ (2)
(1) − (2) gives:
$x + 0 = 43$

G $5x + 3y = 31$ (1)
$5x - 3y = 19$ (2)
(1) + (2) gives:
$0 + 0 = 12$

H $x + 3y = 15$ (1)
$x + 2y = 12$ (2)
(1) − (2) gives:
$2x + y = 3$

I $7x - y = 5$ (1)
$3x - y = -2$ (2)
(1) − (2) gives:
$4x = 3$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

- **Elimination** is generally used to solve simultaneous equations when both equations are in the form $ax + by = d$.
  e.g. $2x - y = 6$ or $-5x + y = -2$
  $3x + y = 10$ $6x + 3y = 5$
- Adding or subtracting multiples of these two equations allows one of the variables to be eliminated.
  - Add $x - y = 10$ and $3x + y = 34$ to eliminate y.
  - Subtract $5x + 2y = 7$ and $5x + y = 6$ to eliminate the x.
  - Form a matching pair by multiplying by a chosen factor.
    For example, $2x - y = 3 \quad \Rightarrow \times 2 \Rightarrow \quad 4x - 2y = 6$
    $5x + 2y = 12 \quad \Rightarrow \quad 5x + 2y = 12$
- When problem-solving with simultaneous linear equations:
  - Define/describe two variables using letters.
  - Write down two equations using your variables.
  - Solve the equations using the method of elimination.
  - Answer the original question in words.

Elimination A method for solving simultaneous equations, where one equation is added to or subtracted from another to eliminate one of the variables

Exercise 8G

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 3, 4

1 What operation (i.e. + or −) will make these equations true?
a $2x$ _____ $2x = 0$ **b** $-3y$ _____ $3y = 0$ **c** $4x$ _____ $(-4x) = 0$

2 Multiply both sides of the equation $3x - 2y = -1$ by the following numbers. Write the new equations.
a 2 **b** 3 **c** 4

Example 25 Eliminating a variable by addition of equations then solving

Add equation (1) to equation (2) and then solve for x and y.

$x + 2y = 10$ (1)
$x - 2y = 2$ (2)

Solution	Explanation
$x + 2y = 10$ (1) $x - 2y = 2$ (2)	Copy equations with the labels (1) and (2).
(1) + (2) gives:	Write the instruction to add: (1) + (2).
$2x + 0 = 12$	Add the x column: $x + x = 2x$.
$2x = 12$	Add the y column: $2y + (-2y) = 0$.
$x = 6$	Add the RHS: $10 + 2 = 12$ and then divide both sides by 2.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Substitute $x = 6$ into (1):	In equation (1), replace x with 6. Equation (2) could also have been used.
$6 + 2y = 10$	
$2y = 4$	Subtract 6 from both sides.
$y = 2$	Divide both sides by 2.
Solution is $(6, 2)$.	Write the solution as an ordered pair.
Check: (2) $6 - 2 \times 2 = 2$, true	Check that the solution satisfies equation (2).

3 Copy each pair of equations, add equation (1) to (2), then solve for x and y.

a $x + y = 7$ (1)
$x - y = 5$ (2)
(1) + (2)

b $x + 2y = 11$ (1)
$x - 2y = -5$ (2)
(1) + (2)

c $3x + 2y = 20$ (1)
$-3x + y = 1$ (2)
(1) + (2)

Adding equations:
(1) + (2)

$x + y = 7$ (1)
$x - y = 5$ (2)

$2x + 0 = 12$

Remember that
$+y + (-y) = +y - y = 0$

4 Copy each pair of equations, subtract equation (2) from equation (1) and then solve for x and y, showing all steps.

a $2x + y = 16$ (1)
$x + y = 9$ (2)
(1) − (2)

b $3x + 5y = 49$ (1)
$3x + 2y = 25$ (2)
(1) − (2)

c $5x - 4y = 16$ (1)
$2x - 4y = 4$ (2)
(1) − (2)

Subtracting equations:
(1) − (2)

$5x - 2y = 16$ (1)
$2x - 2y = 4$ (2)

$3x + 0 = 12$

Remember that
$-2y - (-2y)$
$= -2y + 2y = 0$

FLUENCY

5–8(½) 5–10(½)

5 Determine the point of intersection of the following lines, using the elimination method.

a $x + y = 7$ and $5x - y = 5$
b $x + y = 5$ and $3x - y = 3$
c $x - y = 2$ and $2x + y = 10$
d $x - y = 0$ and $4x + y = 10$

Label the two equations, one under the other, and decide whether to eliminate x or y; i.e. eliminate whichever variable has the same number in each equation.
Remember that $+y + (-y) = 0$.
The point of intersection is the same as the simultaneous solution of the equations.

6 Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations, using the elimination method. You will need to subtract the equations to eliminate one of the variables.

a $3x + 4y = 7$
$2x + 4y = 6$

b $4x + 3y = 11$
$x + 3y = 5$

c $2x + 3y = 1$
$2x + 5y = -1$

Always label the equations and write the instruction; e.g. (1) − (2) or (2) − (1).

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

8G

Example 26 Forming a matching pair

Determine the point of intersection of the lines $x + y = 6$ and $3x + 2y = 14$, using the elimination method.

Solution	Explanation
$x + y = 6 \quad (1)$ $3x + 2y = 14 \quad (2)$	Label the two equations and decide where to form a matching pair.
$(1) \times 2: \quad 2x + 2y = 12 \quad (3)$ $(2): \quad 3x + 2y = 14 \quad (2)$	
$(2) - (3):$ $x = 2$	Subtract the two equations because $2y - 2y = 0$, $3x - 2x = x$ and $14 - 12 = 2$
Substitute $x = 2$ into (1): $2 + y = 6$ $y = 4$	Alternatively, substitute into equation (2). Replace x with the number 2. Subtract 2 from both sides.
Point of intersection is $(2, 4)$.	Write the solution as an ordered pair.
Check: $3(2) + 2(4) = 14$	Check that the solution satisfies the other equation.

7 Solve these simultaneous equations by first forming a matching pair.

a $x - 3y = 1$
$2x + y = 9$

b $4x + 2y = 10$
$x + 3y = 10$

c $3x + 4y = 19$
$x - 3y = 2$

Multiply one equation by a number to form a matching pair.

Example 27 Forming a matching pair by multiplying both equations

Solve the simultaneous equations $3x + 2y = 6$ and $5x + 3y = 11$, using the elimination method.

Solution			Explanation
	$3x + 2y = 6$	(1)	Label the two equations and decide whether to eliminate x or y.
	$5x + 3y = 11$	(2)	
$(1) \times 3:$	$9x + 6y = 18$	(3)	Multiplying the first equation by 3 and the second by 2 results in a matching pair $6y$ in each equation.
$(2) \times 2:$	$10x + 6y = 22$	(4)	
$(4) - (3):$	$x = 4$		Subtract the equations since $6y - 6y = 0$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Substitute $x = 4$ into (1):	Alternatively, substitute into equation (2).
$3(4) + 2y = 6$	Replace x with the number 4.
$2y = -6$	Subtract 12 from both sides, since $3 \times 4 = 12$.
$y = -3$	Divide both sides by 2.
Solution is $(4, -3)$.	Write the solution as an ordered pair.
Check: $5(4) + 3(-3) = 11$	Check the solution with the other equation.

8 Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations, using the elimination method.

a $3x + 2y = 6$ and $5x + 3y = 11$
b $3x + 2y = 5$ and $2x + 3y = 5$
c $2x + y = 4$ and $5x + 2y = 10$
d $2x + 5y = 7$ and $x + 3y = 4$

When multiplying an equation by a number, multiply every term on the LHS and RHS by that number. Always write the instruction for multiplying; e.g. $(2) \times 4$.

9 Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations, using the elimination method.

a $3x + 5y = 8$
$x - 2y = -1$

b $2x + y = 10$
$3x - 2y = 8$

c $4x - 3y = 0$
$3x + 4y = 25$

Choose to eliminate x or y. The coefficients need to be the same size (with + or −); e.g. $-4x$ and $4x$ or $-5y$ and $5y$. Choose to add or subtract the equations to eliminate one variable.

10 Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations.

a $5x + 3y = 18$ and $3y - x = 0$
b $3x - y = 13$ and $x + y = -9$
c $2x + 7y = -25$ and $5x + 7y = -31$
d $2x + 6y = 6$ and $3x - 2y = -2$
e $4x - 5y = -14$ and $7x + y = -5$
f $7x - 3y = 41$ and $3x - y = 17$

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 11–14 11, 12, 15–17

Example 28 Solving word problems with simultaneous equations (elimination)

Kathy is older than Blake. The sum of their ages is 17 years and the difference is 5 years. Find Kathy and Blake's ages.

Solution		Explanation
Let k be Kathy's age and b be Blake's age.		Define two variables.
$k + b = 17$	(1)	The first piece of information is 'the sum of their ages is 17'.
$k - b = 5$	(2)	The second is 'the difference is 5 and Kathy is older than Blake'.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8G

(1) + (2):	$2k = 22$	Add the two equations to eliminate b or, alternatively, subtract to eliminate k.
	$k = 11$	
Substitute $k = 11$ into (1):	$11 + b = 17$	Alternatively, substitute into (2).
	$b = 6$	Subtract 11 from both sides.
Kathy is 11 years old and Blake is 6.		Answer the original question in words.

11 Ayden is older than Tamara. The sum of their ages is 56 years and the difference is 16 years. Use simultaneous equations to find Ayden and Tamara's ages.

Example 29 Problem solving with simultaneous equations

Reese purchases three daffodils and five petunias from the local nursery and the cost is $25. Giuliana buys four daffodils and three petunias and the cost is $26. Determine the cost of each type of flower.

Solution			Explanation
Let $\$d$ be the cost of a daffodil and $\$p$ be the cost of a petunia.			Define your variables.
	$3d + 5p = 25$	(1)	Three daffodils and five petunias from the local nursery cost $25.
	$4d + 3p = 26$	(2)	Four daffodils and three petunias cost $26.
(1) × 4:	$12d + 20p = 100$	(3)	Multiply (1) by 4 and (2) by 3 to obtain a matching pair ($12d$ and $12d$).
(2) × 3:	$12d + 9p = 78$	(4)	
(3) − (4):	$11p = 22$		Subtract the equations to eliminate d.
	$p = 2$		Divide both sides by 2.
Substitute $p = 2$ into (1):			Alternatively, substitute into (2).
	$3d + 5(2) = 25$		Replace p with the number 2.
	$3d + 10 = 25$		Simplify.
	$3d = 15$		Subtract 10 from both sides.
	$d = 5$		Divide both sides by 3.
Check: $4(5) + 3(2) = 26$			Check your solutions by substituting into the second equation.
Daffodils cost $5 and petunias cost $2 each.			Answer the question in words.

12 Tickets to a basketball game cost $3 for children and $7 for adults. If 5000 people attended the game and the total takings at the door was $25 000, determine the number of children and adults who attended the game.

What you are being asked to find is often how you define your variables.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

13 A market stall sells two fruit packs:
Pack 1: 10 apples and 5 mangos ($12.50)
Pack 2: 15 apples and 4 mangos ($13.50)

- **a** Define two pronumerals and set up a pair of linear equations to eventually find the cost of each fruit.
- **b** Solve the two simultaneous equations to determine the individual prices of each piece of fruit.
- **c** Determine the cost of one apple and five mangos.

14 A Maths test contains multiple-choice questions worth 2 marks each and short-answer questions worth 3 marks each. The test is out of 50 marks and there are 22 questions.

Total marks is 50.
Number of questions is 22.

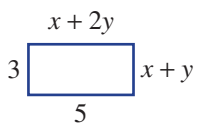
- **a** Define two pronumerals to represent the number of each question type.
- **b** Set up two linear equations.
- **c** Solve the two equations simultaneously to determine the number of multiple-choice questions.

15 Let x and y be two numbers that satisfy the following statements. Set up two linear equations according to the information and solve them simultaneously to determine the numbers in each case.

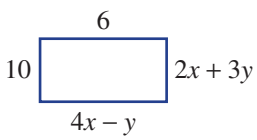
- **a** Their sum is 16 but their difference is 2.
- **b** Their sum is 30 but their difference is 10.
- **c** Twice the larger number plus the smaller is 12 and their sum is 7.

16 Find the value of x and y in the following rectangles. You will need to write two equations and solve using the elimination method.

a



b



Opposite sides of rectangles are equal.

17 Gordon is currently 31 years older than his daughter. In 30 years' time he will be twice his daughter's age. Using g for Gordon's current age and d for Gordon's daughter's current age, complete the following.

- **a** Write down expressions for:
  - **i** Gordon's age in 30 years' time
  - **ii** Gordon's daughter's age in 30 years' time
- **b** Write down two linear equations, using the information at the start.
- **c** Solve the equations to find the current ages of Gordon and his daughter.

Using technology — 18

18 Use technology to solve these simultaneous equations.

- **a** $3x + 2y = 6$ and $5x + 3y = 11$
- **b** $3x + 2y = 5$ and $2x + 3y = 5$
- **c** $4x - 3y = 0$ and $3x + 4y = 25$
- **d** $2x + 3y = 10$ and $3x - 4y = -2$
- **e** $-2y - 4x = 0$ and $3y + 2x = -2$
- **f** $-7x + 3y = 22$ and $3x - 6y = -11$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Maths@Work: Nurse

Nursing is a career that is both challenging and rewarding. It requires a person to be caring and empathetic. Good communication skills, as well as an understanding of mathematics and science, are also important.

Nurses need to be competent in many mathematical areas, including fractions, ratios, converting units of measurement and equations. They must be able to calculate medical dosages, substitute into equations and also know how to program the correct flow rate for intravenous (IV) drips.

Complete these questions that are typical of a nurse's job administering medication.

1 Use these formulas to answer each of the following questions.

$$\text{Volume required} = \frac{\text{strength needed}}{\text{strength in stock}} \times \text{volume of stock solution}$$

$$\text{Number of tablets} = \frac{\text{strength required}}{\text{strength per tablet in stock}}$$

For 100 mg in 2 mL need 75 mg in ? mL.

a What volume, in mL, of Pethidine should be given if the patient is prescribed 75 mg and the existing stock contains 100 mg in 2 mL?

b Calculate the volume, in mL, of insulin that is required for a patient who has been prescribed 60 units of the drug, if the stock is 100 units/1 mL.

c Pethidine 50 mg has been ordered to alleviate a patient's pain. The stock strength is 75 mg/1.5 mL. How much Pethidine should be given?

d How many tablets does a nurse need to give for a prescription of 500 mg of amoxicillin per day, if the stock available in the ward is 250 mg per capsule?

e How many tablets are needed for a dosage of 125 mg, if the stock available is labelled 25 mg per tablet?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 Paediatrics is a branch of medicine dealing with young children. Different formulas are used to calculate the doses suitable for children. Apply the rules given below to complete the following calculations and state each answer to the nearest mg.

Clarke's body weight rule:

$$\text{Child's dose} = \frac{\text{weight of child (kg)}}{\text{average adult weight (70 kg)}} \times \text{adult dose}$$

Clarke's body surface area rule:

$$\text{Child's dose} = \frac{\text{surface area of child (m}^2\text{)}}{\text{average adult surface area (1.7 m}^2\text{)}} \times \text{adult dose}$$

Fried's rule (used for infants under 1 year old):

$$\text{Child's dose} = \frac{\text{age in months}}{150} \times \text{adult dose}$$

Young's rule (used for children aged 2 to 12 years):

$$\text{Child's dose} = \frac{\text{age in years}}{\text{age} + 12} \times \text{adult dose}$$

a Use Young's rule to calculate the Amoxil dose needed for a 10-year-old boy, if the adult dose of the drug Amoxil is 250 mg.

b Use Clarke's body weight rule to find a child's dose for the drug Ampicillin, given the child's weight is 15 kg and an adult's dose is 500 mg.

c Use Fried's rule to calculate the dose required for an 8-month-old baby girl for the drug Amogcillian, given that an adult's dose is 500 mg.

d Use Clarke's body surface area formula to find the dose of penicillin, in mg, required for a child whose surface area is 8000 cm^2, given that the adult dose is 1 gram.

Recall: 1 m^2 = 10 000 cm^2

3 Drugs that are given with an intravenous (IV) drip use a different set of equations to calculate the time needed or the drop rate per minute.

$$\text{Time (in minutes)} = \frac{\text{volume (mL)}}{\text{flow rate (drops/min)}} \times \text{drip factor}$$

$$\text{Flow rate (drops/minute)} = \frac{\text{volume (mL)}}{\text{time (mins)}} \times \text{drip factor}$$

Use the equations above to answer these questions about IV drug dosage. The drip factor is in drops/mL. State all answers rounded to one decimal place.

a Find the flow rate, in drops per minute, when a $\frac{1}{2}$ litre bag of saline solution is run over 4 hours with the IV machine set at a drip factor of 20 drops per mL.

Recall: 1 L = 1000 mL

b An IV drip of saline solution started at 4:15 p.m. Tuesday. The machine has 700 mL to run and is set at 40 drops/min with a drip factor of 18 drops per mL. At what time will the IV be finished?

c How long will it take 180 mL of zero negative blood to flow through an IV at 36 drops/minute when the blood supply machine is set at a drip factor of 15 drops/mL?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Using technology

4 Set up this Excel worksheet to calculate the ending times of intravenous drips for various patients. You will need to copy the given data and enter formulas into the shaded cells.

	A	B	C	D	E	F	G
1	**Intravenous drip administration**						
2	**IV bag**	**IV machine settings**		**Times**			
3	Total volume in mL	Flow rate in drops per minute	Drip factor drops per mL	Starting time	Time in minutes for IV	Time in hours and minutes for IV	Ending time
4	700	40	18	4:15 PM			
5	500	36	16	10:00 AM			
6	800	30	24	1:25 PM			
7	1500	40	20	6:00 PM			
8	2000	45	22	2:00 AM			

- Format starting and ending times as *Number Category: Custom, Type: h:mm AM/PM*.
- To calculate time in hours and minutes, divide the time in minutes by the number of minutes in 24 hours, and format cells as *Number Category: Custom and Type: h:mm*.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1 The answers to these equations will form a magic square, where each row, column and diagonal will add to the same number. Draw a 4 by 4 square for your answers and check that they do make a magic square.

$x - 3 = 6$	$x + 15 = 10$	$\frac{x}{2} = -2$	$5x = 30$
$3x + 7 = 1$	$\frac{x}{4} - 8 = -7$	$\frac{x+7}{2} = 5$	$3(x + 4) = x + 14$
$\frac{x}{2} - 5 = -4$	$4x - 9 = -9$	$x + 7 = 4x + 10$	$2(3x - 12) - 5 = 1$
$\frac{9-3x}{3} = 6$	$-2(3 - x) = x + 1$	$x - 16 = -x$	$5x + 30 - 3x = -3x$

2 Write an equation and solve it to help you find each unknown number in these puzzles.

a Three-quarters of a number plus 16 is equal to 64.

b A number is increased by 6, then that answer is doubled and the result is four more than triple the number.

c The average of a number and its triple is equal to 58.6.

d In 4 years' time, Ahmed's age will be double the age he was 7 years ago. How old is Ahmed now?

3 By applying at least two operations to x, write three different equations so that each equation has the solution $x = -2$. Verify that $x = -2$ makes each equation true.
For example, $3 \times (-2) + 10 = 4$, so one possible equation would be $3x + 10 = 4$.

4 Write two sets of simultaneous equations so that each pair has the solution $(3, -2)$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Puzzles and games

5 Which Australian city has its centre on the intersection of the Warrego Highway and the New England Highway?

To decode this puzzle, solve the inequalities and simultaneous equations below, and match them to a number line or graph. Place the corresponding letters above the matching numbers to find the answer.

6	4	4	3	4	4	5	1	2

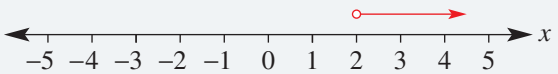
Solve these inequalities and match the solution to a number line (**1–3**).

W $2 - 3x > 8$

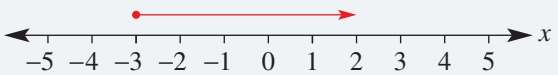
A $3x + 10 \geq 1$

B $x + 5 > 7$

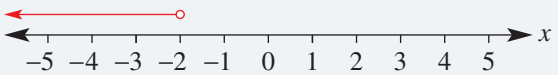
1



2



3



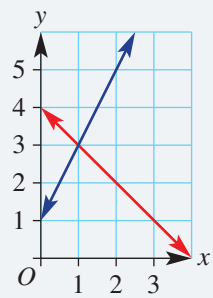
Solve these simultaneous equations and match the solution to a graph (**4–6**).

M $3x - y = 7$
$2x + y = 3$

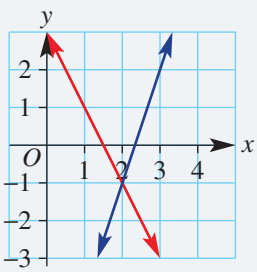
O $y = 2x + 1$
$x + y = 4$

T $2x - y = -1$
$x - 2y = 4$

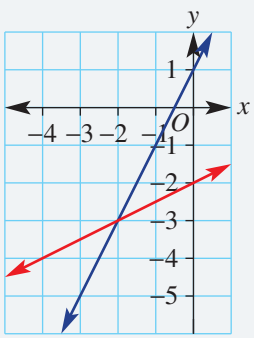
4



5



6



6 Jules and Enzo are participating in a long-distance bike race. Jules rides at 18 km/h and has a 2 hour head start. Enzo travels at 26 km/h.

a How long does it take for Enzo to catch up to Jules? (Use: Distance = speed × time.)

b How far did they both ride before Enzo caught up to Jules?

7 Emily travelled a distance of 138 km by jogging for 2 hours and cycling for 5 hours. She could have travelled the same distance by jogging for 4 hours and cycling for 4 hours. Find the speed at which she was jogging and the speed at which she was cycling.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter summary

Equations

Solving linear equations

Solving involves finding the value that makes an equation true.

e.g. $2x + 5 = 9$
$2x = 4$ (subtract 5)
$x = 2$ (divide by 2)

Solving linear equations that have brackets

- Expand all brackets.
- Collect like terms on each side of the equation.
- Collect terms with a pronumeral to one side (usually the LHS).
- Solve for unknown.

e.g.
$12(x + 1) - 2(3x - 3) = 4(x + 10)$
$12x + 12 - 6x + 6 = 4x + 40$
$6x + 18 = 4x + 40$
$2x + 18 = 40$
$2x = 22$
$x = 11$

Equations with fractions

e.g.
$\frac{3x}{4} - 2 = 7$
$\frac{3x}{4} = 9$ (first $+2$ to both sides)
$3x = 36$ ($\times 4$ both sides)
$x = 12$ ($\div 3$ both sides)

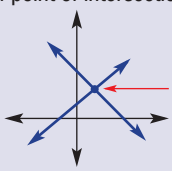
e.g.
$\frac{2x-5}{3} = 7$
$2x - 5 = 21$ (first $\times 3$ to both sides)
$2x = 26$ ($+5$ to both sides)
$x = 13$ ($\div 2$ to both sides)

Solving word problems

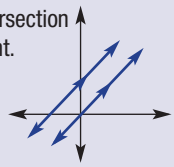
1 Define variable(s).
2 Set up equation(s).
3 Solve equation(s).
4 Check each answer and write in words.

Graphical solutions of simultaneous equations

Graph each line and read off point of intersection.



Parallel lines have no intersection point.



Formulas

Some common formulas
e.g. $A = \pi r^2$, $C = 2\pi r$
An unknown value can be found by substituting values for the other variables.
A formula can be rearranged to make a different variable the subject; i.e, the variable is out the front on its own.
e.g. $E = mc^2$, find m when $E = 320$ and $c = 4$.
$320 = m \times 4^2$ (substitute values)
$320 = 16m$
$20 = m$ (divide both sides by 16)
$m = 20$ (Write the answer with m on the left.)

Simultaneous equations

Use substitution or elimination to find the solution that satisfies two equations.

Substitution

e.g. $2x + y = 12$ (1)
$y = x + 3$ (2)

In (1) replace y with (2):
$2x + (x + 3) = 12$
$3x + 3 = 12$
$3x = 9$
$x = 3$
Sub. $x = 3$ to find y.
In (2) $y = 3 + 3 = 6$
Solution is (3, 6).

Elimination

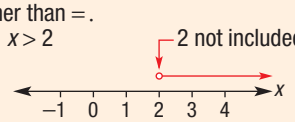
Ensure both equations have a matching pair. Add two equations if matching pair has different sign; subtract if same sign.

e.g. $x + 2y = 2$ (1)
$2x + 3y = 5$ (2)
(1) $\times 2$: $2x + 4y = 4$ (3)
(3) $-$ (2): $y = -1$
In (1): $x + 2(-1) = 2$
$x - 2 = 2$
$x = 4$
Solution is (4, –1).

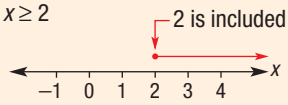
Inequalities

These are represented using $>, <, \geq, \leq$ rather than $=$.

e.g. $x > 2$



e.g. $x \geq 2$



Solving inequalities uses the same steps as solving equations, except when multiplying or dividing by a negative number. In this case, the inequality sign must be reversed.

e.g. $4 - 2x > 10$ (–4)
$-2x > 6$ ($\div -2$)
$x < -3$ (reverse sign)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter review

Multiple-choice questions

8A **1** The solution to $x + 7 = 9$ is:

A $x = 16$ **B** $x = -2$ **C** $x = 2$ **D** $x = 1$ **E** $x = -16$

8B **2** To solve the equation $3(2x + 4) - 4(x + 2) = 6$, you would first:

A divide both sides by 12
B expand the brackets
C subtract 6 from both sides
D multiply both sides by 6
E add $4(x + 2)$ to both sides

8A **3** A number is increased by 6 and then doubled. The result is 36. This translates to:

A $6x + 2 = 36$ **B** $2x + 6 = 36$ **C** $2(x + 6) = 36$
D $2(x - 6) = 36$ **E** $x + 12 = 36$

8B **4** If $4a - 6 = 2a$, then a equals:

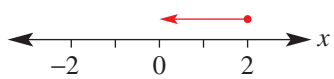
A -1 **B** 1 **C** 6 **D** 3 **E** -3

8D **5** $x \leq 4$ is a solution to:

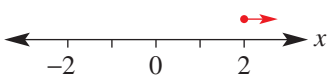
A $x + 1 < 3$ **B** $3x - 1 \leq 11$ **C** $\frac{x}{2} - 1 \geq 0$
D $x - 1 \geq 1$ **E** $-x \leq -4$

8D **6** Which number line shows $x + 4 < 6$?

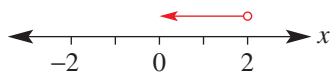
A



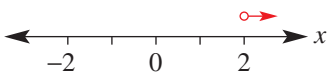
B



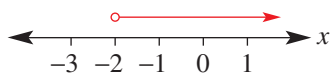
C



D



E



8B **7** The solution to $\frac{5x}{9} - 4 = 1$ is:

A $x = 6$ **B** $x = -9$ **C** $x = -5$ **D** $x = 9$ **E** $x = 5$

8E **8** If two lines are not parallel, the number of intersection points they will have is:

A 0 **B** 1 **C** 2 **D** 3 **E** 4

8E **9** The intersection point for the graphs of $y = 2$ and $x = 3$ is:

A $(-1, 2)$ **B** $(2, 2)$ **C** $(3, 2)$ **D** $(3, 3)$ **E** $(2, 3)$

8B **10** The solution to $3(x - 1) = 12$ is:

A $x = -1$ **B** $x = 2$ **C** $x = 0$ **D** $x = 5$ **E** $x = 4$

8F **11** $y = 3x$ and $x + y = 4$ has the solution:

A $(1, 3)$ **B** $(3, 1)$ **C** $(2, 6)$ **D** $(2, 2)$ **E** $(-1, 5)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8F **12** Substituting $y = x - 1$ into $x + 2y = 3$ gives:

A $x - 2x - 2 = 3$ **B** $x + 2y - 2 = 3$ **C** $x - x - 1 = 3$
D $x + 2x - 1 = 3$ **E** $x + 2(x - 1) = 3$

8G **13** Adding $x + y = 3$ to $x - y = 4$ gives:

A $2x - 2y = 7$ **B** $2x = 7$ **C** $x = 7$ **D** $y = 7$ **E** $2y = 7$

Short-answer questions

8A **1** Solve the following.

a $4a = 32$ **b** $\frac{m}{5} = -6$ **c** $x + 9 = 1$
d $x + x = 16$ **e** $9m = 0$ **f** $w - 6 = 9$
g $8m = -1.6$ **h** $\frac{w}{4} = 1$ **i** $r - 3 = 3$

8A **2** Find the solution to the following.

a $2m + 7 = 11$ **b** $3w - 6 = 18$ **c** $\frac{m}{2} + 1 = 6$
d $\frac{5w}{4} - 3 = 7$ **e** $\frac{m - 6}{2} = 4$ **f** $\frac{3m + 2}{6} = 1$
g $6a - 9 = 0$ **h** $4 - x = 3$ **i** $9 = x + 6$

8B **3** Solve the following by first expanding the brackets.

a $3(m + 1) = 12$ **b** $4(a - 3) = 16$ **c** $5(2 + x) = 30$
d $4(2x + 1) = 16$ **e** $2(3m - 3) = 9$ **f** $2(1 + 4x) = 9$
g $2(2x + 3) + 3(5x - 1) = 41$ **h** $3(2x + 4) - 4(x - 7) = 56$

8B **4** Find the value of p in the following.

a $7p = 5p + 8$ **b** $2p = 12 - p$ **c** $6p + 9 = 5p$
d $2p + 10 = p + 8$ **e** $3p + 1 = p - 9$ **f** $4p - 8 = p - 2$

8A **5** Write an equation for the following and then solve it.

a Six times a number equals 420. What is the number?
b Eight more than a number equals 5. What is the number?
c A number divided by 9 gives 12. What is the number?
d Seven more than a number gives 3. What is the number?
e The sum of a number and 2.3 equals 7. What is the number?

8C **6** **a** For $A = \frac{1}{2}hb$, find b when $A = 24$ and $h = 6$.

b For $V = lwh$, find w when $V = 84$, $l = 6$ and $h = 4$.

c For $A = \frac{x + y}{2}$, find x when $A = 3.2$ and $y = 4$.

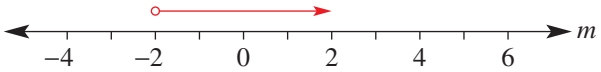
d For $E = mc^2$, find m when $E = 40$ and $c = 2$.

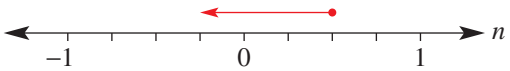
e For $F = \frac{9}{5}C + 32$, find C when $F = 95$.

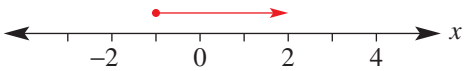
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

8D **7** Write the inequality displayed on each of the following number lines.

a


b


c


d

e

8D **8** Solve the following.

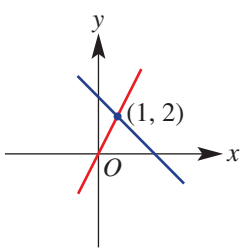
a $x + 8 \geq -10$ **b** $2m < 7$ **c** $2x + 6 > 10$

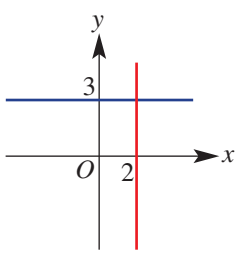
d $x - 3 < 0$ **e** $\frac{x}{4} + 1 \leq 3$ **f** $m - 6 \geq 4$

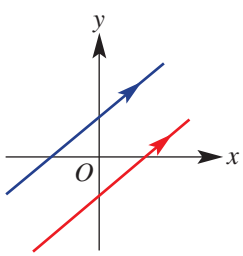
8D **9** Solve the following.

a $-6x \leq 12$ **b** $8 - x \leq 10$ **c** $-x > 0$

8E **10** Determine the point of intersection of the following lines.

a


b


c


8E/F **11** Find the point of intersection (x, y) of the following by plotting an accurate graph.

a $y = 2x + 4$
$3x + y = 9$

b $y = 2$
$x = 3$

c $y = 3x$
$y = -3x$

8F **12** Solve the simultaneous equations using the substitution method; i.e. find the point of intersection.

a $y = 5x - 13$
$2x + 3y = 12$

b $y = -1$
$y = 2x - 11$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

8G **13** Determine the point of intersection of the following lines, using the elimination method.

a $2x + 7y = -25$
$5x + 7y = -31$

b $3x + 2y = 8$
$x - 2y = 0$

8G **14** The sum of two numbers is 15 and their difference is 7. Use simultaneous equations to find the two numbers.

8G **15** A money box contains 20 cent and 50 cent coins. The amount in the money box is \$50 and there are 160 coins.

a Define two variables and set up a pair of linear equations.

b Solve the two simultaneous equations to determine the number of 20 cent and 50 cent coins.

8F **16** There are twice as many adults as children at a local grand final football match. It costs \$10 for adults and \$2 for children to attend the match. If the football club collected \$1100 at the entrance gates, how many children went to see the match?

Extended-response questions

1 For the following shape where all lines meet at 90°:

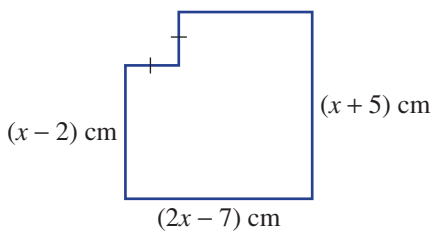
a Determine the equation of its perimeter.

b **i** If the perimeter is 128 cm, determine the value of x.

ii Find the actual side lengths.

c Repeat part **b** for perimeters of:

i 152 cm **ii** 224 cm



2 Two computer consultants have an up-front fee plus an hourly rate. Rhys charges \$50 plus \$70 per hour, whereas Agnes charges \$100 plus \$60 per hour.

a Using $\$C$ for the cost and t hours for the time, write a rule for the cost of hiring:

i Rhys **ii** Agnes

b If Agnes charges \$280, solve an equation to find how long she was hired for.

c By drawing a graph of C versus t for both Rhys and Agnes on the same set of axes, find the coordinates of the intersection point.

d Use the algebraic method of substitution to solve the simultaneous equations and confirm your answer to part **c**.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 9

Pythagoras' theorem and trigonometry

What you will learn

9A Reviewing Pythagoras' theorem (Consolidating)
9B Finding the length of a shorter side
9C Applications of Pythagoras' theorem ⭐
9D Trigonometric ratios (Consolidating)
9E Finding side lengths
9F Solving for the denominator ⭐
9G Finding angles
9H Angles of elevation and depression
9I Direction and bearings ⭐

Australian curriculum

PYTHAGORAS' THEOREM AND TRIGONOMETRY

Solve right-angled triangle problems including those involving direction and **angles of elevation and depression (ACMMG245)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

Measuring the height of Mt Everest

Starting in 1802, a British-led surveying party mapped India using triangulation techniques. It was a huge project that took over 60 years to complete. Triangulation applies high school trigonometry to calculate distances, heights of mountains and the latitude and longitude of important features.

The surveying team slowly travelled from South India 2400 km north to the Himalayas in Nepal. Mt Everest was found to be the highest mountain on Earth at 29 002 ft (8840 m) and named after George Everest who, with others, first surveyed India. Using GPS (Global Positioning System), Mt Everest has since been measured at 29 035 ft (8850 m). The GPS also involves a process of triangulation, using radio waves sent between satellites and Earth.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Pre-test

1 Round the following decimals, correct to two decimal places.

a 15.84312 **b** 164.8731 **c** 0.86602 **d** 0.57735
e 0.173648 **f** 0.7071 **g** 12.99038 **h** 14.301

2 Find the value of each of the following.

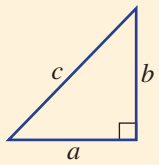
a 5^2 **b** 6.8^2 **c** 19^2 **d** $9^2 + 12^2$ **e** $3.1^2 + 5.8^2$ **f** $41^2 - 40^2$

3 Write the following as a decimal, correct to one decimal place.

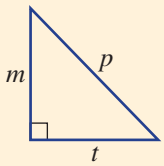
a $\sqrt{8}$ **b** $\sqrt{7}$ **c** $\sqrt{15}$ **d** $\sqrt{10}$
e $\sqrt{12.9}$ **f** $\sqrt{8.915}$ **g** $\sqrt{3.8}$ **h** $\sqrt{200}$

4 Write down the letter or letters matching the hypotenuse (i.e. the side opposite the right angle) on the following triangles.

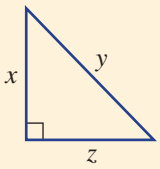
a



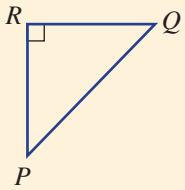
b



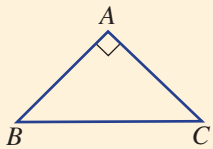
c



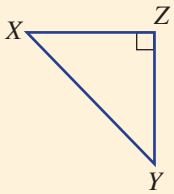
d



e



f



5 Solve for x.

a $3x = 9$ **b** $4x = 16$ **c** $\frac{x}{5} = 7$ **d** $\frac{2x}{3} = 6$

6 Solve for m.

a $7m = 25.55$ **b** $9m = 10.8$ **c** $\frac{m}{1.3} = 4$ **d** $\frac{m}{5.4} = 1.06$

7 Solve each of the following equations, correct to one decimal place.

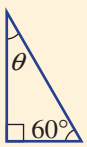
a $\frac{3}{x} = 5$ **b** $\frac{4}{x} = 17$ **c** $\frac{32}{x} = 15$ **d** $\frac{3.8}{x} = 9.2$ **e** $\frac{15}{x} = 6.2$ **f** $\frac{29.3}{x} = 3.2$

8 If x is a positive integer, solve:

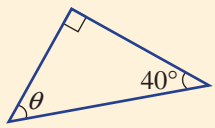
a $x^2 = 16$ **b** $x^2 = 400$ **c** $x^2 = 5^2 + 12^2$ **d** $x^2 + 3^2 = 5^2$

9 Find the size of the angle θ in the following diagrams.

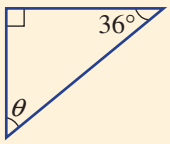
a



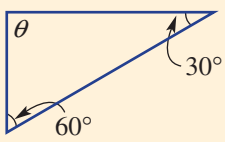
b



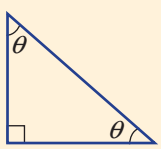
c



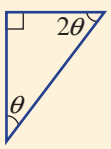
d



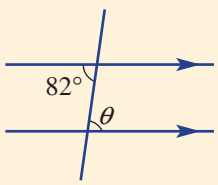
e



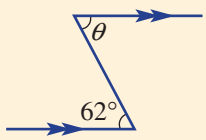
f



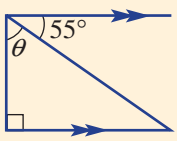
g



h



i



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

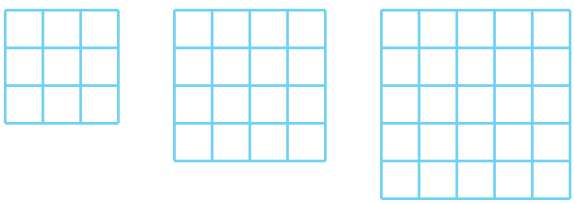
9A Reviewing Pythagoras' theorem

CONSOLIDATING

The ancient Egyptians knew of the relationship between the numbers 3, 4 and 5 and how they could be used to form a right-angled triangle.

Greek philosopher and mathematician Pythagoras expanded on this idea and the theorem we use today is named after him.

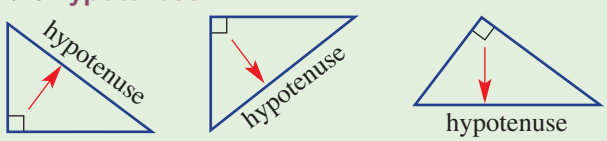
Let's start: Three, four and five



- On square grid paper, construct three squares as shown above.
- Cut them out and place the middle-sized square on top of the largest square. Then cut the smallest square into 9 smaller squares and also place them onto the largest square to finish covering it.
- What does this show about the numbers 3, 4 and 5?

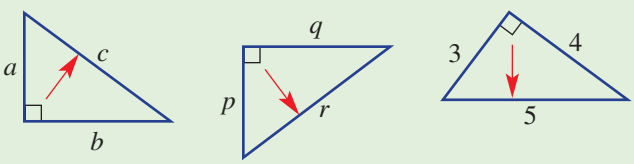
Key ideas

- A right-angled triangle has its longest side opposite the right angle. This side is called the **hypotenuse**.
  For example:



Hypotenuse The longest side of a right-angled triangle (the side opposite the right angle)

- Pythagoras' theorem states:
  The square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares on the other two sides.
  For example:



$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$ $r^2 = p^2 + q^2$ $5^2 = 3^2 + 4^2$

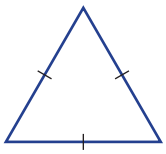
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Exercise 9A

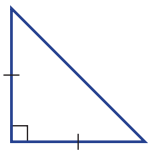
UNDERSTANDING 1–4 4

1 Which of the following triangles have a side known as the hypotenuse?

a

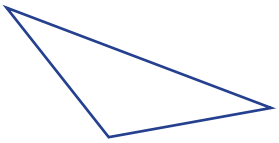


b



c

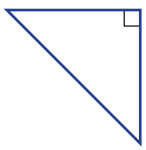
d



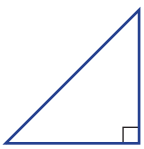
Only right-angled triangles have a hypotenuse.

2 Copy these triangles into your workbook and label the hypotenuse.

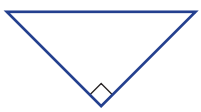
a



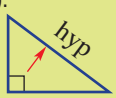
b



c

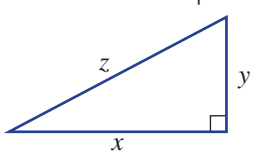


Draw an arrow across from the right angle to find the hypotenuse (hyp).

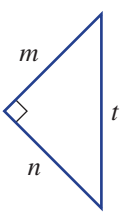


3 Write the relationship between the sides of these triangles.

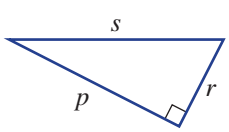
a

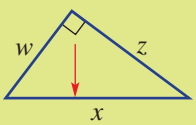


b



c





$x^2 = w^2 + z^2$

4 Find the value of $a^2 + b^2$ when:

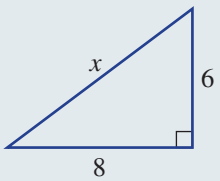
a $a = 3$ and $b = 4$ **b** $a = 3$ and $b = 5$ **c** $a = 3$ and $b = 6$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

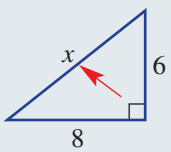
FLUENCY 5–6(½) 5–7(½)

Example 1 Finding the length of the hypotenuse

Find the length of the hypotenuse (x) of the triangle shown.

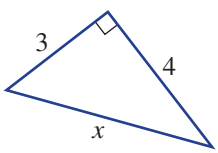


Solution	Explanation
$x^2 = 6^2 + 8^2$ $= 36 + 64$ $= 100$	Write the relationship for the given triangle using Pythagoras' theorem.
$x = \sqrt{100}$ $= 10$	Take the square root to find x.

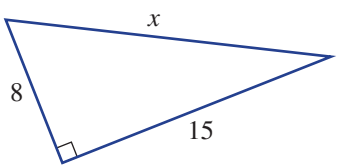


5 Find the length of the hypotenuse in these right-angled triangles.

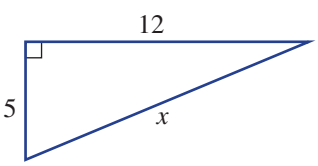
a



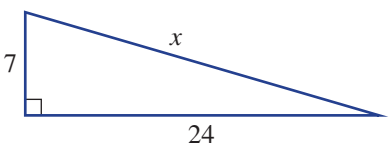
b



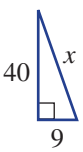
c



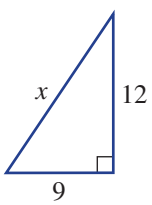
d



e



f

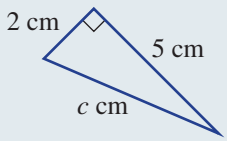


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

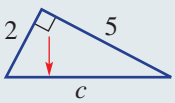
9A

Example 2 Finding the length of the hypotenuse as a decimal

Find the length of the hypotenuse in this triangle, correct to one decimal place.

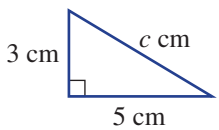


Solution	Explanation
$c^2 = 5^2 + 2^2$	Write the relationship for this triangle, where c is the length of the hypotenuse.
$= 25 + 4$	
$= 29$	
$c = \sqrt{29}$	Simplify.
$c = 5.38516\ldots$	Take the square root to find c.
$c = 5.4$ (to 1 d.p.)	Round 5.3(8)516… to one decimal place.

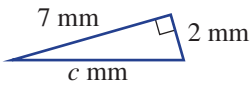


6 Find the length of the hypotenuse in these triangles, correct to one decimal place.

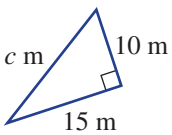
a



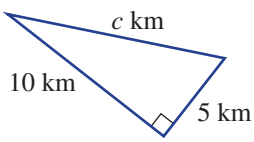
b



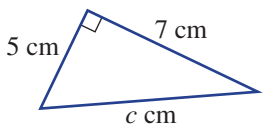
c



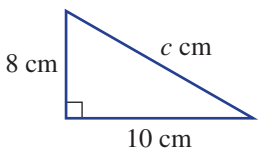
d



e



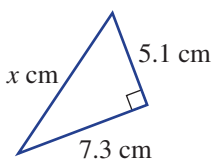
f



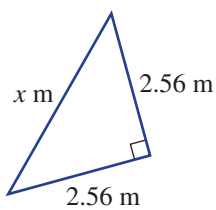
If $c^2 = 34$, then $c = \sqrt{34}$. Use a calculator to find the decimal.

7 Find the value of the hypotenuse in these triangles, correct to two decimal places.

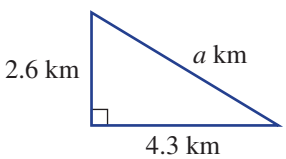
a



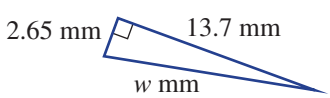
b



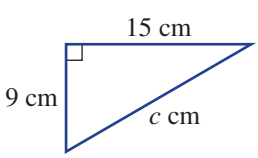
c



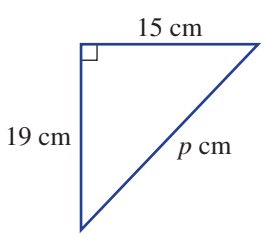
d



e



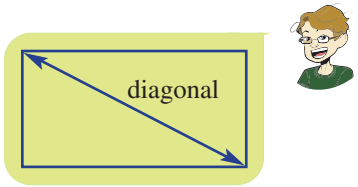
f



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

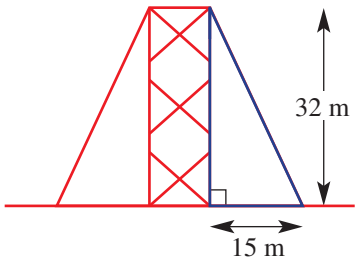
PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–11 11–14

8 A LCD plasma TV is 154 cm long and 96 cm high. Calculate the length of its diagonal, correct to one decimal place.

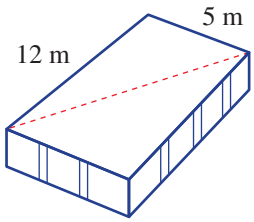


9 A 32 m tower is supported by cables from the top to a position on the ground 15 m from the base of the tower. Determine the length of each cable needed to support the tower, correct to one decimal place.

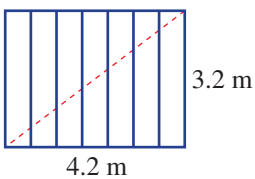
Set up and solve using Pythagoras' theorem.



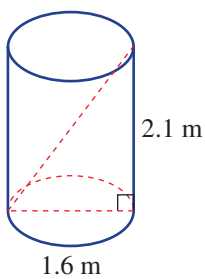
10 Boris the builder uses Pythagoras' theorem to check the corners of his concrete slab. What will be the length of the diagonal when the angle is 90°?



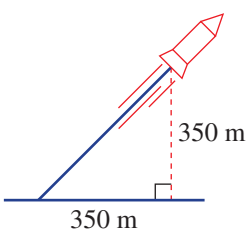
11 Find the length of the diagonal steel brace needed to support a gate of length 4.2 m and width 3.2 m, correct to two decimal places.



12 Find the length of the longest rod that will fit in a cylindrical container of height 2.1 m and diameter 1.6 m, correct to two decimal places.



13 A rocket blasts off and after a few seconds it is 350 m above the ground. At this time it has covered a horizontal distance of 350 m. How far has the rocket travelled, correct to two decimal places?

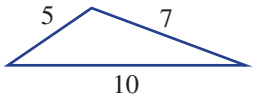


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

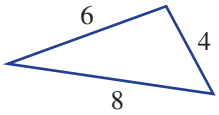
9A

14 Determine whether these triangles contain a right angle.

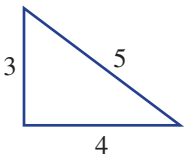
a



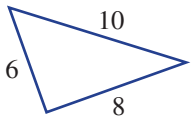
b



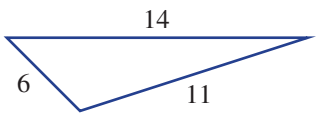
c



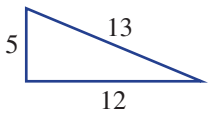
d



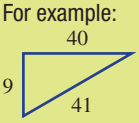
e



f



If Pythagoras' theorem works, then the triangle has a right angle.
For example:

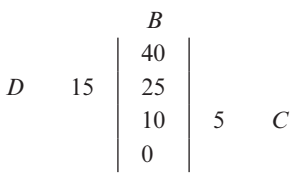


$41^2 = 1681$
$40^2 + 9^2 = 1681$
$\therefore 41^2 = 40^2 + 9^2$ and the triangle has a right angle, opposite the 41.

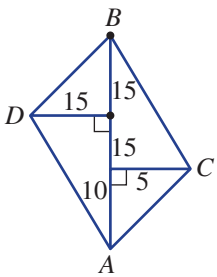
An offset survey

— 15, 16

15 An offset survey measures distances perpendicular to the baseline offset. A notebook entry is made showing these distances, and then perimeters and areas are calculated.



Notebook entry



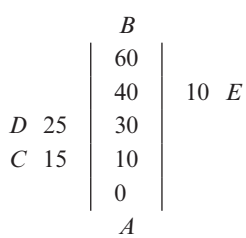
Field diagram (Not to scale)

a Using the diagrams above, find these lengths, correct to one decimal place.
i AC **ii** BC **iii** DB **iv** AD

b Find the perimeter of the field $ACBD$, correct to the nearest metre.

c Find the area of the field.

16 At right is a notebook entry. Draw the field diagram and find the perimeter of the field, to one decimal place.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9B Finding the length of a shorter side

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

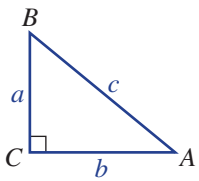
Using Pythagoras' theorem, we can determine the length of the shorter sides of a right-angled triangle. The angled support beams on a rollercoaster ride, for example, create right-angled triangles with the ground. The vertical and horizontal distances are the shorter sides of the triangle.

Let's start: Choosing the correct numbers

For the triangle ABC, Pythagoras' theorem is written $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$.

Choose the 3 numbers from each group that work for $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$.

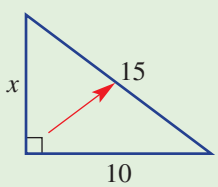
Group 1:	6, 7, 8, 9, 10	Group 2:	15, 16, 20, 25
Group 3:	9, 10, 12, 15	Group 4:	9, 20, 21, 40, 41



Key ideas

- We can use Pythagoras' theorem to determine the length of one of the shorter sides if we know the length of the hypotenuse and the other side.

For example:



$15^2 = x^2 + 10^2$ becomes $x^2 = 15^2 - 10^2$.

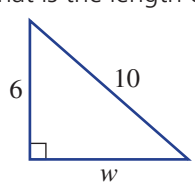
So $x^2 = 125$ and $x = \sqrt{125}$.

Exercise 9B

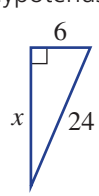
UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 What is the length of the hypotenuse in each of these triangles?

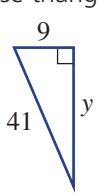
a



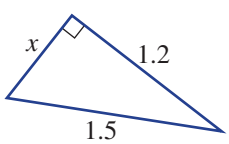
b



c



d



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9B

2 Copy and complete:

a When $10^2 = 6^2 + w^2$, then $w^2 = 10^2 - \square$.

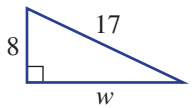
b When $13^2 = 5^2 + x^2$, then $x^2 = 13^2 - \square$.

c When $30^2 = p^2 + 18^2$, then $p^2 = \square - 18^2$.

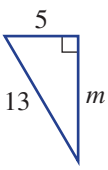
Follow a step as if you were solving an equation.

3 Substitute the numbers and pronumerals into Pythagoras' theorem $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$, for each of these triangles. Do not solve for the unknown.

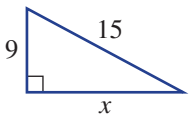
a



b



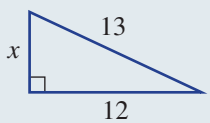
c



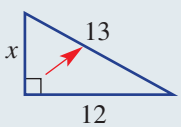
FLUENCY 4–5(½) 4–6(½)

Example 3 Calculating a shorter side

Determine the value of x in the triangle shown, using Pythagoras' theorem.

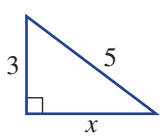


Solution	Explanation
$13^2 = x^2 + 12^2$	Write the relationship for this triangle using Pythagoras' theorem, with 13 as the hypotenuse.
$x^2 = 13^2 - 12^2$	Rewrite the rule with the x^2 on the left-hand side.
$= 169 - 144$	
$= 25$	Simplify.
$x = \sqrt{25}$	Find the square root to find x.
$\therefore x = 5$	

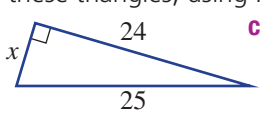


4 Determine the value of x in these triangles, using Pythagoras' theorem.

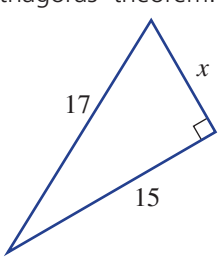
a



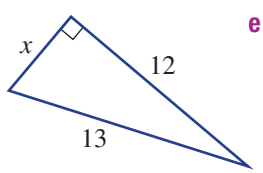
b



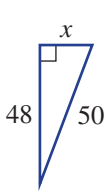
c



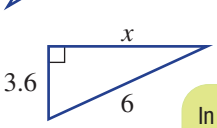
d



e



f

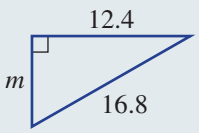


In $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$, c is always the hypotenuse.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 4 Finding a shorter side length as a decimal value

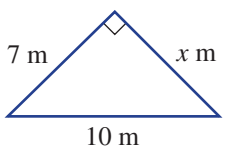
Determine the value of m in the triangle, correct to one decimal place.



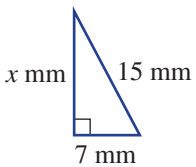
Solution	Explanation
$16.8^2 = m^2 + 12.4^2$	Write the relationship for this triangle.
$m^2 = 16.8^2 - 12.4^2$	Make m^2 the subject.
$= 128.48$	Simplify, using your calculator.
$m = \sqrt{128.48}$	Take the square root of both sides to find m.
$= 11.3349\ldots$	
$m = 11.3$ (to 1 d.p.)	Round your answer to one decimal place.

5 Determine the value of x in these triangles, using Pythagoras' theorem. Answer correct to one decimal place.

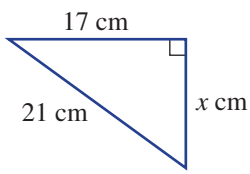
a



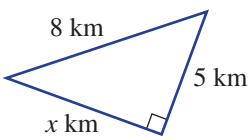
b



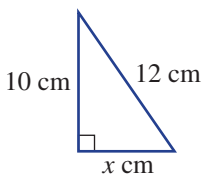
c



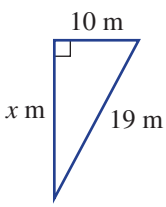
d



e



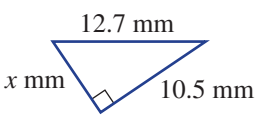
f



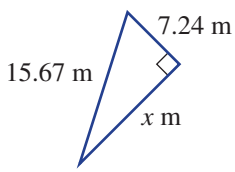
To round to one decimal place, look at the 2nd decimal place. If it is 5 or more, round up. If it is 4 or less, round down. For example, 7.1 (4) 14… rounds to 7.1.

6 Determine the value of x in these triangles, using Pythagoras' theorem. Answer correct to two decimal places.

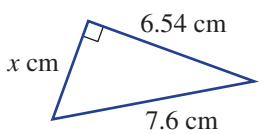
a



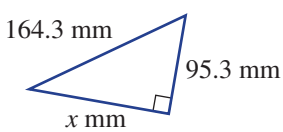
b



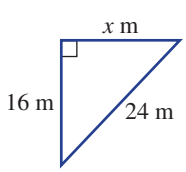
c



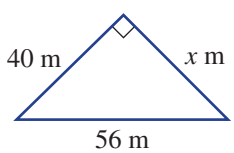
d



e



f

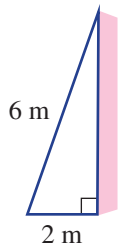


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

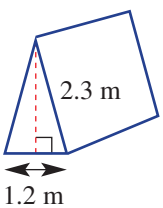
9B

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7–9 9–11

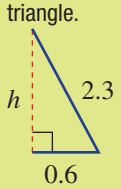
7 A 6 m ladder leans against a wall. If the base of the ladder is 2 m from the wall, determine how high the ladder is up the wall, correct to two decimal places.



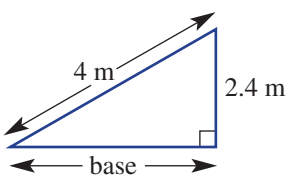
8 A tent has sloping sides of length 2.3 m and a base of 1.2 m. Determine the height of the tent pole, correct to one decimal place.



Identify the right-angled triangle.



9 A city council wants to build a skateboard ramp measuring 4 m long and 2.4 m high. How long should the base of the ramp be, correct to one decimal place?



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

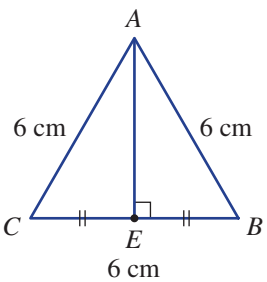
10 Triangle ABC is equilateral. AE is an axis of symmetry.

a Find the length of:

i EB

ii AE, to one decimal place

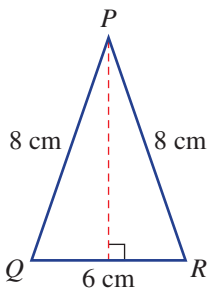
b Find the area of triangle ABC, to one decimal place.



An equilateral triangle has 3 equal sides.

Remember: $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$ is the area of a triangle.

11 What is the height of this isosceles triangle, to one decimal place?



Pythagoras' theorem applies only to right-angled triangles.

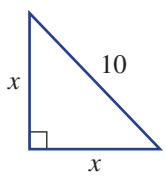
More than one pronumeral

—

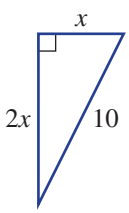
12

12 Find the value of x in each of the following. Answer to one decimal place.

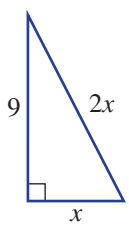
a



b



c



Remember to square the entire side. The square of $2x$ is $(2x)^2$ or $4x^2$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9C Applications of Pythagoras' theorem

Interactive

Widgets

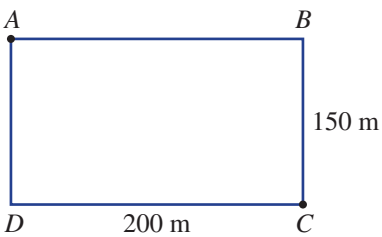
HOTsheets

Walkthrough

Pythagoras' theorem has many applications, some of which you may have noticed already in this chapter. Some areas where Pythagoras' theorem is useful include drafting, building and navigation.

Let's start: Finding the shortest path

A rectangular field is 200 m by 150 m. Marco wants to walk from the corner of the field marked A to the corner of the field marked C. How many metres are saved by walking along the diagonal AC rather than walking along AB and then BC?



Key ideas

- When applying Pythagoras' theorem:
  - Identify and draw the right-angled triangle or triangles you need in order to solve the problem.
  - Label the triangle and place a pronumeral (letter) on the side length that is unknown.
  - Use Pythagoras' theorem to find the value of the pronumeral.
  - Answer the question. (Written questions should have written answers.)

Exercise 9C

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Draw a diagram for each of the following questions. You don't need to answer the question.

a A 2.4 m ladder is placed 1 m from the foot of a building. How far up the building will the ladder reach?

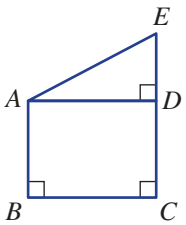
b The diagonal of a rectangle with length 18 cm is 24 cm. How wide is the rectangle?

c Sebastian walks 5 km north, then 3 km west. How far is he from his starting point?

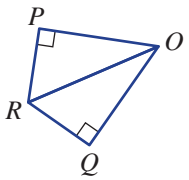
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 Name the right-angled triangles in each of the following diagrams; e.g. $\triangle ABC$.

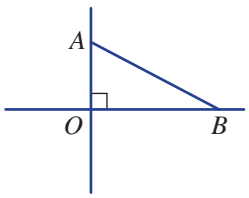
a



b

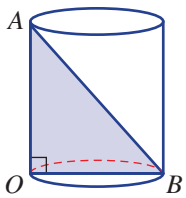


c

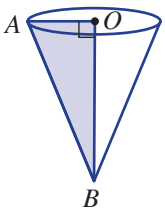


3 Name the hypotenuse in each of the shaded right-angled triangles found within these three-dimensional shapes; e.g. FG.

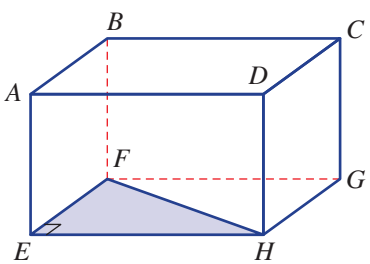
a



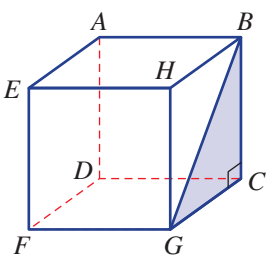
b



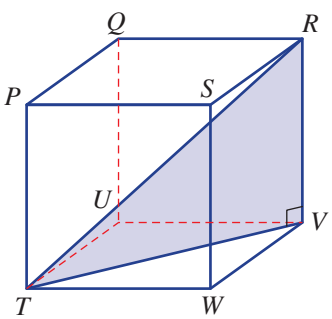
c



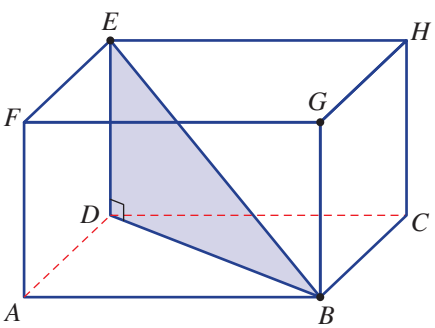
d



e



f



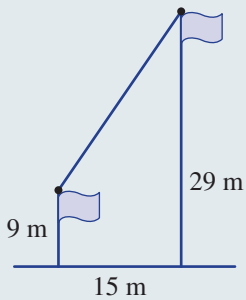
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

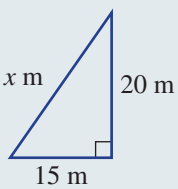
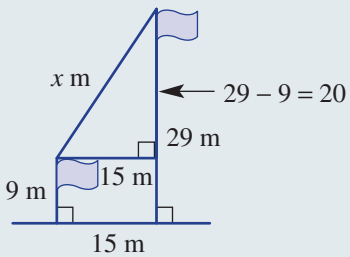
9C

FLUENCY 4–7 4, 5, 7, 8

Example 5 Applying Pythagoras' theorem

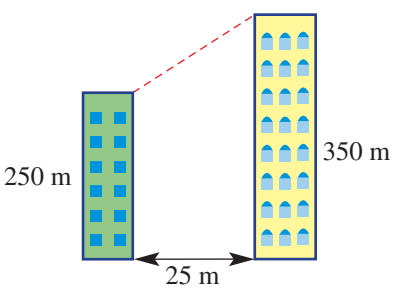
Two flag poles are 15 m apart and a rope links the tops of both poles. Find the length of the rope if one flag pole is 9 m tall and the other is 29 m tall.



Solution	Explanation
Let x metres be the length of rope.	Locate and draw the right-angled triangle, showing all measurements. Introduce a pronumeral for the missing side.
	
$x^2 = 15^2 + 20^2$	Write the relationship, using Pythagoras' theorem.
$= 225 + 400$	Simplify.
$= 625$	
$x = \sqrt{625}$	Take the square root to find x.
$= 25$	
The rope is 25 m long.	Answer the question.

4 Two skyscrapers are 25 m apart and a cable runs from the top of one building to the top of the other. If one building is 350 m tall and the other 250 m:

- **a** Determine the difference in the heights of the buildings.
- **b** Draw an appropriate right-angled triangle you could use to find the length of the cable.
- **c** Find the length of the cable, correct to two decimal places.

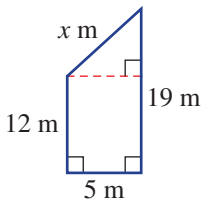


(Not to scale)

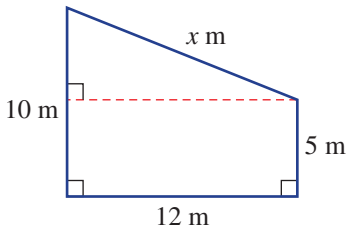
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 Find the value of x in each of the following, correct to one decimal place where necessary.

a

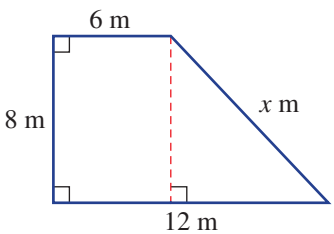


b



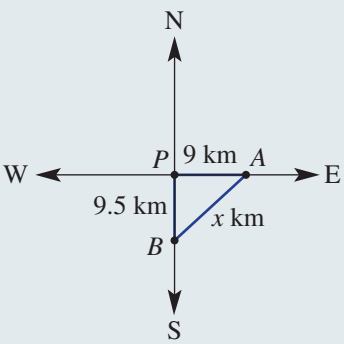
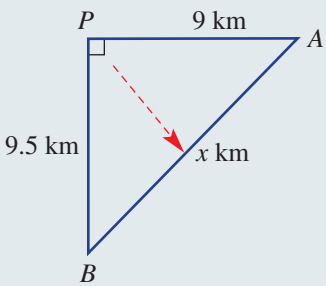
Label the two known lengths of each triangle first.

c



Example 6 Using direction with Pythagoras' theorem

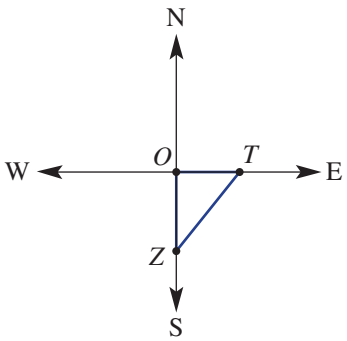
Two hikers leave their camp (P) at the same time. One walks due east for 9 km; the other walks due south for 9.5 km. How far apart are the two hikers at this point? (Answer to one decimal place.)

Solution	**Explanation**
	Draw a diagram. Consider $\triangle PAB$.
	
$\therefore x^2 = 9^2 + 9.5^2$	Write Pythagoras' theorem and evaluate.
$x^2 = 171.25$	Square root to find x.
$x = \sqrt{171.25}$	
$= 13.086$	
$= 13.1$ (to 1 d.p.)	Round to one decimal place.
$\therefore$ The hikers are 13.1 km apart.	Answer the question in words.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9C

6 Tranh (T) walks 4.5 km east while Zara (Z) walks 5.2 km south. How far from Tranh is Zara? Answer to one decimal place.



7 Find the distance between Sui and Kevin if:

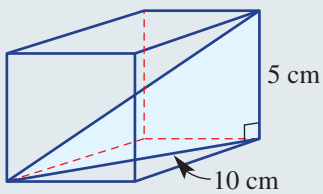
a Sui walks 6 km north from camp O and Kevin walks 8 km west from camp O.

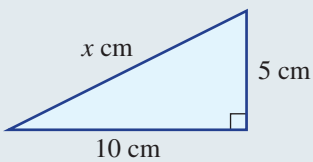
b Sui walks 40 km east from point A and Kevin walks 9 km south from point A.

c Kevin walks 15 km north-west from O and Sui walks 8 km south-west also from O.

Example 7 Using Pythagoras' theorem in 3D

Find the distance from one corner of this rectangular prism to the opposite corner, correct to two decimal places.

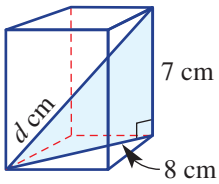


Solution	Explanation
	Draw the triangle you need and mark the lengths.
$x^2 = 5^2 + 10^2$	Write the relationship for this triangle.
$= 25 + 100$	Simplify.
$x = \sqrt{125}$	Take the square root to find x.
$= 11.18$ cm (to 2 d.p.)	Round your answer to two decimal places.
$\therefore$ The distance between the opposite corners is 11.18 cm.	Write the answer.

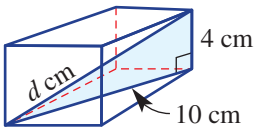
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8 Find the distance of d from one corner to the opposite corner in the following rectangular prisms, correct to one decimal place.

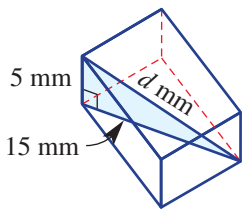
a



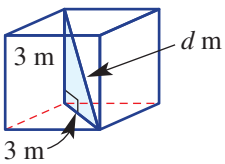
b



c

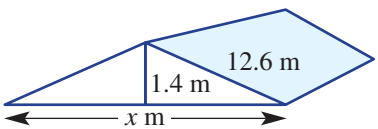


d



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9–11 11–14

9 The height of a roof is 1.4 m. If the length of a gable (the diagonal) is to be 12.6 m, determine the length of the horizontal beam needed to support the roof, correct to two decimal places.

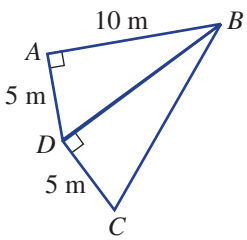


Find the base length of the right-angled triangle first.

10 For the diagram shown, find the lengths of:

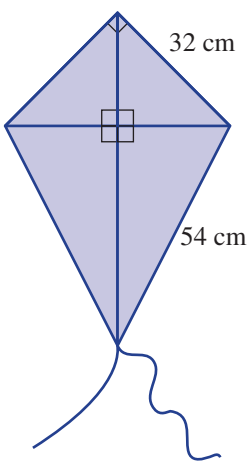
a BD, correct to two decimal places

b BC, correct to one decimal place



11 A kite is constructed with six pieces of wooden dowel and covered in fabric. The four pieces around the edge have two 32 cm rods and two 54 cm rods. If the top of the kite is right angled, find the length of the horizontal and vertical rods, correct to two decimal places.

Find the length of the horizontal rod first. What type of triangle is the top of the kite? Find the length of the vertical rod using two calculations.

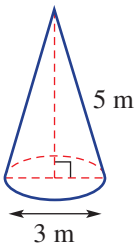


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

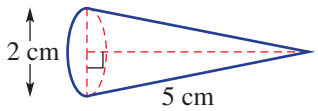
9C

12 Find the height of the following cones, correct to two decimal places.

a

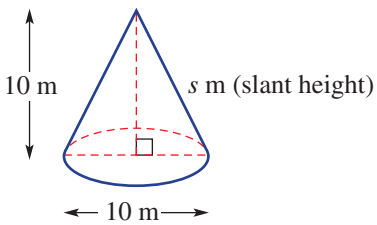


b

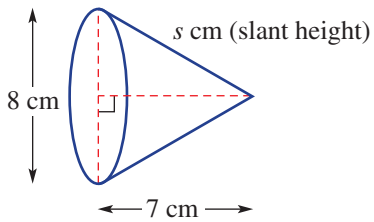


13 Find the slant height of the following, correct to one decimal place.

a

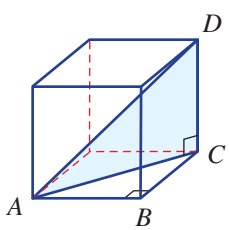


b



14 This cube has 1 cm sides. Find, correct to two decimal places, the lengths of:

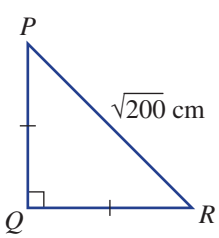
a AC **b** AD



How much do you know?

— 15

15 Write down everything you know about $\triangle PQR$.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9D Trigonometric ratios

CONSOLIDATING

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

Trigonometry deals with the relationship between the sides and angles of triangles.

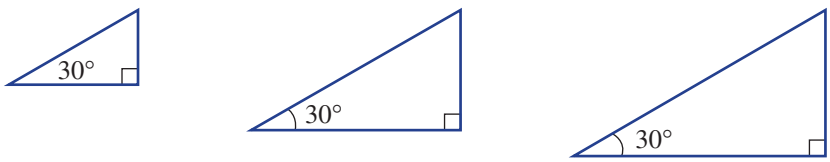
In this section we look at the relationship between right-angled triangles and the three trigonometric ratios: sine (sin), cosine (cos) and tangent (tan).

Using your calculator and knowing how to label the sides of right-angled triangles, you can use trigonometry to find missing sides and angles.

Surveyors use trigonometry to calculate accurate lengths.

Let's start: Thirty degrees

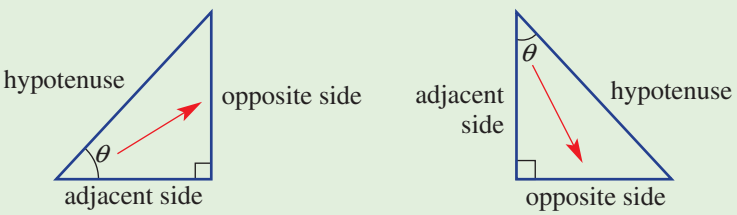
- Draw three different right-angled triangles that each have a 30° angle.



- Measure each side of each triangle and add these measurements to your diagrams.
- The hypotenuse, as we know, is opposite the right angle. The side opposite the 30° is called the opposite side. For each of your three triangles, write down the ratio of the opposite side divided by the hypotenuse. What do you notice?
- Type 'sin 30°' into your calculator. What do you notice?

Key ideas

■ Any right-angled triangle has three sides: the hypotenuse, adjacent and opposite.
- The hypotenuse is always opposite the right angle.
- The *adjacent* side is next to the **angle of reference**.
- The *opposite* side is opposite the angle of reference.

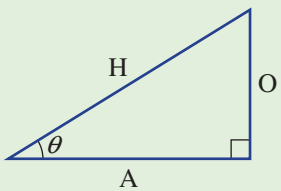


Angle of reference
The angle in a right-angled triangle that is used to determine the opposite side and the adjacent side

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- For a right-angled triangle with a given angle θ (theta), the three trigonometric ratios of **sine (sin)**, **cosine (cos)** and **tangent (tan)** are given by:
  - sine of angle θ: $\sin\theta = \frac{\text{length of opposite side}}{\text{length of the hypotenuse}}$
  - cosine of angle θ: $\cos\theta = \frac{\text{length of adjacent side}}{\text{length of the hypotenuse}}$
  - tangent of angle θ: $\tan\theta = \frac{\text{length of opposite side}}{\text{length of adjacent side}}$

- When working with right-angled triangles, label each side of the triangle O (opposite), A (adjacent) and H (hypotenuse).



- The three trigonometric ratios are:
  $\sin\theta = \frac{O}{H}$ $\cos\theta = \frac{A}{H}$ $\tan\theta = \frac{O}{A}$
  We can remember this as **SOH CAH TOA**.

Sine (sin) The ratio of the length of the opposite side to the length of the hypotenuse in a right-angled triangle

Cosine (cos) The ratio of the length of the adjacent side to the length of the hypotenuse in a right-angled triangle

Tangent (tan) The ratio of the length of the opposite side to the length of the adjacent side in a right-angled triangle

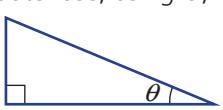
SOH CAH TOA A way of remembering the trigonometric ratios: Sine equals Opposite over Hypotenuse, Cosine equals Adjacent over Hypotenuse, Tangent equals Opposite over Adjacent

Exercise 9D

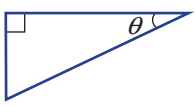
UNDERSTANDING 1-4 4

1 By referring to the angles marked, copy each triangle and label the sides opposite, adjacent and hypotenuse, using O, A and H.

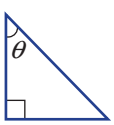
a



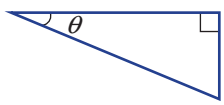
b



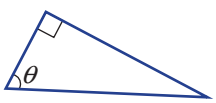
c



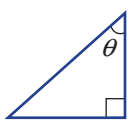
d



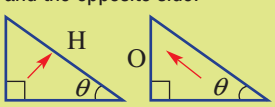
e



f

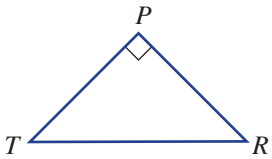


Arrows help you find the hypotenuse and the opposite side:



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

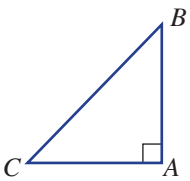
2 Referring to triangle PTR, name the:



- **a** side opposite the angle at T
- **b** side adjacent to the angle at T
- **c** side opposite the angle at R
- **d** side adjacent to the angle at R
- **e** hypotenuse
- **f** angle opposite the side PR

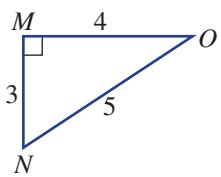
'Adjacent' means 'next to'.

3 Referring to triangle ABC, name the:



- **a** hypotenuse
- **b** side opposite the angle at B
- **c** side opposite the angle at C
- **d** side adjacent to the angle at B

4 In triangle MNO, write the ratio (i.e. fraction) of:



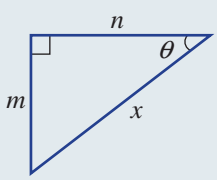
- **a** $\frac{\text{the side oposite angle } O}{\text{hypotenuse}}$
- **b** $\frac{\text{the side opposite angle } N}{\text{hypotenuse}}$
- **c** $\frac{\text{the side adjacent angle } O}{\text{hypotenuse}}$

FLUENCY 5–6(½) 5–6(½)

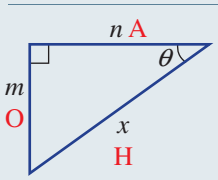
Example 8 Writing trigonometric ratios

Label the sides of the triangle O, A and H and write the ratios for:

a $\sin\theta$ **b** $\cos\theta$ **c** $\tan\theta$



Solution



a $\sin\theta = \frac{m}{x}$

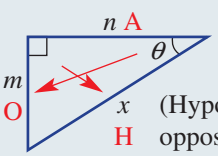
b $\cos\theta = \frac{n}{x}$

c $\tan\theta = \frac{m}{n}$

Explanation

Use arrows to label the sides correctly.

(opposite angle θ)



(Hypotenuse is always opposite the right angle.)

SOH CAH TOA

$\sin\theta = \frac{O}{H} = \frac{m}{x}$

$\cos\theta = \frac{A}{H} = \frac{n}{x}$

$\tan\theta = \frac{O}{A} = \frac{m}{n}$

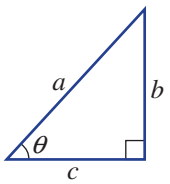
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9D

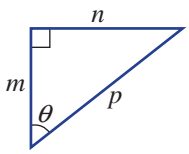
5 For each of the following triangles, write a ratio for:

i $\sin\theta$ **ii** $\cos\theta$ **iii** $\tan\theta$

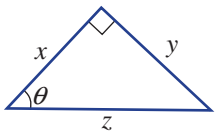
a



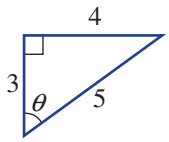
b



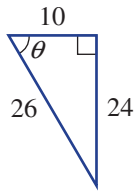
c



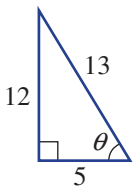
d



e



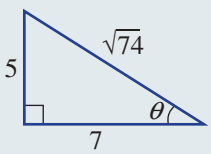
f

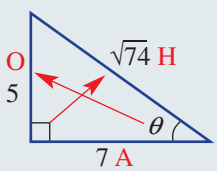


Use SOH CAH TOA after labelling the sides as O, A and H.

Example 9 Writing a trigonometric ratio

Write down the ratio of $\cos\theta$ for this triangle.

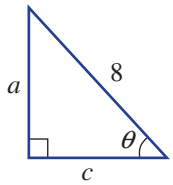


Solution	Explanation
$\cos\theta = \frac{A}{H}$	Label the sides of the triangle.
$\cos\theta = \frac{7}{\sqrt{74}}$	 SOH CAH TOA tells us $\cos\theta$ is $\frac{\text{adjacent}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$. Substitute the values for the adjacent (A) and hypotenuse (H).

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

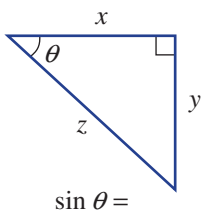
6 Write the trigonometric ratio asked for in each of the following.

a



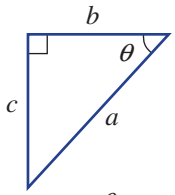
$\tan\theta =$

b



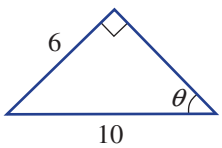
$\sin\theta =$

c



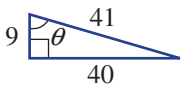
$\cos\theta =$

d



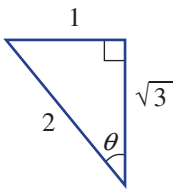
$\sin\theta =$

e



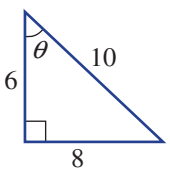
$\sin\theta =$

f



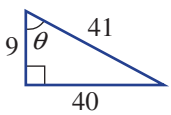
$\tan\theta =$

g



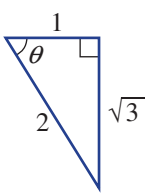
$\tan\theta =$

h



$\cos\theta =$

i

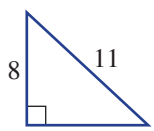


$\tan\theta =$

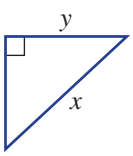
PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7–9 8–11

7 Copy each of these triangles and mark the angle θ that will enable you to write a ratio for $\sin\theta$.

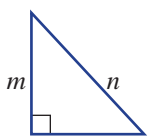
a



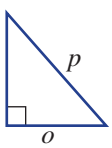
b



c



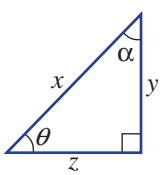
d



8 For the triangle shown, write a ratio for:

a $\sin\theta$ **b** $\sin\alpha$ **c** $\cos\theta$

d $\cos\alpha$ **e** $\tan\theta$ **f** $\tan\alpha$



θ and α are letters of the Greek alphabet that are used to mark angles.

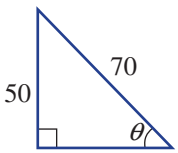
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9D

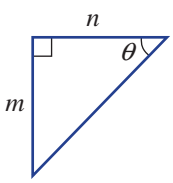
9 For each of the triangles below, decide which trigonometric ratio (sin, cos or tan) you would use.

First decide which two sides are involved

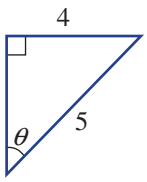
a



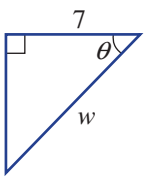
b



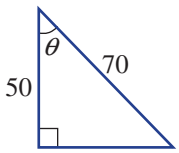
c



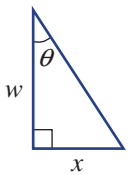
d



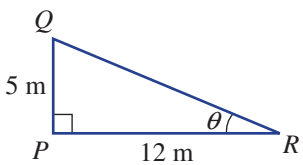
e



f



10 Consider the triangle PQR.



a Use Pythagoras' theorem to find the length of QR.

b Write down the ratio of $\sin\theta$.

11 For a given right-angled triangle, $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{2}$.

a Draw a right-angled triangle and show this information.

b What is the length of the third side? Use Pythagoras' theorem.

c Find the value of:

i $\cos\theta$ **ii** $\tan\theta$

Relationship between sine and cosine

— 12

12 Use your calculator to complete the table, answering to three decimal places where necessary.

Angle (θ)	sin θ	cos θ
0°		
5°		
10°		
15°		
20°		
25°		
30°		
35°		
40°		
45°		
50°		
55°		
60°		
65°		
70°		
75°		
80°		
85°		
90°		

a For what angle is $\sin\theta = \cos\theta$?

b Copy and complete:

i $\sin 5° = \cos$ ____°

ii $\sin 10° = \cos$ ____°

iii $\sin 60° = \cos$ ____°

iv $\sin 90° = \cos$ ____°

c Write down a relationship, in words, between sin and cos.

d Why do you think it's called cosine?

For most calculators, you enter the values in the same order as they are written. That is, $\sin 30° \rightarrow$ sin 30 = 0.5.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9E Finding side lengths

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

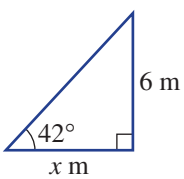
In any right-angled triangle, given one of the acute angles and a side length, you can find the length of the other two sides. This can help builders find special lengths in right-angled triangles if they know an angle and the length of another side.

Trigonometry can help builders work out lengths of timbers and angles of roofs.

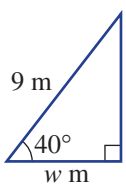
Let's start: Is it sin, cos or tan?

Of the six triangles below, only two provide enough information to directly use the sin ratio. Which two triangles are they?

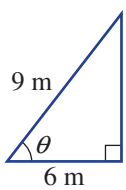
a



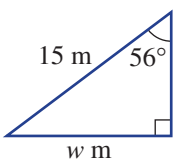
b



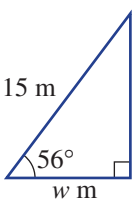
c



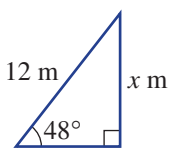
d



e



f

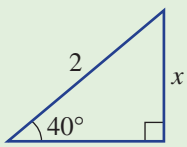


Key ideas

- To find a missing side when given a right-angled triangle with one acute angle and one of the sides:
  - Label the triangle using O (opposite), A (adjacent) and H (hypotenuse).
  - Use SOH CAH TOA to decide on the correct trigonometric ratio.
  - Write down the equation, using your chosen ratio.
  - Solve the equation, using your calculator, to find the unknown.

Write $\rightarrow \frac{x}{2} = \sin 40°$

Solve $\rightarrow x = 2 \times \sin 40°$



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 9E

UNDERSTANDING 1–3(½) 2–3(½)

1 Use a calculator to find the value of each of the following, correct to four decimal places.

a $\sin 10°$	**b** $\cos 10°$	**c** $\tan 10°$
d $\tan 30°$	**e** $\cos 40°$	**f** $\sin 70°$
g $\cos 80°$	**h** $\tan 40°$	**i** $\sin 80°$
j $\sin 60°$	**k** $\cos 50°$	**l** $\tan 60°$

Locate the sin, cos and tan buttons on your calculator.

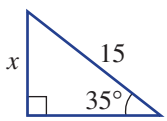
2 Evaluate each of the following, correct to two decimal places.

a $12 \tan 10°$	**b** $12 \sin 25°$	**c** $18 \tan 60°$
d $56 \sin 56°$	**e** $8 \tan 45°$	**f** $20 \sin 70°$
g $6 \cos 70°$	**h** $5 \cos 15°$	**i** $27.4 \sin 18°$

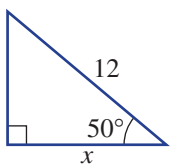
On your calculator, enter $12 \tan 10°$ as $12 \times \tan 10$.

3 Decide which of the three trigonometric ratios (sin, cos or tan) is suitable for these triangles.

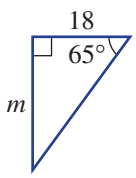
a



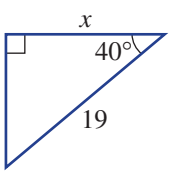
b



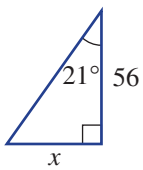
c



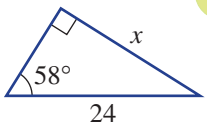
d



e



f



Remember to label the triangle and think SOH CAH TOA. Consider which two sides are involved.

FLUENCY 4–8(½) 4–9(½)

Example 10 Solving a trigonometric equation

Find the value of x, correct to two decimal places, for $\cos 30° = \frac{x}{12}$.

Solution	Explanation
$\cos 30° = \frac{x}{12}$	Multiply both sides by 12 to get x on its own.
$x = 12 \times \cos 30°$	$12 \times \cos 30° = \frac{x}{\cancel{12}_1} \times \cancel{12}_1$
$= 10.39230\ldots$	Use your calculator.
$= 10.39$ (to 2 d.p.)	Round as indicated.

4 Find x in these equations, correct to two decimal places.

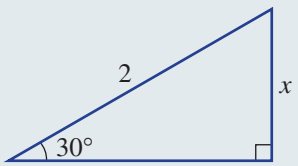
a $\sin 20° = \frac{x}{4}$	**b** $\cos 43° = \frac{x}{7}$	**c** $\tan 85° = \frac{x}{8}$
d $\tan 30° = \frac{x}{24}$	**e** $\sin 50° = \frac{x}{12}$	**f** $\cos 40° = \frac{x}{12}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

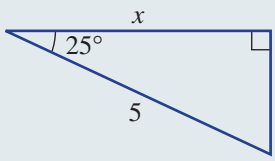
Example 11 Finding a missing side, using SOH CAH TOA

Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these triangles. Round to two decimal places where necessary.

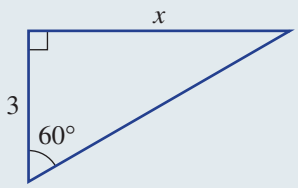
a



b



c



Solution	Explanation
a $\sin\theta = \frac{O}{H}$	Label the triangle and decide on your trigonometric ratio SOH CAH TOA.
$\sin 30° = \frac{x}{2}$	Write the ratio.
$2 \times \sin 30° = x$	Substitute values and solve the equation, using your calculator.
$\therefore x = 1$	
b $\cos\theta = \frac{A}{H}$	Label the triangle. SOH CAH TOA
$\cos 25° = \frac{x}{5}$	Write the ratio.
$5 \times \cos 25° = x$	Substitute values and solve the equation, using your calculator.
$x = 4.5315\ldots$	
$\therefore x = 4.53$ (to 2 d.p.)	Round to two decimal places.
c $\tan\theta = \frac{O}{A}$	Label the triangle. SOH CAH TOA
$\tan 60° = \frac{x}{3}$	Write the ratio.
$3 \times \tan 60° = x$	Substitute values and solve the equation, using your calculator.
$x = 5.1961\ldots$	
$\therefore x = 5.20$ (to 2 d.p.)	Round to two decimal places.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

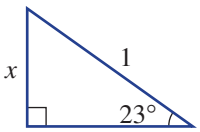
9E

5 For the triangles given below:

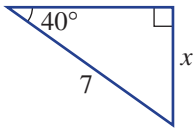
- **i** Copy each one and label the three sides opposite (O), adjacent (A) and hypotenuse (H).
- **ii** Decide on a trigonometric ratio.
- **iii** Find the value of each pronumeral, correct to two decimal places.

Use SOH CAH TOA to help you decide which ratio to use. If O and H are involved, use sin etc.

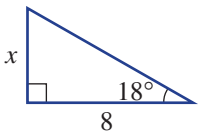
a



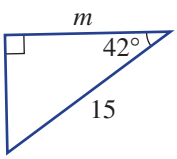
b



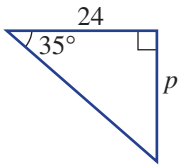
c



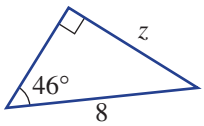
d



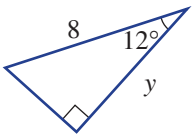
e



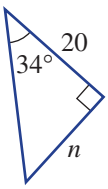
f



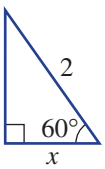
g



h

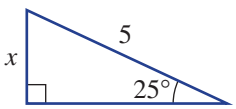


i

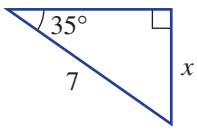


6 Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these triangles. Round to two decimal places.

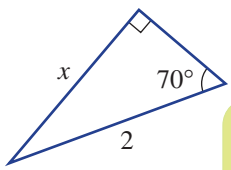
a



b



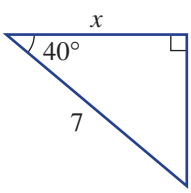
c



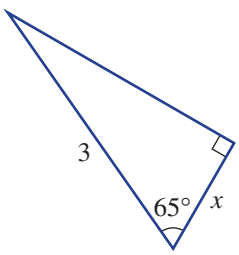
What ratio did you use for each of these?

7 Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these triangles. Round to two decimal places.

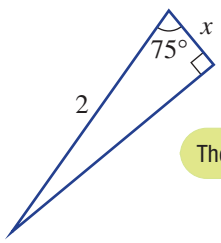
a



b



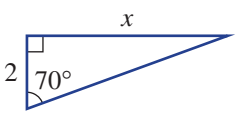
c



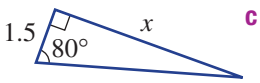
These three all use cos.

8 Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these triangles. Round to two decimal places.

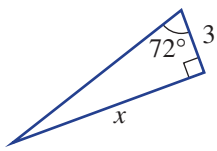
a



b



c

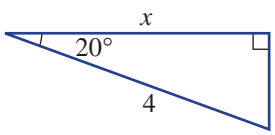


These all use tan.

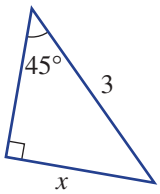
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9 Decide whether to use sin, cos or tan, then find x in these triangles. Round to two decimal places.

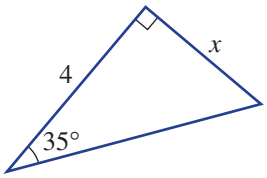
a



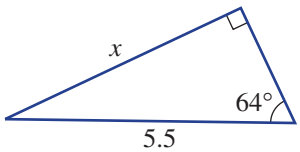
b



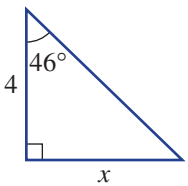
c



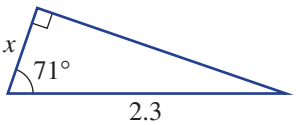
d



e



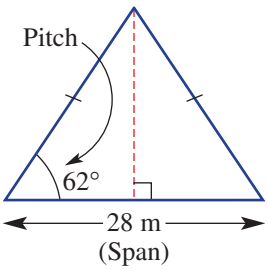
f

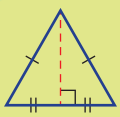


PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 10, 11 | 10, 12

10 **a** Find the height of this isosceles triangle, which is similar to a roof truss, to two decimal places.

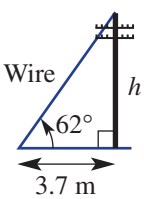
b If the span doubles to 56 m, what is the height of the roof, to two decimal places?





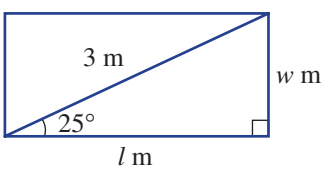
In an isosceles triangle, the perpendicular cuts the base in half.

11 The stay wire of a power pole joins the top to the ground. It makes an angle of 62° with the ground. It is fixed to the ground 3.7 m from the bottom of the pole. How high is the pole, correct to two decimal places?

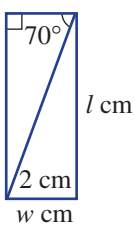


12 Find the length and width of these rectangles, to two decimal places.

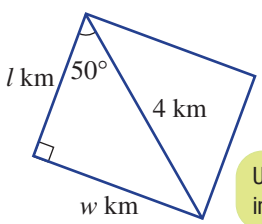
a



b



c



Use the hypotenuse in each calculation.

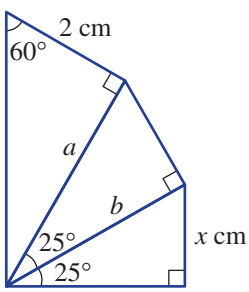
Accuracy and errors — 13

13 Our aim is to find the value of x, correct to two decimal places, by first finding the value of a and b.

a Find the value of a, then b and then x, using one decimal place for a and b.

b Repeat this process, finding a and b, correct to three decimal places each, before finding x.

c Does it make any difference to your final answer for x if you round off the values of a and b during calculations?



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9F Solving for the denominator

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

So far, we have been dealing with equations that have the pronumeral in the numerator. However, sometimes the unknown is in the denominator and these problems can be solved with an extra step in your mathematical working.

Sometimes builders need to find the value of the denominator when using trigonometry.

Let's start: Solving equations with x in the denominator

Consider the equations $\frac{x}{3} = 4$ and $\frac{3}{x} = 4$.

- Do the equations have the same solution?
- What steps are used to solve the equations?
- Now solve $\frac{4}{x} = \sin 30°$ and $\frac{2}{x} = \cos 40°$.

Key ideas

- When the unknown value is in the **denominator**, you need to do two algebraic steps to find the unknown. For example,

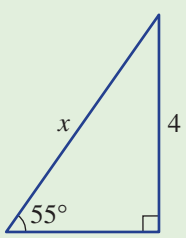
$$\sin\theta = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{hypotenuse}}$$

$$\sin 55° = \frac{4}{x}$$

$$x \times \sin 55° = 4$$

$$x = \frac{4}{\sin 55°}$$

$$= 4.88 \text{ (to two decimal places)}$$



Denominator The part of a fraction that sits below the dividing line

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 9F

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Find the value, correct to two decimal places, of:

a $\frac{10}{\tan 30°}$ **b** $\frac{12}{\sin 60°}$ **c** $\frac{15}{\tan 8°}$

d $\frac{12.4}{\tan 32°}$ **e** $\frac{15.2}{\sin 38°}$ **f** $\frac{9}{\cos 47°}$

For part **a**, enter $10 \div \tan 30$ into your calculator.

2 Solve these equations for x.

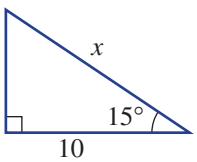
a $\frac{4}{x} = 2$ **b** $\frac{10}{x} = 2$ **c** $\frac{15}{x} = 30$

d $\frac{1.2}{x} = 1.2$ **e** $\frac{0.6}{x} = 6$ **f** $\frac{9}{x} = 90$

To solve these, you will need 2 steps.

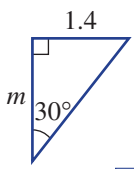
3 For each of these triangles, complete the required trigonometric ratio.

a



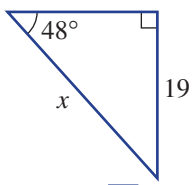
$\cos 15° = \frac{\square}{\square}$

b



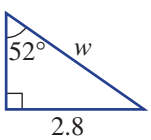
$\tan 30° = \frac{\square}{\square}$

c



$\sin 48° = \frac{\square}{\square}$

d



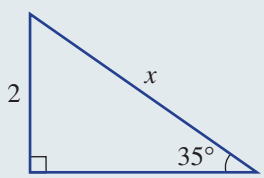
$\sin 52° = \frac{\square}{\square}$

FLUENCY 4–6 4–6, 7(½)

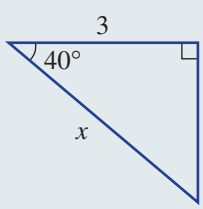
Example 12 Finding the value of the denominator

Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these right-angled triangles. Round your answer to two decimal places.

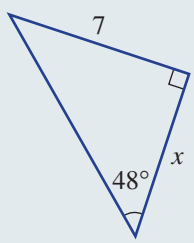
a



b



c



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

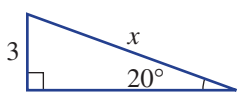
9F

Solution	Explanation
a $\sin 35° = \frac{2}{x}$	Use $\sin\theta = \frac{O}{H}$, as we can use the opposite (2) and hypotenuse (x).
$x \times \sin 35° = 2$	Multiply both sides by x.
$x = \frac{2}{\sin 35°}$	Divide both sides by $\sin 35°$ to get x on its own.
$\therefore x = 3.49$ (to 2 d.p.)	Recall that $\sin 35°$ is just a number. Evaluate and round your answer.
b $\cos 40° = \frac{3}{x}$	Use $\cos\theta = \frac{A}{H}$, as we can use the adjacent (3) and hypotenuse (x).
$x \times \cos 40° = 3$	Multiply both sides by x.
$x = \frac{3}{\cos 40°}$	Divide both sides by $\cos\ 40°$ to get x on its own.
$\therefore x = 3.92$ (to 2 d.p.)	Evaluate and round your answer.
c $\tan 48° = \frac{7}{x}$	Use $\tan\theta = \frac{O}{A}$, as we can use the adjacent (x) and opposite (7).
$x \times \tan 48° = 7$	Multiply both sides by x.
$x = \frac{7}{\tan 48°}$	Divide both sides by $\tan 48°$ to get x on its own.
$\therefore x = 6.30$ (to 2 d.p.)	Evaluate and round your answer.

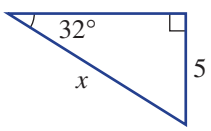
4 Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these right-angled triangles. Round to two decimal places.

In $\sin 20 = \frac{3}{x}$, multiply both sides by x first.

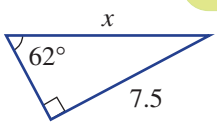
a



b

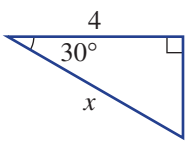


c

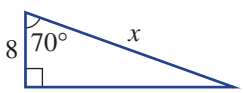


5 Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these right-angled triangles. Round to two decimal places.

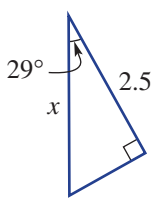
a



b



c

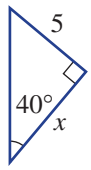


$\cos\theta = \frac{A}{H}$

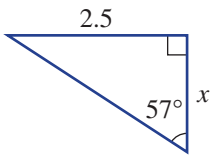
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6 Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these right-angled triangles. Round your answer to two decimal places.

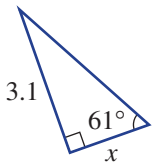
a



b



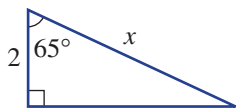
c



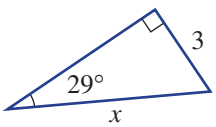
tan $\theta = \frac{O}{A}$

7 By first deciding whether to use $\sin\theta$, $\cos\theta$ or $\tan\theta$, find the value of x in these triangles. Round to two decimal places.

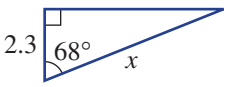
a



b

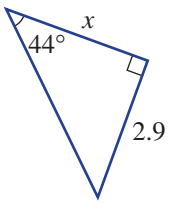


c

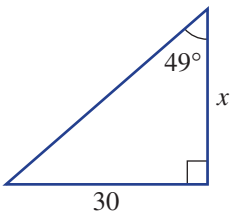


SOH CAH TOA

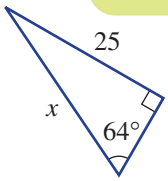
d



e

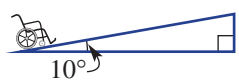


f

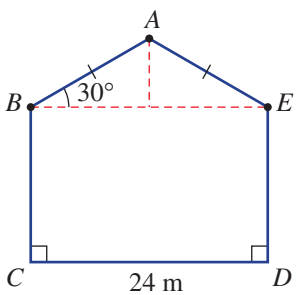


PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–10 9–12

8 The recommended angle of a wheelchair ramp to the horizontal is approximately 10°. How long is the ramp if the horizontal distance is 2.5 metres? Round your answer to two decimal places.

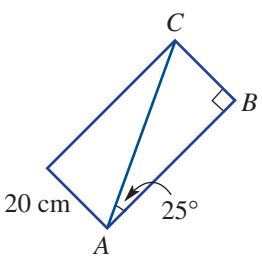


9 The roof of this barn has a pitch of 30°, as shown. Find the length of roof section AB, to one decimal place.

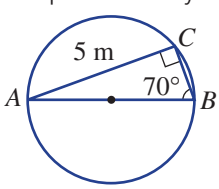


10 Find the length AB and BC in these shapes. Round your answers to two decimal places.

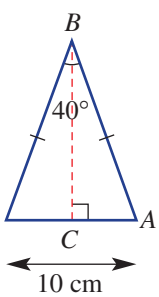
a



b



c



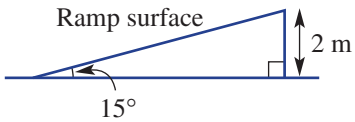
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9F

11 The ramp shown has an incline angle of 15° and a height of 2 m. Find, correct to three decimal places:

a the base length of the ramp

b the length of the ramp surface

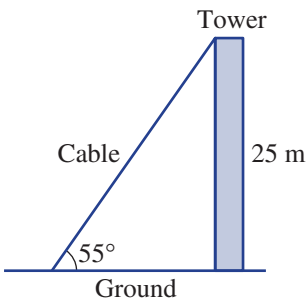


The 'incline' is the angle to the horizontal.

12 For this communications tower, find, correct to one decimal place:

a the length of the cable

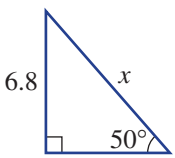
b the distance from the base of the tower to the point where the cable is attached to the ground



Inverting the fraction

13

Shown below is another way of solving trigonometric equations with x in the denominator.



Find x, to two decimal places.

$\sin 50° = \frac{6.8}{x}$ First, write the correct ratio.

$\frac{1}{\sin 50°} = \frac{x}{6.8}$ Invert both fractions so x is in the numerator.

$x = \frac{1}{\sin 50°} \times 6.8$ $\frac{1}{\sin 50°} \times 6.8 = \frac{x}{6.8} \times 6.8$

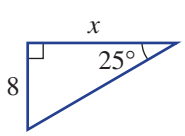
$x = \frac{6.8}{\sin 50°}$ Multiply both sides by 6.8 to get x on its own.

$x = 8.876769\ldots$ Use your calculator.

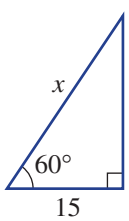
$x = 8.88$ (to 2 d.p.) Round your answer as required.

13 Use the method shown above to find the value of x, to two decimal places where necessary, in each of the following.

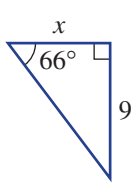
a



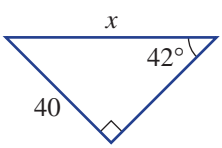
b



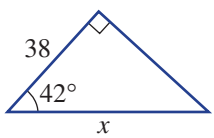
c



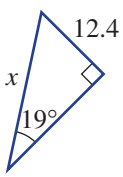
d



e



f

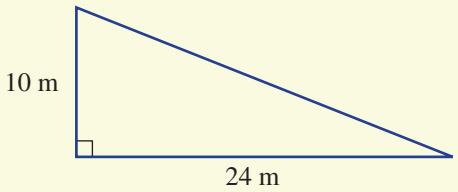


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

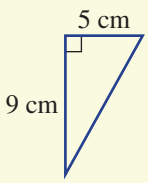
Progress quiz

9A **1** Find the length of the hypotenuse in the following right-angled triangles. Round to one decimal place in part **b**.

a

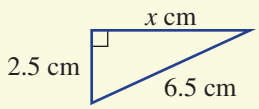


b

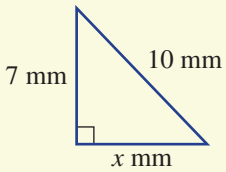


9B **2** Find the value of the pronumeral in the following triangles. Round to one decimal place in part **b**.

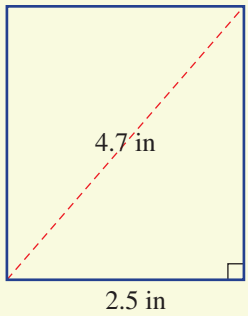
a



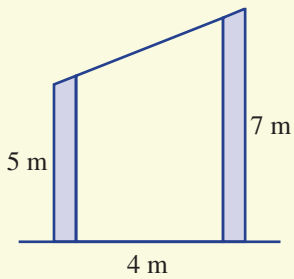
b



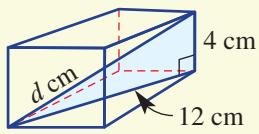
9B **3** A phone has a screen size of 4.7 inches (i.e. this is the distance from corner to corner). If the screen has a width of 2.5 inches, what is the screen height, correct to one decimal place?



9C **4** A straight wire connects the tops of two telegraph poles. The poles are 7 m and 5 m high and are located 4 m apart. What is the length of the wire, correct to two decimal places?



9C **5** Find the distance (d cm) from one corner to the opposite corner of this rectangular prism, correct to one decimal place.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

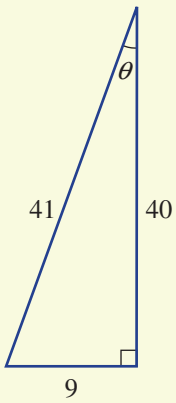
9D

6 For the triangle shown, write down the ratio for:

a $\cos\theta$

b $\sin\theta$

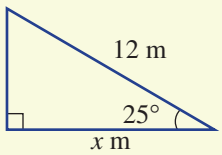
c $\tan\theta$



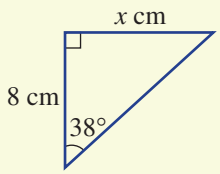
9E

7 Find the value of x in these triangles. Round your answers to one decimal place.

a



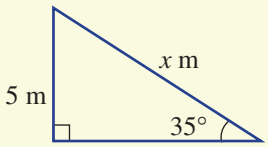
b



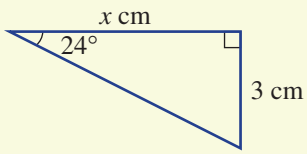
9F

8 Find the value of x in these triangles. Round your answers to one decimal place.

a



b

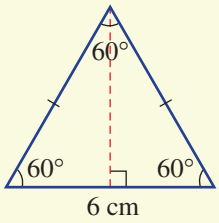


9B/F

9 Use each of the following to find the area of the equilateral triangle shown. Give your answer to one decimal place.
(Hint: First you will need to find the height of the triangle.)

a Pythagoras' theorem

b trigonometry



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9G Finding angles

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

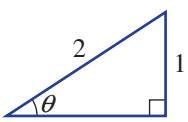
Walkthrough

Given two side lengths of a right-angled triangle, you can find either of the acute angles. There are many different situations where you might be given two side lengths of a right-angled triangle and be asked to find the associated angles.

The angle at which an aeroplane is flying is carefully monitored inside the cockpit.

Let's start: Knowing the angle

Imagine a triangle that produces $\sin\theta = 0.5$.



- Use your calculator and trial and error to find a value of θ for which $\sin\theta = 0.5$.
- Repeat for $\tan\theta = 1$ and $\cos\theta = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$.
- Do you know of a quicker method, rather than using trial and error?

Key ideas

- To find an angle, you use inverse trigonometric ratios on your calculator.

  If $\sin\theta = x$, then $\theta = \sin^{-1}(x)$; $\sin^{-1}$ is inverse sin.
  If $\cos\theta = y$, then $\theta = \cos^{-1}(y)$; $\cos^{-1}$ is inverse cos.
  If $\tan\theta = z$, then $\theta = \tan^{-1}(z)$; $\tan^{-1}$ is inverse tan.

- Look for the three calculator buttons/functions:

  $\boxed{\sin^{-1}}$ $\boxed{\cos^{-1}}$ $\boxed{\tan^{-1}}$

Exercise 9G

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Use your calculator to find $\sin 30°$ and $\sin^{-1}(0.5)$. What do you notice?

2 Use your calculator to evaluate, correct to the nearest whole degree:

a $\sin^{-1}(0.71)$ **b** $\cos^{-1}(0.866)$ **c** $\tan^{-1}(1.6)$

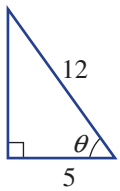
Many calculators use $\boxed{\text{shift}}$ to access $\sin^{-1}$ or $\cos^{-1}$ or $\tan^{-1}$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

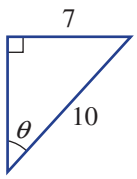
9G

3 Write down the trigonometric ratio for these triangles e.g. $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{3}$.

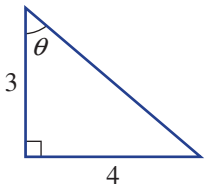
a



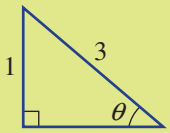
b



c



Look for: SOH CAH TOA



$\sin\theta = \frac{1}{3}$

FLUENCY 4–5(½) 4–6(½)

Example 13 Finding an angle

Find the angle θ, correct to the nearest degree where necessary, in each of the following.

a $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{3}$ **b** $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{2}$ **c** $\tan\theta = 1.7$

Solution	Explanation
a $\sin\theta = \frac{2}{3}$ $\theta = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{2}{3}\right)$ $\theta = 42°$ (to nearest degree)	Look for the $\sin^{-1}$ button on your calculator. Round as required.
b $\cos\theta = \frac{1}{2}$ $\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$ $\theta = 60°$ (to nearest degree)	Look for the $\cos^{-1}$ button on your calculator.
c $\tan\theta = 1.7$ $\theta = \tan^{-1}(1.7)$ $\theta = 60°$ (to nearest degree)	Look for the $\tan^{-1}$ button on your calculator. Round to the nearest degree.

4 Find the angle θ, to the nearest degree, for the following.

a $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\cos\theta = \frac{3}{5}$ **c** $\sin\theta = \frac{7}{8}$

d $\tan\theta = 1$ **e** $\tan\theta = \frac{7}{8}$ **f** $\sin\theta = \frac{8}{10}$

g $\cos\theta = \frac{2}{3}$ **h** $\sin\theta = \frac{1}{10}$ **i** $\cos\theta = \frac{4}{5}$

j $\tan\theta = 6$ **k** $\cos\theta = \frac{3}{10}$ **l** $\tan\theta = \sqrt{3}$

m $\sin\theta = \frac{4}{6}$ **n** $\cos\theta = \frac{4}{6}$ **o** $\tan\theta = \frac{4}{6}$

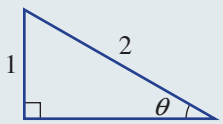
Remember: use $\sin^{-1}$, $\cos^{-1}$ or $\tan^{-1}$ on the calculator.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

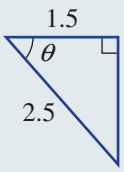
Example 14 Using SOH CAH TOA to find angles

Find θ in the following right-angled triangles, correct to two decimal places where necessary.

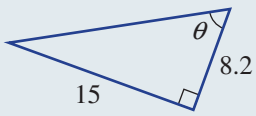
a



b



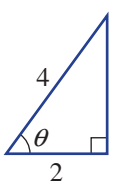
c



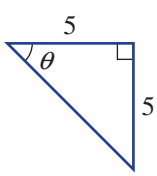
Solution	Explanation
a $\sin\theta = \frac{O}{H}$	Use $\sin\theta$ since we know the opposite and the hypotenuse.
$\sin\theta = \frac{1}{2}$	Substitute O = 1 and H = 2.
$\theta = \sin^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$	Use your calculator to find $\sin^{-1}\left(\frac{1}{2}\right)$.
$= 30°$	
b $\cos\theta = \frac{A}{H}$	Use $\cos\theta$ since we know the adjacent and the hypotenuse.
$\cos\theta = \frac{1.5}{2.5}$	Substitute A = 1.5 and H = 2.5.
$\theta = \cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1.5}{2.5}\right)$	Use your calculator to find $\cos^{-1}\left(\frac{1.5}{2.5}\right)$.
$= 53.13°$ (to 2 d.p.)	Round to two decimal places.
c $\tan\theta = \frac{O}{A}$	Use $\tan\theta$ since we know the opposite and the adjacent.
$\tan\theta = \frac{15}{8.2}$	Substitute O = 15 and A = 8.2.
$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{15}{8.2}\right)$	Use your calculator to find $\tan^{-1}\left(\frac{15}{8.2}\right)$.
$= 61.34°$ (to 2 d.p.)	Round to two decimal places.

5 Use one of sin, cos or tan to find θ in these triangles, rounding to two decimal places where necessary.

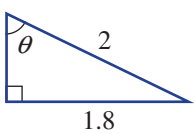
a



b

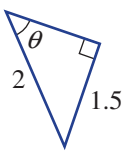


c

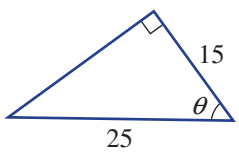


SOH CAH TOA

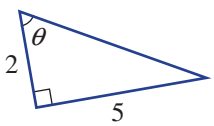
d



e



f

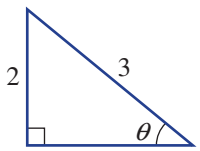


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

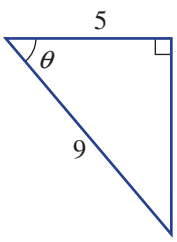
9G

6 Find the angle θ, correct to the nearest degree, in these triangles. You will need to decide whether to use $\sin\theta$, $\cos\theta$ or $\tan\theta$.

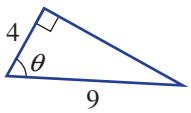
a



b

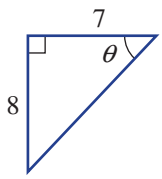


c

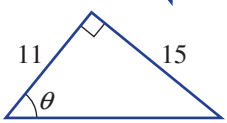


The nearest degree means the nearest whole number.

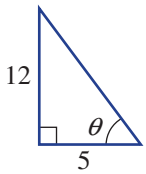
d



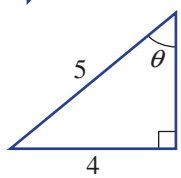
e



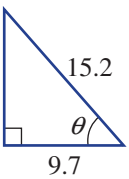
f



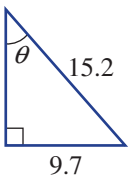
g



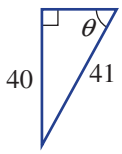
h



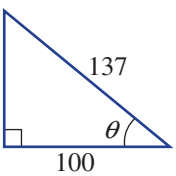
i



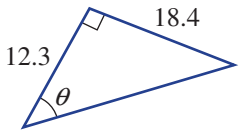
j



k

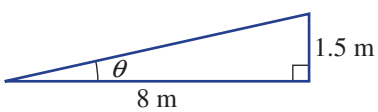


l

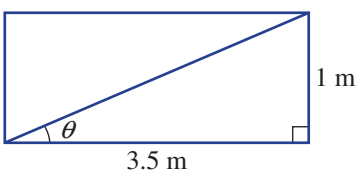


PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 8 8–10

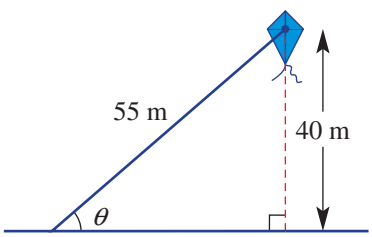
7 A ramp is 8 m long horizontally and 1.5 m high. Find the angle the ramp makes with the ground, correct to two decimal places.



8 A rectangular piece of wood 1 m wide and 3.5 m long is to be cut across the diagonal. Find the angle the cut makes with the long side (correct to two decimal places).



9 At what angle to the ground is a kite (shown) with height 40 m and string length 55 m? Round to two decimal places.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10 Find the two acute angles in a right-angled triangle with the given side lengths, correct to one decimal place.

a hypotenuse 5 cm, other side 3 cm

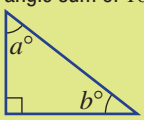
b hypotenuse 7 m, other side 4 m

c hypotenuse 0.5 mm, other side 0.3 mm

d the two shorter side lengths are 3 cm and 6 cm

e the two shorter side lengths are 10 m and 4 m

- Draw a picture.
- Use SOH CAH TOA.
- Find one acute angle using trigonometry.
- Remember: all triangles have an angle sum of 180°.



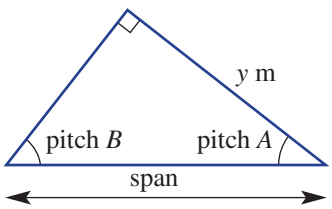
$a + b + 90 = 180$

Building and construction

—

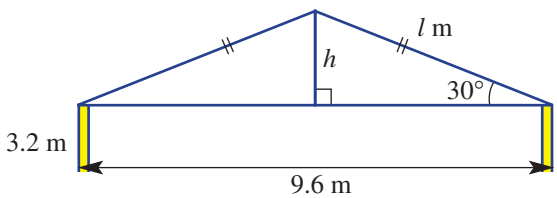
11–13

11 A roof is pitched so that the angle at its peak is 90°. If each roof truss spans 10.5 m and distance y is 7.2 m, find the pitch angles A and B, to the nearest whole number.

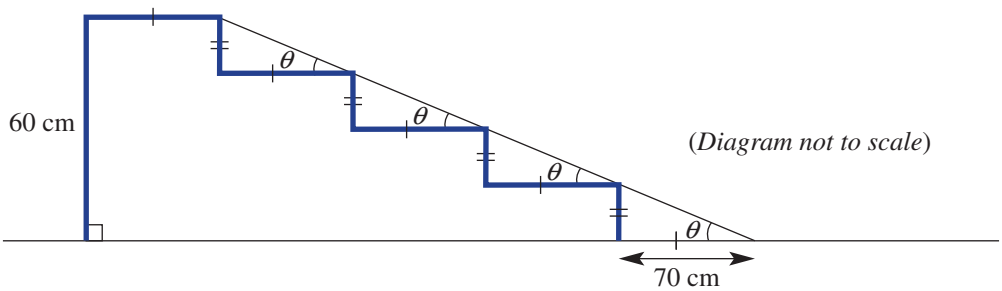


12 **a** Find the length of the slats (l metres) needed along each hypotenuse for this roof cross-section, correct to two decimal places.

b Find the height of the highest point of the roof above ground level, correct to two decimal places.



13 A ramp is to be constructed to allow disabled access over a set of existing stairs, as shown.



a What angle does the ramp make with the ground, to the nearest degree?

b Government regulations state that the ramp cannot be more than 13° to the horizontal. Does this ramp meet these requirements?

c How long is the ramp? Round your answer to one decimal place.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9H Angles of elevation and depression

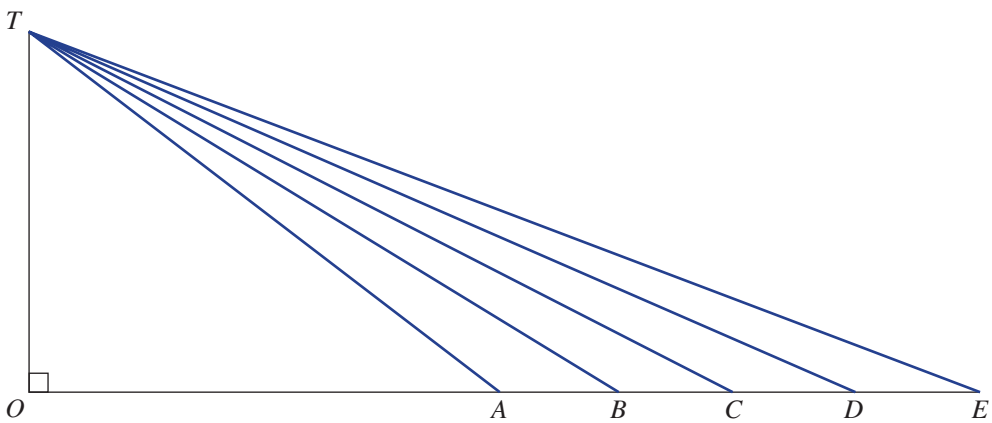
Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

Many applications of trigonometry involve angles of elevation and angles of depression. These angles are measured up or down from a horizontal level. Whenever you view something above or below the horizontal, you form an angle of elevation or depression.

Let's start: How close should you sit?

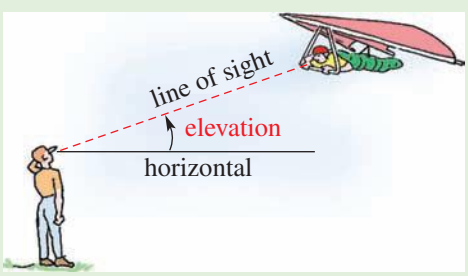
The diagram below shows an outdoor movie screen (OT). The point T is the top of the screen. The points $A-E$ are the five rows of seats in the theatre, from which a person's line of sight is taken. The line OE is the horizontal line of sight.

- Use your protractor to measure the angle of elevation from each point along the horizontal to the top of the movie screen.
- Where should you sit if you wish to have an angle of elevation between 25° and 20° and not be in the first or last row of the theatre?



Key ideas

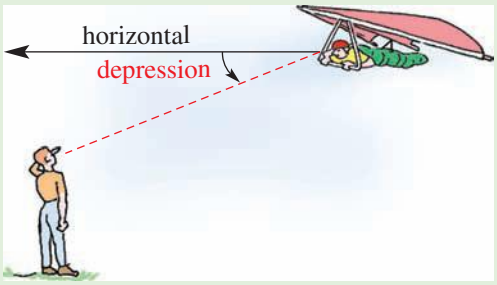
- Looking up at an object forms an **angle of elevation**.



Angle of elevation
The angle of your line of sight from the horizontal when looking up at an object

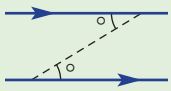
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- Looking down at an object forms an **angle of depression**.



Angle of depression
The angle of your line of sight from the horizontal when looking down at an object

- The angle of elevation will equal the angle of depression in the same context.

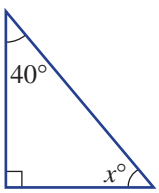


Exercise 9H

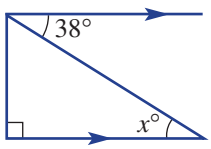
UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Find the value of x in each triangle.

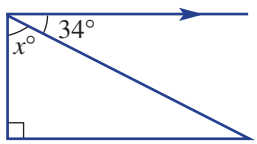
a



b



c

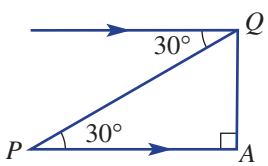


2 For this diagram:

a What is the angle of elevation of Q from P?

b What is the angle of depression of P from Q?

c What is the size of $\angle PQA$?



3 For each description, draw a triangle diagram that matches the information given.

a The angle of elevation to the top of a tower from a point 50 m from its base is 55°.

b The angle of depression from the top of a 200 m cliff to a boat out at sea is 22°.

c The angle of elevation of the top of a castle wall from a point on the ground 30 m from the castle wall is 33°.

Always measure angles of elevation and depression from the horizontal.

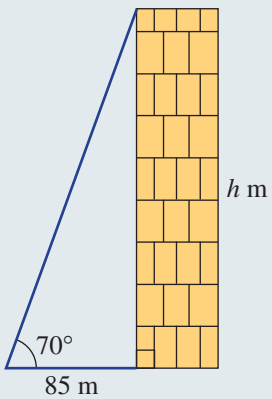
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9H

FLUENCY 4–6(½) 4–6(½)

Example 15 Using an angle of elevation

To find the height of a tall building, Johal stands 85 m away from its base and measures the angle of elevation at the top of the building as 70°. Find the height of the building, correct to the nearest metre.



Solution

$\tan\theta = \frac{\text{O}}{\text{A}}$

$\tan 70° = \frac{h}{85}$

$h = 85 \times \tan 70°$

$= 233.53558\ldots$

$= 234$ m (to the nearest metre)

$\therefore$ The building is 234 m tall.

Explanation

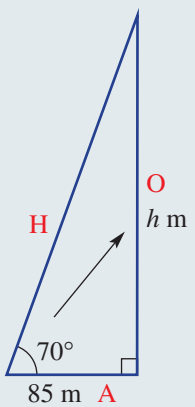
Label the triangle with O, A and H.

Use tan since the opposite and adjacent are given.

Find h by solving the equation.

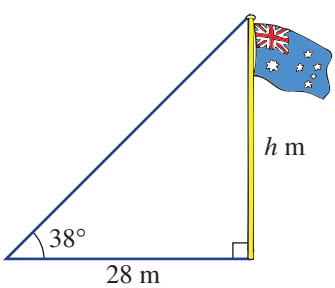
$85 \times \tan 70° = \frac{h}{85} \times 85$

Round to the nearest metre.



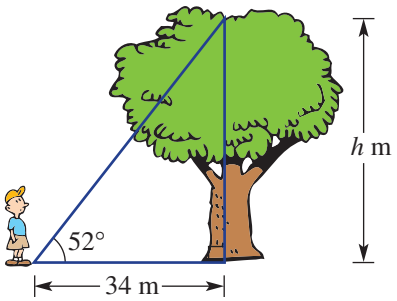
4 Answer the following questions about angles of elevation.

a The angle of elevation to the top of a flagpole from a point 28 m from its base is 38°. How tall is the flagpole, correct to two decimal places?

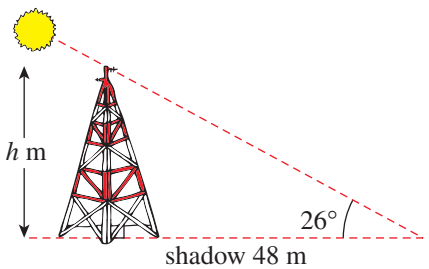


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

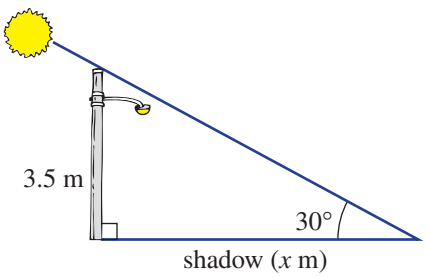
b Alvin is 34 m away from a tree and the angle of elevation to the top of the tree from the ground is 52°. What is the height of the tree, correct to one decimal place?



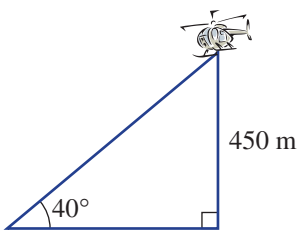
c The Sun's rays shining over a tower make an angle of elevation of 26° and casts a 48 m shadow on the ground. How tall, to two decimal places, is the tower?



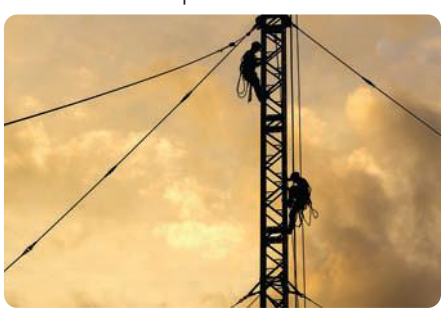
d The Sun makes an angle of elevation of 30° with a lamp post that is 3.5 m tall. How long is the shadow on the ground, correct to two decimal places?

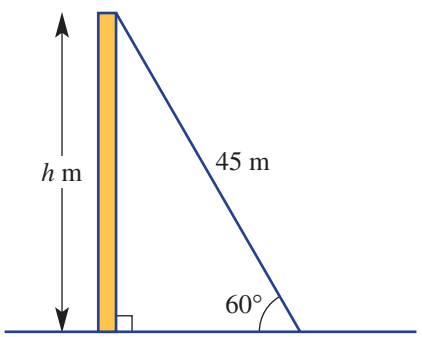


e The altitude of a hovering helicopter is 450 m, and the angle of elevation from the helipad to the helicopter is 40°. Find the horizontal distance from the helicopter to the helipad, correct to two decimal places.



f A cable of length 45 m is anchored from the ground to the top of a communications mast. The angle of elevation of the cable to the top of the mast is 60°. Find the height of the communications mast, correct to two decimal places.



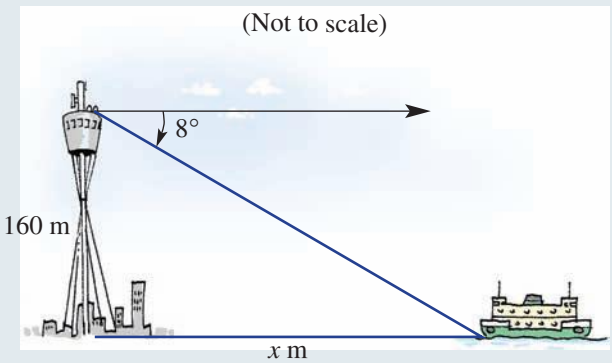


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

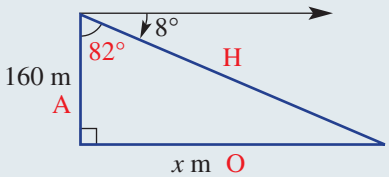
9H

Example 16 Using an angle of depression

From the observation room of Centrepoint Tower in Sydney, which has a height of 160 m, the angle of depression of a boat moored at Circular Quay is observed to be 8°. How far from the base of the tower is the boat, correct to the nearest metre?



Solution



$\tan\theta = \frac{O}{A}$

$\tan 82° = \frac{x}{160}$

$x = 160 \times \tan 82°$

$= 1138.459\ldots$

$= 1138$ (to the nearest metre)

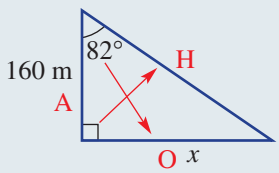
$\therefore$ The boat is about 1138 m from the base of the tower.

Explanation

Draw the triangle and find the angle inside the triangle:
$90° - 8° = 82°$

Use this angle to label the triangle.

Use tan since we have the opposite and adjacent.

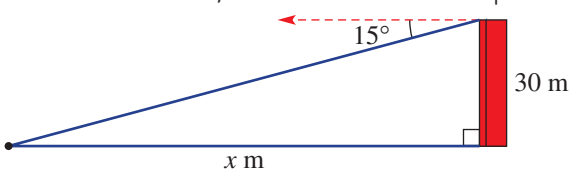


Find x by solving the equation.

Round to the nearest metre.

5 Answer these problems relating to angles of depression.

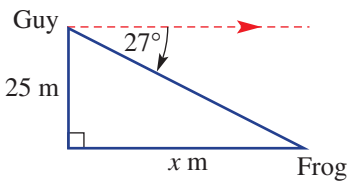
a The angle of depression from the top of a tower 30 m tall to a point x m from its base is 15°. Find the value of x, correct to one decimal place.



Use 15° to label an angle inside the triangle.

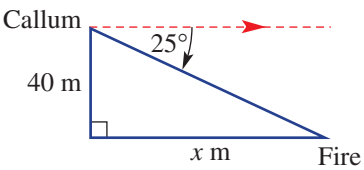
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

b From a bridge 25 m above a stream, Guy spots two frogs on a lilypad. He estimates the angle of depression to the frogs to be 27°. How far from the bridge are the frogs, to the nearest metre?

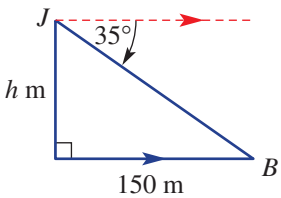


The angle of depression is the angle below the horizontal, looking down at an object.

c From a lookout tower, Callum spots a bushfire at an angle of depression of 25°. If the lookout tower is 40 m tall, how far away (to the nearest metre) is the bushfire from the base of the tower?

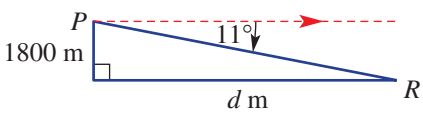


d From the top of a vertical cliff, Jung spots a boat 150 m out to sea. The angle of depression from Jung to the boat is 35°. How many metres (to the nearest whole number) above sea level is Jung?



e A plane is flying 1800 m above the ground. At the time the pilots spot the runway, the angle of depression to the edge of the runway is 11°. How far does the plane have to fly to be above the edge of the runway at its current altitude? Answer to the nearest whole number.

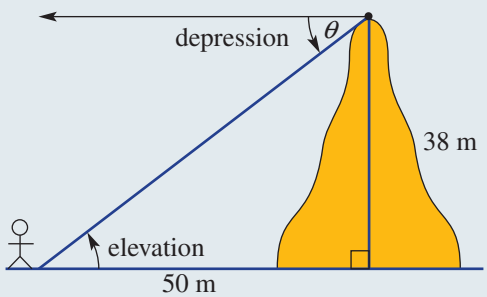
'Altitude' means height.



Example 17 Finding angles of elevation and depression

a Find the angle of depression from the top of the hill to a point on the ground 50 m from the middle of the hill. Answer to the nearest degree.

b What is the angle of elevation from the point on the ground to the top of the 38 m hill? Answer to the nearest degree.



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9H

Solution

a $\tan\theta = \frac{O}{A}$

$\tan\theta = \frac{38}{50}$

$\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{38}{50}\right)$

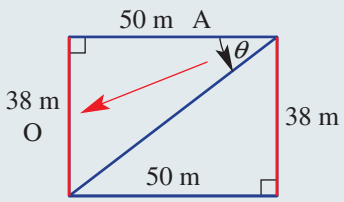
$\theta = 37.2348\ldots$

$\theta = 37°$ (to the nearest degree)

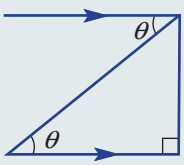
Angle of depression is 37°.

Explanation

Aim to find θ. Redraw the diagram as a rectangle so that θ is inside the triangle. Label the triangle, opposite and adjacent. Use tan.



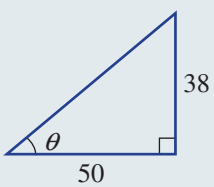
b Angle of elevation is 37°.



Alternate angles are equal when lines are parallel.

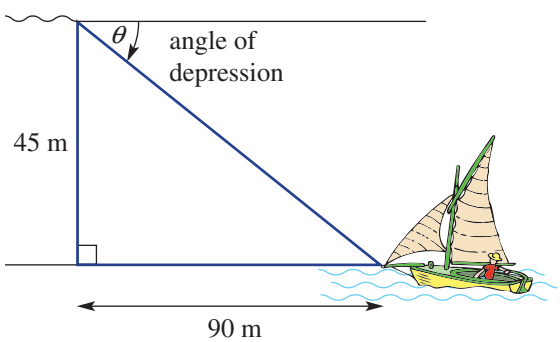
angle of elevation = angle of depression

Alternatively $\Rightarrow$ $\Rightarrow \tan\theta = \frac{38}{50}$



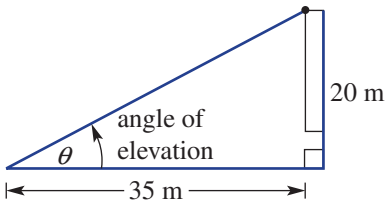
6 Answer these questions about finding angles of elevation and depression. Round all answers to one decimal place.

a From the top of a vertical cliff, Jacquie spots a boat 90 m out to sea. If the top of the cliff is 45 m above sea level, find the angle of depression from the top of the cliff to the boat.

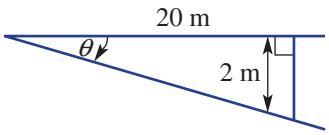


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

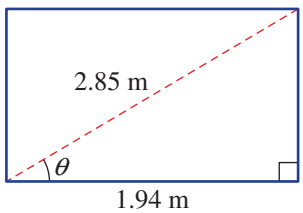
b Find the angle of elevation from a person sitting 35 m from a movie screen to the top of the screen at 20 m above the ground.



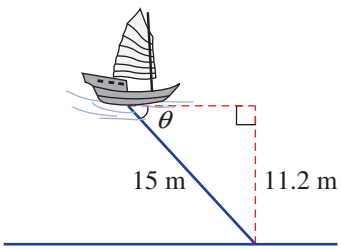
c A person sits 20 m away from a stage that is 2 m below the horizontal viewing level. Find the angle of depression of the person's viewing level to the stage.



d A diagonal cut 2.85 m long is to be made on a piece of plaster board attached to a wall, as shown. The base of the plaster board measures 1.94 m. Find the angle of elevation of the diagonal cut from the base.

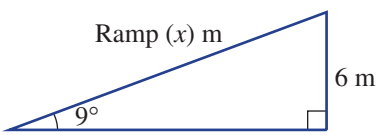


e A 15 m chain with an anchor attached, as shown, is holding a boat in a position against a current. If the water depth is 11.2 m, find the angle of depression from the boat to where the anchor is fixed to the seabed.

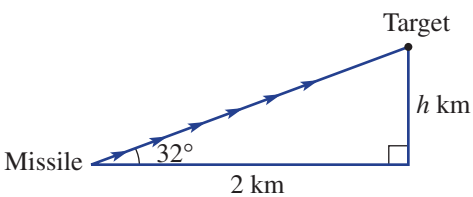


PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7, 9 8–10

7 A ramp for wheelchairs is to be constructed to a footbridge 6 m high. The angle of elevation is to be 9°. What will be the length of the ramp, correct to two decimal places?



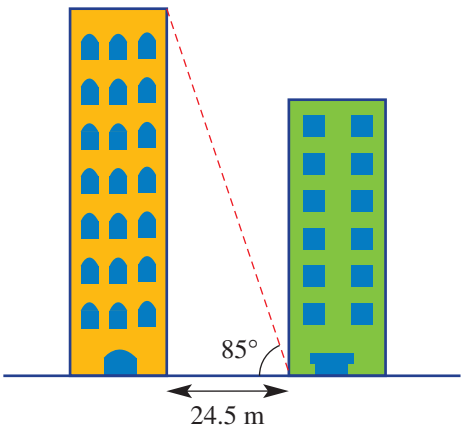
8 A missile is launched at an angle of elevation of 32°. If the target is 2 km away on the horizontal, how far above ground level is the target, correct to two decimal places?



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

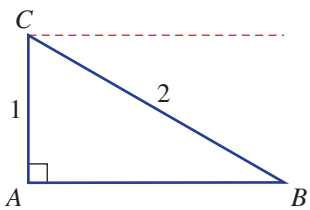
9H

9 The distance between two buildings is 24.5 m, as shown. Find the height of the taller building, correct to two decimal places, if the angle of elevation from the base of the shorter building to the top of the taller building is 85°.



10 For this triangle:

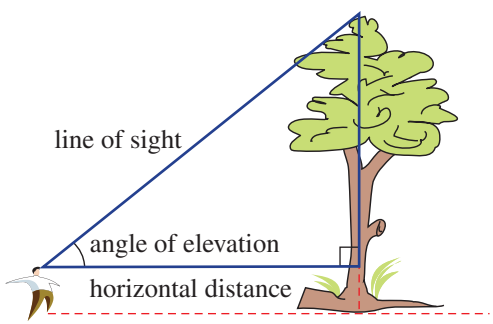
- **a** Find the angle of elevation from B to C.
- **b** State the angle of depression from C to B.
- **c** Describe the relationship that exists between these two angles.
- **d** Find the length AB, correct to one decimal place.



Practical trigonometry: measuring heights

11

11 It is not always possible or practical to measure the height of an object directly. Here you will find the height of an object that is difficult to measure. Select a building or other structure (e.g. a statue or flagpole) to calculate the height of. You must be able to measure right up to the base of the structure.



- **a** Choose a position from which you can see the top of your structure and measure the angle of elevation, θ, from your eye level. (Use an inclinometer, if your teacher has one, or simply estimate the angle using a protractor.)
- **b** Measure the distance along the ground (d) from your location to the base of the structure.
- **c** Calculate the height of the structure. *Remember to make an adjustment for the height of your eye level from the ground.*
- **d** Move to another position and repeat the measurements. Calculate the height using your new measurements.
- **e** Was there much difference between the calculated heights? Suggest reasons for any differences.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9I Direction and bearings

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

Walkthrough

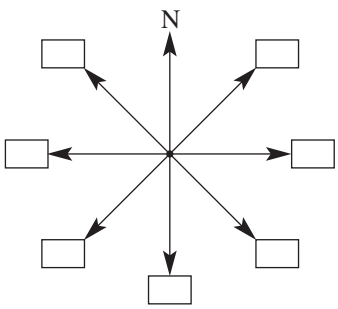
True bearings are used to communicate a direction and are important in navigation. Ships, planes, bushwalkers and the military all use bearings when communicating direction.

Planes and ships need bearings to navigate the skies and seas.

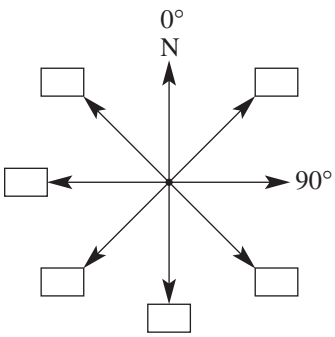
Let's start: Compass bearings

Work together as a class to label the 8-point compass rose using letters/words in **1** and angles in **2**.

1



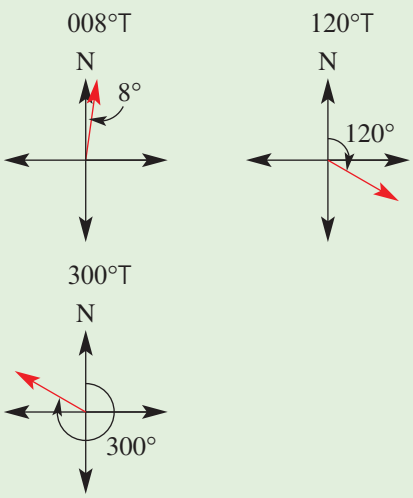
2

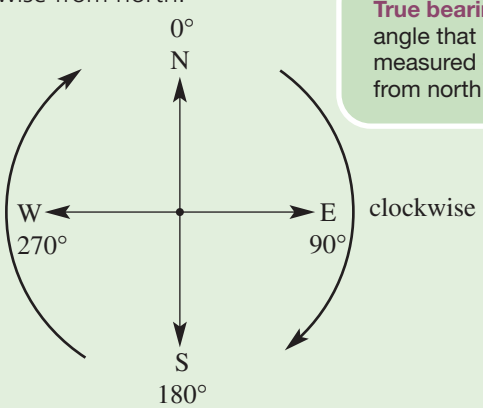


Key ideas

- A **true bearing** (°T) is an angle measured clockwise from north.
  - It is written using three digits.
  For example,

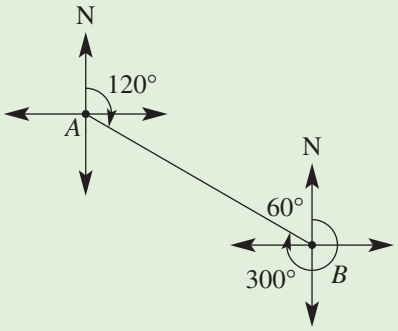
True bearing An angle that is measured clockwise from north





Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- The word *from* indicates the direction from which a bearing is being taken.
  For example,



The bearing of B from A is 120°T.

The bearing of A from B is 300°T.

- When solving problems relating to bearings, always draw a diagram using N, S, E and W each time a bearing is used.

Exercise 9I

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 3, 4

1 What is the opposite direction to:

a north (N)? **b** east (E)?

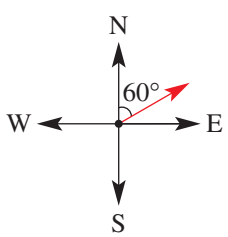
c south (S)? **d** north-east (NE)?

2 Match each diagram below with the correct true bearing from the list below.

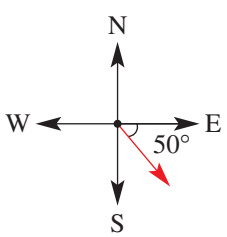
i 300° **ii** 260° **iii** 225°

iv 140° **v** 060° **vi** 350°

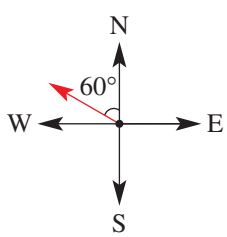
a



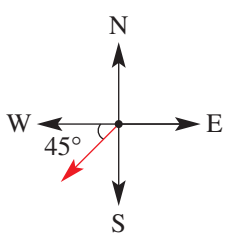
b



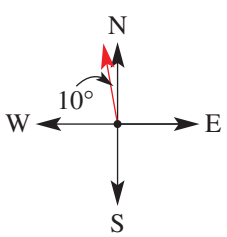
c



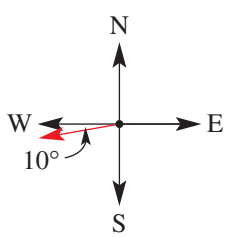
d



e



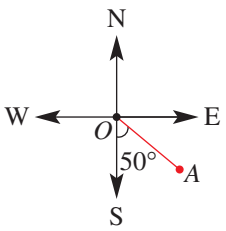
f



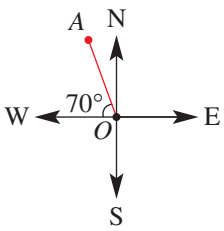
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

3 Write down the true bearings of A from O, as shown in these diagrams.

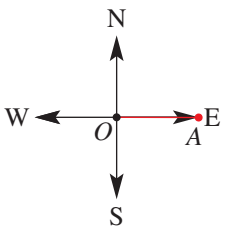
a



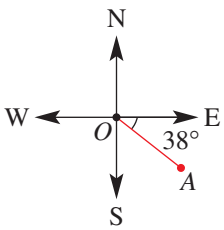
b



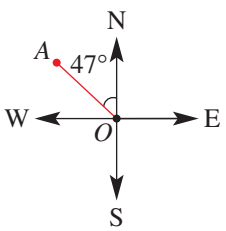
c



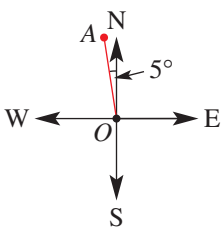
d



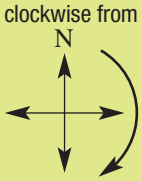
e



f



Remember to use 3 digits and to go clockwise from north.



4 Fill in the missing terms and values for the diagram shown.

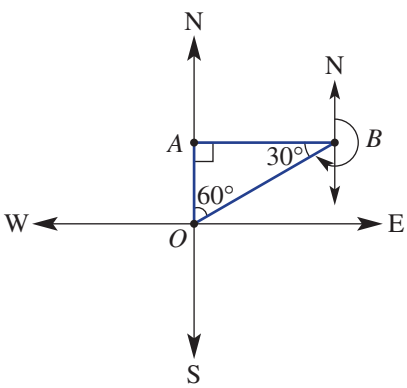
a A is due _____ of O.

b B is due _____ of A.

c A is due _____ of B.

d The bearing of B from O is _____.

e The bearing of O from B is _____.



For part **e**, start from north and move clockwise to the line BO.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

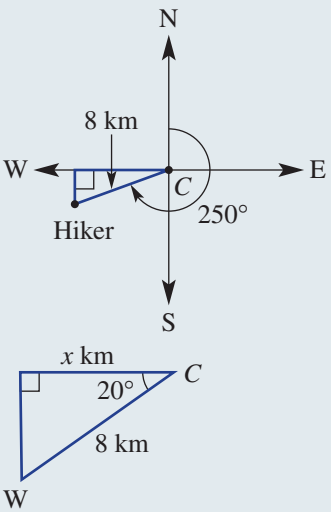
91

FLUENCY 5–7 5, 6, 8

Example 18 Drawing a diagram

A hiker leaves camp (C) and walks on a bearing of 250°T for 8 km. How far west of camp (x km) is the hiker? Show all this information on a right-angled triangle. You do not need to solve for x.

Solution



Explanation

Draw the compass points first.

Start your diagram with the camp at the centre.

Mark in 250° clockwise from north, 8 km.

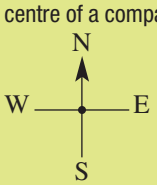
Draw a line from the hiker to the west line at right angles.

Redraw the triangle, showing any angles and lengths known ($270° - 250° = 20°$). Place a pronumeral on the required side.

5 Draw a right-angled triangle for each of the situations outlined below.

- **a** Zahra runs on a true bearing of 300° from her home for 6 km. How far north of home is she when she stops?
- **b** Bailey walks 12.5 km from camp, C, on a bearing of 135°T. How far south is he now from camp?
- **c** Samir walks due south 10 km, then turns and walks due east 12 km. What is his bearing from O, his starting point?

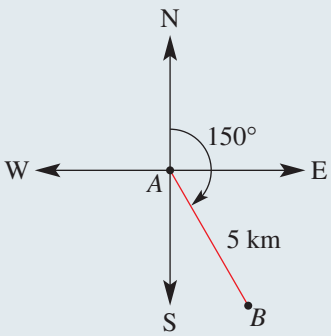
Start by making the starting point at the centre of a compass.

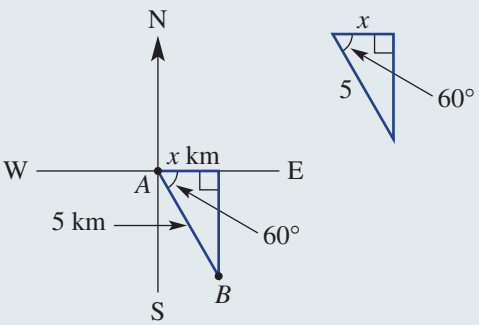


ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

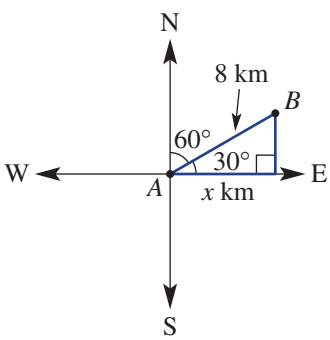
Example 19 Finding distances with bearings

A bushwalker walks 5 km on a true bearing of 150° from point A to point B. Find how far east point B is from point A.



Solution	Explanation
	Copy the diagram and draw a line from B up to the east line. Use the pronumeral x along the east line. Find the angle within the triangle: $150° - 90° = 60°$ Redraw the triangle.
$\cos\ \theta = \frac{A}{H}$	Since the adjacent (A) and hypotenuse (H) are given, use cos.
$\cos\ 60° = \frac{x}{5}$	
$x = 5 \times \cos\ 60°$	
$x = 2.5$	Solve the equation to find x.
$\therefore$ Point B is 2.5 km east of point A.	Answer the question.

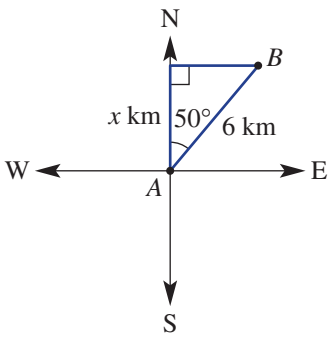
6 Rihanna walks 8 km from point A to point B on a true bearing of 060°. How far east, correct to one decimal place, is point B from point A?



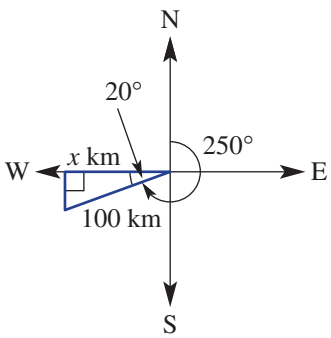
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

91

7 A bushwalker walks 6 km on a true bearing of 050° from point A to point B. Find how far north point B is from point A, correct to two decimal places.



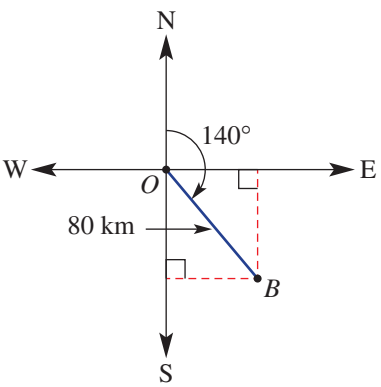
8 A speed boat travels 100 km on a true bearing of 250°. Find how far west of its starting point the speed boat is, correct to two decimal places.



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9, 10 9, 11

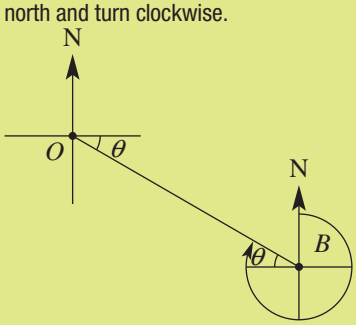
9 A fishing boat starts from point O and sails 80 km on a true bearing of 140° to point B.

- **a** How far east of point O is point B? (Answer to two decimal places.)
- **b** How far south of point O is point B? (Answer to two decimal places.)
- **c** What is the bearing of point O from point B?



Remember what 'from' means!

Remember: to find a bearing, face north and turn clockwise.

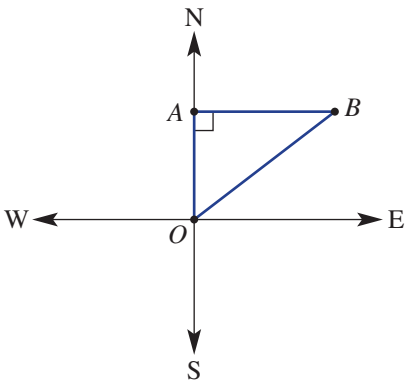


Bearings are given as a 3-digit angle.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10 A plane flies from point O 50 km due north to point A, and then turns and flies 60 km east to point B.

a Copy the diagram below and mark in the lengths 50 km and 60 km.



Pythagoras' theorem: $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$.

b Use Pythagoras' theorem to find the distance of B from O, correct to two decimal places.

c Use trigonometry to find the size of angle AOB. Round to the nearest degree.

d What is the bearing of B from O?

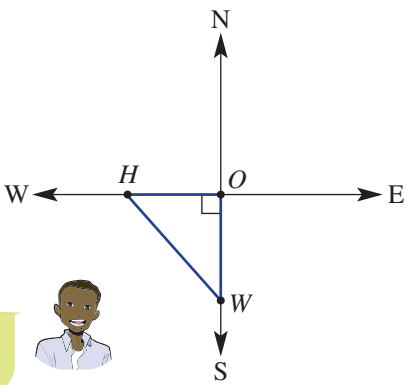
11 William and Harry both leave camp, O, at the same time. William walks south from O for 10 km. Harry walks west from O for 8 km.

a Copy and complete the diagram for this question.

b How far is Harry from William (to one decimal place)?

c Find the size of angle OWH, correct to the nearest degree.

d What is the bearing of Harry from William?



You can use Pythagoras' theorem here.

Drawing your own diagrams

— 12–14

12 Huang walks on a true bearing of 210° for 6.5 km. How far west of his starting point is he?

13 A plane flies on a true bearing of 320° from airport, A, for 150 km. At this time how far north of the airport is the plane? Answer to the nearest kilometre.

14 Point A is 10 km due east of point O, and point B is 15 km due south of point A.

a How far is it, correct to two decimal places, from point B to point O?

b What is the bearing, to the nearest degree, of point B from point O?

Remember: The word 'from' indicates where the bearing is being taken.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Maths@Work: Surveyor

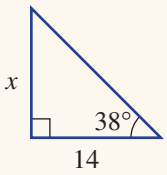
Surveyors collect and measure data about land and the environment, including measurements for subdivisions of new housing estates, new roads and open-pit mines. They work with plans, files, charts and reports.

To become a surveyor you can either do a university course, requiring Year 12 mathematics, or apply to TAFE and complete the training there. All courses require a student to have studied mathematics.

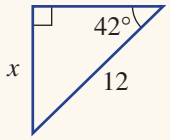
Mathematical skills needed in becoming a land surveyor include geometry and trigonometry. Complete these questions that a surveyor may face in their day-to-day job.

1 Refresh your trigonometry skills by finding the value of each pronumeral in the following triangles. All measurements are in metres, and give answers correct to two decimal places.

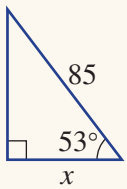
a



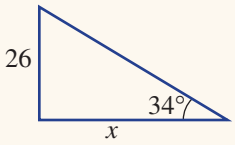
b



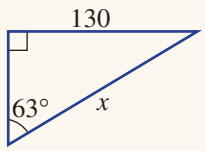
c



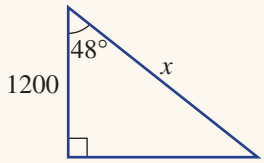
d



e

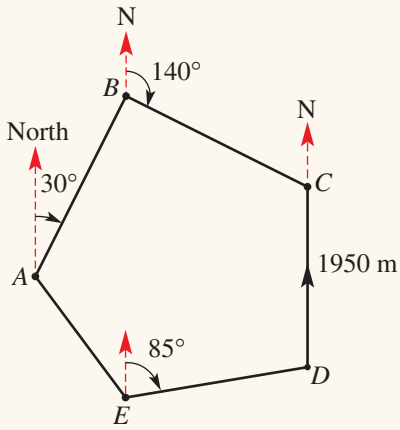


f



In surveying, there are two types of traverse surveys: the closed traverse survey and the open traverse survey.

2 The example below is of a closed traverse survey that could be around a large contained development, such as a school or airport. The diagram is not to scale.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

State answers to the following questions in metres, to two decimal places unless told otherwise.

For part **a**, start by forming a right-angled triangle with AB as the hypotenuse.

a Given that marker B is 650 m east of A, calculate the distance AB.

b Given that marker C is 900 m south of B, calculate the distance BC.

c Given that marker E is 160 m south of D, calculate the distance DE.

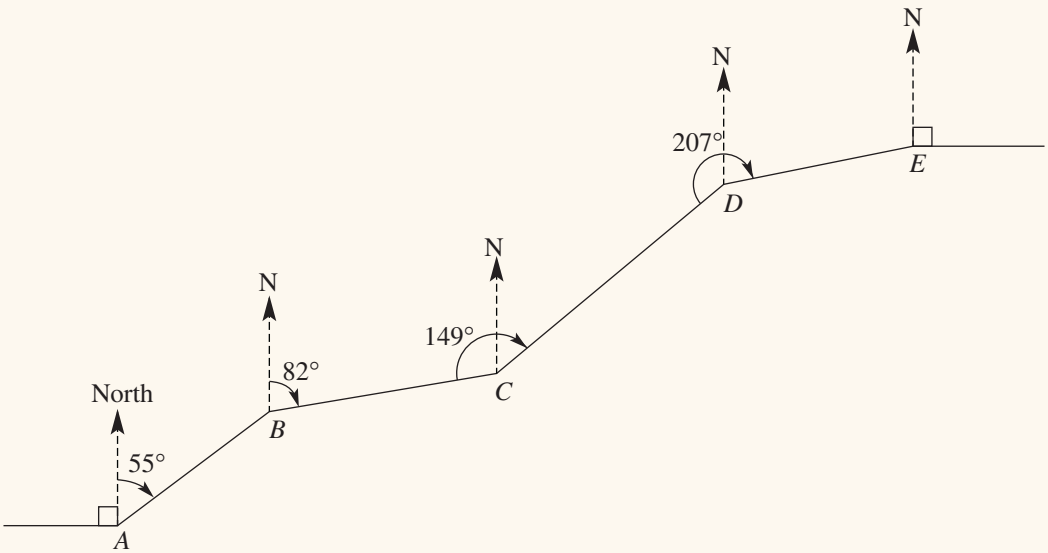
d Marker E is 600 m east of A and 900 m south of A. Calculate the distance AE.

e Calculate the perimeter of the figure $ABCDE$, correct to the nearest metre.

f Calculate the true bearing of B from C.

g Calculate the true bearing of E from D.

3 Below is an example of an open traverse survey that could be the simplified model of a section of road. The diagram is not to scale.



a Complete this table of measurements for the open traverse survey above.
Hints: Draw a large, ruled and labelled diagram with a north–south line at each marker. Recall the rules for angles between parallel lines.

Marker	Distance to the next marker (metres)	True bearing of the next marker from the current marker	Angle between line segments at marker (clockwise)	Distance East to the next marker (in m to 2 d.p.)	Distance North to the next marker (in m to 2 d.p.)
A	98.00	055°			
B	125.36	082°			
C	157.80		149°		
D	104.42		207°		
E	–	–		–	–

b How far east is marker E from A? Give your answer in metres to two decimal places.

c How far north of marker A is E? Give your answer in metres to two decimal places.

d By considering a right-angle triangle with hypotenuse AE, what is the true bearing of E from A? Give your answer to the nearest degree.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Using technology

4 Use FxDraw or CAD software or another digital drawing program to create a labelled diagram of a closed traverse survey for a town park. Your diagram of the park must include:

- a true north line on each marker
- true north bearings of each next marker from each marker
- the length, in metres, of each boundary segment
- internal angles between line segments (these need to be calculated)
- the perimeter of the park

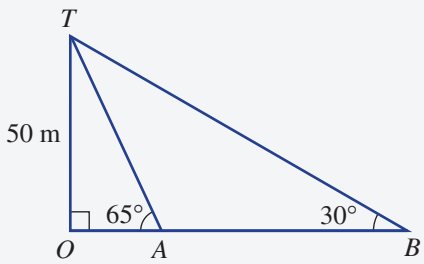
Your diagram doesn't need to be to scale but it should be a close representation of the survey data.

Closed Traverse survey data for Penny Park			
Marker	True north bearing of next marker from current marker	Distance from current marker to next marker	Internal angle between line segments at marker
A	30°	394 m	
B	99°	658 m	
C	180°	500 m	
D	266°	590 m	
E	324°	360 m	

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1 What is the opposite direction to:
a east? **b** NE? **c** SE? **d** 018°? **e** 300°?

2 Use two different right-angled triangles to find the distance from A to B in this diagram, correct to two decimal places.

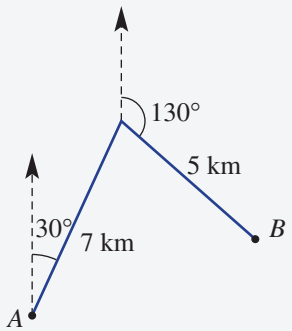


3 Make up your own saying using the letters in SOH CAH TOA as the first letter of each word.
S ___ O ___ H ___ C ___ A ___ H ___ T ___ O ___ A ___

4 In the wordfind below there are 17 terms that are used in this chapter. See if you can locate all 17 terms and write a definition or draw a diagram for each of them.

S	I	D	R	T	Y	I	P	Y	T	S	O	H	T	H
I	D	E	P	R	E	S	S	I	O	N	D	Y	O	Y
N	T	E	I	N	T	E	W	P	Y	A	D	J	H	P
E	I	O	E	E	D	S	V	B	Y	T	P	U	W	O
Q	U	O	T	R	S	I	A	D	J	A	C	E	N	T
A	D	A	N	G	E	D	E	P	R	A	N	G	L	E
S	E	N	A	R	T	E	E	G	R	I	L	K	O	N
D	P	T	R	I	A	N	G	L	E	H	E	I	P	U
C	T	R	I	G	O	N	O	M	E	T	R	Y	P	S
B	A	C	G	B	L	I	N	O	Y	A	A	W	O	E
H	D	O	H	T	E	A	N	G	L	N	T	H	S	H
U	J	S	T	R	G	A	O	K	Y	G	I	I	I	Y
J	E	I	W	F	L	N	R	M	K	E	O	D	T	P
K	N	N	T	J	T	R	N	I	O	N	P	Z	E	O
E	L	E	V	A	T	I	O	N	N	T	P	A	M	B
E	T	B	A	S	P	Y	T	H	A	G	O	R	A	S

5 Find the bearing from A to B in this diagram.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter summary

Pythagoras' theorem and trigonometry

Trigonometric ratios

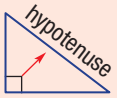
SOH → $\sin\theta = \frac{O}{H}$

CAH → $\cos\theta = \frac{A}{H}$

TOA → $\tan\theta = \frac{O}{A}$

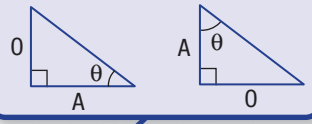
Hypotenuse

The *hypotenuse* is the longest side in a right-angled triangle. It is opposite the right angle.



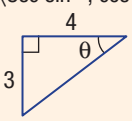
Opposite and Adjacent

In a right-angled triangle the sides marked 'opposite' and 'adjacent' are named according to the angle used.



Finding angles

⟨Use $\sin^{-1}$, $\cos^{-1}$, $\tan^{-1}$⟩



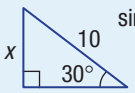
$\tan\theta = \frac{3}{4}$

$\theta = \tan^{-1}(\frac{3}{4})$

$= 37°$

(to the nearest degree)

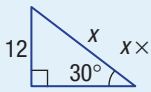
Finding lengths with trigonometry



$\sin 30° = \frac{x}{10}$

$x = 10 \sin 30°$

$x = 5$



$\sin 30° = \frac{12}{x}$

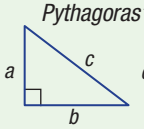
$x \times \sin 30° = 12$

$x = \frac{12}{\sin 30°}$

$x = 24$

Pythagoras' theorem

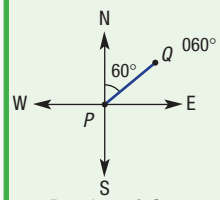
For the triangle shown, *Pythagoras' theorem* is



$c^2 = a^2 + b^2$

True bearings

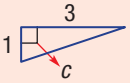
3-digit angle clockwise from north



Bearing of *Q* *from P* is 060°.

Bearing of *A* *from O* is 300°.

Finding the hypotenuse



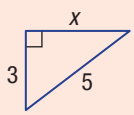
$c^2 = 1^2 + 3^2$

$c^2 = 10$

$c = \sqrt{10}$

$= 3.2$ (to 1 d.p.)

Finding a shorter side



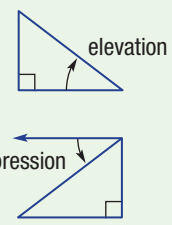
$5^2 = x^2 + 3^2$

$x^2 = 5^2 - 3^2$

$x^2 = 16$

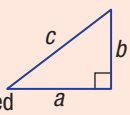
$x = 4$

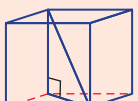
Elevation and depression



Applications

Start by identifying right-angled diagrams





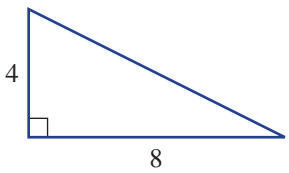
(Cube)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter review

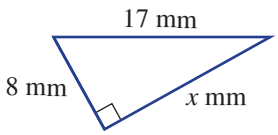
Multiple-choice questions

9A **1** The length of the hypotenuse in the triangle shown is closest to:



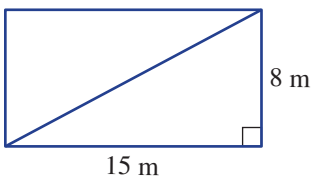
A 10 **B** 9 **C** 4
D 100 **E** 64

9B **2** The length of the side marked x in the triangle shown is:



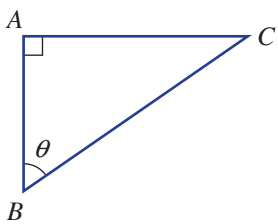
A 23 **B** 17 **C** 12
D 19 **E** 15

9C **3** For the shape shown to be a rectangle, the length of the diagonal must be:



A 15 m **B** 8 m **C** 17 m
D 23 m **E** 32 m

9D **4** Which side (AB, AC or BC) is adjacent to θ in this triangle?

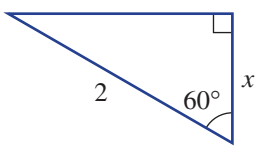


A AC **B** AB **C** BC
D hypotenuse **E** opposite

9D **5** The value of cos 21° is closest to:

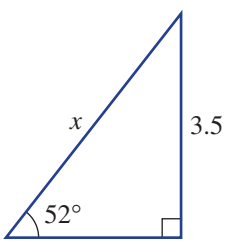
A −0.55 **B** 0.9 **C** 0.9336
D 0.93 **E** 0.934

9E **6** The value of x in this triangle is:



A $2 \div \cos 60°$ **B** $2 \div \sin 60°$
C $2 \times \cos 60°$ **D** $2 \times \sin 60°$
E $2 \times \tan 60°$

9F **7** The value of x in this triangle is closest to:



A 2.76 **B** 4.48 **C** 5.68
D 4.44 **E** 2.73

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

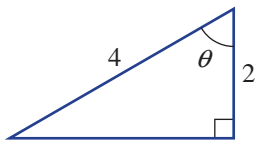
Chapter review

9F 8 A metal brace sits at 55° to the horizontal and reaches 4.2 m up a wall. The distance between the base of the wall and the base of the brace is closest to:

A 6.00 m **B** 2.41 m **C** 7.32 m
D 5.13 m **E** 2.94 m

9G 9 The angle θ in this triangle is:

A 60° **B** 30° **C** 26.57°
D 20° **E** none of the above

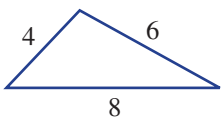


9H 10 The angle of depression from the roof of a building to a trampoline is 75°. If the roof is 12 m above the level of the trampoline, then the distance of the trampoline from the building is closest to:

A 12.42 m **B** 11.59 m **C** 3.22 m
D 44.78 m **E** 3.11 m

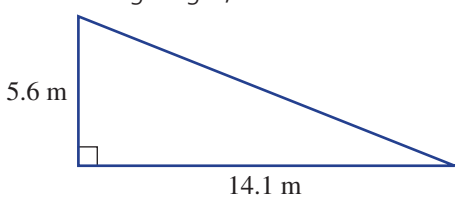
Short-answer questions

9A 1 Determine whether the triangle shown contains a right angle.

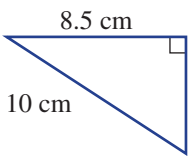


9A/B 2 Find the missing length, correct to two decimal places, in these triangles.

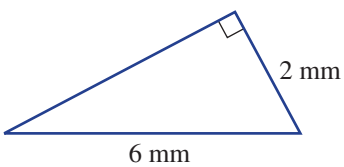
a



b



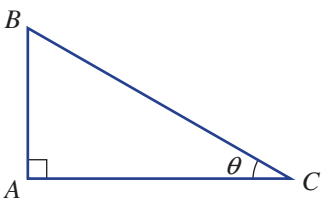
c



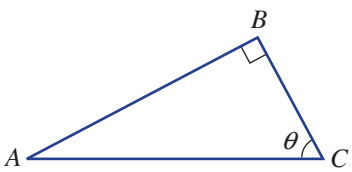
9D 3 Which side (AB, AC or BC) of these triangles is:

i the hypotenuse? **ii** opposite to θ? **iii** adjacent to θ?

a



b



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

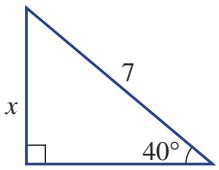
Chapter review

9D 4 Use a calculator to find the value of the following, rounding to two decimal places.

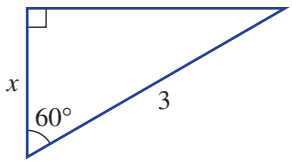
a sin 35° b cos 17° c tan 83°

9E 5 Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these triangles. Round to two decimal places where necessary.

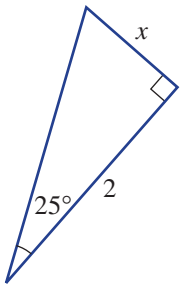
a



b

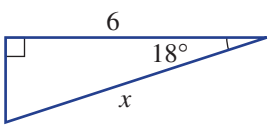


c

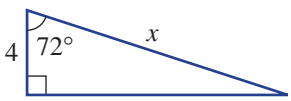


9F 6 Find the value of the unknown length (x) in these right-angled triangles. Round to two decimal places.

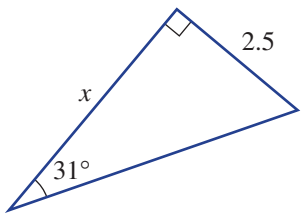
a



b



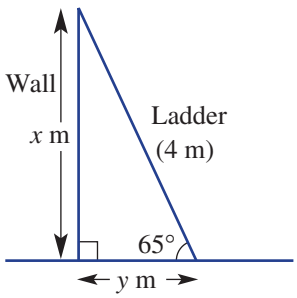
c



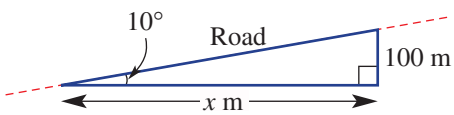
9E 7 A 4 m ladder leans, as shown, against a wall at an angle of 65° to the horizontal.

a Find how high up the wall the ladder reaches (x m), correct to two decimal places.

b Find how far the bottom of the ladder is from the wall (y m), correct to two decimal places.



9F 8 A section of road has a slope of 10° and gains 100 m in height. Find the horizontal length of the road (x m), correct to two decimal places.



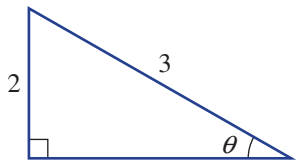
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

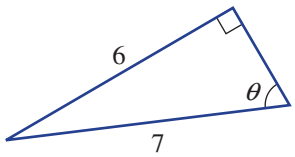
9G

9 Find θ in the following right-angled triangles, correct to two decimal places.

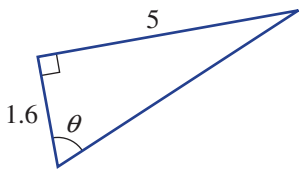
a



b



c

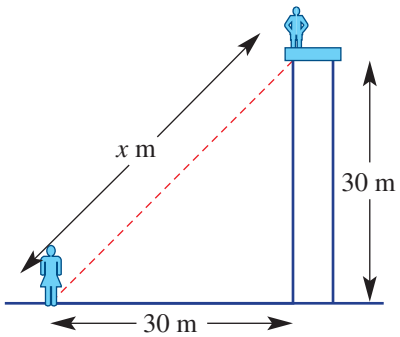


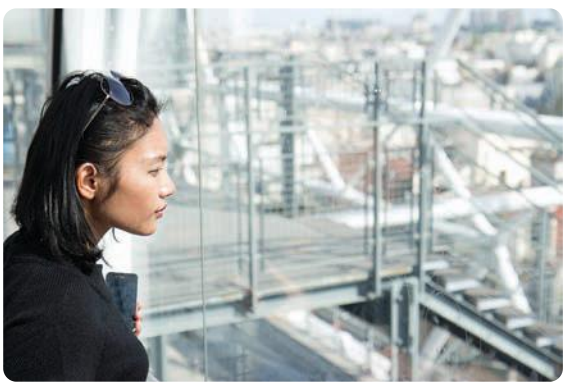
9H

10 Raymond and Sofia view each other from two different places, as shown. Raymond is on a viewing platform, whereas Sofia is 30 m from the base of the platform, on the ground. The platform is 30 m above the ground.

a Find the angle of elevation from Sofia's feet to Raymond's feet.

b Using your answer to part **a**, find the distance (x) between Sofia and Raymond, correct to one decimal place.





9I

11 A hiker walks on a true bearing of 220° from point A for 3 km to point B.

a Find how far south the hiker has walked, correct to one decimal place.

b Find how far west the hiker has walked, correct to one decimal place.

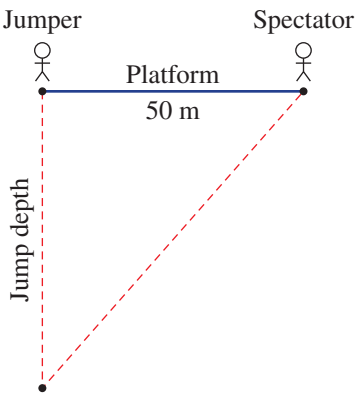
c What is the bearing of point A from B?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

Extended-response questions

1 A spectator is viewing bungee jumping from a point 50 m to the side but level with the jumping platform.

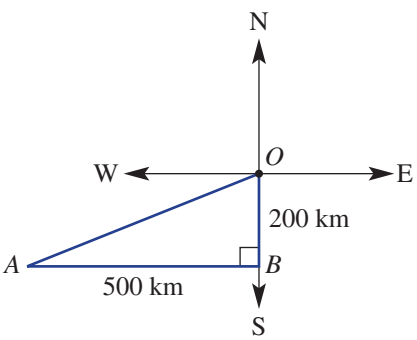


a The first bungee jumper has a maximum fall of 70 m. Find the angle of depression from the spectator to the bungee jumper at the maximum depth, correct to two decimal places.

b The second bungee jumper's maximum angle of depression from the spectator is 69°. Find the jumper's maximum depth, correct to two decimal places.

c The third jumper wants to do the 'Head Dunk' into the river below. This occurs when the spectator's angle of depression to the river is 75°. Find, correct to the nearest metre, the height of the platform above the river.

2 A military plane flies 200 km from point O to point B, then west 500 km to point A.



a How far is A from O, to the nearest kilometre?

b What is angle BOA, correct to the nearest degree?

c What is the bearing of A from O?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter 10

Quadratics and non-linear graphs

What you will learn

- 10A Expanding binomial products ★
- 10B Factorising a difference of perfect squares ★
- 10C Factorising trinomials of the form $x^2 + bx + c$ ★
- 10D Solving equations of the form $ax^2 = c$ ★
- 10E Solving $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ using the null factor law ★
- 10F Applications of quadratics ★
- 10G Exploring parabolas ★
- 10H Graphs of circles and exponentials ★

Australian curriculum

QUADRATICS AND NON-LINEAR GRAPHS

Expand binomial products and **factorise monic** quadratic expressions using a variety of strategies **(ACMNA233)**

Explore the connection between algebraic and graphical representations of relations such as simple quadratics, circles and exponentials using digital technology as appropriate **(ACMNA239)**

Solve simple quadratic equations using a range of strategies **(ACMNA241)**

© Australian Curriculum, Assessment and Reporting Authority (ACARA)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Online resources

- Enhanced glossary definitions including illustrations, audio and examples
- Interactive maths literacy activities

Plus:

- Videos of all worked examples
- Interactive widgets
- Interactive walkthroughs
- Downloadable HOTsheets
- Access to all HOTmaths Australian Curriculum courses
- Access to the HOTmaths games library

Parabolic telescope mirrors

The graph of a quadratic equation forms a shape called a parabola. The rotated graph forms a parabolic dish shape. Telescopes use a parabolic mirror to reflect parallel beams of light or radio waves to a focal point above the base of the dish. This more intense energy beam can be transmitted to a telescope's computers and digital camera for analysis and photography.

The Canada–France–Hawaii Telescope is located at 4200 m altitude on the top of Mauna Kea volcano in Hawaii. It has a powerful parabolic reflecting mirror that is 3.6 metres in diameter and weighs 14 tonnes. Using this telescope, astronomers have discovered new moons of Uranus and Saturn and captured amazing photographs of dying stars exploding in remote galaxies.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Pre-test

1 Consider the expression $5 + 2ab - b$.
- **a** How many terms are there?
- **b** What is the coefficient of the second term?
- **c** What is the value of the constant term?

2 Simplify each of the following by collecting like terms.
- **a** $7x + 2y - 3x$
- **b** $3xy + 4x - xy - 5x$
- **c** $4ab - 2ba$

3 Simplify:
- **a** $\frac{4a}{2}$
- **b** $\frac{-24mn}{12n}$
- **c** $6a \times 3a$
- **d** $-2x \times 3xy$
- **e** $x \times (-3) \div (9x)$
- **f** $4x^2 \div (2x)$

4 Expand and simplify by collecting like terms where possible.
- **a** $4(m + n)$
- **b** $-3(2x - 4)$
- **c** $2x(3x + 1)$
- **d** $4a(1 - 2a)$
- **e** $5 + 3(x - 4)$
- **f** $5 - 2(x + 3) + 2$

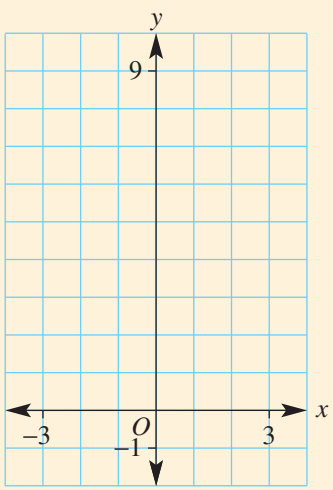
5 Factorise each of the following by taking out a common factor.
- **a** $7x + 7$
- **b** $-9x - 27x^2$
- **c** $a^2 + ab$

6 Solve:
- **a** $2x + 1 = 0$
- **b** $2(x - 3) = 0$
- **c** $\frac{3x + 1}{4} = 4$

7 **a** Complete this table for $y = x^2$.

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
y	9						

- **b** Plot a graph of $y = x^2$ and state if its shape is:
  - **A** linear (i.e. a straight line)
  - **B** non-linear (i.e. not a straight line)



8 Answer true (T) or false (F) to the following.
- **a** $x = 3$ is a solution of $x^2 = 9$.
- **b** $x = -2$ is a solution of $x^2 = -4$.
- **c** $x = 0$ is a solution of $x(x + 4) = 0$.
- **d** $x = -5$ is a solution of $x^2 = 25$.
- **e** $x = 2$ is a solution of $x(x + 2) = 0$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

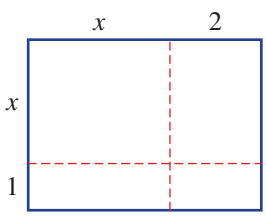
10A Expanding binomial products

Interactive
Widgets
HOTsheets
Walkthrough

Expressions that include numerals and variables (or pronumerals) are central to the topic of algebra. Sound skills in algebra are essential for solving most mathematical problems and this includes the ability to expand expressions involving brackets, such as binomial products, perfect squares and the difference of perfect squares. Exploring how projectiles fly subject to the Earth's gravity, for example, can be modelled with expressions with and without brackets.

Let's start: Why does $(x+1)(x+2) = x^2 + 3x + 2$?

Look at this rectangle with side lengths $x+1$ and $x+2$.



- What are the areas of the four regions?
- Add up the areas to find an expression for the total area.
- Why does this explain that $(x+1)(x+2) = x^2 + 3x + 2$?

Key ideas

- **Like terms** have the same pronumeral part.
  - They can be collected (added and subtracted) to form a single term. For example: $7x - 11x = -4x$ and $4a^2b - 7ba^2 = -3a^2b$.
- The **distributive law** is used to expand brackets.

$a(b+c) = ab + ac$ $\quad (a+b)(c+d) = ac + ad + bc + bd$

and $a(b-c) = ab - ac$

	a
b	ab
c	ac

	a	b
c	ac	bc
d	ad	bd

$(a+b)(c+d)$ is called a binomial product because each expression in the brackets has two terms.

Like terms Terms with the same pronumerals and same powers

Distributive law Adding numbers and then multiplying the total gives the same answer as multiplying each number first and then adding the products

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Perfect squares

$(a+b)^2 = (a+b)(a+b) = a^2 + ab + ba + b^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$

$(a-b)^2 = (a-b)(a-b) = a^2 - ab - ba + b^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$

Difference of perfect squares (DOPS)

$(a+b)(a-b) = a^2 - ab + ba - b^2 = a^2 - b^2$

Perfect square A quadratic trinomial that can be expressed as a single square

Difference of perfect squares When one square term is subtracted from another

Exercise 10A

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Decide whether each of the following is a perfect square (PS) or a difference of perfect squares (DOPS).

a $(x+1)^2$ **b** $x^2 - 16$ **c** $4x^2 - 25$ **d** $(2x-3)^2$

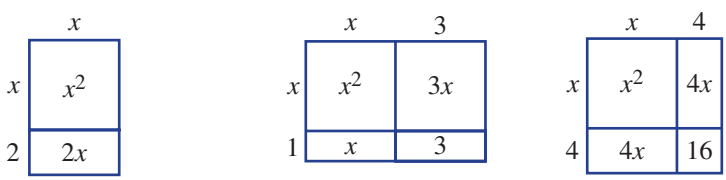
2 Simplify these expressions.

a $2 \times 3x$ **b** $-4 \times 5x$ **c** $x \times 2x$
d $-x \times 4x$ **e** $5x \div 10$ **f** $3x \div 9$
g $-4x^2 \div x$ **h** $-6x^2 \div (2x)$ **i** $3x - 21x$
j $12x - 5x$ **k** $-3x + 8x$ **l** $-5x - 8x$

Write ÷ as a fraction and cancel:
$5x \div 10 = \frac{5x}{10} = \frac{x}{2}$

3 Use each diagram to help expand the expressions.

a $x(x+2)$ **b** $(x+3)(x+1)$ **c** $(x+4)^2$



Simply add up all the areas inside the rectangular diagram.

FLUENCY 4–7(½) | 4–7(½)

Example 1 Expanding simple expressions

Expand and simplify where possible.

a $-3(x-5)$ **b** $-2x(1-x)$

Solution	Explanation
a $-3(x-5) = -3 \times x - (-3) \times 5$ $= -3x + 15$	Use the distributive law $a(b-c) = ab - ac$. A negative times a negative is a positive.
b $-2x(1-x) = -2x \times 1 - (-2x) \times x$ $= -2x + 2x^2$	Recall: $x \times x = x^2$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 Expand and simplify where possible.

a $2(x+5)$	**b** $3(x-4)$	**c** $-5(x+3)$
d $-4(x-2)$	**e** $3(2x-1)$	**f** $4(3x+1)$
g $-2(5x-3)$	**h** $-5(4x+3)$	**i** $x(2x+5)$
j $x(3x-1)$	**k** $2x(1-x)$	**l** $3x(2-x)$
m $-2x(3x+2)$	**n** $-3x(6x-2)$	**o** $-5x(2-2x)$

$a(b+c) = ab + ac$

Example 2 Expanding binomial products

Expand the following.

a $(x+5)(x+4)$ **b** $(2x-1)(3x+5)$

Solution	Explanation
a $(x+5)(x+4) = x^2+4x+5x+20$ $= x^2+9x+20$	For binomial products use $(a+b)(c+d) = ac+ad+bc+bd$. Simplify by collecting like terms: $4x+5x=9x$
b $(2x-1)(3x+5) = 6x^2+10x-3x-5$ $= 6x^2+7x-5$	Expand using the distributive law and simplify. Note that $2x \times 3x = 2 \times 3 \times x \times x = 6x^2$ and $-1 \times 3x = -3x$, $-1 \times 5 = -5$.

5 Expand the following.

a $(x+2)(x+8)$	**b** $(x+3)(x+4)$	
c $(x+7)(x+5)$	**d** $(x+8)(x-3)$	
e $(x+6)(x-5)$	**f** $(x-2)(x+3)$	
g $(x-7)(x+3)$	**h** $(x-4)(x-6)$	**i** $(x-8)(x-5)$
j $(2x+1)(3x+5)$	**k** $(4x+5)(3x+2)$	**l** $(5x+3)(2x+7)$
m $(3x+2)(3x-5)$	**n** $(5x+3)(4x-2)$	**o** $(2x+5)(3x-5)$

$(a+b)(c+d) = ac+ad+bc+bd$

Example 3 Expanding perfect squares

Expand these perfect squares.

a $(x+2)^2$ **b** $(x-4)^2$

Solution	Explanation
a $(x+2)^2 = (x+2)(x+2)$ $= x^2+2x+2x+4$ $= x^2+4x+4$	First write in expanded form, then use the distributive law.
or $(x+2)^2 = x^2+2(x)(2)+2^2$ $= x^2+4x+4$	$(a+b)^2 = a^2+2ab+b^2$ with $a=x$ and $b=2$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10A

b $(x-4)^2 = (x-4)(x-4)$
$= x^2 - 4x - 4x + 16$
$= x^2 - 8x + 16$

Rewrite and expand, using the distributive law.
$-4 \times (-4) = 16$

or $(x-4)^2 = x^2 - 2(x)(4) + 4^2$
$= x^2 - 8x + 16$

Alternatively for perfect squares $(a-b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$. Here $a = x$ and $b = 4$.

6 Expand these perfect squares.

a $(x+5)^2$ **b** $(x+7)^2$ **c** $(x+6)^2$
d $(x-3)^2$ **e** $(x-8)^2$ **f** $(x-10)^2$
g $(2x+5)^2$ **h** $(5x+6)^2$ **i** $(7x-1)^2$

Recall:
$(x+5)^2 = (x+5)(x+5)$
$= \ldots$

Example 4 Expanding to form a difference of perfect squares

Expand to form a difference of perfect squares.

a $(x-3)(x+3)$ **b** $(2x+1)(2x-1)$

Solution	Explanation
a $(x-3)(x+3) = x^2 + 3x - 3x - 9$ $= x^2 - 9$	$x \times x = x^2$, $x \times 3 = 3x$, $-3 \times x = -3x$, $-3 \times 3 = -9$ Note that the two middle terms cancel.
or $(x-3)(x+3) = x^2 - 3^2$ $= x^2 - 9$	$(a-b)(a+b) = a^2 - b^2$
b $(2x+1)(2x-1) = 4x^2 - 2x + 2x - 1$ $= 4x^2 - 1$	Expand, recalling that $2x \times 2x = 4x^2$. Cancel the $-2x$ and $+2x$ terms.
or $(2x+1)(2x-1) = (2x)^2 - (1)^2$ $= 4x^2 - 1$	Alternatively for difference of perfect squares $(a-b)(a+b) = a^2 - b^2$. Here $a = 2x$ and $b = 1$ and $(2x)^2 = 2x \times 2x = 4x^2$.

7 Expand to form a difference of perfect squares.

a $(x+4)(x-4)$ **b** $(x+9)(x-9)$
c $(x+8)(x-8)$ **d** $(3x+4)(3x-4)$
e $(2x-3)(2x+3)$ **f** $(8x-7)(8x+7)$
g $(4x-5)(4x+5)$ **h** $(2x-9)(2x+9)$
i $(5x-7)(5x+7)$ **j** $(7x+11)(7x-11)$

The two middle terms will cancel to give
$(a+b)(a-b) = a^2 - b^2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8-9(½) 8-9(½), 10, 11

8 Write the missing number.

a $(x+2)(x-3) = x^2 - x - \square$

b $(x-4)(x-3) = x^2 - \square x + 12$

c $(x-4)(x+4) = x^2 - \square$

d $(2x-1)(2x+1) = \square x^2 - 1$

e $(x+2)^2 = x^2 + \square x + 4$

f $(3x-1)^2 = 9x^2 - \square x + 1$

Expand if you need to.

9 Write the missing number.

a $(x+\square)(x+2) = x^2 + 5x + 6$

b $(x+\square)(x+5) = x^2 + 8x + 15$

c $(x+7)(x-\square) = x^2 + 4x - 21$

d $(x+4)(x-\square) = x^2 - 4x - 32$

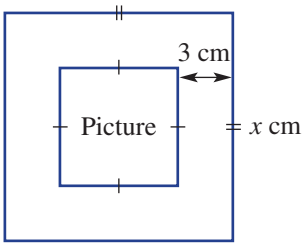
e $(x-6)(x-\square) = x^2 - 7x + 6$

f $(x-\square)(x-8) = x^2 - 10x + 16$

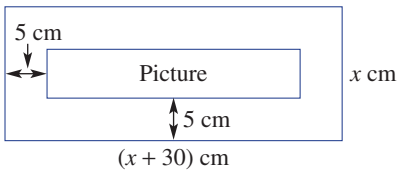
Notice how the two numerals in the brackets multiply to give the constant term.

10 Find an expanded expression for the area of the pictures centred in these square and rectangular frames.

a



b



For part **a**, the side length of the picture will be $(x-6)$ cm.

11 Each problem below has an incorrect answer. Find the error and give the correct answer.

a $-x(x-7) = -x^2 - 7x$

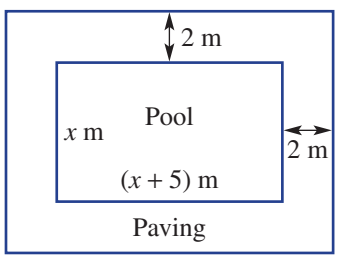
b $3a - 7(4-a) = -4a - 28$

c $(x-9)(x+9) = x^2 - 18x - 81$

d $(2x+3)^2 = 4x^2 + 9$

Swimming pool algebra — 12

12 A pool company builds rectangular pools that are 5 m longer than they are wide. The company then paves around the outside of the pool using a width of 2 m.



a Find an expanded expression for:

i the pool area

ii the total area (including the pool and paving)

iii the paved area

b Find the area of the following when $x = 4$.

i the pool

ii the paved area

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

10B Factorising a difference of perfect squares

A common and key step in the simplification and solution of equations involves factorisation. Factorisation is the process of writing a number or expression as a product of its factors. For example: $6 = 2 \times 3$, $2x + 6 = 2(x + 3)$, $x^2 - x = x(x - 1)$ and $x^2 - 9 = (x + 3)(x - 3)$.

In this section we look at expressions in which each term has a common factor and expressions that are a difference of perfect squares.

Let's start: It's just a DOPS expansion in reverse

Complete each column to see the connection when expanding or factorising a DOPS.

Expand	Factorise
$(x + 2)(x - 2) = x^2 - 4$	$x^2 - 4 = (x_____)(x_____)$
$(x - 3)(x + 3) = x^2 - 9$	$x^2 - 9 = (x_____)(_____)$
$(2x + 3)(2x - 3) = 4x^2 - 9$	$4x^2 - 9 = (2x_____)(_____)$
$(7x - 6)(7x + 6) =$ _____	_____ $= (_____)(_____)$

Key ideas

- **Factorise** expressions with common factors by 'taking out' the highest common factor.
  For example: $-5x - 20 = -5(x + 4)$ and $4x^2 - 8x = 4x(x - 2)$.
- Factorise a difference of perfect squares (DOPS) using

$$a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b)$$

For example:

$x^2 - 16 = x^2 - 4^2$ and $9x^2 - 25 = (3x)^2 - 5^2$

$= (x + 4)(x - 4)$ $= (3x + 5)(3x - 5)$

Factorise To write an expression as a product, often involving brackets

Exercise 10B

UNDERSTANDING 1, 2 2

1 Complete these statements.

a $2(x + 3) = 2x + 6$, so $2x + 6 = 2(_____)$

b $-4(x - 1) = -4x + 4$, so $-4x + 4 = -4(_____)$

c $(x + 2)(x - 2) = x^2 - 4$, so $x^2 - 4 = (_____)(_____)$

d $(3x + 2)(3x - 2) = 9x^2 - 4$, so $9x^2 - 4 = (_____)(_____)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

2 Determine the highest common factor of these pairs of terms.

a $7x$ and 14	**b** $12x$ and 30	**c** $-8y$ and 40
d $-5y$ and -25	**e** $4a^2$ and $2a$	**f** $12a^2$ and $9a$
g $-5a^2$ and $-50a$	**h** $-3x^2y$ and $-6xy$	**i** $-2ab$ and $-6a^2b$

Include a common negative.

FLUENCY 3–4(½) 3–5(½)

Example 5 Taking out common factors

Factorise by taking out the highest common factor.

a $-3x - 12$ **b** $20a^2 + 30a$

Solution	Explanation
a $-3x - 12 = -3(x + 4)$	-3 is common to both $-3x$ and -12.
b $20a^2 + 30a = 10a(2a + 3)$	The HCF of $20a^2$ and $30a$ is $10a$.

3 Factorise by taking out the highest common factor.

a $3x - 18$	**b** $4x + 20$	**c** $7a + 7b$
d $9a - 15$	**e** $-5x - 30$	**f** $-4y - 2$
g $-12a - 3$	**h** $-2ab - bc$	**i** $4x^2 + x$
j $5x^2 - 2x$	**k** $6b^2 - 18b$	**l** $14a^2 - 21a$
m $10a - 5a^2$	**n** $12x - 30x^2$	**o** $-2x - x^2$

Find the highest common factor, then take it out.

Example 6 Factorising a difference of perfect squares

Factorise the following differences of perfect squares.

a $x^2 - 16$ **b** $9a^2 - 4b^2$

Solution	Explanation
a $x^2 - 16 = (x)^2 - (4)^2$ $= (x - 4)(x + 4)$	Use $a^2 - b^2 = (a - b)(a + b)$ with $a = x$ and $b = 4$.
b $9a^2 - 4b^2 = (3a)^2 - (2b)^2$ $= (3a - 2b)(3a + 2b)$	$9a^2 = (3a)^2$ and $4b^2 = (2b)^2$.

4 Factorise the following differences of perfect squares.

a $x^2 - 9$	**b** $x^2 - 25$	**c** $y^2 - 49$
d $y^2 - 1$	**e** $a^2 - 16$	**f** $b^2 - 36$
g $y^2 - 144$	**h** $z^2 - 400$	**i** $4x^2 - 9$
j $36a^2 - 25$	**k** $1 - 81y^2$	**l** $100 - 9x^2$
m $25x^2 - 4y^2$	**n** $64x^2 - 25y^2$	**o** $9a^2 - 49b^2$

$a^2 - b^2 = (a + b)(a - b)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10B

5 Factorise these differences of perfect squares.

a $4 - x^2$ **b** $9 - y^2$ **c** $36 - a^2$ **d** $100 - 9x^2$

e $b^2 - a^2$ **f** $400 - 25a^2$ **g** $4a^2 - 9b^2$ **h** $16y^2 - 121x^2$

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6(½), 7 6(½), 7, 8(½)

Example 7 Factorising by first taking out a common factor

Factorise $12y^2 - 1452$ by first taking out a common factor.

Solution	Explanation
$12y^2 - 1452 = 12(y^2 - 121)$ $= 12(y - 11)(y + 11)$	First take out the common factor of 12. $121 = (11)^2$, use $a^2 - b^2 = (a - b)(a + b)$.

6 Factorise the following by first taking out a common factor.

a $2x^2 - 32$ **b** $5x^2 - 45$ **c** $6y^2 - 24$

d $3y^2 - 48$ **e** $3x^2 - 75y^2$ **f** $3a^2 - 300b^2$

g $12x^2 - 27y^2$ **h** $63a^2 - 112b^2$ **i** $108x^2 - 147y^2$

As a first step, take out a common factor and then factorise the DOPS.

7 The height (in metres) of a falling object above ground level is given by $100 - t^2$, where t is in seconds.

a Find the height of the object:
- **i** initially (i.e. at $t = 0$)
- **ii** after 2 seconds
- **iii** after 8 seconds

b Factorise the expression $100 - t^2$.

c Use your factorised expression from part **b** to find the height of the object:
- **i** initially (i.e. at $t = 0$)
- **ii** after 2 seconds
- **iii** after 8 seconds

d How long does it take for the object to hit the ground?

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8 We can work out problems such as $19^2 - 17^2$ without a calculator, like this:

$$\begin{aligned} 19^2 - 17^2 &= (19 + 17)(19 - 17) \\ &= 36 \times 2 \\ &= 72 \end{aligned}$$

Factorise first, using $a^2 - b^2 = (a+b)(a-b)$, then evaluate.

Use this idea to evaluate the following by first factorising, without the use of a calculator.

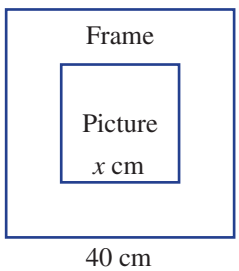
a $16^2 - 14^2$ **b** $18^2 - 17^2$ **c** $13^2 - 10^2$ **d** $15^2 - 11^2$

e $17^2 - 15^2$ **f** $11^2 - 9^2$ **g** $27^2 - 24^2$ **h** $52^2 - 38^2$

Flexible framing

— 9

9 A special square picture frame can hold a square picture of any size up to 40 cm.



a Using a picture side length of x cm, write expressions for the area of:

i the picture

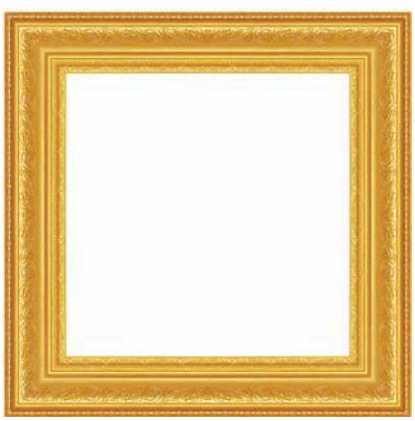
ii the frame (not including the picture)

b Factorise your expression for the frame area.

c Find the frame area when:

i $x = 20$ **ii** $x = 10$

d Using trial and error, what value of x is required if the frame area is to be 700 cm^2?



Using technology 10B: Expanding and factorising

This activity is available on the companion website as a printable PDF.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10C Factorising trinomials of the form $x^2 + bx + c$

A quadratic trinomial of the form $x^2 + bx + c$ is called a monic quadratic because the coefficient of x^2 is 1. ('Monic' comes from the word 'mono', which means 'one'.)

Now consider: $(x + m)(x + n) = x^2 + xn + mx + mn$

$= x^2 + (m + n)x + mn$

We can see from this expansion that mn gives the constant term (c) and $m + n$ is the coefficient of x. This tells us that to factorise a monic quadratic, we should look for factors of the constant term (c) that add to give the coefficient of the middle term (b).

Let's start: So many choices of factors?

We know that to factorise $x^2 - 5x - 24$ we must choose a pair of numbers that multiply to give -24. Look at the following equations and discuss which of them are true.

$x^2 - 5x - 24 = (x + 8)(x + 3)$

$x^2 - 5x - 24 = (x + 6)(x - 4)$

$x^2 - 5x - 24 = (x - 12)(x - 2)$

$x^2 - 5x - 24 = (x - 6)(x + 4)$

$x^2 - 5x - 24 = (x - 12)(x + 2)$

$x^2 - 5x - 24 = (x - 8)(x + 3)$

$x^2 - 5x - 24 = (x - 8)(x - 3)$

$x^2 - 5x - 24 = (x - 24)(x + 1)$

Key ideas

- **Monic quadratics** have a coefficient of x^2 equal to 1.
- Monic quadratics of the form $x^2 + bx + c$ can be factorised by finding the two numbers that multiply to give the constant term (c) and add to give the coefficient of x (b).

$x^2 + 5x + 6 = (x + 3)(x + 2)$

$2 + 3 \quad 2 \times 3$

$x^2 - 5x + 6 = (x - 3)(x - 2)$

$-2 + (-3) \quad -2 \times (-3)$

$x^2 - x - 6 = (x - 3)(x + 2)$

$-3 + 2 \quad -3 \times 2$

$x^2 + x - 6 = (x + 3)(x - 2)$

$3 + (-2) \quad 3 \times (-2)$

Monic quadratic
A quadratic expression where the coefficient of the squared term is 1

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 10C

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 | 3

1 Expand and simplify these expressions.

a $(x+2)(x+3)$ **b** $(x-4)(x+2)$ **c** $(x-7)(x-3)$

d $(x-1)^2$ **e** $(x+5)^2$ **f** $(x-6)^2$

2 Find two integers that multiply to give the first number and add to give the second number.

a 18, 11 **b** 20, 12 **c** −15, 2

d −12, 1 **e** −24, −5 **f** −30, −7

g 10, −7 **h** 36, −15 **i** −8, 7

The integers include …, −3, −2, −1, 0, 1, 2, 3, …

3 **a** **i** Which two numbers multiply to give 15 and add to give 8?

ii Complete $x^2+8x+15=(_____)(_____)$

b **i** Which two numbers multiply to give −10 and add to give 3?

ii Complete $x^2+3x-10=(_____)(_____)$

c **i** Which two numbers multiply to give 8 and add to give −6?

ii Complete $x^2-6x+8=(_____)(_____)$

FLUENCY 4–5(½) | 4–5(½)

Example 8 Factorising trinomials of the form x^2+bx+c

Factorise:

a $x^2+7x+12$ **b** x^2+x-6 **c** x^2-5x+6

Solution	Explanation
a $x^2+7x+12=(x+4)(x+3)$	$3\times4=12$ and $3+4=7$. Check: $(x+4)(x+3)=x^2+3x+4x+12=x^2+7x+12$.
b $x^2+x-6=(x-2)(x+3)$	Since the numbers must multiply to −6, one must be positive and one negative. $-2\times3=-6$ and $-2+3=1$. Check: $(x-2)(x+3)=x^2+3x-2x-6=x^2+x-6$.
c $x^2-5x+6=(x-3)(x-2)$	$-3\times(-2)=6$ and $-3+(-2)=-5$. Check: $(x-3)(x-2)=x^2-2x-3x+6=x^2-5x+6$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10C

4 Factorise these quadratic trinomials.

a	x^2+7x+6	**b**	x^2+5x+6	**c**	x^2+6x+9	**p**	x^2-2x+1
d	$x^2+7x+10$	**e**	$x^2+7x+12$	**f**	$x^2+11x+18$	**t**	x^2-x-20
g	x^2+5x-6	**h**	x^2+x-6	**i**	x^2+2x-8	**x**	$x^2-3x-10$
j	x^2+3x-4	**k**	$x^2+7x-30$	**l**	$x^2+9x-22$		
m	$x^2-7x+10$	**n**	x^2-6x+8	**o**	$x^2-7x+12$		
q	$x^2-9x+18$	**r**	$x^2-11x+18$	**s**	$x^2-4x-12$		
u	$x^2-5x-14$	**v**	x^2-x-12	**w**	$x^2+4x-32$		

For x^2+bx+c, look for factors of c that add to give b.

Example 9 Factorising perfect squares

Factorise $x^2-8x+16$ to form a perfect square.

Solution	Explanation
$x^2-8x+16=(x-4)(x-4)$ $=(x-4)^2$	$-4\times(-4)=16$ and $-4+(-4)=-8$. $(x-4)(x-4)=(x-4)^2$ is a perfect square.

5 Factorise these perfect squares.

a	x^2-4x+4	**b**	x^2+6x+9	**g**	$x^2+8x+16$
c	$x^2+12x+36$	**d**	$x^2-14x+49$	**h**	$x^2+20x+100$
e	$x^2-18x+81$	**f**	$x^2-20x+100$		

Factorise perfect squares just like any trinomial but finish by writing them in the form $(x+a)^2$.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 6, 7(½) 6–7(½), 8

Example 10 Factorising by first taking out a common factor

Factorise $2x^2-10x-28$ by first taking out a common factor.

Solution	Explanation
$2x^2-10x-28=2(x^2-5x-14)$ $=2(x-7)(x+2)$	First take out the common factor of 2. $-7\times2=-14$ and $-7+2=-5$.

6 Factorise by first taking out the common factor.

a	$2x^2+14x+20$	**b**	$3x^2+21x+36$	**g**	$-2x^2-14x-24$	**i**	$-2x^2+10x+28$
c	$2x^2+22x+36$	**d**	$5x^2-5x-10$	**h**	$-3x^2+9x-6$	**l**	$-7x^2+49x-42$
e	$4x^2-16x-20$	**f**	$3x^2-9x-30$	**j**	$-4x^2+4x+8$	**k**	$-5x^2-20x-15$

Factor out the coefficient of x^2.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

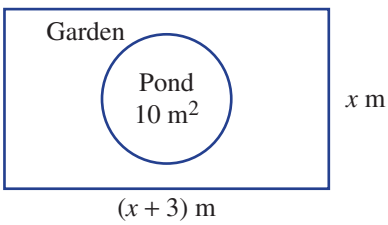
7 Factorise these as perfect squares after first taking out the common factor.

a $2x^2 + 44x + 242$ **b** $3x^2 - 24x + 48$

c $5x^2 - 50x + 125$ **d** $-3x^2 + 36x - 108$

e $-2x^2 + 28x - 98$ **f** $-4x^2 - 72x - 324$

8 A rectangular garden has length 3 m more than its width, x m. There is a pond of area 10 m^2 in the centre.



a Find an expression for:

i the entire area (Expand your answer.) **ii** the garden area, excluding the pond

b Factorise your answer from part **a ii**.

c What is the area of the garden, excluding the pond, when:

i $x = 5$? **ii** $x = 7$?

Algebraic fractions

— 9

9 Some algebraic fractions can be simplified using factorisation.

Here is an example:

$$\frac{x^2 - x - 12}{x - 4} = \frac{(x - 4)(x + 3)}{x - 4} = x + 3$$

First factorise the numerator or denominator, then cancel.

Use this idea to simplify these fractions.

a $\frac{x^2 - 3x - 54}{x - 9}$ **b** $\frac{x^2 + x - 12}{x + 4}$ **c** $\frac{x^2 - 6x + 9}{x - 3}$

d $\frac{x + 2}{x^2 + 9x + 14}$ **e** $\frac{x - 3}{x^2 - 8x + 15}$ **f** $\frac{x + 1}{x^2 - 5x - 6}$

g $\frac{x^2 - 4x + 4}{x - 2}$ **h** $\frac{x^2 + 2x + 1}{x + 1}$ **i** $\frac{x^2 - 16x + 64}{x - 8}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10D Solving equations of the form $ax^2 = c$

A quadratic equation can be expressed in the general form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, where a, b and c are real numbers with $a \neq 0$. In a quadratic equation the highest power is 2. The simplest quadratic equation can be expressed in the form $x^2 = c$ and these will be considered in this section.

We will see that since $5^2 = 5 \times 5 = 25$ and $(-5)^2 = -5 \times (-5) = 25$, there are two possible solutions to the equation $x^2 = 25$; i.e. $x = 5$ or $x = -5$. However, note that $x^2 = -25$ has no solutions.

This simplest form of a quadratic equation arises in many circumstances, including in Pythagoras' theorem and in area and volume formulas. Formulas involving motion, including the velocity of a constantly accelerating object and the time taken for an object to fall due to gravity, also give rise to quadratic equations.

Let's start: How many possible solutions?

- List all the pairs of numbers that multiply to 16.
- List all the pairs of numbers that multiply to -16.
- What do you notice about the signs of your pairs of numbers that multiply to 16? What about the signs of the numbers that multiply to -16?
- How many of your listed pairs satisfy $x \times x = 16$?
- Are there any pairs that satisfy $x \times x = -16$?
- From what you have found above, how many values of x would make the following true?

a $x^2 = 9$ **b** $x^2 = -9$

Key ideas

- A **quadratic equation** is an equation in which the highest power is 2.
  For example: $x^2 = 9$, $2x^2 - 6 = 0$ and $x^2 - 2x = 8$.
  - A quadratic equation may have 0, 1 or 2 possible solutions.
- The square of a number is always positive or 0; i.e. $x^2 \geq 0$ for all values of x.
  For example: $(2)^2 = 2 \times 2 = 4$ and $(-3)^2 = -3 \times (-3) = 9$.

Quadratic equation
An equation in which the highest power is 2

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

- The inverse operation of squaring is the square root, $\sqrt{\ }$.
  - $\sqrt{4} = 2$ since $2 \times 2 = 4$.
  - $\sqrt{7} \times \sqrt{7} = 7$
- When $x^2 = \pm c$, then $x = \pm\sqrt{c}$ provided that $c \geq 0$.
  - $\pm$ represents two possible solutions: $+\sqrt{c}$ and $-\sqrt{c}$.
  - $c = 0$ gives just one solution since $\sqrt{0} = 0$.
- When $x^2 = c$ and $c < 0$, there are no real solutions.
- Square roots that do not reduce to whole numbers are called surds and can be left in this exact form; i.e. $\sqrt{2}$, $\sqrt{10}$, … etc.
  For example: $\sqrt{25}$ is not a surd as 25 is a square number and $\sqrt{25} = 5$.
- To solve equations of the form $ax^2 = c$, make x^2 the subject and then take the square root of both sides to solve for x.
- In practical problems such as those involving measurement, it may make sense to reject the negative solution obtained.

Exercise 10D

UNDERSTANDING 1–4 | 4

1 List the first 12 square numbers.

2 Evaluate the following.

a 4^2	**b** 7^2	**c** 9^2
d 11^2	**e** $(-3)^2$	**f** $(-5)^2$
g $(-8)^2$	**h** $(-12)^2$	**i** $(-1)^2$

3 Evaluate the following.

a $\sqrt{36}$	**b** $\sqrt{64}$	**c** $-\sqrt{49}$
d $-\sqrt{25}$	**e** $-\sqrt{100}$	**f** $-\sqrt{1}$
g $\sqrt{0}$	**h** $\sqrt{121}$	**i** $\sqrt{400}$

4 Complete the following. The equation $x^2 = c$ has:

a two solutions when _____ **b** one solution when _____

c no solutions when _____

FLUENCY 5–7(½) | 5–7(½)

Example 11 Solving equations of the form $ax^2 = c$

Find all possible solutions to the following equations.

a $x^2 = 16$ **b** $3x^2 = 12$ **c** $x^2 = -25$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10D

Solution	Explanation
a $x^2 = 16$ $\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{16}$ $x = \pm 4$	Take the square root of both sides to solve for x. If $x^2 = c$, where $c > 0$, then $x = \pm\sqrt{c}$. Since 16 is a square number, $\sqrt{16}$ is a whole number. $\pm$ represents two solutions: $+4$ since $(+4)^2 = 16$ and -4 since $(-4)^2 = 16$.
b $3x^2 = 12$ $x^2 = 4$ $\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{4}$ $x = \pm 2$	First make x^2 the subject by dividing both sides by 3. Take the square root of both sides to solve for x. This gives two possible values for x: $+2$ and -2.
c $x^2 = -25$ There are no solutions.	Since $x^2 \geq 0$ for all values of x, there are no values of x that will make $x^2 = -25$.

5 Find the possible solutions for x in the following equations.

a $x^2 = 25$	**b** $x^2 = 81$	**c** $x^2 = 36$
d $x^2 = 49$	**e** $x^2 = -16$	**f** $x^2 = -100$
g $x^2 = 400$	**h** $x^2 = 144$	**i** $2x^2 = 50$
j $3x^2 = 48$	**k** $-5x^2 = -5$	**l** $-5x^2 = 20$
m $\frac{x^2}{2} = 32$	**n** $\frac{x^2}{3} = 27$	**o** $\frac{1}{2}x^2 = 18$

When taking the square root, don't forget $\pm$.

$\frac{1}{2}x^2$ is the same as $\frac{x^2}{2}$.

Example 12 Solving equations with answers that are surds

Find all possible solutions to the following equations.
a $x^2 = 10$ (Give your answer in exact surd form.)
b $3x^2 = 9$ (Give your answer to one decimal place.)

Solution	Explanation
a $x^2 = 10$	Take the square root of both sides.
$\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{10}$	Since 10 is not a square number, leave your answer in exact surd form $\pm\sqrt{10}$, as required.
b $3x^2 = 9$	Divide both sides by 3.
$x^2 = 3$	Take the square root of both sides.
$\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{3}$	Use a calculator to evaluate $\pm\sqrt{3} = 1.73205\ldots$ and round your answer to one decimal place, as required.
$x = \pm 1.7$ (to 1 d.p.)	

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6 a Solve the following equations, where possible. Leave your answer in exact surd form.

i $x^2 = 14$ **ii** $x^2 = 22$ **iii** $x^2 = 17$

iv $x^2 = -7$ **v** $3x^2 = 15$ **vi** $4x^2 = 24$

vii $\frac{x^2}{3} = 7$ **viii** $\frac{x^2}{2} = 3$ **ix** $\frac{1}{5}x^2 = 3$

$\sqrt{14}$ is exact surd form.

b Solve these equations, giving your answers to one decimal place.

i $x^2 = 12$ **ii** $x^2 = 35$ **iii** $3x^2 = 90$ **iv** $\frac{x^2}{9} = 7$

Example 13 Solving equations of the form $ax^2 + bx = c$

Find the exact solution(s), where possible, to the following equations.

a $x^2 - 9 = 0$ **b** $x^2 + 12 = 0$

c $\frac{x^2}{2} - 3 = 4,\ x > 0$ **d** $7 - x^2 = 6,\ x < 0$

Solution	Explanation
a $x^2 - 9 = 0$	Make x^2 the subject by adding 9 to both sides.
$x^2 = 9$	Solve for x by taking the square root of both sides.
$\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{9}$	
$x = \pm 3$	
b $x^2 + 12 = 0$	Make x^2 the subject by subtracting 12 from both sides.
$x^2 = -12$	Since x^2 is positive for all values of x, $x^2 = c$, where c is negative has no real solution.
There is no real solution.	
c $\frac{x^2}{2} - 3 = 4$	Solve for x^2 by adding 3 to both sides and then multiplying both sides by 2.
$\frac{x^2}{2} = 7$	
$x^2 = 14$	Take the square root of both sides to solve for x. $\sqrt{14}$ is the exact form of the answer.
$\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{14}$	
$x = \sqrt{14}$ since $x > 0$.	Note the restriction that x must be a positive value (i.e. > 0), so reject the solution $x = -\sqrt{14}$.
d $7 - x^2 = 6$	Subtract 7 from both sides and then divide both sides by -1. Alternatively, add x^2 to both sides to give $7 = x^2 + 6$ and then solve.
$-x^2 = -1$	
$x^2 = 1$	
$\therefore x = \pm\sqrt{1}$	
$x = \pm 1$	$\sqrt{1} = 1$ since $1^2 = 1$.
$x = -1$ since $x < 0$.	Reject the solution $x = 1$ because $x < 0$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10D

7 Find the exact solution(s), where possible, of these equations.

First get your equation in the form $x^2 = c$.

a $x^2 - 4 = 0$ **b** $x^2 - 81 = 0$ **c** $x^2 + 16 = 0$
d $x^2 + 10 = 0$ **e** $x^2 + 6 = 15$ **f** $x^2 - 5 = 10$
g $2x^2 - 6 = 0,\ x > 0$ **h** $3x^2 + 10 = 13$ **i** $\frac{x^2}{2} + 4 = 5,\ x > 0$
j $10 - x^2 = 3,\ x < 0$ **k** $5 - x^2 = 7$ **l** $4 - x^2 = -1,\ x > 0$

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8–11 8(½), 11, 13–16

8 Solve these equations by first collecting like terms.

Rewrite the equation in the form $x^2 = c$ by collecting x^2 terms on one side and the number on the other.

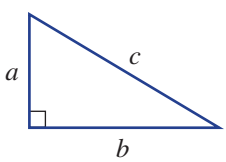
$3x^2 = 2x^2 + 16$
$-2x^2$ → $x^2 = 16$ ← $-2x^2$

a $3x^2 = 2x^2 + 16$ **b** $4x^2 = 2x^2 + 18$
c $4x^2 - 11 = x^2 + 16$ **d** $x^2 = 50 - x^2$
e $2x^2 + 5 = 17 - x^2$ **f** $4x^2 + 8 = 2x^2 + 5$

9 The area of a square is 36 m^2. What is its perimeter?

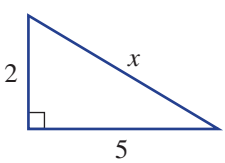
10 The distance, d metres, that a bird dives in t seconds is given by $d = 5t^2$. How long does the bird take to dive 80m?

11 Recall Pythagoras' theorem: $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$.

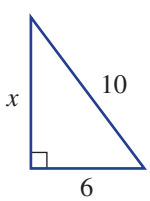


Use this to find the unknown side length in the following triangles. Give your answers in exact form.

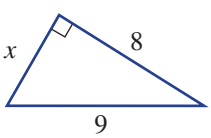
a



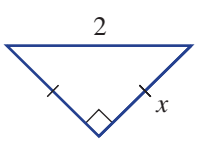
b



c



d



Set up the Pythagorean equation first.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

12 The volume of a cylinder is $V = \pi r^2 h$, where r is the radius and h is the height of the cylinder. If the volume of a cylindrical water tank is 285 m^3 and its height is 15 m, determine its radius, to one decimal place.

13 **a** Solve the equation $\pi r^2 = 24$, to find two possible values for r, rounded to one decimal place.

b Given that $A = \pi r^2$ is the formula for the area of a circle of radius r, what restriction does this place on your answer to part **a** if the area of the circle is 24 units^2?

14 Determine for which values of b the equation $x^2 - b = 0$ has:

a two solutions **b** one solution **c** no solutions

15 Determine for which values of b the equation $x^2 + b = 0$ has:

a two solutions **b** one solution **c** no solutions

16 **a** Solve the equation $x^2 - 25 = 0$.

b Hence, determine the range of values of x for which:

i $x^2 - 25 < 0$ **ii** $x^2 - 25 > 0$

Square powers and brackets — 17

17 Consider the following example.

Solve $(x+1)^2 = 16$

$x + 1 = \pm\sqrt{16}$ (Take the square root of both sides.)

$x + 1 = \pm 4$

$x + 1 = 4$ or $x + 1 = -4$ (Write each equation separately.)

$x = 3$ or $x = -5$ (Subtract 1 from both sides.)

Use this method to solve these equations.

a $(x+1)^2 = 9$ **b** $(x+3)^2 = 49$ **c** $(x-2)^2 = 4$ **d** $(x-5)^2 = 16$

e $(2x+1)^2 = 25$ **f** $(2x-1)^2 = 1$ **g** $(3x-2)^2 = 4$ **h** $(4x-3)^2 = 81$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10E Solving $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ using the null factor law

In previous chapters you would have solved linear equations such as $3x = 9$ and $2x - 1 = 5$, and you may have used 'back tracking' or inverse operations to solve them.

For quadratic equations such as $x^2 - x = 0$ or $x^2 - x - 20 = 0$, we need a new method, because there are different powers of x involved and 'back tracking' isn't useful.

The result of multiplying a number by zero is zero. Therefore, if an expression equals zero then at least one of its factors must be zero. This is called the null factor law and it provides us with an important method that can be utilised to solve a range of mathematical problems involving quadratic equations.

Parabolic arches (like this one supporting the weight of a bridge) can be modelled by quadratic equations.

Let's start: How does the null factor law work?

Start this investigation by completing this table.

x	-5	-4	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2
$(x-1)(x+4)$	6							

- Which values of x make $(x-1)(x+4) = 0$? Why?
- Could you work out what values of x make $(x-1)(x+4) = 0$ without doing a table? Explain.
- What values of x make $(x-2)(x+3) = 0$ or $(x+5)(x-7) = 0$?

Key ideas

- The **null factor law** states that if the product of two numbers is zero, then either or both of the two numbers is zero.
  - If $a \times b = 0$, then $a = 0$ and/or $b = 0$.
- To solve a quadratic equation, write it in standard form (i.e. $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$) and factorise. Then use the null factor law.

  For example: $x^2 - 2x - 8 = 0$

  $(x-4)(x+2) = 0$

  $x - 4 = 0$ or $x + 2 = 0$

  $x = 4$ or $x = -2$
  - If the coefficients of all the terms have a common factor, then first divide by that common factor.

Null factor law If two numbers multiply to give zero, then one or both of those numbers must be zero

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 10E

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Determine the value of x that makes each of the following true.

a $x - 1 = 0$ **b** $x + 3 = 0$ **c** $x + 7 = 0$
d $x - 5 = 0$ **e** $2x = 0$ **f** $-5x = 0$
g $2x + 4 = 0$ **h** $2x - 7 = 0$ **i** $3x + 1 = 0$

2 **a** Complete this table for the given values of x.

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2
$(x+2)(x-1)$						

b What values of x make $(x + 2)(x - 1) = 0$?

c What values of x would make $(x + 3)(x - 2) = 0$?

3 Copy and complete:

a $x(x - 2) = 0$

$x = 0$ or _____ $= 0$

$x =$ _____

b $(x - 1)(x + 4) = 0$

$x - 1 = 0$ or _____ $= 0$

$x =$ _____ or $x =$ _____

c $(x + 6)(2x - 7) = 0$

_____ $= 0$ or _____ $= 0$

$x =$ ___ or $2x =$ _____

$x =$ ___

FLUENCY 4–7(½) 4–7(½)

Example 14 Using the null factor law

Use the null factor law to solve these equations.

a $x(x - 1) = 0$ **b** $(x - 1)(2x + 5) = 0$

Solution	Explanation
a $x(x - 1) = 0$	
$x = 0$ or $x - 1 = 0$	Set each factor equal to zero.
$x = 1$	For $x - 1 = 0$, add 1 to both sides to finish.
b $(x - 1)(2x + 5) = 0$	Set each factor equal to zero and then solve each linear equation.
$x - 1 = 0$ or $2x + 5 = 0$	
$x = 1$ or $2x = -5$	
$x = -\frac{5}{2}$	

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10E

4 Use the null factor law to solve these equations.

a $x(x+1)=0$
b $x(x-5)=0$
c $2x(x-4)=0$
d $(x-3)(x+2)=0$
e $(x+5)(x-4)=0$
f $(x+1)(x-1)=0$
g $(2x-4)(x+1)=0$
h $(3x-2)(x-7)=0$
i $3x(4x+5)=0$
j $(2x-1)(3x+7)=0$
k $(4x-5)(5x+2)=0$
l $(8x+3)(4x+3)=0$

Null factor law: if $a \times b = 0$, then either $a = 0$ or $b = 0$.

Example 15 Solving quadratic equations with a common factor

Solve $x^2 - 2x = 0$.

Solution	Explanation
$x^2 - 2x = 0$	Factorise by taking out the common factor x. Apply the null factor law: if $a \times b = 0$, then $a = 0$ or $b = 0$. Solve for x.
$x(x-2) = 0$	
$\therefore x = 0$ or $x - 2 = 0$	
$\therefore x = 0$ or $x = 2$	

5 Solve the following quadratic equations.

a $x^2 - 4x = 0$
b $x^2 - 3x = 0$
c $x^2 + 2x = 0$
d $3x^2 - 12x = 0$
e $2x^2 - 10x = 0$
f $4x^2 + 8x = 0$

First take out the common factor, then use the null factor law.

Example 16 Solving with DOPS

Solve $x^2 - 16 = 0$ by factorising the DOPS.

Solution	Explanation
$x^2 - 16 = 0$	Note that $x^2 - 16$ is a difference of perfect squares. $x^2 - 16 = x^2 - 4^2 = (x+4)(x-4)$
$(x+4)(x-4) = 0$	
$x + 4 = 0$ or $x - 4 = 0$	Solve each linear factor equal to zero to finish.
$x = -4$ or $x = 4$	

6 Solve the following by factorising the DOPS.

a $x^2 - 25 = 0$
b $x^2 - 36 = 0$
c $x^2 - 100 = 0$
d $4x^2 - 9 = 0$
e $9x^2 - 16 = 0$
f $49x^2 - 81 = 0$

Recall $4x^2 = (2x)^2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 17 Solving quadratic equations

Solve the following quadratic equations.

a $x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0$ **b** $x^2 + 2x + 1 = 0$

Solution	Explanation
a $x^2 - 5x + 6 = 0$	Factorise by finding two numbers that multiply to 6 and add to -5: $-3 \times (-2) = 6$ and $-3 + (-2) = -5$.
$(x - 3)(x - 2) = 0$	
$\therefore x - 3 = 0$ or $x - 2 = 0$	Apply the null factor law and solve for x.
$\therefore x = 3$ or $x = 2$	
b $x^2 + 2x + 1 = 0$	$1 \times 1 = 1$ and $1 + 1 = 2$.
$(x + 1)(x + 1) = 0$	$(x + 1)(x + 1) = (x + 1)^2$ is a perfect square.
$(x + 1)^2 = 0$	This gives one solution for x.
$\therefore x + 1 = 0$	
$\therefore x = -1$	

7 Solve the following quadratic equations.

a $x^2 + 3x + 2 = 0$ **b** $x^2 + 5x + 6 = 0$
c $x^2 - 6x + 8 = 0$ **d** $x^2 - 7x + 10 = 0$
e $x^2 + 4x - 12 = 0$ **f** $x^2 + 2x - 15 = 0$
g $x^2 - x - 20 = 0$ **h** $x^2 - 5x - 24 = 0$
i $x^2 - 12x + 32 = 0$ **j** $x^2 + 4x + 4 = 0$
k $x^2 + 10x + 25 = 0$ **l** $x^2 - 8x + 16 = 0$
m $x^2 - 14x + 49 = 0$ **n** $x^2 - 24x + 144 = 0$

Parts **j** to **n** are perfect squares, so you will find only one solution.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 8–10

8 How many different solutions for x will these equations have?

a $(x - 2)(x - 1) = 0$ **b** $(x + 7)(x + 3) = 0$ **c** $(x + 1)(x + 1) = 0$
d $(x - 3)(x - 3) = 0$ **e** $(x + \sqrt{2})(x - \sqrt{2}) = 0$ **f** $(x + 8)(x - \sqrt{5}) = 0$
g $(x + 2)^2 = 0$ **h** $(x + 3)^2 = 0$ **i** $3(2x + 1)^2 = 0$

9 The height of a paper plane above floor level, in metres, is given by $-\frac{1}{5}t(t - 10)$, where t is in seconds.

a Find the height of the plane after:
- **i** 2 seconds
- **ii** 6 seconds

b Solve $-\frac{1}{5}t(t - 10) = 0$ for t.

c How long does it take for the plane to hit the ground after it is launched?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10E

10 Solve by first taking out a common factor.

a $2x^2 + 16x + 24 = 0$

b $2x^2 - 20x - 22 = 0$

c $3x^2 - 18x + 27 = 0$

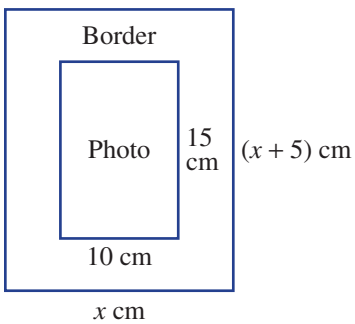
d $5x^2 - 20x + 20 = 0$

First take out the common factor, then factorise before using the null factor law.

Photo albums

—11

11 A printer produces rectangular photo albums. Each page has a length 5 cm more than the width, and includes a spot in the middle for a standard 10 cm by 15 cm photo.



a Find the area of the photo.

b Find an expression for:

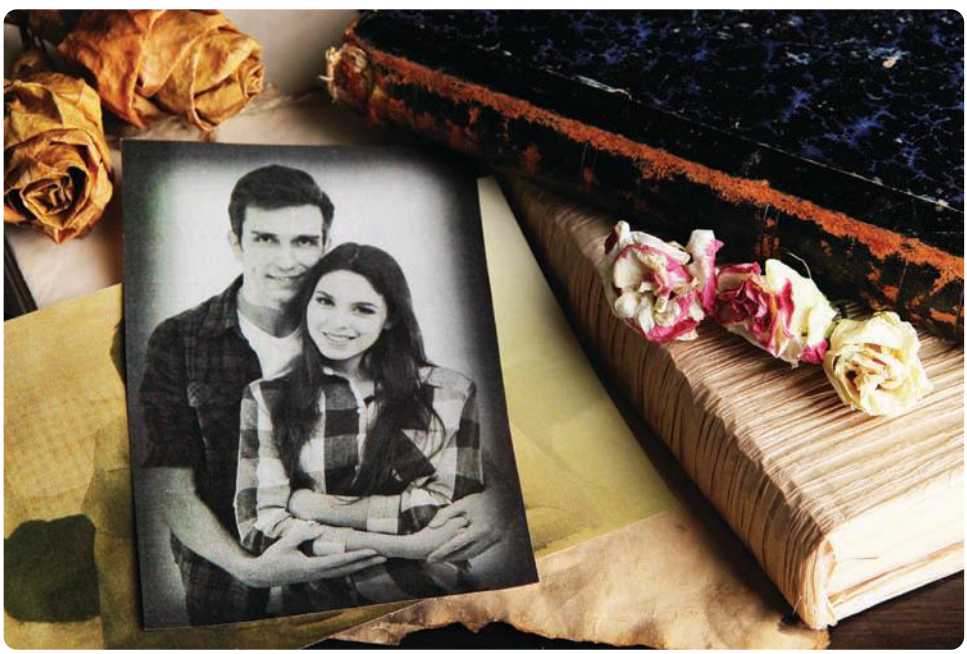
i the total area of a page

ii the border area of a page (i.e. excluding the photo)

c Factorise your expression for the border area.

d For what value of x is the border area equal to zero?

e For what value of x is the border area equal to 350 cm^2?



Using technology 10E: Solving $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ using the null factor law.
This activity is available on the companion website as a printable PDF.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10F Applications of quadratics

Interactive

Widgets

HOTsheets

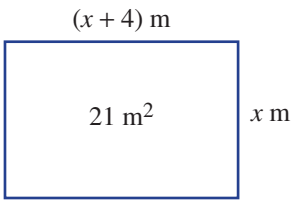
Walkthrough

Defining variables, setting up equations, solving equations and interpreting solutions are all important elements of applying quadratics in problem solving. For example, the area of a rectangular paddock that can be fenced off using a limited length of fencing can be found by setting up a quadratic equation, solving it and then interpreting the solutions.

Let's start: Rectangular quadratics

The length of a rectangular room is 4 m longer than its width, which is x metres. Its area is 21 m^2.

- Write an expression for the area using the variable x.
- Use the 21 m^2 area fact to set up an equation equal to zero.
- Factorise and solve the equation to find x and then find the dimensions of the rectangle.



Key ideas

- When applying quadratic equations:
  - Define a pronumeral; i.e. 'Let x be …'.
  - Write an equation.
  - Solve the equation.
  - Choose the solution(s) that solves the equation and answers the question.

Exercise 10F

UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Write expressions for each of the following.

a The length of a rectangle if it is 4 more than its width, x.
b The length of a rectangle if it is 10 more than its width, x.
c The length of a rectangle if it is 7 less than its width, x.
d The height of a triangle if it is 2 less than its base, x.
e The height of a triangle if it is 6 more than its base, x.

An example of an expression is $x + 3$.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10F

2 Rearrange these equations so that there is a zero on the right-hand side. Do not try to solve the equation.

a $x^2 + 2x = 3$

b $x^2 - 3x = 5$

c $x^2 + 7x = 4$

Subtract from both sides to give a zero on the right-hand side.

3 Factorise and solve these equations. Only give the positive answer for x.

a $x^2 - x - 6 = 0$ **b** $x^2 - 3x - 10 = 0$ **c** $x^2 + 2x - 24 = 0$

FLUENCY 4–6 4–7

Example 18 Finding dimensions

The area of a rectangle is fixed at 28 m^2 and its length is 3 m more than its width. Find the dimensions of the rectangle.

Solution	Explanation
Let x m be the width of the rectangle.	$(x + 3)$ m x m | 28 m^2
Length = $(x + 3)$ m	
$x(x + 3) = 28$	Write an equation for area using the given information.
$x^2 + 3x - 28 = 0$	Then write with a zero on the right and solve for x.
$(x + 7)(x - 4) = 0$	
$x = -7$ or $x = 4$	Disregard $x = -7$ because x must be greater than zero.
Choose $x = 4$.	
Rectangle has width 4 m and length 7 m.	Answer the question in full.

4 A rectangle has an area of 24 m^2. Its length is 5 m longer than its width.

$(x + 5)$ m

x m | 24 m^2

a Copy this sentence: 'Let x m be the width of the rectangle.'

b Write an expression for the rectangle's length.

c Write an equation using the rectangle's area.

d Write your equation from part **c** with a zero on the right-hand side, and solve for x.

e Find the dimensions of the rectangle.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 Repeat all the steps in Question **4** to find the dimensions of a rectangle with the following properties.

a Its area is 60 m^2 and its length is 4 m more than its width.

b Its area is 63 m^2 and its length is 2 m less than its width.

c Its area is 154 mm^2 and its length is 3 mm less than its width.

Carefully set out each step, as in Example **15** and Question **4**.

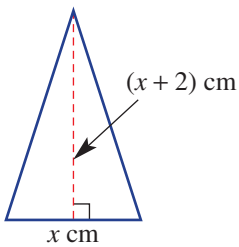
6 A triangle's area is 4 cm^2 and its height is 2 cm more than its base.

a Write an expression for the area of the triangle, using $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$.

b Write an equation using the 4 cm^2 area fact.

c Multiply both sides by 2 and write your equation with a zero on the right side.

d Solve your equation to find the base and height dimensions of the triangle.



7 Find the height and base lengths of a triangle that has an area of 7 m^2 and height 5 m less than its base.

PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 8, 9 9–11

8 The product of two consecutive whole numbers (x and $x + 1$) is 132, so $x(x + 1) = 132$.

a Expand the equation and make a zero on the right side.

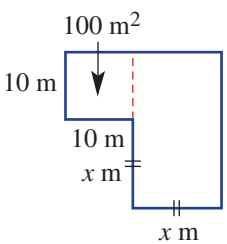
b Solve the equation to find the two values of x.

c List the two pairs of consecutive numbers that multiply to 132.

'Product' means 'times'. 'Consecutive' means 'next to'; e.g. 4 and 5 are consecutive whole numbers.

9 The product of two consecutive numbers is 72. Use a quadratic equation to find the two sets of numbers. *Hint*: Let x be the smaller number.

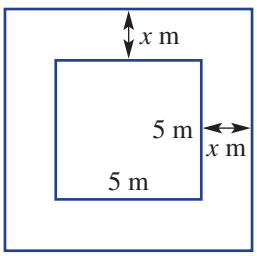
10 A 100 m^2 hay shed is to be expanded to give 475 m^2 of floor space in total, as shown in the diagram. Find the value of x. *Hint*: Find an expression for the total area using x, then set equal to 475.



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10F

11 A square hut of side length 5 m is to be surrounded with a verandah of width x metres. Find the width of the verandah if its area is to be 24 m^2.



What is the side length of the verandah?

Projectile maths

—

12, 13

12 A ball is thrust vertically upwards from a machine on the ground. The height (h metres) after t seconds is given by $h = t(4 - t)$.

- **a** Find the height after 1.5 seconds.
- **b** Find when the ball is at a height of 3 m.
- **c** Why are there two solutions to part **b**?
- **d** Find when the ball is at ground level.
- **e** Find when the ball is at a height of 4 m.
- **f** Why is there only one solution for part **e**?
- **g** Is there a time when the ball is at a height of 5 m? Explain.

13 The height, h (in metres), of a rocket is given by $h = -x^2 + 100x$, where x metres is the horizontal distance from where the rocket was launched.

- **a** Find the values of x when $h = 0$.
- **b** Interpret your answer from part **a**.
- **c** Find how far the rocket has travelled horizontally when the height is 196 m.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Progress quiz

10A **1** Expand the following.

a $(x+2)(x+6)$
b $(2x+3)(3x-5)$
c $(3x-1)(2x-5)$

10A **2** Expand the following.

a $(x+6)^2$
b $(2x-3)^2$
c $(x-5)(x+5)$
d $(3x+4)(3x-4)$

10B **3** Factorise these differences of perfect squares.

a x^2-4
b y^2-81
c $9x^2-25$
d $16x^2-49y^2$

10C **4** Factorise these trinomials.

a $x^2+9x+14$
b $x^2-2x-15$
c x^2-5x+4
d $x^2+10x+25$

10B/C **5** Factorise the following by first taking out the common factor.

a $2x^2-72$
b $12y^2-27$
c $2x^2+10x-28$

10D **6** Find all possible solutions to the following equations. Give exact answers.

a $x^2=25$
b $2x^2=72$
c $x^2=14$
d $x^2+9=0$
e $x^2-2=9$
f $6-x^2=2, x<0$

10E **7** Use the null factor law to solve these equations.

a $x(x+2)=0$
b $(x-3)(x+3)=0$
c $(2x-1)(x+4)=0$

10E **8** Factorise these quadratic equations and then apply the null factor law to solve.

a $x^2-4x=0$
b $x^2-36=0$
c $x^2+3x-40=0$
d $6x^2-12x=0$
e $4x^2-1=0$
f $x^2-8x+16=0$

10F **9** The area of a rectangle is fixed at 21 m^2. If its length is 4 m more than its width, find the dimensions of the rectangle.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

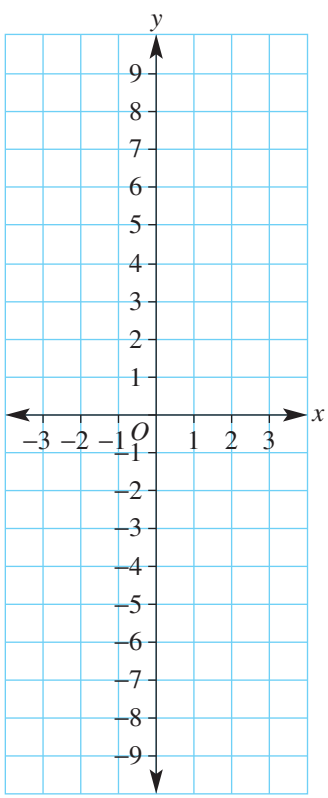
10G Exploring parabolas

One of the simplest and most important non-linear graphs is the parabola. When a ball is thrown or water streams up and out from a garden hose or fountain, the path followed has a parabolic shape. The parabola is the graph of a quadratic relation with the basic rule $y = x^2$. Quadratic rules, such as $y = (x - 1)^2$ and $y = 2x^2 - x - 3$, also give graphs that are parabolas and are transformations of the graph of $y = x^2$.

Let's start: To what effect?

To see how different quadratic rules compare to the graph of $y = x^2$, complete this table and plot the graph of each equation on the same set of axes.

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
$y_1 = x^2$	9	4					
$y_2 = -x^2$	-9						
$y_3 = (x - 2)^2$	25	16	9				
$y_4 = x^2 - 3$	6						

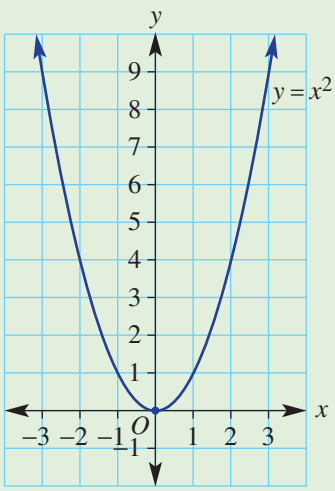


- For all the graphs, find such features as the:
  - turning point
  - axis of symmetry
  - y-intercept
  - x-intercepts
- Discuss how each of the graphs of y_2, y_3 and y_4 compare to the graph of $y = x^2$. Compare the rule with the position of the graph.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

- A **parabola** is the graph of a quadratic relation. The basic parabola has the rule $y = x^2$.
  - The vertex (or turning point) is $(0, 0)$.
  - It is a minimum turning point.
  - Axis of symmetry is $x = 0$.
  - y-intercept is 0.
  - x-intercept is 0.



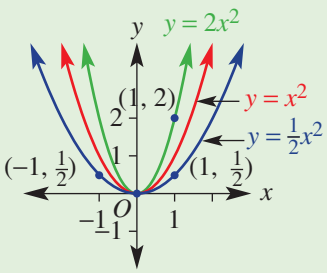
Parabola A smooth U-shaped curve with the basic rule $y = x^2$

Dilation A transformation where a curve is enlarged or reduced but the centre is not changed

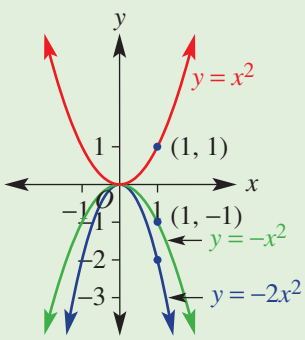
Reflection A transformation where a curve is flipped across a line on the number plane

Translation A transformation where a curve is moved a certain distance on the number plane

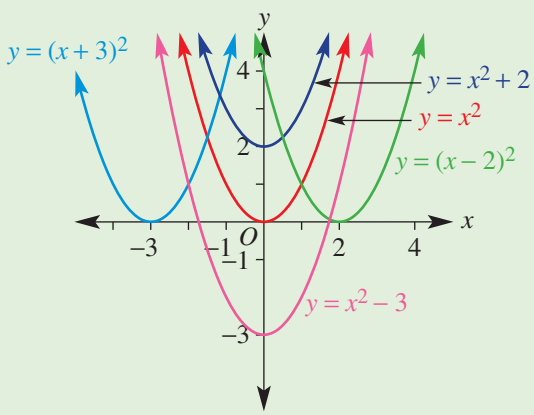
- Simple transformations of the graph of $y = x^2$ include:
  - **dilation**



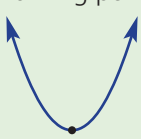
  - **reflection**



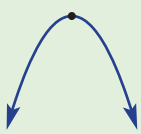
  - **translation**



- Turning points can be a maximum or a minimum.



Minimum turning point



Maximum turning point

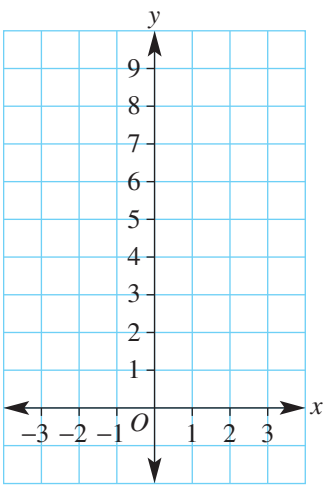
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 10G

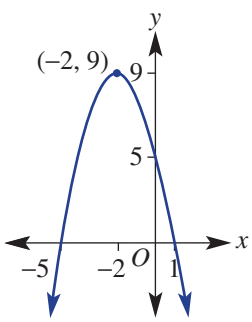
UNDERSTANDING 1–3 3

1 Complete this table and grid to plot the graph of $y = x^2$.

x	−3	−2	−1	0	1	2	3
y	9						



2 Write the missing features for this graph in the sentences below.



a The parabola has a _____ (maximum or minimum).

b The coordinates of the turning point are _____ .

c The y-intercept is _____.

d The x-intercepts are _____ and _____.

e The axis of symmetry is _____.

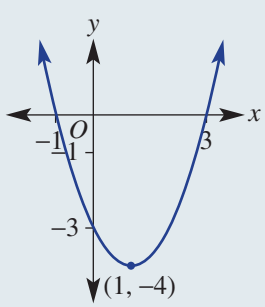
Example 19 Identifying key features of parabolas

Determine the following key features of each of the given graphs.

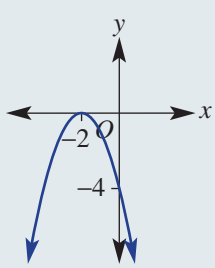
i turning point and whether it is a maximum or minimum

ii axis of symmetry **iii** x-intercepts **iv** y-intercept

a



b



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

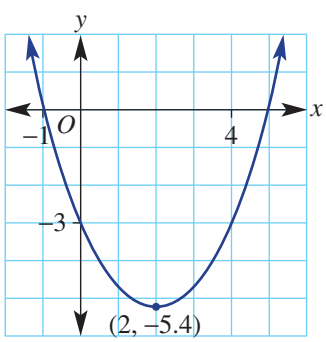
Solution	Explanation
a i Turning point is a minimum at $(1, -4)$.	Lowest point of graph is at $(1, -4)$.
ii Axis of symmetry is $x = 1$.	Line of symmetry is through the x-coordinate of the turning point.
iii x-intercepts at -1 and 3.	x-intercepts lie on the x-axis ($y = 0$) and the y-intercept on the y-axis ($x = 0$).
iv y-intercept at -3.	
b i Turning point is a maximum at $(-2, 0)$.	Graph has a highest point at $(-2, 0)$.
ii Axis of symmetry is $x = -2$.	Line of symmetry is through the x-coordinate of the turning point.
iii x-intercept at -2.	Turning point is also the one x-intercept.
iv y-intercept at -4.	

3 Determine these key features of the following graphs.

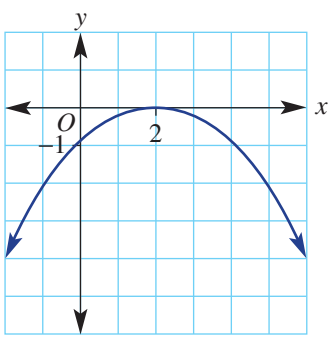
i turning point and whether it is a maximum or minimum
ii axis of symmetry
iii x-intercepts
iv y-intercept

An axis of symmetry is described by a rule such as $x = 2$ or $x = -3$.

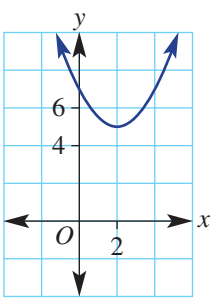
a



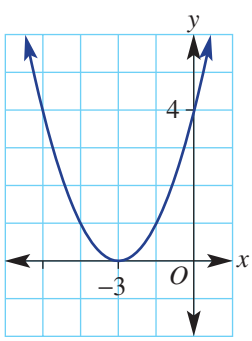
b



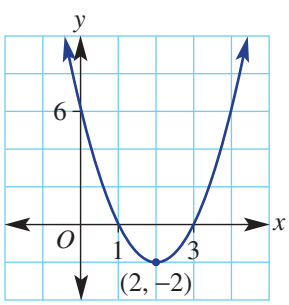
c



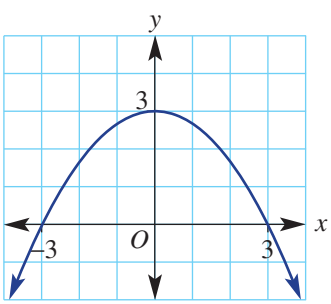
d



e



f



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

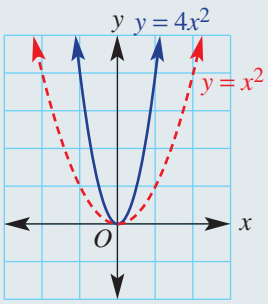
10G

FLUENCY 4–6 4–6

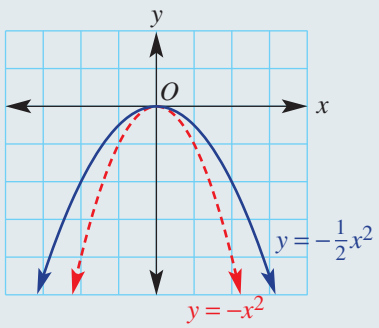
Example 20 Dilating and reflecting parabolas

Copy and complete the table for the following graphs.

a



b



	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = 4x^2$					
b	$y = -\frac{1}{2}x^2$					

Solution

	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = 4x^2$	Minimum	No	$(0, 0)$	4	Narrower
b	$y = -\frac{1}{2}x^2$	Maximum	Yes	$(0, 0)$	$-\frac{1}{2}$	Wider

Explanation

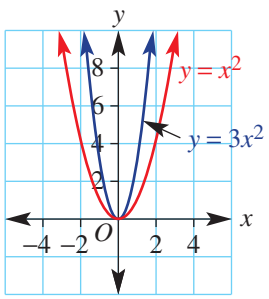
Read features from graphs and consider the effect of each change in equation on the graph.

4 Copy and complete the table below for the graphs that follow on the next page.

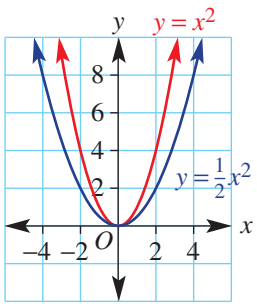
	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = 3x^2$					
b	$y = \frac{1}{2}x^2$					
c	$y = 2x^2$					
d	$y = -4x^2$					
e	$y = -\frac{1}{3}x^2$					
f	$y = -2x^2$					

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

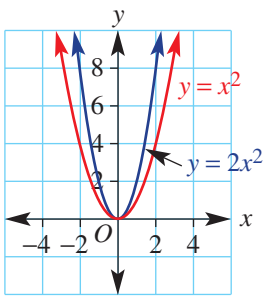
a



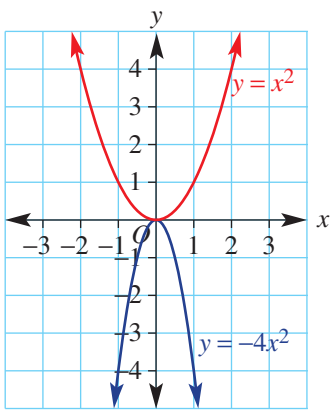
b



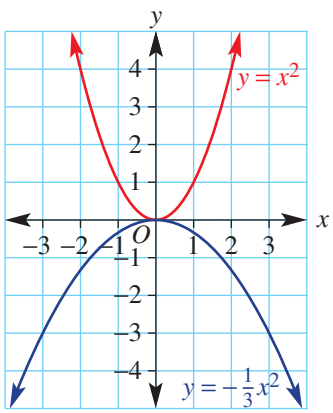
c



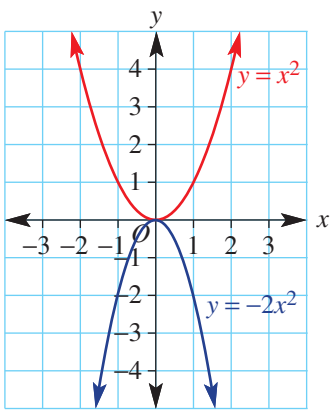
d



e



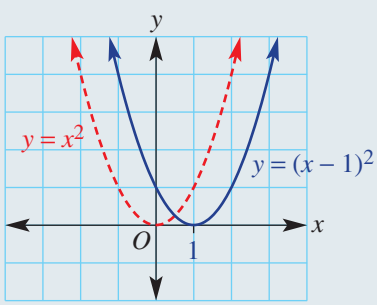
f



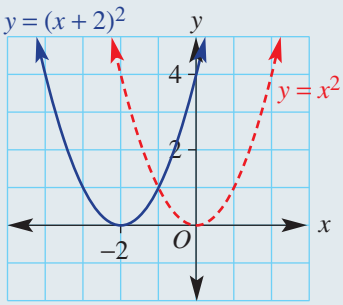
Example 21 Translating horizontally

Copy and complete the table for the following graphs.

a



b



	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = (x - 1)^2$					
b	$y = (x + 2)^2$					

Solution

	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = (x - 1)^2$	Minimum	No	$(1, 0)$	0	Same
b	$y = (x + 2)^2$	Minimum	No	$(-2, 0)$	9	Same

Explanation

The effect is to shift right or left; right for part **a** and left for part **b**.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

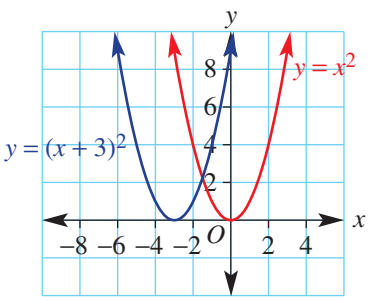
10G

5 Copy and complete the table below for the graphs that follow.

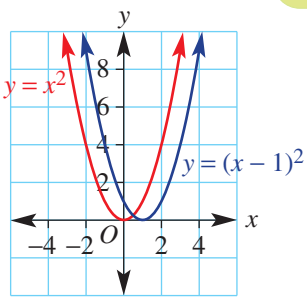
	Formula	Turning point	Axis of symmetry	y-intercept ($x = 0$)	x-intercept
a	$y = (x+3)^2$				
b	$y = (x-1)^2$				
c	$y = (x-2)^2$				
d	$y = (x+4)^2$				

The axis of symmetry is a vertical line passing through the turning point of a parabola. The equation is given by the x coordinate of the turning point.

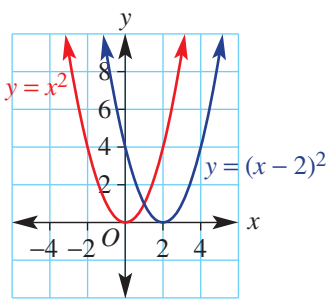
a



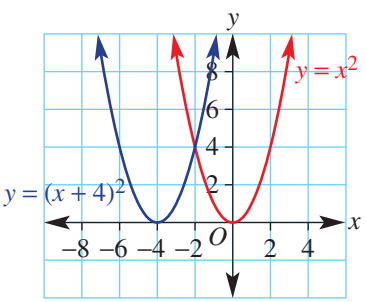
b



c



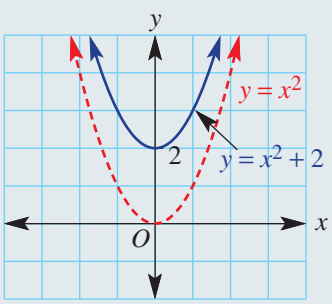
d



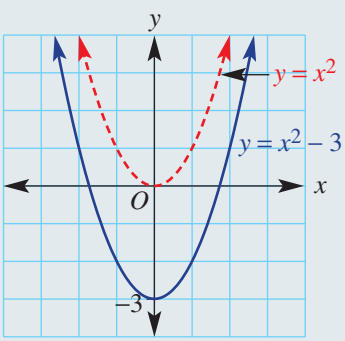
Example 22 Translating vertically

Copy and complete the table for the following graphs.

a



b



	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = x^2 + 2$					
b	$y = x^2 - 3$					

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Solution

	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = x^2 + 2$	Minimum	No	$(0, 2)$	3	Same
b	$y = x^2 - 3$	Minimum	No	$(0, -3)$	-2	Same

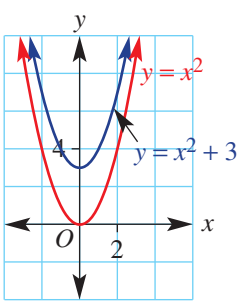
Explanation

The effect is to shift up or down; up for $y = x^2 + 2$ and down for $y = x^2 - 3$.

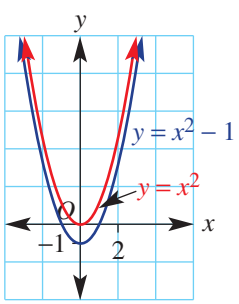
6 Copy and complete the table for the graphs that follow.

	Formula	Turning point	y-intercept ($x = 0$)	y-value when $x = 1$
a	$y = x^2 + 3$			
b	$y = x^2 - 1$			
c	$y = x^2 + 2$			
d	$y = x^2 - 4$			

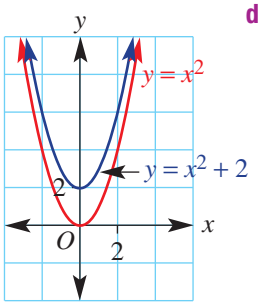
a



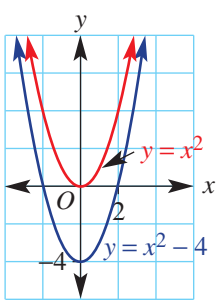
b



c



d



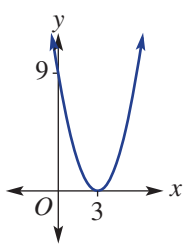
PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 7 7, 8

7 Match each of the following equations to one of the graphs below.

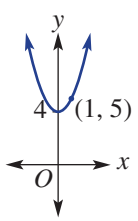
a $y = 2x^2$ b $y = x^2 - 6$ c $y = (x + 2)^2$

d $y = -5x^2$ e $y = (x - 3)^2$ f $y = x^2 + 4$

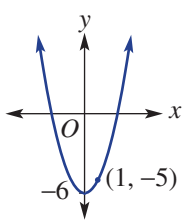
i



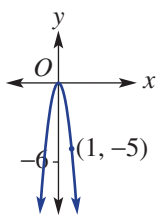
ii



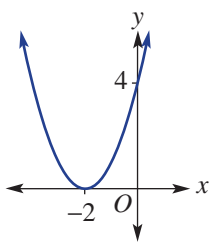
iii



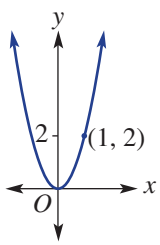
iv



v



vi



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

10G

8 Write a rule for a parabola with each feature.

a same shape as $y = x^2$, minimum turning point $(0, 2)$

b same shape as $y = x^2$, maximum turning point $(0, 0)$

c same shape as $y = x^2$, minimum turning point $(-1, 0)$

d same shape as $y = x^2$, minimum turning point $(5, 0)$

What turns $y = x^2$ into a graph with a maximum turning point?

Parabolas with technology

— 9–11

9 **a** Using technology, plot the following pairs of graphs on the same set of axes for $-5 \leq x \leq 5$ and compare their tables of values.

i $y = x^2$ and $y = 4x^2$ **ii** $y = x^2$ and $y = \frac{1}{3}x^2$ **iii** $y = x^2$ and $y = 6x^2$

iv $y = x^2$ and $y = \frac{1}{4}x^2$ **v** $y = x^2$ and $y = 7x^2$ **vi** $y = x^2$ and $y = \frac{2}{5}x^2$

b Suggest how the constant a in $y = ax^2$ transforms the graph of $y = x^2$.

10 **a** Using technology, plot the following sets of graphs on the same set of axes for $-5 \leq x \leq 5$ and compare the turning point of each.

i $y = x^2, y = (x + 1)^2, y = (x + 2)^2, y = (x + 3)^2$

ii $y = x^2, y = (x - 1)^2, y = (x - 2)^2, y = (x - 3)^2$

b Explain how the constant h in $y = (x + h)^2$ transforms the graph of $y = x^2$.

11 **a** Using technology, plot the following sets of graphs on the same set of axes for $-5 \leq x \leq 5$ and compare the turning point of each.

i $y = x^2, y = x^2 + 1, y = x^2 + 2, y = x^2 + 3$

ii $y = x^2, y = x^2 - 1, y = x^2 - 3, y = x^2 - 5$

b Explain how the constant k in $y = x^2 + k$ transforms the graph of $y = x^2$.

Using technology 10G: Sketching parabolas

This activity is available on the companion website as a printable PDF.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10H Graphs of circles and exponentials

We know the circle as a common shape in geometry. We can also describe a circle using a rule and as a graph on the Cartesian plane.

We can also use graphs to illustrate exponential relationships. For example, the population of the world or the balance of an investment account can be described using exponential rules that include indices. The rule $A = 100\,000(1.05)^t$ describes the account balance of $\$100\,000$ invested at 5% p.a. compound interest for t years.

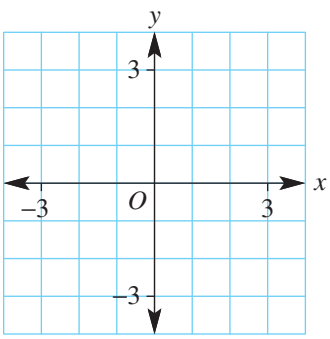
Large populations can be graphed using an exponential rule.

Let's start: Plotting non-linear curves

A graph has the rule $x^2 + y^2 = 9$.

- When $x = 0$ what are the two values of y?
- When $x = 1$ what are the two values of y?
- When $x = 4$ are there any values of y? Discuss.
- Complete this table of values.

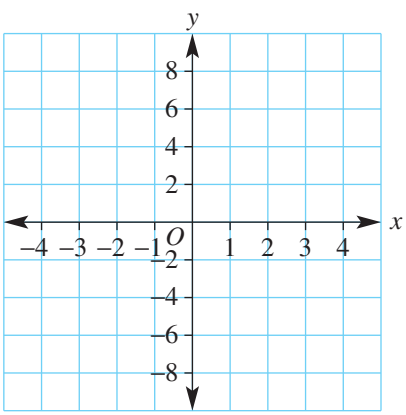
x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
y		$\pm\sqrt{5}$					



- Now plot all your points on a number plane and join them to form a smooth curve.
- What shape have you drawn and what are its features?
- How does the radius of your circle relate to the equation?

Complete this table and graph the rule $y = 2^x$ before discussing the points below.

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
$y = 2^x$	$\frac{1}{8}$			1		4	

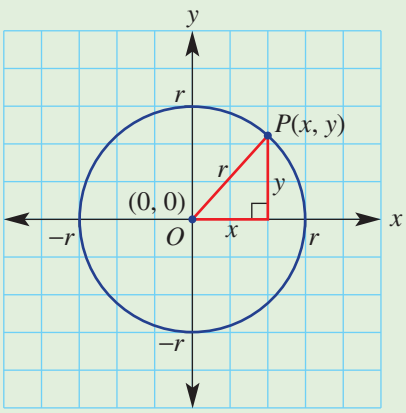


- Discuss the shape of the graph.
- Where does the graph cut the y-axis?
- Does the graph have an x-intercept? Why not?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Key ideas

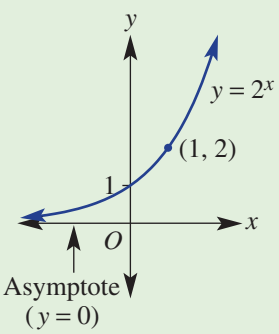
- The Cartesian equation of a circle with centre $(0, 0)$ and radius r is given by $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$.



Using Pythagoras' theorem:
$a^2 + b^2 = c^2$ gives $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$.

- A simple **exponential** rule is of the form $y = a^x$, where $a > 0$ and $a \neq 1$.
  - y-intercept is 1.
  - $y = 0$ is the equation of the asymptote.

- An **asymptote** is a line that a curve approaches but never touches. The curve gets closer and closer to the line so that the distance between the curve and the line approaches zero, but the curve never meets the line so the distance is never zero.



Exponential (notation) A way of representing repeated multiplication of the same number

Asymptote A line whose distance to a curve approaches zero, and the curve never touches it

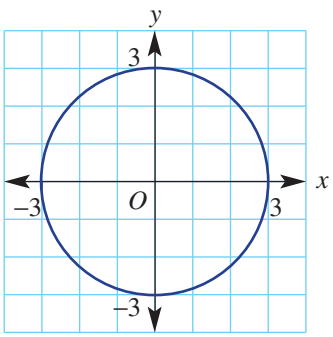
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 10H

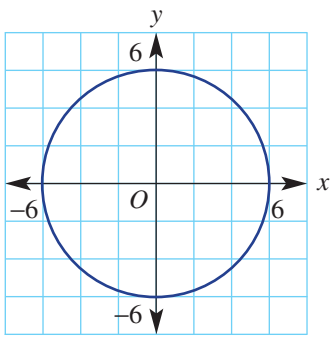
UNDERSTANDING 1–4 | 4

1 Write the coordinates of the centre and give the radius of these circles.

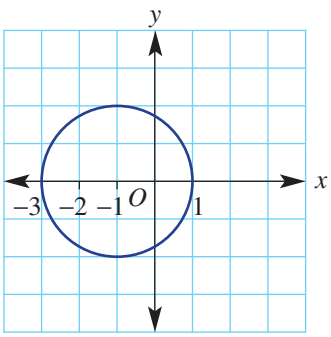
a



b



c



2 Solve these equations for the unknown variable, correct to one decimal place where necessary.

a $x^2 + 2^2 = 9$

b $x^2 + 3^2 = 25$

c $5^2 + y^2 = 36$

There are two answers for each. ± 4 means the answers are $+4$ and -4.

3 A circle has equation $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$. Complete these sentences.

a The centre of the circle is _____.

b The radius of the circle is _____.

4 Evaluate:

a 2^0 **b** 2^1 **c** 2^4 **d** 3^0 **e** 3^1

f 3^3 **g** 4^0 **h** 4^2 **i** 5^0

FLUENCY 5–7 | 5, 7, 8

Example 23 Sketching a circle

Complete the following for the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 4$.

a State the coordinates of the centre.

b State the radius.

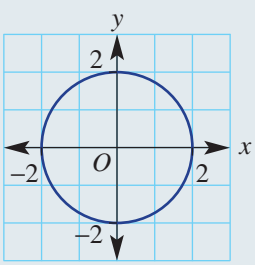
c Find the values of y when $x = 1$, correct to one decimal place.

d Find the values of x when $y = 0$.

e Sketch a graph showing intercepts.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10H

Solution	Explanation
a $(0, 0)$	$(0, 0)$ is the centre for all circles $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$.
b $r = 2$	$x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ so $r^2 = 4$.
c $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ $1^2 + y^2 = 4$ $y^2 = 3$ $y = \pm 1.7$ (to 1 d.p.)	Substitute $x = 1$ and solve for y. $y^2 = 3$, so $y = \pm\sqrt{3}$. $\sqrt{3} \approx 1.7$
d $x^2 + 0^2 = 4$ $x^2 = 4$ $x = \pm 2$	Substitute $y = 0$. Solve for x. Both $(-2)^2$ and $2^2 = 4$.
e 	Draw a circle with centre $(0, 0)$ and radius 2. Label intercepts.

5 A circle has equation $x^2 + y^2 = 9$. Complete the following.
- **a** State the coordinates of the centre.
- **b** State the radius.
- **c** Find the values of y when $x = 2$, correct to one decimal place.
- **d** Find the values of x when $y = 0$.
- **e** Sketch a graph showing intercepts.

6 Complete the following for the equation $x^2 + y^2 = 25$.
- **a** State the coordinates of the centre.
- **b** State the radius.
- **c** Find the values of y when $x = 4$.
- **d** Find the values of x when $y = 0$.
- **e** Sketch a graph showing intercepts.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Example 24 Plotting an exponential graph

For the rule $y = 2^x$:

a Complete this table.

b Plot points to form its graph.

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
y	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$				

Solution

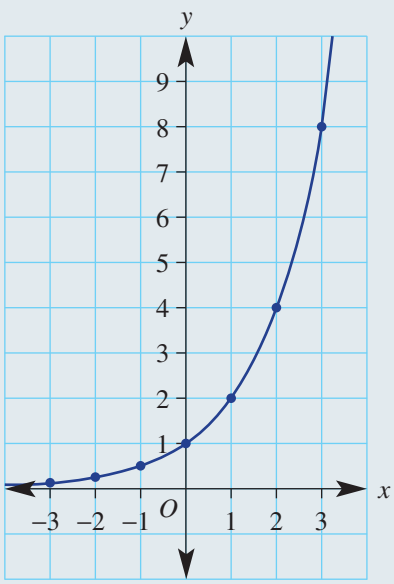
a

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
y	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	2	4	8

Explanation

$2^0 = 1, 2^1 = 2, 2^2 = 4, 2^3 = 8.$

b



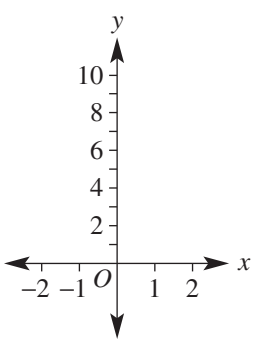
Plot each point and join to form a smooth curve.

7 Consider the exponential rule $y = 3^x$.

a Complete this table.

x	-2	-1	0	1	2
y	$\frac{1}{9}$	$\frac{1}{3}$			

b Plot the points in the table to form the graph of $y = 3^x$.



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

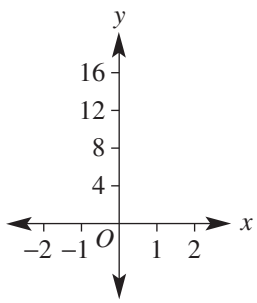
10H

8 Consider the exponential rule $y = 4^x$.

a Complete this table.

x	-2	-1	0	1	2
y	$\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{1}{4}$			

b Plot the points in the table to form the graph of $y = 4^x$.



PROBLEM-SOLVING AND REASONING 9–11 10–13

9 **a** Sketch the graph of the following on the same set of axes, labelling the y-intercept and the point where $x = 1$.

i $y = 2^x$
ii $y = 4^x$
iii $y = 5^x$

b What do you notice about the y-intercept on each graph?

c What does increasing the base number do to each graph?

Use this table to help.

x	-1	0	1	2
$y = 2^x$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1		
$y = 4^x$	$\frac{1}{4}$			
$y = 5^x$	$\frac{1}{5}$			

10 Give the radius of the circles with these equations.

a $x^2 + y^2 = 36$ **b** $x^2 + y^2 = 81$ **c** $x^2 + y^2 = 144$
d $x^2 + y^2 = 5$ **e** $x^2 + y^2 = 14$ **f** $x^2 + y^2 = 20$

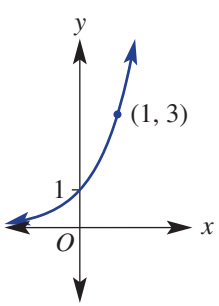
Remember: $x^2 + y^2 = r^2$

11 Write the equation of a circle with centre $(0, 0)$ and radius 7.

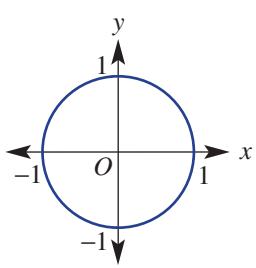
12 Match equations **a**–**c** with graphs **A**–**C**.

a $y = -x - 2$ **b** $y = 3^x$ **c** $x^2 + y^2 = 1$

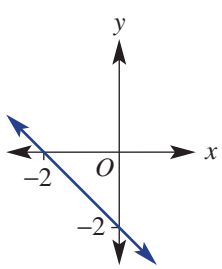
A



B



C



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

13 A study shows that the population of a town is modelled by the rule $P = 2^t$, where t is in years and P is in thousands of people.

a State the number of people in the town at the start of the study (i.e. $t = 0$).

b State the number of people in the town after:

i 1 year **ii** 3 years

c When is the town's population expected to reach:

i 4000 people? **ii** 16 000 people?

If $P = 3$, there are 3000 people.

Graphs of hyperbolas

14, 15

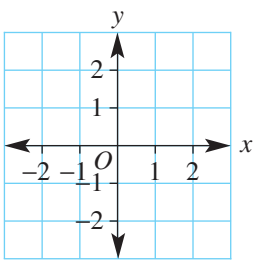
Another type of graph is called a hyperbola and it comes from the rule $y = \frac{1}{x}$.

14 A hyperbola has the rule $y = \frac{1}{x}$.

a Complete this table.

x	-2	-1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	2
y						

b Plot the points to form the graph of $y = \frac{1}{x}$.

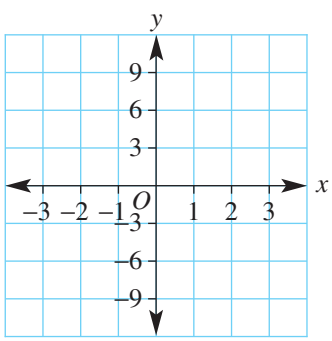


15 A hyperbola has the rule $y = \frac{3}{x}$.

a Complete this table.

x	-3	-1	$-\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	1	3
y						

b Plot the points to form the graph of $y = \frac{3}{x}$.



Using technology 10H: Graphing circles and other graphs

This activity is available on the companion website as a printable PDF.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Maths@Work: Driving instructor

Driving instructors have a challenging job, teaching often young and inexperienced drivers how to be safe on the roads. Instructors must have a valid driver's license and a Certificate IV in Transport and logistics for Road transport–Car Driving instruction.

Workplace skills needed by a driving instructor include good communication skills, patience, the ability to teach and instruct, as well as a good knowledge of motor vehicle operation and safety. Good driving instructors understand the mathematics involved in speed, fuel consumption, angles for parking, braking and stopping distances. They also need to calculate hourly rates of pay and charge clients correctly.

Understanding braking distances and stopping distances is important when training to be an instructor. Answer the following questions relating to the rules used to calculate these distances.

1 Show your working for the following calculations.

a By what fraction do you multiply when converting 1 km/h to m/s (metres per second)?

b By what fraction do you multiply when converting 1 m/s to km/h?

1 km = 1000 m
1 h = 3600 s

2 Convert the following speeds to m/s. Give your answers to two decimal places.

a 40 km/h **b** 50 km/h **c** 60 km/h **d** 70 km/h **e** 80 km/h **f** 100 km/h

3 A driver's reaction time to danger before applying a vehicle's brakes is approximately 0.7 seconds at best. The distance travelled while reacting to a situation can be found by rearranging the formula for speed.

Distance = speed × time

Find the formula for the reaction distance (R), in metres, travelled in 0.7 seconds at a speed of s metres per second.

4 Use your answer to Question **3** to find the distance covered in the reaction time at each of the following speeds. Give your answers in metres, to two decimal places.

a 40 km/h **b** 50 km/h **c** 60 km/h **d** 70 km/h **e** 80 km/h **f** 100 km/h

5 The formula for the braking distance, B, in metres, of a car in dry conditions is $B = \frac{s^2}{20}$, where s is the speed in m/s. Calculate the braking distance for each of the following speeds. Give your answers in metres to two decimal places.

a 40 km/h **b** 50 km/h **c** 60 km/h **d** 70 km/h **e** 80 km/h **f** 100 km/h

6 **a** Write an equation for the total stopping distance (D) by adding the reaction time distance (R) to the braking distance (B).

b What type of equation is formed for total stopping distance?

c How would you explain to a learner driver how the total stopping distance increases as speed increases?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Using technology

7 **a** Set up an Excel worksheet to calculate stopping distances for the various speeds, as shown in this snapshot below. You will need to enter appropriate formulas in the shaded cells.

Recall: reaction distance = $0.7 \times$ speed

	A	B	C	D	E
1	Stopping distances at various speeds				
2	Speed, in km/h	Speed, in m/s	Reaction distance, in m	Braking distance, in m	Total stopping distance, in m
3	0	0	0	0	0
4	10				
5	20				
6	30				
7	40				
8	50				
9	60				
10	70				
11	80				
12	90				
13	100				
14	110				

b At what speed is the reaction distance almost equal to the braking distance? Give the total stopping distance for this speed.

c Given that the average car length is 4.8 m, at what speed is the total braking distance about:

i 4 car lengths?

ii 10 car lengths?

d Extend your Excel table to help answer the following questions.

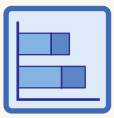
i When your speed increases by 10%, what is the % increase in braking distance? Try some different starting speeds to check your answer.

ii What is the % increase in braking distance when you increase your speed by:

I 20%?

II 30%?

e Insert a stacked bar graph in your worksheet, showing reaction and braking distances for various speeds. Follow these steps:

- Insert a new column A titled 'Speeds' and enter each speed with units; e.g. 10 km/h, 20 km/h, 30 km/h etc.
- Hold Ctrl and select this new column of speeds, the columns of distances of reaction and braking, including each of their column headings.
- Click on Insert/2D stacked bar: 
- Format the horizontal axis with a minor unit of 5 and show minor gridlines.

f Driving instructors can explain to learner drivers the mathematical reasons for speed limits. From your graph, state the highest speed that would allow a driver to stop before a collision if an object (e.g. a kangaroo or another vehicle) suddenly appeared in front of the car at these distances:

i 20 m **ii** 35 m **iii** 50 m **iv** 60 m

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Puzzles and games

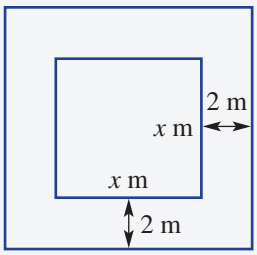
1 I am a beautiful curve! Solve the equations and then match the letters to the answers to find out what I am.

O	B	A	L	P	R
2^3	Radius of $x^2 + y^2 = 16$	Solution to $(x-3)^2 = 0$	$x^2 - x$	$-2(x-1)$	Solution to $x^2 - 2x - 8 = 0$
$-2x+2$	3	4, −2	3	4	8	$x(x-1)$	3

2 A square pool of side length x metres is surrounded by a 2 m wide tiled edge.

a Find an expression for the total area.

b For what value of x is the total area equal to 100 m^2?



3 A book's length is 6 cm longer than its width and its total cover area is 280 cm^2. What are its dimensions?

4 The product of two consecutive even numbers is 168. Find the two numbers.

5 A father's age is the square of his son's age (x). In 20 years' time the father will be 3 times as old as his son. What are the ages of the father and son?

6 A rectangular painting is to have a total area (including the frame) of 1200 cm^2. The painting is 30 cm long and 20 cm wide. Find the width of the frame.

7 Simplify these expressions.

a $4x - 3(2 - x)$

b $(x-1)^2 - (x+1)^2$

c $\dfrac{x^2 - x - 6}{x + 2}$

8 A cyclist in a charity ride rides 300 km at a constant average speed. If the average speed had been 5 km/h faster, the ride would have taken 2 hours less. What was the average speed of the cyclist?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter summary

Quadratic equations ★

Factorising $x^2 + bx + c$

Two numbers + to b.
Two numbers × to c.
e.g. $x^2 - 7x - 18 = (x - 9)(x + 2)$
$-9 \times 2 = -18$
$-9 + 2 = -7$

Expanding brackets

$a(b + c) = ab + ac$
$(a + b)(c + d) = ac + ad + bc + bd$
$(a + b)(a - b) = a^2 - b^2$ (DOPS)
$(a + b)^2 = a^2 + 2ab + b^2$
$(a - b)^2 = a^2 - 2ab + b^2$

Solving quadratic equations

- **Solving $ax^2 = c$**
  e.g. $2x^2 = 8$
  $x^2 = 4$
  $x = \pm 2$
- **Null factor law:**
  If $ab = 0$, then $a = 0$ or $b = 0$.
  Write each quadratic in standard form $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$, factorise and then apply the null factor law to solve.
  e.g. **1** $x^2 - 4x = 0$
  $x(x - 4) = 0$
  $x = 0$ or $x - 4 = 0$
  $x = 0$ or $x = 4$
  2 $x^2 - 3x + 10 = 0$
  $(x - 5)(x + 2) = 0$
  $x - 5 = 0$ or $x + 2 = 0$
  $x = 5$ or $x = -2$

Factorising and DOPS

Always take out common factors first.
Difference of perfect squares
$a^2 - b^2 = (a - b)(a + b)$
e.g. **1** $x^2 - 4 = x^2 - 2^2$
$= (x + 2)(x - 2)$
2 $4x^2 - 9 = (2x)^2 - (3)^2$
$= (2x - 3)(2x + 3)$

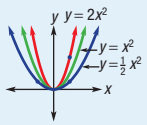
Applications

1. Define the variable.
2. Set up the equation.
3. Solve by factorising and using the null factor law.
4. Determine the suitable answer(s).

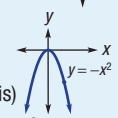
Parabolas ★

Transformations of a parabola

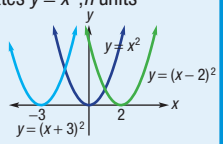
$y = ax^2$ dilates graph compared to $y = x^2$
$0 < a < 1$ graph is wider
$a > 1$ graph is narrower



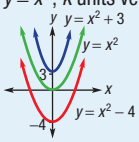
$a < 0$ graph is inverted (i.e reflected in x-axis)



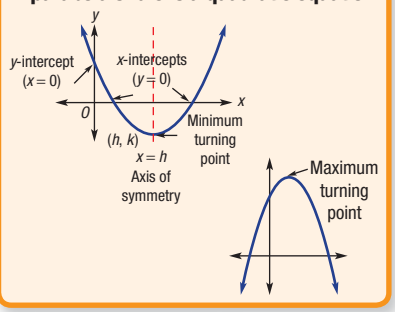
$y = (x - h)^2$ translates $y = x^2$, h units horizontally
$h > 0$ move right
$h < 0$ move left



$y = x^2 + k$ translates $y = x^2$, k units vertically
$k > 0$ move up
$k < 0$ move down



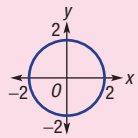
A parabola's rule is a quadratic equation



Other graphs ★

Circles

$x^2 + y^2 = r^2$ is a circle centred at (0, 0) with radius r.

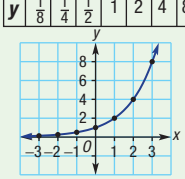


$x^2 + y^2 = 4$
$r^2 = 4$
$\therefore r = 2$

Exponential graphs

$y = 2^x$

x	−3	−2	−1	0	1	2	3
y	$\frac{1}{8}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	2	4	8



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter review

Multiple-choice questions

10A **1** $-2x(1-x)$ expands to:

A $-2+2x^2$ **B** $-2x-2x^2$ **C** $2x+2x^2$ **D** $-3x^2$ **E** $-2x+2x^2$

10A **2** $(x+5)^2$ is the same as:

A x^2+25 **B** x^2+5x **C** $x^2+5x+25$ **D** $x^2+10x+25$ **E** x^2+50

10A **3** $(2x-1)(x+4)$ is equal to:

A $2x^2+11x-2$ **B** $2x^2+7x-4$ **C** $4x^2+14x-8$ **D** $4x^2+9x-2$ **E** $2x^2+5x+4$

10B **4** In factorised form, $4x^2-25$ is:

A $4(x-5)(x+5)$ **B** $(2x-5)^2$ **C** $(2x-5)(2x+5)$
D $(4x+5)(x-5)$ **E** $2(2x+1)(x-25)$

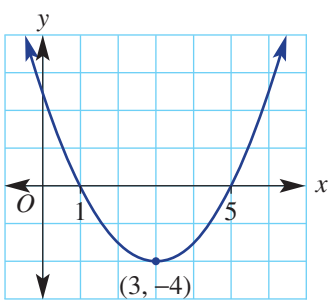
10E **5** The solutions to $2x^2-8x=0$ are:

A $x=0, x=-4$ **B** $x=2$ **C** $x=0, x=4$
D $x=4$ **E** $x=0, x=2$

10E **6** The solutions to $(2x-1)(x+1)=0$ are:

A $x=0, x=1$ **B** $x=-1, x=\frac{1}{2}$ **C** $x=-1, x=2$
D $x=-1, x=-2$ **E** $x=1, x=\frac{1}{2}$

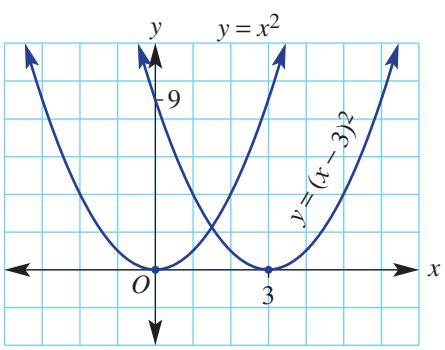
10G **7** The equation of the axis of symmetry of the graph shown is:



A $y=-4$ **B** $x=3$ **C** $x=-4$ **D** $y=3$ **E** $y=3x$

10G **8** Compared to the graph of $y=x^2$, the graph of $y=(x-3)^2$ is:

A 3 units down
B 3 units left
C in the same place
D 3 units right
E 3 units up



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

10H **9** The equation of a circle centred at the origin with radius 4 units is:

A $y = 4x^2$ **B** $x^2 + y^2 = 4$ **C** $x^2 + y^2 = 8$
D $y = 4x$ **E** $x^2 + y^2 = 16$

10H **10** The graph of $y = 3^x$ has y-intercept with coordinates:

A $(0, 3)$ **B** $(3, 0)$ **C** $(0, 1)$
D $(1, 3)$ **E** $\left(0, \frac{1}{3}\right)$

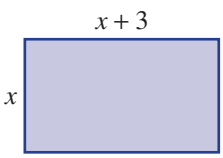
Short-answer questions

10A **1** Expand the following and simplify where possible.

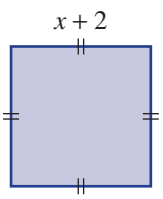
a $-2(x + 1)$ **b** $x(x + 3)$ **c** $(x + 2)(x - 1)$
d $(x + 5)(3x - 4)$ **e** $(x + 4)(x - 4)$ **f** $(5x - 2)(5x + 2)$
g $(x + 2)^2$ **h** $(x - 6)^2$ **i** $(3x - 2)(4x - 5)$

10A **2** Write, in expanded form, an expression for the shaded areas.

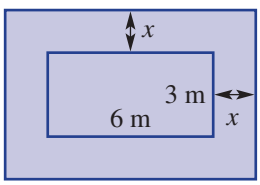
a



b



c



10B **3** Factorise by removing a common factor.

a $3x - 9$ **b** $-4x - 16$ **c** $x^2 + 2x$
d $ab - b$ **e** $7x - 14x^2$ **f** $-a^2b - 6ab$

10B **4** Factorise the following by using difference of perfect squares. Remember to look for a common factor first.

a $x^2 - 49$ **b** $9x^2 - 16$ **c** $4x^2 - 1$
d $3x^2 - 75$ **e** $2x^2 - 18$ **f** $4x^2 - 81$

10C **5** Factorise these quadratic trinomials. Some are perfect squares.

a $x^2 + 5x + 6$ **b** $x^2 - x - 6$ **c** $x^2 - 8x + 12$
d $x^2 + 10x - 24$ **e** $x^2 + 5x - 50$ **f** $x^2 - 12x + 32$
g $x^2 - 6x + 9$ **h** $x^2 + 20x + 100$ **i** $x^2 + 40x + 400$

10D **6** Solve these quadratics, giving answers with exact values.

a $x^2 = 11$ **b** $2x^2 = 6$ **c** $3x^2 - 1 = 14$

10E **7** Solve using the null factor law.

a $(x + 1)(x - 2) = 0$ **b** $(x - 3)(x + 7) = 0$ **c** $(2x - 1)(x + 4) = 0$
d $x(x - 3) = 0$ **e** $-4x(x + 6) = 0$ **f** $7x(2x - 5) = 0$

10E **8** Solve these quadratic equations by factorising and applying the null factor law.

a $x^2 + 4x = 0$ **b** $3x^2 - 9x = 0$ **c** $x^2 - 25 = 0$
d $9x^2 - 16 = 0$ **e** $x^2 + 8x + 15 = 0$ **f** $x^2 - 10x + 21 = 0$
g $x^2 - 8x + 16 = 0$ **h** $x^2 + 10x + 25 = 0$ **i** $x^2 + 5x - 36 = 0$

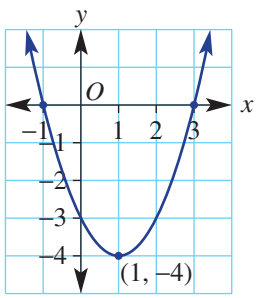
10F **9** A large rectangular sandpit is 2 m longer than it is wide. If it occupies an area of 48 m^2, determine the dimensions of the sandpit by solving a suitable equation.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Chapter review

10G **10** State the following features of the quadratic graph shown.

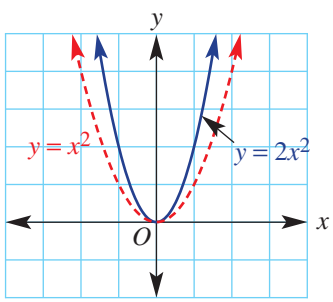
a turning point and whether it is a maximum or a minimum
b axis of symmetry
c x-intercepts
d y-intercept



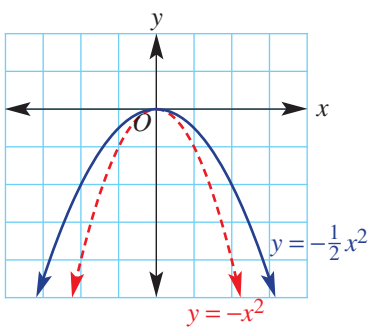
10G **11** Copy and complete the table for the following graphs.

	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = 2x^2$					
b	$y = -\frac{1}{2}x^2$					
c	$y = (x - 2)^2$					
d	$y = x^2 - 2$					

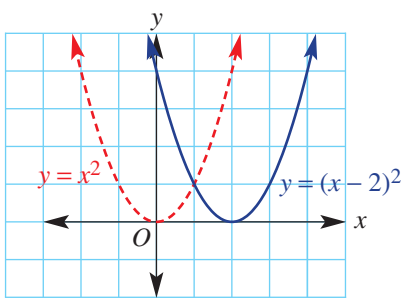
a



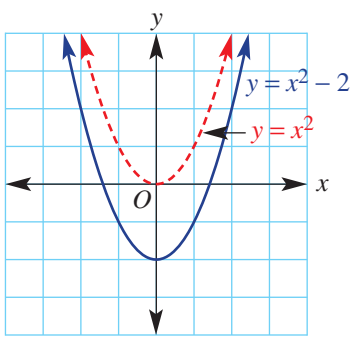
b



c



d



10H **12** Sketch these circles. Label the centre and axes intercepts.

a $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ **b** $x^2 + y^2 = 4$

10H **13** Sketch the following graphs, labelling the y-intercept and the point where $x = 1$.

a $y = 2^x$ **b** $y = 4^x$

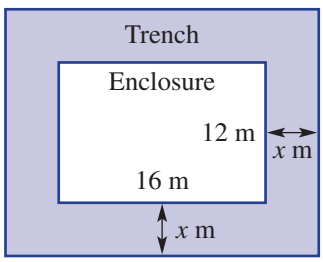
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Extended-response questions

1 A square spa is to be built in the middle of a 10 m by 10 m paved area. The builder does not yet know the size of the spa, so on the plan the spa size is variable. Its side length is x metres.

- **a** Write expressions for the area of:
  - **i** the spa
  - **ii** paving
- **b** Factorise your expression from part **a ii**.
- **c** What will be the area of the paving if:
  - **i** $x = 2$?
  - **ii** $x = 4$?
- **d** What value of x makes the paving area equal to 75 m^2?

2 A zoo enclosure for a rare tiger is rectangular in shape and has a trench of width x m all the way around it to ensure the tiger doesn't get far if it tries to escape. The dimensions are as shown.



- **a** Write an expression in terms of x for:
  - **i** the length of the enclosure
  - **ii** the width of the enclosure
- **b** Use your answers from part **a** to find the area of the enclosure (including the trench), in expanded form.
- **c** Hence, find an expression for the area of the trench alone.
- **d** Zoo restrictions state that the trench must have an area of at least 128 m^2. Find the minimum width of the trench.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Semester review 2

Straight-line graphs

Multiple-choice questions

1 If a straight line has a gradient of -3 and a y-intercept of 5, its equation is:

A $y = 5$ **B** $y = 3x + 5$ **C** $y = 5x - 3$
D $y = -3x + 5$ **E** $m = -3$

2 The gradient of the line joining $(0, 6)$ and $(2, -4)$ is:

A -2 **B** 6 **C** 5
D $\frac{1}{5}$ **E** -5

3 The midpoint of the line segment between $(-3, 8)$ and $(7, 2)$ has coordinates:

A $(4, 10)$ **B** $(2, 5)$ **C** $(2.5, 4.5)$
D $(0.5, 9)$ **E** $(-5, 3)$

4 The equation and gradient of the vertical line through the point $(1, 3)$ are:

A $x = 1$; gradient undefined **B** $x = 1$; gradient zero
C $y = 3$; gradient positive **D** $y = 3$; gradient negative
E $y = 3$; gradient undefined

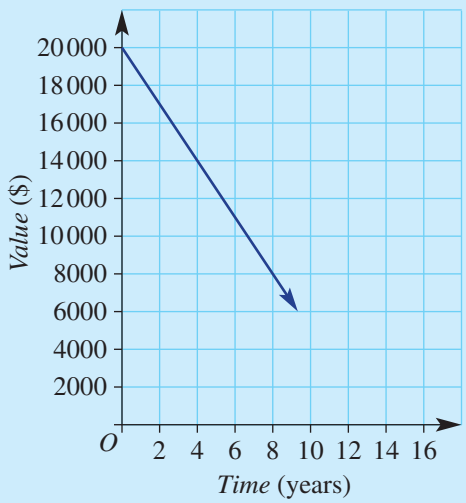
5 A landscape company charges \$80 delivery plus \$73 per cubic metre of soil. If $\$C$ is the cost of n cubic metres of soil, then:

A $C = 80n + 73$ **B** $C = 73n - 80$ **C** $n = 73C + 80$
D $C = 73n + 80$ **E** $C = 80n - 73$

Short-answer questions

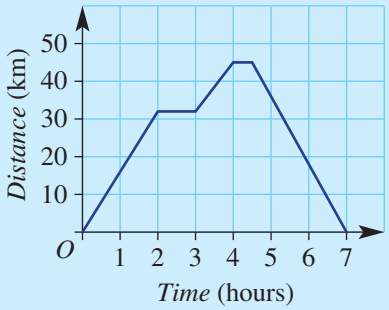
1 This graph shows how the value of a car decreases with time.

a By the end of 4 years, how much has its value fallen?
b After how many years is the car worth \$8000?
c Estimate the car's worth after 13 years.



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 This distance–time graph shows the journey of a cyclist from home to a location and back again.



a How many km has the cyclist travelled after:
i 1 hour? **ii** 1.5 hours? **iii** 3 hours?
b Calculate the cyclist's speed over the first 2 hours.
c What is the total time in rest breaks?
d What is the cyclist's greatest distance from home?
e How long does the return trip take?
f Calculate the cyclist's speed for the return journey.
g What is the total distance cycled?

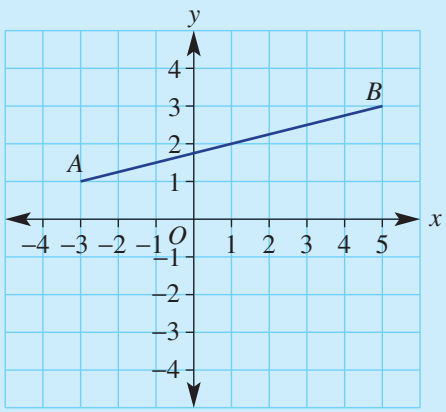
3 **a** Copy and complete this table for the rule $y = 2x - 1$.

x	−2	−1	0	1	2	3
y						

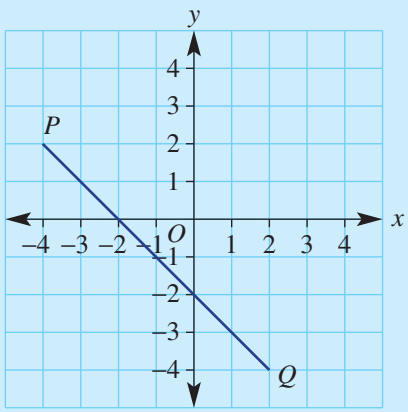
b List the coordinates for each point in the table.
c Draw x- and y-axes, each labelled between −5 and 5. Plot the points and join them with a ruler.

4 For each of the graphs below, find:
i the midpoint of the line segment
ii the exact length of the line segment (i.e. give the answer in square root form)
iii the gradient of the line segment

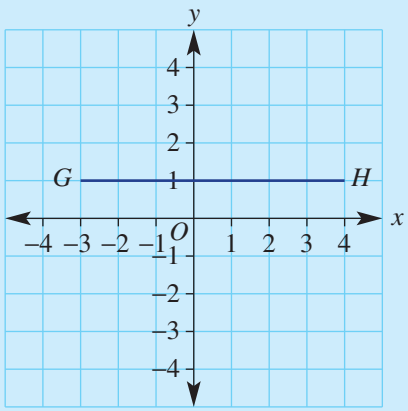
a



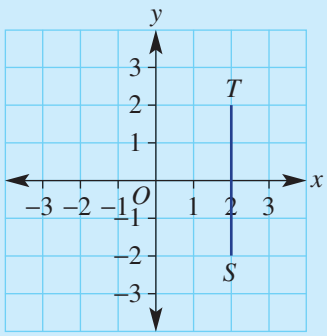
b



c



d



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 Plot and join each pair of points and find the gradient, m, of the line segment joining these points.

a $A(3, 2)$ and $B(5, 6)$ **b** $K(1, -3)$ and $L(-2, 6)$

6 Plot and join each pair of points and find the length of each line segment. Write the answer in square root form if it is not a whole number.

a $P(3, 4)$ and $Q(-1, 9)$ **b** $R(-4, 2)$ and $M(1, 10)$

7 Without plotting these points, find the coordinates of the midpoint of the line segment joining each pair of points.

a $T(3, 4)$ and $K(5, 12)$ **b** $F(4, 5)$ and $G(-2, -9)$

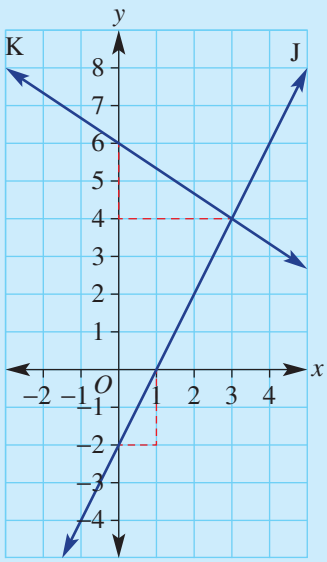
8 **a** For each of the lines J and K graphed here:

i Find the y-intercept.

ii Determine the gradient.

iii Write the equation of the line.

b State the coordinates of the point of intersection of lines J and K.



9 Sketch each of these lines by considering the y-intercept and gradient.

a $y = -3x + 4$ **b** $y = \frac{2}{3}x + 1$

c $y = -2$ **d** $x = -3$

10 Find the x- and y-intercepts for each of these lines and sketch them. Label all axes intercepts.

a $y = 2x - 6$ **b** $2x - 3y = 12$

Extended-response question

You have a \$100 gift voucher for downloading movies from the internet. Each movie costs \$2.40. After downloading n movies you have a balance of \$$B$ on your voucher.

a Write a rule for the balance, B, on your voucher in terms of n.

b Use your rule to find:

i the balance on the voucher after 10 movies are downloaded

ii the number of movies bought that will leave a balance of \$28

c Copy and complete this table.

Number of movies (n)	0	5	10	15	20
Balance (B)					

d Sketch a graph of B versus n, using the values in the table above.

e What is the maximum number of movies you could buy and how much would be left on your voucher?

Geometry

Multiple-choice questions

1 If two lines are parallel, then cointerior angles will:

A be equal **B** sum to 90° **C** sum to 180° **D** sum to 360° **E** sum to 270°

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 The sum of the internal angles of a hexagon is:

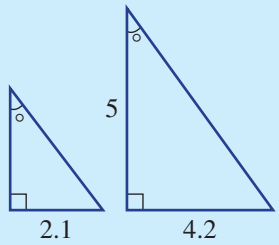
A 360° **B** 540° **C** 1080° **D** 900° **E** 720°

3 Which of the following is not a test for congruent triangles?

A SSS **B** SAS **C** AAA **D** AAS **E** RHS

4 The scale factor for these similar triangles is:

A 2 **B** 4 **C** 5
D 0.1 **E** 0.4



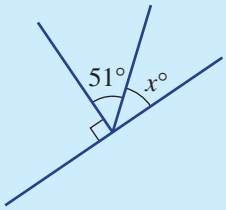
5 The length ratio for two similar solid objects is 2 : 3. The volume ratio is:

A 16 : 81 **B** 2 : 3 **C** 4 : 9
D 8 : 27 **E** 1 : 5

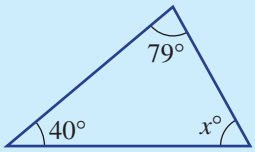
Short-answer questions

1 Find the value of x in these diagrams.

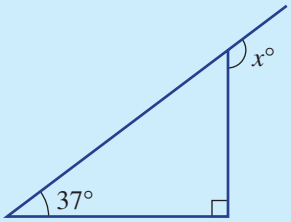
a



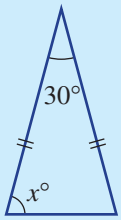
b



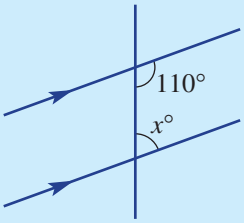
c



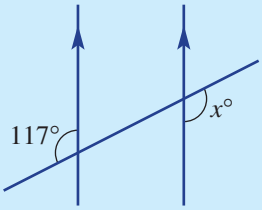
d



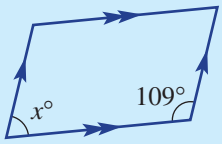
e



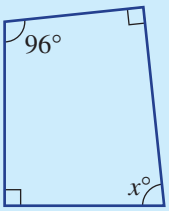
f



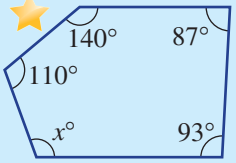
g



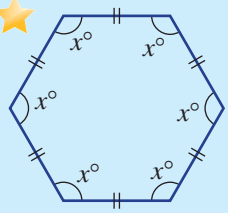
h



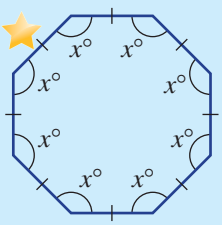
i



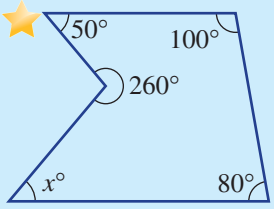
j



k



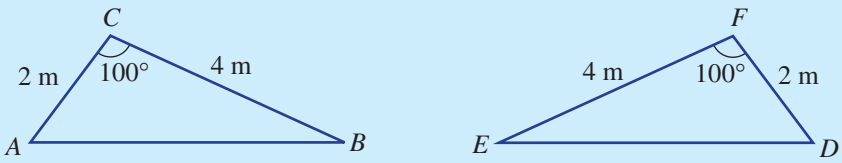
l



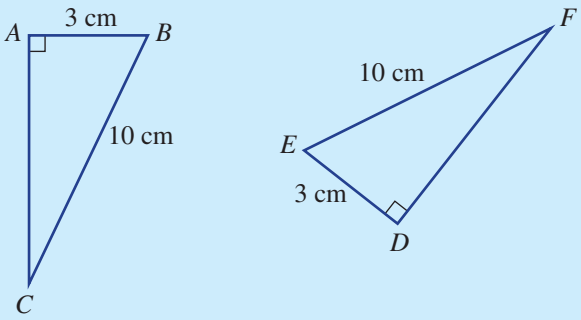
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2 Write a congruence statement and the test to prove congruence in these pairs of triangles.

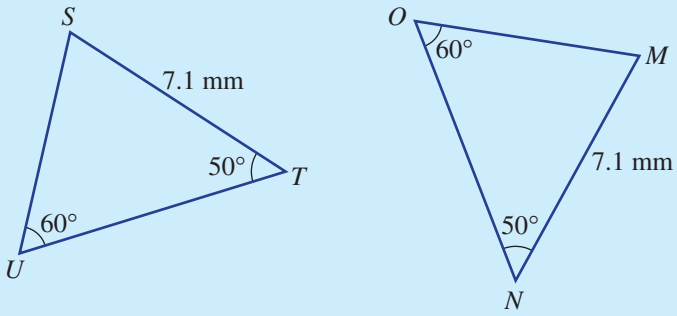
a



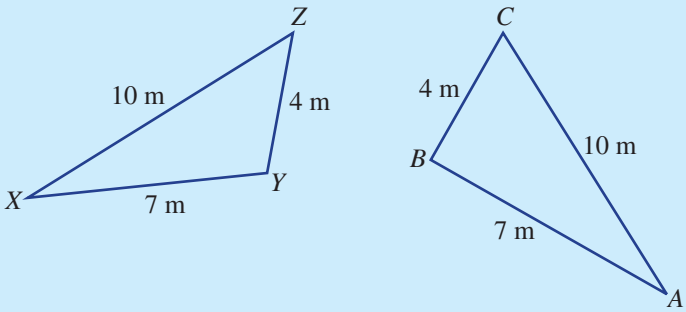
b



c



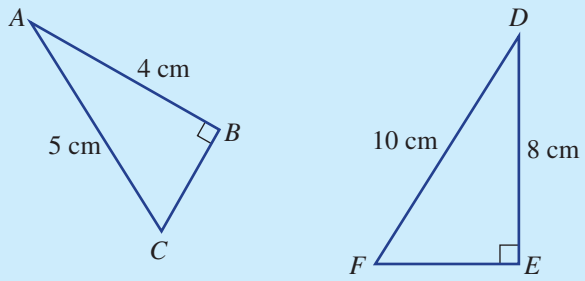
d



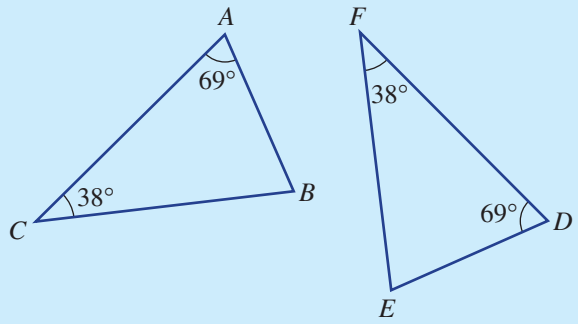
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 Decide whether the pairs of triangles are similar, giving reasons.

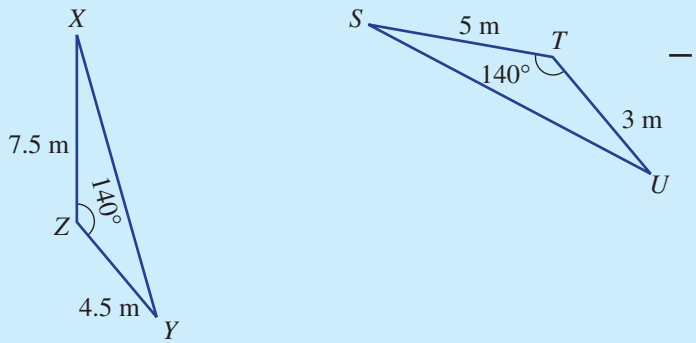
a



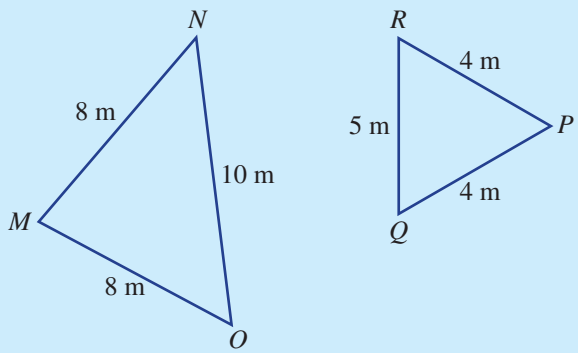
b



c



d

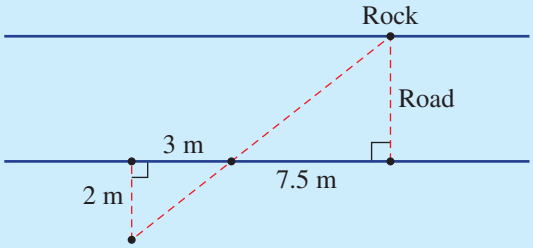


4 The given pair of triangles are known to be similar. Find the value of x and y.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Extended-response question

A chicken wants to know the distance across the road without having to cross it. The chicken places 4 pebbles in various positions on its own side of the road, as shown. There is a rock on the other side of the road aligned with one of the pebbles.



a What reason would be given to explain why the two triangles are similar?

b Find the scale factor.

c What is the distance across the road?

Equations

Multiple-choice questions

1 Which of the following is *not* an equation?

A $x - 3 = 5$ **B** $2x + 4 = 5x - 11$ **C** $y + 7x - 4$
D $y = 3x - 5$ **E** $y = 8$

2 A number is decreased by 8 and then doubled. The result is equal to 24. This can be written as:

A $2x - 8 = 24$ **B** $x - 8 \times 2 = 24$ **C** $x - 8 = 2 \times 24$
D $2(x - 8) = 24$ **E** $\frac{x - 8}{2} = 24$

3 The solution to $\frac{x - 9}{3} = 6$ is:

A $x = 27$ **B** $x = 45$ **C** $x = 9$ **D** $x = 11$ **E** $x = 3$

4 The solution to $3(x - 1) = 5x + 7$ is:

A $x = -4$ **B** $x = -5$ **C** $x = 5$ **D** $x = 3$ **E** $x = 1$

5 The solution to the inequality $1 - 2x > 9$ is:

A $x > 5$ **B** $x < 4$ **C** $x < -5$ **D** $x > -4$ **E** $x < -4$

Short-answer questions

1 Solve the following one-step equations.

a $x + 12 = 3$ **b** $x - 5 = 21$ **c** $\frac{m}{4} = 8$
d $5a = 20$ **e** $-2k = 12$ **f** $-x = 8$

2 Solve the following two-step equations.

a $2p + 3 = 7$ **b** $3a - 10 = 2$ **c** $\frac{x}{2} + 3 = 9$ **d** $\frac{x - 8}{4} = 3$

3 Solve the following equations.

a $2(x - 4) = 8$ **b** $3(k - 2) + 4k = 15$ **c** $3m - 13 = m + 5$
d $\frac{3x + 1}{2} = 8$ **e** $\frac{3a - 2}{7} = -2$ **f** $4x + 7 + 3x - 12 = 5x + 3$

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 For each of the following statements, write an equation and then solve it for the pronumeral.
- **a** When 5 is subtracted from x, the result is 8
- **b** When 8 is added to the product of 4 and x, the result is 20.
- **c** When 6 less than 3 lots of x is doubled, the result is 18.

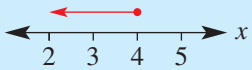
5 Find the value of the unknown in each of the following formulas.

a For $A = \frac{1}{2}bh$, find b when $A = 120$ and $h = 24$.

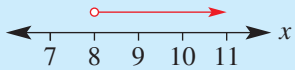
b For $I = \frac{Prt}{100}$, find P when $I = 80$, $r = 5$ and $t = 4$.

6 Write the inequality displayed on each of the following number lines.

a



b



7 Solve each of the following inequalities and graph the solution on a number line.

a $\frac{x}{3} \leq 2$ **b** $3x - 2 > 4$ **c** $-3x \geq 12$

8 Find the point of intersection (x, y) of each pair of equations below by plotting an accurate graph. First draw x- and y-axes, each labelled from -5 to 5.
- **a** $x = 3$, $y = 2$
- **b** $y = 2x - 4$ and $3x + 2y = 6$

9 Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations using the substitution method; i.e. find the point of intersection.

a $y = 2x$
$x + y = 3$

b $x + y = 12$
$y = x + 6$

c $y = 3 - x$
$3x + 2y = 5$

10 Solve the following pairs of simultaneous equations using the elimination method; i.e. find the point of intersection.

a $x + 2y = 3$
$-x + 3y = 2$

b $3x + y = 10$
$x + y = 6$

c $2x - 3y = 3$
$3x - 2y = 7$

11 Oliver is older than Ruby. The sum of their ages is 45 years and the difference of their ages is 7 years.
- **a** Define pronumerals to represent each person's age.
- **b** Set up a pair of simultaneous equations based on the information given.
- **c** Solve the simultaneous equations to find Oliver and Ruby's ages.

Extended-response question

Ishan and Mia normally have an electricity bill of \$200 per month. Now that they have installed solar panels (which cost \$6000, including installation), the solar energy is providing for all their power usage with some left over. Their excess power is sold to the town's electricity supplier. On average, they receive a cheque for \$50 per month for the sale of this solar-generated power.

a Copy and complete this table, which compares the total cost of normal town electricity to solar power.

Number of months, *n*	0	6	12	18	24	30	36	42	48
Total cost of electricity (at \$200 per month), *E*	0								
Total cost of solar power (reducing by \$50 per month), *S*	\$6000								

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

b Draw a graph of the information given in the table.

c On the graph, show the point at which the total cost of solar power is the same as the total cost of electricity for that period of time. State the value of n and the cost.

d Write an equation for E (i.e. total cost of electricity) in terms of n and another equation for S (i.e. total cost of solar power) in terms of n.

e Solve the equations in part **d** for n, when $E = S$ (i.e. the total costs of each power supply are equal).

f After 4 years, how much money has been saved by using solar power?

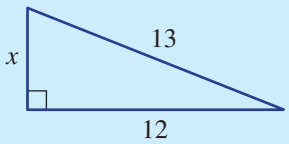
g Suppose that, in a wet climate, the cheque for excess power sold to the town supply is reduced to \$25 per month. Using equations, find how many months it takes for the total costs to be equal. (Round to the nearest month.)

Pythagoras' theorem and trigonometry

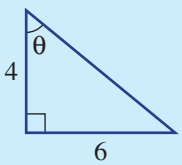
Multiple-choice questions

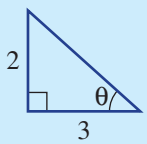
1 The value of x in the triangle shown is:

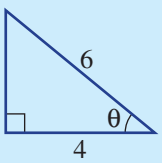
A 1 **B** 11 **C** 4
D 10 **E** 5

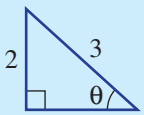


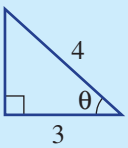
2 In which of the following triangles does $\cos\theta = \frac{2}{3}$?

A


B


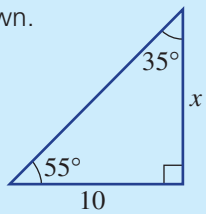
C


D


E


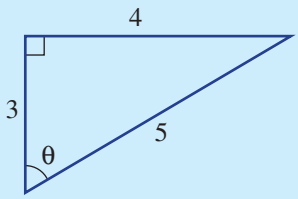
3 Choose the correct trigonometric statement for the diagram shown.

A $\tan 55° = \frac{x}{10}$ **B** $\tan 35° = \frac{x}{10}$
C $\sin 55° = \frac{x}{10}$ **D** $\sin 35° = \frac{x}{10}$
E $\cos 35° = \frac{x}{10}$



4 For the triangle shown, $\sin\theta$ is equal to:

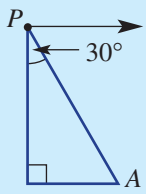
A $\frac{3}{5}$ **B** $\frac{4}{5}$ **C** $\frac{5}{3}$
D $\frac{3}{4}$ **E** $\frac{4}{3}$



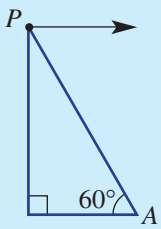
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 In which diagram is the angle of depression of A from P equal to 30°?

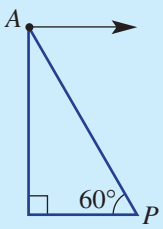
A



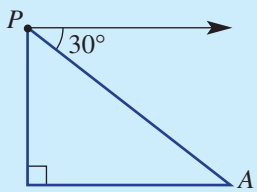
B



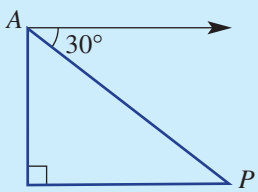
C



D



E



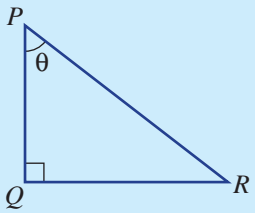
Short-answer questions

1 Refer to the angle marked θ and name:

a the hypotenuse

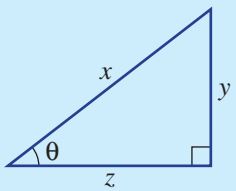
b the side opposite θ

c the side adjacent to θ



2 Use the triangle shown to help you write a fraction for:

a $\sin\theta$ **b** $\cos\theta$ **c** $\tan\theta$



3 Use a calculator to find the value of each of the following, correct to two decimal places.

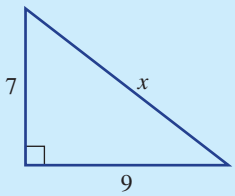
a $\sin 40°$ **b** $\cos 51°$ **c** $\tan 18°$

d $12 \tan 32°$ **e** $40 \tan 38°$ **f** $5.6 \sin 55°$

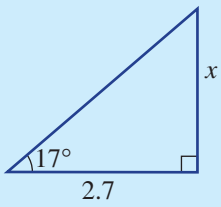
g $\dfrac{15}{\sin 24°}$ **h** $\dfrac{28}{\cos 30°}$ **i** $\dfrac{12.5}{\tan 52°}$

4 Find the value of each pronumeral, correct to two decimal places.

a

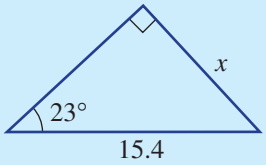


b

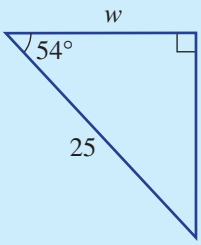


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

c

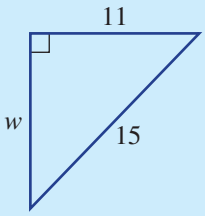


d

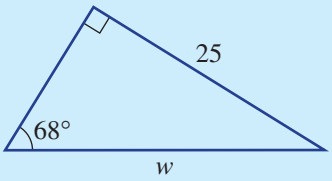


5 Find the value of each pronumeral, correct to one decimal place.

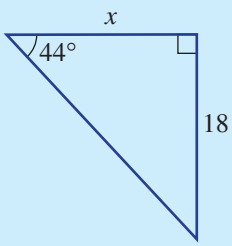
a



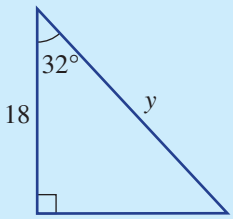
b



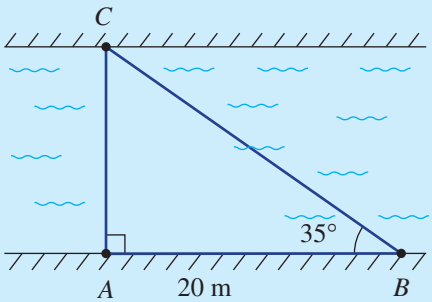
c



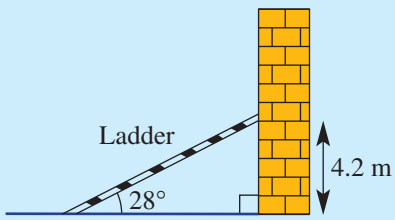
d



6 Kara wants to measure the width of a river. She places two markers, A and B, 20 m apart along one side. C is a point directly opposite marker A. Kara measures angle ABC as 35°. How wide is the river, to the nearest metre?

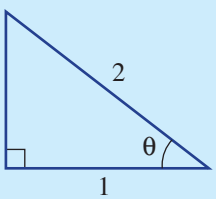


7 A ladder is inclined at an angle of 28° to the ground. If the ladder reaches 4.2 m up the wall, what is the length of the ladder, correct to two decimal places?

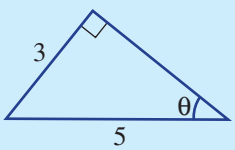


8 Find the angle θ in the following triangles, correct to the nearest degree.

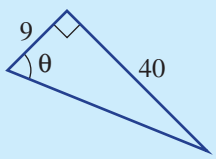
a



b

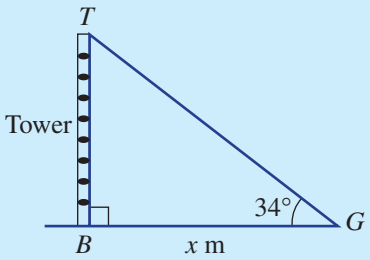


c

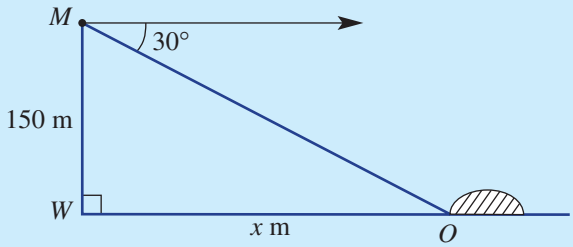


ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9 Elliott measures the angle of elevation to the top of a 120 m tower to be 34°. How many metres is Elliott from the base of the tower? Round your answer to one decimal place.



10 Xi-Rui is sitting on top of a bridge 150 m above the water level of the river. He notices an object floating on the river some distance away. If the angle of depression to the object is thought to be 30°, how many metres (x) from the bridge is the object? Round your answer to one decimal place.



Extended-response question

A plane flies from the airport on a bearing of 136° for 450 km.

a Draw a diagram showing the plane's flight.
b How far east of the airport is the plane? Round to one decimal place.
c How far south of the airport is the plane? Round to one decimal place.
d What is the true bearing of the airport from the plane, correct to the nearest degree?

Quadratics and non-linear graphs

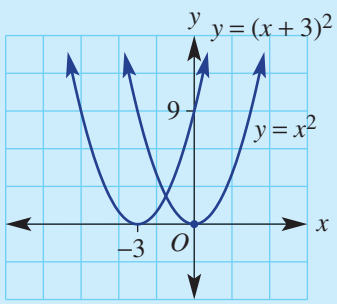
Multiple-choice questions

1 $-x(x-1)+2x^2$ simplifies to:

A x^2-1 **B** x^2+x **C** $3x^2+1$ **D** $3x^2-x$ **E** $3x^2+3$

2 Compared to the graph of $y=x^2$, the graph of $y=(x+3)^2$ is:

A 3 units down **B** 3 units up
C 3 units left **D** in the same place
E 3 units right



3 The solutions to $(2x-1)(x+3)=0$ are:

A $x=-\frac{1}{2}, x=-3$ **B** $x=2, x=3$

C $x=2, x=-3$ **D** $x=\frac{1}{2}, x=3$

E $x=\frac{1}{2}, x=-3$

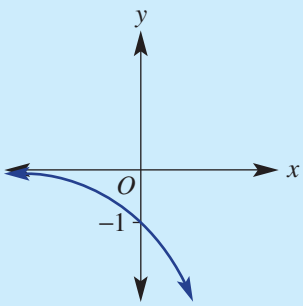
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 The radius of the circle with equation $x^2 + y^2 = 25$ is:

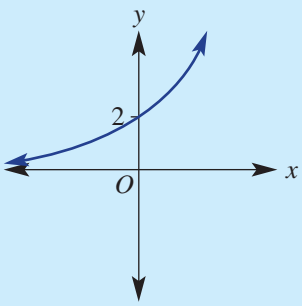
A 5 **B** 25 **C** -5 **D** 0 **E** 1

5 The graph of $y = 2^x$ could be:

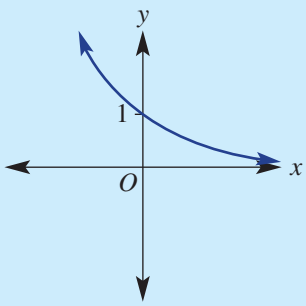
A



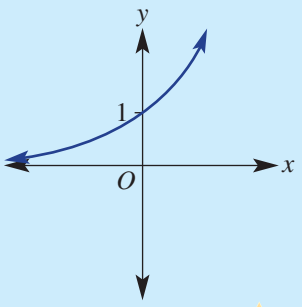
B



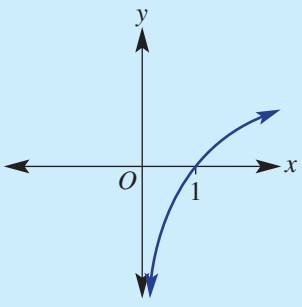
C



D



E



Short-answer questions

1 Expand the following expressions.

a $-2(x - 1)$ **b** $(x + 2)(x - 3)$ **c** $(2x - 7)(x + 3)$

d $(x + 2)(x - 2)$ **e** $(x - 3)^2$ **f** $(2x + 1)^2$

2 Factorise these expressions.

a $3x - 12$ **b** $-2x - x^2$ **c** $x^2 - 25$

d $9x^2 - 100$ **e** $x^2 + 7x + 12$ **f** $x^2 - x - 6$

g $x^2 + 2x - 8$ **h** $x^2 - 8x + 16$ **i** $x^2 + 6x + 9$

3 Solve these equations.

a $x(x - 3) = 0$ **b** $x^2 + 2x = 0$ **c** $x^2 - 4 = 0$

d $4x^2 - 9 = 0$ **e** $(x - 3)(2x - 1) = 0$ **f** $x^2 - x - 20 = 0$

g $x^2 + 10x + 21 = 0$ **h** $x^2 + 8x + 16 = 0$ **i** $x^2 - 14x + 49 = 0$

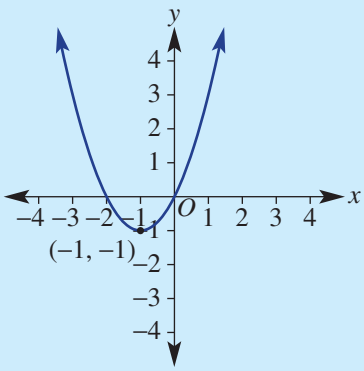
4 State the following features of the quadratic graph shown.

a turning point and whether it is a minimum or a maximum

b equation of the axis of symmetry

c x-intercepts

d y-intercept

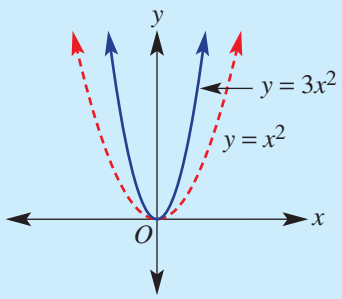


ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

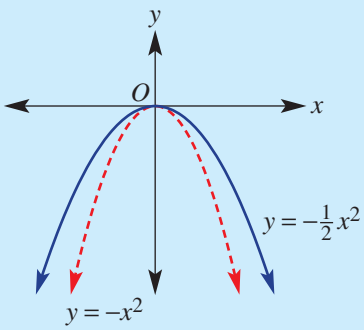
5 Copy and complete the table for these parabolas.

	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = 3x^2$					
b	$y = -\frac{1}{2}x^2$					
c	$y = (x + 2)^2$					
d	$y = x^2 - 3$					

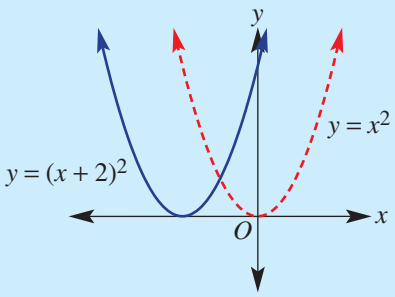
a



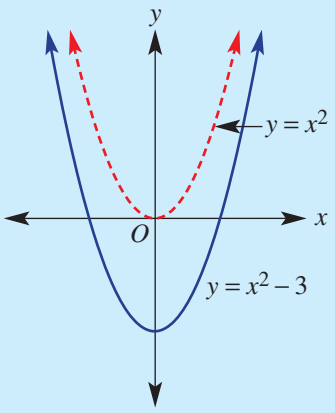
b



c

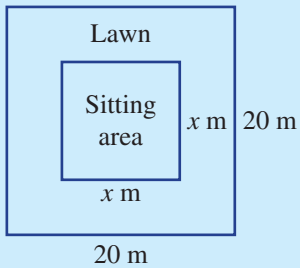


d



Extended-response question

In a garden, a square sitting area paved with stone is to be placed in the centre of a square area of lawn that is 20 m by 20 m.



a Write expressions for the area of:
- **i** the sitting area
- **ii** the lawn

b Factorise your expression from part **a ii**.

c What will be the lawn area if:
- **i** $x = 4$? **ii** $x = 9$?

d What value of x makes the lawn area equal to:
- **i** 175 m^2?
- **ii** 75% of the total area?

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

A

Algebraic fraction A fraction containing pronumerals as well as numbers

Angle of depression The angle of your line of sight from the horizontal when looking down at an object

Angle of elevation The angle of your line of sight from the horizontal when looking up at an object

Angle of reference The angle in a right-angled triangle that is used to find the opposite side and the adjacent side

Area The number of square units needed to cover the space inside the boundaries of a 2D shape

Asymptote A line whose distance to a curve approaches zero, and the curve never touches it

B

Base The number or pronumeral that is being raised to a power

Bimodal When a set of data has two modes

Bivariate data Data that involves two variables

Box plot A diagram using rectangles and lines to show the spread of a set of data, using five important values

C

Chance The likelihood of an event happening

Circumference The distance around the outside of a circle; the curved boundary

Coefficient A numeral placed before a pronumeral, showing that the pronumeral is multiplied by that factor

Column graph A graphical representation of a single category or type of data. Columns are used to show the frequency of scores

Commission Earnings of a salesperson based on a percentage of the value of goods or services sold

Compound interest A type of interest that is paid on a loan or earned on an investment, which is calculated not only on the initial principal, but also on the interest accumulated during the loan/investment period

Congruent (figures) Figures that are exactly the same size and shape

Constant term The part of an equation or expression without any pronumerals

Coordinates An ordered pair written in the form (x, y) that states the location of a point on the Cartesian plane

Cosine (cos) The ratio of the length of the adjacent side to the length of the hypotenuse in a right-angled triangle

Cylinder A solid with two parallel, congruent circular faces connected by a curved surface

D

Deductions Amounts of money taken from gross income

Denominator The part of a fraction that sits below the dividing line

Diameter A line passing through the centre of a circle with its end points on the circumference

Difference of perfect squares (DOPS) When one square term is subtracted from another

Dilation A transformation where a curve is enlarged or reduced but the centre is not changed

Discount An amount subtracted from a price

Distributive law Adding numbers and then multiplying the total gives the same answer as multiplying each number first and then adding the products

Dot plot A graph in which each dot represents one score

E

Elimination A method for solving simultaneous equations, where one equation is added to or subtracted from another to eliminate one of the variables

Equation A mathematical statement that states that two expressions have the same value

Event A situation involving chance or probability trials

Expand Remove grouping symbols (such as brackets)

Exponential decay Repeatedly decreasing a quantity by a constant percentage over time

Exponential growth Repeatedly increasing a quantity by a constant percentage over time

Exponential notation A way of representing repeated multiplication of the same number

Expression A group of mathematical terms containing no equals sign

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exterior angle theorem The theorem that, in a triangle, the exterior angle is equal to the sum of the two opposite interior angles

Extrapolation Determining information outside of the original data

F

Factorise To write an expression as a product, often involving brackets

Five-figure summary A set of numbers that summarise a set of data: the minimum score, first quartile, median, third quartile and maximum score

Fixed expenses Expenses that are set and do not change during a particular time period

Formula A general rule for finding the value of one quantity given the values of others

Frequency table A table showing all possible scores in one column and the frequency of each score in another column

G

Gradient (m) The steepness of a slope

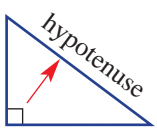
Gradient–intercept form The equation of a straight line, written with y as the subject of the equation

Gross income Total income before any deductions (e.g. income tax) are made

H

Histogram A special type of column graph with no gaps between the columns; it can represent class intervals

Hypotenuse The longest side of a right-angled triangle (the side opposite the right angle)



I

Independent events Two events that do not influence or are affected by each other

Index form A method of writing numbers that are multiplied by themselves

Inequality sign A symbol that compares the size of two or more expressions or numbers by pointing to the smaller one

Interpolation Reading information from within a graph

Interquartile range (IQR) A measure of spread giving the difference between the upper and lower quartiles

Intersection ($A \cap B$) The elements that are common to two or more sets of data

L

Like terms Terms with the same pronumerals and same powers

Line of best fit A line that has the closest fit to a set of data points displayed in a scatter plot

Line segment A section of a straight line

Linear equation An equation whose pronumerals are always to the power of 1 and do not multiply or divide each other

Linear inequality An inequality that involves a linear function

Linear relationship The relationship between a variable and a constant term

Loan Money borrowed and then repaid, usually with interest

M

Mean An average value calculated by dividing the total of a set of numbers by the number of values

Median The middle score when all the numbers in a set are arranged in order

Midpoint The point on an interval that is equidistant from the end points of the interval

Mode The score that appears most often in a set of numbers

Monic quadratic A quadratic expression where the coefficient of the squared term is 1

Mutually exclusive Two events that cannot both occur at the same time

N

Net income Income remaining after deductions have been made from gross income

Null factor law If two numbers multiply to give zero, then one or both of those numbers must be zero

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

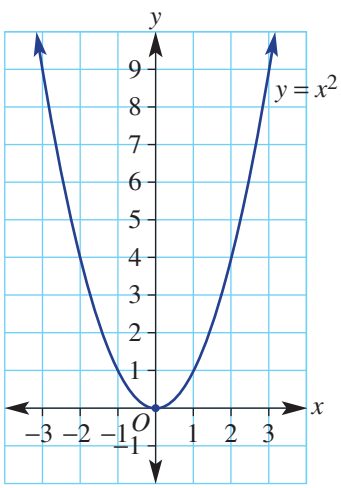
O

Outcome One of the possibilities from a chance experiment

Outlier Any value that is much larger or much smaller than the rest of the data in a set

P

Parabola A smooth U-shaped curve with the basic rule $y = x^2$



Parallel lines Lines in the same plane that are the same distance apart and never intersect

Parallelogram A quadrilateral with both pairs of opposite sides parallel

Percentage A convenient way of writing fractions with denominators of 100

Perfect square A quadratic trinomial that can be expressed as a single square

Perimeter The total distance (length) around the outside of a figure

Point of intersection The point at which two lines cross each other and therefore have the same coordinates

Polygon A two-dimensional shape where three or more straight lines are joined together to form a closed figure

Principal (*P*) An amount of money invested in a financial institution or loaned to a person/business

Profit The amount of money made by selling an item or service for more than its cost

Pythagoras' theorem In a right-angled triangle, the square of the hypotenuse is equal to the sum of the squares of the other two sides

Q

Quartiles The three values that separate the scores when a set of ordered data is divided into four equal parts

R

Radius The distance from the centre of a circle to its outside edge

Range The difference between the highest and lowest numbers in a set

Rate A measure of one quantity against another

Rate of interest (*r*) The annual percentage rate of interest paid on a loan or earned on an investment

Reflection A transformation where a curve is flipped across a line on the number plane

Regular polygon A polygon with all sides equal and all angles equal

Repayment An amount paid to a financial institution at regular intervals to repay a loan, with interest included

S

Salary An employee's fixed agreed yearly income

Sample space All the possible outcomes of an event

Scale factor The number you multiply each side length by to enlarge or reduce a shape

Scatter plot A diagram that uses coordinates to display values for two variables for a set of data

Scientific notation A way to express very large and very small numbers using $[\text{a number between } 1 \text{ and } 10] \times 10^{\text{power}}$

Significant figure A digit that indicates how accurate a number is

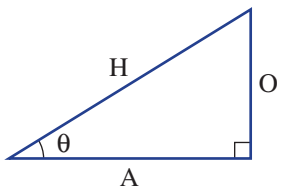
Similar (triangles) Triangles whose corresponding angles are equal and whose corresponding sides are in the same ratio

Simple interest A type of interest that is paid on a loan or earned on an investment, which is always calculated on the principal amount loaned or invested

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Sine (sin) The ratio of the length of the opposite side to the length of the hypotenuse in a right-angled triangle

SOH CAH TOA A way of remembering the trigonometric ratios: sine equals opposite over hypotenuse; cosine equals adjacent over hypotenuse; tangent equals opposite over adjacent



Solve To find the value of an unknown quantity

Statistical data Information gathered by observation, survey or measurement

Stem-and-leaf plot A table that lists numbers in order, grouped in rows

Subject The pronumeral or variable that is alone on one side of an equation

Substitute To replace pronumerals with numerical values

T

Tangent (tan) The ratio of the length of the opposite side to the length of the adjacent side in a right-angled triangle

Term A number or pronumeral in an expression

Time-series data A set of data collected in sequence over a period of time

Total surface area (TSA) The total number of square units needed to cover the outside of a solid

Translation A transformation where a curve is moved a certain distance on the number plane

Transversal A line that cuts two or more lines

Trial One run of an experiment

True bearing (°T) An angle that is measured clockwise from north

U

Union ($A \cup B$) The combination of all elements from two or more sets of data

V

Variable An unknown, which can take on any value

Variable expenses Expenses that may change during a particular period of time or over time

Venn diagram A diagram using circles to show the relationships between two or more sets of data

Volume The amount of three-dimensional space within an object

W

Wages Earnings paid to an employee based on an hourly rate

X

x-coordinate The first coordinate of an ordered pair

x-intercept The point at which a line or curve cuts the x-axis

Y

y-coordinate The second coordinate of an ordered pair

y-intercept The point at which a line or curve cuts the y-axis

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Appendix

Algorithmic thinking

What you will learn

Activity 1 Solving equations numerically
1.1 Solving for integer solutions
1.2 Solving for non-integer solutions
1.3 Locating *x*-intercepts of linear graphs
Activity 2 Measurement formulas and maximising areas
2.1 Measurement calculations using a spreadsheet
2.2 Measurement calculations using programming
Activity 3 Walk the Plank
3.1 Playing the game
3.2 Walk the Plank as an algorithm

Australian curriculum

APPENDIX: ALGORITHMIC THINKING

Implement algorithms using data structures in a general purpose programming language.

Solve equations using systematic guess and check and refine with digital technology.

Devise and use algorithms and simulations to solve mathematical problems.

Solve simultaneous equations using systematic guess and check and refine with digital technology.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Algorithms and traffic

Brisbane's Story Bridge carries tens of thousands of vehicles every day as part of a complicated road network system that aims to maximise traffic flow and minimise journey time. Such network systems rely on traffic light and traffic management algorithms, which work to balance the volume of traffic within a network's capacity.

Scientists and computer programmers are already looking into the possibility of cars being able to talk to each other via a wireless network. Complex algorithms will help manage traffic flow by analysing live information and using this information to change the behaviour of cars and their drivers either on the road or before a journey has begun. Algorithms designed using computer code will be able to advise optimal speed and give directions based on live data, not just on general traffic conditions but also in the immediate area of a vehicle. Maybe one day this will lead to thousands of driverless cars taking a journey across Story Bridge.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Introduction

An **algorithm** is a sequence of steps that, when followed, leads to the solution of a problem. It has a defined set of inputs and delivers an output. Each step in the algorithm leads to another step or completes the algorithm.

In the following tasks you will carry out some algorithms, as well as think about the design, analysis and implementation of your own algorithms.

Activity 1 Solving equations numerically

Strand: Number and Algebra

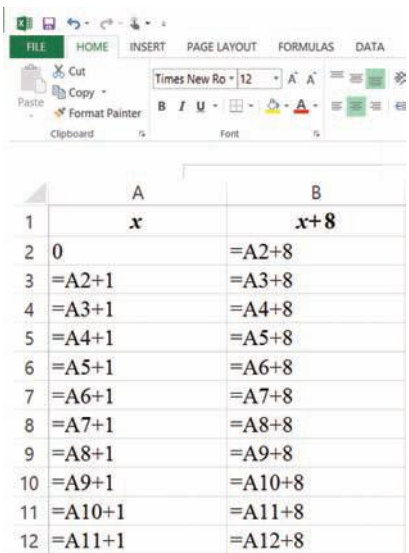
1.1 Solving for integer solutions

a Set up an Excel spreadsheet (or table on a calculator) to solve the equation $x + 8 = 12$ by following these steps.

1 Enter the columns, as shown below in Figure 1.

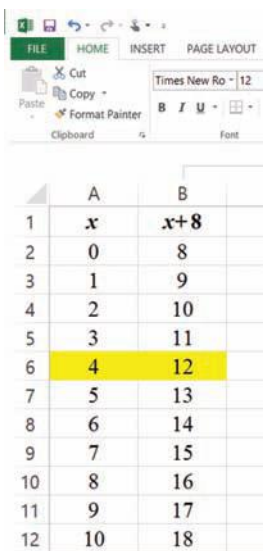
2 Start with $x = 0$ and then increase by 1 each time.

3 Continue to increase the value of x until $x + 8 = 12$. This x value is your solution to the equation. From Figure 2, $x = 4$ is the solution.



	A	B
1	x	$x+8$
2	0	=A2+8
3	=A2+1	=A3+8
4	=A3+1	=A4+8
5	=A4+1	=A5+8
6	=A5+1	=A6+8
7	=A6+1	=A7+8
8	=A7+1	=A8+8
9	=A8+1	=A9+8
10	=A9+1	=A10+8
11	=A10+1	=A11+8
12	=A11+1	=A12+8

Figure 1 Formulas in Excel



	A	B
1	x	$x+8$
2	0	8
3	1	9
4	2	10
5	3	11
6	4	12
7	5	13
8	6	14
9	7	15
10	8	16
11	9	17
12	10	18

Figure 2 Calculated values in Excel

b Solve the following equations using a similar process.

i $2x + 6 = 30$

ii $9 - 3x = 15$

c With part **a** in mind, set up an Excel spreadsheet to find the integer solutions of the following equations. Start by creating an x column and a column for each side of the equation. Fill down the columns until the two sides of the equation are equal.

i $3x + 7 = x - 5$

ii $2x - 22 = 8 - 3x$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

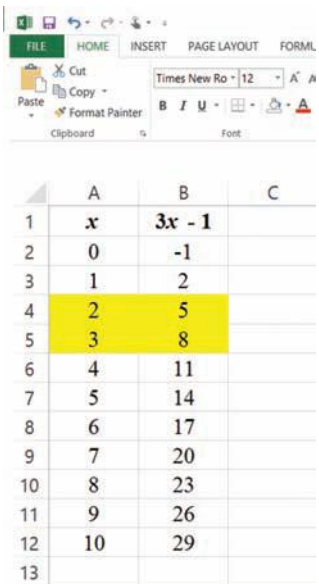
1.2 Solving for non-integer solutions

a To solve an equation such as $2x + 3 = 20$, the process above could be repeated using smaller increments, such as 0.5 or 0.1 (or even smaller), instead of 1. However, your increment choice may end up delivering a large amount of data to scroll through, which is not useful.
An alternative approach is to start with a relatively large increment until you get 'near' the solution and then adjust the increment to a smaller amount for that particular region.

For example, to solve $3x - 1 = 7$, use the process described in **1.1** and note which integer values of x make the value of $3x - 1$ change from less than 7 to greater than 7. In Figure 3, you can see this is $x = 2$ and $x = 3$.

i Now alter the spreadsheet to consider x values only between $x = 2$ and $x = 3$, using increments of 0.1. Fill down and find a solution for x, correct to one decimal place.

ii Now alter the spreadsheet to consider x values only between $x = 2$ and $x = 3$, using increments of 0.01. Fill down and find a solution for x, correct to two decimal places.



	A	B	C
1	x	$3x$ - 1	
2	0	-1	
3	1	2	
4	2	5	
5	3	8	
6	4	11	
7	5	14	
8	6	17	
9	7	20	
10	8	23	
11	9	26	
12	10	29	
13			

Figure 3

b A slightly different method to the above involves finding an average value of x between a pair of updated lower and upper bounds. The steps are:

1 Find a lower and upper bound that are two x values which contain the solution. For the equation $3x - 1 = 7$, the initial lower bound would be 2 and the upper bound would be 3.

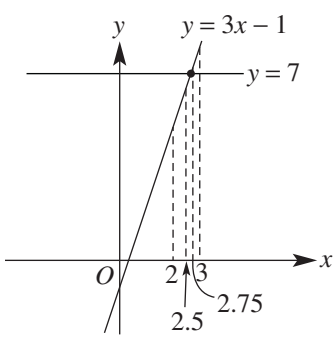
2 Now find the mean of your lower and upper bound. In this example, this would be 2.5.

3 Find the value of $3x - 1$ for your mean. In this example, this would be $3 \times 2.5 - 1 = 6.5$.

4 If the mean is on the same side of 7 as the lower bound, then make the mean the new lower bound. If the mean is on the same side of 7 as the upper bound, then make the mean the new upper bound. In this example, $6.5 < 7$, so the mean is on the same side as the lower bound so the new lower bound is 2.5 and the upper bound stays as 3.

5 Repeating the steps above will deliver smaller and smaller intervals that contain the solution. In this example, the next mean is 2.75 and this replaces the upper bound since $3 \times 2.75 - 1 = 7.25$ and this is greater than 7.

This graph shows the interval containing the solution to $3x - 1 = 7$ getting smaller and smaller.



i Work through the algorithm above and repeat until you are confident you have the solution to $3x - 1 = 7$, correct to three decimal places.

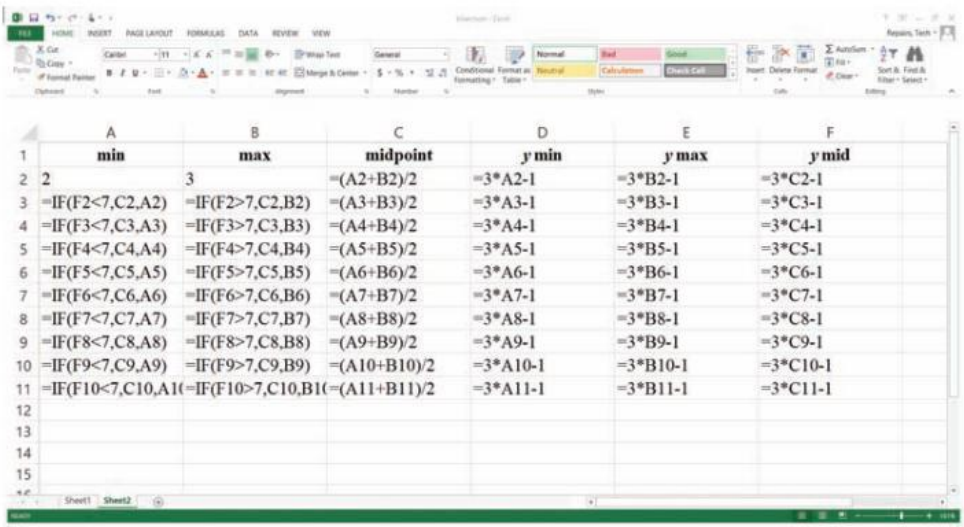
ii Now try this algorithm to solve $7x + 2 = 1$, correct to two decimal places.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

c Let's now consider a spreadsheet approach for the equation $3x - 1 = 7$.

i Set up the spreadsheet shown in Figure 4, where $y = 3x - 1$. Fill out the first three rows and then fill down.

The 'IF' statements in columns A and B set the new lower or upper bounds of the interval. If the midpoint of the interval gives a y value less than 7 then it becomes the new lower bound, otherwise the current lower bound is maintained. If the midpoint gives a y value greater than 7, then it becomes the new upper bound of the interval.



	A	B	C	D	E	F
1	**min**	**max**	**midpoint**	***y* min**	***y* max**	***y* mid**
2	2	3	=(A2+B2)/2	=3*A2-1	=3*B2-1	=3*C2-1
3	=IF(F2<7,C2,A2)	=IF(F2>7,C2,B2)	=(A3+B3)/2	=3*A3-1	=3*B3-1	=3*C3-1
4	=IF(F3<7,C3,A3)	=IF(F3>7,C3,B3)	=(A4+B4)/2	=3*A4-1	=3*B4-1	=3*C4-1
5	=IF(F4<7,C4,A4)	=IF(F4>7,C4,B4)	=(A5+B5)/2	=3*A5-1	=3*B5-1	=3*C5-1
6	=IF(F5<7,C5,A5)	=IF(F5>7,C5,B5)	=(A6+B6)/2	=3*A6-1	=3*B6-1	=3*C6-1
7	=IF(F6<7,C6,A6)	=IF(F6>7,C6,B6)	=(A7+B7)/2	=3*A7-1	=3*B7-1	=3*C7-1
8	=IF(F7<7,C7,A7)	=IF(F7>7,C7,B7)	=(A8+B8)/2	=3*A8-1	=3*B8-1	=3*C8-1
9	=IF(F8<7,C8,A8)	=IF(F8>7,C8,B8)	=(A9+B9)/2	=3*A9-1	=3*B9-1	=3*C9-1
10	=IF(F9<7,C9,A9)	=IF(F9>7,C9,B9)	=(A10+B10)/2	=3*A10-1	=3*B10-1	=3*C10-1
11	=IF(F10<7,C10,A1(	=IF(F10>7,C10,B1(	=(A11+B11)/2	=3*A11-1	=3*B11-1	=3*C11-1
12						
13						
14						
15						

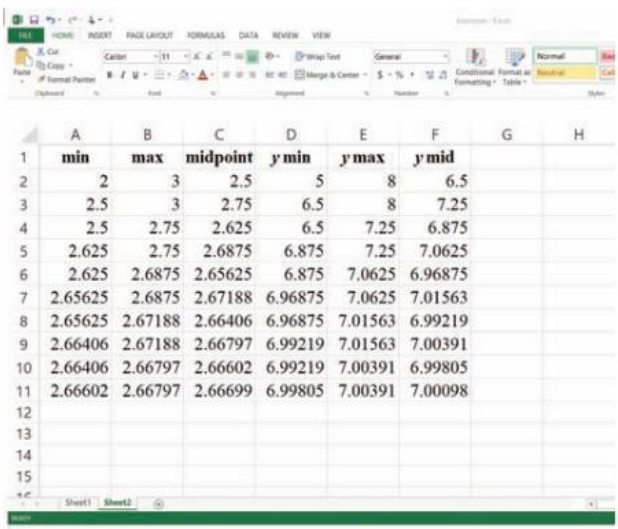
Figure 4

If (F2 < 7, C2, A2) says if F2 < 7 then place value C2 in cell, otherwise (i.e. F2 ≥ 7) place value A2.

The result should be the spreadsheet values below, where the solution of $3x - 1 = 7$ (correct to two decimal places) can be seen as $x = 2.67$.

ii Try this process for yourself to solve $8x - 2 = 7$, correct to two decimal places.

iii Try once again to solve $9x + 4 = 11$, correct to three decimal places.



	A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H
1	**min**	**max**	**midpoint**	***y* min**	***y* max**	***y* mid**		
2	2	3	2.5	5	8	6.5		
3	2.5	3	2.75	6.5	8	7.25		
4	2.5	2.75	2.625	6.5	7.25	6.875		
5	2.625	2.75	2.6875	6.875	7.25	7.0625		
6	2.625	2.6875	2.65625	6.875	7.0625	6.96875		
7	2.65625	2.6875	2.67188	6.96875	7.0625	7.01563		
8	2.65625	2.67188	2.66406	6.96875	7.01563	6.99219		
9	2.66406	2.67188	2.66797	6.99219	7.01563	7.00391		
10	2.66406	2.66797	2.66602	6.99219	7.00391	6.99805		
11	2.66602	2.66797	2.66699	6.99805	7.00391	7.00098		
12								
13								
14								
15								

d *Extension*

Investigate the Excel function *Goal seek* in the *Data* menu under *What-if analysis*. How could this be used to complete the work above?

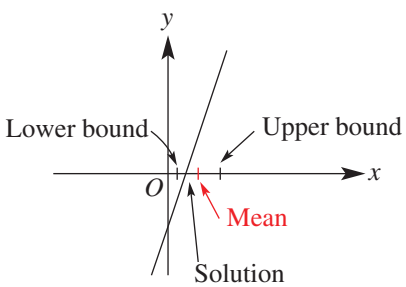
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

1.3 Locating *x*-intercepts of linear graphs

Recall that the x-intercept of a linear graph with rule $y = mx + c$ is where $y = 0$. So finding the x-intercept for, say, $y = 3x - 1$ is the same as solving $3x - 1 = 0$. Use the process from parts **1.2b** and **c** above to locate the x-intercepts (correct to two decimal places) of the following graphs. This time you will be looking for the y value to change from positive to negative in your interval.

i $y = 7x - 2$

ii $y = 12x - 4$



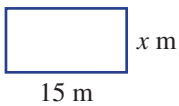
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Activity 2 Measurement formulas and maximising areas

Strand: Measurement and Geometry

2.1 Measurement calculations using a spreadsheet

Consider a rectangular area that is fenced off to form a paddock. It has a fixed length of 15 m and a width of x m. Due to the limited amount of fencing wire available, the perimeter of the paddock is fixed at 48 m.



a Create a table in Excel like the one shown below that will find the value of the width, x m, that gives a perimeter of 48 m and also calculates the corresponding area. Enter the length into cell A2 and start with a width of 1 m in cell B2. Enter the perimeter formula in C2 and area formula in D2. Fill down cells B3, C3 and D3 to find the x value that gives the required perimeter of 48 m.

	A	B	C	D
1	Length (metres)	Width (x metres)	Perimeter (metres)	Area (m^2)
2	15	=1	=2*$A$2+2*B2	=$A$2*B2
3		=B2+1	=2*$A$2+2*B3	=$A$2*B3
4				
5				
6				

b Alter your spreadsheet above to find the width (x m) and area if the perimeter is still 48 m but the length is 12 m.

c For case **a**, write a rule for the width x m for a length of 15 m and a perimeter of P m.

d We will now generalise the cases above in a bid to find the maximum rectangular area that can be formed from 60 m of fencing.

x m

$P = 2x + 2l$

$60 = 2x + 2l$

Solve for l.

i For a width of x m and 60 m of fencing, explain why the length of the rectangular paddock is given by $(30 - x)$ m.

ii Create a table in Excel like the one shown below. It should include the changing integer width values (x m), the corresponding lengths, the perimeter (as a check, which should always be 60 m) and the corresponding area.

	A	B	C	D
1	Width (x metres)	Length (metres)	Perimeter (metres)	Area (m^2)
2	1	=30-A2	=2*A2+2*B2	=A2*B2
3	=A2+1	=30-A3	=2*A3+2*B3	=A3*B3
4				

Fill down the columns to $x = 30$ and determine the maximum area and the dimensions of the paddock that maximise the area.

iii Repeat part **ii** but for a perimeter of 100 m. You will need to change only the formula for the length of the paddock.

iv In parts **ii** and **iii**, what do you notice about the dimensions of your paddock that maximise the area for a given perimeter?

v *Extension*

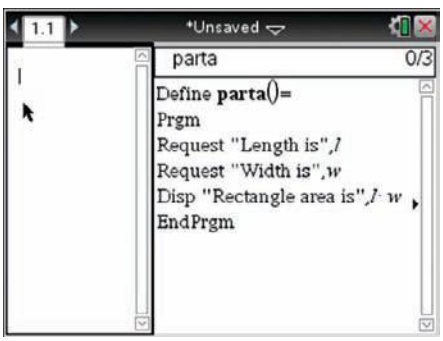
Generalise your results for a perimeter of k m by finding the dimensions that generate the maximum area in terms of k and, hence, the maximum area in terms of k.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

2.2 Measurement calculations using programming

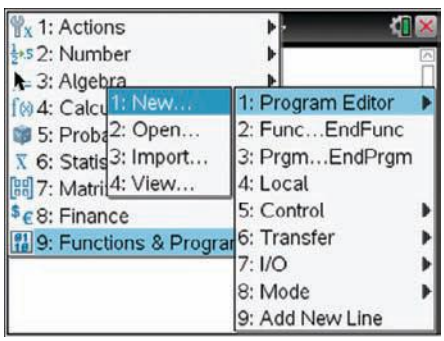
As you have seen, formulas are used in measurement to calculate perimeters, areas and more. Each of these formulas require a set of inputs (i.e. variable values) and produce an output (e.g. perimeter, area etc.).

a The program below is from a CAS calculator. Analyse the program and explain what you think it does.



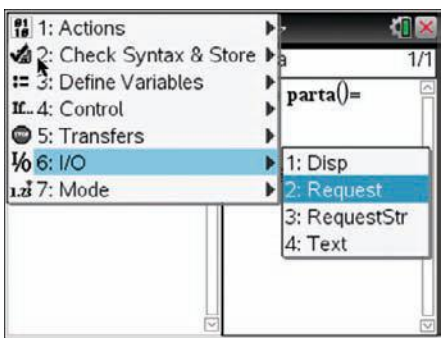
b Now follow these steps to enter the program into your calculator and run it.

1 Open a new document screen and select the *Functions & Programs* menu followed by *Program Editor* and *New*.



2 Give your program a name.

3 The program needs two inputs: length and width. Select *Menu* and choose *I/O* (Inputs and outputs menu) followed by *Request*.



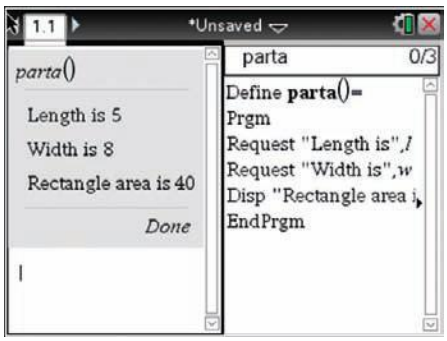
Type the display text you want to use to prompt the user to input the length and width and choose a variable for each.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 To display the result, from the *I/O* menu select *Disp* and type the display text you want to appear, followed by the formula for calculating the area of the rectangle; i.e. $l \times w$.

5 To save, from the menu select *Check syntax and store*.

6 To run the program, type the program name on the left-hand panel. You should be prompted for the inputs and the result will be displayed.



c Now design and run a program that calculates the area of a trapezium. Consider what inputs you will need and how to calculate the area.

d The circumference of a circle is given by $C = 2\pi r$. Design and run a program that calculates the radius of a circle when given its circumference.

In the design phase of a program, a flow chart may be used to consider the inputs, what the program needs to do and the output. An example is shown below for the area of a rectangle program (Figure 1). Figure 2 shows the same program but it has been modified so that it decides that if the length is equal to the width, then the rectangle is a square and the program displays this, otherwise it displays the area of a rectangle.

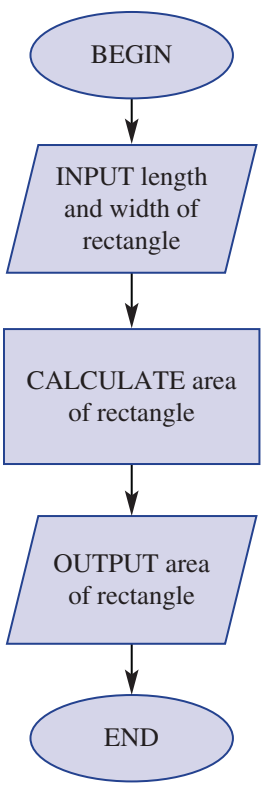


Figure 1

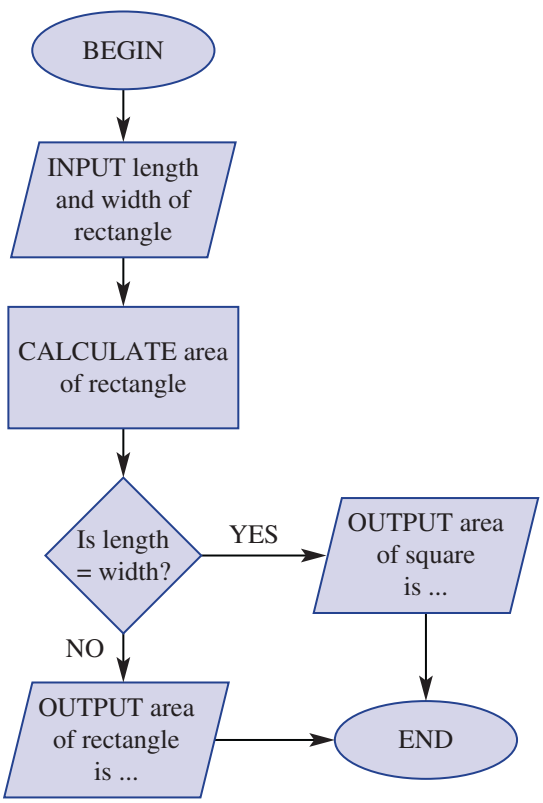
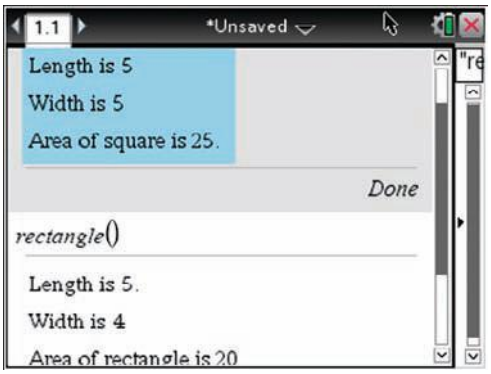


Figure 2

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

e Discover the use of the 'If. . . then. . . else' condition in the *Control* menu of the *Program Editor*. Use this to extend your program for the area of a rectangle to implement the modified program shown in Figure 2, which decides if the rectangle is a square or not and then displays its output as such.

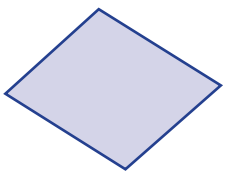


f This task involves designing a program that calculates the third side of a right-angled triangle, (when given the two shortest sides) and the two non-right angles of the triangle.

i Design your own flow chart for the program for the right-angled triangle sides and angles. Use the design shown above for the symbols; i.e. a parallelogram for input/output boxes, a rectangle for process boxes and a diamond for any decision boxes.

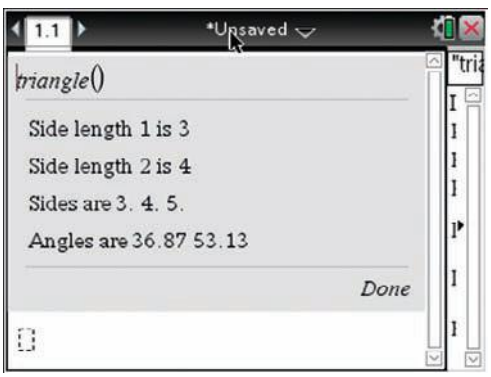
for input/output stages

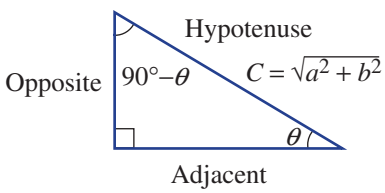
for process stages


for decision stages

ii Now that you have completed the design, start a new program on your CAS calculator to find the third side length. Use Pythagoras' theorem and the other two angles, using the inverse tan function and complementary angles.
Recall that:

- $c = \sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$
- $\tan\theta = \frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{adjacent}}$ and $\theta = \tan^{-1}\left(\frac{\text{opposite}}{\text{adjacent}}\right)$.
- The two smaller angles in a right-angled triangle are complementary (i.e. sum to 90°).





iii Run your program and have it tested by a classmate. You can use the round() function to round your angles to two decimal places. Make sure you are in degrees mode and approximate mode.

iv Modify your program to also find the perimeter and area of the right-angled triangle.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Activity 3 Walk the Plank

Strand: Statistics and Probability

In the game of Walk the Plank, a numbered board represents the plank.

- Select a starting position somewhere along the plank.
- Toss a coin to determine whether you take one step forward (heads) or one step backwards (tails).
- Continue tossing the coin until you are either 'safe' and back on board the ship or 'overboard' and into the water.

On the plank, position 6 is considered 'safe' and position 0 is 'overboard'.

3.1 Playing the game

a Play the game 20 times, using a coin. Start from position 3, facing the deck. Count how many times you end up overboard.

b Calculate the proportion of times you end up overboard for the games you played in part **a**.

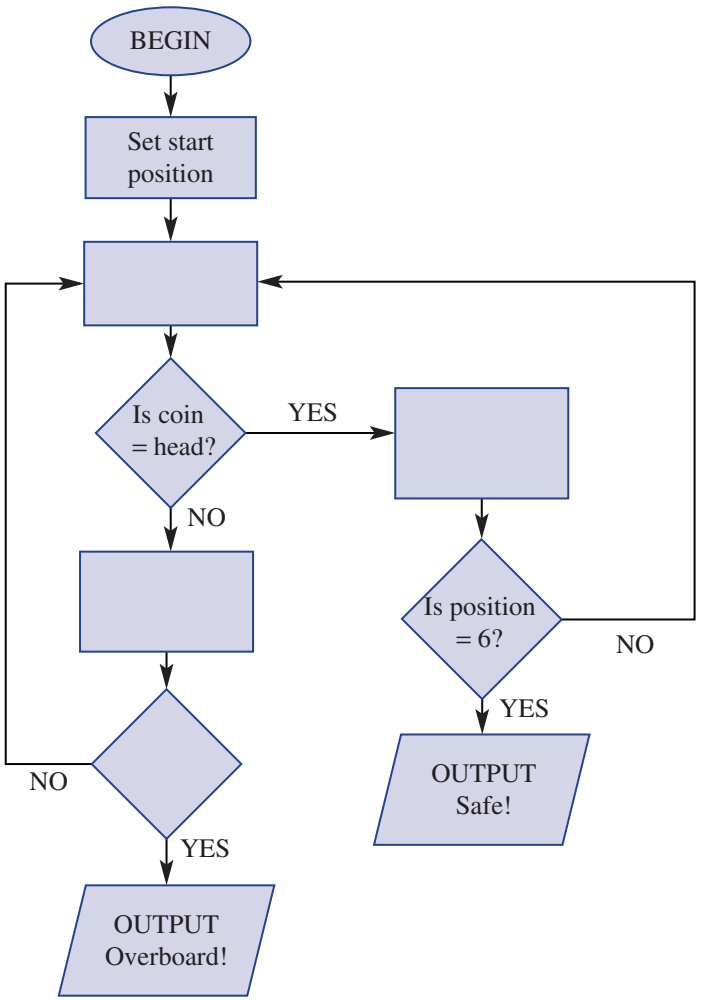
3.2 Walk the Plank as an algorithm

We will now think about Walk the Plank as an algorithm.

a Play the game once more. Think about the processes involved if you were going to write this game as an algorithm. Discuss your thoughts with a classmate.

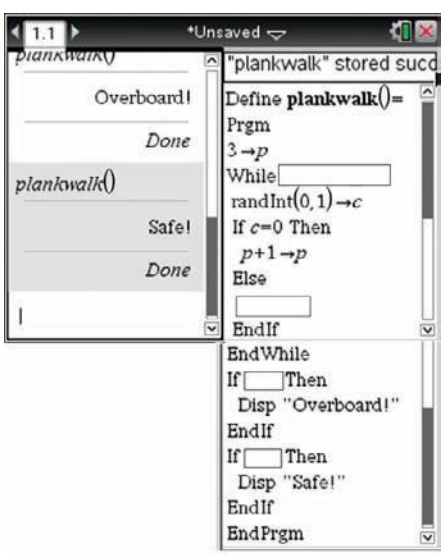
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

b Complete the flow chart below by filling in the empty boxes to describe one run-through of the game. The symbols are the same as those used in Task 2.2.



c By considering your flow chart, fill in the boxes in this program to complete it. The coin toss is simulated by generating the random numbers 0 or 1 and assigning 0 as heads and 1 as tails.

d Enter your program on your CAS calculator. The 'While' loop can be found in the *Control* menu. It ensures the program keeps running while a condition is still being met. p is the variable that stores the position on the 'plank'.



ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

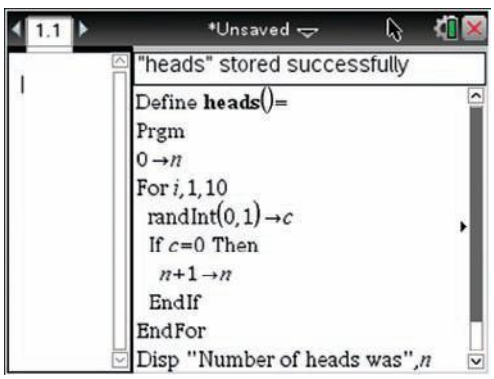
e Run your program 50 times and count the number of times you get the result 'Overboard'. Then calculate the proportion of times you end up overboard.

f Modify your program to cater for different start positions. Add an input (Request) so that the starting value of p can be chosen by the user instead of setting $p = 3$. For each start position, run your program 20 times and record (in a table like the one below) the number of times you get the result 'Overboard'.

Start position, p	Overboard tally	Overboard frequency
1		
2		
3		
4		
5		

g Construct a frequency histogram of your results. Comment on your results. What do you think would happen if you were to run the program 100 times for each starting position?

Rather than having to count the number of times overboard yourself and run the program 20 or 50 separate times, a 'For loop' can be used to run the simulation a set number of times. This can be found in the *Control* menu. The screen shown opposite shows a simple 'For loop' that simulates tossing a coin 10 times, counts the number of heads and then displays the result.



h Adjust your program to include a 'For loop' that runs the Walk the Plank simulation a number of times and counts the number of times the result is 'Overboard'.

i *Extension*

Consider how you could add more features to this game. For example, the plank could be longer and the process of moving along it could be more involved. You could toss a coin to determine if you are facing forwards or backwards and then roll a die to determine the number of steps you take, where rolling 1–3 could mean 1–3 steps forward and rolling 4–6 could mean 1–3 steps backwards. Add your own ideas, design the algorithm and then write and run the program.

ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Answers

Chapter 1

Pre-test

1 **a** circle **b** square **c** parallelogram
d triangle **e** rectangle **f** trapezium
g semicircle **h** rhombus
2 **a** 1000 **b** 100 **c** 10 **d** 1000
e 500 **f** 25
3 **a** 12 cm **b** 32 m **c** 5.9 mm
4 **a** 10 cm^2 **b** 70 m^2 **c** 36 km^2
5 **a** 4 cm^2 **b** 14 m^2 **c** 6 km^2
6 $C = 31.42$ m
$A = 78.54$ m^2

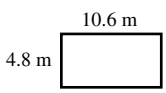
Exercise 1A

1 **a** 1000 **b** 10 **c** 100
2 **a** 100 **b** 10 000 **c** 1 00 000
3 **a** 1000 **b** 1 000 000 000 **c** 1 000 000
4 **a** 43.2 mm **b** 0.327 km **c** 8.34 m
d 96 mm **e** 0.2975 km **f** 1.27 cm
5 **a** 3 00 000 mm^2 **b** 5000 cm^2
c 5 000 000 m^2 **d** 29 800 cm^2
e 53 700 mm^2 **f** 230 cm^2
6 **a** 2000 mm^3 **b** 200 000 cm^3
c 5.7 cm^3 **d** 15 000 000 m^3
e 0.0283 km^3 **f** 0.762 m^3
7 5500 m
8 **a** 23.4 m **b** 22 m
9 **a** 118 mm **b** 147.3 cm **c** 453.258 km
d 15.5 cm^2 **e** 3251 cm^2 **f** 3739 m^2
g 484 500 mm^3 **h** 537 300 m^3
10 21.5 cm
11 for a high level of accuracy
12 **a** 8.85 km **b** 4.5 feet **c** 26.67 cm
d 1.243 miles **e** 57 000 m^2 **f** 0.247 L
g 8200 mL **h** 5 500 000 mL **i** 1000 sq feet
j 2000 L **k** 100 ha **l** 0.152 m^3

Exercise 1B

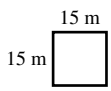
1 perimeter
2 **a** 6 **b** 7.1 **c** 4.3
3 **a** 12 cm **b** 23 m **c** 11 km
d 12 m **e** 19.2 cm **f** 10 m
4 **a** 6.7 cm **b** 65 mm **c** 18 m
d 810 m **e** 9.4 km **f** 180 cm
5 **a** $x = 4$ **b** $x = 2$ **c** $x = 6$
6 **a** $x = 3$ **b** $x = 8.8$ **c** $x = 0.1$

7 **a** **i**



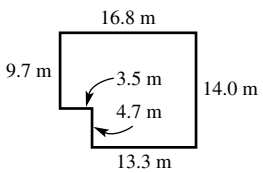
ii 30.8 m

b **i**



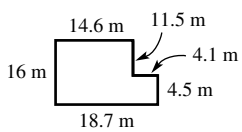
ii 60 m

c **i**



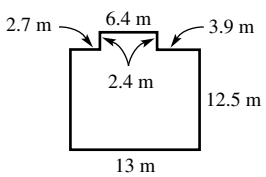
ii 61.6 m

d **i**



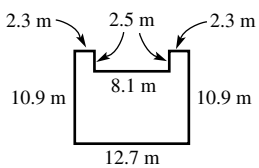
ii 69.4 m

e **i**



ii 55.8 m

f **i**



ii 52.2 m

8 20 m
9 15 cm
10 **a** $P = 4l$ **b** $P = 2l + 2w$ **c** $P = x + y + z$
d $P = a + 2b$ **e** $P = 4l$ **f** $P = 3s$
11 3
12 13

Exercise 1C

1 **a** $C = \pi d$ **b** $C = 2\pi r$
2 **a** $\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{1}{4}$ **c** $\frac{3}{4}$
3 **a** 8.6 m **b** 1.8 cm

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

4 **a** 18.85 m **b** 31.42 m **c** 31.42 km
d 113.10 cm **e** 61.07 mm **f** 3.36 km
5 **a** 27.42 m **b** 16.28 cm **c** 6.71 mm
d 12.22 cm **e** 14.71 m **f** 59.70 cm
6 **a** 9.42 m **b** $423.90
7 **a** **i** 3.14 m **ii** 47.12 m
b 3.14 km
8 319 times
9 **a** 12.25 **b** 53.03 **c** 1.37
d 62.83 **e** 19.77 **f** 61.70
10 **a** $r = \frac{C}{2\pi}$
b **i** 5.57 cm **ii** 0.29 m **iii** 0.04 km
11 **a** 3.5 cm
b **i** 21.99 cm **ii** 65.97 cm **iii** 109.96 cm
c 12.73 cm

Exercise 1D

1 **a** E **b** B **c** F
d C **e** D **f** A
2 **a** 2 cm **b** 4 m **c** 4.3 cm
d 4 km **e** 7.8 m **f** 10 cm
3 **a** 4 m^2 **b** 21 cm^2 **c** 11.76 m^2
d 21 m^2 **e** 22.5 mm^2 **f** 2 m^2
4 **a** 25 cm^2 **b** 54.6 m^2 **c** 1.82 km^2
d 0.025 mm^2 **e** 1.1234 m^2 **f** 100 cm^2
5 **a** 0.96 m^2 **b** 9600 cm^2
6 21 m^2
7 **a** 13.6 m^2 **b** $149.60
8 **a** 7.56 m^2 **b** $491.40
9 1 and 24, 2 and 12, 3 and 8, 4 and 6
10 **a** 252.05 m^2 **b** 177.86 m^2
11 **a** $w = 2.88$ **b** $l = 14.35$ **c** $h = 1.44$
d $a = 1.05$ **e** $h = 1.87$ **f** $x = 8.89$
12 All answers = 3

Exercise 1E

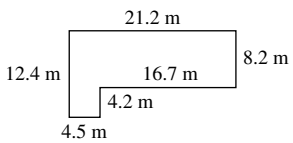
1 E
2 C
3 **a** $\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{1}{4}$ **c** $\frac{1}{3}$
d $\frac{1}{12}$ **e** $\frac{7}{12}$ **f** $\frac{5}{6}$
4 **a** 50.27 cm^2 **b** 201.06 m^2 **c** 72.38 m^2
d 38.48 m^2 **e** 0.82 mm^2 **f** 124.69 km^2
5 **a** 39.27 m^2 **b** 4.91 m^2 **c** 84.82 m^2
d 13.09 m^2 **e** 69.81 cm^2 **f** 8.03 m^2
6 157.1 cm^2
7 **a** 14.28 cm^2 **b** 178.54 m^2 **c** 32.14 mm^2
8 43.24 m^2
9 **a** 34.8 cm^2 **b** 63.5 m^2 **c** 8.7 m^2
d 103.3 mm^2 **e** 578.5 km^2 **f** 5.0 m^2
10 **a** 20 **b** 565.49 cm^2
c 154.51 cm^2 **d** 5

Exercise 1F

1 **a** 6 **b** 3
2 **a** 35 cm^2 **b** 21 cm^2 **c** 12 cm^2 **d** 96 cm^2
3 **a** 90 cm^2 **b** 34 mm^2 **c** 46 m^2
4 **a** 240 m^2 **b** 84 m^2 **c** 168 m^2 **d** 1176 cm^2
5 **a** 8.64 cm^2 **b** 96 mm^2 **c** 836.6 m^2
6 384 cm^2
7 3880 cm^2
8 3520 cm^2
9 **a** 5.116 L **b** 10.232 L
10 **a** Waterproof 13.76 L
Smooth paint 22.86 L
b $553.46
11 **a** 105 cm^2 **b** 5 cm^2 **c** 16 m^2
12 Yes, only 5 L required

Progress quiz

1 **a** 9000 m **b** 45 000 cm^2
c 145 000 mm^3
2 **a** 17 cm **b** 38 m
3 **a**



b 67.2 m
4 **a** $C = 25.13$ cm, $A = 50.27$ cm^2
b $C = 31.42$ m, $A = 78.54$ m^2
5 **a** 30 m^2 **b** 34 m^2
c 50 cm^2 **d** 33.5 cm^2
6 $607.20
7 $A = 49.6$ m^2, $P = 37.9$ m
8 **a** 102 m^2 **b** 152 cm^2

Exercise 1G

1 **a** circle **b** $2\pi rh$
2 **a** **i** 4 m **ii** 7 m
b 25.13 m
c 276.46 m^2
3 **a** 100.53 m^2 **b** 376.99 cm^2
c 1225.22 cm^2 **d** 74.64 mm^2
4 **a** 2557.3 cm^2 **b** 502.9 m^2
5 **a** 6.3 m^2 **b** 6283.2 cm^2
6 24.0 m^2
7 628.3 cm^2
8 75.4 m^2
9 **a** 173.9 cm^2 **b** 217.8 m^2
c 31.6 m^2 **d** 52.9 cm^2
10 **a** 25.13 m^2 **b** 251.33 m^2 **c** 6.28 m
d 159.15 times **e** 4000 m^2

Exercise 1H

1 **a** C **b** A **c** B
2 **a** 1000 **b** 1000
3 10 cm^3
4 **a** 240 m^3 **b** 480 cm^3 **c** 0.18 m^3
5 **a** 113.10 cm^3 **b** 19.63 m^3 **c** 4.83 mm^3
6 **a** 20 cm^2 **b** 90 cm^3
7 **a** 36 m^3 **b** 15 cm^3 **c** 0.572 mm^3
8 5890.49 cm^3
9 **a** 72 L **b** 2 L **c** 2 L
10 **a** 1583.36 m^3 **b** 30 km^3 **c** 196 cm^3
d 30 m^3 **e** 10 cm^3 **f** 2.15 m^3
11 **a** 25 cm^2 **b** 4 cm
12 **a** 17 150 cm^3 **b** 384.85 cm^3 **c** 35
d 3680.42 cm^3
13 **a** 83.3 m^3 **b** 1500 m^3 **c** 20.9 cm^3

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 1I

1 from 3.35 to under 3.45 (i.e. 3.43, 3.39 etc.)
2 **a** 347 cm **b** 3 m
3 6.65
4 **a** 1 cm **b** 0.1 mm
c 1 m **d** 0.1 kg
e 0.1 g **f** 1 m
g 1 h **h** 0.01 m or 1 cm
i 0.01 km or 10 m
5 **a** 4.5 m to 5.5 m **b** 7.5 cm to 8.5 cm
c 77.5 mm to 78.5 mm **d** 4.5 ns to 5.5 ns
e 1.5 km to 2.5 km **f** 34.15 cm to 34.25 cm
g 3.85 kg to 3.95 kg **h** 19.35 kg to 19.45 kg
i 457.85 t to 457.95 t **j** 18.645 m to 18.655 m
k 7.875 km to 7.885 km **l** 5.045 s to 5.055 s
6 **a** 30 m **b** 145 g **c** 4.6 km
7 **a** 149.5 cm to 150.5 cm
b 145 cm to 155 cm
c 149.95 cm to 150.05 cm
8 **a** 24.5 cm to 25.5 cm
b **i** 245 cm **ii** 255 cm
9 **a** 9.15 cm
b 9.25 cm
c 36.6 cm to 37 cm
10 **a** If they all choose a different level of accuracy, then they will have different answers. Also, human error plays a part.
b Johan: nearest kg; Amy: nearest 100 g; Thomas: nearest 10 g.
c Yes; however, the more decimal places being considered then the more accurate that the measurement will be when used in further calculations, if they are required.
11 **a** distance between towns, cities, or airplane rides; length of major rivers
b house plans, plumbing plans and building, in general
c mixing chemicals, administering cough mixture to children, matching paint colours, pay for petrol
d filling a swimming pool, describing the fuel tank of a car or plane
12 Compare your results with those of other students. Answers may vary.

Maths@Work: Bricklayer

1 **a** $l = 23$ cm $= 0.23$ m; $h = 11$ cm $= 0.11$ m
b 253 cm^2; 0.0253 m^2
c 1922.8 cm^3
d **i** 2.39 m **ii** 23.99 m
e 2990 mm
f approx. 237 bricks
2 **a** 828 bricks **b** 42 bags **c** $831
3 **a** 1 pack **b** 2 packs
4 **a** 8 layers
b 159.6 cm
c 64×40 bricks $= 2560$ bricks
d $3775
5

Brick wall dimensions		Numbers of bricks used		
Length	Height	Per layer (row)	Number of layers	Total
5750	2150	24	18	432
21350	6230	89	52	4628

6

Bricks	Cost of pallets			
Number of bricks used	Decimal number of pallets	Number of whole pallets	Cost per pallet (including GST)	Total cost of pallets
432	0.432	1	$1358.24	$1358.24
4628	4.628	5	$1541.56	$7707.80

Cost of mortar				Total cost of mortar and pallets
Decimal number of mortar bags	Number of whole bags	Cost per bag (including GST)	Total cost of mortar	
21.6	22	$7.95	$174.90	$1533.14
231.4	232	$8.45	$1960.40	$9668.20

7 **a** $3015.02 **b** $5424.96

Puzzles and games

1 PRISM **2** No **3** 21.46% **4** 11
5 $r = 2$ **6** 9.42 cm^2 **7** 27 cm^3

Multiple-choice questions

1 E **2** B **3** C **4** A **5** A
6 B **7** E **8** D **9** B **10** C

Short-answers questions

1 **a** 5300 m **b** 2.7 m^2 **c** 40 mm^3
2 **a** 13 **b** 24 cm **c** 38 m
3 **a** 18.85 m **b** 28.27 m^2
4 **a** **i** 19.42 m **ii** 26.14 m^2
b **i** 19.50 m **ii** 21.87 m^2
c **i** 14.28 m **ii** 12.28 m^2
5 **a** 10 **b** 25.9 **c** 17.5
6 **a** 828 m^2 **b** 136 cm^2
7 376.99 m^2
8 **a** 40 cm^3 **b** 125.66 m^3 **c** 21 cm^3
9 **a** 5.5 cm to 6.5 cm
b 4.15 kg to 4.25 kg
c 16.205 m to 16.215 m

Extended-response question

1 **a** 50.27 m^2 **b** 150.80 m^2
c 100.53 m^3 **d** 100 530.96 L

Chapter 2

Pre-test

1 **a** $99.62 **b** $1612 **c** $2742
d $84.51 **e** $1683.85
2 **a** $\frac{50}{100}$ **b** $\frac{75}{100}$ **c** $\frac{20}{100}$ **d** $\frac{68}{100}$ **e** $\frac{45}{100}$
3 **a** 0.5 **b** 0.25 **c** 0.2
d 0.4 **e** 0.3
4 **a** 16.79 **b** 7.35 **c** 45.34
d 6.84 **e** 102.90

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 $a = 4519.28$, $b = 50\,509.20$, $c = 29\,572$, $d = 54\,878$, $e = 97\,903.46$
6 **a** \$65 312 **b** \$187 200 **c** \$49 686 **d** \$35 800
7 **a** \$40 **b** \$250 **c** \$2 **d** \$211 **e** \$2.56 **f** \$750
8 **a** \$20 **b** \$300 **c** \$64
9 $a = 18$, $b = 323$, $c = 264$, $d = 112$, $e = 57.92$
10 **a** \$50 **b** \$56 **c** \$550

Exercise 2A

1 **a** $\frac{40}{100}$ **b** $\frac{85}{100}$ **c** $\frac{98}{100}$ **d** $\frac{28}{100}$ **e** $\frac{90}{100}$
2 **a** 100 **b** 90 **c** 60
3 **a** \$0.75 **b** \$80 **c** \$49 **d** \$501 **e** \$103 **f** \$1.20 **g** \$37.50 **h** \$400 **i** \$4.50
4 **a** 50% **b** 20% **c** 25% **d** 10% **e** 1% **f** 28% **g** 30% **h** 75% **i** $62\frac{1}{2}\%$ **j** 76% **k** 99% **l** 94%
5 **a** 17% **b** 73% **c** 48% **d** 9% **e** 6% **f** 13% **g** 113% **h** 101% **i** 80% **j** 90% **k** 99% **l** 17.5%
6 **a** $\frac{71}{100}$ **b** $\frac{4}{5}$ **c** $\frac{1}{4}$ **d** $\frac{11}{20}$ **e** $\frac{2}{5}$ **f** $\frac{22}{25}$ **g** $\frac{3}{20}$ **h** $\frac{33}{200}$ **i** $\frac{7}{40}$ **j** $\frac{9}{400}$ **k** $\frac{21}{400}$ **l** $\frac{21}{40}$
7 **a** 0.61 **b** 0.83 **c** 0.75 **d** 0.45 **e** 0.09 **f** 0.9 **g** 0.5 **h** 0.165 **i** 0.073 **j** 2 **k** 4.3 **l** 0.005
8 **a** \$25 **b** \$150 **c** \$60 **d** \$90 **e** \$21.60 **f** 344 grams **g** \$50.40 **h** \$107.80 **i** 350 m
9 **a** $\frac{15}{300} = \frac{1}{20}$ **b** 5%
10 68 kg
11 47.52 minutes
12 16.67%
13 $11\frac{1}{9}\%$
14 \$205.97
15 **a** 1.4, 1.7, 1.2, 0.8, 1.3, 0.4, 0.4, 1.4, 1.4 **b** **i** 32.0% **ii** 25.0% **iii** 10.9% **c** NSW – 32%, Vic – 25%, Qld – 20%, SA – 7%, WA – 11%, Tas – 2%, NT – 1%, ACT – 2% **d** 90°

Exercise 2B

1 **a** 1.1 **b** 1.2 **c** 1.5 **d** 1.02 **e** 1.18
2 **a** 0.95 **b** 0.7 **c** 0.85 **d** 0.5 **e** 0.83
3 **a** P: \$5 **b** P: \$2.50 **c** Loss: \$16 **d** P: \$11 **e** Loss: \$2.20
4 **a** \$94.50 **b** \$440 **c** \$66 **d** \$529.20 **e** \$56 **f** \$7210 **g** \$56.43 **h** \$3.60
5 **a** \$1425 **b** \$360 **c** \$376 **d** \$68 **e** \$412.50 **f** \$47.03 **g** \$101.58 **h** \$35.80
6

a	\$6	60%
b	\$60	25%
c	\$3	20%
d	\$7.50	3%
e	\$2325	75%
f	\$0.99	18%

7 **a** \$52.25 **b** \$261.25
8 **a** \$1225 **b** \$24.50
9 \$1536
10 **a** \$67.96 **b** \$11.99
11 **a** \$2140.25 **b** \$305.75
12 **a** \$221.40 **b** \$147.60
13 **a** \$84.13 **b** \$94.87
14 \$104.71
15 **a** \$106.15 **b** \$37.15
16 **a** \$2.20 **b** 122.22% **c** \$66 **d** 122.22%
17 **a** \$13 **b** \$6.30 **c** \$69.30 **d** 38.6%
18 **a** \$1952.24 **b** \$211.24 **c** 12.13% **d** \$57.03

Exercise 2C

1 **a** \$15 **b** \$22.50 **c** \$30 **d** \$29 640
2 \$5600 a month by \$200
3 \$36 842
4

	Gross income	Net income
a	\$570	\$415
b	\$984	\$764
c	\$604.90	\$304.90
d	\$3430	\$2920
e	\$930.15	\$746.15

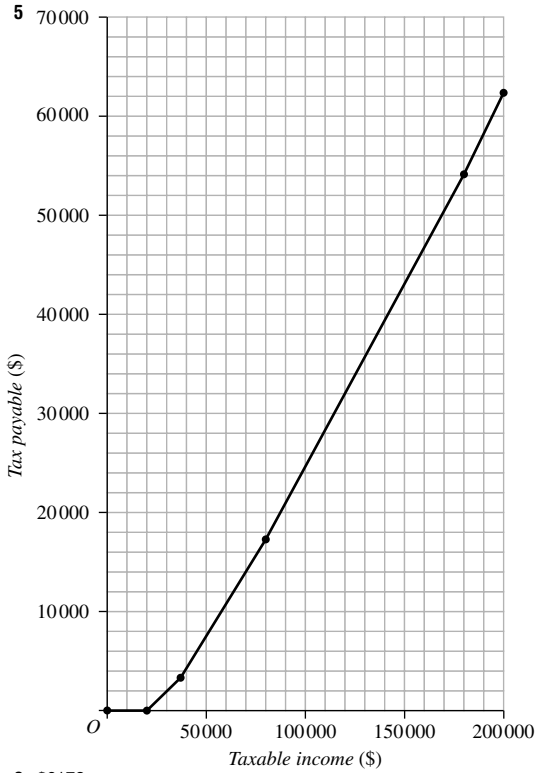
5 **a** \$3558.72 **b** \$92 526.72 **c** \$7710.57
6 **a** \$1960 **b** \$6960
7 \$34 375.00
8 **a** \$1480.77 **b** \$150 **c** \$1630.77 **d** \$88 425
9 1.25%
10 \$365.70
11 \$2000
12 **a** Kuger Incorporated **b** Mathsville Credit Union, 00754031 **c** \$72 454 **d** fortnightly **e** \$4420 **f** \$26.45 **g** \$600.60 **h** \$16 016 tax, net = \$49 793.90 **i** \$34.71/h

Exercise 2D

1 Taxable income = gross income minus deductions
2 false
3 Anything from \$0 to \$18 200
4 37c

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5



6 $6172

7 **a** $2242 **b** $11 047 **c** $43 447 **d** $63 547

8 **a** $65 625 **b** $12 875.13
c $1312.50 **d** $14 187.63
e 21.6% (to 1 d.p.) **f** Not enough paid; owes $1117.63

9 $87 500

10 $6172.84

11 $95 000

12 Gross income is the total earned before tax is deducted. Taxable income is found by subtracting tax deductions from gross income.

13 If a person pays too much tax during the year they will receive a tax refund. If they do not pay enough tax during the year they will have a tax liability to pay.

14 They only pay 45 cents for every dollar over $180 000.

15 **a** The tax-free threshold has been increased from $6000 to $18 200. In the second tax bracket, the **marginal** rate has changed from 15c to 19c. In the third tax bracket, the **marginal** rate has changed from 30c to 32.5c.

b

	2011/2012	2012/2013	
Ali	$0	$0	No change
Xi	$1350	$0	$1350 less tax to pay
Charlotte	$3600	$2242	$1358 less tax to pay
Diego	$8550	$7797	$753 less tax to pay

16

	Resident	Non-resident	
Ali	$0	$1625	Non-residents pay a lot more tax than residents.
Xi	$0	$4875	
Charlotte	$2242	$9750	
Diego	$7797	$16 250	

17 **a** Answers will vary.
b **i** $17 547
ii $32.50, so this means that the $100 donation really costs you only $67.50.

Exercise 2E

1 $124.28

2 $2162

3 $47

4 **a** $41 250 **b** $33 750 **c** Yes, $144 per week

5 $106

6 **a** $33 068 **b** 73.5%

7 **a** $7756 **b** $3878 **c** $149.15

8 **a** $82 708 **b** $1590.54 **c** 24%

9 **a** 13.43% **b** 29.56 L

10 **a** $342.55 **b** $2137.51 **c** 11.68%

11 **a**

food	$86.40
recreation	$43.20
transport	$56.16
savings	$86.40
taxation	$108.00
clothing	$51.84

b $56.16 **c** 30% **d** $673.92 **e** 10%

12 200 tea bags

13 daily

14 **a** Mon–Thurs – $87
Fri–Sat – $93.50
Weekly – $71.43
b Weekly

15 **a** 200 mL bottle $0.011 75, 500 mL bottle $0.01048
b 500 mL bottle **c** $2.10 **d** $0.25
e cost of packaging

16 **a** $248 **b** $240, 6 containers

Exercise 2F

1 **a** 1 **b** 6 **c** 52
d 4 **e** 3 **f** 30

2 **a** $120 **b** $420 **c** $30

3 **a** $420 **b** $840 **c** $35

4 **a** $140 **b** $420 **c** $192.50
d $46.88 **e** 3% p.a. **f** 4% p.a.

5 **a** $6650 **b** $184.72 per month

6 **a** $5192.25 **b** $16 692.25 **c** $198.72

7 **a** $7600 **b** $17 600 **c** $366.67

8 $1008

9 **a** $228 **b** $684 **c** $4684

10 16%

11 12.5 years

12 $66 667

13 $7500

14 **a** $1250, $2500 **b** $1968.75, $1920.00
c $220.31, $331.11

Progress quiz

1 **a** 0.32 **b** $\frac{2}{25}$ **c** 44% **d** 31.25%
e 25.2% **f** $\frac{31}{200}$

2 $3840

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

3 **a** \$285.20 **b** 194.4 mL **c** 132.6 cm
4 \$194.35
5 40%
6 **a** 956 **b** \$722.20
7 **a** \$75 875 **b** \$16 206.38 **c** \$1517.50
d Cameron must pay \$2468.88
8 **a** \$31 256 **b** 38.1%
9 **a** \$4720 **b** 4.5 years

Exercise 2G

1 **a** \$50 **b** \$550 **c** \$55 **d** \$605
e \$605
2 **a** \$1102.50 **b** \$1102.50
c \$1157.63 **d** \$1157.63
3 **a** $700(1.08)^2$ **b** $1000(1.15)^6$
c $850(1.06)^4$
4 **a** 6, 3% **b** 60, 1% **c** 52, 0.173%
d 14, 2.625% **e** 32, 3.75% **f** 120, 0.8%
5

2	4200	210	4410
3	4410	220.50	4630.50
4	4630.50	231.53	4862.03
5	4862.03	243.10	5105.13

6 **a** \$5105.13 **b** \$11 946.33
c \$13 652.22 **d** \$9550.63
7 **a** \$106 000 **b** \$112 360
c \$119 101.60 **d** \$133 822.56
e \$179 084.77 **f** \$239 655.82
8 **a** \$2254.32 **b** \$87 960.39
c \$1461.53 **d** \$789.84 **e** \$591.63
9 \$11 651.92
10 **a** \$5075 **b** \$5228.39 **c** \$5386.42
11 **a** **i** \$3239.42 **ii** \$3348.15 **iii** \$3446.15
iv \$3461.88 **v** \$3465.96
b \$226.54
12 **a** $P = 300, n = 12, r = 7\%,$
$R = 14\%, t = 6$ years
b $P = 5000, n = 24, r = 2.5\%,$
$R = 30\%, t = 2$ years
c $P = 1000, n = 65, r = 0.036\%,$
$R = 0.936\%, t = 2.5$ years
d $P = 3500, n = 30, r = 0.0053\%,$
$R = 1.9345\%, t = 30$ days
e $P = 10\,000, n = 10, r = 7.8\%,$
$R = 7.8\%, t = 10$ years
13 5.3% compounded bi-annually
14 **a** **i** approx. 6 years **ii** approx. 12 years
iii approx. 9 years **iv** approx. 5 years
v approx. 7 years **vi** approx. 4 years
b Same answer as part **a**.
c yes

Exercise 2H

1 **a** \$2640 **b** \$3960 **c** \$13 200
2 \$124.50
3 **a** \$1.20 **b** \$1.71 **c** \$3 **d** \$0.09
4 **a** \$18 600 **b** \$8600
5 **a** \$5580 **b** \$80
6 **a** 360 **b** \$624 960 **c** \$374 960
7 **a** \$2550 **b** \$10 200 **c** \$10 620 **d** \$13 170
e \$420
8 **a** \$4.50 **b** \$1.26
9 **a**

May	June	July	August
\$2.40	\$3.00	\$0.12	\$5.00

September	October
\$2.08	\$0.73

b \$13.33
10 **a** **i** \$0 **ii** \$0 **iii** \$7500
b \$6375
c \$1125
11 **a** **i** \$5250 **ii** \$20 250 **iii** \$281.25
b **i** \$8400 **ii** \$32 400 **iii** \$270
12 **a**

Date	Deposit	Withdrawal	Balance
1 May			\$3010
3 May	\$490		\$3500
5 May		\$2300	\$1200
17 May	\$490		\$1690
18 May		\$150	\$1540
20 May		\$50	\$1490
25 May		\$218	\$1272
31 May	\$490		\$1762

b \$4.90 **c** \$1759.55 **d** wages
13 **a** **i** \$73.13 **ii** \$69.72 **iii** \$75.17
b \$1700 over 3 years
14 **a** \$403.80 **b** \$393.80 **c** 24 cents a day
15 **a** \$98 822.90 **b** \$0.23 **c** \$8.00
d \$2400 **e** \$378.50 **f** \$246 025
g \$143 475.50

Exercise 2I

1 B
2 $P = 750, r = 7.5, n = 5$
3 $I = 225 \quad P = 300 \quad r = 3 \quad t = 25$
4 **a** **i** \$7146.10 **ii** \$6955.64 **iii** \$6858.57
iv \$7260 **v** \$7916.37
b \$6000 at 5.7% p.a. for 5 years
5 **a** **i** \$7080 **ii** \$7080 **iii** \$7428
iv \$7200 **v** \$7710
b \$6000 at 5.7% p.a. for 5 years
6 **a** **i** **I** \$240, \$240 **II** \$480, \$494.40
III \$1200, \$1352.90 **IV** \$2400, \$3163.39
ii **I** \$240, \$243.60 **II** \$480, \$502.04
III \$1200, \$1375.67 **IV** \$2400, \$3224.44
iii **I** \$240, \$246.71 **II** \$480, \$508.64
III \$1200, \$1395.40 **IV** \$2400, \$3277.59
b compound interest
c compound interest
7 **a**

Principal	Rate	Overall time	Interest	Amount
\$7000	5%	5 years	\$1750	\$8750
\$7000	10%	5 years	\$3500	\$10 500
\$3300	10%	3 years	\$990	\$4290
\$8000	10%	3 years	\$2400	\$10 400
\$9000	8%	2 years	\$1440	\$10 440
\$18 000	8%	2 years	\$2880	\$20 880

b **i** interest is doubled
ii no change **iii** interest is doubled

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8

Principal	Rate	Period	Overall time
$7000	4.56%	annually	5 years
$7000	8.45%	annually	5 years
$9000	8%	fortnightly	2 years
$18 000	8%	fortnightly	2 years

Interest	Amount
$1750	$8750
$3500	$10 500
$1559.00	$10 559.00
$3118.01	$21 118.01

9 **a** 8.45% **b** 8.19% **c** 8.12%
The more often interest is calculated, the lower the required rate.
10 **a** **i** 4.2% **ii** 8.7%
b it increases by more than this factor

Maths@Work: Bookkeeper

1 **a** $108 474 **b** $110 974
c $108 474 **d** August by $2500
e The term deposit **f** 48.32%
g $70, 417.33
2 **a** 92.07%
b $1200 in August
c It may be billed only every 2 months.
d $7200
3 **a** $135, 459
b 137% increase of November's total.
The Payroll tax increased by $3300 and a performance review cost $75, 000.
c **i** $4584 **ii** $55, 008
d 62.05%
4 **a**

Starting balance	Scheduled payment	Interest due	Principal paid	Ending balance
$230 000.00	$5780.00	$1725.00	$4055.00	$225 945.00
$225 945.00	$5780.00	$1694.59	$4085.41	$221 859.59
$221 859.59	$5780.00	$1663.95	$4116.05	$217 743.53

b **i** $205 209.22 **ii** $1442.93
iii $347.37 **iv** $18 641.74; $50 718.26

Puzzles and games

1 commission, fortnightly, overtime, piecework, annual, gross, net, monthly, casual, salary
2 You take away his credit card.
3 7 years 4 months
4 59 games

Multiple-choice questions

1 E **2** D **3** D **4** C **5** B
6 E **7** B **8** B **9** C **10** E

Short-answer questions

1 $1395
2 **a** $1084.16 **b** $4557
3 **a** $11.40 **b** $3.80
4 $4200
5 $576.92
6 **a** $7400 **b** $616.67 **c** $142.31
7 **a** $536.06 **b** $80.41 **c** 11.57%
8 **a** $12 325 **b** approx. 38%
9 **a** $1411.20 **b** $1080
10 **a** $21 247 **b** $1800
11 $35.55
12 **a** $1600 **b** $1166.67
13 **a** $624.32 **b** $1022.53
14 **a** $1050 **b** $12 000 **c** $6050

Extended-response questions

1 **a** $5624.32 **b** $624.32 **c** 4.16%
d $636.36
2 **a**

Date	Deposit	Withdrawal	Balance
1st			217.63
7th		64.00	153.63
9th	140.00		293.63
11th		117.34	176.29
15th		0.51	175.78
20th	20.00	12.93	182.85
30th	140.00		322.85

b $153.63 **c** $0.08

Chapter 3

Pre-test

1 **a** $3x$ **b** $a+1$ **c** $2m-5$ **d** $4(x+y)$
2 **a** 20 **b** 17 **c** 23 **d** 22
3 **a** no **b** yes **c** yes **d** no
4 **a** $8m$ **b** $5ab$ **c** $6x+8y$ **d** $8x$
e $15ab$ **f** $3y$
5 **a** $2x+10$ **b** $3y-6$ **c** $8x-12$ **d** $3x^2+x$
6 **a** 4 **b** 6 **c** $7a$ **d** $2x$ **e** x
f $7xy$
7 **a** $\frac{31}{40}$ **b** $\frac{11}{21}$ **c** $\frac{2}{15}$ **d** $\frac{3}{2}$
8 **a** 7^4 **b** m^3 **c** x^2y^3 **d** 3^5a^5
9 **a** 49 **b** 27 **c** 16 **d** 64
10 **a** 3^9 **b** 3^2 **c** 3^{10} **d** 3^0 **e** 3^{-2}
11 **a** 38 **b** 2310 **c** 0.172 **d** 0.0018
e 1000 **f** 10 000

Exercise 3A

1 **a** expression **b** constant term
c coefficient **d** term
2 **a** + **b** − **c** × **d** −
e + **f** ÷
3 **a** 7 **b** 15 **c** 5 **d** 9 **e** 6
4 **a** −6 **b** −20 **c** −6 **d** −7 **e** 9
f 18 **g** −6 **h** 7 **i** −7 **j** −13
k −4 **l** −5
5 **a** **i** 3 **ii** 8 **iii** 5
b **i** 4 **ii** 2 **iii** −3
c **i** 3 **ii** −4 **iii** 1
6 **a** $x+2$ **b** $y-4$ **c** $ab+y$ **d** $2x-3$
e $5x$ **f** $2m$ **g** $3r$ **h** $\frac{1}{2}x$
i $\frac{3}{4}m$ **j** $\frac{x}{y}$ **k** $\frac{a+b}{4}$ **l** x^2y

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

7 **a** 12 **b** 3 **c** 9 **d** 10
e 10 **f** −2 **g** 1 **h** 4
i −6 **j** 10 **k** −2 **l** −9

8 **a** $5x$ c **b** $35y$ c **c** $\frac{\$500}{n}$ **d** $\frac{\$11}{m}$
e $11 + x$

9 **a** $\$(3.40 + 2d)$
b **i** \$23.40 **ii** \$47.40

10 **a** **i** $2x$ **ii** $2x - 3$ **iii** $3(2x - 3)$
b 21

11 **a** $x + 1$ and $x - 1$
b No
c **i** $(x + 1)(x - 1)$ **ii** Less by one square metre.

12 **a** 21 sq. units **b** 1, 2, 3, 6, 9, 18

13 **a** **i** $4x$ **ii** x^2
b **i** $2x + 2y$ **ii** xy
c **i** $x + y + 5$ **ii** $\frac{5x}{2}$
d **i** $4ab$ **ii** a^2b^2
e **i** $2a^2 + 2b$ **ii** a^2b
f **i** $mn + 9$ **ii** $2mn$

Exercise 3B

1 **a** Y **b** Y **c** N **d** N
e Y **f** Y

2 **a** $10g$ **b** $5f$ **c** $8e$ **d** 0
e $6x$ **f** $17st$ **g** $3ts$ **h** $3ab$
i xy

3 **a** $6x$ **b** $12a$ **c** $10m$ **d** $-18y$

4 **a** $\frac{1}{2}$ **b** 4 **c** 3 **d** $\frac{2}{3}$
e $\frac{2}{3}$ **f** $\frac{7}{3}$ **g** $\frac{3}{4}$ **h** $\frac{2}{5}$
i $\frac{1}{2}$ **j** $\frac{1}{4}$

5 **a** $3ac$ and $-2ac$ **b** $4pq$ *and* $3qp$
c $7xy^2$ and $4yx^2$, $-3xy^2$ and $2xy^2$
d $2r^2$ and $-r^2$ **e** $-2ab$ and $4ba$
f $3p^2q$ and $4qp^2$ **g** $\frac{1}{3}lm$ and $\frac{lm}{4}$
h x^2y and yx^2, $-xy$ and yx

6 **a** $7t + 10$ **b** $4g + 1$ **c** $7x - 5$
d $m + 2$ **e** $3x + 3y$ **f** $2x + 6y$
g $5a - 2b$ **h** $-3m - 2n$ **i** $5de + 7de^2$
j $3kl - 10k^2l$ **k** $7x^2y + xy^2$ **l** $3fg - fg^2$

7 **a** $6rs$ **b** $6hu$ **c** $16wh$ **d** $6r^2s$
e $-8es$ **f** $-10hv$ **g** $12cm^2$ **h** $35fl$
i $8x^2y$ **j** $24a^2b$ **k** $3xy^2$ **l** $-16a^2b$
m $-12m^2n^2$ **n** $20x^2y^2$ **o** $20a^2b^2$

8 **a** $\frac{x}{2}$ **b** $3a$ **c** $\frac{a}{3}$ **d** $\frac{ab}{4}$
e $2b$ **f** $3x$ **g** $\frac{y}{2}$ **h** $\frac{4a}{5}$
i $\frac{2x}{5}$ **j** $\frac{2xy}{3}$ **k** $3ab$ **l** $\frac{n}{3}$

9 **a** $8x$ **b** $3x^2$

10 **a** $5x$ **b** $8y$ **c** $4a$ **d** $-6x$
e $2x$ **f** $10a^2b$

11 **a** $P = 4x + 6$, $A = 6x$ **b** $P = 4y + 16x$, $A = 16xy$
c $P = 20a$, $A = 25a^2$

12 $3x$

13 **a** $6x$ **b** $8a + 7$ **c** $4b$ **d** $11x$
e $3x^2$ **f** $15xy$ **g** $8x^2$ **h** $-29x^2$

Exercise 3C

1 **a** $4x$ **b** 8 **c** $4x + 8$
d $x + 2$ **e** $4 \times (x + 2)$ **f** $4x + 8$

2 **a** -8 **b** -18 **c** $-3x$ **d** $-8x$
e -20 **f** $-16x$ **g** 15 **h** 24
i $6x$

3 **a** $3(x + 4) = 3 \times x + 3 \times 4$
$= 3x + 12$
b $2(x - 5) = 2 \times x + 2 \times (-5)$
$= 2x - 10$
c $2(4x + 3) = 2 \times 4x + 2 \times 3$
$= 8x + 6$
d $x(x - 3) = x \times x + x \times (-3)$
$= x^2 - 3x$

4 **a** $6x$ **b** $8xy$ **c** $15x^2$
d $2x + 9$ **e** $7x + 5$ **f** $3x - 4$

5 **a** $2x + 8$ **b** $3x + 21$ **c** $4y - 12$
d $5y - 10$ **e** $6x + 4$ **f** $8x + 20$
g $9a - 12$ **h** $14y - 35$ **i** $10a + 5b$
j $12a - 9b$ **k** $2x^2 + 10x$ **l** $3x^2 - 12x$
m $6a^2 + 4ab$ **n** $6xy - 8y^2$ **o** $6ab - 15b^2$

6 **a** $-2x - 6$ **b** $-5m - 10$ **c** $-3w - 12$
d $-4x + 12$ **e** $-2m + 14$ **f** $-7w + 35$
g $-x - y$ **h** $-x + y$ **i** $-6x^2 - 8x$
j $-6x^2 - 15x$ **k** $-8x^2 + 8x$ **l** $-6y^2 + 27y$
m $-6x^2 + 10xy$ **n** $-9x^2 - 6xy$ **o** $-12xy - 18y^2$

7 **a** $5x + 17$ **b** $7x + 17$ **c** $2x - 1$ **d** $1 - 2x$
e $1 - 5x$ **f** $1 + 6x$ **g** $6x + 11$ **h** $14 - 4x$
i $27 - 6x$ **j** $7x + 18$ **k** $7p - 11$ **l** $10x - 4$
m $4s + 5$ **n** 4 **o** $2x - 7$

8 **a** 2 **b** 4 **c** $3x$ **d** $3x$
e y, 1 **f** $2x$, $3y$

9 **a** $2x - 10$ **b** $x^2 + 3x$
c $2x^2 + 8x$ **d** $6x^2 - 3x$

10 $2x^2 + 4x$

11 **a** $x - 6000$ **b** $0.1x - 600$

12 **a** $x^2 + 7x + 12$ **b** $x^2 + 4x + 3$
c $x^2 + 7x + 10$ **d** $x^2 - 2x - 8$
e $x^2 + 3x - 10$ **f** $2x^2 + 11x + 12$
g $2x^2 - x - 6$ **h** $x^2 + x - 12$
i $4x^2 + 18x - 10$

Exercise 3D

1 **a** 2 **b** 4 **c** 9 **d** 6
e 7 **f** 12

2 **a** x **b** $2x$ **c** $3x$ **d** $2b$
e $4x$ **f** $3y$

3 **a** C **b** They have no common factor.

4 **a** 6 **b** 5 **c** 4 **d** 9
e $5a$ **f** $2m$ **g** $7x$ **h** $8a$
i $3a$ **j** $2x$ **k** $8y$ **l** $5xy$

5 **a** $3(x + 3)$ **b** $4(x - 2)$ **c** $10(y - 2)$
d $6(a + 5)$ **e** $5(x + y)$ **f** $4(3a + b)$
g $9(2m - 3n)$ **h** $12(3x - 4y)$ **i** $4(2x + 11y)$
j $6(4a - 3b)$ **k** $11(11m + 5n)$ **l** $7(2k - 9l)$

6 **a** $7x(2 + 3y)$ **b** $3b(2a - 5)$ **c** $8y(4 - 5x)$
d $5x(x - 1)$ **e** $x(x + 7)$ **f** $2a(a + 4)$
g $6a(2a + 7b)$ **h** $9y(y - 7)$ **i** $2x(3x + 7)$
j $3x(3x - 2)$ **k** $8y(2y + 5)$ **l** $10m(1 - 4m)$

7 **a** $-2(x + 3)$ **b** $-4(a + 2)$ **c** $-3(x + 2y)$
d $-7a(1 + 2b)$ **e** $-x(1 + 10y)$ **f** $-3b(1 + 4a)$
g $-x(x + 7)$ **h** $-4x(x + 3)$ **i** $-2y(y + 5)$
j $-2x(4x + 7)$ **k** $-4x(3x + 2)$ **l** $-5a(3a + 1)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

8 **a** $ab(7a+1)$ **b** $4a^2(b+5)$ **c** $xy(1-y)$
d $x^2y(1+4y)$ **e** $6mn(1+3n)$ **f** $5xy(x+2y)$
g $-y(y+8z)$ **h** $-3ab(a+2)$ **i** $-ab(b+a)$
9 **a** $4(x+5)$ **b** $8(x+2)$ **c** $2(3x+4)$
10 $(x+3)$ metres
11 **a** $2(x+2y+3z)$ **b** $3(x^2+4x+2)$
c $4(x^2+2xy+3)$ **d** $3x(2x+y-3)$
e $5x(2y-z+1)$ **f** $2y(2y-9+7x)$
12 **a** $(x+2)(4+x)$ **b** $(x+3)(x+2)$
c $(x+4)(x-7)$ **d** $(2x+1)(x-3)$
e $(y-3)(2x+4)$ **f** $(x+1)(2x-3)$

Exercise 3E

1 **a** $\frac{2}{3}$ **b** $\frac{3}{4}$ **c** $\frac{2x}{5}$ **d** $\frac{2x}{5}$
e $\frac{x+1}{2}$ **f** $\frac{x-2}{2}$ **g** $\frac{x+4}{3}$ **h** $\frac{x+3}{5}$
2 **a** $\frac{4}{15}$ **b** $\frac{2}{5}$ **c** $\frac{1}{12}$ **d** $\frac{4}{5}$
3 **a** $\frac{2}{3}$ **b** $\frac{3}{5x}$ **c** $\frac{1}{7}$ **d** $\frac{4}{x+3}$
4 **a** $3(x+2)$ **b** $2(x+2)$ **c** $4(2x+3)$
d $8(2-x)$ **e** $x(x+3)$ **f** $2x(2x+5)$
g $-2(x+3)$ **h** $-x(x+5)$ **i** $-x(3y+1)$
5 **a** $\frac{y}{2}$ **b** $\frac{2a}{5}$ **c** $\frac{x}{5}$ **d** $5x$
e $x+1$ **f** $x-5$ **g** $\frac{x+1}{2}$ **h** 5
i 4 **j** $\frac{1}{2}$ **k** 3 **l** $\frac{3}{2}$
6 **a** $x+2$ **b** $a-5$ **c** $2y-3$ **d** $2b-3$
e 3 **f** 4 **g** 3 **h** 4
i $x+2$ **j** $x-5$ **k** $x+3$ **l** x
m x **n** $2x$ **o** $3x$
7 **a** $\frac{2}{3}$ **b** $\frac{3}{2}$ **c** $\frac{3}{4}$ **d** $\frac{5x}{3}$
e $\frac{3y}{2}$ **f** $\frac{5}{6}$ **g** $\frac{4}{9}$ **h** 10
i $\frac{15}{2}$ **j** $\frac{8}{5}$ **k** $\frac{4}{3x}$ **l** 12
8 **a** 3 **b** 6 **c** $8a$ **d** $\frac{x}{4}$
e $\frac{8}{15a}$ **f** $\frac{4}{x}$ **g** 3 **h** $\frac{5}{2}$
i $\frac{3}{4}$ **j** $\frac{1}{25}$ **k** 10 **l** $\frac{5}{4}$
9 **a** Must factorise first, $x+2$
b Factorise first, $x+2$
c Need to multiply by the reciprocal of the fraction after division sign, $\frac{6}{25}$
d x is not a common factor, cannot cancel, $\frac{x+4}{5x}$
10 **a** $\frac{1+2a}{3}$ **b** $\frac{4}{5}$ **c** $\frac{x}{4}$
d $\frac{2}{5}$ **e** $\frac{7}{18}$ **f** $\frac{2x}{3}$
g $\frac{5}{4}$ **h** $\frac{x}{9}$ **i** $\frac{x+5}{9}$
11 **a** -3 **b** -2 **c** $-x$
d $\frac{x+2}{3}$ **e** $x-6$ **f** $2x-3$
12 **a** $\frac{x+1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{2(x+1)}{3}$ **c** $\frac{x-2}{2}$
d $\frac{x+2}{8}$ **e** $\frac{x-3}{12}$ **f** $\frac{5(2x+1)}{8}$

Exercise 3F

1 **a** 12 **b** 18 **c** 8 **d** 12
e 20 **f** 30
2 **a** $\frac{5}{6}$ **b** $\frac{31}{40}$ **c** $\frac{13}{12}=1\frac{1}{2}$ **d** $\frac{5}{21}$
e $\frac{3}{16}$ **f** $\frac{7}{18}$
3 **a** $3x$ **b** $5x$ **c** $6x$ **d** $12x$
e 3 **f** 5
4 **a** $7x+8$ **b** $5x-12$ **c** $2x+4$ **d** $7x+18$
e $7x+4$ **f** $7x+10$
5 **a** $\frac{7x}{12}$ **b** $\frac{7x}{10}$ **c** $\frac{2x}{9}$ **d** $\frac{2x}{35}$
e $\frac{13x}{15}$ **f** $\frac{7x}{6}$ **g** $\frac{7x}{18}$ **h** $\frac{13x}{40}$
i $\frac{-5x}{14}$ **j** $\frac{-3x}{10}$ **k** $\frac{-x}{30}$ **l** $\frac{-6x}{5}$
6 **a** $\frac{2x+3}{4}$ **b** $\frac{3x+10}{15}$ **c** $\frac{8x+21}{60}$
d $\frac{5x-8}{20}$ **e** $\frac{6x-5}{9}$ **f** $\frac{10-3x}{12}$
7 **a** $\frac{5x+4}{6}$ **b** $\frac{13x+12}{15}$ **c** $\frac{5x-4}{8}$
d $\frac{x+8}{6}$ **e** $\frac{x+10}{10}$ **f** $\frac{3x+14}{24}$
g $\frac{9x+22}{20}$ **h** $\frac{11x+13}{14}$ **i** $\frac{5x+7}{12}$
j $\frac{11x+14}{12}$ **k** $\frac{3x-2}{10}$ **l** $\frac{14x-13}{24}$
8 **a** Need to multiply numerators also when getting common denominator, $\frac{17x}{12}$.
b Need common denominator before subtracting, $\frac{x}{10}$.
c $3(x+2)=3x+6$ and $5(x+4)=5x+20$, $\frac{8x+26}{15}$
d $-$ sign changed to $+$, $\frac{4x+9}{6}$
9 **a** $\frac{x+16}{30}$ **b** $\frac{2x+22}{15}$ **c** $\frac{x-23}{20}$ **d** $\frac{x+9}{4}$
10 **a** $\frac{12+2x}{3x}$ **b** $\frac{3x+8}{4x}$ **c** $\frac{2x+15}{5x}$
d $\frac{3x-14}{7x}$ **e** $\frac{x-20}{5x}$ **f** $\frac{24-5x}{8x}$
11 **a** $\frac{3x+10}{4x}$ **b** $\frac{x+15}{6x}$ **c** $\frac{6x-5}{20x}$
d $\frac{3x+5}{x^2}$ **e** $\frac{4x+1}{x^2}$ **f** $\frac{3-5x}{x^2}$
g $\frac{3x+4}{2x^2}$ **h** $\frac{12x+7}{3x^2}$

Progress quiz

1 **a** 4
b 5
c **i** -3 **ii** $\frac{1}{2}$
2 **a** 6 **b** 9 **c** 14
3 **a** $6x-3$ **b** $5x+5y$ **c** $2x^2y+7xy^2$
4 **a** $12r^2s$ **b** $\frac{x}{3}$ **c** $\frac{5n}{2}$
5 **a** $6x+9$ **b** $20x^2-8x$ **c** $-12x+18$
6 **a** $8x-6$ **b** $3x+32$
7 **a** $6(m+2)$ **b** $5a(3-4b)$ **c** $x(4y+1)$
d $2x(3x-5)$ **e** $-4(x+5)$ **f** $-3y(y+2)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

8 **a** 2 **b** $3x - 7$ **c** $2x$

9 **a** $\frac{3}{2}$ or $1\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{3x}{16}$

10 **a** $\frac{17x}{20}$ **b** $\frac{6x-4}{9}$

11 $\frac{5x-1}{12}$

Exercise 3G

1 **a** base, index or exponent or power **b** power
c index **d** multiply **e** expanded

2 **a** $8 \times 8 \times 8$ **b** $7 \times 7 \times 7 \times 7 \times 7$
c $x \times x \times x \times x \times x \times x \times x \times x$ **d** $ab \times ab \times ab \times ab$

3 **a** 9^4 **b** 3^6 **c** 15^3 **d** 5^2x^3
e 4^3a^4 **f** $7b^4$ **g** x^3y^2 **h** a^2b^4
i $3^3x^2y^3$ **j** $4^2x^2z^2$

4 **a** $7 \times 7 \times 7 \times 7$, 7^7 **b** $5 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5 \times 5$, 5^4

5 **a** $\frac{1}{y^3}$ **b** $\frac{1}{x^4}$ **c** $\frac{1}{x^2}$ **d** $\frac{1}{a^5}$
e $\frac{3}{x^2}$ **f** $\frac{3}{b^3}$ **g** $\frac{4}{x}$ **h** $\frac{2}{m^9}$
i $\frac{2x^2}{y^3}$ **j** $\frac{3x}{y^4}$ **k** $\frac{3b^4}{a^2}$ **l** $\frac{5n^2}{m^3}$

6 **a** b^4 **b** x^7 **c** y
d $5m^3$ **e** $2y^2$ **f** $3x^4$
g $5a^2b^3$ **h** $\frac{4y^5}{x^2}$ **i** $\frac{10a^2}{b^4}$

7 **a** x^7 **b** p^7 **c** t^9 **d** d^5
e g^4 **f** f^3 **g** $2p^5$ **h** $3c^8$
i $6s^{11}$ **j** a^5b^8 **k** d^9f^5 **l** v^5z^8
m $15a^3b^6$ **n** $6x^3y^3$ **o** $18e^9r^3$ **p** $-8p^4c^3$
q $-10r^7s^8$ **r** $6d^6f^4$

8 **a** a^2 **b** d **c** r^2 **d** c^4
e l **f** b^3 **g** $4d^2$ **h** $\frac{f}{2}$
i $3n^3$ **j** $2p^2$ **k** $\frac{3m^4}{2}$ **l** $\frac{d^2}{3}$
m $4t^3r$ **n** $\frac{5h^4d}{3}$ **o** $2q^2$ **p** $\frac{xy^2}{2}$
q $\frac{r^2s}{3}$ **r** $\frac{2cd^5}{5}$ **s** $\frac{a^3y}{2}$ **t** $\frac{n}{2}$
u $-6x^2y^2$

9 **a** xy^2 **b** m **c** r^2s^4 **d** $2a^2b^2$
e $\frac{9x^8y^4}{2}$ **f** $4w^4$

10 **a** $\frac{b^4}{a^3}$ **b** $\frac{x^4}{y^3}$ **c** $\frac{1}{x^2y^4}$ **d** $\frac{b}{a^4}$

11 Stuart hasn't put brackets around -2 i.e. $(-2)^4$.

12 **a** **i** 9 **ii** -9
b i is $-3 \times (-3)$ and ii is $-(3 \times 3)$
c **i** -8 **ii** -8
d They are both -8 since $-2 \times (-2) \times (-2) = -8$.

13 **a** 13 **b** 18 **c** 81 **d** 27
e 64 **f** 16

Exercise 3H

1 **a** 1 **b** a^{mn} **c** $a^m \times b^n$
d $\frac{a^m}{b^n}$

2 **a** $(4^2)^3 = 4^2 \times 4^2 \times 4^2$
$= 4^6$

b $(2a)^3 = 2a \times 2a \times 2a$
$= 2 \times 2 \times 2 \times a \times a \times a$
$= 2^3a^3$

c $\left(\frac{4}{7}\right)^4 = \frac{4}{7} \times \frac{4}{7} \times \frac{4}{7} \times \frac{4}{7}$
$= \frac{4 \times 4 \times 4 \times 4}{7 \times 7 \times 7 \times 7}$
$= \frac{4^4}{7^4}$

3 **a** 1 **b** 1 **c** 1 **d** 1
e 3 **f** 4 **g** 2 **h** 0
i 1 **j** 3 **k** 2 **l** 9

4 **a** b^{12} **b** f^{20} **c** k^{21} **d** $3x^6$
e $5c^{18}$ **f** $4s^{18}$

5 **a** $9x^2$ **b** $64m^3$ **c** $125y^3$ **d** $16x^{12}$
e $x^{10}y^5$ **f** $27a^9$ **g** $x^{24}y^{12}$ **h** a^6b^3
i $m^{12}n^{12}$ **j** $\frac{x^{12}}{y^8}$ **k** $\frac{y^4}{81}$ **l** $\frac{m^4}{16}$
m $\frac{x^6}{y^3}$ **n** $\frac{x^{12}}{y^8}$ **o** $\frac{x^3}{y^{15}}$

6 **a** m **b** $\frac{y^5}{10}$ **c** $\frac{4b^4}{3}$ **d** $\frac{27c^4}{2}$
e $\frac{25r^4}{3}$ **f** $\frac{8p^5}{3}$ **g** $\frac{16s^8}{t^{12}}$ **h** $\frac{r^8}{625s^{12}}$

7 **a** $\frac{1}{x^8}$ **b** $\frac{1}{x^6}$ **c** 1
d $\frac{8}{y^6}$ **e** $\frac{a^2}{y^6}$ **f** $\frac{x^6}{16}$
g $\frac{1}{m^4} + 4$ **h** $\frac{8}{a^6} + 1$ **i** $\frac{a^4}{5}$

8 **a** $\frac{1}{4}$ **b** 36 **c** 40 **d** 1
e 1 **f** 9

9 **a** $2p^3q^7$ **b** $108a^9b^6$ **c** $48r^9y^{12}$ **d** $2m^9n^4$
e $21s^3y^2$ **f** $\frac{3d^{10}c^4}{2}$ **g** $2r^6$ **h** y

10 **a** a^7b^2 **b** $54x^5y^{11}$ **c** $\frac{2p^4}{9q^2}$
d $4a^8b^3$ **e** $\frac{324r^{11}}{s}$ **f** $\frac{2y^{14}s^2}{x^5}$

Exercise 3I

1 **a** 124 **b** 280 **c** 3020 **d** 0.045
e 0.00375 **f** 0.06

2 **a** 10^3 **b** 10^7 **c** 10^{-6} **d** 10^{-3}

3 **a** positive **b** negative **c** positive **d** negative

4 **a** 4.87 **b** 4.872 **c** 4.9

5 **a** 3 120 **b** 54 293 **c** 710 500
d 8 213 000 **e** 59 500 **f** 800 200
g 10 120 **h** 9 990 000 **i** 210 500 000
j 0.0045 **k** 0.0272 **l** 0.000 308 5
m 0.007 83 **n** 0.000 092 **o** 0.265
p 0.000 100 2 **q** 0.000 006 235 **r** 0.98

6 **a** 4.3×10^4 **b** 7.12×10^5 **c** 9.012×10^5
d 1.001×10^4 **e** 2.39×10^4 **f** 7.03×10^8
g 7.8×10^{-4} **h** 1.01×10^{-3} **i** 3×10^{-5}
j 3.004×10^{-2} **k** 1.12×10^{-1} **l** 1.92×10^{-3}

7 **a** 6.24×10^3 **b** 5.73×10^5 **c** 3.02×10^4
d 4.24×10^5 **e** 1.01×10^4 **f** 3.50×10^7
g 7.25×10^4 **h** 3.56×10^5 **i** 1.10×10^8
j 2.42×10^{-3} **k** 1.88×10^{-2} **l** 1.25×10^{-4}
m 7.87×10^{-3} **n** 7.08×10^{-4} **o** 1.14×10^{-1}
p 6.40×10^{-6} **q** 7.89×10^{-5} **r** 1.30×10^{-4}

8 **a** 7.7×10^6 km^2 **b** 2.5×10^6 **c** 7.4×10^9km

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

d 1×10^{-2}cm **e** 1.675×10^{-27}kg
f 9.5×10^{-13}g

9 The numeral part has to be between 1 and 10 i.e.3.8×10^{8}

10 a 2.85×10^{-3} **b** 1.55×10^{-3} **c** 4.41×10^{-8}
d 6.38×10^{-3} **e** 8.00×10^{7} **f** 3.63×10^{8}
g 1.80×10^{-3} **h** 3.42×10^{15}

11 328 minutes

12 a i 9×10^{17} J **ii** 2.34×10^{21}J
iii 2.7×10^{15}J **iv** 9×10^{11}J
b i 1.11×10^{8} kg **ii** 4.22×10^{-1}kg
iii 9.69×10^{-13}kg **iv** 1.89×10^{-19} kg
c 5.4×10^{41} J

Exercise 3J

1 a \$50 **b** \$1050 **c** \$52.50 **d** \$55.13

2 a 4.9 kg **b** $\frac{2}{100}$, 0.98 **c** 4.52 kg

3 a growth **b** growth **c** decay **d** decay
e growth **f** decay

4 a A = amount of money at any time,
n = number of years of investment
$A = \$200\,000 \times 1.17^{n}$
b A = house value at any time,
n = number of years since initial valuation
$A = \$530\,000 \times 0.95^{n}$
c A = car value at any time, n = number of years since purchase
$A = \$14\,200 \times 0.97^{n}$
d A = population at any time,
n = number of years since initial census $A = 172\,500 \times 1.15^{n}$
e A = litres in tank at any time, n = number of hours elapsed
$A = 1200 \times 0.9^{n}$
f A = cell size at any time,
n = number of minutes elapsed
$A = 0.01\ \text{cm}^2 \times 2^{n}$
g A = Size of oil spill at any time, n = number of minutes elapsed
$A = 2\ \text{m}^2 \times 1.05^{n}$
h A = mass of substance at any time,
n = number of hours elapsed
$A = 30\ \text{g} \times 0.92^{n}$

5 a 1.1
b i \$665 500 **ii** \$1 296 871.23 **iii** \$3 363 749.98
c After 7.3 years

6 a 300 000
b i \$216 750 **ii** \$96 173.13 **iii** \$42 672.53
c 3.1 years

7 a $V = 15\,000 \times 0.94^{n}$
b i 12 459 L **ii** 9727 L
c 769.53 L
d 55.0 hours

8 a 3000
b i 3000 **ii** 20 280 **iii** 243 220
c 10 hours 10 minutes

9 a $D = 10 \times 0.875^{t}$, where t = number of 10 000 kms travelled
b Yes
c 90 000

10 a $T = 90°C \times 0.92^{t}$
b i 76.2°C **ii** 79.4°C
c 3 minutes 13 seconds

11 a i \$1610.51 **ii** \$2143.59 **iii** \$4177.25
b i \$1645.31 **ii** \$2218.18 **iii** \$4453.92

12 a \$2805.10 **b** \$2835.25 **c** \$2837.47

Maths@Work: Electrical trades

1 a i 1 C = 6.24×10^{18} e **ii** 2 C = 1.25×10^{19} e
iii 3 C = 1.87×10^{19} e **iv** 250 C = 1.56×10^{21} e
v ½ C = 3.12×10^{18} e **vi** 12 C = 7.49×10^{19} e
b 1 e = 1.6×10^{-19} C
c i $1.24830195 \times 10^{19}$ e/s **ii** $6.24150975 \times 10^{19}$ e/s
iii $1.24830195 \times 10^{20}$ e/s **iv** $3.12075488 \times 10^{18}$ e/s
v $3.12075488 \times 10^{19}$ e/s

2 a 1.32×10^{-5} **b** 3.168×10^{-4} mm
c Any construction using steel needs to allow for the expansion of steel with a temperature increase. For example, gaps need to be left in a bridge to allow for steel expansion and, hence stop, the road buckling.

3

Conversion table between coulomb and electron charges			
Charge (coulombs, C)	**Charge (number of electrons, e)**	**Charge (number of electrons, e)**	**Charge (coulombs, C)**
1	6.24150975E+18	1	1.60217646E-19
10	6.24150975E+19	10	1.60217646E-18
100	6.24150975E+20	100	1.60217646E-17
1000	6.24150975E+21	1000	1.60217646E-16
10000	6.24150975E+22	10000	1.60217646E-15
100000	6.24150975E+23	100000	1.60217646E-14
1000000	6.24150975E+24	1000000	1.60217646E-13

i $6.24150975 \times 10^{20}$ e **ii** $1.60217646 \times 10^{-13}$ C
iii $6.23526824 \times 10^{24}$ e

4

Conversion table between amperes, time and electrical charge measured in coulombs and numbers of electrons			
Electrical current (in amps)	**Time (in seconds)**	**Charge *Q* (in coulombs C)**	**Charge *Q* number of electrons, e)**
0.5	1	5.000E-01	3.12075488E+18
	30	1.500E+01	9.36226463E+19
	60	3.000E+01	1.87245293E+20
	90	4.500E+01	2.80867939E+20
	120	6.000E+01	3.74490585E+20
	150	7.500E+01	4.68113231E+20
	180	9.000E+01	5.61735878E+20

a i 4.5×10^{1} C **ii** $2.80867939 \times 10^{20}$ e
b i 2.25×10^{2} C **ii** $1.40433969 \times 10^{21}$ e

Puzzles and games

1 Magic square sum = $3x + 2y$

$\frac{4x^2}{2x}$	$-y$	$x + 3y$
$4y$	$x + y$	$2x - 3y$
$x - 2y$	$2x + 2y$	$2y$

2 3^{3n-3}
3 1c and then double each day
4 5
5 2^{24}
6 200
7 $\frac{5 - 2x}{30}$
8 n^2, 225

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Multiple-choice questions

1 C **2** B **3** C **4** D
5 B **6** D **7** C **8** E
9 D **10** A **11** C **12** D

Short-answer questions

1 a 4 **b** 5 **c i** 4 **ii** -3

2 a $y+3$ **b** $xy-5$ **c** $\frac{a+b}{4}$

3 a 14 **b** -30 **c** 35

4 a $7x-5$ **b** $13a-2b$ **c** $xy-3xy^2$
d $12mn$ **e** $-14x^2y$ **f** $\frac{2b}{3}$

5 a $10x+20$ **b** $-6x+8y$ **c** $6x^2+15xy$ **d** $4a+15$
e $5y+13$ **f** $8t+11$

6 a $8(2x-5)$ **b** $5xy(2x+7y)$
c $2x(2x-5)$ **d** $-2x(y+9)$

7 a $\frac{14x}{15}$ **b** $\frac{6-7a}{14}$ **c** $\frac{9x+8}{20}$

8 a $\frac{3}{8}$ **b** $4x$ **c** $3x-1$ **d** $\frac{2}{3}$

9 a $12x^7$ **b** $8x^4y^4$ **c** b^4 **d** $\frac{2a^2b^3}{3}$

10 a $\frac{4}{x^3}$ **b** $\frac{3r^4}{s^2}$ **c** $\frac{2y^4}{3x^3}$ **d** $4m^5$

11 a b^8 **b** $8m^6$ **c** $\frac{x^2}{49}$ **d** $\frac{64y^6}{z^{12}}$

12 a 1 **b** 4 **c** 6 **d** 1

13 a $\frac{5y^6}{4}$ **b** $\frac{25x^3y^2}{2}$ **c** $\frac{10y^3}{x^2}$ **d** $\frac{x^8}{2y^3}$

14 a 4250 **b** 37 000 000
c 0.021 **d** 0.0000725

15 a 1.24×10^5 **b** 3.95×10^7
c 9.02×10^{-6} **d** 4.60×10^{-4}

16 a $P=20(1.1)^n$ **b** $A=100\,000\,(0.85)^n$

Extended-response questions

1 a $2(5x+1)m$ **b** 32 m
c $5x^2+3x$ **d** \$1080

2 a $A=2\,(1.09)^t$
b i 2.3762 m^2 **ii** 3.0772 m^2
c 37.4 weeks

Chapter 4

Pre-test

1 a 11
b i $\frac{1}{11}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{11}$ **iii** $\frac{4}{11}$
iv $\frac{7}{11}$ **v** $\frac{3}{11}$ **vi** $\frac{8}{11}$

2 a $\frac{1}{8}$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}$ **c** $\frac{1}{2}$ **d** $\frac{1}{4}$
e $\frac{5}{8}$ **f** $\frac{7}{8}$ **g** $\frac{1}{4}$

3 0, 1 in 5, 39%, 0.4, $\frac{1}{2}$, 0.62, 71%, $\frac{3}{4}$, $\frac{9}{10}$, 1

4 a i 14 **ii** 25 **iii** 11
b i $\frac{18}{25}$ **ii** $\frac{7}{25}$ **iii** $\frac{7}{25}$

5 a $\frac{7}{16}$ **b** $\frac{9}{16}$

6 a 16
b i $\frac{1}{16}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{16}$ **iii** $\frac{3}{8}$ **iv** $\frac{5}{8}$
v $\frac{13}{16}$ **vi** $\frac{3}{16}$

7 a 4
b i $\frac{1}{4}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{4}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{2}$ **iv** $\frac{3}{4}$ **v** $\frac{1}{2}$ **vi** 1

Exercise 4A

1 C, A, B, D

2 a $\frac{1}{4}$ **b** $\frac{1}{6}$ **c** $\frac{1}{4}$ **d** $\frac{3}{8}$
e $\frac{2}{3}$ **f** 0

3 a 2 **b** {H, T} **c** yes **d** $\frac{1}{2}$
e $\frac{1}{2}$ **f** 1

4 a 7
b i $\frac{1}{7}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{7}$ **iii** $\frac{5}{7}$ **iv** $\frac{3}{7}$

5 a $\frac{3}{10}$ **b** $\frac{2}{5}$ **c** $\frac{3}{5}$ **d** $\frac{1}{2}$

6 a 43
b 47
c i 0.09 **ii** 0.43 **iii** 0.47 **iv** 0.91

7 a 0.62 **b** 0.03 **c** 0.97 **d** 0.38

8 a $\frac{1}{10}$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}$ **c** $\frac{1}{2}$ **d** $\frac{1}{2}$
e $\frac{2}{5}$ **f** $\frac{1}{5}$ **g** $\frac{3}{10}$

9 a $\frac{1}{50}$ **b** $\frac{3}{10}$ **c** $\frac{49}{50}$

10 a $\frac{6}{25}$ **b** $\frac{1}{50}$ **c** $\frac{21}{25}$ **d** $\frac{2}{5}$
e $\frac{2}{25}$ **f** $\frac{4}{25}$

11 a 59
b 4, as $\frac{41}{100}$ of 10 is closest to 4.
c 8, as $\frac{41}{100}$ of 20 is closest to 8.

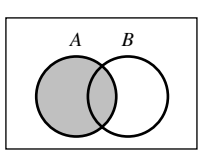
12 a $\frac{1}{4}$ **b** $\frac{1}{13}$ **c** $\frac{1}{52}$ **d** $\frac{1}{2}$
e $\frac{2}{13}$ **f** $\frac{4}{13}$ **g** $\frac{12}{13}$ **h** $\frac{9}{13}$

Exercise 4B

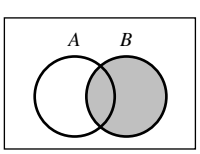
1 a D **b** C **c** E **d** A
e B

2 a no **b** yes **c** no

3 a

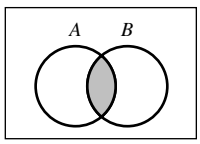


b

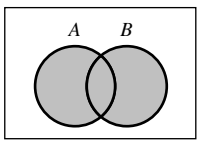


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

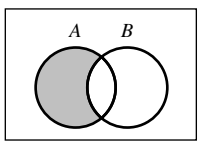
c



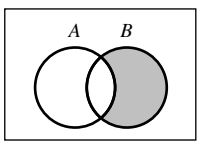
d



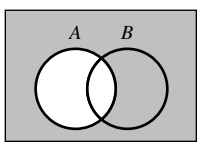
e



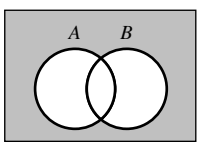
f



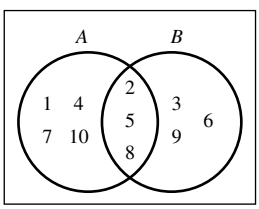
g



h



4 a

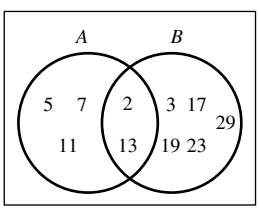


b i $A \cap B = \{2, 5, 8\}$
ii $A \cup B = \{1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10\}$

c i $\frac{7}{10}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{10}$ **iii** 1

d No, there is at least one number in $A \cap B$.

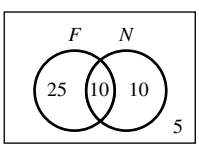
5 a



b i $A \cap B = \{2, 13\}$
ii $A \cup B = \{2, 3, 5, 7, 11, 13, 17, 19, 23, 29\}$

c i $\frac{1}{2}$ **ii** $\frac{7}{10}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{5}$ **iv** 1

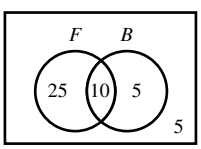
6 a



b i 25 **ii** 5

c i $\frac{2}{5}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{5}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{5}$

7 a



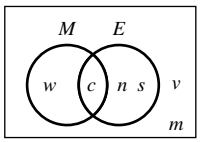
b i 25 **ii** 5

c i $\frac{7}{9}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{9}$ **iii** $\frac{8}{9}$ **iv** $\frac{2}{9}$ **v** $\frac{1}{9}$

8 3

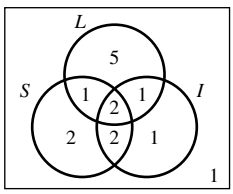
9 5

10 a



b i $\frac{1}{3}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{3}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{6}$ **iv** $\frac{2}{3}$ **v** $\frac{1}{3}$

11 a



b 1

c i $\frac{3}{5}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{3}$ **iii** $\frac{13}{15}$ **iv** $\frac{1}{15}$

Exercise 4C

1 a B **b** A **c** D **d** C

2 a i 4 **ii** 6 **iii** 3 **iv** 1
v 10 **vi** 7 **vii** 4 **viii** 7

b 13

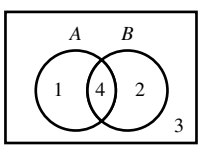
3 a

	A	A'	
B	2	6	8
B'	5	3	8
	7	9	12

b i 2 **ii** 6 **iii** 5 **iv** 3
v 7 **vi** 8 **vii** 13

c i $\frac{1}{8}$ **ii** $\frac{9}{16}$ **iii** $\frac{5}{16}$

4 a



b

	A	A'	
B	4	2	6
B'	1	3	4
	5	5	10

c i 2 **ii** 5 **iii** 4 **iv** 7

d i $\frac{3}{5}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{5}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{10}$ **iv** $\frac{2}{5}$
v $\frac{7}{10}$

5 a

	A	A'	
B	4	3	7
B'	4	1	5
	8	4	12

b i 3 **ii** 1

c i $\frac{11}{12}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{3}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

6 a

	A	*A′*	
B	3	3	6
B′	4	1	5
	7	4	11

b

	A	*A′*	
B	2	7	9
B′	2	1	3
	4	8	12

7 a $\frac{1}{8}$ **b** $\frac{5}{24}$

8 a 0

b

	A	*A′*	
B	0	6	6
B′	10	2	12
	10	8	18

9 a $\frac{3}{8}$ **b** $\frac{5}{32}$

10 a $\frac{4}{13}$ **b** $\frac{4}{13}$ **c** $\frac{7}{13}$ **d** $\frac{7}{13}$

11 a 18 **b** 75

Exercise 4D

1 a $\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $\frac{1}{3}$

2 a $\frac{7}{10}$ **b** $\frac{7}{12}$

3 a $\frac{1}{3}$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}$

4 a i $\frac{9}{13}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{13}$ **iii** $\frac{3}{7}$ **iv** $\frac{1}{3}$

b i $\frac{14}{17}$ **ii** $\frac{4}{17}$ **iii** $\frac{4}{7}$ **iv** $\frac{2}{7}$

c i $\frac{3}{4}$ **ii** $\frac{5}{8}$ **iii** $\frac{5}{7}$ **iv** $\frac{5}{6}$

d i $\frac{7}{16}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{8}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{4}$ **iv** $\frac{2}{7}$

5 a i $\frac{7}{18}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{9}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{5}$ **iv** $\frac{2}{7}$

b i $\frac{4}{9}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{9}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{5}$ **iv** $\frac{1}{4}$

c i $\frac{8}{17}$ **ii** $\frac{7}{17}$ **iii** $\frac{7}{10}$ **iv** $\frac{7}{8}$

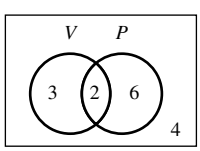
d i $\frac{3}{4}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{4}$ **iii** $\frac{2}{3}$ **iv** $\frac{1}{3}$

6 a

	A	*A′*	
B	9	6	15
B′	4	1	5
	13	7	20

b $\frac{1}{5}$ **c** $\frac{3}{5}$ **d** $\frac{9}{13}$

7 a

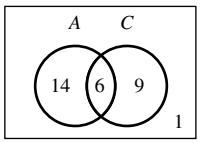


b 4 **c** $\frac{2}{5}$ **d** $\frac{1}{4}$

8 a $\frac{1}{13}$ **b** $\frac{1}{13}$

9 $\Pr(A \mid B) = \Pr(B \mid A) = 0$ as $\Pr(A \cap B) = 0$

10 a



	A	*A′*	
C	6	9	15
C′	14	1	15
	20	10	30

b i $\frac{3}{10}$ **ii** $\frac{7}{15}$

c $\frac{2}{5}$ **d** $\frac{3}{10}$

Exercise 4E

1 a i

		1st		
		D	O	G
2nd	D	(D, D)	(O, D)	(G, D)
	O	(D, O)	(O, O)	(G, O)
	G	(D, G)	(O, G)	(G, G)

ii

		1st		
		D	O	G
2nd	D	×	(O, D)	(G, D)
	O	(D, O)	×	(G, O)
	G	(D, G)	(O, G)	×

b i 9 **ii** 6

c i $\frac{1}{3}$ **ii** $\frac{5}{9}$ **iii** $\frac{4}{9}$ **iv** $\frac{8}{9}$ **v** $\frac{2}{9}$

d i 0 **ii** $\frac{2}{3}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{3}$ **iv** 1 **v** $\frac{1}{3}$

2 a 9 **b** 6

3 a

		1st roll			
		1	2	3	4
2nd roll	1	(1, 1)	(2, 1)	(3, 1)	(4, 1)
	2	(1, 2)	(2, 2)	(3, 2)	(4, 2)
	3	(1, 3)	(2, 3)	(3, 3)	(4, 3)
	4	(1, 4)	(2, 4)	(3, 4)	(4, 4)

b 16 **c** $\frac{1}{16}$

d i $\frac{1}{4}$ **ii** $\frac{5}{8}$ **iii** $\frac{13}{16}$

4 a

		1st toss	
		H	T
2nd toss	H	(H, H)	(T, H)
	T	(H, T)	(T, T)

b 4

c $\frac{1}{4}$

d i $\frac{1}{2}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{4}$

e 250

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 a

		1st		
		S	E	T
2nd	S	×	(E, S)	(T, S)
	E	(S, E)	×	(T, E)
	T	(S, T)	(E , T)	×

b i $\frac{1}{6}$ ii $\frac{2}{3}$ iii $\frac{2}{3}$ iv $\frac{1}{3}$ v 1

6 a

		1st				
		L	E	V	E	L
2nd	L	×	(E, L)	(V, L)	(E, L)	(L, L)
	E	(L, E)	×	(V, E)	(E, E)	(L, E)
	V	(L, V)	(E, V)	×	(E, V)	(L, V)
	E	(L, E)	(E, E)	(V, E)	×	(L, E)
	L	(L, L)	(E, L)	(V, L)	(E, L)	×

b 20

c i 8 ii 12 iii 12

d i $\frac{2}{5}$ ii $\frac{3}{5}$ iii $\frac{3}{5}$

e $\frac{1}{5}$

7 a

		Die 2					
		1	2	3	4	5	6
Die 1	1	2	3	4	5	6	7
	2	3	4	5	6	7	8
	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
	4	5	6	7	8	9	10
	5	6	7	8	9	10	11
	6	7	8	9	10	11	12

b 36

c i 2 ii 6 iii 15

d i $\frac{1}{6}$ ii $\frac{1}{6}$ iii $\frac{35}{36}$ iv $\frac{1}{12}$

e $\frac{1}{6}$. Min's guess is wrong.

8 a i 100 ii 90

b i $\frac{1}{10}$ ii $\frac{1}{10}$ iii $\frac{4}{5}$

c $\frac{19}{100}$

9 a without **b** with **c** with **d** without

10 a

		1st			
		2.5	5	10	20
2nd	2.5	5	7.5	12.5	22.5
	5	7.5	10	15	25
	10	12.5	15	20	30
	20	22.5	25	30	40

b 16

c i 1 ii 8 iii 8

d i $\frac{1}{16}$ ii $\frac{1}{8}$ iii $\frac{1}{4}$ iv $\frac{3}{16}$

e $\frac{7}{16}$

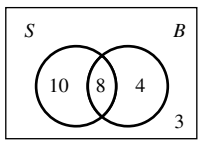
Progress quiz

1 a $\frac{1}{4}$ **b** $\frac{3}{8}$ **c** $\frac{3}{4}$ **d** $\frac{3}{8}$

2 a 33

b i $\frac{21}{100}$ ii $\frac{67}{100}$ iii $\frac{79}{100}$

3 a



b i 10 ii 3

c i $\frac{12}{25}$ ii $\frac{2}{5}$ iii $\frac{8}{100}$ iv $\frac{13}{25}$ v $\frac{2}{3}$

4 a

	P	*P′*	
B	12	1	13
B′	4	3	7
	16	4	20

b i 4 ii 17

c i $\frac{4}{5}$ ii $\frac{1}{20}$ iii $\frac{3}{5}$ iv $\frac{12}{13}$

5 a

	1	2	3	4	5	6
H	(1, H)	(2, H)	(3, H)	(4, H)	(5, H)	(6, H)
T	(1, T)	(2, T)	(3, T)	(4, T)	(5, T)	(6, T)

b 12

c $\frac{1}{12}$

d i $\frac{1}{4}$ ii $\frac{5}{12}$

6 a

	R	R	B	G
R	×	(R, R)	(B, R)	(G, R)
R	(R, R)	×	(B, R)	(G, R)
B	(R, B)	(R, B)	×	(G, B)
G	(R, G)	(R, G)	(B, G)	×

12 outcomes

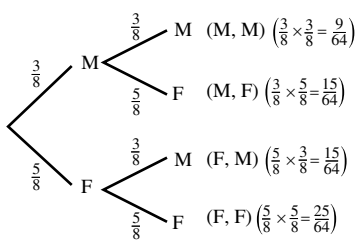
b i $\frac{1}{6}$ ii $\frac{1}{6}$ iii $\frac{1}{3}$

Exercise 4F

1 a 8 **b** $\frac{1}{8}$

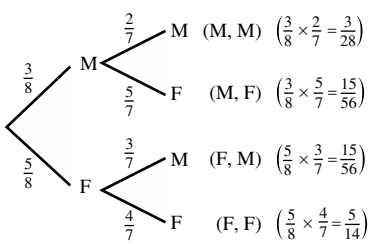
c i 3 ii 4 **d** $\frac{7}{8}$

2 a



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

b



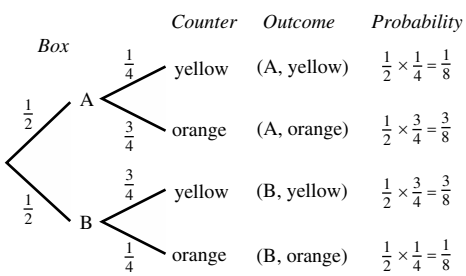
3 a i $\frac{2}{5}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{5}$

b i $\frac{2}{5}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{5}$

c i $\frac{1}{4}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{4}$

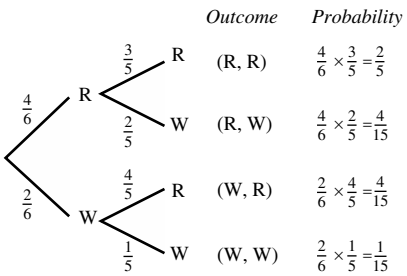
4 a $\frac{1}{4}$ **b** $\frac{3}{4}$

c



d $\frac{3}{8}$ **e** $\frac{1}{2}$

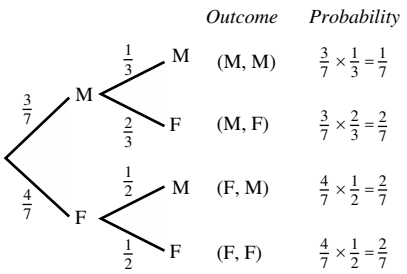
5 a



b i $\frac{4}{15}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{5}$ **iii** $\frac{8}{15}$

c i $\frac{2}{9}$ **ii** $\frac{4}{9}$ **iii** $\frac{4}{9}$

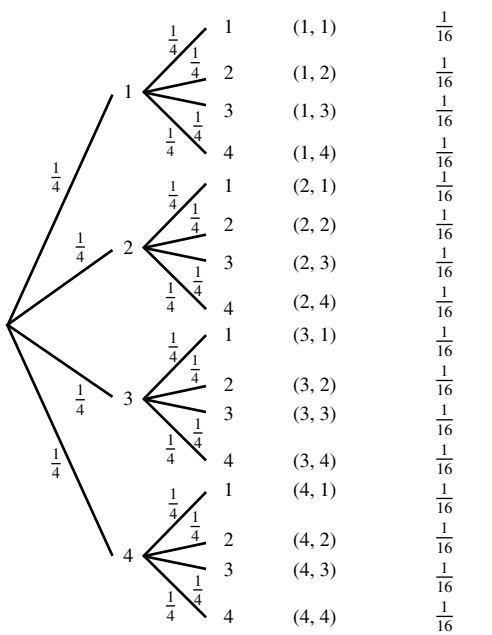
6 a



i $\frac{1}{7}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{7}$ **iii** $\frac{4}{7}$ **iv** $\frac{3}{7}$

b i $\frac{9}{49}$ **ii** $\frac{16}{49}$ **iii** $\frac{24}{49}$ **iv** $\frac{25}{49}$

7 a

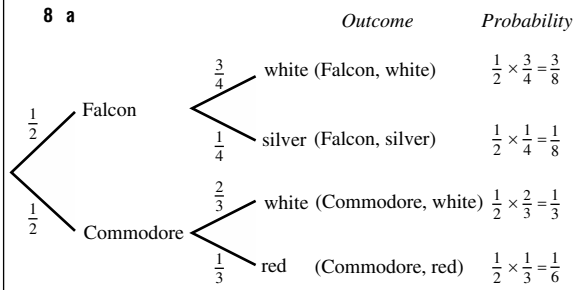


b 16

c i $\frac{1}{16}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{4}$

d i $\frac{1}{16}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{4}$ **iii** $\frac{5}{8}$

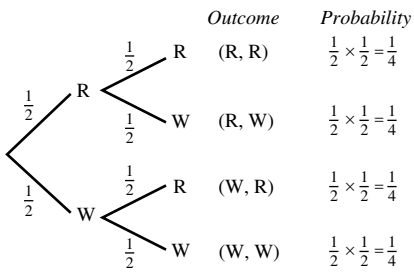
8 a



b i $\frac{3}{8}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{6}$ **iii** $\frac{17}{24}$ **iv** $\frac{7}{24}$

v $\frac{5}{6}$ **vi** $\frac{1}{3}$

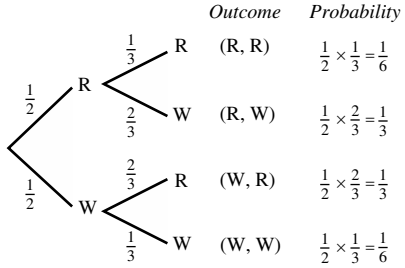
9 a



i $\frac{1}{4}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{2}$ **iii** $\frac{3}{4}$ **iv** $\frac{3}{4}$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

b



i $\frac{1}{6}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{3}$ **iii** $\frac{5}{6}$ **iv** $\frac{5}{6}$

10 a i 0.17 **ii** 0.11 **iii** 0.83

b i 0.1445 **ii** 0.0965 **iii** 0.8555

Exercise 4G

1 a i $\frac{3}{10}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{3}$

b no

c no

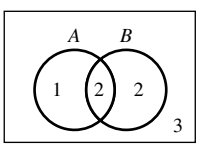
2 a with **b** without

3 a i $\frac{1}{2}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{2}$

b yes

c $\frac{1}{2}$

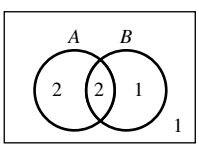
4 a



b i $\frac{3}{8}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{2}$

c not independent

5 a



b i $\frac{2}{3}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{3}$ **c** independent

6 a i $\frac{3}{4}, \frac{1}{2}$ **ii** not independent

b i $\frac{1}{4}, \frac{1}{4}$ **ii** independent

c i $\frac{1}{3}, \frac{1}{3}$ **ii** independent

d i $\frac{2}{7}, 0$ **ii** not independent

7 a $\Pr(A) = \frac{1}{2}$, $\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{1}{2}$, independent

b $\Pr(A) = \frac{3}{10}$, $\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{1}{4}$, not independent

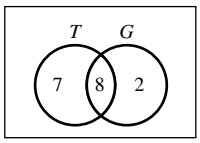
c $\Pr(A) = \frac{5}{12}$, $\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{3}{20}$, not independent

d $\Pr(A) = \frac{1}{9}$, $\Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{1}{9}$, independent

8 False. $\Pr(A \mid B) = 0$, but $\Pr(A) = \frac{2}{9}$

9 a $\frac{1}{32}$ **b** $\frac{31}{32}$ **c** $\frac{31}{32}$

10 a



	T	T′	
G	8	2	10
G′	7	0	7
	15	2	17

i $\frac{15}{17}$ **ii** $\frac{7}{17}$ **iii** $\frac{4}{5}$

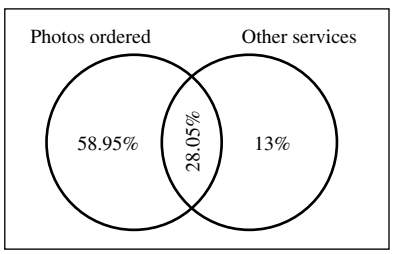
b no

Maths@Work: Business analyst

1 a

	Other services	No other services	Total orders
Photos ordered	28.05%	58.95%	87%
No photos	13%	-	13%
Total	41.05%	58.95%	100%

b



c $6264

d Advertising should focus on photo print services as 87% of the weekly orders are for photo prints.

2 a i 820 **ii** 160 **iii** 180 **iv** 20

b Business cards are ordered by 57% of customers with 42% ordering only business cards. This is greater than either newsletter printing (38%, 25% only newsletters) and promotional material (25%, 15% only promotional material). There is a strong market for business cards so the company must focus on offering a quality product with a competitive price.

c Greater percentages in newsletters and promotional material to increase the company's business over these product lines.

3 a *See table at top of next page.*

b i Running **ii** Yoga

c *See figure on next page.*

d Gym wear increased by 89 sales from Q3 to Q4. The advertising was successful as this is a much larger increase than the other increases of: Q1 to Q2, 7 sales; Q2 to Q3, 22 sales.

e *See third figure on next page.*

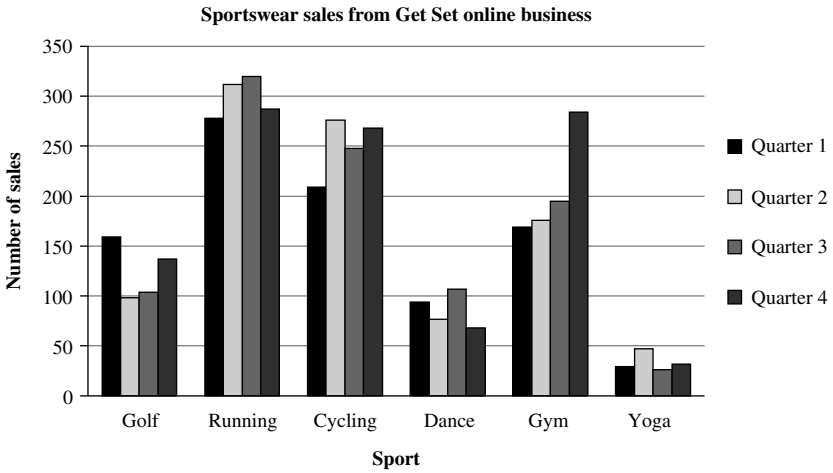
f A 3.4% increase. The graph in part **e** shows the Quarter 4 column is twice as high as the Quarter 1 column. The reason why this is misleading is because the percentage scale does not start at 0. With the percentage scale starting at zero, comparisons are more realistic.

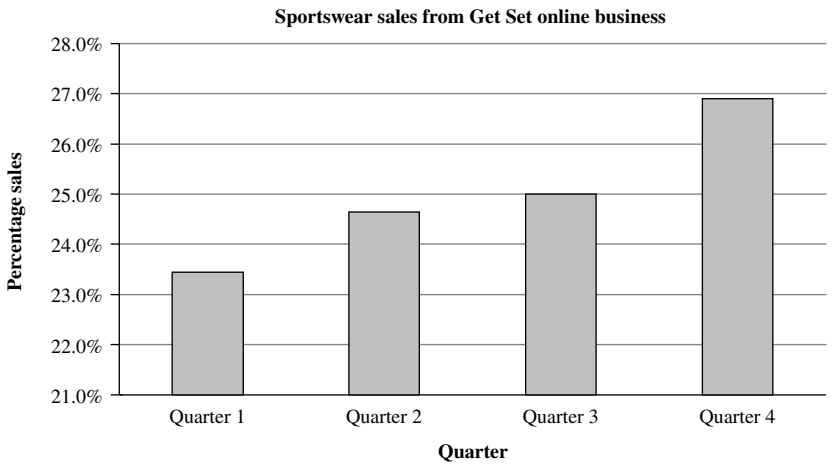
See fourth figure on next page.

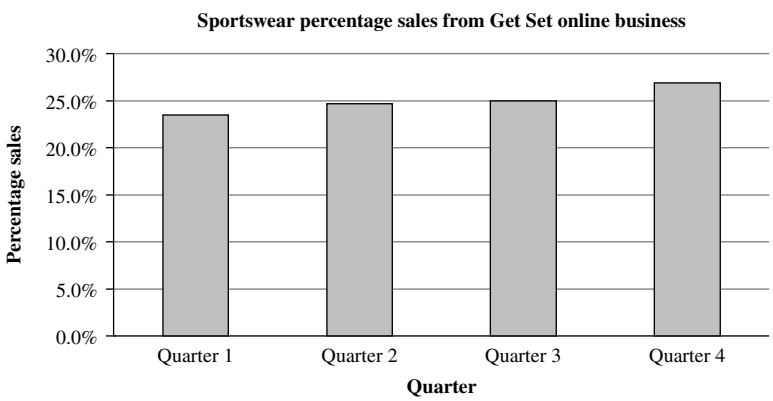
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Sportswear sales from Get Set online business

Sport	QUARTER 1	QUARTER 2	QUARTER 3	QUARTER 4	Totals	Percentages
Golf	159	98	104	137	498	12.5%
Running	278	312	320	287	1197	29.9%
Cycling	209	276	248	268	1001	25.0%
Dance	94	77	107	68	346	8.7%
Gym	169	176	195	284	824	20.6%
Yoga	29	47	26	32	134	3.4%
Totals	938	986	1000	1076	4000	100.0%
Percentages	23.5%	24.7%	25.0%	26.9%	100.0%	







Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Puzzles and games

1 MUTUALLY EXCLUSIVE

2 $\frac{1}{6}$

3 Results may vary.

4 **a** $\frac{1}{12}$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}$ **c** $\frac{3}{4}$ **d** $\frac{2}{3}$

5 $\frac{15}{16}$

6 $\frac{3}{5}$

7 $\frac{1}{12}$

Multiple-choice questions

1 C **2** C **3** A **4** D
5 C **6** B **7** B **8** E
9 A **10** E

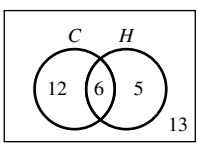
Short-answer questions

1 **a** $\frac{1}{6}$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}$ **c** $\frac{2}{3}$

2 **a** $\frac{1}{8}$ **b** $\frac{1}{4}$ **c** $\frac{3}{8}$ **d** $\frac{5}{8}$
e $\frac{1}{2}$

3 **a** **i** $\frac{2}{5}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{4}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{5}$ **iv** $\frac{1}{10}$
v $\frac{1}{20}$
b **i** $\frac{3}{5}$ **ii** $\frac{17}{20}$

4 **a**



b

	C	C′	
H	6	5	11
H′	12	13	25
	18	18	36

c 13
d **i** $\frac{1}{6}$ **ii** $\frac{5}{36}$ **iii** $\frac{1}{2}$

5 **a** 8 **b** $\frac{6}{13}$

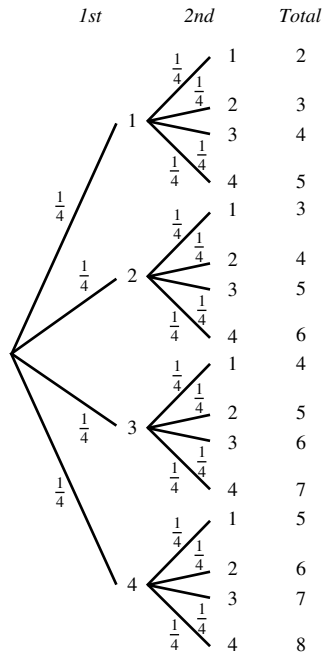
6 **a** $\frac{2}{5}$ **b** $\frac{1}{5}$

7 **a**

		1st				
		H	A	P	P	Y
2nd	H	(H, H)	(A, H)	(P, H)	(P, H)	(Y, H)
	E	(H, E)	(A, E)	(P, E)	(P, E)	(Y, E)
	Y	(H, Y)	(A, Y)	(P, Y)	(P, Y)	(Y, Y)

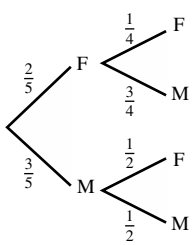
b 15
c **i** $\frac{1}{15}$ **ii** $\frac{2}{15}$ **iii** $\frac{13}{15}$

8 **a**



b **i** $\frac{1}{16}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{4}$ **iii** 0 **iv** 1

9



a $\frac{2}{5}$ **b** $\frac{3}{4}$ **c** $\frac{3}{10}$ **d** $\frac{3}{5}$
e $\frac{7}{10}$

10 **a** $\frac{7}{11}, \frac{2}{5}$, no **b** $\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}$, yes

Extended-response questions

1 **a** 8
b **i** $\frac{7}{15}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{15}$
c

	R	R′	
S	3	1	4
S′	3	8	11
	6	9	15

d **i** $\frac{1}{2}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{4}$

2 **a**

		1st		
		R	S	W
2nd	R	(R, R)	(S, R)	(W, R)
	S	(R, S)	(S, S)	(W, S)
	W	(R, W)	(S, W)	(W, W)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

b i $\frac{1}{9}$ ii $\frac{1}{3}$ iii $\frac{5}{9}$ iv $\frac{4}{9}$

c 4

d $\frac{5}{9}$

Chapter 5

Pre-test

1 **a** 8 **b** 40 **c** 82 **d** 13

2 **a** 6

b i 19 ii 23

c 30

d 10%

3 **a** 8 **b** 8.5 **c** 5 **d** 8

4 **a** i mean = 45 ii mode = 41
iii median = 41 iv range = 20

b i mean = 6 ii mode = 2
iii median = 6 iv range = 10

5 **a** 15 **b** 111, 139 are most frequent.

c min = 98 g, Max = 145 g **d** 47

Exercise 5A

1 Check with your teacher.

2 **a** E **b** F **c** A **d** B
e H **f** D **g** G **h** C

3 **a** B **b** E **c** C **d** D
e F **f** A

4 C

5 D

6 **a** numerical and discrete **b** numerical and discrete
c categorical and ordinal **d** numerical and continuous
e categorical and ordinal

7 D

8 C

9 D

10 **a** Carrying out survey at a train station will create a very high proportion of train users in survey's results.
b Survey will reach only those people who use computers.
c Survey will access only people over 18 years of age.

11 Check with your teacher.

12 Check with your teacher.

Exercise 5B

1 **a** numerical
b categorical (nominal)
c categorical (ordinal)
d numerical

2 **a**

Car colour	Tally	Frequency
Red	|||	3
White	𝍸 |	5
Green	||	2
Silver	||	2
Total	**12**	**12**

b

Class interval	Frequency	Percentage frequency
80–	8	16%
85–	23	46%
90–	13	26%
90–100	6	12%
Total	**50**	**100%**

3 **a** 8

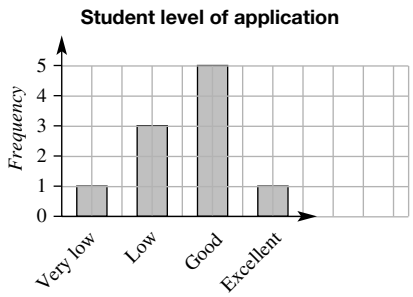
b 25

c i 8 ii 32%

4 **a** i

Application	Tally	Frequency
Very low	|	1
Low	|||	3
Good	𝍸	5
Excellent	|	1
Total	**10**	**10**

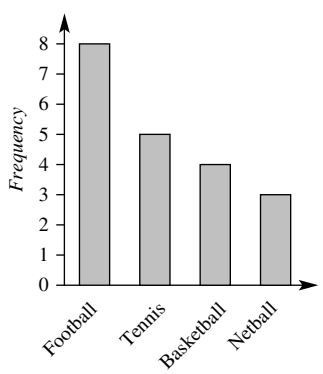
ii



b i

Favourite sport	Tally	Frequency
Football	𝍸 |||	8
Tennis	𝍸	5
Basketball	||||	4
Netball	|||	3
Total	**20**	**20**

ii

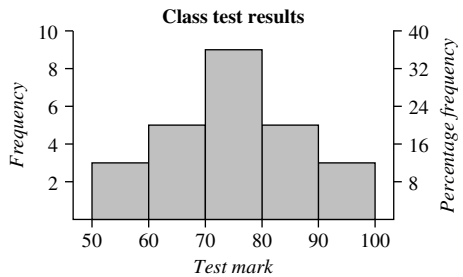


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

5 a

Class interval	Tally	Frequency	Percentage frequency
50–	𝍸	3	12%
60–	𝍸	5	20%
70–	𝍸 ||||	9	36%
80–	𝍸	5	20%
90–100	|||	3	12%
Total	**25**	**25**	**100%**

b

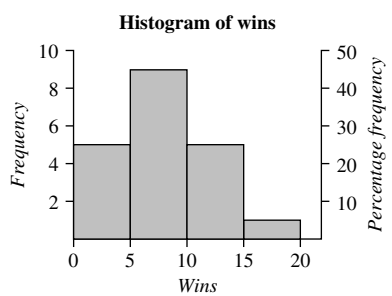


c the 70– interval
d 32%

6 a

Class interval	Tally	Frequency	Percentage frequency
0–	𝍸	5	25%
5–	𝍸 ||||	9	45%
10–	𝍸	5	25%
15–19	𝍸	1	5%
Total		**20**	**100%**

b



c the 5– interval **d** 75%

7 a

Type of transport	Frequency	Percentage frequency
Car	16	40%
Train	6	15%
Tram	8	20%
Walking	5	12.5%
Bicycle	2	5%
Bus	3	7.5%
Total	**40**	**100%**

b i 6 **ii** car **iii** 40%
iv 17.5% **v** 42.5%

8 a skewed
b symmetrical

9 a

Mass	Frequency	Percentage frequency
10–	3	6%
15–	6	12%
20–	16	32%
25–	21	42%
30–34	4	8%
Total	**50**	**100%**

b 50 **c** 32%
d At least 25 g but less than 30 g.
e 42% **f** 94%

10 a

Section	Frequency	Percentage frequency
String	21	52.5%
Woodwind	8	20%
Brass	7	17.5%
Percussion	4	10%
Total	**40**	**100%**

b 40 **c** 52.5% **d** 47.5% **e** 9.3%

11 Frequencies of individual scores are lost if the histogram displays only categories of scores.

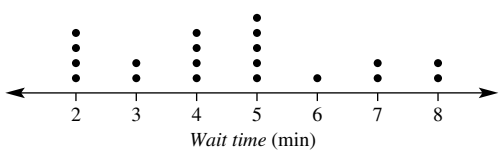
12 a Russia, ~ 14 years
b Pakistan
c In nearly all countries, the female life expectancy is more than that for males.
d Living conditions in some areas; a high prevalence of HIV/AIDS.

13 a Saturday and Sunday; vendor would expect greater sales at the weekend.
b May have been a particularly warm day or a public holiday.
c i Wednesday; $250 **ii** Thursday
d The graph does not help us to visualise the profit and loss.

Exercise 5C

1 a histogram **b** dot plot
c column graph **d** stem-and-leaf

2



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 **a** 32, 35, 41, 43, 47, 54, 54, 56, 60, 62, 71, 71
b 0.2, 0.3, 0.7, 1.4, 1.4, 1.8, 1.9, 2.3, 2.6, 2.6, 3.0, 3.5

4

Stem	Leaf
10	1 1 4 8
11	0 3 3 6
12	2 3 7
13	0 2 9

5 **a** 11 **b** 1 **c** 16
d 1 family had 3 children but the data were generally symmetrical.

6 **a** 9
b 39
c He had one bad hole with 7 strokes, but generally the data were consistent, between 3 and 5 strokes.

7 **a** **i**

Stem	Leaf
1	5 5
2	0 1 2 4 5 6 6
3	1 7 7 8
4	6
5	2

1 | 5 means 15

ii skewed

b **i**

Stem	Leaf
1	2 6
2	1 3 5 7
3	1 2 5 5 6 6 8
4	0 0 2 4 8
5	1 3 5

3 | 2 means 32

ii symmetrical

c **i**

Stem	Leaf
11	6 7 8 9
12	1 4 5 7
13	3 5 7
14	5 7 9
15	3 8
16	0 2

13 | 5 means 135

ii skewed

d **i**

Stem	Leaf
2	0
3	3 7 8
4	3 4 5 7 8 9
5	2 4 5 8
6	1 3 5
7	0

3 | 7 means 3.7

ii symmetrical

8 **a** **i**

Set 1 Leaf	Stem	Set 2 Leaf
9 8	3	2 5
8 6 3 2 2 0	4	1 7 7
9 7 3 3	5	2 2 5 6
4 1	6	0 1 3 4 7

5 | 2 means 52

ii Set 1 is symmetrical and set 2 is skewed with more data at the higher end.

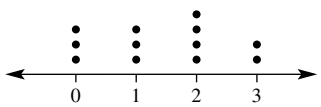
b **i**

Set 1 Leaf	Stem	Set 2 Leaf
8 6 4	16	0 3 3 5 7
6 5 2 1	17	0 1 1 4 8
8 7 7 5 1 0	18	2 2 6 7
9 5 2	19	0 4
8 1	20	

19 | 5 means 195

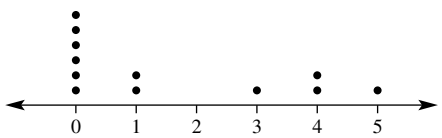
ii Set 1 is symmetrical and set 2 is skewed with most of the data at the lower numbers.

9 **a**



Logan's goal scoring

b



Max's goal scoring

c well spread performance
d irregular performance, skewed

10 **a** 4.1 minutes **b** ~ 22.5 minutes
c This would increase the average time.

11 **a**

Inner city Leaf	Stem	Outer suburb Leaf
9 6 4 3 1 1	0	3 4 9
9 4 2 0	1	2 8 8 9
4 1	2	1 3 4
	3	4
	4	1

2 | 1 means 21 km

b For the inner city, the data values are closer together and bunched around the lower distances. The outer suburb data values are more spread out.
c In the outer suburbs, students will be travelling farther distances to their school, whereas at inner city schools they are more likely to live close to the school.

12 **a** $a = 3$, $b = 9$, $c = 7$ or 8
b $a = 0$ or 1, $b = 0, 1, 2, 3, 4$ or 5

13 **a** The stem 1 is allocated the leaves 0–4 (included) and 1^* is allocated 5–9 (included).
b **i** 1 **ii** 0^*
c For city B, for example, most temperatures are in the 20s; splitting into 20–24 and 25–29 allows better analysis of the data and still means that a stem-and-leaf is an appropriate choice of graph.
d City A experienced cooler weather, with temperatures between 8°C and 18°C. City B had warmer weather and a wider range of temperatures, between 17°C and 31°C.
e The cities may have been experiencing different seasons; maybe winter and summer.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

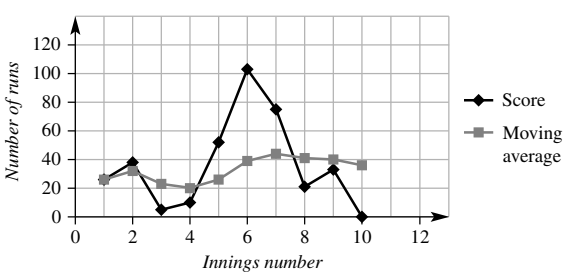
Exercise 5D

1 **a** mode **b** mean **c** median
d bimodal **e** range
2 **a** 4 **b** 4.5 **c** 3.2
3 **a** 7 **b** 10 and 14
4 **a** 28 **b** 7 **c** 4
5 **a** **i** 5.4 **ii** 8 **iii** 6
b **i** 16.25 **ii** 10 **iii** 45
c **i** 70 **ii** 50, 90 **iii** 40
d **i** 25 **ii** no mode **iii** 18
e **i** 2.325 **ii** 1.9 **iii** 1
f **i** 1.6 **ii** no mode **iii** 1.2
6 **a** 7 **b** 4 **c** 11 **d** 75
e 7 **f** 5 **g** 33.5 **h** 3.15
7 **a** 7 **b** 6 **c** 7 **d** 6
8 **a** \$42 **b** \$17.50 **c** \$20.75
d Due to the \$50 value, which is much larger than the other amounts.
9 **a** **i** 25 **ii** 39 **iii** 34.3 **iv** 38
b **i** 28 **ii** 4 **iii** 17.2 **iv** 17
c **i** 24 **ii** no mode **iii** 110 **iv** 108
d **i** 3.2 **ii** 3.0, 5.3 **iii** 4.6 **iv** 4.9
10 **a** Mark:
i 83.6 **ii** 85 **iii** 31
Hugh:
i 76.4 **ii** 79 **iii** 20
b Mark's scores varied more greatly, with a higher range, whereas Hugh's results were more consistent. Mark had the higher mean and median though, as he had several high scores.
11 The median, since the mean is affected by the one large value (\$1 700 000).
12 **a** 4
b 3.7
c **i** The median is unchanged in this case.
ii The mean is decreased.
13 **a** 70 **b** 85
14 **a**

Innings	1	2	3	4	5
Score	26	38	5	10	52
Moving average	26	32	23	20	26

Innings	6	7	8	9	10
Score	103	75	21	33	0
Moving average	39	44	41	40	36

b



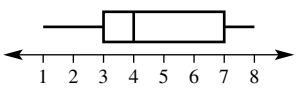
c **i** The score fluctuates wildly.
ii The graph is fairly constant with small increases and decreases.
d The moving average graph follows the trend of the score graph but the fluctuations are much less significant.

Exercise 5E

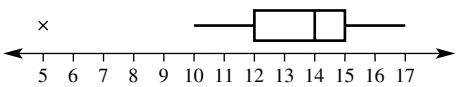
1 **a** Min, lower quartile (Q_1), median (Q_2), upper quartile (Q_3), max
b Range is max − min; IQR is $Q_3 - Q_1$. Range is the spread of all the data, IQR is the spread of the middle 50% of data.
c An outlier is a data point (element) outside the vicinity of the rest of the data.
2 **a** $Q_1 - 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$ **b** $Q_3 + 1.5 \times \text{IQR}$
3 **a** 1.5
b **i** 1 **ii** 2
4 **a** 5 **b** −4.5 and 15.5 **c** an outlier
5 **a** **i** $Q_1 = 4, Q_3 = 8$ **ii** 4
b **i** $Q_1 = 11, Q_3 = 18$ **ii** 7
c **i** $Q_1 = 51, Q_3 = 62$ **ii** 11
d **i** $Q_1 = 1.8, Q_3 = 2.7$ **ii** 0.9
6 **a** **i** $Q_1 = 2, Q_3 = 11$ **ii** 9
b **i** $Q_1 = 2, Q_3 = 10$ **ii** 8
c **i** $Q_1 = 1.0, Q_3 = 1.6$ **ii** 0.6
d **i** $Q_1 = 10.5, Q_3 = 22.5$ **ii** 12
7 **a** **i** min = 0, max = 17 **ii** median = 13
iii $Q_1 = 10, Q_3 = 15$ **iv** IQR = 5
b 0 is an outlier
c Road may have been closed that day.
8 **a** **i** min = 4, max = 14 **ii** 7.5
iii $Q_1 = 5, Q_3 = 9$ **iv** IQR = 4
v no outliers
b **i** min = 16, max = 31 **ii** 25
iii $Q_1 = 21, Q_3 = 27$ **iv** IQR = 6
v no outliers
c **i** min = 2, max = 24 **ii** 12
iii $Q_1 = 10, Q_3 = 13$ **iv** IQR = 3
v 24 and 2
d **i** min = 1, max = 17 **ii** 7
iii $Q_1 = 4, Q_3 = 10$ **iv** IQR = 6
v no outliers
9 **a** **i** min = 25, max = 128 **ii** 47
iii $Q_1 = 38, Q_3 = 52.5$ **iv** IQR = 14.5
v Yes, 128 **vi** 51.25
b Median, as it is not affected dramatically by the outlier.
c A more advanced calculator was used.
10 2 bags; 30 and 31 will be checked
11 2 fridges; 350 and 1700 are outliers
12 **a** IQR = 10 **b** Yes, 1 is an outlier. **c** no

Exercise 5F

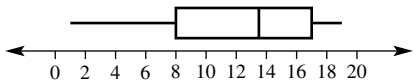
1 **a** minimum **b** Q_1
c Q_2(median) **d** Q_3
e maximum **f** whisker **g** box
2 **a** 15 **b** 5 **c** 25 **d** 20
e 10 **f** 20 **g** 10
3 **a**



b



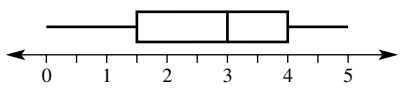
4 **a** Q_3 **b** Q_1, Q_3 **c** minimum, Q_1
d Q_3, maximum
5 **a** **i** min = 1, $Q_1 = 8$, $Q_2 = 13.5$, $Q_3 = 17$, max = 19
ii



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

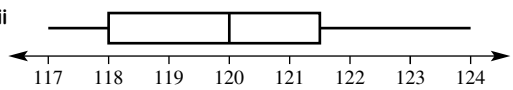
b i min = 0, Q_1 = 1.5, Q_2 = 3, Q_3 = 4, max = 5

ii



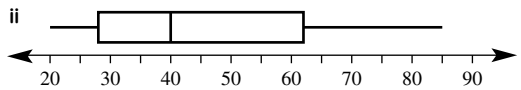
c i min = 117, Q_1 = 118, Q_2 = 120, Q_3 = 121.5, max = 124

ii



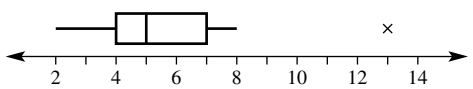
d i min = 20, Q_1 = 28, Q_2 = 40, Q_3 = 62, max = 85

ii



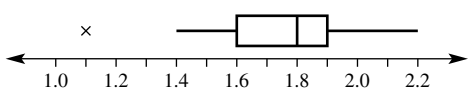
6 a i Q_1 = 4, Q_2 = 5, Q_3 = 7 **ii** Outlier is 13.

iii



b i Q_1 = 1.6, Q_2 = 1.8, Q_3 = 1.9 **ii** Outlier is 1.1.

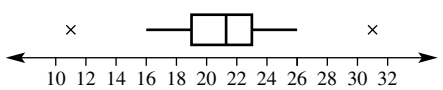
iii



c i Q_1 = 19, Q_2 = 21.5, Q_3 = 23

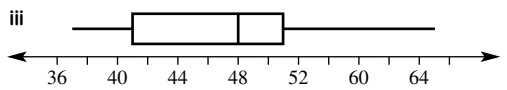
ii Outliers are 11 and 31.

iii



d i Q_1 = 41, Q_2 = 48, Q_3 = 51 **ii** no outliers

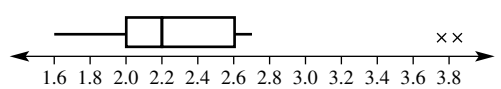
iii



7 a minimum = 1.6, Q_1 = 2.0, Q_2 = 2.2, Q_3 = 2.6, maximum = 3.9, IQR = 0.6

b 3.8 and 3.9 are outliers.

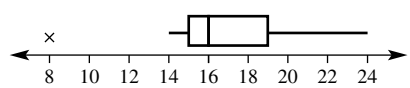
c



8 a i 8 **ii** 15 **iii** 16 **iv** 19 **v** 24 **vi** 4

b yes, 8

c



9 a Same minimum of 1.

b B

c i 5 **ii** 10

d Data points for B are more evenly spread than those for A.

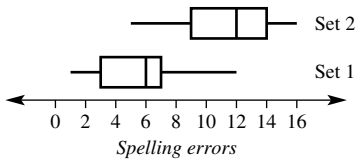
10 a They have the same median and upper quartile.

b B

c i 4 **ii** 5

d Set B is more spread out.

11 a



b Yes, examiner 2 found more errors.

Progress quiz

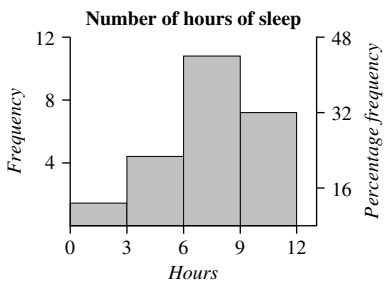
1 a categorical and nominal

b numerical and discrete

2 a

Class Interval	Tally	Frequency	Percentage frequency
0–	|	1	4%
3–	||||	4	16%
6–	𝍸 𝍸 ||	12	48%
9 – 11	𝍸 |||	8	32%
Total	25	25	100%

b



c 20% of those surveyed had fewer than 6 hours of sleep.

d The 6– interval is the most frequent.

3 a 20 **b** 5 days **c** 4.5 days **d** 4.15 days

e 7

4 a

Stem	Leaf
0	3 7
1	1 5 6
2	1 2 4 5
3	0 0 3 4
4	0 2 5 6 7 8 9

4|2 means 42

b Data are skewed.

c i 30 **ii** 30

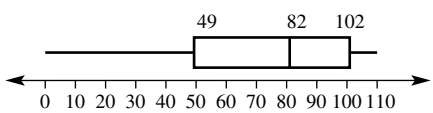
5 a 19.375 **b** 17 **c** 39

6 a Q_1 = 10.5, Q_3 = 19 **b** 8.5

7 a Q_1 = 49, Q_2 = 82 and Q_3 = 102

b There are no outliers.

c



Exercise 5G

1 a linear **b** no trend **c** non-linear **d** linear

2 a i 20°C **ii** 30°C **iii** 30°C **iv** 34°C

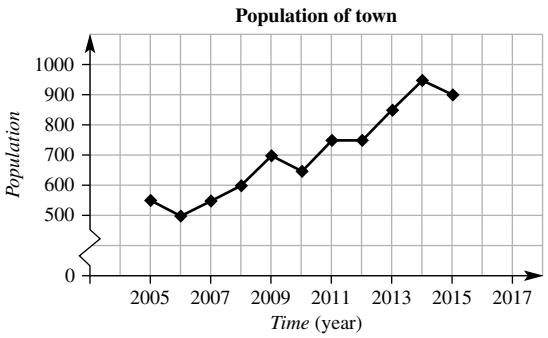
b 36°C

c i noon to 1 p.m. **ii** 3 to 4 p.m.

d Temperature is increasing from 8 a.m. to 3 p.m. in a generally linear way. At 3 p.m. the temperature starts to drop.

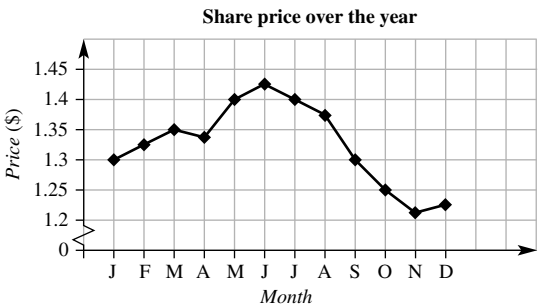
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

3 a



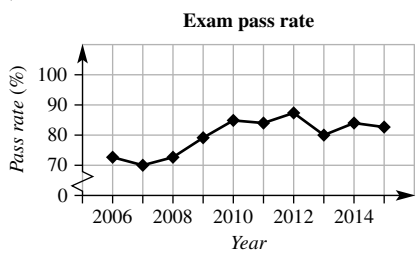
b Generally linear in a positive direction.
c **i** 500 **ii** 950

4 a



b The share price generally increased until it peaked in June and then continually decreased to a yearly low in November before trending upwards again in the final month.
c $0.21

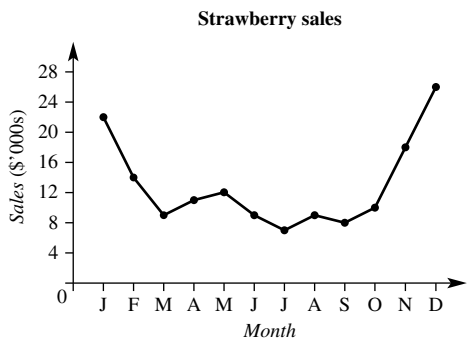
5 a



b The pass rate for the examination has increased marginally over the 10 years, with a peak in 2012.
c 2012
d 11%

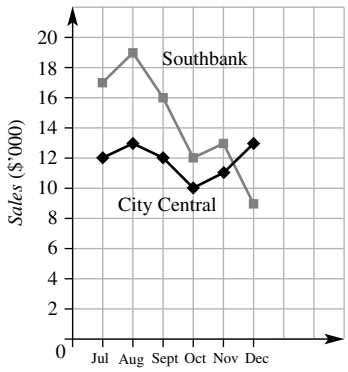
6 a linear
b **i** $650 000 **ii** $750 000

7 a



b The sales start high and decrease during the middle of the year, before increasing again towards the end of the year.
c Strawberries are in season in the warmer months but not in the cooler winter months.

8 a **i** $6000 **ii** $4000
b 1
c



d **i** The sales trend for City Central for the 6 months is fairly constant.
ii Sales for Southbank peaked in August before taking a downturn.
e about $5000

9 a **i** 5.8 km **ii** 1.7 km
b **i** Blue Crest slowly gets closer to the machine.
ii Green Tail starts near the machine and gets farther from it.
c 8:30 p.m.

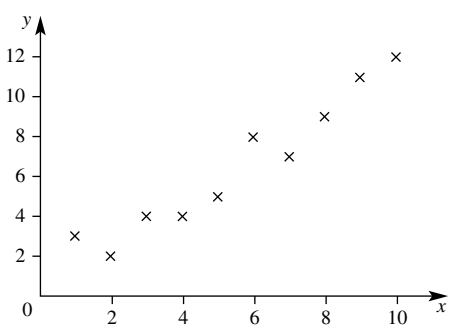
10 a Increases continually, rising more rapidly as the years progress.
b Compound interest – exponential growth

11 a Graphs may vary but it should decrease from room temperature to the temperature of the fridge.
b No. Drink cannot cool to a temperature *lower* than that of the internal environment of the fridge.

Exercise 5H

1 a likely **b** likely **c** unlikely **d** unlikely
e likely

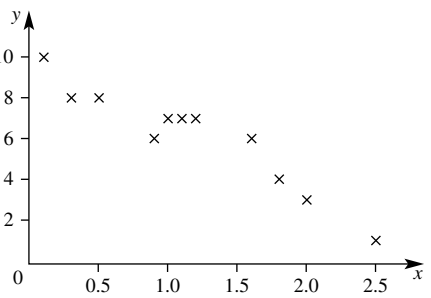
2 a **i**



ii y generally increases as x increases.

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

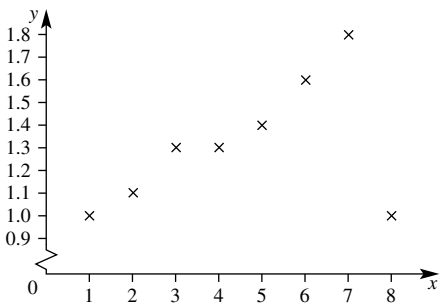
b i



ii y generally decreases as x increases.

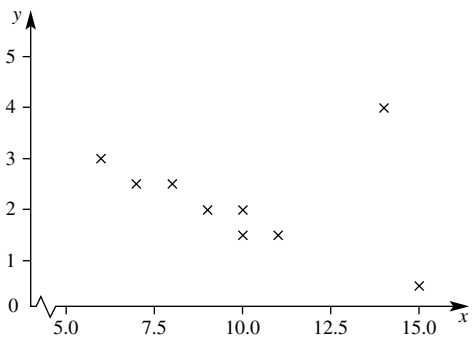
3 a weak negative
b strong positive
c strong negative

4 a



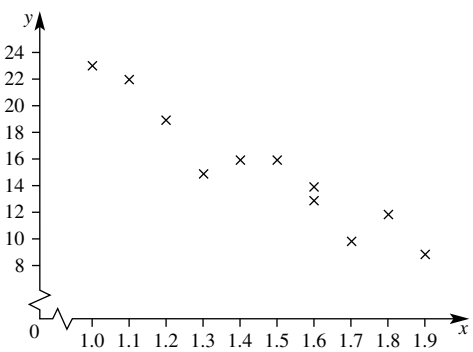
b positive **c** strong **d** (8, 1.0)

5 a

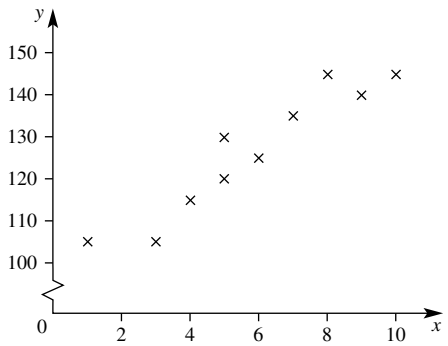


b negative **c** strong **d** (14, 4)

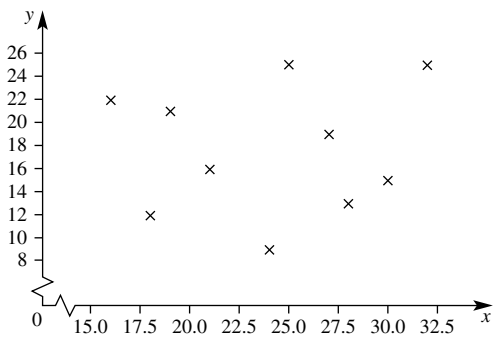
6 a negative



b positive

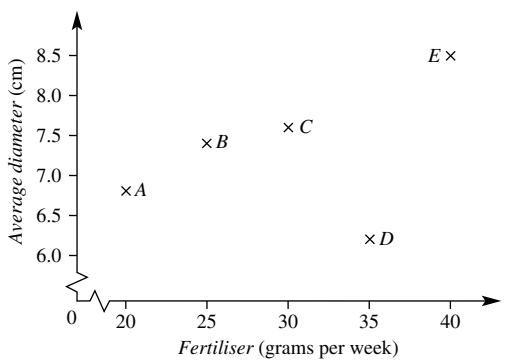


c none



7

a

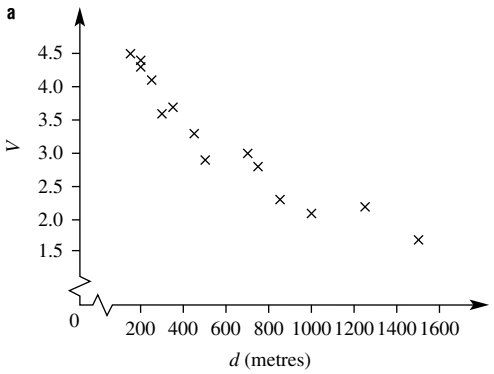


b D
c Yes, although small sample size does lead to doubt.

8 a yes
b decrease
c i yes **ii** car H

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9 a

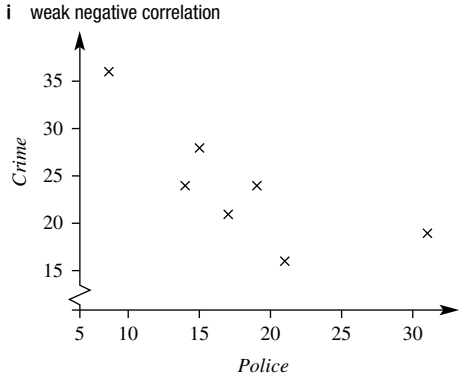


b negative

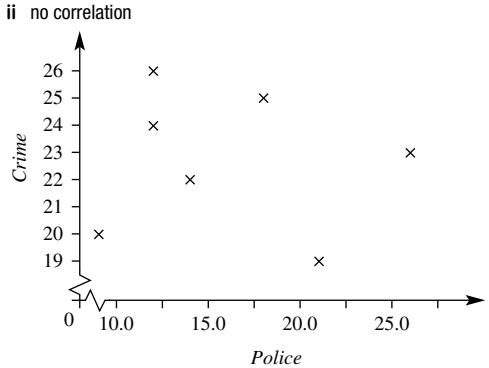
c As d increases, V decreases.

10 Each axis needs a better scale. All data are between 6 and 8 hours sleep and shows only a minimum change in exam marks. Also, there are only 4 observations presented on the plot, which is not enough to form strong conclusions.

11 a i weak negative correlation



ii no correlation



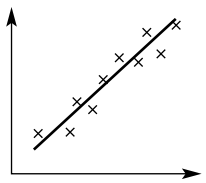
b Survey 1, as this shows an increase in the number of police has seen a decrease in the incidence of crime.

Exercise 5I

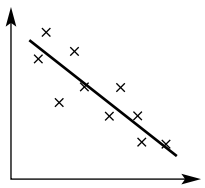
1 a When the data appear to fit on or near a straight line, it shows a definite linear trend.

b Balance points evenly either side of the line; ignore outliers when taking distance from the line into account.

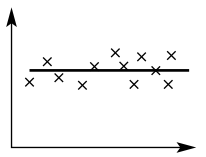
2 a



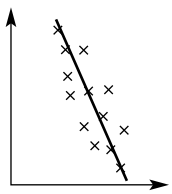
b



c



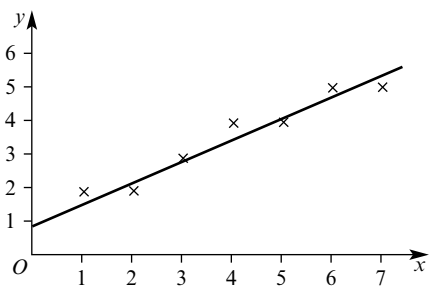
d



3 a ≈ 5.3 **b** ≈ 7

4 a $x \approx 1.5$ **b** $x \approx 11.7$

5 a



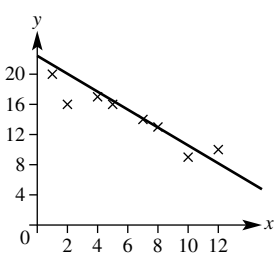
b positive correlation

c as above

d All answers are approximate.

i 3.2 **ii** 0.9 **iii** 1.8 **iv** 7.4

6 a



b negative

c as above

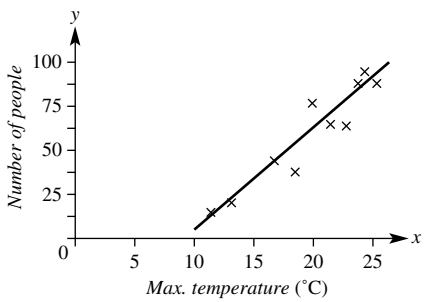
d i 13.5 **ii** 23 **iii** 9 **iv** 7

7 a ≈ 4.5 **b** ≈ 6 **c** ≈ 0.5 **d** ≈ 50

8 a increases

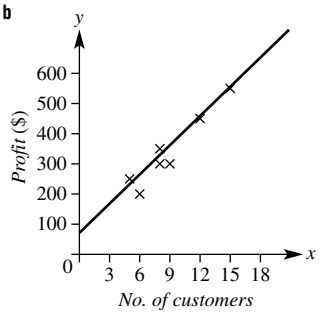
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

b



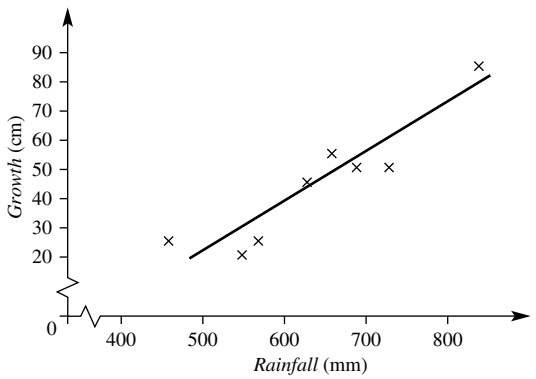
c **i** 65 **ii** 15°C

9 **a, b**



c $600 **d** 2

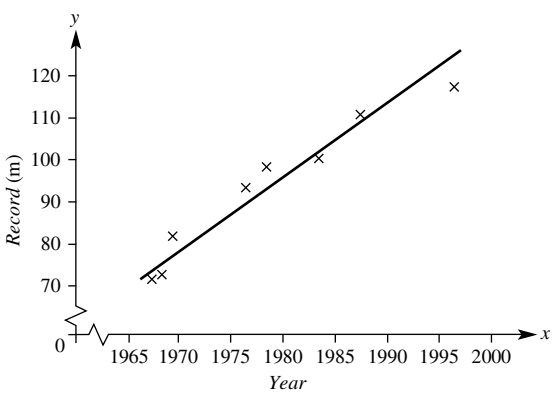
10 **a, b**



c **i** ≈ 25 cm **ii** ≈ 85 cm

d **i** ≈ 520 mm **ii** ≈ 720 mm

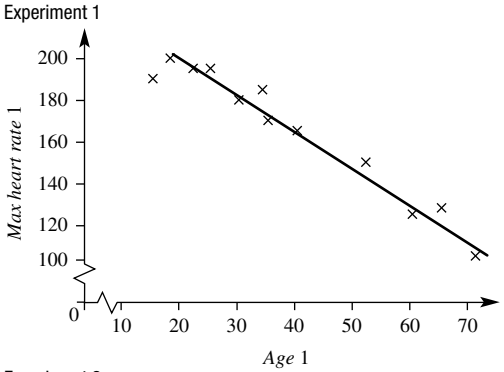
11 **a, b**



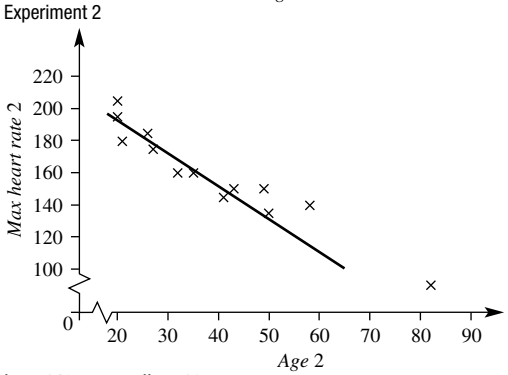
c **i** 130 m **ii** 170 m

d No, records are not likely to continue to increase at this rate.

12 **a** Experiment 1



Experiment 2



b **i** ≈ 140 **ii** ≈ 125

c **i** ≈ 25 **ii** ≈ 22

d experiment 2

e research

Maths@Work: Project manager on a building site

1 **a** 8.4 **b** 8 **c** 7, 8, 8, 9, 10

2 **a** 7.5 **b** 7.5 **c** 5, 7, 7.5, 8, 9

3 *See figure at top of next page.*

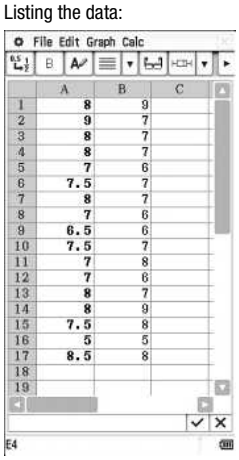
4 **a** 8.4, 7.5, 5.3 **b** 8, 7.5, 5.5

c 7, 5, 0 **d** 10, 9, 8.5

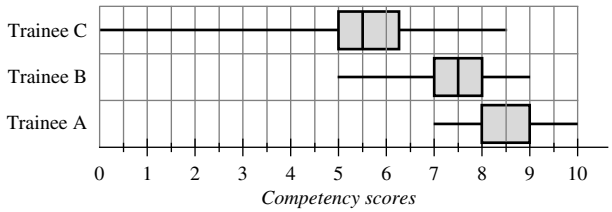
e 1, 1, 1.25 **f** 3, 4, 8.5

5 **a** *Note that a Class Pad II is used for the CAS screenshots below.*

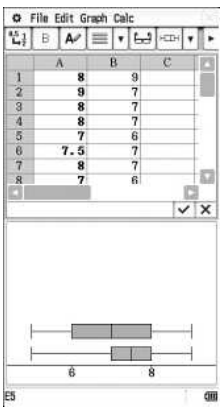
Listing the data:



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.



Drawing the parallel box plots:



b trainee B: 5, 7, 7.5, 8, 9
trainee D: 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

c trainee B IQR = 1; trainee D IQR = 2
trainee B has more consistent results as his/her IQR shows that the middle 50% of scores only vary by 1 unit but trainee D's middle 50% of scores vary by 2 units.

Puzzles and games

1 66 kg
2 88%
3 8
4 **a** larger by 3 **b** larger by 3
c no change
5 1.1
6 3, 3, 9, 11
7 19
8 **a** mean ↑ by 10; median ↑ by 10; mode ↑ by 10
b mean is × by 10; median is × by 10; mode is × by 10

Multiple-choice questions

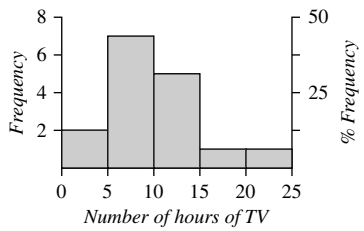
1 D **2** C **3** B **4** A **5** C **6** A
7 E **8** C **9** D **10** B

Short-answer questions

1 **a**

Class interval	Tally	Frequency	Percentage frequency
0–	||	2	12.5%
5–	𝍸 ||	7	43.75%
10–	𝍸	5	31.25%
15–	|	1	6.25%
20–24	|	1	6.25%
Total		**16**	**100%**

b



c It is skewed.

2 **a**

Stem	Leaf
1	5 9
2	0 4 8 9
3	2 4 7 8 8
4	2 9
5	0

3 | 2 means 32

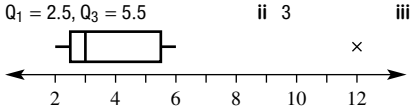
b The data set is symmetrical about scores in the 30s.

3 **a** **i** 5 **ii** 6 **iii** 5
b **i** 30.5 **ii** 57 **iii** 20
c **i** 1.6 **ii** 1.2 **iii** 1.5

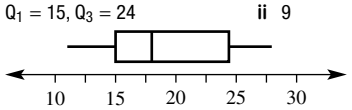
4 **a** 43.2 years
b 38 years
c The mean is affected by the high ages 76 and 87.

5 **a** $Q_1 = 8, Q_2 = 11, Q_3 = 15$ **b** $Q_1 = 8, Q_2 = 13, Q_3 = 15.5$

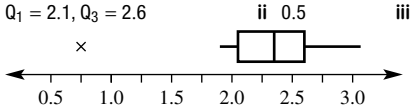
6 **a** **i** $Q_1 = 2.5, Q_3 = 5.5$ **ii** 3 **iii** 12
iv



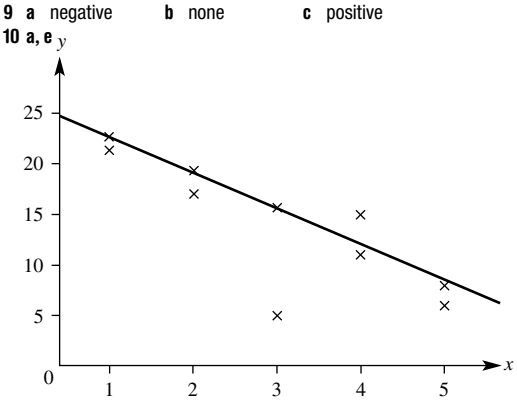
b **i** $Q_1 = 15, Q_3 = 24$ **ii** 9 **iii** none
iv



c **i** $Q_1 = 2.1, Q_3 = 2.6$ **ii** 0.5 **iii** 0.7
iv



7 **a** false **b** true **c** true **d** true
8 **a** linear **b** 10 a.m.–11 a.m.
9 **a** negative **b** none **c** positive
10 **a, e**

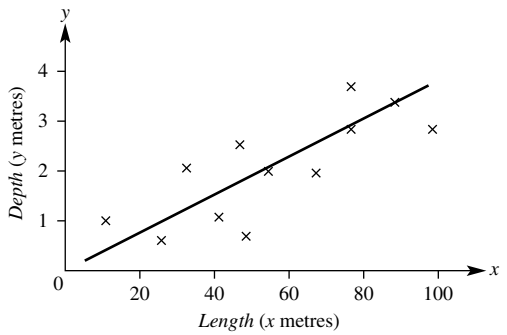


b negative **c** strong **d** (3, 5)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

11

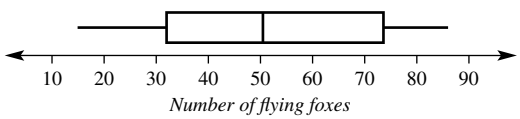
a



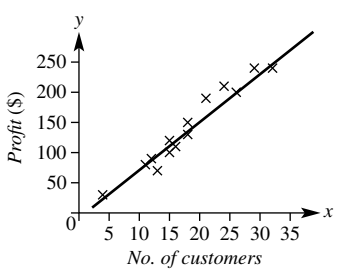
b 1.8 m

Extended-response questions

1 **a** 41
b no outliers
c



2 **a**



b **i** \$80 **ii** \$150 **iii** \$240
c **i** 7 **ii** 16 **iii** 27

Semester review 1

Measurement

Multiple-choice questions

1 C **2** E **3** B **4** A **5** D

Short-answer questions

1 **a** 43 cm **b** 320 cm^2 **c** 30 000 cm^3
2 **a** 8 cm **b** 44 m **c** 9 m
3 **a** **i** 37.70 cm **ii** 113.10 cm^2
b **i** 14.28 cm **ii** 12.28 cm^2
c **i** 11.14 m **ii** 7.14 m^2
4 **a** 10.5 m^2 **b** 112 cm^2 **c** 8 m^2
5 **a** **i** 45 cm^3 **ii** 78 m^2
b **i** 30 m^3 **ii** 72 m^2
c **i** 942.48 mm^3 **ii** 534.07 mm^2

Extended-response question

a 7.85 m^3 **b** 31.42 m^2 **c** \$1130

Consumer arithmetic

Multiple-choice questions

1 C **2** A **3** C **4** D **5** A

Short-answer questions

1 \$170.40
2 **a** \$45 500 **b** \$25
3 \$1550
4 **a** \$82.80 **b** \$110.40
c \$2097.60 **d** \$2346
5 \$2128
6 \$5392
7 \$897
8 **a** \$37 180 **b** \$12 833.60
c \$22 829.56 **d** \$439.03
9 \$8837.34
10 \$16.20
11 \$102

Extended-response question

a \$711.55
b \$59.92
c **i** \$149.80 **ii** \$832 **iii** \$83 **iv** 11.08%

Algebra and indices

Multiple-choice questions

1 C **2** D **3** A **4** D **5** B

Short-answer questions

1 **a** $7xy + 4x$ **b** $-21ab$ **c** $\frac{a}{2}$
2 **a** **i** $-4x + 12$ **ii** $15x^2 + 6x$
iii $13x - 6$
b **i** $6(3 - b)$ **ii** $3x(x + 2)$
iii $-4y(2x + 3)$
3 **a** $x + 3$ **b** $\frac{3}{4}$ **c** $\frac{9x}{10}$ **d** $\frac{2x - 3}{8}$
4 **a** $10x^6$ **b** $\frac{4x^2}{y^3}$ **c** $8m^{12}$ **d** 4
e $\frac{9a^2}{b^8}$ **f** $\frac{3b^2}{a^5}$ **g** $4t^5$ **h** $\frac{2y^2}{x^4}$
5 **a** **i** 473 000 **ii** 0.00521
b **i** 2.76×10^{-5} **ii** 8.71×10^6

Extended-response question

a $A = 3000(1.06)^n$
b **i** \$3370.80 **ii** \$4255.56
c 11.9 years

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Probability

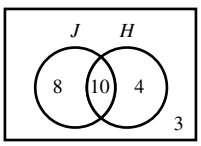
Multiple-choice questions

1 C **2** E **3** A **4** D **5** B

Short-answer questions

1 **a** $\frac{2}{5}$ **b** $\frac{11}{20}$ **c** $\frac{17}{20}$ **d** $\frac{9}{10}$

2 **a**



b

	H	H'	
J	10	8	18
J'	4	3	7
	14	11	25

c 3

d **i** $\frac{4}{25}$ **ii** $\frac{22}{25}$ **iii** $\frac{2}{5}$ **iv** $\frac{5}{9}$

3 **a** 36

b **i** $\frac{1}{9}$ **ii** $\frac{1}{6}$ **iii** $\frac{7}{12}$ **iv** $\frac{1}{6}$

4 **a** $\frac{1}{15}$ **b** $\frac{8}{15}$ **c** $\frac{14}{15}$

5 **a** Yes, $\Pr(A) = \Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{1}{3}$

b No, $\Pr(A) = \frac{5}{8} \neq \Pr(A \mid B) = \frac{3}{5}$

Extended-response question

a

	T	A
T	(T, T)	(A, T)
A	(T, A)	(A, A)

b **i** $\frac{1}{4}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{4}$

c $\frac{1}{4}$

Statistics

Multiple-choice questions

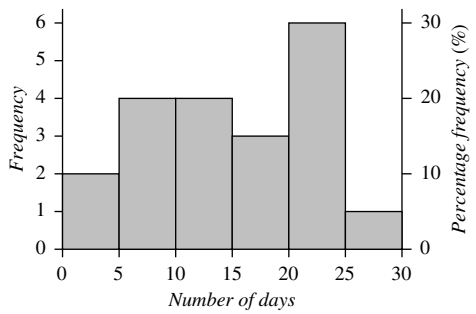
1 A **2** C **3** E **4** B **5** C

Short-answer questions

1 **a**

Class interval	Frequency	Percentage frequency
0–	2	10%
5–	4	20%
10–	4	20%
15–	3	15%
20–	6	30%
25–	1	5%
Total	**20**	**100%**

b



c **i** 14 **ii** 50%

iii 20 – 24 days, those that maybe catch public transport to work or school each week day.

2 **a**

Steam	Leaf
0	4 7 8 9
1	2 5 5 7 8
2	4 4 6
3	2 6
4	1

3 | 6 means 36

b skewed

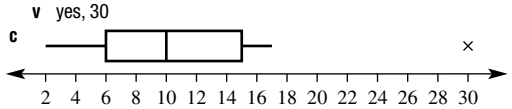
3 **a** 2 4 6 7 8 10 12 12 15 17 30

b **i** min = 2, max = 30 **ii** 10

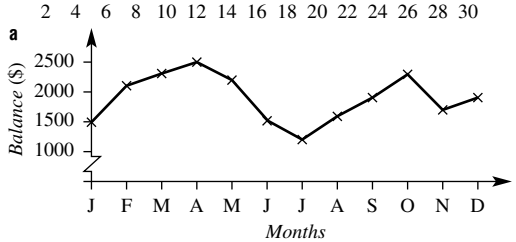
iii $Q_1 = 6$, $Q_3 = 15$ **iv** 9

v yes, 30

c



4 **a**



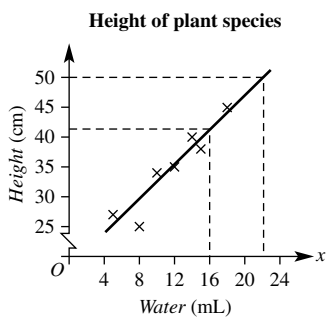
b Balance fluctuated throughout the year but ended up with more money after 12 months.

c May and June

d Increase of $500.

Extended-response question

a, c



b Positive

d **i** 41 cm **ii** 22 mL

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Chapter 6

Pre-test

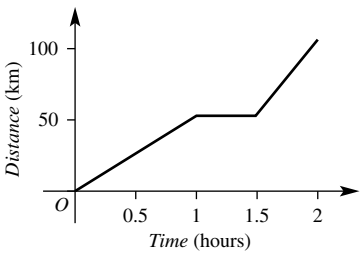
1 **a** (3, 5) **b** (4, −2) **c** (−4, −4)
d (−3, 1) **e** (2, −2) **f** (2, 0)
2 **a** G **b** D **c** B
d S **e** N **f** Q
3 **a** square **b** isosceles triangle
c hexagon
4 **a** 11 **b** 19 **c** 10 **d** 3.5
e 0 **f** −1 **g** 3.5 **h** −9
5 **a** 120 min **b** 200 km **c** 100 km/h
6 **a** 5 **b** 13 **c** 10
d 41 **e** 3.61 **f** 8.54
7 **a** 3, 4, 5, 6 **b** −2, −1, 0, 1 **c** 0, 2, 4
d 6, 5, 4
8 **a** 6 **b** 9 **c** 3 **d** 9
e 5 **f** 9
9 **a** positive **b** zero **c** undefined
d negative

Exercise 6A

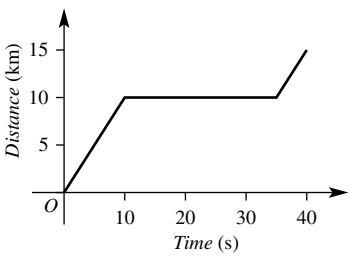
1 **a** 240 km **b** 3 h **c** 360 km
2 **a** 360 km **b** 4 h **c** 540 km
3 **a** 300 deer **b** 100 deer **c** 200 deer
4 **a** 1800 people **b** 450 people **c** 1350 people
5 **a** **i** \$10 000 **ii** \$40 000
b increased
c \$30 000
6 **a** **i** 50 cm **ii** 45 kg
b **i** 10 **ii** 3
7 **a** 80 cm **b** 40 cm **c** approx. $2\frac{1}{4}$ months
8 **a** 400 m **b** approx. 250 m
c approx. $3\frac{1}{2}$ days
9 **a** \$10 000 **b** \$0 **c** 12 years
10 **a** 200 g **b** 200 g **c** $2\frac{1}{4}$ h (2 h 15 min)
11 **a** $\frac{1}{2}$ h (30 min)
b **i** 1 p.m. **ii** 1:15 p.m.
iii approx. 1:08 p.m. **iv** 1:30 p.m.
c **i** −120 m **ii** approx. −80 m
d **i** 0 m **ii** −160 m **iii** −280 m
e **i** 12:45 p.m. **ii** 2 p.m. **iii** 2:45 p.m.

Exercise 6B

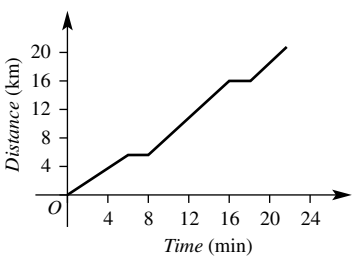
1 **a** S **b** P **c** Q **d** R
e T **f** S
2 **a** 20 km **b** 2 h **c** approx. 17 km
3 **a** **i** 40 kg **ii** 50 kg **iii** 80 kg
b $\frac{1}{2}$ h
c 1st hour
4 **a** 200 m
b 80 s
c **i** approx. 38 m **ii** 75 m **iii** approx. 150 m
5 **a** **i** 3 m **ii** 2 m **iii** 2 m
b the lawn
c **i** 1.5 m **ii** 4 m **iii** 6.5 m
6 **a** **i** 10 s **ii** 17.5 s **iii** 20 s
b phase 3
c **i** approx. 40 m **ii** approx. 85 m **iii** approx. 160 m
7 **a** 10 km **b** 20 km **c** 27 min **d** 9 min
8



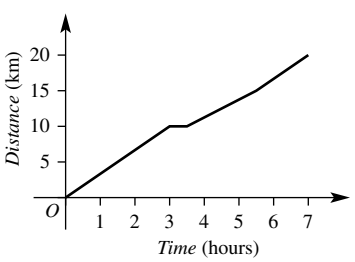
9



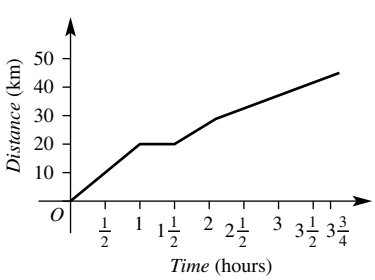
10 **a** 20 km **b** 22 min
c



11



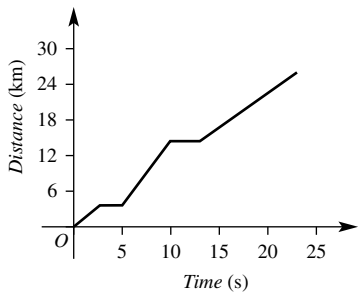
12 **a** **i**



ii $3\frac{1}{4}$ h

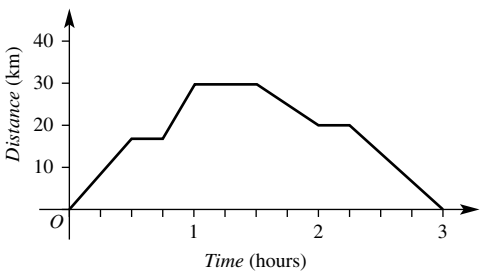
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

b i



ii 18 s

13 a



b 48 km/h **c** 30 km/h

Exercise 6C

1 a $A(2, 1)$ $B(-3, 3)$ $C(2, -3)$ $D(-4, 0)$ $E(4, 4)$ $F(0, -2)$ $G(3, 0)$ $H(-3, -2)$ $I(1, 4)$ $J(-2, -4)$ $K(-4, 5)$

b D, 0, G **c** 0, F **d** (0, 0)

2 a $6 + 4 = 10$, $(-3, 10)$

b $4 + 4 = 8$, $(-2, 8)$

c $2 + 4 = 6$, $(-1, 6)$

d $0 + 4 = 4$, $(0, 4)$

e $-2 + 4 = 2$, $(1, 2)$

f $-4 + 4 = 0$, $(2, 0)$

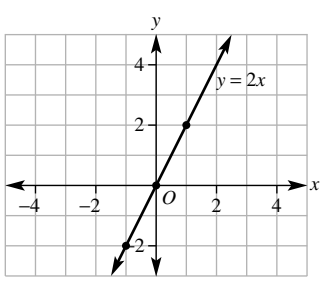
g $-6 + 4 = -2$, $(3, -2)$

3 $(-2, 1)$ $(-1, -1)$ $(0, -3)$ $(1, -5)$ $(2, -7)$

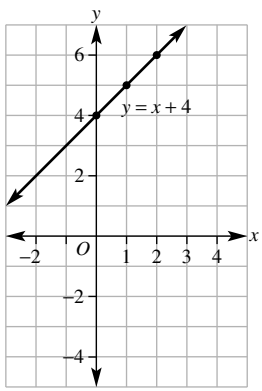
4 a (0, 1) and (2, −3) are not in line with the other points.

b (0, 0) and (2, −2)

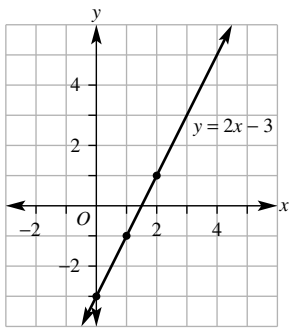
5 a



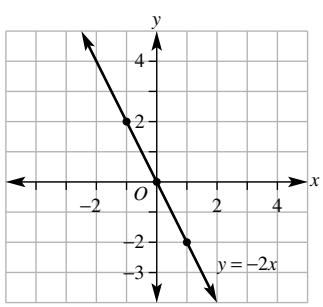
b



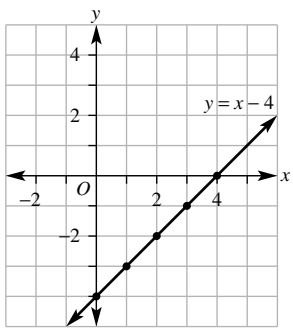
c



d

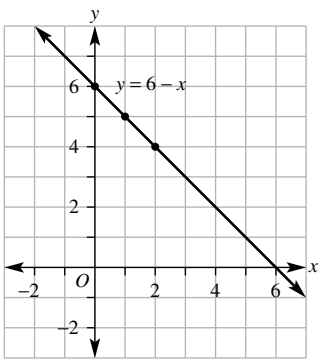


e

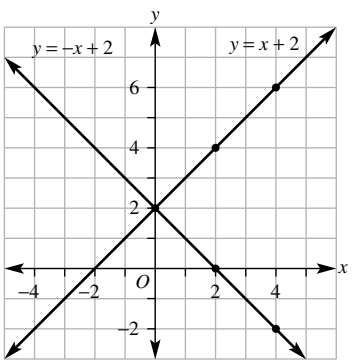


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

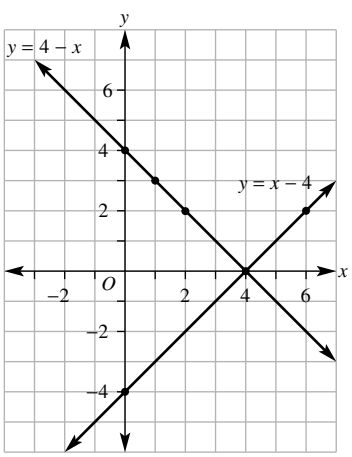
f



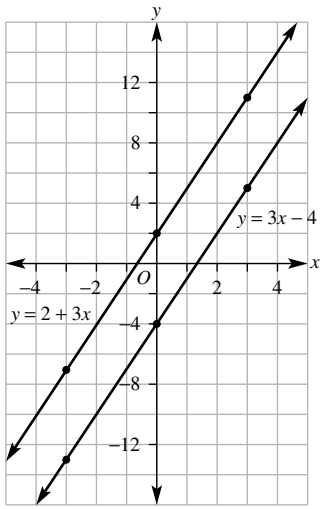
6 a



b

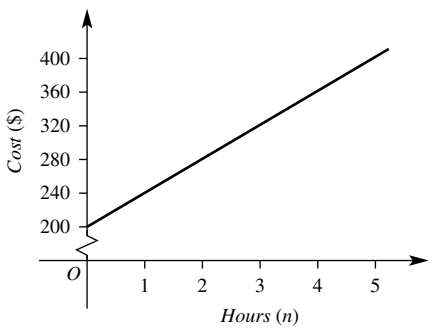


c



7 a (0, 0) **b** (1, 4) **c** (−1, 3) **d** (0, 2) **e** (−1, −5)

8 a



b i $300 **ii** 4.5 h

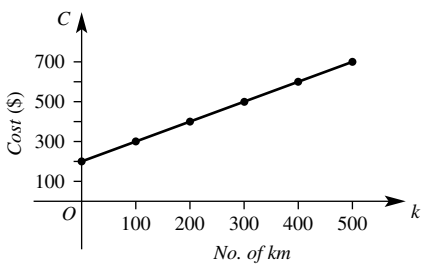
9 a

b i $28 **ii** 2.5 litres

10 a

No. of km (*k*)	100	200	300	400	500
Cost (*C*)	300	400	500	600	700

b



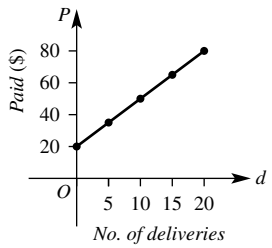
c i $450 **ii** 450 km

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

11 a

No. of deliveries (d)	0	5	10	15	20
Pay (P)	20	35	50	65	80

b



c i \$56 **ii** 18

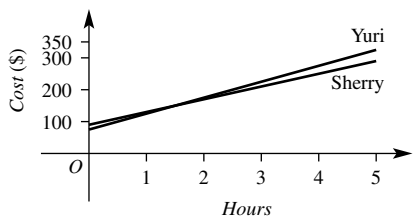
12 a Yuri

No. of hours work	0	1	2	3	4	5
Cost (C)	75	125	175	225	275	325

Sherry

No. of hours work	0	1	2	3	4	5
Cost (C)	90	130	170	210	250	290

b



c i \$250 **ii** \$150 **iii** 0.5 h
iv 4.25 h **v** 1.5 h

d Paul is cheaper only for 1.5 hours or less.

Exercise 6D

1 a Pythagoras' theorem: $c^2 = a^2 + b^2$ **b** 13 m
c 6 m **d** 2.5 m

2 a $\sqrt{20}$ **b** $\sqrt{18}$

3 a (3.5, 5) **b** (3, 4) **c** (0, −1) **d** $\left(\frac{1}{2}, \frac{1}{2}\right)$

4 a 5 **b** $\sqrt{41}$ **c** 5 **d** $\sqrt{74}$

5 a $\sqrt{13}$ **b** $\sqrt{18}$ **c** $\sqrt{29}$
d $\sqrt{29}$ **e** $\sqrt{13}$ **f** $\sqrt{25} = 5$

6 a 5 **b** 10 **c** 11.2
d 5.7 **e** 5 **f** 3.6

7 a $\sqrt{2}$ **b** $\sqrt{13}$ **c** $\sqrt{34}$
d $\sqrt{89}$ **e** $\sqrt{26}$ **f** $\sqrt{10}$

8 a (2, 5) **b** (4, 8) **c** (3, 5)
d (2.5, 4.5) **e** (6, 2.5) **f** (2.5, 4)
g (−1, −2) **h** (−3, −4) **i** (−4, −3)
j (1, 1) **k** (−3, −4) **l** (0, 0)

9 (−2, −5)

10 a $D(1, 1)$, $A(1, 4)$, $B(6.4)$, $C(6, 1)$
b (3.5, 2.5) **c** (3.5, 2.5)
d The diagonals of a rectangle bisect (cut in half) each other.

11 c i 5 **ii** 5
d isosceles
e $P = 16$ units, $A = 12$ units^2
f (4, 0)

12 a (3, 4) **b** $\sqrt{13}$
c $\sqrt{13}$; length of radius **d** 22.7 units
e 40.8 units^2

Exercise 6E

1 a zero **b** negative **c** positive
d undefined

2 a + **b** − **c** + **d** − **e** −
f + **g** + **h** − **i** −

3 a 1 **b** $\frac{1}{4}$ **c** $-\frac{3}{5}$

4 a $-\frac{3}{8}$ **b** $\frac{1}{15}$ **c** −3

5 a 2 **b** 5 **c** −3 **d** −2 **e** $\frac{4}{3}$
f 0 **g** 0 **h** undefined **i** undefined

6 $EF\frac{2}{3}, GH\frac{2}{3}, DC\,1, AB\frac{3}{2}$

7 a 3 **b** 2 **c** $-\frac{1}{2}$
d −1 **e** 0 **f** undefined

8 a

Line segment	Rise	Run	Gradient
AB	1	2	$\frac{1}{2}$
AC	2	4	$\frac{1}{2}$
AD	3	6	$\frac{1}{2}$
BC	1	2	$\frac{1}{2}$
BD	2	4	$\frac{1}{2}$
CD	1	2	$\frac{1}{2}$

b They have the same gradient.

9 a 2 **b** $\frac{1}{2}$ **c** −1
d −2 **e** 1 **f** $-\frac{2}{5}$

10 a 1 **b** 1 **c** $-\frac{3}{5}$ **d** 0
e 11 **f** $\frac{1}{3}$

11 gradient = 0.344

12 a A, D **b** C, E, G **c** D
d B, F, H **e** G

Exercise 6F

1 a gradient **b** two **c** units
d km/h **e** L/min

2 a 90 km/h **b** 15 L/min

3 a i 60 km **ii** 60 km/h
b i 60 km/h **ii** 0 km/h **iii** 90 km/h

4 a i 15 km **ii** 15 km/h
b i 0 km/h **ii** 30 km/h

5 a i 2 L **ii** 0.5 L
b i 0.2 L/s **ii** 0.05 L/s **iii** 0.05 L/s

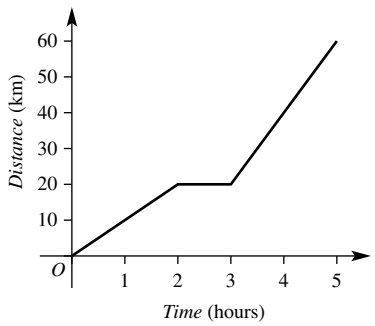
6 a i 1.5 L **ii** 0.5 L
b i 0.15 L/s **ii** 0.05 L/s **iii** 0.15 L/s

7 a 3 km
b 4 min
c i 0.5 km/min **ii** 0.75 km/min
iii 0.5 km/min **iv** 0.25 km/min

8 a iii **b** i **c** ii steepest

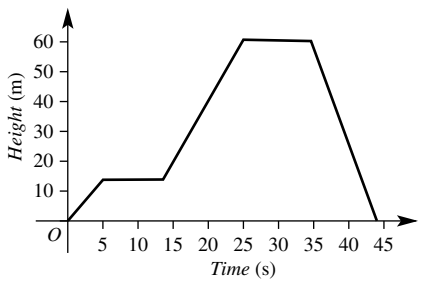
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

9 a



b 60 km

10



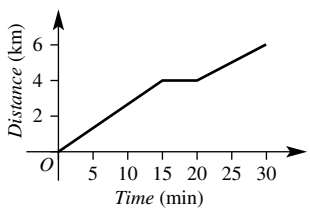
Time is 44 seconds.

11 a 3
b i 6 km **ii** 14 km
c B, D, G
d E, H
e i 6 km/h **ii** 14 km/h **iii** 16 km/h **iv** 6.4 km/h **v** 16 km/h
f E and H, same gradient
g $5\frac{1}{4}$ h
h 40 km
i 10 km/h

Progress quiz

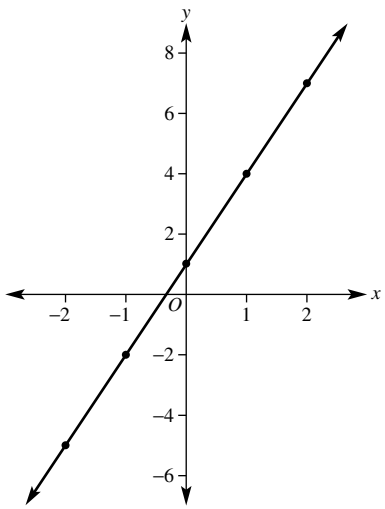
1 a 10 cm **b** 30 cm **c** 30 cm **d** 50 cm
2 a 160 km **b** 80 km/h **c** 50 km/h

3



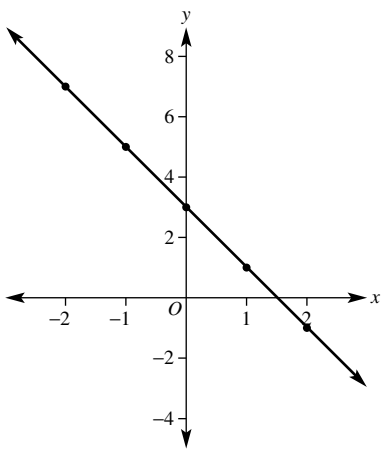
4 a $y = 3x + 1$

x	−2	−1	0	1	2
y	−5	−2	1	4	7



b $y = -2x + 3$

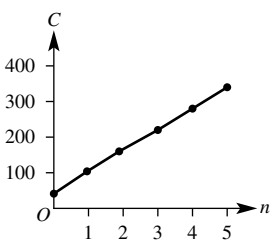
x	−2	−1	0	1	2
y	7	5	3	1	−1



5 a

No. of hours (n)	1	2	3	4	5
Cost ($C)	100	160	220	280	340

b



c i $190 **ii** 3.5 hours
6 a midpoint (3.5, 8), distance = 5 units
b midpoint (1, 9.5), distance = $\sqrt{61}$
7 a 4 **b** $-\frac{1}{2}$ **c** 0
8 $\frac{4}{5}$

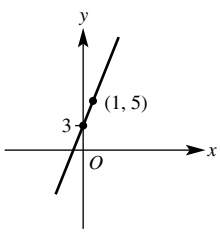
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 6G

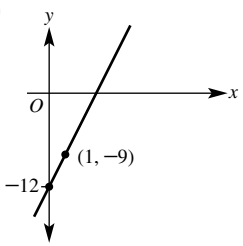
1 **a** gradient–intercept **b** gradient **c** coefficient
d y-intercept **e** zero

2 **a** **i** 2 **ii** 4
b **i** 6 **ii** -7
c **i** $-\frac{2}{3}$ **ii** 7
d **i** -7 **ii** -3
e **i** $\frac{3}{5}$ **ii** -8
f **i** 9 **ii** -5

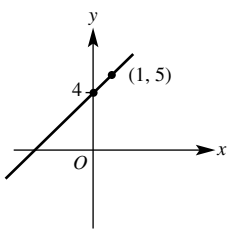
3 **a**



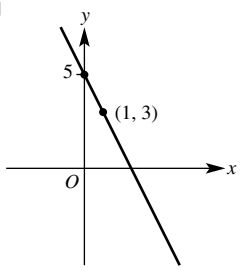
b



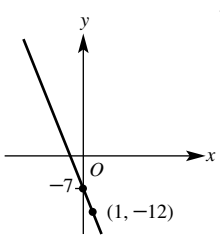
c



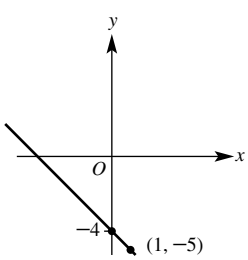
d



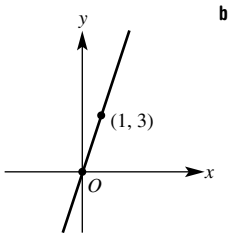
e



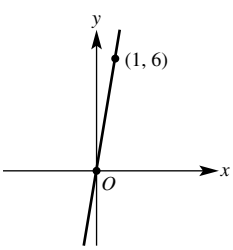
f



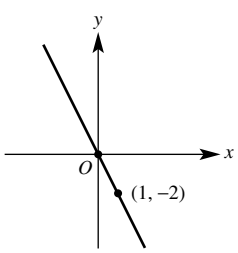
4 **a**



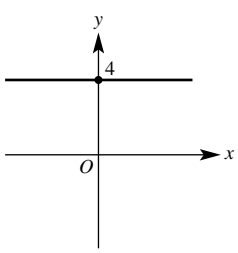
b



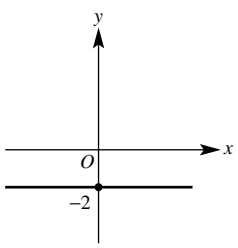
c



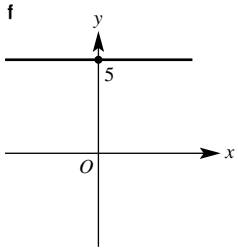
d



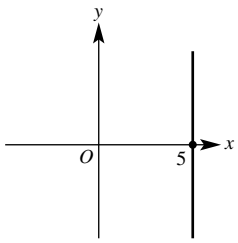
e



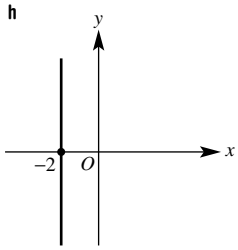
f



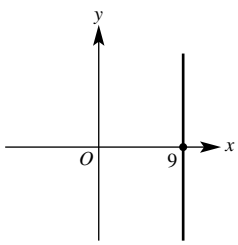
g



h



i



5 **a** $y = 4x + 2$ **b** $y = 3x - 2$ **c** $y = 5x$
d $y = -3x + 5$ **e** $y = -4x - 3$ **f** $y = -2x$

6 **a** 1, 0 **b** $-\frac{3}{2}$, 3 **c** $\frac{1}{2}$, 4.5 **d** 0, 4
e 0, 7 **f** undefined, none

7 **a** iv **b** ii **c** v **d** i **e** vi
f vii **g** iii **h** viii **i** ix

8 **a** $c = 5$ in each equation; e.g. $y = 2x + 5$, $y = -3x + 5$ etc.
b $c = -2$ in each equation; e.g. $y = 7x - 2$, $y = x - 2$ etc.
c $c = 0$ in each equation; e.g. $y = 2x$, $y = -5x$ etc.

9 **a** $m = 3$ in each equation; e.g. $y = 3x - 1$, $y = 3x$, $y = 3x + 4$ etc.
b $m = -1$ in each equation;
e.g. $y = -x$, $y = -x + 7$, $y = -x - 3$ etc.
c $m = 0$ in each equation; e.g. $y = 4$, $y = -2$ etc.
d m is undefined in each equation; e.g. $x = -7$ etc.

10 **a** ii and iii **b** i and iv

11 **a** no **b** yes **c** no **d** yes **e** yes

12 **a** $y = x + 4$ **b** $y = x - 1$
c $y = \frac{x}{2}$ **d** $y = 2x + 1$

13 Check with your teacher.

14 **a** They all have the same gradient.
b They all have a y-intercept at -1.

Exercise 6H

1 **a** C, D **b** B, E **c** yes **d** yes **e** yes

2 **a** 4 **b** -7 **c** $-\frac{3}{4}$ **d** $\frac{8}{7}$

3 **a** $-\frac{1}{3}$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}$ **c** $-\frac{8}{7}$ **d** $\frac{9}{4}$

4 **a** parallel **b** perpendicular
c neither **d** neither
e parallel **f** parallel
g neither **h** neither
i perpendicular **j** perpendicular

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

5 **a** $y = 4x + 2$ **b** $y = 2x + 4$
c $y = -x - 3$ **d** $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 3$
e $y = -\frac{1}{3}x - 5$ **f** $y = -2x - 10$
g $y = -6x + 6$ **h** $y = 4x - 7$

6 **a** $y = x + 4$ **b** $y = -x + 8$
c $y = -4x - 1$ **d** $y = \frac{2}{3}x - 6$
e $y = -\frac{4}{5}x + 7$ **f** $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 6$
g $y = \frac{1}{4}x - 2$ **h** $y = -\frac{3}{2}x + 5$
i $y = -\frac{3}{4}x - 5$ **j** $y = \frac{7}{2}x + 31$

7 **a** **i** 1 **ii** −1
b **i** $y = x$ **ii** $y = x - 2$ **iii** $y = x + 3$
iv $y = -x + 2$ **v** $y = -x$
vi $y = -x - 4$

8 **a** $y = 2x + 2$ **b** $y = 2x - 4$
c $y = -\frac{1}{2}x - 4$ **d** $x = -8$

9 **a** $y = -\frac{3}{2}x + 7$ **b** $y = -\frac{2}{3}x - 2$
c $y = \frac{5}{4}x + 2$ **d** $y = \frac{3}{2}x - \frac{7}{2}$

10 **a** parallel **b** parallel **c** perpendicular
d perpendicular

11 **a** **i** 1 **ii** 1 **iii** −1 **iv** −1
b Opposite sides are parallel; adjacent sides are perpendicular.
c rectangle

12 **a** **i** $\frac{4}{3}$ **ii** $-\frac{3}{4}$ **iii** 0
b Right-angled triangle because AB is perpendicular to BC.

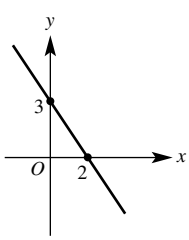
Exercise 6I

1 **a** The x-intercept is where $y = 0$.
b The y-intercept is where $x = 0$.

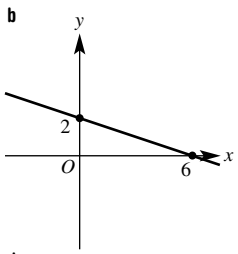
2 **a** **i** 3 **ii** −18 **iii** −30
iv 6 **v** −7
b **i** $x = 4$ **ii** $x = \frac{1}{2}$ **iii** $x = \frac{2}{5}$ **iv** $x = -6\frac{1}{2}$

3 **a** 4 **b** $-3\frac{1}{3}$ **c** −6 **d** 18
e 12 **f** −6

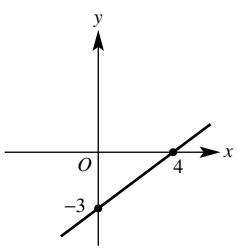
4 **a**



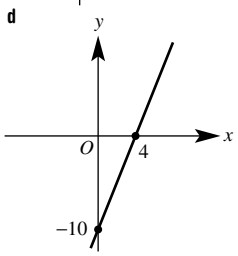
b



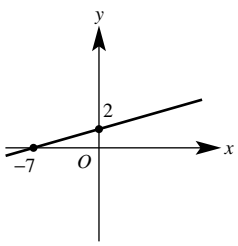
c



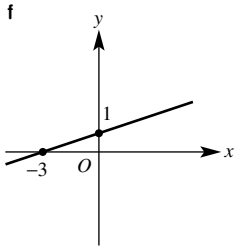
d



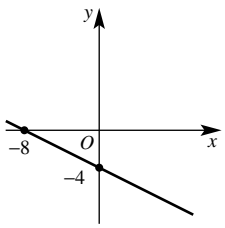
e



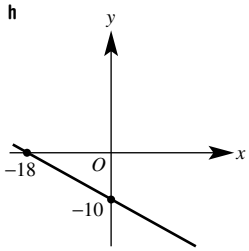
f



g

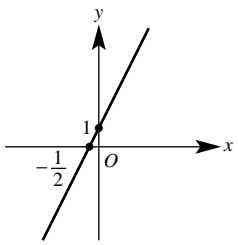


h

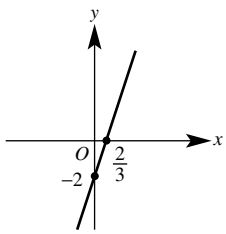


5 **a** ii **b** iii **c** i

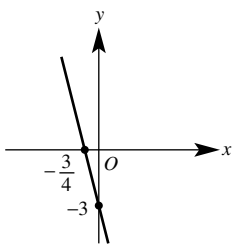
6 **a**



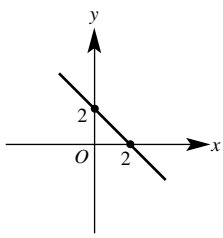
b



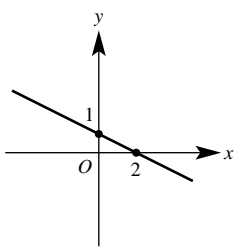
c



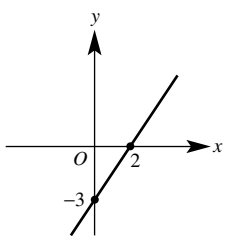
d



e



f



7 **a** iii **b** ii **c** i
8 **a** vi **b** ii **c** i
d v **e** iv **f** iii

9 **a** −2 **b** $\frac{1}{5}$ **c** 2 **d** $\frac{1}{2}$

10 **a** **i** 2, −4 **ii** $A = 4$ units^2
b **i** −2, 2 **ii** $A = 2$ units^2
c **i** −1.5, −3 **ii** $A = 2.25$ units^2
d **i** −4, 2 **ii** $A = 4$ units^2

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

11 **a** 90 m **b** $7\frac{1}{2}$ s

12 Many answers; e.g. $2x + y = 4$, $a = 2$, $b = 1$, $d = 4$

13 **a** 2, −4 **b** −5, −10 **c** 1, 1 **d** 2, 4
e −4, 6 **f** $-1, \frac{2}{3}$

Exercise 6J

1 D

2 C

3 **a** **i** $m = 2$ **ii** 1 **iii** $y = 2x + 1$
b **i** $m = -3$ **ii** 2 **iii** $y = -3x + 2$
c **i** $m = 4$ **ii** −3 **iii** $y = 4x - 3$
d **i** $m = -4$ **ii** 0 **iii** $y = -4x$
e **i** $m = -1$ **ii** 2 **iii** $y = -x + 2$
f **i** $m = 2$ **ii** 0 **iii** $y = 2x$

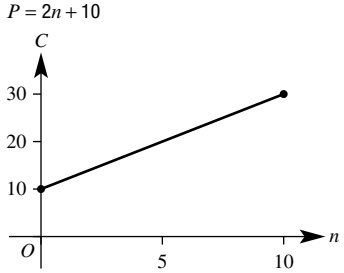
4 **a** **i** 3 **ii** 1 **iii** $y = 3x + 1$
b **i** −1 **ii** 6 **iii** $y = -x + 6$
c **i** 5 **ii** 21 **iii** $y = 5x + 21$
d **i** 3 **ii** −16 **iii** $y = 3x - 16$
e **i** −3 **ii** 2 **iii** $y = -3x + 2$
f **i** $\frac{1}{2}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{2}$ **iii** $y = \frac{1}{2}x + \frac{3}{2}$

5 **a** $y = 4$ **b** $y = -1$ **c** $x = 3$
d $x = -2$ **e** $y = 2$ **f** $x = 7$

6 **a** $y = 2x$ **b** $y = 3x$ **c** $y = \frac{2}{3}x$
d $y = -3x$ **e** $y = -x$ **f** $y = -\frac{2}{5}x$

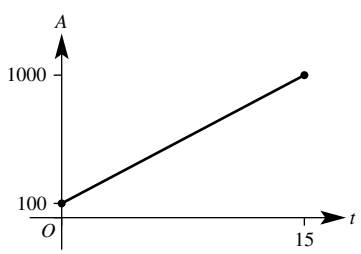
7 **a** **i** 7 **ii** $y = 7x$
b **i** $-\frac{3}{2}$ **ii** $y = -\frac{3}{2}x$
c **i** 1 **ii** $y = x + 2$
d **i** $-\frac{3}{2}$ **ii** $y = -\frac{3}{2}x$
e **i** 0 **ii** $y = 2$
f **i** undefined **ii** $x = 3$

8 **a** $P = 2n + 10$
b



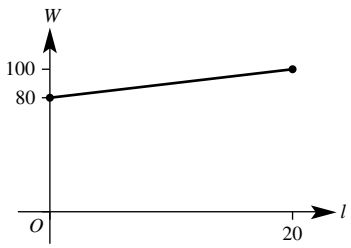
c **i** \$28 **ii** 23.5 kg

9 **a** $A = 60t + 100$
b



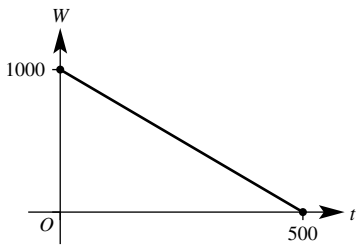
c **i** \$820 **ii** 10 h

10 **a** $W = l + 80$
b



c **i** 87 kg **ii** 29 L

11 **a** −2, (0, 1000)
b



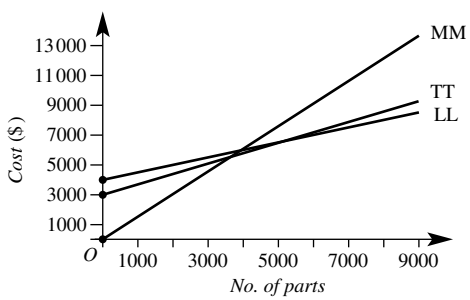
c 1000 L
d **i** 360 L **ii** 952 L **iii** 664 L
e **i** 350 h **ii** 407.5 h

12 **a**

p	0	1000	2000	3000	4000
Cost, MM	0	1400	2800	4200	5600
Cost, TT	3000	3700	4400	5100	5800
Cost, LL	4000	4500	5000	5500	6000

p	5000	6000	7000	8000	9000
Cost, MM	7000	8400	9800	11 200	12 600
Cost, TT	6500	7200	7900	8 600	9 300
Cost, LL	6500	7000	7500	8 000	8 500

b



c **i** \$2100 **ii** \$1400 **iii** \$7250
iv \$8750

d Mandy's is best for parts less than or equal to 4285. Terry's is best for between 4286 and 5000 parts and equal to Lenny's at 5000. Lenny's is best for parts > 5000.

Exercise 6K

1 **a** direct proportion **b** indirect proportion
c direct proportion **d** direct proportion
e indirect proportion

2 **a** decreases **b** direct
c increases **d** indirect or inverse

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

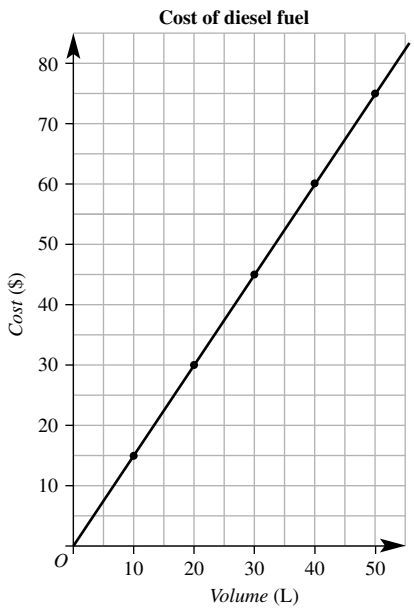
3 **a** ii and v
b **i** $k = 5$ **ii** $k = 12$ **iii** $k = 40$
iv $k = 22$ **v** $k = 7.5$

4 **a** $k = 4$, $y = 4x$ **b** $k = 1.2$, $y = 1.2x$
c $k = 0.5$, $y = 0.5x$

5 **a**

Volume (V) of diesel, in litres	0	10	20	30	40	50
Cost (C), in dollars	0	15	30	45	60	75

b



c $m = 1.5$ **d** rate = \$1.5/L
e $k = \$1.5$/L

6 **a** 48 cm **b** 10 inches **c** 30 cm
d 10 cm **e** 76 cm **f** 22 inches
g 63 cm (or 64 cm) **h** 100 cm

7 **a** 94 cm = 37 inches, $m = \frac{94}{37} = 2.54$
b 2.54 cm/inch **c** $k = 2.54$ cm/inch
d $y = 2.54x$ **e** 127 cm

8 **a** **i** 100 NZD **ii** 64 EUR **iii** 51 GBP
iv 40 AUD **v** 40 AUD **vi** 40 AUD
b **i** 40 EUR = 50 AUD, $m = \frac{40}{50} = 0.8$
ii 0.8 EUR/AUD **iii** $k = 0.8$ EUR/AUD
iv $y = 0.8x$ **v** \$500

9 **a** 15 cents/min **b** 40 cents/min
c 3 mL/s **d** 5 mL/s **e** 20 m/s **f** 5 m/s
g 1.5 cents/g **h** 3.2 cents/g
i 4.8 kg/year **j** 1.54 kg/week

10 **a** Not in direct proportion as it is not a straight line.
b Not in direct proportion as the line doesn't pass through the origin.
c Yes, in direct proportion as it is a straight line through the origin.
d Yes, in inverse proportion because as x increases, y decreases.

11 **a** Number of hours worked and wages earned are in direct proportion. If the number of hours worked doubles, then the wages earned also doubles.
b The cost of buying tomatoes and the number of kg are in direct proportion. If the number of kg doubles, then the cost also doubles.
c The speed and time taken are in inverse proportion. If the speed increases, then the time taken decreases. Alternatively, if the speed decreases, then the time taken increases.
d The size of the movie file and the time taken to download it are in direct proportion. If the size of the movie file is doubled, then the time to download will also double.
e The cost of a taxi ride and the distance travelled are not in direct proportion because the graph does not start at (0, 0). The y-intercept is the flag fall cost.

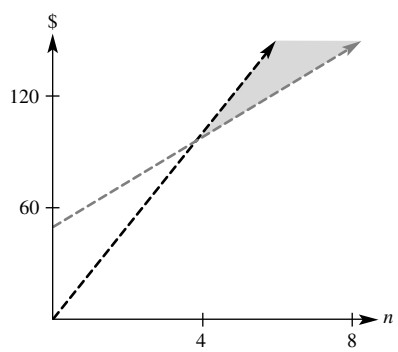
12 **a** **i** $C = 1.38n$ **ii** \$66.24
b **i** $W = 11.5t$ **ii** \$431.25
c **i** $V = 6t$ **ii** 1440 L **iii** $k = 8640$, $V = 8640t$
iv 60480 L
d **i** $d = 90t$ **ii** 315 km **iii** $k = 25$ m/s, $d = 25t$
iv 100 m

13 **a** **i** $k = \$12.50$/h **ii** $W = 12.5n$ **iii** \$75
iv 19 h
b **i** $k = \$244$/tonne **ii** $P = 244n$
iii \$33 184 **iv** 1175 tonnes
c **i** $k = 774$ km/h **ii** $d = 774t$
iii 4.26 h **iv** $d = 12.9t$
v 619.2 km **vi** 15.5 min

14 **a** Singapore dollar (SGD)
i SGD = 1.2 × AUD **ii** SGD \$288
iii AUD \$200
b Chinese yuan (CNY)
i CNY = 6.47 × AUD **ii** CNY 485.25
iii AUD \$11.59
c Korean won (KRW)
i KRW = 1160 × AUD **ii** KRW 1 160 000
iii AUD 86 cents
d South African rand (ZAR)
i ZAR = 9.5 × AUD **ii** ZAR 475
iii AUD \$5.26

Maths@Work: Accountant or small business owner

1 **a** Income: blue line; costs: red line
b 0, 1, 2 or 3
c \$0, \$0
d 4
e



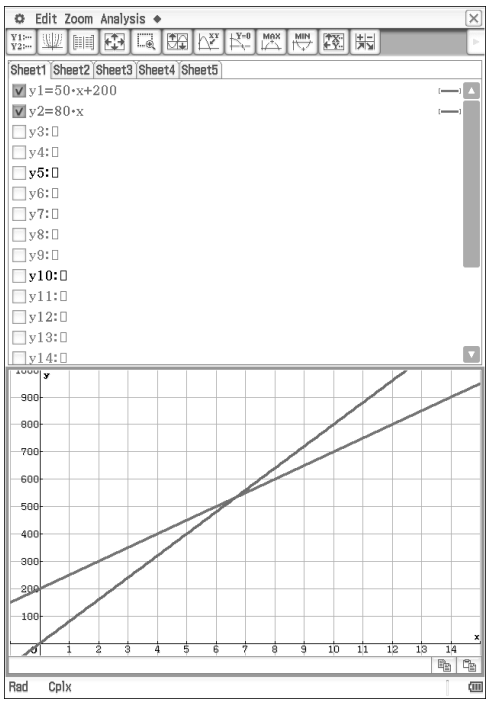
f $P = 13n - 50$
g **i** \$80 **ii** \$145 **iii** \$340 **iv** \$600

2 **a** 40; cost of advertisement = \$40
b \$2.67
c 6.67; \$6.67 retail price per jug
d 10
e **i** $C = 2.67n + 40$ **ii** $I = 6.67n$
iii $P = 4n - 40$

3 **a** $C = 200 + 50n$
b $I = 80n$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

c



d 7 car parts

e $760

4 a i 500, $5000 **ii** 375, $4500
iii 300, $4200 **iv** 250, $4000

b $P = 500a - 5000$

c i $0 **ii** $1000 **iii** $2000
iv $3000

d People will stop buying parts if they are more expensive than the price from another business or if they are just too expensive for the customer to afford.

Puzzles and games

1 PLOTTING LINES!

3 both 13 km apart

4 a 160 ice-creams for zero profit

b 493 ice-creams sold

Multiple-choice questions

1 A	**2** E	**3** D	**4** A	**5** B
6 E	**7** C	**8** A	**9** B	**10** D
11 D	**12** E	**13** C	**14** D	

Short-answer questions

1 a 40 km **b** 2 hours **c** 60 km

2 a i $6000 **ii** $8000 **iii** $9000

b i $2000 **ii** $4000 **iii** $5000

c 10 years

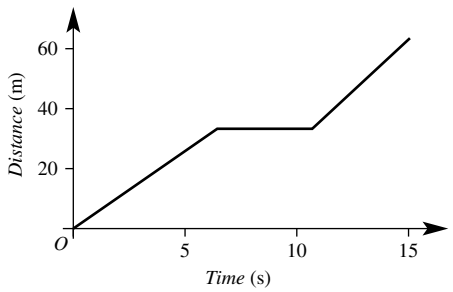
3 a 15 km

b 3 h

c i 6 km **ii** 6 km **iii** 9 km
iv 15 km

d $3\frac{1}{2}$ h

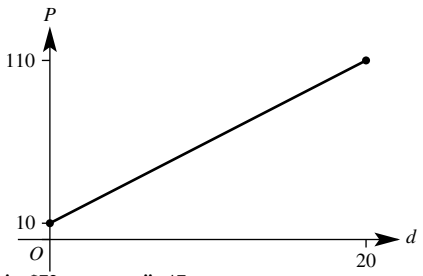
4



5 a

d	0	5	10	15	20
P	10	35	60	85	110

b



c i $70 **ii** 17

6 a 1 **b** −1 **c** −2 **d** $\frac{1}{3}$

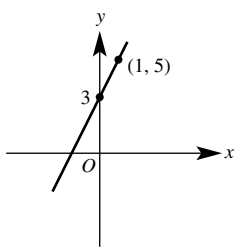
7 a (4, 2) **b** (2, 2.5) **c** (1.5, −1)

8 a $AB = 5$ **b** $PQ = \sqrt{50}$

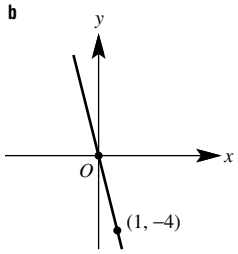
9 a gradient = 3, y-intercept = 4

b gradient = −2, y-intercept = 0

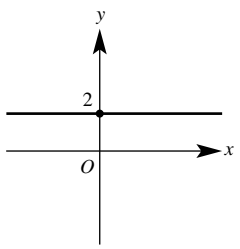
10 a



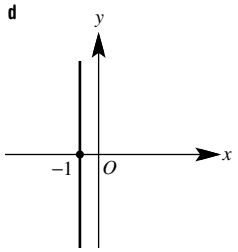
b



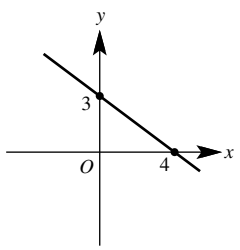
c



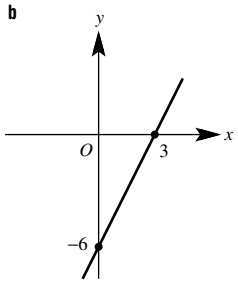
d



11 a

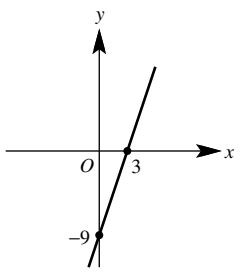


b



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

c

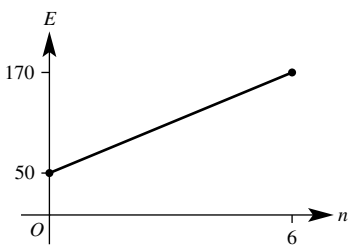


12 a **i** 2 **ii** 0 **iii** $y = 2x$
b **i** −4 **ii** 16 **iii** $y = -4x + 16$

13 a i
b iii
c vi
d ii
e iv
f v

14 a $E = 20n + 50$

b



c **i** \$130 **ii** 5.5 bins

15 A $y = 2x$ **B** $y = 2x - 4$
C $y = -\frac{1}{2}x - 4$ **D** $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 1$

16 a $y = 2x + 3$
b $y = \left(\frac{1}{2}\right)x - 1$ **c** $y = -x + 2$
d $y = -\frac{4}{3}x - 7$ **e** $y = -4x + 6$
f $y = -\frac{1}{2}x + 4$

17 a 8 km **b** 22 miles **c** $m = \frac{15}{24.14} = 0.621$
d 0.621 miles/km **e** $k = 0.621$ miles/km
f $y = 0.621x$ **g** 62.1 miles
h 161 km

18 a Direct proportion. If the number of cricket balls increases, then the cost will also increase.
b Indirect proportion. If the number of people increases, then the cost per person decreases.

19 a 30 cents/min **b** 18 km/h **c** 200 m/s
d 10 mL/s

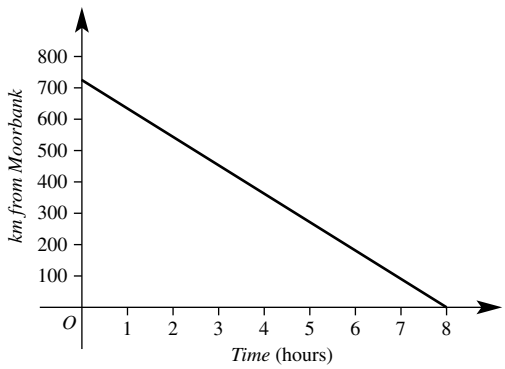
Extended-response questions

1 a **i** 30 km **ii** 15 km/h
b **i** 20 km/h **ii** 0 km/h **iii** 20 km/h

2 a

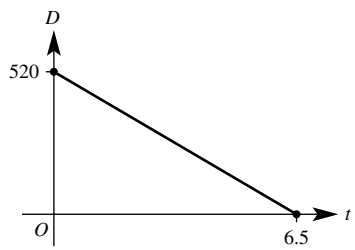
Time in hours (t)	0	2	4	6	8
km from Moorbank	720	540	360	180	0

b



c 9 a.m. **d** 7 h **e** 8 h **f** 4 p.m.

3 a **i** 440 km **ii** 280 km
b **i** $D = -80t + 520$ or $D = 520 - 80t$
ii



c **i** 160 km **ii** 2.25 hours

Chapter 7

Pre-test

1 a acute **b** right **c** obtuse
d straight **e** reflex **f** revolution
g complementary **h** supplementary

2 a E **b** B **c** F
d A **e** C **f** D

3 a $a = 110$ **b** $b = 140$ **c** $c = 210$
d $d = 35$ **e** $e = 60$ **f** $f = 40$

4 a $a = 110, b = 70$ **b** $a = 105, b = 75$
c $a = 40, b = 140$

5 a 1 **b** 4 **c** 2
d 2 **e** 1 **f** 1

6 a $S = 360°, a = 130$ **b** $S = 540°, b = 120$
c $S = 720°, c = 120$

7 a D **b** C

8 $\triangle ABD$ and $\triangle CBD$

9 $\triangle ACD$ and $\triangle ABE$

Exercise 7A

1 a 180°
b equal
c **i** equal **ii** equal **iii** supplementary

2 a alternate **b** vertically opposite
c cointerior **d** corresponding

3 $a = 20$ supplementary, $b = 20$ alternate,
$c = 160$ corresponding, $d = 160$ vertically opposite

4 $a = 100$ supplementary, $b = 100$ alternate,
$c = 80$ corresponding, $d = 80$ vertically opposite

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

5 **a** $x = 110,\ y = 110$ **b** $x = 40,\ y = 140$
c $x = 75,\ y = 105$ **d** $x = 120,\ y = 120$
e $x = 110,\ y = 70$ **f** $x = 105,\ y = 75$
6 **a** Yes, corresponding angles are equal.
b No, alternate angles are not equal.
c No, cointerior angles are not supplementary.
d Yes, cointerior angles are supplementary.
e No, corresponding angles are not equal.
f Yes, alternate angles are equal.
7 **a** 60 **b** 20 **c** 100
d 115 **e** 50 **f** 30
8 **a** $a = 90,\ b = 90,\ c = 90$ **b** $a = 90,\ b = 90,\ c = 90$
c $a = 135,\ b = 45,\ c = 135$ **d** $a = 50,\ b = 130,\ c = 50$
e $a = 90,\ b = 130$ **f** $a = 110,\ b = 120$
9 **a** $(a, e), (d, f), (b, h), (c, g)$
b $(d, h), (c, e)$ **c** $(c, h), (d, e)$
d $(a, c), (b, d), (e, g), (f, h)$
10 **a** 90 **b** 75 **c** 10
d 30 **e** 36 **f** 30
11 **a** 12 **b** 14 **c** 10

Exercise 7B

1 **a** 30 **b** 16 **c** 33
d 60 **e** 77 **f** 98
2 C
3 **a** $c = 120$ **b** $x = 60$ **c** $x = 25 + 35$
4 **a** 70 **b** 10 **c** 25
d 58 **e** 50 **f** 29
5 **a** 65 **b** 80 **c** 40
d 20 **e** 112 **f** 32
6 **a** 145 **b** 144 **c** 45
d 60 **e** 60 **f** 47
7 **a** yes **b** yes **c** no
d yes **e** yes **f** yes
g no **h** yes **i** yes
8 **a** 65° **b** 115°
9 **a** $a = 70$ **b** $a = 120$ **c** $a = 70,\ b = 70$
d $a = 35,\ b = 105$
e $a = 115,\ b = 115,\ c = 45,\ d = 20$
f $a = 40,\ b = 100,\ c = 40,\ d = 40$
10 **a** $a°$, alternate **b** $b°$, alternate
c sum to 180°
11 **a** **i** 50° **ii** 130°
b **i** 20° **ii** 160°
c **i** 0° **ii** 180°

Exercise 7C

1 **a** Parallelograms include squares, rectangles and rhombuses.
2 **a** square, rectangle, rhombus, parallelogram
b rectangle, square, parallelogram, rhombus, kite
c rhombus, square, parallelogram, rectangle
d trapezium **e** kite
f square, rectangle **g** square, rectangle
h square, rhombus, kite
3 **a** $a = 144$ **b** $b = 79$ **c** $c = 54$
4 **a** $x = 20$ **b** $x = 110$ **c** $x = 240$
d $x = 125$ **e** $x = 30$ **f** $x = 55$
5 **a** $x = 60,\ y = 120,\ z = 60$
b $x = 110,\ y = 110,\ z = 70$
c $x = 30,\ y = 150,\ z = 30$ **d** $x = 45$
e $x = 100$ **f** $x = 25$
g $x = y = z = 90$ **h** $x = 100,\ y = 140$
i $x = 75,\ y = 20$
6 **a** 115 **b** 60 **c** 30
d 50 **e** 90 **f** 140
7 **a** It has two equal side lengths.
b **i** 120 **ii** 40
c It has two equal side lengths and two pairs of equal angles and one pair of parallel sides.
8 **b** 65°
9 **a** 125 **b** 118 **c** 110 **d** 115
10 **a** $a = 30,\ b = 120,\ c = 60,\ d = 60,\ e = 30$
b $a = 80,\ b = 100,\ c = 80,\ d = 50$
c $a = 40,\ b = 20,\ c = 50,\ d = 110$
d $b = 50,\ c = 70$
e $a = 60,\ b = 20$
f $a = 10,\ b = 80$

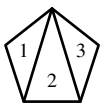
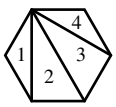
Exercise 7D

1 **a** 4 **b** 8 **c** 10 **d** 7
e 9 **f** 6 **g** 5 **h** 10
2 **a** 540° **b** 720° **c** 900°
d 1080° **e** 1260° **f** 1440°
3 All sides and all angles equal.
4 **a** 720°, 110 **b** 540°, 130
c 540°, 30 **d** 900°, 105
e 720°, 30 **f** 360°, 30
5 **a** 24 cm **b** 720° **c** 120°
6 **a** 28 cm **b** 1080° **c** 135°
7 **a** 120° **b** 240°
8 **a** 1620° **b** 3240°
9 **a** 144° **b** 165.6°
10 **a** 120° **b** 240°
11 **a** 72° **b** 252°
12 **a** $x = 108,\ y = 72$ **b** $x = 60,\ y = 60$
c $x = 45,\ y = 225$
13 **a** *See table at top of next page.*
b **i** $S = 180° \times (n - 2)$ **ii** $A = \dfrac{180° \times (n - 2)}{n}$

Exercise 7E

1 **a** false **b** false **c** true **d** true
2 SSS, SAS, AAS, RHS
3 **a** E **b** AC **c** $\angle EDF$
4 **a** $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SSS) **b** $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SAS)
c $\triangle XYZ \equiv \triangle STU$ (RHS) **d** $\triangle XYZ \equiv \triangle STU$ (SSS)
e $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (AAS) **f** $\triangle MNO \equiv \triangle PQR$ (AAS)
5 **a** $AB = DE$ (S)
$BC = EF$ (S)
$AC = DF$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SSS)
b $AC = DF$ (S)
$AB = DE$ (S)
$BC = EF$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SSS)
c $AB = DE$ (S)
$\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)
$AC = DF$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SAS)
d $AB = DE$ (S)
$\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)
$AC = DF$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SAS)
e $\angle CAB = \angle FDE$ (A)
$\angle CBA = \angle FED$ (A)
$BC = EF$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (AAS)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Polygon	No. of sides	Diagram	No. of triangles	Total angle sum (S)	Single internal angle (A)
Triangle	3		1	180°	60°
Quadrilateral	4		2	360°	90°
Pentagon	5		3	540°	108°
Hexagon	6		4	720°	120°
…					
n-gon	n		$n-2$	$180° \times (n-2)$	$\frac{180° \times (n-2)}{n}$

f $\angle ABC = \angle DEF$ (A)
$\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)
$AB = DE$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (AAS)

g $\angle BAC = \angle EDF = 90°$ (R)
$BC = EF$ (H)
$AB = DE$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (RHS)

6 (D, G), (C, E)

7 **a** 25°, 75° **b** yes, AAS

8 **a** $a = 4$ **b** $x = 3,\ y = 5$
c $a = 60,\ b = 7$ **d** $x = 55,\ y = 4$
e $x = 6$ **f** $a = 70,\ b = 7$
g $c = 3,\ d = 4$ **h** $a = 30,\ b = 5$
i $a = 20,\ b = 70$

9 **a** $AB = ED$ (S)
$BC = DF$ (H)
$\angle BAC = \angle DEF = 90°$ (R)
$\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle EDF$ (RHS)
b 6 m
c **i** 37° **ii** 53°

Progress quiz

1 **a** $a = 70$ (vertically opposite), $b = 70$ (alternate angles in parallel lines)
b $c = 70$ (cointerior in parallel lines), $d = 110$ (corresponding angles in parallel lines or supplementary)

2 **a** Yes, cointerior angles sum to 180°.
b No, alternate angles are not equal.

3 **a** $x = 30$ **b** $a = 68$ **c** $b = 100$
d $x = 128,\ y = 52$

4 $z = 85$

5 **a** sum = 720°, $m = 150$
b sum = 540°, $a = 6,\ x = 108$

6 **a** $BC = EF$ (S)
$\angle ABC = \angle DEF$ (A)
$BA = ED$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SAS)

b $\angle ABC = \angle FED = 90°$ (R)
$AC = FD$ (H)
$AB = FE$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle FED$ (RHS)

Exercise 7F

1 SSA

2 If two pairs of angles are corresponding and equal, the third pair must be equal due to the angle sum of a triangle (180°).

3 **a** 1.5 **b** 1.5, the same **c** 1.5 **d** SAS

4 **a** $\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)
$\angle ABC = \angle DEF$ (A)
$\angle ACB = \angle DFE$ (A)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \,|||\, \triangle DEF$ (AAA)

b $\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)
$\angle ACB = \angle DFE$ (A)
$\angle ABC = \angle DEF$ (A)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \,|||\, \triangle DEF$ (AAA)

c $\frac{DE}{AB} = 2$(S)
$\frac{DF}{AC} = 2$(S)
$\frac{EF}{BC} = 2$(S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \,||\, \triangle DEF$ (SSS)

d $\frac{DE}{AB} = 3$(S)
$\frac{DF}{AC} = 3$(S)
$\frac{EF}{BC} = 3$(S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \,||\, \triangle DEF$ (SSS)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

e $\frac{AB}{DE} = 1.5$ (S)

$\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)

$\frac{AC}{DF} = 1.5$ (S)

$\therefore \triangle ABC \parallel \triangle DEF$ (SAS)

f $\frac{DE}{AB} = 1.5$ (S)

$\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)

$\frac{DF}{AC} = 1.5$ (S)

$\therefore \triangle ABC \parallel \triangle DEF$ (SAS)

g $\angle CAB = \angle FDE = 90°$ (R)

$\frac{EF}{BC} = 1.5$ (H)

$\frac{DE}{AB} = 1.5$ (S)

$\therefore \triangle ABC \parallel \triangle DEF$ (RHS)

h $\angle CAB = \angle FDE = 90°$ (R)

$\frac{BC}{EF} = 2$ (H)

$\frac{AB}{DE} = 2$ (S)

$\therefore \triangle ABC \parallel \triangle DEF$ (RHS)

5 **a** $x = 8$ **b** $x = 21$ **c** $x = 4$ **d** $x = 1.5$

6 **a** $\triangle ABC, \triangle ADE$ **b** AAA

c 2.5 **d** 3.75 m

7 **a** AAA, $x = 1.5$ **b** AAA, $x = 9$

c AAA, $x = 2.2$

8 **a** $\angle BAC = \angle DEC$ (alternate), $\angle ABC = \angle EDC$ (alternate), $\angle ACB = \angle ECD$ (vertically opposite)

b **i** $DC = 6$ cm **ii** $AC = 6$ cm

Exercise 7G

1 **a** AAA **b** AAA

2 **a** AAA **b** 2 **c** 3

3 **a** AAA **b** 2 **c** 30 cm

4 **a** AAA **b** 1.5 **c** 4.5 m

5 **a** $\frac{88}{5} = 17.6$ **b** 2

6 **a** $\triangle ABC, \triangle DEC$; AAA **b** 1.25 m

7 **a** AAA **b** 5 **c** 5 m

8 **a** $\triangle ABD, \triangle CBE$; AAA **b** $\frac{6}{5} = 1.2$

c 13.2 m

9 1.90 m

10 Answers will vary.

11 **a** AAA **b** 1.5 **c** 20 m

d Let $AE = x$

$1.5x = x + 10$

$\therefore x = 20$

Exercise 7H

1 **a** 4 : 9 **b** 8 : 27

2 **a** 2 : 5 **b** 32 cm^2, 200 cm^2

c 4 : 25 (=$2^2 : 5^2$) **d** 12 cm^3, 187.5 cm^3

e 8 : 125 (= $2^3 : 5^3$)

3 **a** 2 cm **b** 1500 **c** 5 cm **d** 75 m

4 **a** 5 cm **b** 1500 **c** 4 cm **d** 60 m

5 **a** 16 cm^2 **b** 45 m^2

6 **a** 3 mm^2 **b** 3 cm^2

7 **a** 2 cm^3 **b** 8 m^3

8 **a** 108 cm^3 **b** 156.25 m^3

9 **a** **i** 1 km **ii** 3 km

b **i** 10 cm **ii** 1 cm

c 2 km

10 **a** **i** 3 : 4 **ii** 9 : 16

b 450 cm^2

11 **a** 1 : 8 **b** 240 cm^3

12 **a** **i** 2 : 3 **ii** 4 : 9 **iii** 8 : 27

b 90 cm^2

c 54 cm^3

13 **a** 1 : 27 000 000 **b** 54 000 000 m^3

c 9 m^2

Maths@Work: Pool builder

1 **a** 7.05 m **b** 1 m **c** 60 cm

d 3 m^2 **e** 82° **f** 10

2 **a** hexagon (6 sides)

b 720°

c 720°

d Drawing should be the same shape but 4 times larger.

3 **a** octagon and square (a quadrilateral)

b The octagon is not but the square is

c octagon 45° and square 90°

d If the square was not used, there would be gaps and hence no tessellation.

e They should all join up with no gaps.

Puzzles and games

1 30

2 CONGRUENCE

3 130°

4 **a** 7 **b** 11

5 20 m

Multiple-choice questions

1 B **2** A **3** D **4** E

5 E **6** D **7** B **8** A

9 C **10** B

Short-answer questions

1 **a** $x = 70, y = 110$ **b** $x = 120, y = 120$

c $x = 65, y = 115$ **d** $x = 30, y = 150$

e $x = 90, y = 120$ **f** $x = 45$

2 **a** 20 **b** 30 **c** 77 **d** 20

e 60 **f** 30 **g** 130 **h** 70

i 160

3 **a** square, rectangle, rhombus, parallelogram

b parallelogram, square, rhombus, rectangle **c** kite

d square, rhombus, kite

4 **a** $a = 90$ **b** $a = 40$ **c** $a = 110, b = 30$

d $a = 90, b = 130$ **e** $a = 40, b = 140$

f $a = 110$

5 **a** 540°, 60 **b** 720°, 100

c 900°, 120

6 **a** 10 m **b** 540° **c** 108°

7 **a** $\angle BAC = \angle EDF = 90°$ (R)

$BC = EF$ (H)

$AB = DE$ (S)

$\therefore \triangle ABC = \triangle DEF$ (RHS)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

b $AB = DE$ (S)
$AC = DF$ (S)
$BC = EF$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SSS)

c $\angle ACB = \angle DFE$ (A)
$\angle CAB = \angle FDE$ (A)
$AB = DE$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (AAS)

d $AB = DE$ (S)
$\angle BAC = \angle EDF$ (A)
$AC = DF$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$ (SAS)

8 a $\angle BAC = \angle EDF =$ (A)
$\angle ABC = \angle DEF$ (A)
$\angle ACB = \angle DFE$ (A)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \,|||\, \triangle DEF$ (AAA)

b $\frac{AB}{DE} = 2$ (S)
$\frac{AC}{DF} = 2$ (S)
$\frac{BC}{EF} = 2$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \,|||\, \triangle DEF$ (SSS)

c $\frac{DE}{AB} = 1.5$ (S)
$\angle EDF = \angle BAC$ (A)
$\frac{DF}{AC} = 1.5$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \,|||\, \triangle DEF$ (SAS)

d $\angle BAC = \angle EDF = 90°$ (R)
$\frac{EF}{BC} = 2.5$ (H)
$\frac{DE}{AB} = 2.5$ (S)
$\therefore \triangle ABC \,|||\, \triangle DEF$ (RHS)

9 a $\triangle ABE, \triangle ACD$ **b** AAA **c** 2.5
d 7.5 m

10 a AAA **b** 6.25 **c** 187.5 cm

11 a 2 cm **b** 5000 **c** 5 cm **d** 250 m

12 a i 2 : 3 **ii** 4 : 9 **iii** 8 : 27
b 32 cm^3

Extended-response questions

1 a 60, 60, 30 **b** AAA **c** 2.5
d 8 cm **e** 4 : 25 **f** 6.25

2 a 2 : 125 **b** 281.25 cm
c 4 : 15 625 **d** 0.00128 L

Chapter 8

Pre-test

1 a 9 **b** −18 **c** 9 **d** 0

2 a 14 **b** 6 **c** −16 **d** 32

3 a $3a$ **b** $3m$ **c** $8p$ **d** 0
e $-5m$ **f** $7x + y$ **g** $9p$ **h** $6m$

4 a $15x$ **b** $16p$ **c** $32xy$ **d** $-30a$
e ab **f** x **g** 1 **h** $2a$
i 3

5 a 5 **b** 3 **c** 5 **d** 1
e 4 **f** 2 **g** 3 **h** 2
i 4 **j** 3 **k** 6 **l** 10

6 a $x + 3$ **b** $n + 6$ **c** $2w$ **d** $\frac{x}{2}$
e $2x + 6$ **f** $x - 7$ **g** $2(x + 3)$ **h** $3x + 1$

7 a $8x$ **b** $4x + 16$ **c** $3x + 4$

8 a F **b** T **c** F **d** F
e T **f** T **g** T **h** F
i T

9 a $m = 7$ **b** $y = 19$ **c** $x = 5$ **d** $b = 12$

10 a T **b** T **c** F

Exercise 8A

1 a yes **b** no **c** no
d no **e** yes **f** yes

2 a $t = 3$ **b** $m = 6$ **c** $x = 6$
d $m = -7$ **e** $x = 8$ **f** $x = -4$
g $m = 32$ **h** $a = -6$ **i** $m = 15$

3 a $x = 6$ **b** $x = 9$ **c** $x = 17$
d $x = 3$ **e** $x = -6$ **f** $x = 12$
g $x = 36$ **h** $x = 120$ **i** $x = 101$

4 a $p = 3$ **b** $c = 6$ **c** $d = 9$
d $m = 8$ **e** $z = 25$ **f** $w = 9$
g $p = 1$ **h** $m = -7$ **i** $p = -\frac{1}{2}$

5 a $x = 50$ **b** $m = 21$ **c** $a = -12$
d $z = 0$ **e** $x = -8$ **f** $w = -27$
g $r = 56$ **h** $w = \frac{3}{2}$ **i** $m = \frac{1}{2}$

6 a $x = 3$ **b** $x = 9$ **c** $x = -11$
d $x = 10$ **e** $x = 14$ **f** $x = 10$
g $x = 3$ **h** $x = 4$ **i** $x = 50$
j $x = 20$ **k** $x = 21$ **l** $x = 7$

7 a $x = 1$ **b** $x = 3$ **c** $x = 3$
d $x = -2$ **e** $x = -1$ **f** $x = -9$
g $x = 4$ **h** $x = 8$ **i** $x = 8$
j $x = -2$ **k** $x = -3$ **l** $x = 5$

8 a $x = 9$ **b** $x = 0$ **c** $x = 56$
d $x = 20$ **e** $x = 35$ **f** $x = 90$
g $x = -32$ **h** $x = -20$ **i** $x = -18$

9 a $m = 5$ **b** $a = 7$ **c** $x = 1$
d $x = 1$ **e** $n = 9$ **f** $m = 22$
g $w = -7$ **h** $m = 7$ **i** $w = 27$
j $a = 1$ **k** $a = -37$ **l** $m = -5$

10 a $x + 4 = 6, x = 2$ **b** $x + 12 = 8, x = -4$
c $x - 5 = 5, x = 10$ **d** $\frac{x}{3} + 2 = 8, x = 18$
e $2x + 3 = 9, x = 3$ **f** $\frac{x - 3}{5} = 6, x = 33$
g $3x + 4 = 16, x = 4$

11 a 13 cm **b** 22 mm

12 a 3 **b** 5 **c** 28
d 42 **e** 82

13 a 11, 12 **b** 6 **c** 3
d 25, 44 **e** 8 m

14 a $C = 60h + 40$ **b** \$280
c \$1120 **d** 6 h

15 a $v = 6t + 5$ **b** 3 min **c** 11 min

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

Exercise 8B

1 **a** $3x - 3$ **b** $5x + 15$ **c** $-2x - 4$
d $-3x + 12$ **e** $-8x + 4$ **f** $5x + 13$
g $7x + 26$ **h** $9x + 9$ **i** $-x - 19$
j $-6x + 13$

2 **a** $x = 4$ **b** $x = -4$ **c** $x = 5$ **d** $x = 1$
e $x = 5$ **f** $x = 9$ **g** $x = 2$ **h** $x = 7$

3 **a** $x = 1$ **b** $x = 5$ **c** $x = -1$ **d** $a = 5$
e $a = 1$ **f** $x = 15$ **g** $m = 4$ **h** $d = 1$
i $a = 10$ **j** $a = 0$ **k** $x = 0$ **l** $a = 3$

4 **a** $x = 1$ **b** $x = 2$ **c** $x = 3$ **d** $x = 2$
e $x = 3$ **f** $x = 2$ **g** $x = -2$ **h** $x = -1$

5 **a** $x = 1$ **b** $x = 1$ **c** $x = 0$ **d** $x = 0$
e $x = 3$ **f** $x = 1$ **g** $x = 3$ **h** $x = -2$

6 **a** $x = 2$ **b** $x = 12$ **c** $x = -3$ **d** $x = 20$
e $x = 4$ **f** $x = 8$ **g** $x = 4$ **h** $x = -4$
i $x = -1$ **j** $x = 11$ **k** $x = 1$ **l** $x = -1$

7 **a** $x = 13$ **b** $x = 6$ **c** $x = 13$ **d** $x = 11$
e $x = 10$ **f** $x = 5$ **g** $x = 6$ **h** $x = 8$
i $x = -2$

8 **a** $x = 12$ **b** $x = 18$ **c** $x = 60$
d $x = 9\frac{1}{3}$ **e** $x = 5$ **f** $x = -6$

9 **a** $x = 10$ **b** $x = \frac{5}{3}$ **c** $x = 45$

10 **a** $x = 3$ **b** $x = 5$ **c** $x = 10$
d $x = 30$ **e** $x = 7$

11 **a** $x = 7$ **b** $x = 3$ **c** $x = 5$
d $x = 2$ **e** $x = 5$ **f** $x = 6$
g $x = 11$

12 **a** $C = 850 + 156h$ **b** 7 h **c** 8:15 p.m.

13 **a** $x = 1$ **b** $x = -3$ **c** $x = 2\frac{2}{5}$
d $x = 8$ **e** $x = 3$ **f** $x = -\frac{8}{17}$

Exercise 8C

1 **a** I **b** F **c** V **d** A
e c **f** P

2 **a** $m = 60$ **b** $A = 48$ **c** $A = 36$ **d** $v = 14.3$
e $m = 3.7$

3 **a** $t = 4$ **b** $t = 4$ **c** $t = 10$ **d** $t = 8$

4 **a** $b = 10$ **b** $b = 9$ **c** $b = 17$ **d** $b = 1.3$

5 **a** $h = 5$ **b** $h = 12$ **c** $h = 3$ **d** $h = 7$

6 **a** $b = 15$ **b** $b = 16$ **c** $b = 12$ **d** $b = 32$

7 **a** $h = 8$ **b** $h = 8$ **c** $h = 12$ **d** $h = 28$

8 **a** $m = 4$ **b** $m = 40$ **c** $m = 72$ **d** $m = 4$

9 **a** $h = 5.7$ **b** $h = 5.1$ **c** $h = 5.7$ **d** $h = 16.0$

10 **a** 86°F **b** −1.1°C **c** 212°F **d** −17.8°C

11 **a** \$32 **b** 60 km

12 **a** $P = 750$ **b** $t = 3.125$
c $r = 7.5$

13 **a** 1.5 tablets **b** 1250 mg

14 **a** 75 mL/h **b** $\frac{1}{3}$ h = 20 min

15 **a** number of hours **b** 7.5 h

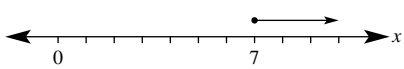
16 $P = 27.32$ cm, $A = 28.87$ cm^2

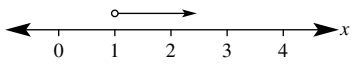
17 Iqra is now 17 and Urek is 7.

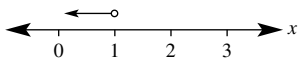
Exercise 8D

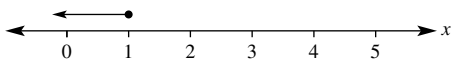
1 **a** 3 **b** 2 **c** 1
d 5 **e** 4

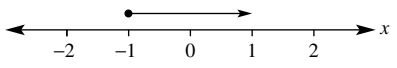
2 **a** $x \geq 1$ **b** $x < 7$ **c** $x \leq 4$
d $x > -9$ **e** $x \leq 1$ **f** $x > 8$
g $x < -7$ **h** $x \geq 1\frac{1}{2}$ **i** $x < 1$
j $x > 0$

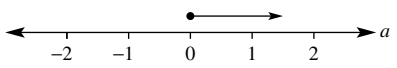
3 **a**


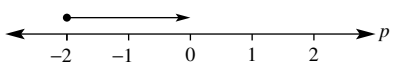
b


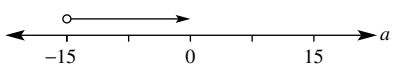
c


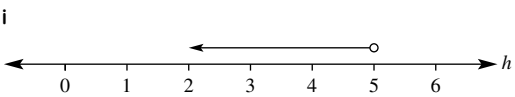
d


e


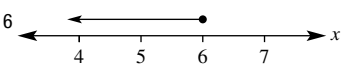
f


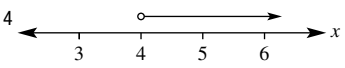
g


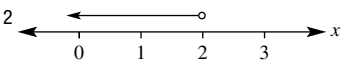
h


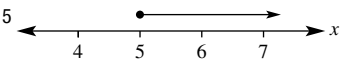
i


4 **a** $x \geq -1$ **b** $x < 1$ **c** $a < 6$ **d** $a \geq -2$
e $w \leq 5$ **f** $w > -3$ **g** $x \leq 3$
h $x > -3.5$

5 **a** $x \leq 6$


b $x > 4$


c $x < 2$


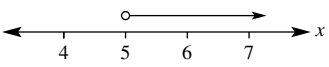
d $x \geq 5$


6 **a** $n > 100\,000$ **b** $n \geq 50$ **c** $n > 3$
d $n > 100$ **e** $n \leq 30$

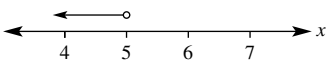
7 **a** $x < 0; -6, -2, -\frac{1}{2}$ **b** $x > 10; 15, 24$
c $x \geq 10; 10, 15, 24$ **d** $x \leq 0; -6, -2, -\frac{1}{2}, 0$
e $x \geq -1, 0, 2, 5, 7, 10, 15, 24$
f $x < 10; -6, -2, -\frac{1}{2}, 0, 2, 5, 7$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

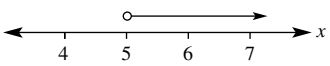
8 a $x > 5$



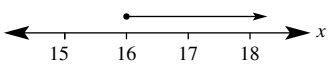
b $x < 5$



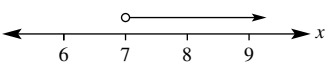
c $x > 5$



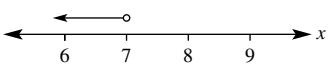
d $x \geq 16$



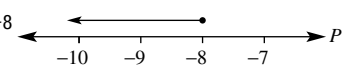
e $x > 7$



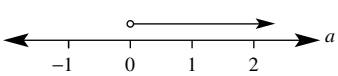
f $x < 7$



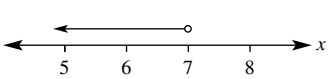
g $p \leq -8$



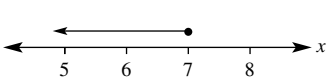
h $a > 0$



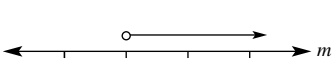
i $x < 7$



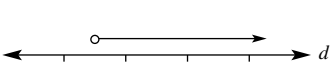
j $x \leq 7$



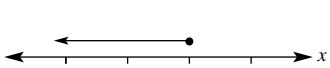
k $m > -3$



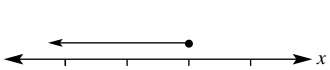
l $d > 5.4$



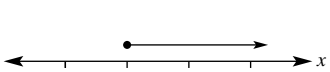
m $x \leq 0.7$



n $x \leq 12$



o $x \leq 12$



9 a $a \leq 2$ **b** $y > 3$ **c** $p > 5$
d $x \geq 4$ **e** $x < 1$ **f** $w \geq \frac{3}{2}$
g $x < 1$ **h** $x \geq 1$ **i** $p < 1$

10 a $x \leq 2$ **b** $a \leq 1$ **c** $x \geq 28$
d $x > -15$ **e** $x < 4$ **f** $x < 30$
g $x > \frac{19}{2}$ **h** $x < -\frac{1}{2}$ **i** $x \geq -\frac{8}{3}$
j $x > 1$ **k** $x \geq \frac{3}{2}$ **l** $x < -\frac{9}{2}$

11 a $3x < 9, x < 3$ **b** $\frac{3x}{4} < 6, x < 8$
c $2x + 15 > 20, x > \frac{5}{2}$ **d** $x + x + 4 < 24, x < 10$
e $4x + 7 \leq 27, x \leq 5$

12 a $x > -1$ **b** $x \leq -3$ **c** $p \geq -7$ **d** $a > 19$
e $w \leq -6$ **f** $p > -6$ **g** $x > -1$ **h** $a \leq -\frac{6}{7}$

13 a

4	6	4 < 6	T or F
4 + 3	6 + 3	7 < 9	T
4 − 3	6 − 3	1 < 3	T
4 × 2	6 × 2	8 < 12	T
4 ÷ 2	6 ÷ 2	2 < 3	T
4 × (−2)	6 × (−2)	−8 < −12	F
4 ÷ (−2)	6 ÷ (−2)	−2 < −3	F

b subtract, divide, positive, inequality, multiply, divide, number, true

Exercise 8E

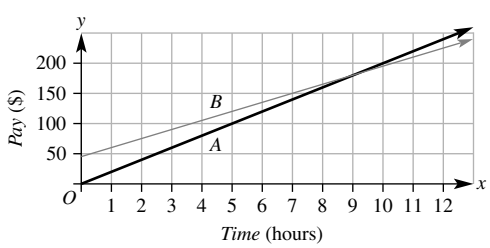
1 a (0, 3) **b** (1, 2) **c** no point of intersection
d (2, 8) **e** no point of intersection **f** (4, 3)
g (2, 5) **h** (0, 4) **i** no point of intersection
2 a $y = 0$ **b** $x = 0$
3 a (2, 3) **b** (2, 8) **c** (0, 9) **d** (−3, 8)
4 a (2, 3) **b** (3, −2)
5 a (3, 9) **b** (1, −3)
6 a (1, −4) **b** (1, 1)
7 a 200 km **b** $1400
c Best removals, $100 cheaper
d A+ removals, $200 cheaper

8 a

Time in hours	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Pay of company A	$0	$20	$40	$60	$80	$100	$120
Time in hours	7	8	9	10	11	12	
Pay of company A	$140	$160	$180	$200	$220	$240	

Time in hours	0	1	2	3	4	5	6
Pay of company B	$45	$60	$75	$90	$105	$120	$135
Time in hours	7	8	9	10	11	12	
Pay of company B	$150	$165	$180	$195	$210	$225	

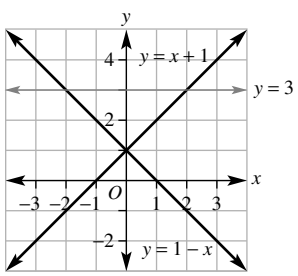
b



c 9 h
d $180

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

9 a



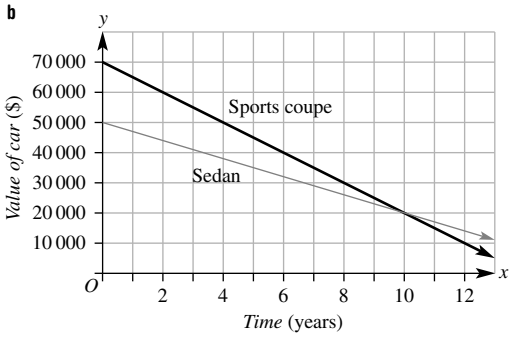
b (−2, 3)(0, 1)(2, 3) **c** 4 units, $\sqrt{8}$ units, $\sqrt{8}$ units
d isosceles right-angled triangle

10 a

Time in years	0	2	4	6
Value of luxury sports coupe	$70 000	$60 000	$50 000	$40 000
Time in years	8	10	12	
Value of luxury sports coupe	$30 000	$20 000	$10 000	

Time in years	0	2	4	6
Value of sedan	$50 000	$44 000	$38 000	$32 000
Time in years	8	10	12	
Value of sedan	$26 000	$20 000	$14 000	

b



c 10 years
d $20 000

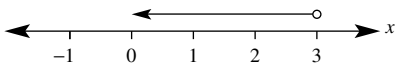
11 a no **b** parallel lines
d (−6, −12), (−5, −9), (−4, −6), (−3, −3)

12 a yes, (0, −1) **b** same y−intercept
d (−2, −3), parallel, (2, 5), (1, 3)

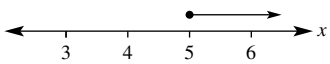
Progress quiz

1 a $x = 6$ **b** $y = 17$ **c** $m = 7$ **d** $x = -10$
2 a $x = 9$ **b** $y = -4$ **c** $x = 9$ **d** $x = 6$
e $y = 9$ **f** $x = -5$
3 a $x = 3$ **b** $a = -6$ **c** $y = 3$ **d** $x = 4$
4 a $2x + 3 = 25$; $x = 11$ **b** $\frac{x-3}{2} = 6$; $x = 15$
c $3(x - 2) = 12$; $x = 6$ **d** $\frac{4(x+2)}{2} = 16$; $x = 6$
5 a $x = -2$ **b** $x = 2$ **c** $x = 4$
6 a $b = 4$ **b** $u = 5$ **c** $h = 2.4$
7 a $x < 1$ **b** $x \geq -2$

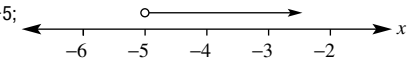
8 a $x < 3$;



b $x \geq 5$;



c $x > -5$;



9 (1, 3)

Exercise 8F

1 a simultaneous **b** intersection
c substituted **d** substituted
e substitution
2 a $x = -3$ **b** $x = -5$ **c** $y = 13$ **d** $x = 2$
e $y = 7$ **f** $x = 2$ **g** $y = 7$ **h** $y = -1$
i $x = -6$ **j** $x = 3$
3 a (2, 10) **b** (−5, −15) **c** (−4, −8)
d (1, 4) **e** (2, 2) **f** (2, 12)
4 a (2, 5) **b** (1, 3) **c** (2, 1) **d** (4, 3)
e (−5, −3) **f** (1, 6) **g** (4, 1) **h** (−1, −5)
5 a (−1, 2) **b** (3, −1) **c** (4, 4)
6 a (2, 4) **b** (−3, 2) **c** (7, −1)
7 a (1, 5) **b** (4, 10) **c** (2, 1) **d** (2, 9)
8 Kye: 43 years old, Viviana: 38 years old
9 length = 18 cm, width = 6 cm
10 vanilla thick shake: $5, fruity twirl: $3
11 Carlos: 37 years old, Ella: 17 years old
12 a i Joe's: $60, Paul's $150
ii Joe's: 20 c/km, Paul's 10 c/km
iii Joe's $C = 0.2k + 60$, Paul's $C = 0.1k + 150$
iv 900 km
b Joe's if you are travelling less than 900 km and Paul's for more than 900 km.

Exercise 8G

1 a − **b** + **c** +
2 a $6x - 4y = -2$ **b** $9x - 6y = -3$
c $12x - 8y = -4$
3 a (6, 1) **b** (3, 4) **c** (2, 7)
4 a (7, 2) **b** (3, 8) **c** (4, 1)
5 a (2, 5) **b** (2, 3) **c** (4, 2) **d** (2, 2)
6 a (1, 1) **b** (2, 1) **c** (2, −1)
7 a (4, 1) **b** (1, 3) **c** (5, 1)
8 a (4, −3) **b** (1, 1) **c** (2, 0) **d** (1, 1)
9 a (1, 1) **b** (4, 2) **c** (3, 4)
10 a (3, 1) **b** (1, −10) **c** (−2, −3)
d (0, 1) **e** (−1, 2) **f** (5, −2)
11 Ayden: 36 years old, Tamara: 20 years old
12 children: 2500, adults: 2500
13 a Let a be the number of apples and m be the number of mangoes.
$10a + 5m = 1250$,
$15a + 4m = 1350$
b apples: 50c, mangos:$1.50
c $8.00
14 a Let m be the number of multiple-choice and s be the number of short-answer questions.
b $2m + 3s = 50$, $m + s = 22$
c 16 multiple-choice questions
15 a $x + y = 16$, $x - y = 2$, $x = 9$, $y = 7$
b $x + y = 30$, $x - y = 10$, $x = 20$, $y = 10$
c $2x + y = 12$, $x + y = 7$, $x = 5$, $y = 2$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

16 a $x = 1, y = 2$ **b** $x = 2, y = 2$
17 a i $g + 30$ **ii** $d + 30$
b $g = d + 31, g + 30 = 2(d + 30)$
c Gordon is aged 32 and his daughter is aged 1.
18 a $(4, -3)$ **b** $(1, 1)$ **c** $(3, 4)$ **d** $(2, 2)$
e $\left(\frac{1}{2}, -1\right)$ **f** $\left(-3, \frac{1}{3}\right)$

Maths@Work: Nurse

1 a 1.5 mL **b** 0.6 mL **c** 1 mL
d 2 capsules **e** 5 tablets
2 a 114 mg **b** 107 mg
c 27 mg **d** 471 mg
3 a 41.7 drops per minute
b 9:30 p.m. Tuesday
c 75 min or 1 h 15 min
4

Starting time	Time in minutes for IV	Time in hours and minutes for IV	Ending time
4:15 p.m.	315	5:15	9:30 p.m.
10 a.m.	222.2222	3:42	1:42 p.m.
1:25 p.m.	640	10:40	12:05 a.m.
6 p.m.	750	12:30	6:30 a.m.
2 a.m.	977.7778	16:17	6:17 p.m.

Puzzles and games

1 Each row, column and diagonal adds to 6.

9	−5	−4	6
−2	4	3	1
2	0	−1	5
−3	7	8	−6

2 a 64 **b** 8 **c** 29.3
d 18 years old
3 Many possible equations; e.g. $3x + 2 = -4$; $\frac{5x}{2} = -5$; $2(x + 5) = 6$.
4 Many possible simultaneous equations; e.g. $x + y = 1, 2x - y = 8$.
5 Toowoomba
6 a 4.5 **b** 117 km
7 Emily was jogging at 11.5 km/h and cycling at 23 km/h.

Multiple-choice questions

1 C **2** B **3** C **4** D **5** B
6 C **7** D **8** B **9** C **10** D
11 A **12** E **13** B

Short-answer questions

1 a $a = 8$ **b** $m = -30$ **c** $x = -8$
d $x = 8$ **e** $m = 0$ **f** $w = 15$
g $m = -0.2$ **h** $w = 4$ **i** $r = 6$
2 a $m = 2$ **b** $w = 8$ **c** $m = 10$
d $w = 8$ **e** $m = 14$ **f** $m = \frac{4}{3} = 1\frac{1}{3}$
g $a = \frac{3}{2} = 1\frac{1}{2}$ **h** $x = 1$ **i** $x = 3$
3 a $m = 3$ **b** $a = 7$ **c** $x = 4$
d $x = \frac{3}{2} = 1\frac{1}{2}$ **e** $m = 2\frac{1}{2}$ **f** $x = \frac{7}{8}$
g $x = 2$ **h** $x = 8$
4 a $p = 4$ **b** $p = 4$ **c** $p = -9$
d $p = -2$ **e** $p = -5$ **f** $p = 2$
5 a $6x = 420$, the number is 70.
b $x + 8 = 5$, the number is −3.
c $\frac{a}{9} = 12$, the number is 108.
d $x + 7 = 3$, the number is −4.
e $x + 2.3 = 7$, the number is 4.7.
6 a $b = 8$ **b** $w = 3.5$ **c** $x = 2.4$
d $m = 10$ **e** $c = 35$
7 a $m > -2$ **b** $n \leq 0.5$ **c** $x \geq -1$
d $x > 0$ **e** $x < 15$
8 a $x \geq -18$ **b** $m < 3.5$ **c** $x > 2$
d $x < 3$ **e** $x \leq 8$ **f** $m \geq 10$
9 a $x \geq -2$ **b** $x \geq -2$ **c** $x < 0$
10 a (1, 2) **b** (2, 3) **c** no point of intersection
11 a (1, 6) **b** (3, 2) **c** (0, 0)
12 a (3, 2) **b** (5, −1)
13 a (−2, −3) **b** (2, 1)
14 4 and 11
15 a x: number of 20-cent coins, y: number of 50-cent coins; $x + y = 160, 20x + 50y = 5000$
b 100 20-cent coins and 60 50-cent coins
16 50 children

Extended-response questions

1 a $P = 6x - 4$
b i $x = 22$ **ii** 20 cm, 27 cm, 37 cm, 7 cm, 30 cm
c i $x = 26$; 24 cm, 31 cm, 45cm, 7 cm, 38 cm
ii $x = 38$; 36 cm, 43 cm, 69 cm, 7 cm, 62 cm
2 a i $C = 70t + 50$ **ii** $C = 100 + 60t$
b 3 h
c (5, 400)

Chapter 9

Pre-test

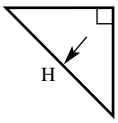
1 a 15.84 **b** 164.87 **c** 0.87
d 0.58 **e** 0.17 **f** 0.71
g 12.99 **h** 14.30
2 a 25 **b** 46.24 **c** 361
d 225 **e** 43.25 **f** 81
3 a 2.8 **b** 2.6 **c** 3.9
d 3.2 **e** 3.6 **f** 3.0
g 1.9 **h** 14.1
4 a c **b** p **c** y
d PQ **e** BC **f** XY
5 a $x = 3$ **b** $x = 4$ **c** $x = 35$ **d** $x = 9$
6 a $m = 3.65$ **b** $m = 1.2$ **c** $m = 5.2$
d $m = 5.724$
7 a $x = 0.6$ **b** $x = 0.2$ **c** $x = 2.1$ **d** $x = 0.4$
e $x = 2.4$ **f** $x = 9.2$
8 a $x = 4$ **b** $x = 20$ **c** $x = 13$ **d** $x = 4$
9 a 30° **b** 50° **c** 54°
d 90° **e** 45° **f** 30°
g 82° **h** 62° **i** 35°

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

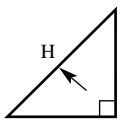
Exercise 9A

1 **b** and **c**

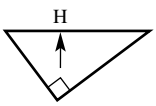
2 **a**



b



c



3 **a** $z^2 = x^2 + y^2$ **b** $t^2 = m^2 + n^2$
c $s^2 = p^2 + r^2$

4 **a** 25 **b** 34 **c** 45

5 **a** 5 **b** 17 **c** 13
d 25 **e** 41 **f** 15

6 **a** 5.8 cm **b** 7.3 mm **c** 18.0 m
d 11.2 km **e** 8.6 cm **f** 12.8 cm

7 **a** 8.91 cm **b** 3.62 m **c** 5.02 km
d 13.95 mm **e** 17.49 cm **f** 24.21 cm

8 181.5 cm

9 35.3 m

10 13 m

11 5.28 m

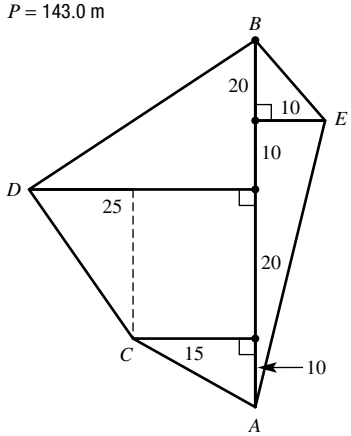
12 2.64 m

13 494.97 m

14 **a** no **b** no **c** yes
d yes **e** no **f** yes

15 **a** **i** $AC = 11.2$ **ii** $BC = 30.4$
iii $DB = 21.2$ **iv** $AD = 29.2$
b 92 m
c 400 m^2

16 $P = 143.0$ m



Exercise 9B

1 **a** 10 **b** 24 **c** 41 **d** 1.5

2 **a** $w^2 = 10^2 - 6^2$ **b** $x^2 = 13^2 - 5^2$
c $p^2 = 30^2 - 18^2$

3 **a** $17^2 = 8^2 + w^2$ **b** $13^2 = m^2 + 5^2$
c $15^2 = x^2 + 9^2$

4 **a** 4 **b** 7 **c** 8
d 5 **e** 14 **f** 4.8

5 **a** 7.1 **b** 13.3 **c** 12.3
d 6.2 **e** 6.6 **f** 16.2

6 **a** 7.14 **b** 13.90 **c** 3.87
d 133.84 **e** 17.89 **f** 39.19

7 5.66 m

8 2.2 m

9 3.2 m

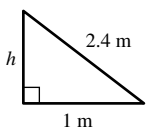
10 **a** **i** 3 cm **ii** 5.2 cm
b 15.6 cm^2

11 7.4 cm

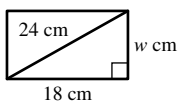
12 **a** 7.1 **b** 4.5 **c** 5.2

Exercise 9C

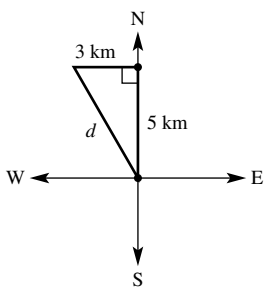
1 **a**



b



c

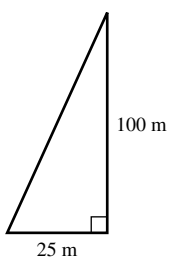


2 **a** $\triangle ADE$ **b** $\triangle PRO$ and $\triangle RQO$ **c** $\triangle AOB$

3 **a** AB **b** AB **c** FH
d BG **e** RT **f** EB

4 **a** 100 m

b



c 103.08 m

5 **a** 8.6 m **b** 13 m **c** 10 m

6 6.9 km

7 **a** 10 km **b** 41 km **c** 17 km

8 **a** 10.6 **b** 10.8 **c** 15.8 **d** 4.2

9 25.04 m

10 **a** 11.18 m **b** 12.2 m

11 Horizontal = 45.25 cm
Vertical = 71.66 cm

12 **a** 4.77 m **b** 4.90 cm

13 **a** 11.2 m **b** 8.1 cm

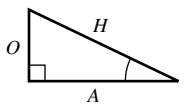
14 **a** 1.41 cm **b** 1.73 cm

15
- $\triangle PQR$ is a right-angled isosceles triangle
- with $\angle P = \angle R = 45°$
- the hypotenuse = $\sqrt{200}$ cm
- $PQ = QR = 10$ cm
- Perimeter = 34.1 cm
- Area = 50 cm^2

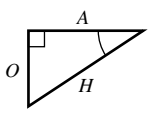
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

Exercise 9D

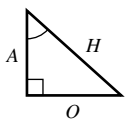
1 a



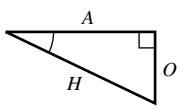
b



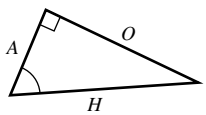
c



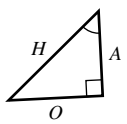
d



e



f



2 a PR **b** TP **c** TP
d PR **e** TR **f** $\angle T$

3 a BC **b** CA **c** BA **d** BA

4 a $\frac{3}{5}$ **b** $\frac{4}{5}$ **c** $\frac{4}{5}$

5 a i $\frac{b}{a}$ **ii** $\frac{c}{a}$ **iii** $\frac{b}{c}$

b i $\frac{n}{p}$ **ii** $\frac{m}{p}$ **iii** $\frac{n}{m}$

c i $\frac{y}{z}$ **ii** $\frac{x}{z}$ **iii** $\frac{y}{x}$

d i $\frac{4}{5}$ **ii** $\frac{3}{5}$ **iii** $\frac{4}{3}$

e i $\frac{24}{26}=\frac{12}{13}$ **ii** $\frac{10}{26}=\frac{5}{13}$ **iii** $\frac{24}{10}=\frac{12}{5}$

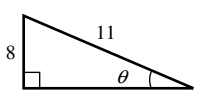
f i $\frac{12}{13}$ **ii** $\frac{5}{13}$ **iii** $\frac{12}{5}$

6 a $\frac{a}{c}$ **b** $\frac{y}{z}$ **c** $\frac{b}{a}$

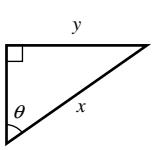
d $\frac{6}{10}=\frac{3}{5}$ **e** $\frac{40}{41}$ **f** $\frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

g $\frac{8}{6}=\frac{4}{3}$ **h** $\frac{9}{41}$ **i** $\sqrt{3}$

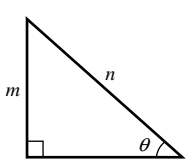
7 a



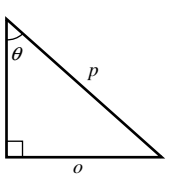
b



c



d



8 a $\frac{y}{x}$ **b** $\frac{z}{x}$ **c** $\frac{z}{x}$ **d** $\frac{y}{x}$

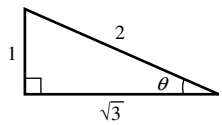
e $\frac{y}{z}$ **f** $\frac{z}{y}$

9 a $\sin\theta$ **b** $\tan\theta$ **c** $\sin\theta$ **d** $\cos\theta$

e $\cos\theta$ **f** $\tan\theta$

10 a $QR = 13$ m **b** $\sin\theta = \frac{5}{13}$

11 a



b $\sqrt{3}$

c i $\cos\theta = \frac{\sqrt{3}}{2}$ **ii** $\tan\theta = \frac{1}{\sqrt{3}}$

12

Angle (θ)	sin θ	cos θ
0°	0	1
5°	0.087	0.996
10°	0.174	0.985
15°	0.259	0.966
20°	0.342	0.940
25°	0.423	0.906
30°	0.5	0.866
35°	0.574	0.819
40°	0.643	0.766
45°	0.707	0.707
50°	0.766	0.643
55°	0.819	0.574
60°	0.866	0.5
65°	0.906	0.423
70°	0.940	0.342
75°	0.966	0.259
80°	0.985	0.174
85°	0.996	0.087
90°	1	0

a 45°

b i 85 **ii** 80 **iii** 30 **iv** 0

c If angles θ and α sum to 90°, sin $\theta = \cos\alpha$.

d It's the same as the complement of sine.

Exercise 9E

1 a 0.1736 **b** 0.9848 **c** 0.1763 **d** 0.5774
e 0.7660 **f** 0.9397 **g** 0.1736 **h** 0.8391
i 0.9848 **j** 0.8660 **k** 0.6428 **l** 1.7321

2 a 2.12 **b** 5.07 **c** 31.18 **d** 46.43
e 8 **f** 18.79 **g** 2.05 **h** 4.83
i 8.47

3 a sin **b** cos **c** tan **d** cos
e tan **f** sin

4 a $x = 1.37$ **b** $x = 5.12$
c $x = 91.44$ **d** $x = 13.86$
e $x = 9.19$ **f** $x = 9.19$

5 a 0.39 **b** 4.50 **c** 2.60 **d** 11.15
e 16.80 **f** 5.75 **g** 7.83 **h** 13.49
i 1

6 a 2.11 **b** 4.02 **c** 1.88

7 a 5.36 **b** 1.27 **c** 0.52

8 a 5.49 **b** 8.51 **c** 9.23

9 a 3.76 **b** 2.12 **c** 2.80 **d** 4.94
e 4.14 **f** 0.75

10 a 26.33 m **b** 52.66 m

11 6.96 m

12 a $w = 1.27$, $l = 2.72$ **b** $w = 0.68$, $l = 1.88$
c $w = 3.06$, $l = 2.57$

13 a $a = 3.5$, $b = 3.2$, $x = 1.4$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

b $a = 3.464$, $b = 3.139$, $x = 1.327$
c It is better not to round off during the process as sometimes it can change the final answer.

Exercise 9F

1 **a** 17.32 **b** 13.86 **c** 106.73
d 19.84 **e** 24.69 **f** 13.20
2 **a** $x = 2$ **b** $x = 5$ **c** $x = \frac{1}{2}$
d $x = 1$ **e** $x = 0.1$ **f** $x = 0.1$
3 **a** $\frac{10}{x}$ **b** $\frac{1.4}{m}$ **c** $\frac{19}{x}$ **d** $\frac{2.8}{w}$
4 **a** 8.77 **b** 9.44 **c** 8.49
5 **a** 4.62 **b** 23.39 **c** 2.86
6 **a** 5.96 **b** 1.62 **c** 1.72
7 **a** 4.73 **b** 6.19 **c** 6.14 **d** 3.00
e 26.08 **f** 27.82
8 2.54 m
9 13.9 m
10 **a** $AB = 42.89$ cm, $BC = 20$ cm
b $AB = 5.32$ m, $BC = 1.82$ m
c $AB = 14.62$ cm, $BC = 13.74$ cm
11 **a** 7.464 m **b** 7.727 m
12 **a** 30.5 m **b** 17.5 m
13 **a** 17.16 **b** 30 **c** 4.01 **d** 59.78
e 51.13 **f** 38.09

Progress quiz

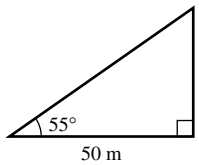
1 **a** 26 m **b** 10.3 m
2 **a** $x = 6$ **b** $x = 7.1$
3 4.4 inches
4 4.47 m
5 12.6 cm
6 **a** $\cos\theta = \frac{40}{41}$ **b** $\sin\theta = \frac{9}{41}$ **c** $\tan\theta = \frac{9}{40}$
7 **a** $x = 10.9$ **b** $x = 6.3$
8 **a** $x = 8.7$ **b** $x = 6.7$
9 **a, b** 15.6 cm^2

Exercise 9G

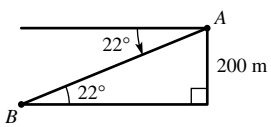
1 $\sin 30° = 0.5$ and $\sin^{-1}(0.5) = 30$
2 **a** 45° **b** 30° **c** 58°
3 **a** $\cos\theta = \frac{5}{12}$ **b** $\sin\theta = \frac{7}{10}$
c $\tan\theta = \frac{4}{3}$
4 **a** 30° **b** 53° **c** 61° **d** 45°
e 41° **f** 53° **g** 48° **h** 6°
i 37° **j** 81° **k** 73° **l** 60°
m 42° **n** 48° **o** 34°
5 **a** 60° **b** 45° **c** 64.16° **d** 48.59°
e 53.13° **f** 68.20°
6 **a** 42° **b** 56° **c** 64° **d** 49°
e 54° **f** 67° **g** 53° **h** 50°
i 40° **j** 77° **k** 43° **l** 56°
7 10.62°
8 15.95°
9 46.66°
10 **a** 36.9°, 53.1° **b** 34.8°, 55.2°
c 36.9°, 53.1° **d** 26.6°, 63.4°
e 68.2°, 21.8°
11 Pitch $A = 47°$, $B = 43°$
12 **a** 5.54 m **b** 5.97 m
13 **a** 12° **b** yes **c** 286.4 cm

Exercise 9H

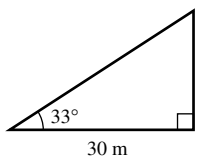
1 **a** 50 **b** 38 **c** 56
2 **a** 30° **b** 30° **c** 60°
3 **a**



b



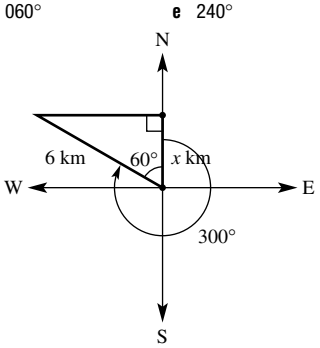
c



4 **a** 21.88 m **b** 43.5 m **c** 23.41 m
d 6.06 m **e** 536.29 m **f** 38.97 m
5 **a** 112.0 **b** 49 m **c** 86 m
d 105 m **e** 9260 m
6 **a** 26.6° **b** 29.7° **c** 5.7°
d 47.1° **e** 48.3°
7 38.35 m
8 1.25 km
9 280.04 m
10 **a** 30° **b** 30° **c** equal due to parallel lines
d 1.7
11 Answers will vary.

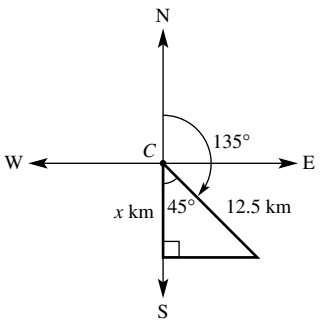
Exercise 9I

1 **a** S **b** W **c** N **d** SW
2 **a** v **b** iv **c** i
d iii **e** vi **f** ii
3 **a** 130° **b** 340° **c** 090°
d 128° **e** 313° **f** 355°
4 **a** north **b** east **c** west
d 060° **e** 240°
5 **a**

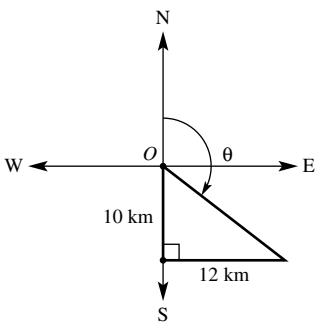


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

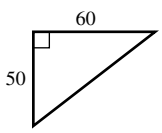
b



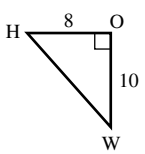
c



6 6.9 km
7 3.86 km
8 93.97 km
9 **a** 51.42 km **b** 61.28 km
c 320°
10 **a**



b 78.10 km
c 50° **d** 050°
11 **a**



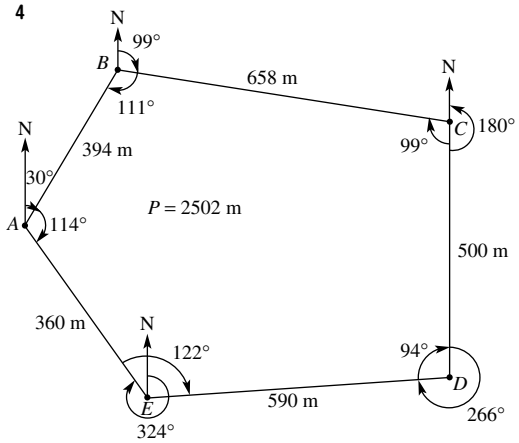
b 12.8 km **c** 39°
d 321°
12 3.25 km
13 115 km
14 **a** 18.03 km **b** 146°

Maths@Work: Surveyor

1 **a** 10.94 m **b** 8.03 m **c** 51.15 m
d 38.55 m **e** 145.90 m **f** 1793.37 m
2 **a** 1300 m **b** 1174.87 m **c** 1835.79 m
d 1081.67 m **e** 7342.33 m **f** 320°
g 265°
3 **a**

Marker	True bearing	Angle	Distance east	Distance north
A	055°	145°	80.28	56.21
B	082°	207°	124.14	17.45
C	051°	149°	122.63	99.31
D	078°	207°	102.14	21.71
E	-	192°	-	-

b 429.19 m
c 194.68 m
d 066°
4



Puzzles and games

1 **a** west **b** SW **c** NW **d** 198°
e 120°
2 63.29 m
3 Answers will vary.
4

S													H
I	D	E	P	R	E	S	S	I	O	N			Y
N		E											P
E			G			S							O
				R		I	A	D	J	A	C	E	N	T
					E	D				A	N	G	L	E
						E							O	N
		T	R	I	A	N	G	L	E				P	U
	T	R	I	G	O	N	O	M	E	T	R	Y	P	S
		C	G	B						A	A		O	E
		O	H		E					N	T		S	
		S	T			A				G	I		I	
		I					R			E	O		T	
		N						I		N			E	
E	L	E	V	A	T	I	O	N	N	T				
					P	Y	T	H	A	G	O	R	A	S

5 068.8° T

Multiple-choice questions

1 B **2** E **3** C **4** B
5 C **6** C **7** D **8** E
9 A **10** C

Short-answer questions

1 No, $8^2 \neq 4^2 + 6^2$
2 **a** 15.17 m **b** 5.27 cm **c** 5.66 mm
3 **a** **i** BC **ii** AB **iii** AC
b **i** AC **ii** AB **iii** BC
4 **a** 0.57 **b** 0.96 **c** 8.14
5 **a** 4.50 **b** 1.5 **c** 0.93
6 **a** 6.31 **b** 12.94 **c** 4.16

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

7 **a** 3.63 m **b** 1.69 m
8 567.13 m
9 **a** 41.81° **b** 59.00° **c** 72.26°
10 **a** 45° **b** 42.4 m
11 **a** 2.3 km **b** 1.9 km **c** 040° T

Extended-response questions

1 **a** 54.46° **b** 130.25 m **c** 187 m
2 **a** 539 km **b** 68° **c** 248°

Chapter 10

Pre-test

1 **a** 3 **b** 2 **c** 5
2 **a** $4x + 2y$ **b** $2xy - x$ **c** $2ab$
3 **a** $2a$ **b** $-2m$ **c** $18a^2$
d $-6x^2y$ **e** $-\frac{1}{3}$ **f** $2x$
4 **a** $4m + 4n$ **b** $-6x + 12$ **c** $6x^2 + 2x$
d $4a - 8a^2$ **e** $3x - 7$ **f** $-2x + 1$
5 **a** $7(x + 1)$ **b** $-9x(1 + 3x)$ **c** $a(a + b)$
6 **a** $-\frac{1}{2}$ **b** 3 **c** 5
7 **a**

x	−3	−2	−1	0	1	2	3
y	9	4	1	0	1	4	9

b B
8 **a** T **b** F **c** T **d** T **e** F

Exercise 10A

1 **a** PS **b** DOPS **c** DOPS **d** PS
2 **a** $6x$ **b** $-20x$ **c** $2x^2$ **d** $-4x^2$
e $\frac{x}{2}$ **f** $\frac{x}{3}$ **g** $-4x$ **h** $-3x$
i $-18x$ **j** $7x$ **k** $5x$ **l** $-13x$
3 **a** $x^2 + 2x$ **b** $x^2 + 4x + 3$
c $x^2 + 8x + 16$
4 **a** $2x + 10$ **b** $3x - 12$ **c** $-5x - 15$
d $-4x + 8$ **e** $6x - 3$ **f** $12x + 4$
g $-10x + 6$ **h** $-20x - 15$ **i** $2x^2 + 5x$
j $3x^2 - x$ **k** $2x - 2x^2$ **l** $6x - 3x^2$
m $-6x^2 - 4x$ **n** $-18x^2 + 6x$ **o** $-10x + 10x^2$
5 **a** $x^2 + 10x + 16$ **b** $x^2 + 7x + 12$
c $x^2 + 12x + 35$ **d** $x^2 + 5x - 24$
e $x^2 + x - 30$ **f** $x^2 + x - 6$
g $x^2 - 4x - 21$ **h** $x^2 - 10x + 24$
i $x^2 - 13x + 40$ **j** $6x^2 + 13x + 5$
k $12x^2 + 23x + 10$ **l** $10x^2 + 41x + 21$
m $9x^2 - 9x - 10$ **n** $20x^2 + 2x - 6$
o $6x^2 + 5x - 25$
6 **a** $x^2 + 10x + 25$ **b** $x^2 + 14x + 49$
c $x^2 + 12x + 36$ **d** $x^2 - 6x + 9$
e $x^2 - 16x + 64$ **f** $x^2 - 20x + 100$
g $4x^2 + 20x + 25$ **h** $25x^2 + 60x + 36$
i $49x^2 - 14x + 1$
7 **a** $x^2 - 16$ **b** $x^2 - 81$
c $x^2 - 64$ **d** $9x^2 - 16$
e $4x^2 - 9$ **f** $64x^2 - 49$
g $16x^2 - 25$ **h** $4x^2 - 81$
i $25x^2 - 49$ **j** $49x^2 - 121$
8 **a** 6 **b** 7 **c** 16 **d** 4
e 4 **f** 6
9 **a** 3 **b** 3 **c** 3 **d** 8
e 1 **f** 2
10 **a** $(x^2 - 12x + 36)$ cm^2 **b** $(x^2 + 10x - 200)$ cm^2
11 **a** $-x^2 + 7x$ **b** $10a - 28$
c $x^2 - 81$ **d** $4x^2 + 12x + 9$
12 **a** **i** $x^2 + 5x$ **ii** $x^2 + 13x + 36$
iii $8x + 36$
b **i** 36 m^2 **ii** ii 68 m^2

Exercise 10B

1 **a** $2(x + 3)$ **b** $-4(x - 1)$
c $(x + 2)(x - 2)$ **d** $(3x + 2)(3x - 2)$
2 **a** 7 **b** 6 **c** 8
d −5 **e** $2a$ **f** $3a$
g $-5a$ **h** $-3xy$ **i** $-2ab$
3 **a** $3(x - 6)$ **b** $4(x + 5)$ **c** $7(a + b)$
d $3(3a - 5)$ **e** $-5(x + 6)$
f $-2(2y + 1)$ **g** $-3(4a + 1)$
h $-b(2a + c)$ **i** $x(4x + 1)$
j $x(5x - 2)$ **k** $6b(b - 3)$
l $7a(2a - 3)$ **m** $5a(2 - a)$
n $6x(2 - 5x)$ **o** $-x(2 + x)$
4 **a** $(x + 3)(x - 3)$ **b** $(x + 5)(x - 5)$
c $(y + 7)(y - 7)$ **d** $(y + 1)(y - 1)$
e $(a + 4)(a - 4)$ **f** $(b + 6)(b - 6)$
g $(y + 12)(y - 12)$ **h** $(z + 20)(z - 20)$
i $(2x - 3)(2x + 3)$ **j** $(6a - 5)(6a + 5)$
k $(1 + 9y)(1 - 9y)$ **l** $(10 - 3x)(10 + 3x)$
m $(5x - 2y)(5x + 2y)$ **n** $(8x - 5y)(8x + 5y)$
o $(3a + 7b)(3a - 7b)$
5 **a** $(2 + x)(2 - x)$ **b** $(3 + y)(3 - y)$
c $(6 + a)(6 - a)$ **d** $(10 + 3x)(10 - 3x)$
e $(b + a)(b - a)$ **f** $(20 + 5a)(20 - 5a)$
g $(2a + 3b)(2a - 3b)$ **h** $(4y + 11x)(4y - 11x)$
6 **a** $2(x + 4)(x - 4)$ **b** $5(x + 3)(x - 3)$
c $6(y + 2)(y - 2)$ **d** $3(y + 4)(y - 4)$
e $3(x + 5y)(x - 5y)$ **f** $3(a + 10b)(a - 10b)$
g $3(2x + 3y)(2x - 3y)$ **h** $7(3a + 4b)(3a - 4b)$
i $3(6x - 7y)(6x + 7y)$
7 **a** **i** 100 m **ii** 96 m **iii** 36 m
b $(10 + t)(10 - t)$
c **i** 100 m **ii** 96 m **iii** 36 m
d 10 seconds
8 **a** 60 **b** 35 **c** 69 **d** 104
e 64 **f** 40 **g** 153 **h** 1260
9 **a** **i** x^2 cm^2 **ii** $(1600 - x^2)$ cm^2
b $(40 + x)(40 - x)$ cm^2
c **i** 1200 cm^2 **ii** 1500 cm^2
d $x = 30$

Exercise 10C

1 **a** $x^2 + 5x + 6$ **b** $x^2 - 2x - 8$
c $x^2 - 10x + 21$ **d** $x^2 - 2x + 1$
e $x^2 + 10x + 25$ **f** $x^2 - 12x + 36$
2 **a** 9, 2 **b** 10, 2 **c** 5, −3
d 4, −3 **e** −8, 3 **f** −10, 3
g −2, −5 **h** −12, −3 **i** 8, −1
3 **a** **i** 5, 3 **ii** $(x + 5)(x + 3)$
b **i** 5, −2 **ii** $(x + 5)(x - 2)$
c **i** −4, −2 **ii** $(x - 4)(x - 2)$
4 **a** $(x + 6)(x + 1)$ **b** $(x + 3)(x + 2)$
c $(x + 3)^2$ **d** $(x + 5)(x + 2)$
e $(x + 4)(x + 3)$ **f** $(x + 9)(x + 2)$
g $(x - 1)(x + 6)$ **h** $(x + 3)(x - 2)$
i $(x + 4)(x - 2)$ **j** $(x - 1)(x + 4)$
k $(x + 10)(x - 3)$ **l** $(x + 11)(x - 2)$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

m $(x-2)(x-5)$ **n** $(x-4)(x-2)$
o $(x-4)(x-3)$ **p** $(x-1)^2$
q $(x-6)(x-3)$ **r** $(x-2)(x-9)$
s $(x-6)(x+2)$ **t** $(x-5)(x+4)$
u $(x-7)(x+2)$ **v** $(x-4)(x+3)$
w $(x+8)(x-4)$ **x** $(x-5)(x+2)$

5 a $(x-2)^2$ **b** $(x+3)^2$ **c** $(x+6)^2$
d $(x-7)^2$ **e** $(x-9)^2$
f $(x-10)^2$ **g** $(x+4)^2$
h $(x+10)^2$

6 a $2(x+5)(x+2)$ **b** $3(x+4)(x+3)$
c $2(x+9)(x+2)$ **d** $5(x-2)(x+1)$
e $4(x-5)(x+1)$ **f** $3(x-5)(x+2)$
g $-2(x+4)(x+3)$ **h** $-3(x-2)(x-1)$
i $-2(x-7)(x+2)$ **j** $-4(x-2)(x+1)$
k $-5(x+3)(x+1)$ **l** $-7(x-6)(x-1)$

7 a $2(x+11)^2$ **b** $3(x-4)^2$
c $5(x-5)^2$ **d** $-3(x-6)^2$
e $-2(x-7)^2$ **f** $-4(x+9)^2$

8 a i (x^2+3x) m^2 **ii** $(x^2+3x-10)$ m^2
b $(x+5)(x-2)$ m^2
c i 30 m^2 **ii** 60 m^2

9 a $x+6$ **b** $x-3$ **c** $x-3$ **d** $\frac{1}{x+7}$
e $\frac{1}{x-5}$ **f** $\frac{1}{x-6}$ **g** $x-2$ **h** $x+1$
i $x-8$

Exercise 10D

1 1, 4, 9, 16, 25, 36, 49, 64, 81, 100, 121, 144

2 a 16 **b** 49 **c** 81
d 121 **e** 9 **f** 25
g 64 **h** 144 **i** 1

3 a 6 **b** 8 **c** -7
d -5 **e** -10 **f** -1
g 0 **h** 11 **i** 20

4 a $c>0$ **b** $c=0$ **c** $c<0$

5 a $x=\pm 5$ **b** $x=\pm 9$ **c** $x=\pm 6$
d $x=\pm 7$ **e** no solutions **f** no solutions
g $x=\pm 20$ **h** $x=\pm 12$ **i** $x=\pm 5$
j $x=\pm 4$ **k** $x=\pm 1$ **l** no solutions
m $x=\pm 8$ **n** $x=\pm 9$ **o** $x=\pm 6$

6 a i $x=\pm\sqrt{14}$ **ii** $x=\pm\sqrt{22}$ **iii** $x=\pm\sqrt{17}$
iv no solutions **v** $x=\pm\sqrt{5}$ **vi** $x=\pm\sqrt{6}$
vii $x=\pm\sqrt{21}$ **viii** $x=\pm\sqrt{6}$ **ix** $\pm\sqrt{15}$
b i $x=\pm 3.5$ **ii** $x=\pm 5.9$ **iii** $x=\pm 5.5$
iv $x=\pm 7.9$

7 a $x=\pm 2$ **b** $x=\pm 9$ **c** no solutions **d** no solutions
e $x=\pm 3$ **f** $x=\pm\sqrt{15}$ **g** $x=\sqrt{3}$ **h** $x=\pm 1$
i $x=\sqrt{2}$ **j** $x=-\sqrt{7}$ **k** no solutions **l** $x=\sqrt{5}$

8 a $x=\pm 4$ **b** $x=\pm 3$ **c** $x=\pm 3$ **d** $x=\pm 5$
e $x=\pm 2$ **f** no solutions

9 24 m

10 4 seconds

11 a $x=\sqrt{29}$ **b** $x=8$ **c** $x=\sqrt{17}$ **d** $x=\sqrt{2}$

12 2.5 m

13 a $r=\pm 2.8$
b Since, in this practical scenario, r is the radius, then r must be greater than 0; i.e. $r=2.8$.

14 a $b>0$ **b** $b=0$ **c** $b<0$

15 a $b<0$ **b** $b=0$ **c** $b>0$

16 a $x=\pm 5$
b i $-5<x<5$ **ii** $x>5$ or $x<-5$

17 a $x=-4, 2$ **b** $x=-10, 4$ **c** $x=0, 4$ **d** $x=1, 9$
e $x=-3, 2$ **f** $x=0, 1$ **g** $x=0, \frac{4}{3}$ **h** $x=-\frac{3}{2}, 3$

Exercise 10E

1 a 1 **b** -3 **c** -7
d 5 **e** 0 **f** 0
g -2 **h** $\frac{7}{2}$ **i** $x=-\frac{1}{3}$

2 a

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2
$(x+2)(x-1)$	4	0	-2	-2	0	4

b 1, -2
c -3, 2

3 a $x-2, 2$ **b** $x+4, 1, -4$
c $x+6, 2x-7, -6, 7, \frac{7}{2}$

4 a $x=0, -1$ **b** $x=0, 5$
c $x=0, 4$ **d** $x=3, -2$
e $x=-5, 4$ **f** $x=-1, 1$
g $x=2, -1$ **h** $x=\frac{2}{3}, 7$
i $x=0, \frac{-5}{4}$ **j** $x=\frac{1}{2}, \frac{-7}{3}$
k $x=\frac{5}{4}, \frac{-2}{5}$ **l** $x=\frac{-3}{8}, \frac{-3}{4}$

5 a $x=0, 4$ **b** $x=0, 3$ **c** $x=0, -2$
d $x=0, 4$ **e** $x=0, 5$ **f** $x=0, -2$

6 a $x=-5, 5$ **b** $x=6, -6$
c $x=10, -10$ **d** $x=\frac{3}{2}, \frac{-3}{2}$
e $x=\frac{4}{3}, \frac{-4}{3}$ **f** $x=\frac{9}{7}, \frac{-9}{7}$

7 a $x=-2, -1$ **b** $x=-3, -2$ **c** $x=2, 4$
d $x=5, 2$ **e** $x=-6, 2$ **f** $x=-5, 3$
g $x=5, -4$ **h** $x=8, -3$ **i** $x=4, 8$
j $x=-2$ **k** $x=-5$ **l** $x=4$
m $x=7$ **n** $x=12$

8 a 2 **b** 2 **c** 1 **d** 1 **e** 2
f 2 **g** 1 **h** 1 **i** 1

9 a i 3.2 m **ii** 4.8 m
b 0, 10
c 10 s

10 a $x=-2, -6$ **b** $x=-1, 11$
c $x=3$ **d** $x=2$

11 a 150 cm^2
b i $x(x+5)$ cm^2 $=(x^2+5x)$ cm^2
ii $(x^2+5x-150)$ cm^2
c $(x+15)(x-10)$ cm^2
d 10
e 20

Exercise 10F

1 a $x+4$ **b** $x+10$ **c** $x-7$
d $x-2$ **e** $x+6$

2 a $x^2+2x-3=0$ **b** $x^2-3x-5=0$
c $x^2+7x-4=0$

3 a $x=3$ **b** $x=5$ **c** $x=4$

4 b $(x+5)$ m
c $x(x+5)=24$
d $x^2+5x-24=0$, $x=-8, 3$
e width = 3 m, length = 8 m

5 a width = 6 m, length = 10 m
b width = 9 m, length = 7 m
c width = 14 mm, length = 11 mm

6 a $A=\frac{1}{2}x(x+2)$ **b** $\frac{1}{2}x(x+2)=4$
c $x^2+2x-8=0$ **d** $x=2, h=4$

7 height = 2 m, base = 7 m

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.
Cambridge University Press

8 **a** $x^2 + x - 132 = 0$
b $-12, 11$
c $-12, -11$ and $11, 12$
9 8 and 9 or -9 and -8
10 15
11 1 m
12 **a** 3.75 m
b $t = 1$ s, 3 s
c The ball will reach this height both on the way up and on the way down.
d $t = 0$ s, 4 s
e $t = 2$ s
f The ball reaches a maximum height of 4 m.
g No, 4 m is the maximum height. If $h = 5$, there is no solution.
13 **a** $x = 0, 100$
b The rocket starts at the launching site; i.e. at ground level, and hits the ground again 100 m from the launching site.
c 2 m or 98 m

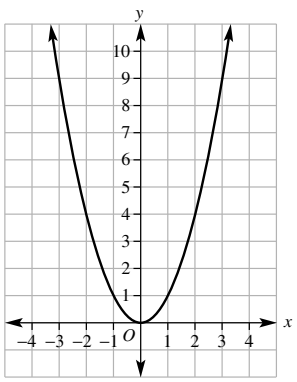
Progress quiz

1 **a** $x^2 + 8x + 12$ **b** $6x^2 - x - 15$
c $6x^2 - 17x + 5$
2 **a** $x^2 + 12x + 36$ **b** $4x^2 - 12x + 9$
c $x^2 - 25$ **d** $9x^2 - 16$
3 **a** $(x - 2)(x + 2)$ **b** $(y - 9)(y + 9)$
c $(3x - 5)(3x + 5)$ **d** $(4x - 7y)(4x + 7y)$
4 **a** $(x + 7)(x + 2)$ **b** $(x - 5)(x + 3)$
c $(x - 4)(x - 1)$ **d** $(x + 5)^2$
5 **a** $2(x - 6)(x + 6)$ **b** $3(2y - 3)(2y + 3)$
c $2(x + 7)(x - 2)$
6 **a** $x = \pm 5$ **b** $x = \pm 6$ **c** $x = \pm\sqrt{14}$
d no real solution **e** $x = \pm\sqrt{11}$
f $x = -2$
7 **a** $x = 0$ or $x = -2$ **b** $x = 3$ or $x = -3$
c $x = \frac{1}{2}$ or $x = -4$
8 **a** $x = 0$ or $x = 4$ **b** $x = 6$ or $x = -6$
c $x = 5$ or $x = -8$ **d** $x = 0$ or $x = 2$
e $x = \frac{1}{2}$ or $x = -\frac{1}{2}$ **f** $x = 4$
9 length = 7 m, width = 3 m

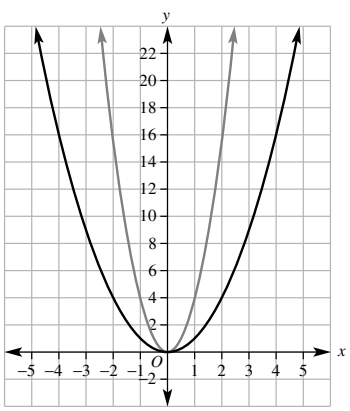
Exercise 10G

1

x	-3	-2	-1	0	1	2	3
y	9	4	1	0	1	4	9



2 **a** maximum **b** $(-2, 9)$ **c** 5
d $-5, 1$ **e** $x = -2$
3 **a** **i** $(2, -5.4)$, minimum **ii** $x = 2$
iii $-1, 5$ **iv** -3
b **i** $(2, 0)$, maximum **ii** $x = 2$
iii 2 **iv** -1
c **i** $(2, 5)$, minimum **ii** $x = 2$
iii no x-intercepts **iv** 7
d **i** $(-3, 0)$, minimum **ii** $x = -3$
iii -3 **iv** 4
e **i** $(2, -2)$, minimum **ii** $x = 2$
iii 1, 3 **iv** 6
f **i** $(0, 3)$, maximum **ii** $x = 0$
iii $-3, 3$ **iv** 3
4 *See table at bottom of page.*
5 *See table at top of next page.*
6 *See table at top of next page.*
7 **a** vi **b** iii **c** v **d** iv
e i **f** ii
8 **a** $y = x^2 + 2$ **b** $y = -x^2$
c $y = (x + 1)^2$ **d** $y = (x - 5)^2$
9 **a** **i**



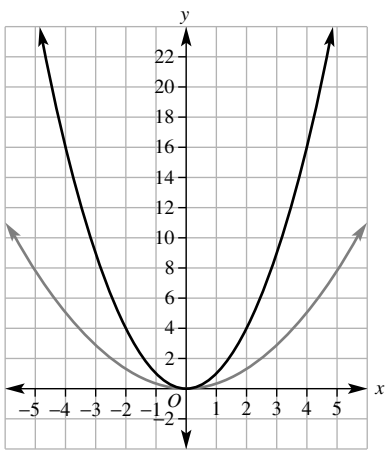
	Formula	Max or min	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = 3x^2$	min	no	$(0, 0)$	$y = 3$	narrower
b	$y = \frac{1}{2}x^2$	min	no	$(0, 0)$	$y = \frac{1}{2}$	wider
c	$y = 2x^2$	min	no	$(0, 0)$	$y = 2$	narrower
d	$y = -4x^2$	max	yes	$(0, 0)$	$y = -4$	narrower
e	$y = -\frac{1}{3}x^2$	max	yes	$(0, 0)$	$y = -\frac{1}{3}$	wider
f	$y = -2x^2$	max	yes	$(0, 0)$	$y = -2$	narrower

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

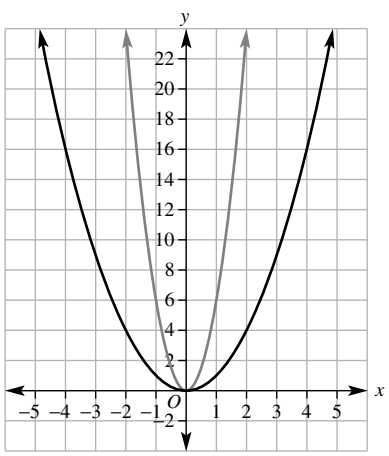
	Formula	Turning point	Axis of symmetry	y-intercept ($x = 0$)	x-intercept
a	$y = (x+3)^2$	$(-3, 0)$	$x = -3$	9	-3
b	$y = (x-1)^2$	$(1, 0)$	$x = 1$	1	1
c	$y = (x-2)^2$	$(2, 0)$	$x = 2$	4	2
d	$y = (x+4)^2$	$(-4, 0)$	$x = -4$	16	-4

	Formula	Turning point	y-intercept ($x = 0$)	y value when $x = 1$
a	$y = x^2 + 3$	$(0, 3)$	3	$y = 4$
b	$y = x^2 - 1$	$(0, -1)$	-1	$y = 0$
c	$y = x^2 + 2$	$(0, 2)$	2	$y = 3$
d	$y = x^2 - 4$	$(0, -4)$	-4	$y = -3$

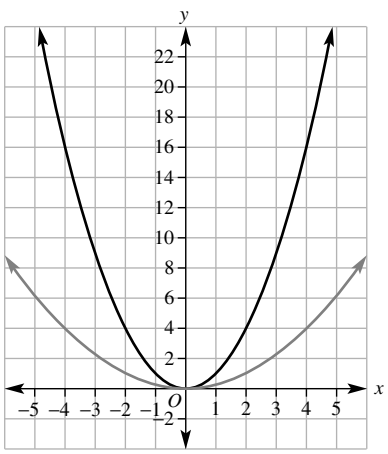
ii



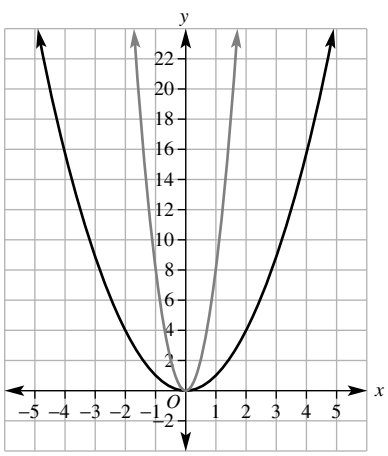
iii



iv

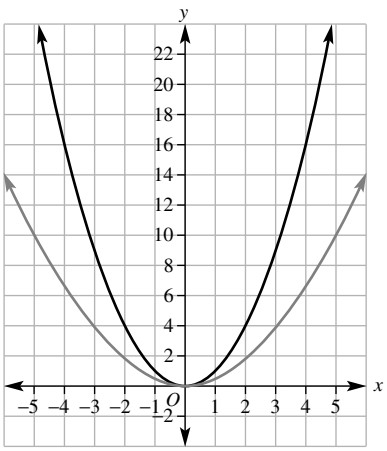


v



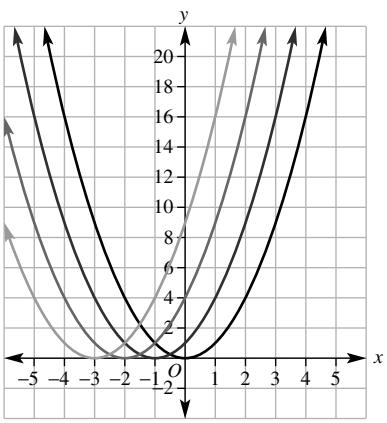
Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

vi

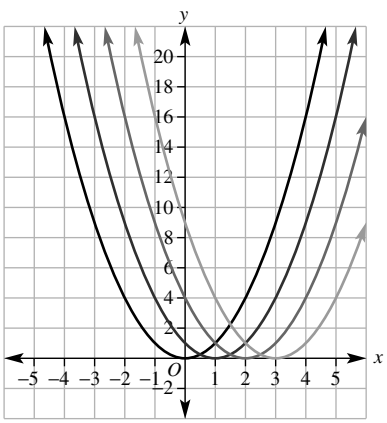


b The constant a determines the narrowness of the graph.

10 a i

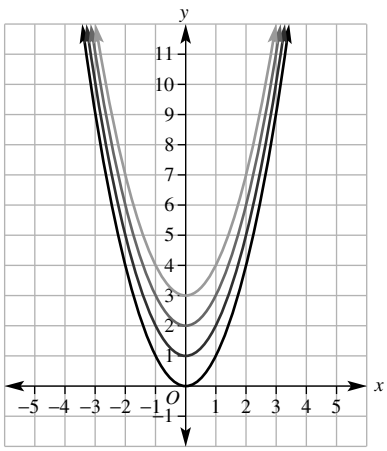


ii

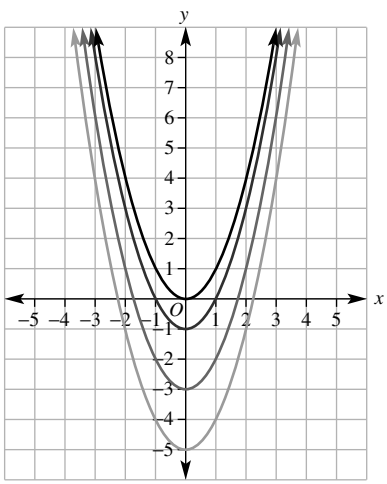


b The constant h determines whether the graph moves left or right from $y = x^2$.

11 a i



ii



b The constant k determines whether the graph moves up or down from $y = x^2$.

Exercise 10H

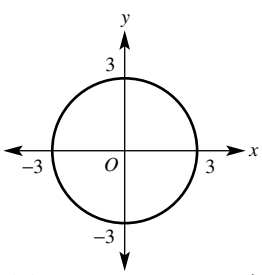
1 **a** (0, 0), $r = 3$ **b** (0, 0), $r = 6$
c (−1, 0), $r = 2$

2 **a** ± 2.2 **b** ± 4 **c** ± 3.3

3 **a** (0, 0) **b** r

4 **a** 1 **b** 2 **c** 16 **d** 1 **e** 3
f 27 **g** 1 **h** 16 **i** 1

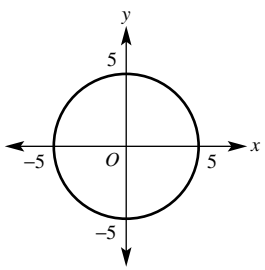
5 **a** (0, 0) **b** $r = 3$
c $y = \pm 2.2$ **d** $x = \pm 3$
e



6 **a** (0, 0) **b** $r = 5$
c $y = \pm 3$ **d** $x = \pm 5$

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

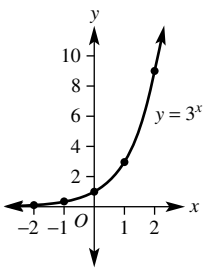
e



7 a

x	−2	−1	0	1	2
y	$\frac{1}{9}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	1	3	9

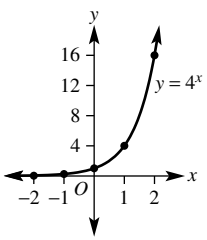
b



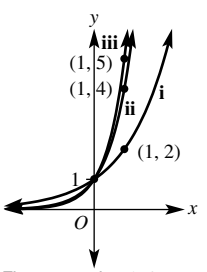
8 a

x	−2	−1	0	1	2
y	$\frac{1}{16}$	$\frac{1}{4}$	1	4	16

b



9 a



b The same point (0, 1).
c Makes it rise more quickly.

10 a $r = 6$ **b** $r = 9$ **c** $r = 12$ **d** $r = \sqrt{5}$
e $r = \sqrt{14}$ **f** $r = \sqrt{20}$

11 $x^2 + y^2 = 49$

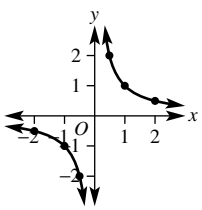
12 a C **b** A **c** B

13 a 1000
b i 2000 **ii** 8000
c i 2 years **ii** 4 years

14 a

x	−2	−1	$-\frac{1}{2}$	$\frac{1}{2}$	1	2
y	$-\frac{1}{2}$	−1	−2	2	1	$\frac{1}{2}$

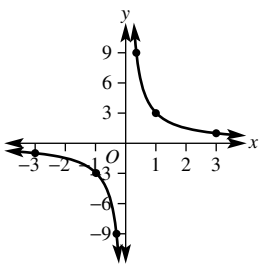
b



15 a

x	−3	−1	$-\frac{1}{3}$	$\frac{1}{3}$	1	3
y	−1	−3	−9	9	3	1

b



Maths@Work: Driving instructor

1 a $\frac{1000}{3600} = \frac{5}{18}$ **b** $\frac{3600}{1000} = \frac{18}{5}$

2 a 11.11 m/s **b** 13.89 m/s **c** 16.67 m/s
d 19.44 m/s **e** 22.22 m/s **f** 27.78 m/s

3 $R = 0.7 \times s$

4 a 7.78 m **b** 9.72 m **c** 11.67 m
d 13.61 m **e** 15.56 m **f** 19.44 m

5 a 6.17 m **b** 9.65 m **c** 13.89 m
d 18.90 m **e** 24.69 m **f** 38.58 m

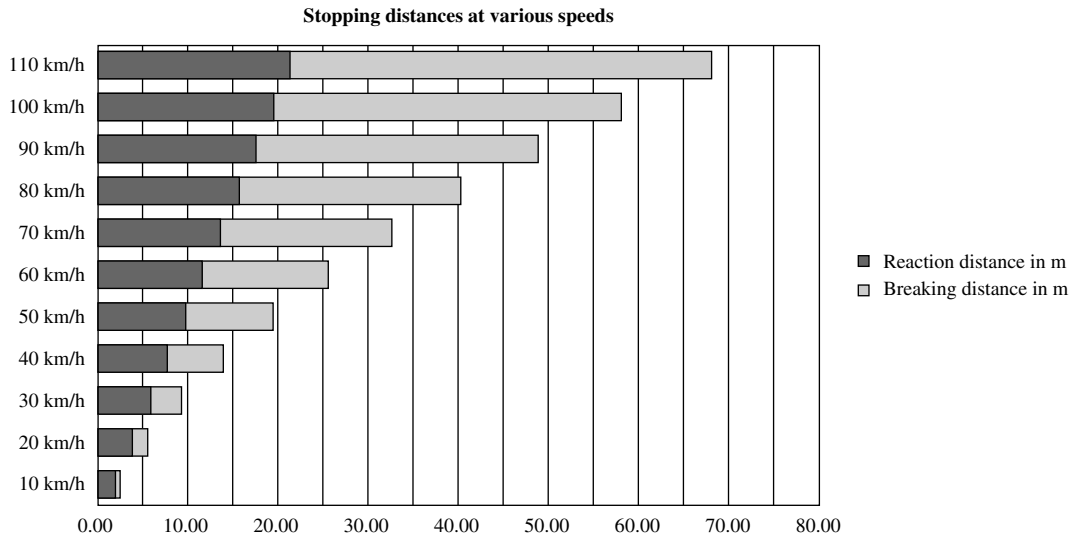
6 a $D = 0.7s + \frac{s^2}{20}$
b A quadratic equation.
c The total stopping distance increases by larger and larger amounts as the speed increases.

7 a

Speed in km/h	Speed in m/s	Reaction distance in m	Braking distance in m	Total stopping distance in m
0	0	0	0	0
10	2.78	1.94	0.39	2.33
20	5.56	3.89	1.54	5.43
30	8.33	5.83	3.47	9.31
40	11.11	7.78	6.17	13.95
50	13.89	9.72	9.65	19.37
60	16.67	11.67	13.89	25.56
70	19.44	13.61	18.90	32.52
80	22.22	15.56	24.69	40.25
90	25.00	17.50	31.25	48.75
100	27.78	19.44	38.58	58.02
110	30.56	21.39	46.68	68.07

b 50 km/h; 19.37 m
c 50 km/h; 90 km/h
d i 21% increase in braking distance.
ii 44%; 69%
e *See figure at top of next page.*
f i 50 km/h **ii** 70 km/h **iii** 90 km/h
iv 100 km/h

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.



Puzzles and games

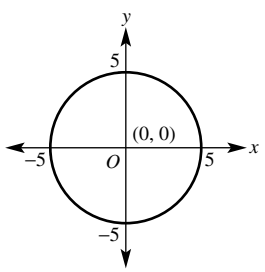
1 PARABOLA
2 **a** $(x+4)^2$ m^2 $= (x^2+8x+16)$ m^2 **b** 6
3 14 cm by 20 cm
4 12, 14 or $-14, -12$
5 64 and 8
6 5 cm
7 **a** $7x-6$ **b** $-4x$ **c** $x-3$
8 25 km/h

Multiple-choice questions

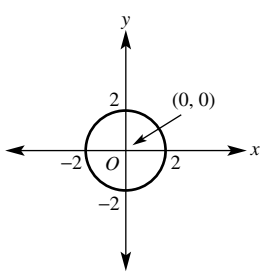
1 E **2** D **3** B **4** C
5 C **6** B **7** B **8** D
9 E **10** C

Short-answer questions

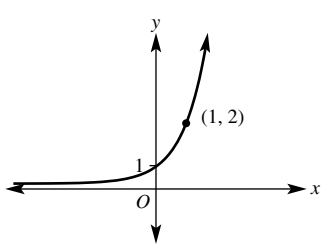
1 **a** $-2x-2$ **b** x^2+3x
c x^2+x-2 **d** $3x^2+11x-20$
e x^2-16 **f** $25x^2-4$
g x^2+4x+4 **h** $x^2-12x+36$
i $12x^2-23x+10$
2 **a** x^2+3x **b** x^2+4x+4
c $4x^2+18x$
3 **a** $3(x-3)$ **b** $-4(x+4)$
c $x(x+2)$ **d** $b(a-1)$
e $7x(1-2x)$ **f** $-ab(a+6)$
4 **a** $(x+7)(x-7)$ **b** $(3x+4)(3x-4)$
c $(2x+1)(2x-1)$ **d** $3(x+5)(x-5)$
e $2(x+3)(x-3)$ **f** $(2x+9)(2x-9)$
5 **a** $(x+2)(x+3)$ **b** $(x-3)(x+2)$
c $(x-6)(x-2)$ **d** $(x+12)(x-2)$
e $(x+10)(x-5)$ **f** $(x-8)(x-4)$
g $(x-3)^2$ **h** $(x+10)^2$
i $(x+20)^2$
6 **a** $\pm\sqrt{11}$ **b** $\pm\sqrt{3}$ **c** $\pm\sqrt{5}$
7 **a** $x=-1, 2$ **b** $x=3, -7$
c $x=\frac{1}{2}, -4$ **d** $x=0, 3$
e $x=0, -6$ **f** $x=0, \frac{5}{2}$
8 **a** $x=0, -4$ **b** $x=0, 3$
c $x=5, -5$ **d** $x=\pm\frac{4}{3}$
e $x=-3, -5$ **f** $x=3, 7$ **g** $x=4$
h $x=-5$ **i** $x=-9, 4$
9 length = 8 m, width = 6 m
10 **a** minimum at $(1, -4)$ **b** $x=1$
c -1 and 3 **d** -3
11 *See table at top of next page.*
12 **a**



b



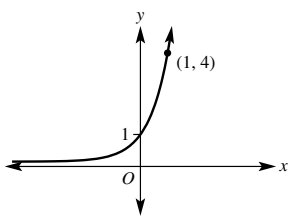
13 **a**



Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in the x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = 2x^2$	min	no	(0, 0)	2	narrower
b	$y = -\frac{1}{2}x^2$	max	yes	(0, 0)	$-\frac{1}{2}$	wider
c	$y = (x - 2)^2$	min	no	(2, 0)	1	same
d	$y = x^2 - 2$	min	no	(0, −2)	−1	same

b



Extended-response questions

1 a i x^2 m^2 **ii** $(100 - x^2)$ m^2
b $(10 + x)(10 - x)$ m^2
c i 96 m^2 **ii** 84 m^2
d $x = 5$

2 a i $(16 + 2x)$ m **ii** $(12 + 2x)$ m
b Area $= (4x^2 + 56x + 192)$ m^2
c Trench $= (4x^2 + 56x)$ m^2
d Minimum width is 2 m.

Semester review 2

Straight-line graphs

Multiple-choice questions

1 D **2** E **3** B **4** A **5** D

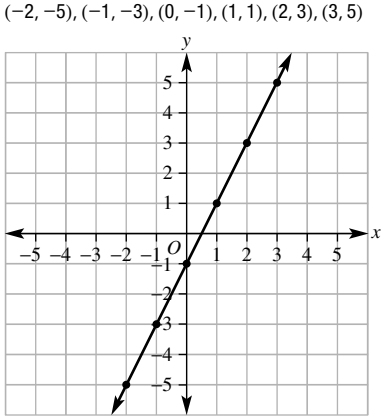
Short-answer questions

1 a \$6000 **b** 8 years **c** \$500
2 a i 16 km **ii** 24 km **iii** 32 km
b 16 km/h **c** 1.5 hours **d** 45 km
e 2.5 hours **f** 18 km/h **g** 90 km

3 a

x	−2	−1	0	1	2	3
y	−5	−3	−1	1	3	5

b (−2, −5), (−1, −3), (0, −1), (1, 1), (2, 3), (3, 5)
c



4 a AB midpoint (1, 2), length $= \sqrt{68}$, gradient $m = \frac{1}{4}$
b PQ midpoint (−1, −1), length $= \sqrt{72}$, gradient $m = -1$
c GH midpoint (0.5, 1), length $= 7$, gradient $m = 0$
d ST midpoint (2, 0), length $= 4$, gradient undefined

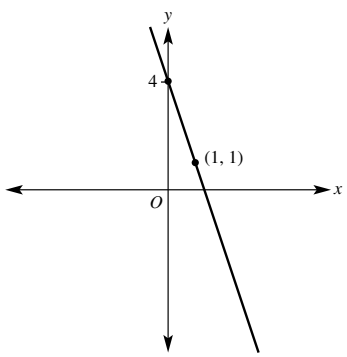
5 a $m = 2$ **b** $m = -3$

6 a PQ length $= \sqrt{41}$ **b** RM length $= \sqrt{89}$

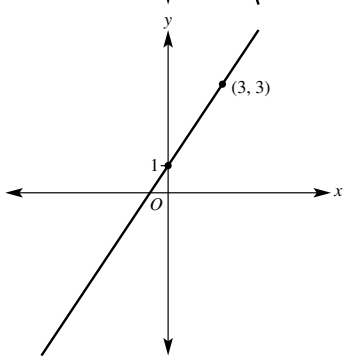
7 a TK midpoint (4, 8) **b** FG midpoint (1, −2)

8 a Line J: y-intercept $= -2$, $m = 2$, $y = 2x - 2$
Line K: y-intercept $= 6$, $m = -\frac{2}{3}$, $y = -\frac{2}{3}x + 6$
b (3, 4)

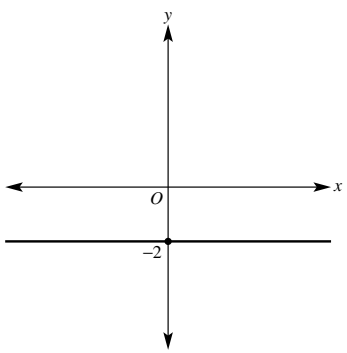
9 a



b

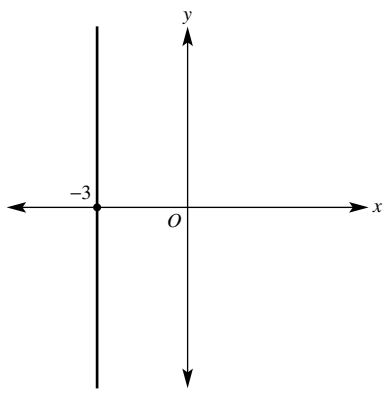


c

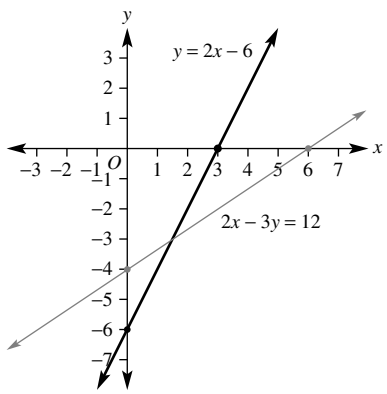


Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.

d



10 a x-intercept (3, 0), y-intercept (0, −6)
b x-intercept (6, 0), y-intercept (0, −4)

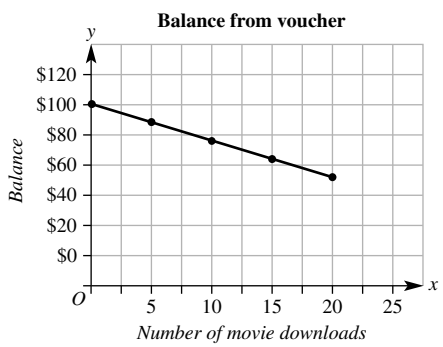


Extended-response question

a $B = 100 - 2.4n$
b **i** \$76 **ii** 30 movies
c

Number of movies, n	0	5	10	15	20
Balance, B	\$100	\$88	\$76	\$64	\$52

d



e 41 movies, \$1.60 remaining on voucher

Geometry

Multiple-choice questions

1 C **2** E **3** C **4** A **5** D

Short-answer questions

1 **a** 39 **b** 61 **c** 127
d 75 **e** 70 **f** 117
g 71 **h** 84 **i** 110
j 120 **k** 135 **l** 50
2 **a** $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$(SAS)
b $\triangle ABC \equiv \triangle DEF$(RHS)
c $\triangle STU \equiv \triangle MNO$(AAS)
d $\triangle XYZ \equiv \triangle ABC$(SSS)
3 **a** yes, (RHS) **b** yes, (AAA)
c yes, (SAS) **d** yes, (SSS)
4 $x = 1.8$, $y = 5$

Extended-response question

a AAA **b** 2.5 **c** 5 m

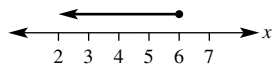
Equations

Multiple-choice questions

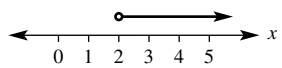
1 C **2** D **3** A **4** B **5** E

Short-answer questions

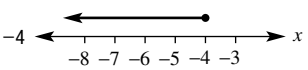
1 **a** $x = -9$ **b** $x = 26$ **c** $m = 32$
d $a = 4$ **e** $k = -6$ **f** $x = -8$
2 **a** $p = 2$ **b** $a = 4$ **c** $x = 12$ **d** $x = 20$
3 **a** $x = 8$ **b** $k = 3$ **c** $m = 9$
d $x = 5$ **e** $a = -4$ **f** $x = 4$
4 **a** $x - 5 = 8$; $x = 13$
b $4x + 8 = 20$; $x = 3$
c $2(3x - 6) = 18$; $x = 5$
5 **a** $b = 10$
b $P = 400$
6 **a** $x \leq 4$ **b** $x > 8$
7 **a** $x \leq 6$



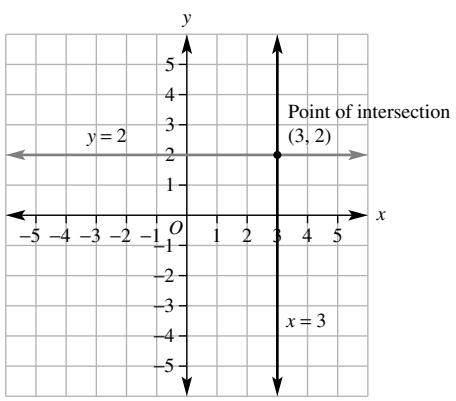
b $x > 2$



c $x \leq -4$

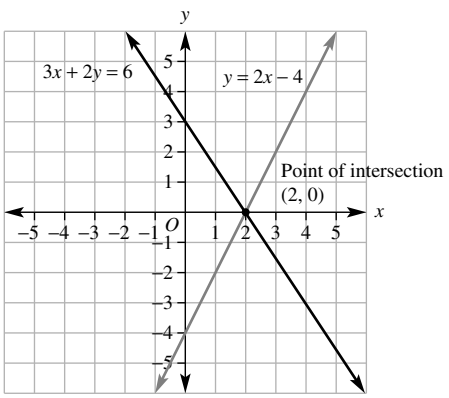


8 **a** (3, 2)



b (2, 0)

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed
ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2
© Greenwood et al. 2016
Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.



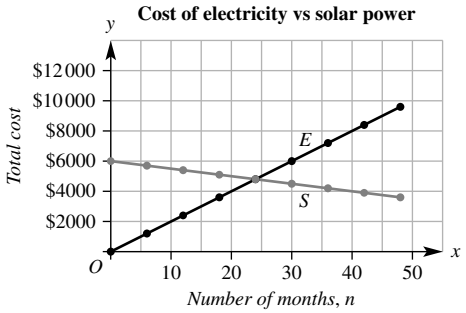
9 **a** (1, 2) **b** (3, 9) **c** (−1, 4)
10 **a** (1, 1) **b** (2, 4) **c** (3, 1)
11 **a** Let a = Oliver's age, b = Ruby's age (any pronumeral selection is correct)
b $a - b = 7$, $a + b = 45$
c Oliver is 26 years old, Ruby is 19 years old

Extended-response question

a

n	E	S
0	$0	$6000
6	$1200	$5700
12	$2400	$5400
18	$3600	$5100
24	$4800	$4800
30	$6000	$4500
36	$7200	$4200
42	$8400	$3900
48	$9600	$3600

b



c $n = 24$ months, $E = S = \$4800$ **d** $E = 200n$
$S = 6000 - 50n$
e 24 months **f** $6000 **g** 27 months

Pythagoras' theorem and trigonometry

Multiple-choice questions

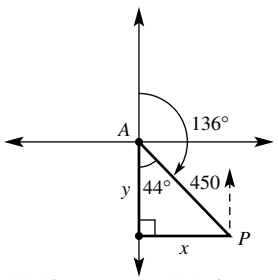
1 E **2** C **3** A **4** B **5** D

Short-answer questions

1 **a** PR **b** QR **c** PQ
2 **a** $\frac{y}{x}$ **b** $\frac{z}{x}$ **c** $\frac{y}{z}$
3 **a** 0.64 **b** 0.63 **c** 0.32 **d** 7.50
e 31.25 **f** 4.59 **g** 36.88 **h** 32.33
i 9.77
4 **a** 11.40 **b** 0.83 **c** 6.02 **d** 14.69
5 **a** 10.2 **b** 27.0 **c** 18.6 **d** 21.2
6 14 m **7** 8.95 m
8 **a** 60° **b** 37° **c** 77°
9 177.9 m **10** 259.8 m

Extended-response question

a



b 312.6 km **c** 323.7 km **d** 316°

Quadratics and non-linear graphs

Multiple-choice questions

1 B **2** C **3** E **4** A **5** D

Short-answer questions

1 **a** $-2x + 2$ **b** $x^2 - x - 6$
c $2x^2 - x - 21$ **d** $x^2 - 4$
e $x^2 - 6x + 9$ **f** $4x^2 + 4x + 1$
2 **a** $3(x - 4)$ **b** $-x(2 + x)$
c $(x + 5)(x - 5)$ **d** $(3x + 10)(3x - 10)$
e $(x + 3)(x + 4)$ **f** $(x - 3)(x + 2)$
g $(x + 4)(x - 2)$ **h** $(x - 4)^2$
i $(x + 3)^2$
3 **a** $x = 0, 3$ **b** $x = 0, -2$
c $x = -2, 2$ **d** $x = -\frac{3}{2}, \frac{3}{2}$
e $x = 3, \frac{1}{2}$ **f** $x = 5, -4$
g $x = -3, -7$ **h** $x = -4$ **i** $x = 7$
4 **a** $(-1, -1)$, minimum **b** $x = -1$
c $-2, 0$ **d** 0
5 *See table at bottom of page.*

Extended-response question

a **i** $x^2 m^2$ **ii** $(400 - x^2) m^2$
b $(20 + x)(20 - x)\ m^2$
c **i** $384\ m^2$ **ii** $319\ m^2$
d **i** 15 **ii** 10

5

	Formula	Maximum or minimum	Reflected in x-axis (yes/no)	Turning point	y value when $x = 1$	Wider or narrower than $y = x^2$
a	$y = 3x^2$	minimum	no	(0, 0)	3	narrower
b	$y = -\frac{1}{2}x^2$	maximum	yes	(0, 0)	$-\frac{1}{2}$	wider
c	$y = (x + 2)^2$	minimum	no	(−2, 0)	9	same
d	$y = x^2 - 3$	minimum	no	(0, −3)	−2	same

Essential Mathematics Gold for the Australian Curriculum Year 10 2ed ISBN 978-1-316-63095-2 © Greenwood et al. 2016 Cambridge University Press
Photocopying is restricted under law and this material must not be transferred to another party.